

✓ 55)

X^o

ORIGINAL SANSKRIT TEXTS.

ORIGINAL SANSKRIT TEXTS
ON THE
ORIGIN AND HISTORY
OF
THE PEOPLE OF INDIA,
THEIR RELIGION AND INSTITUTIONS.

COLLECTED, TRANSLATED, AND ILLUSTRATED,

BY
J. MUIR, D.C.L., LL.D.

VOLUME FIRST.

MYTHICAL AND LEGENDARY ACCOUNTS OF THE ORIGIN OF CASTE, WITH AN
ENQUIRY INTO ITS EXISTENCE IN THE VEDIC AGE.

THIRD EDITION.



LONDON:
TRÜBNER & CO., LUDGATE HILL.
—
1890.
(All rights reserved.)

*Na viśesho 'sti varṇānāṁ sarram brāhmaṇam idāṁ jagat !
Brahmaṇā pūrva-sṛishṭām hi karmabhir varṇatām gatam !*
Mahābhārata.

“There is no distinction of castes. This world, which, as created by Brāhmaṇā, was at first entirely Brahmanic, has become divided into classes in consequence of men’s works.”—See pages 138 and 140.

Salar Jung Library
W E S T E R N
SECTION.

PREFACE.

THE main object which I have proposed to myself in this volume is to collect, translate, and illustrate the principal passages in the different Indian books of the greatest antiquity, as well as in others of comparatively modern composition, which describe the creation of mankind and the origin of classes, or which tend to throw light upon the manner in which the caste system may have arisen.

I have not, however, hesitated to admit, when they fell in my way, such passages explanatory of the cosmogonic or mythological conceptions of the Indians as possess a general interest, although not immediately connected with the chief subject of the book.

Since the first edition appeared my materials have so much increased that the volume has now swelled to more than twice its original bulk. The second and third chapters are almost entirely new.¹ The fourteenth and fifteenth sections of the fourth chapter are entirely so. Even those parts of the book of which the sub-

¹ The contents of these chapters are not, however, absolutely new, but drawn from articles which I have contributed to the Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society since the first edition of the volume appeared.

stance remains the same have been so generally expanded that comparatively little continues without some alteration of greater or less importance.

In order that the reader may learn at once what I may expect to find in the following pages, I shall supply *here a fuller and more connected summary of their contents than is furnished by the table which follows this preface.*

The Introduction (pp. 1-6) contains a very rapid survey of the sources from which our information on the subject of caste is to be derived, viz. the Vedic hymns, the Brāhmaṇas, the Epic poems, and the Purāṇas, in which the chronological order and the general characteristics of these works are stated.

The first chapter (pp. 1-160) comprehends the mythological accounts of the creation of man and of the origin of castes which are to be found in the Vedic hymns, in the Brāhmaṇas and their appendages, in the Rāmāyaṇa, the Mahābhārata, and the Purāṇas. The first section (pp. 7-15) contains a translation of the celebrated hymn called Purusha Sūkta, which appears to be the oldest extant authority for attributing a separate origin to the four castes, and a discussion of the question whether the creation there described was intended by its author to convey a literal or an allegorical sense. The second, third, and fourth sections (pp. 15-34) adduce a series of passages from the works standing next in chronological order to the hymns of the Rig-veda, which differ more or less widely from the account of the creation given in the Purusha Sūkta, and therefore justify the conclusion

that in the Vedic age no uniform orthodox and authoritative doctrine existed in regard to the origin of castes. In the fifth section (pp. 35–42) the different passages in Manu's Institutes which bear upon the subject are quoted, and shewn to be not altogether in harmony with each other. *The sixth section (pp. 43–49) describes the system of great mundane periods called Yugas, Māvantaras, and Kalpas, as explained in the Purāṇas, and shews that no traces of these periods are to be found in the hymns of the Rig-veda, and but few in the Brāhmaṇas* (compare p. 215 f.). Sections seventh and eighth (pp. 49–107) contain the accounts of the different creations, including that of the castes, and of the primeval state of mankind, which are given in the Vishṇu, Vāyu, and Mārkandeya Purāṇas, together with references (see pp. 52 ff., 68 ff.) to passages in the Brāhmaṇas, which appear to have furnished some of the germs of the various Puranic representations, and a comparison of the details of the latter with each other which proves that in some respects they are mutually irreconcileable (see pp. 65 ff., 102 ff.). The ninth section (pp. 107–114) adduces the accounts of Brahmā's passion for his daughter, which are given in the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa and the Matsya Purāṇa. In the tenth section (pp. 114–122) are embraced such notices connected with the subject of this volume as I have observed in the Rāmāyana. In one of the passages men of all the four castes are said to be the offspring of Manu, a female, the daughter of Daksha, and wife of Kaśyapa. The eleventh section contains a collection of texts from the Mahābhārata and its appendage the Hari-

vaṁśa, in which various and discrepant explanations are given of the existing diversity of castes, one of them representing all the four classes as descendants of Manu Vaivasvata (p. 126), others attributing the distinction of classes to an original and separate creation of each, which, however, is not always described as occurring in the same manner (pp. 128 ff. and 153); whilst others, again, more reasonably, declare the distinction to have arisen out of differences of character and action. This section, as well as the one which precedes it, also embraces accounts of the perfection which prevailed in the first yugas, and of the gradually increasing degeneracy which ensued in those that followed. The twelfth section (pp. 155–158) contains extracts from the Bhāgavata Purāṇa, which coincide for the most part with those drawn from the other authorities. One text, however, describes mankind as the offspring of Aryaman and Mātṛikā; and another distinctly declares that there was originally but one caste. The thirteenth section (pp. 159 f.) sums up the results of the entire chapter, and asserts the conclusion that the sacred books of the Hindus contain no uniform or consistent theory of the origin of caste; but, on the contrary, offer a great variety of explanations, mythical, mystical, and rationalistic, to account for this social phenomenon.

The second chapter (pp. 160–238) treats of the tradition of the descent of the Indian nation from Manu. The first section (pp. 162–181) contains a series of texts from the Rig-veda, which speak of Manu as the progenitor of the race to which the authors of the hymns

belonged, and as the first institutor of religious rites ; and adverts to certain terms employed in the hymns, either to denote mankind in general or to signify certain tribal divisions. The second section (pp. 181–196) adduces a number of legends and notices regarding Manu from the Brāhmaṇas and other works next in order of antiquity to the hymns of the Rig-veda. The most interesting and important of these legends is that of the deluge, as given in the Satapatha Brāhmaṇa, which is afterwards (pp. 216 ff.) compared with the later versions of the same story found in the Mahābhārata and the Matsya, Bhāgavata and Agni Purāṇas, which are extracted in the third section (pp. 196–220). Some remarks of M. Burnouf and Professor Weber, on the question whether the legend of a deluge was indigenous in India, or derived from a Semitic source, are noticed in pp. 215 f. The fourth section adduces the legendary accounts of the rise of castes among the descendants of Manu and Atri, which are found in the Purāṇas ; and quotes a story given in the Mahābhārata about king Vitāhavya, a Kshattriya, being transformed into a Brāhman by the mere word of the sage Bhṛigu.

In the third chapter (pp. 239–295) I have endeavoured to shew what light is thrown by a study of the hymns of the Rig- and Atharva-vedas upon the mutual relations of the different classes of Indian society at the time when those hymns were composed. In the first section (pp. 240–265) the various texts of the Rig-veda in which the words brāhmān and brāhmaṇa occur are cited, and an attempt is made to determine the senses in which those

words are there employed. The result of this examination is that in none of the hymns of the Rig-veda, except the Purusha Sūkta, is there any distinct reference to a recognized system of four castes, although the occasional use of the word Brāhmaṇa, which is apparently equivalent to Brāhmā-putra, or “the son of a priest,” and other indications seem to justify the conclusion that the priesthood had already become a profession, although it did not yet form an exclusive caste (see pp. 258 f., 263 ff.). The second section (pp. 265–280) is made up of quotations from the hymns of the Rig-veda and various other later works, adduced to shew that persons who according to ancient Indian tradition were not of priestly families were in many instances reputed to be authors of Vedic hymns, and in two cases, at least, are even said to have exercised priestly functions. These two cases are those (1) of Devāpi (pp. 269ff.), and (2) of Viśvāmitra, which is afterwards treated at great length in the fourth chapter. This section concludes with a passage from the Matsya Purāṇa, which not only speaks of the Kshattriyas Manu, Ida, and Purūravas, as “utterers of Vedic hymns” (*mantra-vādinah*) ; but also names three Vaiśyas, Bhalaṇḍa, Vandya, and Sankīrtti, as “composers of hymns” (*mantra-kritah*). The third section (pp. 280–289) shews by quotations from the Atharva-veda that at the period when those portions of that collection which are later than the greater part of the Rig-veda were composed, the pretensions of the Brāhmans had been considerably developed. The fourth section (pp. 289–295) gives an account of the opinions expressed by Professor

R. Roth and Dr. M. Haug regarding the origin of castes.

The fourth chapter (pp. 296–479) contains a series of legendary illustrations derived from the *Rāmāyana*, the *Mahābhārata*, and the *Purānas*, of the struggle which appears to have occurred in the early ages of Indian history between the Brāhmans and the Kshattriyas, after the former had begun to constitute an exclusive sacerdotal class, but before their rights had become accurately defined by long prescription, and when the members of the ruling caste were still indisposed to admit their pretensions. I need not here state in detail the contents of the first five sections (pp. 296–317) which record various legends descriptive of the ruin which is said to have overtaken different princes by whom the Brāhmans were slighted and their claims resisted. The sixth and following sections down to the thirteenth (pp. 317–426) contain, first, such references to the two renowned rivals, Vasishtha and Viśvāmitra as are found in the hymns of the Rig-veda, and which represent them both as Vedic rishis; secondly, such notices of them as occur in the *Brāhmaṇas*, and shew that Viśvāmitra, as well as Vasishtha, had officiated as a priest; and, thirdly, a series of legends from the *Rāmāyana* and *Mahābhārata* which describe the repeated struggles for superiority in which they were engaged, and attempt, by a variety of fictions, involving miraculous elements, to explain the manner in which Viśvāmitra became a Brāhman, and to account for the fact which was so distinctly certified by tradition (see pp. 361 ff.), but appeared so un-

accountable in later ages (see pp. 265 f., 364 ff.), that that famous personage, although notoriously a Kshattriya by birth, had nevertheless exercised sacerdotal functions.² The fourteenth section (pp. 426–430) contains a story from the Satapatha Brāhmaṇa about king Janaka, a Rājanya, renowned for his stoical temperament and religious knowledge, who communicated theological instruction to

² As I have omitted in the body of the work to say anything of the views of Signor Angelo de Gubernatis about the purport of the Vedic texts relating to Vasishṭha and Visvāmitra, I may state here that this young Italian Sanskritist, in his Essay, entitled "Fonti Vediche dell' Epopœa" (see the Rivista Orientale, vol. i. pp. 409 ff., 478 ff.), combats the opinion of Professor Roth that these passages refer to two historical personages, and to real events in which they played a part; and objects that Roth "took no account of the possibility that a legend of the heavens may have been based upon a human foundation" (p. 409). Signor de Gubernatis further observes that the 33rd and 53rd hymns of the third Mandala of the Rig-veda "may perhaps have been recited at a later period in connection with some battle which really occurred, but that the fact which they celebrate seems to be much more ancient, and to be lost in a very remote myth" (p. 410). Visvāmitra, he considers, is one of the appellations of the sun, and as both the person who bears this name, and Indra are the sons of Kusika, they must be brothers (p. 412). See, however, the remarks in p. 347 f. of this volume on the epithet Kausika as applied to Indra. Sudāś, according to Signor de Gubernatis (p. 413), denotes the horse of the sun, or the sun himself, while Vasishṭha is the greatest of the Vasus, and denotes Agni, the solar fire, and means, like Visvāmitra, the sun (p. 483). Signor de Gubernatis is further of opinion (pp. 414, 478, 479, and 483) that both the 33rd and 53rd hymns of the third, and the 18th hymn of the seventh Mandala are comparatively modern; that the names of Kusikas and Visvāmitras claimed by the authors of the two former, are fraudulently assumed; while the last (the 18th hymn of the seventh Mandala) was composed by a sacerdotal family who claimed Vasishṭha as its founder. I will only remark that the theory of Signor de Gubernatis appears to me to be an improbable one. But the only point of much importance for my own special purpose is that ancient Indian tradition represents both Vasishṭha and Visvāmitra as real personages, the one of either directly divine, or of sacerdotal descent, and the other of royal lineage. They may, however, have been nothing more than legendary creations, the fictitious eponymi of the families which bore the same name.

some eminent Brāhmans, and became a member of their class. In the fifteenth section (pp. 431–436) two other instances are adduced from the same Brāhmaṇa and from two of the Upanishads, of Kshattriyas who were in possession of truths unknown to the Brāhmans, and who, contrary to the usual rule, became the teachers of the latter. *The sixteenth section (pp. 436–440) contains an extract from the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa regarding king Viśvantara who, after at first attempting to prevent the Śyāparṇa Brāhmans from officiating at his sacrifice, became at length convinced by one of their number of their superior knowledge, and accepted their services.* In the seventeenth section (pp. 440–442) a story is told of Matanga, the spurious offspring of a Brāhmaṇa woman by a man of inferior caste, who failed, in spite of his severe and protracted austerities, to elevate himself (as Viśvāmitra had done) to the rank of a Brāhmaṇa. The eighteenth section (pp. 442–479) contains a series of legends, chiefly from the Mahābhārata, regarding the repeated extirpations of the Kshattriyas by the war-like Brāhmaṇa Paraśurāma of the race of Bhṛigu, and the ultimate restoration of the warrior tribe, and a variety of extravagant illustrations of the supernatural power of the Brāhmans, related by the god Vāyu to king Arjuna, who began by denying the superiority of the priests, but was at length compelled to succumb to the overwhelming evidence adduced by his aerial monitor.

In the fifth chapter (pp. 480–488) I have given some account of the opinions entertained by Manu, and the

authors of the Mahābhārata and the Purāṇas, regarding the origin of the tribes dwelling within, or adjacent to, the boundaries of Hindustan, but not comprehended in the Indian caste-system.

The sixth and concluding chapter (pp. 489–504) contains the Puranic accounts of the parts of the earth exterior to Bhāratavarsha, or India, embracing first, the other eight Varshas or divisions of Jambudvīpa, the central continent; secondly, the circular seas and continents (dvīpas) by which Jambudvīpa is surrounded; and, thirdly, the remoter portions of the mundane system.

The Appendix (pp. 505–515) contains some supplementary notes.

As in the previous edition, I have been careful to acknowledge in the text and notes of this volume the assistance which I have derived from the writings of the different Sanskrit Scholars who have treated of the same subjects. It will, however, be well to specify here the various publications to which I have been indebted for materials. In 1858, I wrote thus: “It will be seen at once that my greatest obligations are due to Professor H. H. Wilson, whose translation of the Vishṇu Purāṇa, with abundant and valuable notes, derived chiefly from the other Purāṇas, was almost indispensable to the successful completion of such an attempt as the present.” In this second edition also I have had constant occasion to recur to Wilson’s important work, now improved and enriched by the additional notes of the editor Dr. Fitz-edward Hall. It is to his edition, so far as it has yet ap-

peared, that my references have been made. I acknowledged at the same time the aid which I had received from M. Langlois' French translation of the *Harivāñśa*, and from M. Burnouf's French translation of the first nine books of the *Bhāgavata Purāna*, which opened up an easy access to the contents of the original works. A large amount of materials has also been supplied to me, either formerly or for the preparation of the present edition, by Mr. Colebrooke's Miscellaneous Essays; by Professor C. Lassen's Indian Antiquities; Professor Rudolph Roth's Dissertations on the Literature and History of the Vedas, and contributions to the Journal of the German Oriental Society, and to Weber's *Indische Studien*, etc.; Professor Weber's numerous articles in the same Journals, and his History of Indian Literature; Professor Max Müller's History of Ancient Sanskrit Literature, Chips from a German Workshop, article on the Funeral rites of the Brāhmans, etc.; Professor Benfey's Glossary of the Sāma Veda, and translations of Vedic hymns; Dr. Haug's text and translation of the *Aitareya Brāhmaṇa*: while much valuable aid has been derived from the written communications with which I have been favoured by Professor Aufrecht, as well as from his Catalogue of the Bodleian Sanskrit MSS. I am also indebted to Professor Müller for pointing out two texts which will be found in the Appendix, and to Professor Goldstücker for copying for me two passages of Kumārila Bhaṭṭa's *Mīmāṃsā-vārttika*, which are printed in the same place, and for making some corrections in my translations of them.

I formerly observed that at the same time my own researches had “enabled me to collect a good many texts which I had not found elsewhere adduced ;” and the same remark applies to a considerable portion of the new matter which has been adduced in the present edition.

CONTENTS.

PAGES.	
v.—xvi.	PREFACE.
1—6.	INTRODUCTION, CONTAINING A PRELIMINARY SURVEY OF THE SOURCES OF INFORMATION.
7—160.	CHAPTER I.—MYTHICAL ACCOUNTS OF THE CREATION OF MAN, AND OF THE ORIGIN OF THE FOUR CASTES.
7— 15.	SECT. I. Ninetieth hymn of the tenth Book of the Rig-veda Sanhitā, called Purusha-Sūkta, or the hymn to Purusha.
15— 16.	SECT. II. Quotation from the Taittirīya Sanhitā, vii. 1, 1, 4 ff.
17— 22.	SECT. III. Citations from the Satapatha Brāhmaṇa, the Taittirīya Brāhmaṇa, the Vāyasaneyi Sanhitā, and the Atharva-veda.
22— 34.	SECT. IV. Further quotations from the Taittirīya Brāhmaṇa, Sanhitā, and Āraṇyaka, and from the Satapatha Brāhmaṇa.
35— 42.	SECT. V. Manu's account of the origin of castes.
43— 49.	SECT. VI. Account of the system of yugas, manvantara, and kalpas, according to the Vishnu Purāṇa and other authorities.
49— 73.	SECT. VII. Account of the different creations, including that of the castes, according to the Vishnu Purāṇa, with some passages from the Brāhmaṇas, containing the germs of the Puranic statements.
74—107.	SECT. VIII. Account of the different creations, including that of the castes, according to the Vāyu and Mārkandeya Purāṇas.

I formerly observed that at the same time my own researches had “enabled me to collect a good many texts which I had not found elsewhere adduced ;” and the same remark applies to a considerable portion of the new matter which has been adduced in the present edition.

CONTENTS.

PAGES.

v.—xvi. PREFACE.

1—6. INTRODUCTION, CONTAINING A PRELIMINARY SURVEY OF THE SOURCES OF INFORMATION.

7—160. CHAPTER I.—MYTHICAL ACCOUNTS OF THE CREATION OF MAN, AND OF THE ORIGIN OF THE FOUR CASTES.

7— 15. SECT. I. Ninetieth hymn of the tenth Book of the Rig-veda Sanhitā, called Purusha-Sūkta, or the hymn to Purus... .

15— 16. SECT. II. Quotation from the Taittirīya Sanhitā, vii. 1, 1, 4 ff.

17— 22. SECT. III. Citations from the Satapatha Brāhmaṇa, the Taittirīya Brāhmaṇa, the Vāyasaneyi Sanhitā, and the Atharva-veda.

22— 34. SECT. IV. Further quotations from the Taittirīya Brāhmaṇa, Sanhitā, and Āraṇyaka, and from the Satapatha Brāhmaṇa.

35— 42. SECT. V. Manu's account of the origin of castes.

43— 49. SECT. VI. Account of the system of yugas, manvantaras, and kalpas, according to the Vishṇu Purāṇa and other authorities.

49— 73. SECT. VII. Account of the different creations, including that of the castes, according to the Vishṇu Purāṇa, with some passages from the Brāhmaṇas, containing the germs of the Puranic statements.

74—107. SECT. VIII. Account of the different creations, including that of the castes, according to the Vāyu and Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇas.

PAGES.

107—114. SECT. IX. Legend of Brahmā and his daughter, according to the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa, and of Satarūpā, according to the Matsya Purāṇa.

114—122. SECT. X. Quotations from the Rāmāyaṇa on the creation, and on the origin of castes.

122—155. SECT. XI. Quotations from the Mahābhārata and Hari-vāṁśa on the same subjects, and on the four yugas.

155—158. SECT. XII. Citations from the Bhāgavata Purāṇa on the creation and on the origin of castes.

159—160. SECT. XIII. Results of this chapter.

161—238. CHAPTER II.—TRADITION OF THE DESCENT OF THE INDIAN RACE FROM MANU.

162—181. SECT. I. On Manu as the progenitor of the Āryan Indians and the institutor of religious rites, according to the hymns of the Rig-veda

181—196. SECT. II. Legend of Manu and the deluge from the Satapatha Brāhmaṇa, and other notices regarding Manu from the Satapatha, Aitareya, and Taittirīya Brāhmaṇas, the Taittirīya Sanhitā, and the Chāndogya Upanishad.

196—220. SECT. III. Extracts from the Mahābhārata and the Matsya, Bhāgavata, and Agni Purāṇas regarding Manu, and the deluge; and comparison of the versions of this legend adduced in this and the preceding section.

220—238. SECT. IV. Legendary accounts of the origin of castes among the descendants of Manu and Atri, according to the Purāṇas.

239—295. CHAPTER III.—ON THE MUTUAL RELATIONS OF THE DIFFERENT CLASSES OF INDIAN SOCIETY, ACCORDING TO THE HYMNS OF THE RIG- AND ATHARVA-VEDAS.

240—265. SECT. I. On the signification of the words brāhmān and brāhmaṇa, etc., in the Rig-veda.

265—280. SECT. II. Quotations from the Rig-veda, the Nirukta, the Mahābhārata and other works, to show that according to ancient Indian tradition persons not of priestly families were authors of Vedic hymns, and exercised priestly functions.

280—289. SECT. III. Texts from the Atharva-veda, illustrating the progress of Brahmanical pretensions.

289—295. SECT. IV. Opinions of Professor R. Roth and Dr. M. Haug regarding the origin of caste among the Hindus.

PAGES.

296—400. CHAPTER IV.—EARLY CONTESTS BETWEEN THE BRAHMANAS AND THE KSHATRIYAS.

296—298. SECT. I. Manu's summary of refractory and submissive monarchs.

298—306. SECT. II. Legend of Veṇa.

306—307. SECT. III. Legend of Purūravas.

307—315. SECT. IV. Story of Nahusha.

316—317. SECT. V. Story of Nimi.

317—337. SECT. VI. Vasishṭha, according to the Rig-veda and later works.

337—371. SECT. VII. Viśvāmitra, according to the Rig-veda, Aitareya Brāhmaṇa and later authorities; earlier and later relations of priestly families and the other classes.

371—375. SECT. VIIa. Do the details in the last two sections enable us to decide in what relation Vasishṭha and Viśvāmitra stood to each other as priests of Sudās?

375—378. SECT. VIII. Story of Triśanku.

379—388. SECT. IX. Legend of Hariśchandra.

388—397. SECT. X. Contest of Vaśishṭha and Viśvāmitra, and entrance of the latter into the Brāhmaṇ caste, according to the Mahābhārata.

397—411. SECT. XI. The same legend, and those of Triśanku, and Ambarīsha, according to the Rāmāyaṇa, with a further story about Viśvāmitra from the Mahābhārata.

411—414. SECT. XII. Other accounts from the Mahābhārata of the way in which Viśvāmitra became a Brāhmaṇ.

414—426. SECT. XIII. Legend of Saudāsa, and further story of the rivalry of Vaśishṭha and Viśvāmitra, according to the Mahābhārata, with an extract from the Rāja Tarangiṇī.

426—430. SECT. XIV. Story from the Sūtāpatha Brāhmaṇa about king Janaka becoming a Brāhmaṇ, with extracts from the Mahābhārata about the same prince.

431—436. SECT. XV. Other instances in which Brāhmaṇs are said to have been instructed in divine knowledge by Kshatriyas.

436—440. SECT. XVI. Story of king Viśvantara and the Syāparṇa Brāhmaṇs.

440—442. SECT. XVII. Story of Matanga, who tried in vain to raise himself to the position of a Brāhmaṇ.

PAGES.

442—479. SECT. XVIII. Legend of the Brāhmaṇa Paraśurāma, the exterminator of the Kshattriyas, according to the Mahābhārata and the Bhāgavata Purāṇa, with a series of narratives from the former work illustrating the superhuman power of the Brāhmaṇas.

480—488. CHAPTER V. RELATION OF THE BRAHMANICAL INDIANS TO THE NEIGHBOURING TRIBES, ACCORDING TO MANU, THE MAHĀBHĀRATA, AND THE PURĀNAS.

489—504. CHAPTER VI. PURANIC ACCOUNTS OF THE PARTS OF THE EARTH EXTERIOR TO BHĀRATAVARSHA, OR INDIA.

505—516. APPENDIX, CONTAINING SUPPLEMENTARY NOTES.

517—532. INDEX.

ORIGINAL SANSKRIT TEXTS.

FIRST.

INTRODUCTION

CONTAINING A PRELIMINARY SURVEY OF THE SOURCES OF INFORMATION.

I PROPOSE in the present volume to give some account of the traditions, legends, and mythical narratives which the different classes of ancient Indian writings contain regarding the origin of mankind, and the classes or castes into which the Hindus have long been distributed. In order to ascertain whether the opinions which have prevailed in India on these subjects have continued fixed and uniform from the earliest period, or whether they have varied from age to age, and if so, what modifications they have undergone, it is necessary that we should first of all determine the chronological order of the various works from which our information is to be drawn. This task of classification can, as far as regards its great outlines, be easily accomplished. Although we cannot discover sufficient grounds for fixing with any precision the dates of these different books, we are perfectly able to settle the order in which the most important of those which are to form the basis of this investigation were composed. From a comparison of these several literary records, it will be found that the Hindus, like all other civilized nations, have passed through various stages of development,—social, moral, religious, and intellectual. The ideas and beliefs which are exhibited in their oldest documents, are not the same as those which we encounter in their later writings.

The principal books to which we must look for information on the subjects of our enquiry are the Vedas, including the Brāhmaṇas and Upanishads, the Sūtras, the Institutes of Manu, and the Itihāsas and Purāṇas. Of these different classes of works, the Vedas are allowed by all competent enquirers to be by far the most ancient.

There are, as every student of Indian literature is aware, four Vedas,—the Rig-veda, the Sāma-veda, the Yajur-veda, and the Atharva-veda. Each of the collections of works known as a Veda consists of two parts, which are called its *mantra* and its *brāhmaṇa*.¹ The Mantras are either metrical hymns, or prose forms of prayer. The Rig-veda and the Sāmaveda consist only of mantras of the former description. The Brāhmaṇas contain regulations regarding the employment of the mantras, and the celebration of the various rites of sacrifice, and also embrace certain treatises called Āranyakas, and others called Upanishads or Vedāntas (so called from their being the concluding portions of each Veda), which expound the mystical sense of some of the ceremonies, and discuss the nature of the godhead, and the means of acquiring religious knowledge with a view to final liberation.

The part of each Veda which contains the mantras, or hymns, is called its Sanhitā.² Thus the Rig-veda Sanhitā means the collection of hymns belonging to the Rig-veda. Of the four collections of hymns, that belonging to the last-mentioned Veda, which contains no less than 1,017 of these compositions, is by far the most important for historical purposes. Next in value must be reckoned those hymns of the Atharva-veda, which are peculiar to that collection, another portion of which, however, is borrowed, in most cases, verbatim, from the Rig-veda.³

¹ Śāyana says in his commentary on the Rigveda (vol. p. i. p. 4): *Mantra-brāhmaṇītumakam tīvra adushṭam lakṣṇam | ata eva Āpastambo yajña-paribhāshāyām evāha ‘mantra-brāhmaṇayor veda-nāmādheyam’ |* “The definition (of the Veda) as a book composed of *mantra* and *brāhmaṇa*, is unobjectionable. Hence Āpastamba says in the *Yajnaparibhāshā*, ‘*Mantra* and *Brāhmaṇa* have the name of *Veda*.’”

² This definition applies to all the Sanhitās, except that of the Taittirīya, or Black Yajur, Veda, in which Mantra and Brāhmaṇa are combined. But even this Sanhitā had a separate Brāhmaṇa connected with it. See Müller's *Anc. Sansk. Lit.* p. 350, and Weber's *Indische Literaturgeschichte*, p. 83. The general character of the Vājasaneyi and Atharva Sanhitās is not affected by the fact that the last section of the former is an Upanishad, and that the fifteenth book of the latter has something of the nature of a Brāhmaṇa.

³ For further information on the Vedas, reference may be made to Professor Max Müller's *Ancient Sanskrit Literature*, *passim*, and also to vols. ii. iii. and iv. of the present work.

From this succinct account of the contents of the Vedas, it is clear that the Mantras must constitute their most ancient portions, since the Brāhmaṇas, which regulate the employment of the hymns, of necessity pre-suppose the earlier existence of the latter. On this subject the commentator on the Taittirīya, or Black Yajur-veda, Sanhitā thus expresses himself (p. 9 of the Calcutta edition) :—

Yadyapi mantrabrahmanātmako redas tathāpi brāhmaṇasya mantra-ryākhanā-rūpatrād mantrā evādau samāmnātāḥ | “Although the Veda is formed both of Mantra and Brāhmaṇa, yet as the Brāhmaṇa consists of an explanation of the Mantras, it is the latter which were at first recorded.”⁴

The priority of the hymns to the Brāhmaṇas is accordingly attested by the constant quotations from the former which are found in the latter.⁵ Another proof that the hymns are far older than any other portion of Indian literature is to be found in the character of their language. They are composed in an ancient dialect of the Sanskrit, containing many words of which the sense was no longer known with certainty in the age of Yāska, the author of the Nirukta,⁶ and many grammatical forms which had become obsolete in the time of the great grammarian Pāṇini, who refers to them as peculiar to the hymns (*chandas*).⁷ A third argument in favour of the greater antiquity of the mantras is supplied by the fact that the gods whom they represent as the most prominent objects of adoration, such as Indra and Varuna, occupy but a subordinate position in the Itihāsas and Purāṇas, whilst others, viz., Vishnu and Rudra, though by no means the most important deities of the hymns, are exalted to the first rank, and assume a different character, in the Puranic pantheon.⁸

⁴ See also the passage quoted from the Nirukta in p. 174 of the 2nd vol. of this work, and that cited from Sāyana in p. 195 of the same vol. Compare the following passage of the Mundaka Upanishad, i. 2, 1 : *Tad etat satyam mantreshu karmāṇi harayo yāng apāsyams tāni tretāyām bahudhā santatāni |* “This is true : the rites which the rishis saw (i.e. discovered by revelation) in the hymns—these rites were in great variety celebrated in the Tretā (age).”

⁵ See vol. ii. of this work, p. 195, and the article on the “Interpretation of the Veda” in the Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society, vol. ii. new series, pp. 316 ff.

⁶ See vol. ii. of this work, pp. 178 ff., and my article on the “Interpretation of the Veda” in the Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society, vol. ii. new series, pp. 323 ff.

⁷ See vol. ii. of this work, pp. 216 ff.

⁸ See vol. ii. of this work, 212 ff., and vol. iv. 1, 2, and *passim*.

On all these grounds it may be confidently concluded that the mantras, or hymns, of the Rig-veda are by far the most ancient remains of Indian literature. The hymns themselves are of different periods, some being older, and some more recent. This is shown not only by the nature of the case,—as it is not to be supposed that the whole of the contents of such a large national collection as the Rig-veda Saṁhitā should have been composed by the men of one, or even two, generations,—but also by the frequent references which occur in the mantras themselves to older rishis, or poets, and to older hymns.⁹ It is, therefore, quite possible that a period of several centuries may have intervened between the composition of the oldest and that of the most recent of these poems. But if so, it is also quite conceivable that in this interval considerable changes may have taken place in the religious ideas and ceremonies, and in the social and ecclesiastical institutions of the people among whom these hymns were produced, and that some traces of these changes may be visible on comparing the different hymns with each other.

No sufficient data exist for determining with exactness the period at which the hymns were composed. Professor Müller divides them into two classes, the Mantras or more recent hymns, which he supposes may have been produced between 1000 and 800 years,—and the older hymns, to which he applies the name of Chhandas, and which he conceives may have been composed between 1200 and 1000 years,—before the Christian era. Other scholars are of opinion that they may be even older (see Müller's *Anc. Sansk. Lit.*, p. 572, and the Preface to the 4th Vol. of the same author's edition of the Rig-veda, pp. iv.-xiii). This view is shared by Dr. Haug, who thus writes in his introduction to the *Aitareya Brāhmaṇa*, p. 47: "We do not hesitate, therefore, to assign the composition of the bulk of the Brāhmaṇas to the years 1400-1200 B.C.; for the Saṁhitā we require a period of *at least* 500-600 years, with an interval of about two hundred years between the end of the proper Brāhmaṇa period. Thus we obtain for the bulk of Saṁhitā the space from 1400-2000; the oldest hymns and sacrificial formulas may be a few hundred years more ancient still, so that we would fix the very commencement of Vedic literature between 2000-2400 B.C."

⁹ See vol. ii. of this work, pp. 206 ff., and vol. iii. pp. 116 ff., 121 ff.

Next in order of time to the most recent of the hymns come, of course, the Brāhmaṇas. Of these (1) the Aitareya and Śāṅkhāyana are connected with the Rig-veda; (2) the Tāṇḍya, the Panchavimśa and the Chhāndogya with the Sāma-veda; (3) the Taittirīya with the Taittirīya or Black Yajur-veda; (4) the Satapatha with the Vājasaneyi Saṁhitā or White Yajur-veda; and (5) the Gopatha with the Atharva-veda.¹⁰ These works, written in prose, prescribe, as I have already intimated, the manner in which the Mantras are to be used and the various rites of sacrifice to be celebrated. They also expound the mystical signification of some of the ceremonics, and adduce a variety of legends to illustrate the origin and efficacy of some of the ritual prescriptions. That in order of age the Brāhmaṇas stand next to the Mantras is proved by their simple, antiquated, and tautological style, as well as by the character of their language, which, though approaching more nearly than that of the hymns, to classical or Pāninean Sanskrit, is yet distinguished by certain archaisms both of vocabulary and of grammatical form which are unknown to the Itihāsas and Purāṇas.¹¹ The most recent portions of the Brāhmaṇas are the Aranyakas and Upanishads, of which the character and contents have been already summarily indicated. The remaining works which form the basis of our investigations come under the designation of Smṛiti, as distinguished from that of Sruti, which is applied to the Mantras, Brāhmaṇas, Aranyakas, and Upanishads.

The term Smṛiti includes (1) the Vedāngas, such as the Nirukta of Yāska, (2) the Sūtras or aphorisms, śrauta and grihya, or sacrificial and domestic, etc., (3) the Institutes of Manu, (4) the Itihāsas and Purāṇas. To the class of Itihāsas belong (1) the Rāmāyaṇa (said to be the work of Valmīki), which contains an account in great part, at least, fabulous, of the adventures of Rāma, and the Mahābhārata, which describes the wars and adventures of the Kurus and Pāndus, and embraces also a great variety of episodes and numerous mythological narratives, as well as religious, philosophical, and political discussions, which are interwoven with, or interpolated in, the framework of the poem. This

¹⁰ For further details on these Brāhmaṇas, the reader may consult Professor Max Müller's *Anc. Sansk. Lit.* pp. 315 ff.; Professor Weber's *Indische Literaturgeschichte*, and *Indische Studien*; and Dr. Haug's *Aitareya Brahmana*.

¹¹ See, for example, the S. P. Br. xi. 5, 1, 15; and the Taitt. Saṁhitā, ii. 2, 10, 2, and ii. 6, 7, 1.

work is said to be the production of Vyāsa, but its great bulk, its almost encyclopædic character, and the discrepancies in doctrine which are observable between its different parts, lead inevitably to the conclusion that it is not the composition of a single author, but has received large additions from a succession of writers, who wished to obtain currency and authority for their several opinions by introducing them into this great and venerated repository of national tradition.¹²

The Purāṇas are commonly said to be eighteen in number, in addition to certain inferior works of the same description called Upapurāṇas. For an account of these books and a summary of their contents, I must refer to the late Professor H. H. Wilson's introduction to his translation of the Vishṇu Purāṇa.¹³

In treating the several topics which are to be handled in this volume, I propose in each case to adduce, first, any texts bearing upon it which may be found in the hymns of the Rig-veda; next, those in the Brāhmaṇas and their appendages; and, lastly, those occurring in any of the different classes of works coming under the designation of Smṛiti. By this means we shall learn what conceptions or opinions were entertained on each subject by the oldest Indian authors, and what were the various modifications to which these ideas were subjected by their successors.

¹² On the Rāmāyana and Mahābhārata, see Professor Monier Williams's "Indian Epic Poetry," which contains a careful analysis of the leading narrative of each of the poems.

¹³ See also the same author's analyses of the contents of the Vishṇu, Vāyu, Agni, and Brāhma-vaivartha Purāṇas in the "Gleanings of Science," published in Calcutta, and those of the Brāhma and Pādma Purāṇas in the Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society, No. ix (1838) and No. x. (1839).

CHAPTER I.

MYTHICAL ACCOUNTS OF THE CREATION OF MAN, AND OF THE ORIGIN OF THE FOUR CASTES.

It will be seen from the different texts to be adduced in this chapter, that from a very early period the Indian writers have propounded a great variety of speculations regarding the origin of mankind, and of the classes or castes into which they found their own community divided. The most commonly received of these explanations is the fable which represents the Brâhmans, Kshattriyas, Vaiśyas, and Sûdras, to have been separately created from the head, the breast or arms, the thighs, and the feet of the Creator. Of this mythical account no trace is to be found in any of the hymns of the Rig-veda, except one, the Purusha Sûkta.

Although for reasons which will be presently stated, I esteem it probable that this hymn belongs to the most recent portion of the Rig-veda, it will be convenient to adduce and to discuss it first, along with certain other texts from the Brâhmaṇas, Itihâsas, and Purâṇas, which professedly treat of the origin of mankind and of caste, before we proceed to examine the older parts of the hymn-collection, with the view of ascertaining what opinion the authors of them appear to have entertained in regard to the earliest history of their race, and to the grounds of those relations which they found subsisting between the different classes of society contemporary with themselves.

SECT. I.—90th *Hymn of the 10th Book of the Rig-veda Sanhitâ, called Purusha Sûkta, or the hymn to Purusha.*

This celebrated hymn contains, as far as we know, the oldest extant passage which makes mention of the fourfold origin of the Hindu race.

In order to appreciate the character of this passage, we must consider it in connection with its context. I therefore quote the whole of the hymn:¹⁴

R. V. x. 90. 1. *Sahasra-*śīrshā Purushaḥ sahasrākshaḥ sahasra-pāt | sa bhūmim riśvato vṛitrā atyatishṭhad daśāngulam | 2. Purushaḥ eredaṁ sarrām yad bhūtaṁ yachcha bhūryam | utāmrītatraśyeśāno yad annenātirohati | 3. Etārān asya mahimā ato jyāyāmīścha Pūrushaḥ | pādo 'syā riśvā bhūtāni tripād asyāmrītām divi | 4. Tripād īrdhva ud ait Pūrushaḥ pādo 'sychābhavat punaḥ | tato riśvan् ryakrāmat sūśanānaśane abhi | 5. tasmād Virāl ajāyata Virājo adhi Pūrushaḥ | sa jāo aty arichyata paśchād bhūmim atho puraḥ | 6. Yat Pūrushena harishā devāḥ yajnam atanrata | rasanto asyāśūl ājyam grīshmaḥ idha-maḥ śarad hariḥ | 7. Tuñ yajnam barhishi praukshan Pūrushām jātam agrataḥ | tena devāḥ ayajanta sādhyaḥ rishayaś cha ye | 8. Tasmād yajnāt sarrahutaḥ sambhūritam pṛishadājyam | paśūn tāmś chakre rāyaryān āranyān grāmyāś cha ye | 9. Tasmād yajnāt sarrahutaḥ richaḥ sāmāni jajnire | chhandāmīsi jajnire tasmād yajus tasmād ajāyata | 10. Tasmād aśvā ajāyanta ye ke cha ubhayādatuḥ | gāvō ha jajnire tasmāj jātāḥ ajārayaḥ | 11. Yat Pūrushām vi adāduḥ katidhā vi akalpayan | mukham kim asya kau bāhū kā ūrū pādā uchyete | 12. Brāhmaṇo 'syā mukham āśid bāhū rājanyaḥ kṛitaḥ | ūrū taṭ asya yad raiṣyaḥ padbhyām śādro ajāyata | 13. chandramāḥ manaso jātaś chakshoh sūryo ajāyata | mukhād Indraś cha Agniś cha prāṇād Vāyur ajāyata | 14. Nābhyaḥ āśid antari-ksham śīrsho dyauḥ samavarttata | padbhyām bhūmir diśaḥ śrotrāt tathā lokān akalpayan | 15. Saptāsyāsan paridhayas triḥ sapta samidhaḥ kṛitaḥ | devāḥ yad yajnam tanvānāḥ abadhan Purusham paśum | 16. Yajuenā yajnām ayajanta devās tāni dharmāṇi prathā-

¹⁴ The Purusha Sūkta is also found in the Vājasaneyi Sanhitā of the White Yajur-veda (31. 1-16) and in the Atharva-veda (19. 6. 1 ff.) See Colebrooke's Miscellaneous Essays, i. 167 f., and note in p. 309 (or pp. 104, and 197, of Messrs. Williams and Norgate's edition); Burnouf's Bhāgavata Purāna, vol. i. Preface, pp. exxiii. ff.; Wilson's Preface to his translation of the Rigveda, vol. i. p. xliv.; Professor Roth's remarks in the Journal of the German Oriental Society, i. pp. 78 f.; Müller in Bunsen's Philosophy of Univ. History, vol. i. p. 344; Müller's Anc. Sank. Lit., pp. 570 f.; Professor Weber's translation in Lüdische Studien ix. p. 5; and my own translation, notes and remarks in the Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society for 1865, pp. 353 ff., and for 1866, pp. 282 f.

māni āsan | te ha nākam mākimānah sachanta yatra pūrve sādh-yāh santi devāh |

“1. Purusha has a thousand heads,¹⁵ a thousand eyes, a thousand feet. On every side enclosing¹⁶ the earth, he overpassed¹⁷ (it) by a space of ten fingers. 2. Purusha himself is this whole (universe), whatever has been and whatever shall be. He is also the lord of immortality, since (or, when) by food he expands.¹⁸ 3. Such is his greatness, and Purusha is superior to this. All existences are a quarter of him; and three-fourths of him are that which is immortal in the sky.¹⁹ 4.

With three quarters Purusha mounted upwards. A quarter of him was again produced here. He was then diffused everywhere over things which eat and things which do not eat. 5. From him was born Virāj, and from Virāj, Purusha.²⁰ When born, he extended beyond the earth, both behind and before. 6. When the gods performed a sacrifice with Purusha as the oblation, the spring was its butter, the summer its fuel, and the autumn its (accompanying) offering. 7. This victim, Purusha, born in the beginning, they immolated on

¹⁵ The Atharva-veda (vix. 6, 1) reads *sahasra-bāhuḥ*, “having a thousand arms,” the transcriber, perhaps, taking the verse literally, and considering that a being in human form, if he had a thousand eyes and a thousand feet, ought only to have five hundred heads, and not a thousand as in the text of the Rig-veda.

¹⁶ For *vrītrā* in the R. V. the Vājasaneyi Sanhitā, 31. 1, reads *sprītrā*, which seems to mean nearly the same.

¹⁷ The word is *atyatishṭhat*. Compare the Sātapatha Brāhmaṇa, xiii. 6, 1, 1, and *atishṭhātūnah* in S'. P. B. iv. 5, 4, 1, 2. Professor Weber renders *atyatishṭhat* “occupies” (Indische Studien, ix. 5).

¹⁸ The sense of this is obscure. Instead of *yad annenātirohati*, the A. V. reads *yad anyenābharat saha*, (“that which,” or, “since he) was with another.”

¹⁹ Compare A. V. x. 8, 7: *ardhena viśvam bhuvanam jyotiḥ yad asya ardham kṛat tad babbura*: “with the half he produced the whole world; what became of the (other) half of him?” See also ibid. v. 13.

²⁰ This sentence is illustrated by R. V. x. 72, 5, where it is said, *Aditer Daksho
ojayata Dakshād u Aditiḥ pari* | “Aditi was born from Daksha and Daksha from Aditi”—a text on which Yāska remarks (Nirukta, xi. 23): *tat katham upapadyeta | samāna-janmīnau syātām iti | api vā deva-dharmena itaretara-janmīnau syātām itaretara-prakṛitī |* “how can this be possible? They may have had a common birth; or, conformably with their nature as deities, they may have been produced from one another, and possess the properties of one another.” Compare A. V. 13. 4. 29 ff., where Indra is said to have been produced from a great many other gods, or entities, and they reciprocally from him. In regard to Virāj, compare the notes on the verse before us in my article on the “Progress of the Vedic religion,” etc., in the Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society for 1865, p. 354.

the sacrificial grass. With him the gods, the Sādhyas,²¹ and the rishis sacrificed. 8. From that universal sacrifice were provided curds and butter. It formed those aerial²² (creatures) and animals both wild and tame. 9. From that universal sacrifice sprang the rich and sāman verses, the metres, and the yajush. 10. From it sprang horses, and all animals with two rows of teeth; kine sprang from it; from it goats and sheep. 11. When (the gods) divided Purusha, into how many parts did they cut him up? what was his mouth? what arms (had he)? what (two objects) are said (to have been) his thighs and feet? - 12. The Brāhmaṇa was his mouth;²³ the Rājanya was made his arms; the being (called) the Vaisya, he was his thighs;²⁴ the Sūdra sprang from his feet. 13. The moon sprang from his soul (*manas*), the sun from his eye, Indra and Agni from his mouth, and Vāyu from his breath.²⁵ 14. From his navel arose the air, from his head the sky, from his feet the earth, from his ear the (four) quarters: in this manner (the gods) formed the worlds. 15. When the gods, performing sacrifice, bound Purusha as a victim, there were seven sticks (stuck up) for it

²¹ See on the Sādhyas, Professor Weber's note, Ind. St. ix. 6 f., and the Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society for 1866, p. 395, note.

²² See, however, Vāj. Sanh. xiv. 30, to be quoted below.

²³ Compare the Kausītakī Brāhmaṇa Upānishaḍ, ii. 9: *atha paurnamāśyām purastāch chandramasam dṛiṣyamānam upatishṭheta etayā eva āvritā "somo rājasi vichakṣheṇo pancha mukho'si prajūpatiḥ | brāhmaṇas te ekam mukham | tena mukhena rājno 'tsi | tena mukhena mām annādām kuru | rājā te ekam mukham | tena mukhena vījo 'tsi | tena mukhena mām annādām kuru | śyenas te ekam mukham" ityādi |* which is thus translated by Mr. Cowell: "Next on the day of the full moon let him in this same way adore the moon when it is seen in front of him (saying), 'thou art Soma, the brilliant, the wise, the five-mouthed, the lord of creatures. The Brāhmaṇa is one mouth of thine, with that mouth thou eatest kings, with that mouth make me to eat food. The king is one mouth of thine, with that mouth thou eatest common men, with that mouth make me to eat food. The hawk is one mouth of thine,' etc. The fourth mouth is fire, and the fifth is in the moon itself. I should prefer to render the words *somo rājā'si*, "thou art *king Soma*,"—"*king*" being a frequent designation of this god in the Brāhmaṇas. See also M. Bh. iii. 12,962, where Vishnu is introduced as saying in the same mystical way: *Brahma vaktram bhujau kshattram urū me saṁsthitāḥ vis'ah | pūdau śūdrāḥ bhavantīme vikramena kramena cha |* "The Brāhmaṇa is my mouth; the Kshattra is my arms; the Viśas are my thighs; these Sūdras with their vigour and rapidity are my feet."

²⁴ Instead of *urū*, "thighs," the Atharva-veda, xix. 6, 6, reads *madhyam*, "middle."

²⁵ The Vāj. S. xxxi. 13, has a different and singular reading of the last half verse: *śrotrād vāyu'cha prāṇas cha mukhād agnir ajīyata |* "From his ear came Vāyu and (breath) and from his mouth Agni."

(around the fire), and thrice seven pieces of fuel were made. 16. With sacrifice the gods performed the sacrifice. These were the earliest rites. These great powers have sought the sky, where are the former Sādhyas, gods.”²⁶

I have above (p. 7) intimated an opinion that this hymn does not belong to the most ancient portion of the Rig-veda. This view is, however, controverted by Dr. Haug, who, in his tract on “the origin of Brāhmanism” (published at Poona in 1863), p. 5, writes as follows : “The few scholars who have been engaged in the study of the Vedas unanimously regard this hymn as a very late production of Vedic poetry; but there is no sufficient evidence to prove that. On the contrary, reasons might be adduced to shew that it is even old. The mystical character of the hymn is no proof at all of its late origin. Such allegorical hymns are to be met with in every book of the collection of the mantras, which goes by the name of Rig-veda samhitā. The Rishis, who were the authors of these hymns, delighted in such speculations. They chiefly were suggested to them by the sacrificial rites, which they daily were performing. According to the position which is assigned to it in the Yajur-veda (where it is found among the formulas referring to the human sacrifice), the hymn appears to have been used at the human sacrifices. That, at the earliest period of the Vedic time, human sacrifices were quite common with the Brahmans, can be proved beyond any doubt. But the more eminent and distinguished among their leaders soon abandoned the practice as revolting to human feelings. The form of the sacrifice, however, seems to have been kept for a long time; for the ritual required at that occasion is actually in the Yajur-veda; but they only tied men of different castes and classes to the sacrificial posts, and released them afterwards, sacrificing animals instead of them.”

If it could be satisfactorily shewn that this hymn, in the same form as we now possess it, existed contemporaneously with the barbarous practice of human sacrifices which Dr. Haug believes to have at one time prevailed in India, we should, no doubt, have in this circumstance a strong proof of its antiquity. But if it was merely adopted as a part of the ceremonial at a later period, when the immolation of human

²⁶ This verse occurs also in R. V. i. 164. 50, and is quoted in Nirukta, xii. 14. See the Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society for 1866, p. 395, note, already referred to.

beings had ceased to be otherwise than formal and nominal, and animals were substituted as the actual victims, the evidence of its remote antiquity is greatly weakened.

If we now compare the Purusha Sūkta with the two hymns (162 and 163) of the first Mandala of the Rig-veda, it will, I think, be apparent that the first is not adapted to be used at a literal human sacrifice in the same manner as the last two are to be employed at the immolation of a horse. There are, no doubt, some mystical passages in the second of these two hymns, as in verse 3, where the horse is identified with Yama, Āditya, and Trita; and "in the last section of the Taittirīya Yajur-veda the various parts of the horse's body are described as divisions of time and portions of the universe: 'morning is his head; the sun his eye; the air his breath; the moon his ear,'" etc. (Colebrooke's Essays, i. 62).²⁷ But the persons who officiate at the sacrifice, as referred to in these hymns, are ordinary priests of the ancient Indian ritual,—the hotṛi, adhvaryu, āvayaj, etc. (i. 162, 5); and details are given of the actual slaughter of the animal (i. 162, 11). The Purusha Sūkta, however does not contain the same indications of the literal immolation of a human victim. In it the sacrifice is not offered to the gods, but by the gods (verses 6, 7, 15, 16); no human priests are mentioned; the division of the victim (v. 11) must be regarded, like its slaughter (v. 7), as the work of the deities only. And the Purusha mentioned in the hymn could not well have been regarded as an ordinary man, as he is identified with the universe (v. 2), and he himself, or his immolation, is represented as the source of the creation (vv. 8, 10, 13, 14), and of the Vedas (v. 9).

As compared with by far the largest part of the hymns of the Rig-veda, the Purusha Sūkta has every character of modernness both in its diction and ideas. I have already observed that the hymns which we find in this collection are of very different periods. This, I believe, is not disputed.²⁸ The authors themselves, as we have seen, speak of newer and older hymns. So many as a thousand compositions of this description could scarcely have been produced within a very short space of time, and there is no reason to suppose that the literary activity of the ancient Hindus

²⁷ Compare the commencement of the Brāhmaṇa Upanishad.

²⁸ See Dr. Haug's own remarks (quoted above, p. 4) on the period when the hymns were composed.

was confined to the period immediately preceding the collection of the hymns. But if we are to recognize any difference of age, what hymns can we more reasonably suppose to be the oldest than those which are at once archaic in language and style, and naive and simple in the character of their conceptions? and, on the other hand, what compositions can more properly be set down as the most recent than those which manifest an advance in speculative ideas, while their language approaches to the modern Sanskrit? These latter conditions seem to be fulfilled in the Purusha Sūkta, as well as in hymns x. 71 and 72, x. 81 and 82, x. 121, and x. 129.

On this subject Mr. Colebrooke states his opinion as follows (*Miscellaneous Essays* i. 309, note): "That remarkable hymn (the Purusha Sūkta) is in language, metre, and style, very different from the rest of the prayers with which it is associated. It has a decidedly more modern tone; and must have been composed after the Sanscrit language had been refined, and its grammar and rhythm perfected. The internal evidence which it furnishes serves to demonstrate the important fact that the compilation of the Vedas, in their present arrangement, took place after the Sanscrit tongue had advanced from the rustic and irregular dialect in which the multitude of hymns and prayers of the Veda was composed, to the polished and sonorous language in which the mythological poems, sacred and prophane (*purāṇas* and *cāryas*), have been written."

Professor Max Müller expresses himself in a similar sense (*Anc. Sansk. Lit.*, p. 570 f.): "There can be little doubt, for instance, that the 90th hymn of the 10th book is modern both in its character and in its diction. It is full of allusions to the sacrificial ceremonials, it uses technical philosophical terms, it mentions the three seasons in the order of *Vasantā*, spring; *Grīshma*, summer; and *S'arad*, autumn; it contains the only passage in the Rig-veda where the four castes are enumerated. The evidence of language for the modern date of this composition is equally strong. *Grīshma*, for instance, the name for the hot season, does not occur in any other hymn of the Rig-veda; and *Vasantā* also, the name of spring, does not belong to the earliest vocabulary of the Vedic poets. It occurs but once more in the Rig-veda (x. 161. 4), in a passage where the three seasons are mentioned in the order of *S'arad*, autumn; *Hemanta*, winter; and *Vasantā*, spring."

Professor Weber (*Indische Studien*, ix. 3) concurs in this view. He observes: "That the Purusha Sūkta, considered as a hymn of the Rig-veda, is among the latest portions of that collection, is clearly perceptible from its contents. The fact that the Sāma-sanhitā has not adopted any verse from it, is not without importance (compare what I have remarked in my Academical Prelections, p. 63). The Naigeya school, indeed, appears (although it is not quite certain),²⁹ to have extracted the first five verses in the seventh prapāṭhaka of the first Archika, which is peculiar to it."

We shall see in the following chapter that the word *brāhmaṇa* occurs but rarely in the Rig-veda Sanhitā, while *brahman*, "a priest," from which the former is derived, is of constant occurrence. From this circumstance also, it may be reasonably concluded that the hymns in which the derivative occurs are among the latest. The same remark may be made of the word *vaiśya*, as compared with *viś*.³⁰

Mr. Colebrooke's opinion of the character of the Purusha Sūkta is given in the following passage of his "Miscellaneous Essays" (vol. i. p. 161, note; or p. 105 of Williams & Norgate's ed. of 1858); "I think it unnecessary to quote from the commentary the explanation of this curious passage of the Vedas as it is there given, because it does not really elucidate the sense; the allegory is for the most part sufficiently obvious.

In his tract on "on the origin of Brahmanism," p. 4, Dr. Haug thus remarks on verses 11 and 12: "Now, according to this passage, which is the most ancient and authoritative we have on the origin of Brahmanism, and caste in general, the Brahman has not come from the mouth of this primary being, the Purusha, but the mouth of the latter became the Brahmanical caste, that is to say, was transformed into it. The passage has, no doubt, an allegorical sense. Mouth is the seat of speech. The allegory thus points out that the Brahmins are teachers and instructors of mankind. The arms are the seat of strength. If the two

²⁹ See on this subject Weber's foot-note, p. 3.

³⁰ Professor Aufrecht informs me that the word *vaiśya* does not occur in any other hymn of the Rig-veda but the Purusha Sūkta; only once in the Atharva-veda, v. 17, 9; and not at all in the Vāj. Sanh., except in the Purusha Sūkta. The same scholar remarks, as another proof of the comparatively late date of the Purusha Sūkta, that it is the only hymn which refers to the four different kinds of Vedic compositions *rīch*, *samīn*, *chhandas*, and *yajush*.

arms of the Purusha are said to have been made a Kshattriya (warrior), that means, then, that the Kshattriyas have to carry arms to defend the empire. That the thighs of the Purusha were transformed into the Vaiśya means that, as the lower parts of the body are the principal repository of food taken, the Vaiśya caste is destined to provide food for the others. The creation of the Shudra from the feet of the Purusha, indicates that he is destined to be a servant to the others, just as the foot serves the other parts of the body as a firm support."

But whether the writer of the hymn intended it to be understood allegorically or not, it conveys no distinct idea of the manner in which he supposed the four castes to have originated. It is, indeed, said that the Sūdra sprang from Purusha's feet; but as regards the three superior castes and the members with which they are respectively connected, it is not quite clear which (*i.e.*, the castes or the members) are to be taken as the subjects and which as the predicates, and consequently, whether we are to suppose verse 12 to declare that the three castes were the three members, or, conversely, that the three members were, or became, the three castes.

But whatever may be the sense of the passage, it is impossible to receive it as enunciating any fixed doctrine of the writers of what is called the Vedic age in regard to the origin of the four castes; since we find, if not in the mantras or hymns, at least in the Brāhmaṇas (which, as we have seen in page 2, are esteemed by orthodox Indian writers as being equally with the hymns a part of the Veda), not only (1) texts which agree with the Purusha Sūkta, but also (2) various other and discrepant accounts of the manner in which these classes were separately formed, as well as (3) third a class of narratives of the creation, in which the production of the human race is described without allusion to any primordial distinction of castes.

To the first of these classes (viz., that of texts which coincide more or less exactly with the Purusha Sūkta) belongs the following passage from the Taittirīya Sanhitā.

SECT. II.—*Quotation from the Taittirīya Sanhitā, vii. 1. 1. 4 ff.*

*Prajāpatir akāmayata “prajāyeya” iti | sa mukhatas trīṛitam nir-
āmīmita | tam Agnir devatā ‘nrasūyata gāyatrī ohlandro rathantaram*

sāma brāhmaṇo manushyāñām ajah paśūnām | tasmāt te mukhyāḥ mukhato
 hy asrījyanta | uraso bāhubhyām panchadaśam niramimīta | tam Indro
 deratā 'nrasrījyata trishṭup chhando bṛihat sāma rājanya manushyāñām
 ariḥ paśūnām | tasmāt te vīryāranto vīryād hy asrījyanta | madhy-
 atah saptadaśām niramimīta | tam Viśvederūḥ devatāḥ anrasrījyanta
 jagatī chhando vairūpam sāma vaiśyo manushyāñām gāvah paśūnām
 | tasmāt te ādyā annadhānād hy asrījyanta | tasmād bhūyāñso 'nye-
 bhyaḥ | bhūyishṭhāḥ hi devatāḥ anrasrījyanta | pattaḥ ekaviṁśam
 niramimīta | tam anushṭup chhando 'nrasrījyata vairājam sāma śudro
 manushyāñām aśrah paśūnām | tasmāt tau bhūta-saṅkrāmināv aśraś
 cha śudraś cha | tasmāt śudro yajne 'navakl̄ipto na hi devatāḥ an-
 rasrījyanta | tasmāt pādāv upaśīrataḥ | patto hy asrījyetām |
 “Prajāpati desired, ‘may I propagate.’ He formed the Trivṛit
 (*stoma*) from his mouth. After it were produced the deity Agni,
 the metre Gāyatrī, the Sāman (called) Rathantara, of men the Brā-
 man, of beasts the goats. Hence they are the chief (mukhyāḥ),
 because they were created from the mouth (mukhataḥ). From (his)
 breast, from (his) arms, he formed the Panchadaśa (*stoma*). After
 it were created the god Indra, the Trishṭubh metre, the Sāman
 (called) Bṛihat, of men the Rājanya, of beasts the sheep. Hence
 they are vigorous, because they were created from vigour. From
 (his) middle he formed the Saptadaśa (*stoma*). After it were created
 the gods (called) the Viśvedevas, the Jagatī metre, the Sāman called
 the Vairūpa, of men the Vaiśya, of beasts kine. Hence they are to
 be eaten, because they were created from the receptacle of food.
 Wherefore they are more numerous than others, for the most numerous
 deities were created after (the Saptadaśa). From his foot he formed
 the Ekaviṁśa (*stoma*). After it were created the Anushṭubh metre, the
 Sāman called Vairāja, of men the Śūdra, of beasts the horse. Hence
 these two, both the horse and the Śūdra, are transporters of (other)
 creatures. Hence (too) the Śūdra is incapacitated for sacrifice, because
 no deities were created after (the Ekaviṁśa). Hence (too) these two
 subsist by their feet, for they were created from the foot.”

SECT. III.—Citations from the Sātapatha Brāhmaṇa, the Taittirīya Brāhmaṇa, the Vājasaneyi Sanhitā, and the Atharva-veda.

The following texts belong to the second class—*i.e.*, that of those which recognize a distinct origination of the castes, but describe their creation differently from the Purusha Sūkta :

S. P. Br. ii. 1, 4, 11 ff.—“*Bhūr*” iti vai Prajāpatir imām ajanayata “*bhurah*” ity antariksham “*svar*” iti dicam | etāvad rai idam sarrām yārad ime lokāḥ | sarvena eva ādhīyate | “*bhūr*” iti rai Prajāpatir brahma ajanayata “*bhurah*” iti kshattram “*svar*” iti viśam | etāvad rai idam sarrām yārad brahma kshattram viś | sarvena eva ādhīyate | “*bhūr*” iti rai Prajāpatir ātmānam ajanayata “*bhurah*” iti prajān “*svar*” iti paśūn | etāvad rai idam sarrām yārad ātmā prajāḥ paśarāḥ | sarvena eva ādhīyate |

“(Uttering) ‘bhūh,’ Prajāpati generated this earth. (Uttering) ‘bhuvaḥ,’ he generated the air, and (uttering) ‘svaḥ,’ he generated the sky. This universe is co-extensive with these worlds. (The fire) is placed with the whole. Saying ‘bhūh,’ Prajāpati generated the Brahman ; (saying) ‘bhuvaḥ,’ he generated the Kshattra ; (and saying) ‘svaḥ,’ he generated the Viś. All this world is so much as the Brahman, Kshattra, and Viś. The fire is placed with the whole. (Saying) ‘bhūh,’ Prajāpati generated himself ; (saying) ‘bhuvaḥ’ he generated offspring ; (saying) ‘svaḥ,’ he generated animals. This world is so much as self, offspring, and animals. (The fire) is placed with the whole.”

Taitt. Br. iii. 12, 9, 2—*Sarrām hedam brahmaṇā haiva srishṭam | rigbhyo jātam vaiśyam varṇam āhuḥ | yajurvedam kshattriyasyāhur yonim | sāmavedo brāhmaṇānām prasūtiḥ | pūrve pūrvebhyo vacha etad učuḥ |*

“This entire (universe) has been created by Brahma. Men say that the Vaiśya class was produced from Ṛch-verses. They say that the Yujur-veda is the womb from which the Kshatriya was born. The Sāma-veda is the source from which the Brāhmans sprang. This word the ancients declared to the ancients.”

To complete his account of the derivation of the castes from the

Vedas, the author had only to add that the Sūdras had sprung from the Atharvāngirases (the Atharva-veda); but he perhaps considered that to assign such an origin to the servile order would have been to do it too great an honour.

Vājasaneyā Sanhitā, xiv. 28 ff. (= Taittirīya Sanhitā, iv. 3, 10, 1).—
*ekayā asturata prajūḥ adhīyanta Prajāpatir adhipatir āśit | tisrībhīr asturata brahma asrīyata Brahmanaspatir adhipatir āśit | pañchabbhir asturata bhūtāny asrīyanta Bhūtanāmpatir adhipatir āśit | saptabbhir asturata sapta ṛishayo 'sriyyanta Dhātū adhipatir āśit | navabbhir asturata pitaro 'sriyyanta Aditir adhipatny āśit | ekādaśabbhir asturata ritaro 'sriyyanta Ārtavāḥ adhipatayah āśan | trayodaśabbhir asturata māsā asrīyanta samvatsaro 'dhipatir āśit | pañchadaśabbhir asturata kshattram asrīyata Indro 'adhipatir āśit | saptadaśabbhir asturata paśavo 'sriyyanta Brīhaspatir adhipatir āśit | navadaśabbhir asturata śūdrāryāv asrīyetām chorātre adhipatnū āstām | ekavīṁśatyā asturata ekaśaphāḥ paśaro 'sriyyanta Varuno 'dhipatir āśit | trayorīṁśatyā asturata kshudrāḥ paśaro 'sriyyanta Pūshā adhipatir āśit | panchaviṁśatyā asturata aranyaḥ paśavo 'sriyyanta Vāyur adhipatir āśit | saptaviṁśatyā asturata dyavā-
prithivī ryaītām | Vasavo Rudrā Adityāḥ anuryāyan | te eva adhipatayah āśan | navaviṁśatyā asturata vanaspatayo 'sriyyanta Somo 'dhipatir āśit | ekatriṁśatā asturata prajā asrīyanta yarāś cha ayarāś cha adhipatayah āśan | trayastrīṁśatā asturata bhūtāny aśāmyan Prajāpatih Parameshṭih adhipatir āśit |*

"He lauded with one. Living beings were formed: Prajāpati was the ruler. He lauded with three: the Brahman (Brāhmaṇa) was created: Brahmanaspati was the ruler. He lauded with five: existing things were created: Bhūtanāmpati was the ruler. He lauded with seven: the seven rishis were created: Dhātṛi was the ruler. He lauded with nine: the Fathers were created: Aditi was the ruler. He lauded with eleven: the seasons were created: the Ārtavas were the rulers. He lauded with thirteen: the months were created: the year was the ruler. He lauded with fifteen: the Kshatra (the Kshattriya) was created: Indra was the ruler. He lauded with seventeen: animals were created: Brīhaspati was the ruler. He lauded with nineteen: the Sūdra and the Arya (Vaiśya) were created: day and night were the rulers. He lauded with twenty-one: animals with undivided hoofs were created: Varuna was the ruler. He lauded with twenty-three:

small animals were created : Pūshan was the ruler. He lauded with twenty-five : wild animals were created : Vāyu was the ruler (compare R.V. x. 90, 8). He lauded with twenty-seven : heaven and earth separated : Vasus, Rudras, and Ādityas separated after them : they were the rulers. He lauded with twenty-nine : trees were created : Soma was the ruler. He lauded with thirty-one : living beings were created : The first and second halves of the month²¹ were the rulers. He lauded with thirty-one : existing things were tranquillized : Prajāpati Parameshṭhin was the ruler.” This passage is explained in the Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa viii. 4, 3, 1 ff.

The following text is of a somewhat mystical description ; but appears to intimate a distinction in nature between the different castes corresponding to that of the gods with whom they are associated :

S. P. Br. xiv. 4, 2, 23 (= Bṛihadāraṇyaka Upanishad, i. 4, 11 ff. (p. 235).—*Brahma vai idam agre asid ekam era*¹ | *tad ekaṁ san na vyabharat* | | *tat śreyo rūpam aty asrijata kshattram yāny etāni deratrā kshattrāni Indro Varuṇah Somo Rudrah Parjanyo Yamo Mrityur Isānah iti* | *tasmāt kshattrat param nāsti* | *tasmād brāhmaṇah kshattriyād adhastād upāste rājasūye kshattre eva tad yaśo dadhāti* | *sā eshā kshattrasya yonir yad brahma* | *tasmād yadyapi rājā paramatām gachhati brahma era antataḥ upaniśrayati svām yonim* | *yāh u ha enān hinasti svām sa yonim richhati* | *sa pāpiyān bharati yathā śreyānsam hiṁsitvā* | 24. *Sa na era vyabharat* | *sa viśam asrijata yāny etāni deva-jātāni gaṇaśāḥ ākhyāyante vasavo rudrāḥ ādityāḥ viśvedevāḥ marutaḥ iti* | 25. *Sa na era vyabharat* | *sa śaudram varṇam asrijata pūshanam* | *iyaṁ vai pūshā iyaṁ hi idam sarvaṁ pushyati yad idān kincha* | 26. *Sa na era vyabharat* | *tat śreyo rūpam aty asrijata dharmam* | *tad etat kshattrasya kshattram yad dharmāḥ* | *tasmād dharmāt paraṁ nāsti* | *atho abalyān balīyāṁśān asāṁśate dharmena yathā rājnā evam* | *yo vai sa dharmāḥ satyāṁ vai tat* | *tasmāt satyāṁ vadantam āhur “dharmam vadati” iti* | *dharmaṁ vā*

²¹ The Taittiriya Sanhitā reads *yāvāḥ* and *ayāvāḥ* (instead of *yāvāḥ* and *ayāvāḥ* as in the Vājasaneyi Sanhitā) and in another passage, v. 3, 4, 5 (as I learn from Prof. Aufrecht), explains these terms to mean respectively months and half months (*nāśī* *vai yāvāḥ ardhānāśāḥ ayāvāḥ*), whilst the commentator on the V. S. understands them to mean the first and second halves of the month, in accordance with the S.P. B. viii. 4, 3, 18, and viii. 4, 2, 11 (*pūrvapakṣā vai yāvāḥ aparapakṣa ayāvāḥ* | *te hi idān sarvān yavata chāyuvata cha*) | Prof. Aufrecht also points out that *yāva* is explained in Kūtyayana’s S’rauta Sūtras, iv. 11, 8, as equivalent to *yavamayam apūpam*, “a cake of barley.”

vadantam "satyam vadati" iti | etad hy eva etad ubhayam bhavati |
 27. *Tad etad brahma kshattram vit̄ śudraḥ | tad Agnīnā eva deveshu
 brahmābhārad brāhmaṇo manushyeshu kshattriyena kshattrijo vaiśya
 vaiśyah śudreṇa śudraḥ | tasmād Agnāv eva deveshu lokam ichhante
 brāhmaṇe manushyeshu | etābhyām hi rūpabhyām brahma abhavat |*

23. "Brahma (here, according to the commentator, existing in the form of Agni, and representing the Brāhmaṇa caste³²) was formerly this (universe), one only. Being one, it did not develop. It energetically created an excellent form, the Kshattra, viz., those among the gods

who are powers (*kshattrāṇi*), Indra, Varuṇa, Soma, Rudra, Parjanya, Yama, Mṛityu, Iśāna. Hence nothing is superior to the Kshattra. Therefore the Brāhmaṇa sits below the Kshatriya at the rājasūya-sacrifice; he confers that glory on the Kshattra (the royal power).³³ This, the Brahma, is the source of the Kshattra. Hence, although the king attains supremacy, he at the end resorts to the Brahma as his source.

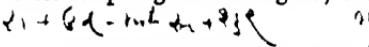
Whoever destroys him (the Brāhmaṇa) destroys his own source. He becomes most miserable, as one who has injured a superior. 24. He did not develop. He created the Viś—viz., those classes of gods who are designated by troops, Vasus, Rudras, Ādityas, Viśvedevas, Maruts.

25. He did not develop. He created the Śudra class, Pūshan. This earth is Pūshan: for she nourishes all that exists. 26. He did not develop. He energetically created an excellent form, Justice (*Dharma*). This is the ruler (*kshattra*) of the ruler (*kshattra*), namely, Justice. Hence nothing is superior to justice. Therefore the weaker seeks (to overcome) the stronger by justice, as by a king. This justice is truth. In consequence they say of a man who speaks truth, 'he speaks

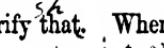
³² *Atra yad ātma-iabdenoktaṁ srashṭri Brahma tad Agnīn śrīśītā agre Agni-rū-pāpannam Brāhmaṇa-jāty-abhimūnavad asmin vākye Brahma-sabdenābhidhīyate |*

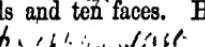
³³ This rendering of the last few words is suggested by Professor Aufrecht. The commentators understand them to mean that the Brāhmaṇas give the king their own glory (that of being a Brāhmaṇa): and they refer to a formula by which at the rājasūya-sacrifice the king, after addressing the priest as Brāhmaṇa, is addressed in return with the word "Thou, king, art a Brāhmaṇa" (*tvaṁ rōjan brahmāśi*), etc. See the Taittirīya Sanhitā i. 8, 16, 1, where the commentator remarks. "As in common life domestic priests and others, sitting below a king seated on his throne after his return from conquering a foreign territory, address him with many benedictions and eulogies, so here too service is presented. By this benedictory service the power of cursing and showing kindness existing in the Brāhmaṇas is transferred to the king." Reference is then made to the passage before us, as noticing this custom.

justice ;' or of a man who is uttering justice, 'he speaks truth.' For this is both of these. 27. This is the Brahma, Kshattra, Viś, and Sūdra. Through Agni it became Brahma among the gods, the Brāhmaṇa among men, through the (divine) Kshattriya a (human) Kshattriya, through the (divine) Vaiśya a (human) Vaiśya, through the (divine) Sūdra a (human) Sūdra. Wherefore it is in Agni among the gods and in a Brāhmaṇa among men, that they seek after an abode."

Taittirīya Brāhmaṇa, i. 2, 6, 7.—*Dairyo vai varṇo brāhmaṇah | asuryyo sūdrāḥ.* "The Brāhmaṇa caste is sprung from the gods; the Sūdra from the Asuras." 

Taittirīya Brāhmaṇa, iii. 2, 3, 9.—*Kāmam eva dāru-pātreṇa duhyāt | sūdrāḥ eva na duhyāt | asato rai esha sambhūto yat sūdrāḥ | ahavir eva tad ity āhur yat sūdro dogdhi iti | agnihotraṁ eva na duhyāt sūdrāḥ | tad hi na utpunanti | yadā khalu rai pavitram atyeti atha tad harir iti |*

him at his will milk out with a wooden dish. But let not a milk it out. For this Sūdra has sprung from non-existence. They say that that which a Sūdra milks out is no oblation. Let not a Sūdra milk out the Agnihotra. For they do not purify that. When that passes beyond the filter, then it is an oblation." 

Atharva-veda, iv. 6, 1.—*Brāhmaṇo jajne prathamo daśāśirsho dasāśyah | sa somam prathamah papau sa chakārārasam visham |* "The Brāhmaṇa was born the first, with ten heads and ten faces. He first drank the soma; he made poison powerless." 

As the description (which is, perhaps, a fragment of a longer account), stops short here, we are left in the dark as to the author's ideas about the creation of the other castes. It would have interested us to know how many heads and faces he would have assigned to the other three castes. The student of Indian poetry is aware that the giant Rāvana is represented in the Rāmāyaṇa both as a Brāhmaṇa and as having ten heads.

As implying a separate origination of the Rājanya caste, the following text also may find a place here:

Taittirīya Sanhitā, ii. 4, 13, 1.—*Devā rai rājanyāj jāyamānād abibhayuh | tam antar eva santaṁ dāmnā 'parumbhan | sa vai esho 'pobdho jāyate yad rājanyo | yad vai esho 'napobdho jāyeta vrītrān ghaṁś chareti | yaṁ kūmayeta rājanyam "anapobdho jāyeta vrītrān ghaṁś chared" iti tasmai etam aindrā-bürhaspatyaṁ charuṁ nirvapet | aindro rai rājanyo*

brahma Brihaspatih | brahmanā eva enaṁ dāmno 'pombhanād muñchati | hirañmayañ dāma dakshiñā sākshād eva enaṁ dañno 'pombhanād muñchati | “The gods were afraid of the Rājanya when he was in the womb. They bound him with bonds when he was in the womb. Consequently this Rājanya is born bound. If he were born unbound he would go on slaying his enemies. In regard to whatever Rājanya any one desires that he should be born unbound, and should go on slaying his enemies, let him offer for him this Aindra-Bārhaspatya oblation. A Rājanya has the character of Indra, and a Brahman is Brihaspati. It is through the Brahman that anyone releases the Rājanya from his bond. The golden bond, a gift, manifestly releases from the bond that fetters him.”

In the following text of the Atharva-veda, xv. 8, 1, a new account is given of the origin of the Rājanyas :

So 'rajyata tato rājano 'jāyata |

“He (the Vrātya) became filled with passion : thence sprang the Rājanya.”

And in the following paragraph (A. V. xv. 9, 1 ff) we have the same origin ascribed to the Brāhman also :

Tad yasya evaṁ vidvān vrātyo rājno 'tithir grihān āgachhet śreyāñsam enam ātmāno mānayet | tathā kshattrāya nāvriśchate tathā rāshṭrāya nāvriśchate | ato vai brahma cha kshattraṁ cha udatishṭhatām | te abrūtām “kam praviśāra” iti |

“Let the king to whose house the Vrātya who knows this, comes as a guest, cause him to be respected as superior to himself. So doing he does no injury to his royal rank, or to his realm. From him arose the Brahman (Brāhman) and the Kshattra (Kshatriya). They said, ‘Into whom shall we enter, etc.’”

SECT. IV.—*Further Quotations from the Taittiriya Brāhmaṇa, Sanhitā, and Āranyaka, and from the Satapatha Brāhmaṇa.*

The following passages belong to the third of the classes above adverted to, as in the descriptions they give of the creation, while they refer to the formation of men, they are silent on the subject of any separate origination of castes :

Taittirīya Brāhmaṇa, ii. 3, 8, 1.—*Prajāpatir akūmayata “prajāyeya” iti | sa tapo ’tapyata | so ’ntarvūn abhavat | sa haritah śyāvo ’bhavat | tasmāt etrī antarvatnī harinī satī śyāvū bhavati | sa vijāyamāno garbhēna atāmyat | sa tāntah kṛishṇa-śyāvo ’bhavat | tasmāt tāntah kṛishṇah śyāvo bhavati | tasya asur eva ajīvat | 2. Tena asunā asurān asrijata | tad asurāñam asuratvaṁ | ya evam asurāñam asuratvaṁ veda asunān eva bhavati | na enam asur jahāti | so ’surān śrīshṭvā pitū iva amanyata | tad anu pitṛīn asrijata | tat pitṛīnām pitṛitvam | ya evam pitṛīnām pitṛitvam veda pitū iva eva svānām bhavati (3) yanty asya pitaro havam | sa pitṛīn śrīshṭvā ‘manasyat | tad anu manushyān asrijata | tad manushyānām manushyatvam | yaḥ evam manushyānām manushyatvāṁ veda manasvī eva bhavati na enam manur jahāti | tasmai manushyān sasri-jānaya divā devatrā abhavat | tad anu devān asrijata | tad devānām devatvam | ya evam devānām devatvāṁ veda divā ha era asya devatrā bharati | tāni rai etāni chatvāri ambhāñsi devāḥ manushyāḥ pitaro ‘surāḥ | teshu sarveshu ambo nabhaḥ ira bharati |*

“Prajāpati desired, ‘may I propagate.’ He practised austerity. He became pregnant. He became yellow-brown.³⁴ Hence a woman when pregnant, being yellow, becomes brown. Being pregnant with a foetus, he became exhausted. Being exhausted, he became blackish-brown.³⁵ Hence an exhausted person becomes blackish-brown. His breath became alive. 2. With that breath (*asu*) he created Asuras. Therein consists the Asura-nature of Asuras. He who thus knows this Asura-nature of Asuras becomes a man possessing breath. Breath does not forsake him. Having created the Asuras, he regarded himself as a father. After that he created the Fathers (Pitrīs). That constitutes the fatherhood of the Fathers. He who thus knows the fatherhood of the Fathers, becomes as a father of his own: (3) the Fathers resort to his oblation. Having created the Fathers, he reflected. After that he created men. That constitutes the manhood of men. He who knows the manhood of men, becomes intelligent. Mind³⁵ does not forsake him. To him, when he was creating men, day appeared in the heavens.³⁶ After that he created the gods. This constitutes the godhead of the gods. To him who thus knows the godhead of the gods, day appears in

³⁴ *Nīla-śveta-mūra-varṇāḥ*, “of mixed blue and white colour,” says the Commentator.

³⁵ *Manuh* = *manana-saktih*, “the power of thinking.” Comm.

the heavens. These are the four streams,²⁰ viz., gods, men, Fathers, and Asuras. In all of these water is like the air."

Satapatha Brahmana, vii. 5, 2, 6.—*Prajāpatir vai idam agre āśīd ekaḥ era | so 'kāmayata "annam srījeya prajāycya" iti | sa prānebhyaḥ eva adhi paśūn niramimīta manasah purusham chakshusho 'svam prāṇād gām śrotrādaravim vāčo 'jam | tad yad enān prānebhyo 'dhi niramimīta tasmād āhuḥ "prāṇāḥ paśavāḥ" iti | mano vai prāṇānām prathamam | tad yad manasāḥ purusham niramimīta tasmād āhuḥ "purusāḥ prathamaḥ paśūnānām vīryavattamaḥ" iti | mano vai sarve prāṇāḥ | manasi hi sarve prāṇāḥ pratiṣṭhitāḥ | tad yad manasāḥ purusham niramimīta tasmād āhuḥ "purusāḥ sarve paśavāḥ" iti | purushasyaḥ etc sarve bhavanti |*

"Prajāpati was formerly this (universe), one only. He desired, 'let me create food, and be propagated.' He formed animals from his breaths, a MAN from his soul, a horse from his eye, a bull from his breath, a sheep from his ear, a goat from his voice. Since he formed animals from his breaths, therefore men say, 'the breaths are animals.' The soul is the first of the breaths. Since he formed a man from his soul, therefore they say, 'man is the first of the animals, and the strongest.' The soul is all the breaths; for all the breaths depend upon the soul. Since he formed man from his soul, therefore they say, 'man is all the animals;' for all these are man's."

S. P. Br. xiv. 4, 2, 1 (=Bṛihadāraṇyaka Upanishad, p. 125).—*Ātmā era idam agre āśīt purusā-ridhāḥ | so 'nurikṣhya na anyad ātmāno 'pasyat | "so 'ham asmi" ity agre ryāharat | tato 'ham-nāmā abharat | tasmād apy etarhy āmantrito "'ham ayam" ity era agre uktvā atha anyad nāma prabhrute yad asya bhavati | 2. Sa yat pūrvo 'smāt sarrasmāt sarrvān pūpmanāḥ aushat tasmāt purusāḥ | oshati ha vai sa taṁ yo 'smāt pūrvaṁ bubhūshati yaḥ evaṁ veda | 3. Eo 'bibhet | tasmād ekāki bibheti |*

²⁰ The Commentary not very satisfactorily explains this as meaning, "All these four abodes of the gods, etc., are like waters—i.e., suited to yield enjoyment, as ponds, rivers, etc., are fit for bathing, drinking," etc. The phrase is repeated in the Vishnu Purāna, i. 5 (vol. i., p. 79, of Dr. Hall's edition); and in his note Professor Wilson says *ambhāsmi* "is also a peculiar and probably a mystic term." It is explained in the Vāyu Purāna, as will be seen further on. The last words of the quotation from the Brāhmaṇa are obscure. In another passage of the same work (iii. 8, 18, 1, 2) the terms *ambhas*, *nabhas*, and *mahas*, are declared to denote respectively "earth," "air," and "sky" (. . . ayam vai loko 'mbhūñsi . . . antariksham vai nabhūñsi . . . asau vai loko mahāñsi).

sa ha ayam īkshānchakre yad “mad anyad nāsti kasmād nu bibhemi” iti | tataḥ eva asya bhayaṁ vīyāya | kasmād hy abhesyat | dvitīyād vai bhayam bhavati | 4. Sa vai naiva reme | tasmād ekākī na ramate | sa dvitīyam aichhat | sa ha etāvān āsa yathā strī-pumāṁsau samparishvaktau | 5. Sa imam eva ātmānam dvedhā ‘pātayat | tataḥ patiḥ patnī cha abhavatām | tasmād “idam ardharigalam iva svāḥ” iti ha sma āha Yājnavalkyah | tasmād ākūśah striyā pūryate eva | tām samabhavat | tato manushyāḥ ajāyanta | 6. Sā u ha iyam īkshānchakre “kathaṁ nu mā ātmanāḥ eva janayitvā sambhavati hanta tiro ‘sāni” iti | 7. Sā gaur abhavat vṛishabhaḥ itaras tām sam eva abhavat | tato gūrah ajāyanta | 8. Vaḍavā itarā abharad aśvarṇishaḥ itarah gardabhiḥ itarā gardabhaḥ itaras tām sam eva abhavat | tataḥ ekaśapham ajāyata | 9. Ajā itarā abharad rastah itarah avir itarā meshah itarah | tām sam eva abhavat tato jāvayo ‘jāyanta | evam eva yad idāñ kiñcha mithunam ā pippilikābhyaḥ tat sarvam asrijata |³⁷

“This universe was formerly soul only, in the form of Purusha. Looking closely, he saw nothing but himself (or soul). He first said, ‘This is I.’ Then he became one having the name of I. Hence even now a man, when called, first says, ‘this is I,’ and then declares the other name which he has. 2. Inasmuch as he, before (*pūrraḥ*) all this, burnt up (*aushat*) all sins, he (is called) purusha. The man who knows this burns up the person who wishes to be before him. 3. He was afraid. Hence a man when alone is afraid. This (being) considered that ‘there is no other thing but myself: of what am I afraid?’ Then his fear departed. For why should he have feared? It is of a second person that people are afraid. 4. He did not enjoy happiness. Hence a person when alone does not enjoy happiness. He desired a second. He was so much as a man and a woman when locked in embrace. 5. He caused this same self to fall asunder into two parts. Thence arose a husband and a wife.³⁸ Hence Yājvanalkya has said that ‘this one’s self is like the half³⁹ of a split pea.’ Hence the void is filled up by

³⁷ This passage has been already translated by Mr. Colebrooke, Essays i. 64, as well as by Dr. Roer, in the Bibliotheca Indica.

³⁸ Manu and S’utarūpū, according to the Commentator.

³⁹ Compare Taitt. Br. iii. 3, 3, 5. *Atho arddho vai esha ātmano yat patnī* | “Now a wife is the half of one’s self;” and ibid. iii. 3, 3, 1: *Ayajno vai esha yo ‘patnikāḥ* | *na prajāḥ prajāyeran* | “The man who has no wife is unfit to sacrifice. No children will be born to him.” We must not, however, suppose from these passages that the

5. " He cohabited with her. From them ~~men~~ were born. 6. She reflected, ' how does he, after having produced me from himself, cohabit with me? Ah! let me disappear.' 7. She became a cow, and the other a bull; and he cohabited with her. From them kine were produced. 8. The one became a mare, the other a stallion, the one a she-ass, the other a male-ass. He cohabited with her. From them the class of animals with undivided hoofs was produced. The one became a she-goat, the other a he-goat, the one a ewe, the other a ram. He cohabited with her. From them goats and sheep were produced. In this manner pairs of all creatures whatsoever, down to ants, were created."

The next passage describes men as descendants of Vivasvat, or the Sun, without specifying any distinction of classes:

Taittirīya Sanhitā vi. 5, 6, 1 f.—*Aditiḥ putrakūmā sādhyebhyo devebhyo brahmaudanam apachat | tasyai uchchheshaṇam adaduh | tat prāśnāt sā reto 'dhatta | tasyai chatvāraḥ Ādityāḥ ajāyanta | sā dvitīyam apachat | sā 'manyata "uchchheshaṇād me īne 'jñata | yad agre prāśishyāmi ito me rasiyāñso janishyante" iti | sā 'gre prāśnāt sā reto 'dhatta tasyai vyāiddham āṇḍam ajāyata | sā Ādityebhyah eva tritīyam apachat "bhogāya me idam śrāntam astv" iti | te 'bruran "varañ vṛināmahai yo 'to jāyātai asmākām sa eko 'sat | yo 'syā prajāyām ridhyātai asmākam bhogāya bhavād" iti | tato Vivasvān Ādityo 'jāyata | tava vai iyam prajā yad manushyāḥ | tūsv ekah eva riddho yo yajate sa devānām bhogāya bhavati |*

" *Aditi*, desirous of sons, cooked a *Brahmaudana* oblation for the gods the *Sādhyas*. They gave her the remnant of it. This she ate. She conceived seed. Four *Ādityas* were born to her. She cooked a second (oblation). She reflected, ' from the remains of the oblation these sons have been born to me. If I shall eat (the oblation) first, more brilliant

estimation in which women were held by the authors of the Brāhmaṇas was very high, as there are other texts in which they are spoken of disparagingly; such as the following: Taitt. Sanh. vi. 5, 8, 2.—*Sā somo nātishṭhata strībhyo grīhyamāṇāḥ | tam gṛītam vajraṁ kṛitvā 'ghnan tam nirindriyam bhūtam agrihṇan | tasmāt striyo nirindriyā adūyādir api pāpūt puṁsa upastitaram vadanti |* " Soma did not abide, when being poured out to women. Making that butter a thunderbolt they smote it. They poured it out when it had become powerless. Hence women, powerless, and portionless, speak more humbly than even a poor man." (Compare the quotation in the Commentary on the Taitt. Sanhitā, Vol. i. p. 996.) Taitt. Sanh. vi. 5, 10, 3. *Tasmāt striyāñ jātām parāsyanti ut pumāñsam haranti |* " Hence they reject a female (child) when born, and take up a male." (Compare Nirukta, iii. 4.)

¹ Compare Taitt. Br. iii. 3, 10, 4. *Prayāya hi manushyāḥ pūrnāḥ*, " For by offspring a man is completed."

(sons) will be born to me. She ate it first; she conceived seed; an imperfect egg was produced from her. She cooked a third (oblation) for the Ādityas, (repeating the formula) 'may this religious toil have been undergone for my enjoyment.' The Ādityas said, 'Let us choose a boon: let any one who is produced from this be ours only; let anyone of his progeny who is prosperous be for us a source of enjoyment.' In consequence the Āditya Vivasvat was born. This is his progeny, namely men.⁴¹ Among them he alone who sacrifices is prosperous, and comes a cause of enjoyment to the gods."⁴²

The passages next following do not specify separately the creation men (who must, however, be understood as included along with other beings under the designation *prajāḥ*, "offspring," or "creatures,") and therefore afford less distinct evidence that their authors did not hold the fourfold origin of mankind.

The first of these extracts is especially interesting, both on account of its own tenor, and because (along with Taitt. Br. ii. 3, 8, 1 ff. quoted in p. 23) it contains the germ of one of the Puranic accounts of the creation which will be adduced in a subsequent section.

Taitt. Br. ii. 2, 9, 1 ff.—*Idañ vai agre naira kinchana āśit | na dyaur āśid na prīthivī na antariksham | tad asad eva sad mano 'kuruta "syām" iti | tad atapyata | tasmāt tapanād dhūmo 'jāyata | tad bhūyo 'tapyata tasmāt tapanād Agnir ajāyata | tad bhūyo 'tapyata | 2. Tasmāt tapanāj jyotir ajāyata | tad bhūyo 'tapyata | tasmāt tapanād archir ajāyata | tad bhūyo 'tapyata | tasmāt tapanād marichayo 'jāyanta | tad bhūyo 'tapyata | tasmāt tapanād udārāḥ ajāyanta | tad bhūyo 'tapyata | tad abhrām iva*

⁴¹ Compare Taitt. Br. i. 8, 8, 1. *Ādityāḥ vai prajāḥ*, "Creatures are descended from Aditi."

⁴² This story is told also, but with more detail of names and somewhat differently, in Taitt. Br. i. 1, 9, 10 ff.. *Āditiḥ putrakūmā sādhyebhyo derebhyo brahmaudanam apachat | tasyai uchchheshaṇam adaduh | tat prāśnāt | sā reto 'dhatta | tasyai Dhātā cha Aryamā cha ajāyetām | sā dvitīyam apachat tasyai uchchheshaṇam adaduh | tat prāśnāt | sā reto 'dhatta | tasyai Mitras cha Varunās cha ajāyetām | sā trītyam apachat | tasyai uchchheshaṇam adaduh | tat prāśnāt | sā reto 'dhatta | tasyai Aṁśaečha Bhagas cha ajāyetām | sā chaturtham apachat | tasyai uchchheshaṇam adaduh | tat prāśnāt | sā reto 'dhatta tasyai Indrai cha Vivasvāns' cha ajāyetām | "Aditi, desirous of sons, cooked a Brahmaudana oblation to the gods the Sādhyas. They gave her the remnant of it. She ate it. She conceived seed. Dhātṛ and Aryaman were born to her." She does the same thing a second time, when she bears Mitra and Varuna,—a third time, when she bears Aṁśa and Bhaga,—and a fourth time, when she bears Indra and Vivasvat.*

samahanyata | tad vastim abhinat | 3. Sa samudro 'bhavat | tasmāt samudrasya na pibanti | prajananam iva hi manyante | tasmāt paśor jāyamānād āpaḥ purastād yanti | tad daśahotā anvasrijyata | Prajāpatir vai daśahotā | yaḥ evaṁ tapaso vīryyam vidrūṇīs tapyate bhavaty eva | tad vai idam āpaḥ salilam āśit | so 'rodit Prajāpatiḥ (4) “sa kasmai ajñi yady asyāpratishṭhāyēḥ” iti | yad apsv avāpadyata sā prīthivī abhavat | yad evam rymışta tad antariksham abhavat | yad ūrdhvam udamrışta sā dyaur abhavat | yad arodit tad anayoḥ rodastvam | 5. Yaḥ evaṁ veda na asya grīhe rudanti | etad rai eshāṁ lokānām janma | ya evam eshāṁ lokānām janma veda na eshu lokeśho ārttim ārchedhati | sa imām pratishṭhām avin-data | sa imām pratishṭhām vitrā akāmayata “prajāyeya” iti | sa tapo 'tapyata | so 'ntarvān abhavat | sa jaghanād asurān asrijata | 6. Tebhyo mṛinmaye pātre 'nnam aduhat | yā asya sā tanūr āśit tām apāhata | sā tamisrā 'bhavat | so 'kāmayata “prajāyeya” iti | sa tapo 'tapyata | so 'ntarvān abhavat | sa prajananād eva prajāḥ asrijata | tasmād imāḥ bhūyishṭhāḥ | prajananād hy enāḥ asrijata | 7. Tābhyo dārumaye pātre payo 'duhat | yā asya sā tanūr āśit tām apāhata | sa jyotsnā 'bhavat | so 'kāmayata “prajāyeya” iti | sa tapo 'tapyata so 'ntarvān abhavat | sa upapakshābhāyām eva ritūn asrijata | tebhyo rajate pātre ghritam aduhat | yā asya sā tanūr āśit (8) tām apāhata | so 'ho-rātrayoh sandhir abhavat | so 'kāmayata “prajāyeya” iti | sa tapo 'tapyata | so 'ntarvān abhavat | sa mukhād devān asrijata | tebhyo harite pātre somam aduhat | yā asya sā tanūr āśit tām apāhata | tad ahar abhavat | 9. Ete vai Prajāpater dohāḥ | ya evaṁ veda duhe eva prajāḥ | “divā vai no 'bhūd” iti tad devānām devatraṁ | ya evaṁ devānām devatraṁ veda devavān eva bhavati | etad vai aho-rātrānām janma | ya evam aho-rātrānām janma veda na aho-rātreshu ārttim ārchedhati | 10. Asato 'dhi mano'srīyata | manah Prajāpatim asrijata | Prajāpatiḥ prajāḥ asrijata | tad vai idam manasy eva paramam pratishṭhitām yadidaṁ kiñcha | tad etat śvovasyasām nāma Brahma | vyuchhantī vyuchhantī asmai vasyasī vasyasī vyuchhati prajāyate prajāyā pasubhiḥ pra parameshṭhino mātrām āpnoti ya evaṁ veda |

“At first this (universe) was not anything. There was neither sky, nor earth, nor air. Being non-existent, it resolved ‘let me be.’ It became fervent.⁴³ From that fervour smoke was produced. It again

२७१० २७११ २७१२ २७१३ २७१४

⁴³ The word thus rendered is *atapyata*, which has the sense of “being heated” as well as “practising austere abstraction.” I have purposely given an equivocal rendering, which may bear either sense.

became fervent. From that fervour fire was produced. It again became fervent. From that fervour light was produced. It again became fervent. From that fervour flame was produced. It again became fervent. From that fervour rays were produced. It again became fervent. From that fervour blazes⁴⁴ were produced. It again became fervent. It became condensed like a cloud. It clove its bladder. That became the sea. Hence men do not drink of the sea. For they regard it as like the place of generation. Hence water issues forth before an animal when it is being born. After that the Daśahotṛi (a particular formula) was created. Prajāpati is the Daśahotṛi. That man succeeds, who thus knowing the power of austere abstraction (or fervour), practises it. This was then water, fluid. Prajāpati wept, (exclaiming), (4) ‘For what purpose have I been born, if (I have been born) from this which forms no support?’⁴⁵ That which fell⁴⁶ into the waters became the earth. That which he wiped away, became the air. That which he wiped away, upwards, became the sky. From the circumstance that he wept (*arodīt*), these two regions have the name of *rodasī*, (worlds). 5. They do not weep in the house of the man who knows this. This was the birth of these worlds. He who thus knows the birth of these worlds, incurs no suffering in these worlds. He obtained this (earth as a) basis. Having obtained (this earth as a) basis, he desired, ‘May I be propagated.’ He practised austere fervour. He became pregnant. He created Asuras from his abdomen. 6. To them he milked out food in an earthen dish. He cast off that body of his. It became darkness.⁴⁷ He desired, ‘May I be propagated.’ He practised

४४ ४५ ४६ ४७

⁴⁴ Such is the sense the commentator gives to the word *udārāḥ*, which he makes = *ulvaya-jvālāḥ*. Professor Roth (s. v.) explains the word as meaning “fogs.”

⁴⁵ This is the mode of rendering suggested to me by Professor Aufrecht. After “if” the Commentator supplies the words—“from this non-existing earth I can create no living creature.”

⁴⁶ “Prajāpati’s tears,” etc., according to the commentator.

⁴⁷ Compare S. P. Br. xi. 1, 6, 8: *Atho yo 'yam avāñ prūṇas tēna asurāñ asrijata | te īmāñ eva prithivīm abhipadya asrijyanta | tasmai sasrijānāya tamāḥ iva āśa | 9. So 'vet "pūpmānāñ vai asrikshi yasmāi me sasrijānāya tamāḥ iva abhūd" iti | tāñsataḥ eva pūpmānā 'vihyat | tataḥ eva te parābhavann ityādi |* “Then he created the Asuras from this lower breath of his. It was only after reaching this earth that they were created. On him, as he continued to create, darkness fell. 9. He understood, ‘I have created misery, since darkness has fallen upon me as I was creating.’ Then he pierced them with misery, and they in consequence succumbed,” etc. The word rendered in the text by “cast off” is applied in Taitt. Sanh. i. 5, 4, 1, to serpents

austere fervour. He became pregnant. He created living beings (*prajāḥ*) from his organ of generation. Hence they are the most numerous because he created them from his generative organ. 8. To them he milked out milk in a wooden dish. He cast off that body of his. It became moon-light. He desired, ‘May I be propagated. He practised austere fervour. He became pregnant. He created the seasons from his armpits. To them he milked out butter in a silver dish. He cast off that body of his. It became the period which connects day and night. He desired, ‘May I be propagated.’ He practised austere fervour. He became pregnant. He created the gods from his mouth.⁴⁸ To them he milked out Soma in a golden dish. He cast off that body of his. It became day. 9. These are Prajāpati’s milkings. He who thus knows milks out offspring. ‘Day (*divā*) has come to us:’ this (exclamation expresses) the godhead of the gods. He who thus knows the godhead of the gods, obtains the gods. This is the birth of days and nights. He who thus knows the birth of days and nights, incurs no suffering in the days and nights. 10. Mind (or soul, *manas*,) was created from the non-existent. Mind created Prajāpati. Prajāpati created offspring. All this, whatever exists, rests absolutely on mind. This is that Brahma called *Svavasyasa*.⁴⁹ For the man who thus knows, (Ushas), dawning, dawning, dawns more and more bright; he becomes prolific in offspring, and (rich) in cattle; he obtains the rank of Parameshṭhin.”

S. P. Br. vi. 1, 2, 11.—*Atho āhuḥ | “Prajāpatir eva imān lokān
śrīṣṭvā prithivyām pratyatishṭhat | tasmai imāḥ oshadhayo 'nnam apa-
chyanta | tad āśnāt | sa garbhī abhavat | sa ūrdhvēbhyaḥ eva prāṇebhyo
devān asrijata | ye 'rāñchah prāṇas tebhyo martyāḥ prajāḥ” iti | yata-
mathā 'srījata tathā 'srījata | Prajāpatis tv eva idāṁ sarvam asrijata
yad idāṁ kiñcha |*

“ Wherefore they say, ‘Prajāpati, having created these worlds, was shedding their old skins (*sarpāḥ vai jīryanto 'manyanta . . . tato vai te jīrṇas tanūr
apāgnata*).

⁴⁸ Compare S. P. Br. xi. 1, 6, 7, quoted in the 4th Vol. of this work, p. 22 f.

⁴⁹ The Commentator explains this word to mean “that which each succeeding day becomes transcendently excellent (*uttarottara-dine vasiyo 'tiśayena śreshṭham*). Here, he says, the highest and absolute Brahma is not meant, but mind, which has the form of Brahma, and, by means of the series of its volitions, in every successive moment more and more world-creating” (*sankalpa-paramparayū pratikṣhaṇam uttarottarā-
dhika-jagat-srashṭṛitvād īdrig-Brahma-rūpatvād manoh prabastam |*

supported upon the earth. For him these herbs were cooked as food. That (food) he ate. He became pregnant. He created the gods from his upper vital airs, and mortal offspring from his lower vital airs. In whatever way he created, so he created. But Prajāpati created all this, whatever exists.””

S. P. Br. x. 1, 3, 1.—*Prajāpatih prajāḥ asrijata | sa ūrdhvēbhyaḥ eva prāṇebhyo devān asrijata | ye 'vāñchuh prāṇas tebhyo martyāḥ prajāḥ | atha ūrdhvam eva mrityum prajābhyo 'ttāram asrijata |*

“Prajāpati created living beings. From his upper vital airs he created the gods; from his lower vital airs mortal creatures. Afterwards he created death a devourer of creatures.”

Taitt. Ar. i. 23, 1.—*Āpo vai idam āsan salilam eva | sa Prajāpatir ekaḥ pushkara-parne samabhārat | tasya antar manasi kāmāḥ samavartata “idam sriyeyam” iti | tasmād yad purusho manasā ‘bhigachhati tad vāchā vadati tat karmanā karoti | tad eshā ‘bhyanuktā “kāmas tad agre samavarttatādhi | manaso retaḥ prathamām yad āśit | 2. Sato bandhum asati niravindan hṛidi pratīshyā kavayo manishā” iti | upa evām tad upanamati yat-kāmo bhavati yaḥ evām veda | sa tapo ‘tapyata | sa tapas taptrā śārīram adhūnuta | tasya yad māṁsam āśit tato ‘runāḥ Ketuḥ Vātarāśanāḥ rishayah udatishṭhan | 3. Ye nakhās te Taikhānasāḥ | ye bālās te Bālakhilyāḥ | yo rasah so ‘pām antarataḥ kūrmam bhūtam sarvantam tam abravīt “mama vai traṇ-māṁsa samabhūt” | 4. “na” ity abravīt “pūrram era aham iha āsam” iti | tat purushasya purushatram iti | sa “sahasra-śirshā purushaḥ sahasrākshaḥ sahasra-pād” bhūtvā udatishṭhat | tam abravīt “tram re (sic. me or rai?) pūrrām samabhūt tram idam pūrraḥ kurushra” iti | sa itaḥ ādāya apo (5) ‘ñjalinā purastūd upādadāh “evā hy era” iti | tataḥ Ādityaḥ udatishṭhat | sā prāchi dik | atha Aruṇāḥ Ketur dakshinataḥ upādadāh “evā hy Agne” iti | tato vai Agniḥ udatishṭhat | sā dakshinā dik | atha Aruṇāḥ Ketuḥ paśchād upādadāh “evā hi Vāyo” iti | 6. Tato Vāyur udatishṭhat | sū pratīchi dik | atha Aruṇāḥ Ketur uttarataḥ upādadāh “evā hi Indra” iti | tato vai Indraḥ udatishṭhat | sā udīchi dik | atha Aruṇāḥ Ketur madhye upādadāh “evā hi Pūshann” iti | tato vai Pūshā udatishṭhat | sā iyam dik | 7. Atha Aruṇāḥ Ketur uparishṭād upādadāh “evā hi devāḥ” iti | tato dera-manushyāḥ pitaro gandharvāpsarasas cha udatishṭhan | sū ūrdhvā dik | yāḥ vīprusho vi parāpatan tūbhyo ‘surāḥ rakshānisi piśachāś-cha udatishṭhan | tasmāt te parābhavan vīprudbhyo ‘hi samabhavan | taa.*

eshā bhyanūktā (8) “*āpo ha yad bṛihatīr garbham āyan daksham dadhānāḥ janayantīḥ svayambhūm | tataḥ imo dhyasṛijyanta sargāḥ | adbhyo vai idam samabhūt | tasmād idam sarvam Brahma svayambhūv*” iti | *tasmād idam sarvāṁ śithilam iva adhruram iva abhavat | Prajāpatir vāra tat | ātmanā ātmānaṁ vidhāya tad eva anuprāriśat | tad eshā ‘bhyanūktā* (9) “*vidhāya lokān vidhāya bhūtāni vidhāya sarvāḥ pradiśo diśascha | Prajāpatih prathamajāḥ ritasya ātmanā “tmānam abhisāñriveśa”*” iti |

“This was water, fluid. Prajāpati alone was produced on a lotus-leaf. Within, in his mind, desire arose, ‘Let me create this.’ Hence whatever a man aims at in his mind, he declares by speech, and performs by act.⁵⁰ Hence this verse has been uttered, ‘Desire formerly arose in it, which was the primal germ of mind, (2) (and which) sages, searching with their intellect, have discovered in the heart as the bond between the existent and the non-existent’ (R. V. x. 129, 4). That of which he is desirous comes to the man who thus knows. He practised austere fervour. Having practised austere fervour, he shook his body. From its flesh the rishis (called) Arunas, Ketus, and Vātarāśanas⁵¹ arose. 3. His nails became the Vaikhānasas, his hairs the Bālakhilyas. The fluid (of his body became) a tortoise moving amid the waters.⁵² He said to him, ‘Thou hast sprung from my skin and flesh.’⁵³ 4. ‘No,’ replied the tortoise, ‘I was here before.’ In that (in his having been ‘before’ *pūrvam*) consists the manhood of a man (*purusha*). Becoming ‘a man (*purusha*) with a thousand heads, a thousand eyes, a thousand feet’

⁵⁰ Compare Taitt. S. vi. 3, 10, 4, (quoted by Roth. s. v. *abhibgam*) *yad vai hrdayena abhigachhati taj jihvayā vadati* |

⁵¹ They are mentioned again in Taitt. Ār. i. 24, 4. See Böhtlingk and Roth's Lexicon s.v. Ketu (where the Aruna Ketus are stated to be a sort of superior beings or demons); Arthur-veda, xi. 10, 2; Weber's Indische Studien, ii. 177; and the verse of the M. Bh. xii. 774 : *Arunāḥ Ketavāś chaiva svādhāycna divāṁ gatāḥ* | “By sacred study the Arunas and Ketus have ascended to heaven.”

⁵² The Sanskrit scholar will observe that the text here is rather obscure. It is either corrupt, elliptical, or grammatically irregular.

⁵³ Here the Sanskrit, if it be not corrupt, must be irregular and incorrect. On the style of the Āranyakas, see Mr. E. B. Cowell's Preface to the Kaushitaki Upanishad, p. viii., where it is remarked: “The Āranyakas appear to belong to a class of Sanskrit writings, whose history has not yet been thoroughly investigated. Their style, if we may judge from that of the Taittiriya and Kaushitaki, is full of strange solecisms which sometimes half remind us of the gāthās of the Lalita Vistara. The present Upanishad has many peculiar forms, some of which are common to both recensions, while others appear only in one. Such are: *nishincha*, in p. 10; *praiti* for *prayanti*, in p. 51; *sāṁvissyan*, in p. 56; *vetti* for *vyeti*, in p. 78; *adudham*, in p. 89, etc.

(R.V. x. 90, 1), he arose. Prajāpati said to him, ‘Thou wert produced before me: do thou first make this.’ He took water from this (5) in the cavity of his two hands, and placed it on the east, repeating the text, ‘so be it, o Sun.’⁴⁴ From thence the sun arose. That was the eastern quarter. Then Aruna Ketu placed (the water) to the south, saying, ‘so be it,’ o Agni.’ Thence Agni arose. That was the southern quarter. Then Aruna Ketu placed (the water) to the west, saying ‘so be it, o Vāyu.’ 6. Thence arose Vāyu. That was the western quarter. Then Aruna Ketu placed (the water) to the north, saying ‘so be it, o Indra.’ Thence arose Indra. That is the northern quarter. Then Aruna Ketu placed (the water) in the centre, saying ‘so be it, o Pūshan.’ Thence arose Pūshan. That is this quarter. 7. Then Aruna Ketu placed (the water) above, saying ‘so be it, o gods.’ Thence arose gods, MEN, fathers, Gandharvas and Apsarases. That is the upper quarter. From the drops which fell apart arose the Asuras, Rakshases, and Piśāchas. Therefore they perished, because they were produced from drops. Hence this text has been uttered; (8) ‘when the great waters became pregnant, containing wisdom, and generating Svayambhū, from them were created these creations. All this was produced from the waters. Therefore all this is Brahma Svayambhu.’ Hence all this was as it were loose, as it were unsteady. Prajāpati was that. Having made himself through himself, he entered into that. Wherefore this verse has been uttered; (9) ‘Having formed the world, having formed existing things and all intermediate quarters and quarters, Prajāpati, the firstborn of the ceremonial; entered into himself with himself.’”

From an examination of the legends contained in the Brāhmaṇas, of which some specimens have just been given, it appears (1) that they are generally, if not always, adduced, or invented, with the view of showing the origin, or illustrating the efficacy, of some particular ceremony which the writer wished to explain or recommend; (2) that the accounts which they supply of Prajāpati’s creative operations are

⁴⁴ The formula is in the original *evā hy eva*. The Commentator says that the first word means “objects of desire to be obtained,” and that the second *eva* signifies “the moving (Sun);” the sense of the entire formula being, “Thou, o Sun, art thyself all objects of desire.” The six formulas here introduced had previously occurred at the close of a preceding section, i. 20, 1.

various and even inconsistent; and (3) that they are the sources of many of the details which are found in a modified form in the cosmogonies of the Purāṇas.

When we discover in the most ancient Indian writings such different and even discrepant accounts of the origin of man, all put forth with equal positiveness, it is impossible to imagine that any uniform explanation of the diversity of castes could have been received at the period when they were composed, or to regard any of the texts which have been cited as more orthodox and authoritative than the rest. Even, therefore, if we should suppose that the author of the Purusha Sūkta meant to represent the four castes as having literally sprung from separate parts of Purusha's body, it is evident that the same idea was not always or even generally adopted by those who followed him, as a revealed truth in which they were bound to acquiesce. In fact, nothing is clearer than that in all these cosmogonies, the writers, while generally assuming certain prevalent ideas as the basis of their descriptions, gave the freest scope to their individual fancy in the invention of details. In such circumstances, perfect coincidence cannot be expected in the narratives.

We shall hereafter see that the Puranic writers reproduce some of these discrepancies in the traditions which descended to them from earlier generations, and add many new inconsistencies of their own, which they themselves, or their commentators, endeavour to explain away by the assumption that the accounts so differing relate to the occurrences of different Kalpas or Manvantaras (great mundane periods). But of a belief in any such Kalpas or Manvantaras no trace is to be found in the hymns or Brāhmaṇas: and, as we shall hereafter see, they must be held to be the inventions of a later age. The real explanation of these differences in the Brāhmaṇas is that the writers did not consider themselves (as their successors held them) to be infallibly inspired, and consequently were not at all studious to avoid in their narratives the appearance of inconsistency with the accounts of their predecessors.

SECT. V.—*Manu's Account of the Origin of Castes.*

I shall first quote a few verses from the beginning of Manu's account of the creation :

i. 8. *So 'bhidhyāya śarīrāt svāt sisrikshur vividhāḥ prajāḥ | apa eva sasajādau tāsu vijam avāśrijat |* 9. *Tad andam abhavad haimaṁ sahas-rāṁśu-sama-prabhām | tasmin jajne svayam Brahmā sarva-loka-pitā-mahāḥ |* 10. *Āpo nārā iti proktāḥ āpo vai narasūnavāḥ | tāḥ yad asyāyanam pūrvam tena Nārāyaṇāḥ smṛitah |* 11. *Yat tat kāraṇam aryaktaṁ nityaṁ sad-asadātmakam | tad-visṛishṭāḥ sa purusho lok-Brahmeti kīrttyate |* 12. *Tasmīnn ande sa bhagavān ushītvā parivate saram | svayam evātmano dhyānāt tad andam akarod dridhā |*⁵⁵

“ 8. He (the self-existent) having felt desire,⁵⁶ and willing to create various living beings from his own body, first created the waters, and threw into them a seed. 9. That seed became a golden egg, of lustre equal to the sun; in it he himself was born as Brahmā, the parent of all the worlds. 10. The waters are called *nārāḥ*, for they are sprung from *Nara*; and as they were his first sphere of motion (*ayana*=path), he is therefore called *Nārāyaṇa*.⁵⁷ 11. Produced from the imperceptible, eternal, existent and non-existent, cause, that male (*purusha*) is celebrated in the world as Brahmā. 12. After dwelling for a year in the egg, the glorious being, himself, by his own contemplation, split it in twain.”

After a description of various other preparatory creative acts (vv. 13–30) the author proceeds in vv. 31 ff. to inform us how the four castes were produced :

i. 31. *Lokānām tu viriddhyartham mukhabāhūru-pādataḥ | brāhma-nām kshattriyām raiśyām śūdraṁ cha niravarttayat |* 32. *Dridhā kṛti-vātmano deham ardhena purusho 'bhavat | ardhena nārī tasyām sa Virā-jam asrījat prabhuḥ |* 33. *Tapas taptrā 'srījad yaṁ tu sa svayam purusho*

⁵⁵ The ideas in this passage are derived (with modifications expressive of the theories current in the author's own age) from the S'atapatha Brāhmaṇa, xi. 1, 6, 1 ff. (see vol. iv. of this work, p. 21 f.); or from some other similar account in another Brāhmaṇa.

⁵⁶ See S'. P. Br. i. 7, 4, 1: *Prajāpatir ha vai svām duhitaram abhidadhya.*

⁵⁷ In the M. Bh. iii. 12952, Krishṇa says: *apām nārāḥ iti purā sanjnā-karma kṛitam mayā | tena Nārāyaṇo py uktō mama tat tv ayanām sadā |* “The name of *nārāḥ* was formerly assigned by me to the waters: hence I am also called *Nārāyaṇa*, for there has always been my sphere of motion.”

Virāṭ | taṁ māṁ vittasya sarrasya srashṭaraṁ dvija-sattamāḥ | 34.
Aham prajāḥ sisrikshus tu tapas taptvā suduścharam | patīn prajānām
asrijam maharshin ādito daśa | 35. Marīchim Atryangirasau Pulastyam
Pulahāṁ Kratūm | Prachetasam Vasishṭhaṁ cha Bhṛigum Nāradam
eva cha | 36. Ete Manūñs tu saptānyān asrijan bhūrītejasāḥ | devān
deranikāyāñś cha maharshlāñś chāmitaujasāḥ | 37. Yaksha-rakshāḥ-piśā-
chāñś cha gandharrāpsaraso 'surān | nāgān sarpañ suparnāñś cha pi-
trīṇāñś cha pṛithaggañān | 38. Vidyuto 'sani-meghāñś cha rohitendra-
dhanūñsei cha | ulkā nirghāta-ketūñś cha jyotīñshy uchchārachāni cha |
39. Kinnarān vānarān mateyān rividhāñś cha vihangamān | paśūn mṛigān
manushyāñś cha ryālāñś chobhayatodataḥ | 40. Kṛimikīṭa-patangāñś cha
yukā-makshika-matkunam | sarrām cha dañśa-maśakam sthāraram cha
pṛithagridham | 41. Evam etair idāñ sarram man-niyogād mahātma-
bhiḥ | yathākarma tapo-yogāt śrīṣṭāñ sthārara-jangamam |

31. "That the worlds might be peopled, he caused the Brāhmaṇ, the Kshattriya, the Vaiśya, and the Sūdra to issue from his mouth, his arms, his thighs, and his feet."⁵⁸ 32. Having divided his own body into two parts, the lord (Brahmā) became, with the half a male (purusha), and with the half, a female ; and in her he created Virāj⁵⁹ 33. Know, O most excellent twice-born men, that I, whom that male, (purusha)⁶⁰ Virāj, himself created, am the creator of all this world. 34. Desiring to produce living creatures, I performed very arduous devotion, and first created ten Maharsis (great rishis), lords of living beings, (35) viz., Marīchi, Atri, Angiras, Pulastya, Pulaha, Kratu, Prachetas, Vaśiṣṭha, Bhṛigu, and Nārada.⁶¹ 36 They, endowed with

⁵⁸ On this Kulluka the Commentator remarks : *Dairyā cha ṣaktyā mukhādibhyo brāhmaṇādi-nirmāṇam Brahmano na visankalīyañ śruti-siddhatvāt |* "It is not to be doubted that, by his divine power, Brahmā formed the Brāhmaṇ and the other castes from his mouth and other members, since it is proved by the Veda. He then quotes the 12th verse of the Purusha Sūkta.

⁵⁹ See the Purusha Sūkta, verse 5.

⁶⁰ It will be observed that Manu applies this term *purusha* to three beings, *first* to Brahmā (v. 11), *second* to the male formed by Brahmā from the half of his own body (v. 32), and *third* to Virāj, the offspring of the male and female halves of Brahmā's body (v. 33). It will be noticed that this story of Brahmā dividing his body is borrowed from the passage of the S. P. Br. xiv. 4, 2, 1, quoted above.

⁶¹ In the Rāmāyaṇa, ii. 110, 2 ff., a different account is given of the origin of the world, in which no reference is made to Manu Svāyambhuva. The order of the creation there described is as follows : First everything was water. Then Brahmā Svāyambhū, with the deities, came into existence—Brahmā being said to have sprung

great energy, created⁶² other seven Manus, gods, and abodes of gods, and Maharshis of boundless might; (37) Yakshas, Rakshases, Piśāchas, Gandharvas, Apsarases, Asuras, Nāgas, Serpents, great Birds, and the different classes of Pitrīs; (38) lightnings, thunderbolts, clouds, Indra's bows unbent and bent, meteors, portentous atmospheric sounds, comets, and various luminaries; (39) Kinnaras, apes, fishes, different sorts of birds, cattle, deer, MEN, beasts with two rows of teeth; (40) small and large reptiles, moths, lice, flies, fleas, all gadflies and gnats, and motionless things of different sorts. 41. Thus by my appointment, and by the force of devotion, was ALL THIS WORLD BOTH MOTIONLESS AND MOVING, created by those great beings, according to the (previous) actions of each creature."

The different portions of the preceding narrative of the creation of the human species are not easily reconcileable with each other. For it is first stated in verse 31, that men of the four castes proceeded separately from different parts of Brahmā's body,—prior (as it would appear) (1) to the division of that body into two parts and to the successive production (2) of Virāj, (3) Manu, and (4) the Maharshis, who formed all existing creatures. And yet we are told in verse 39, that MEN were among the beings called into existence by those Maharshis, and in verse 41, that the entire MOVING as well as motionless WORLD was their work. It is not said that the men created by the Maharshis were distinct from those composing the four castes, and we must, therefore, assume that the latter also are included under the general appellation of men. But if men of the four castes had been already produced before the formation of all living creatures by the Maharshis, what necessity existed for the men of these castes being a second time called into being as a part of that later creation? It is possible that this

from the ether (*ākāśa*). Brahmā, with his sons, created the world. From Brahmā sprang Marichi; from Marichi, Kas'yapa; from Kas'yapa, Vivasvat; and from Vivasvat, Manu Vaivasvata. The original of this passage is quoted in the 4th vol. of this work, p. 29 ff.

⁶² These great rishis seem to be the beings denoted by the word *visvasrijah*, "creators of the universe," in the verse of Manu (xii. 50), which will be quoted below. Reference to rishis, or to seven rishis, as "formers of existing things" (*bhūta-kritah*), is also found in the Atharvaveda, vi. 108, 4; vi. 133, 4, 5; xi. 1, 1, 3, 24; xii. 1, 39; and the word *bhūtakritah*, without the addition of rishis, is found in the same work iii. 28, 1; iv. 35, 2, and xix. 16, 2.

allegation of the separate creation of castes may have been engrafted as an after-thought on the other account.⁶³

After other details, regarding the propagation, nature, etc, of created things (vv. 42–50), the re-absorption of Brahmā into the Supreme Spirit, and his alternations of sleep and repose, etc. (vv. 50–57), Manu proceeds :

58. *Idam śāstraṁ tu kṛitvā 'sau mām eva svayam āditah | vidhīrad
grāhayāmāsa Marīchyaḍīmś tv aham munin |* 59. *Etad vo 'yam Bhṛiguḥ
śāstraṁ śrārayishyaty aśeshataḥ | etad hi matto 'dhijage sarvam esho
'khilam muniḥ |* 60. *Tatas tathā sa tenokto maharshir Manunā Bhṛiguḥ |
tān abravīd rishīn sarvān prītātmā "śrūyatām" iti |* 61. *Svāyambhu-
vāsyāsyā Manoḥ shad-vaṁśyā Manavo 'pare | sriṣṭavantah prajāḥ svāḥ
svāḥ mahātmāno mahaujasah |* 62. *Svārochishaś chauttamiś cha Tāmaso
Raivatas tathā | Chākshushaś cha mahātejā Vivasvat-suta eva cha |* 63.
*Svāyambhuvādyāḥ saptaite Manavo bhūritejasah | sve sve 'ntare sarvam
idam utpādyāpuś charācharam |*

58. “Having formed this Scripture, he (Brahmā) himself in the beginning caused me to comprehend it according to rule; as I did to Marīchi and the other munis. 59. This, Bhṛigu will give you to this scripture in its entirety; for this muni learned the whole from 60. Then that Maharshi (great rishi), Bhṛigu being so addressed Manu, with pleasure addressed all those rishis, saying, ‘Let it heard.’ 61. ‘From this Manu Svāyambhuva sprang other Manus in six successive generations, great and glorious, who respectively created living beings of their own,—(62) viz., Svārochisha, Auttami, Tāmasa, Raivata, Chākshusha, and the mighty son of Vivasvat. 63. These seven⁶⁴ Manus of great power, of whom Svāyambhuva was the first, have each in his own period (*antara*) produced and possessed the world.’”

⁶³ In the same way it may be observed that in v. 22 Brahmā is said to have formed the subtile class of living gods whose essence is to act, and of the S'ūdhyas (*karmāti-manām cha devānām so 'srijat prāṇinām prabhuḥ | sūdhyānām cha gaṇān sūkshmam*), and in v. 25, to have “called into existence this creation, desiring to form these living beings” (*sriṣṭiṁ sasarja chaivemām* *srashṭum ichchān imāḥ prajāḥ*). But if the gods and all other creatures already existed, any such further account of their production by the Maharsis, as is given in verse 36, seems to be not only superfluous but contradictory.

⁶⁴ It will be observed that here Svāyambhuva is included in the seven Manus, although in verse 36 (see above) it is said that the ten Maharsis, who had themselves been created by Svāyambhuva (vv. 34 f.), produced seven other Manus.

After some preliminary explanations regarding the divisions of time as reckoned by men and gods, etc. (vv. 64-78), the author proceeds to tell us how long each of these Manus reigns :

79. *Yat prāk dvādaśa-sāhasram uditaṁ daivikam yugam | tad eka-saptati-guṇam manvantaram ihochyate |* 80. *Manvantarāny asankhyāni sargah sañjhāra eva cha | kridann ivaitat kurute Parameśṭhi punah punah |*

"The age (*yuga*) of the gods mentioned before, consisting of twelve thousand (years), when multiplied by seventy-one, is here called a manvantara. 80. There are innumerable manvantaras, creations and destructions. The Supreme Being performs this again and again, as if in sport."

A more detailed account of these great mundane periods will be given in the next section, when I come to take up the Vishnu Purana. Meanwhile it may be remarked that the present manvantara is that of the last of the Manus above enumerated, or Manu Vaivasvata, who, according to verse 63, must have created the existing world. But if such be the case, it does not appear why the creation of Manu Svāyambhuva, with which the present race of mortals can have little to do, should have been by preference related to the rishis in vv. 33 ff. It must, however, be observed that in v. 33 Manu Svāyambhuva described himself as the former of "this" (*i.e.*, the existing) universe, and there is no doubt that the whole code of laws prescribed in the sequel of the work is intended by the author to be observed by the existing race of Indians (see verses 102 ff. of the first book). We must, therefore, suppose that the creations of the later Manus are substantially identical with that of the first; or that there is some confusion or inconsistency in the accounts which I have cited. Perhaps both suppositions may be correct.

In vv. 81-86, the four Yugas (or great ages of the world) the Kṛita, Tretā, Dvāpara, and Kali, their gradual deterioration, and the special duties peculiar to each, are described.⁶⁵

⁶⁵ In v. 86 these predominant duties are said to be austere fervour in the Kṛita age, knowledge in the Tretā, sacrifice in the Dvāpara, and liberality alone in the Kali (*tapah param Kṛita-yuge tretāyāṁ jnānam uchyate | dvāpare yajnam evāhur dānam okam kalau yuge*). This, as remarked in Weber's Indische Studien, 282 f., note, is not quite in conformity with the view of the Mundaka Upanishad, i. 2, 1, which states:

At verse 87, Bhṛigu recurs to the four castes:

87. Sarvasyāsyā tu sargasya gupty-artham sa mahādyutih | mukha-bāhūru-paj-jānām prithak karmāny akalpayat |

"For the preservation of this whole creation, that glorious being (Brahmā) ordained separate functions for those who sprang from his mouth, his arms, his thighs, and his feet."

These functions are then detailed (vv. 88-92). In verse 93, the grounds of the Brāhmans' pre-eminence are stated:

93. Uttamāngobhārūj jyaiṣṭhāyād brahmaṇāś chaiva dhāraṇāt ; sarvasyairvāya sargasya dharmato brāhmaṇah prabhuh | 94. Tam hi svayambhūḥ svād āseyāt tapas taptvā "dito 'srijat |

Since the Brahman sprang from the most excellent organ, since he is the first-born and possesses the Veda, he is by nature the lord of this whole creation. Him, the self-existent (Brahmā) after exercising servid abstraction, formed at the first from his own mouth."

But as there are grades of excellence among created things, and among men themselves (96), so are there also among Brāhmans:

97. Brāhmaṇeshu cha vīdrāṁso vīdvatsu kṛita-buddhayaḥ | kṛita-buddhishu karttāraḥ karttrishu brahma-vedināḥ |

"Among Brāhmans the learned are the most excellent, among the learned the resolute, among the resolute those who act, and among them who act they who possess divine knowledge."

In a subsequent part of the work (xii. 40 ff.) we find men in general, the castes, and indeed all existing things, from Brahmā downwards, classified according to their participation in different degrees in the three *guṇas*, or qualities (*sattva*, "goodness," *rajas*, "passion," and *amas*, "darkness").

39. Yena yāṁs tu gunenaishāṁ sāṁsārān pratipadyate | tān samāsenā akshyāmi sarvasyāya yathākramam | 40. Devatram sāttvikā yānti ianushyatvāṁ cha rājasāḥ | tiryaktvāṁ tāmasā nityam ity eshū tri-
it etat satyam mantreshu karmāṇi kavayo yāny apaśyāṁs tāni tretāyāṁ bahudhū matatāni | "This is true: the rites which sages beheld in the hymns, are in great variety celebrated in the Tretā." In the same way the M. Bh. iii. v. 11,248, says that sacrifices and rites prevail in the Tretā (*tato yajnāḥ pravarttante dharmāś cha vīdhāḥ kriyāḥ | tretāyāṁ ityādt*). See also M. Bh. xii. 13,090. The word *kṛita*, as the name of the first yuga is thus explained in a previous verse of the former of these two passages (11,235): *kṛitam ova na karttavyāṁ tasmin kāle yugottame* | "In the time of that most excellent Yuga (everything) has been done, (and does) not (remain)

*vidhā gatiḥ | . . . 43. Hastināś cha turangāś cha śūdrā mlechhāś
cha garhitāḥ | siṁhā vyāghrā varāhāś cha madhyamā tāmasī gatiḥ |
. . . 46. Rājānāḥ kshattriyāś chaiva rājnaś chaiva purohitāḥ | vāda-
yuddha-pradhānāś cha madhyamā rājasī gatiḥ | . . . 48. Tāpasā ya-
tayo viprā ye cha vaimānikā gaṇāḥ | nakshatrāṇi cha dāityāś cha
prathamā sāttvikī gatiḥ | 49. Yajvānā rishayo devā vedā jyotiṁshī¹
vatsarāḥ | pitaraś chaiva sādhyāś cha dvitiyā sāttvikī gatiḥ | 50. Brahma
viśvasrijō dharmo mahān avyaktam eva cha | uttamām sāttvikīm etām
gatim āhur maṇīshināḥ |*

“39. I shall now declare succinctly in order the states which the soul reaches by means of each of these qualities. 40. Souls endowed with the *sattva* quality attain to godhead; those having the *rajas* quality become men; whilst those characterized by *tamas* always become beasts—such is the threefold destination . . . 43. Elephants, horses, Śūdras and contemptible Mlechhas, lions, tigers, and boars form the middle dark condition . . . 46. Kings, Kshattriyas, a king’s priests (*purohitāḥ*), and men whose chief occupation is the war of words, compose the middle condition of passion . . . 48. Devotees, ascetics, Brāhmans, the deities borne on aerial cars, constellations, and Daityas, constitute the lowest condition of goodness. 49. Sacrificing priests, rishis, gods, the vedas, the celestial luminaries, years, the fathers, the Sādhyas, form the second condition of goodness. 50. Brahmā, the creators,² righteousness, the Great One (*mahat*), the Unapparent One (*aryakta*), compose the highest condition of goodness.”

¹ These “creators” (*viśvasrijah*) are thus mentioned in Taitt. Br. iii. 12, 9, 2. *Ādurasam Agnīn chinvānāḥ pūrve viśvasrijo ‘mrītāḥ | śataṁ varsha-suhasrāṇi dikshi-
tāḥ satram āsata | 3. tapāḥ āśid grihapatir Brahma brahmā ‘bhārat svayam | satyām
ha hotaishām āśid yad viśvasrijā āsata | amṛitam ebhya udgāyat sahusram parivat-
sarān | bhūtaṁ ha prastotāshām āśid bhavishyat prati chāharat | prāṇo adhvaryur
abhavad idām sarevāṁ sishasatām | . . . 7. Viśvasrijah prathamāḥ satram āsata |
. . . | tato ha jajne bhurānasya gopāḥ hiranmayaḥ śakunir Brahma nāma | yena
sūryas tapati tejasoddhāḥ | . . . 8. Etēna vai viśvasrijah idām visvam asrijanta |
yad visvam asrijanta tasnād viśvasrijah | visvam enān anu prajāyate | “2. The
ancient and immortal creators of the universe, keeping fire kindled till they saw the
new moon, and consecrated, were engaged in a sacrifice for 100,000 years. 3. Auster
fervour was the householder; Prayer itself (*brahma*) was the brahmā priest; Truth
was their hotṛi, when the creators were so occupied. Immortality was their udgātpi
for a thousand years. The Past was their prastotṛi, the Future their pratihartṛi;
Breath was the adhvaryu, whilst they were seeking to obtain all this.” After
a good deal more of this allegory, the author proceeds in para.: 7. “These first*

It will be observed that the different parts of this account of the mode in which the three qualities are distributed, are not quite in harmony. From v. 40 it would appear that all souls having the quality of passion become men; and yet we find from vv. 43, 48, and 49, that Sūdras belong to the *tāmasa* class, and Brāhmans, of different descriptions, to two of the *Sāttvika* grades. According to the rule enunciated in v. 40, the latter ought to have been born as gods.

It is, further, remarkable that in this enumeration Sūdras are found in the same category with Mlechhas (v. 43), that the Vaiśyas are not accommodated with a position in any of the classes, that Kshattriyas and kings' domestic priests, who are of course Brāhmans, and others (who must be Brāhmans) fond of disputation on learned questions⁶⁷ (though not stated to be heretical) are ranked together as "passionate" (v. 46), while other Brāhmans of different characters are placed in two of the higher grades, Brāhmans simply so called (*riprah*) being regarded as "good" in the lowest degree (v. 48), and sacrificing priests (*yajrānah*) sharing with rishis, gods, the vedas, etc., the honour of the middle condition of goodness. It is not clear whether the devotees, and ascetics, mentioned in v. 48, belong to the same caste as the Brāhmans with whom they are associated, or may also be men of the inferior classes. Nor is it evident for what reason the sacrificing priests (*yajrānah*), specified in v. 49, are so much more highly estimated than the king's priests (*rājnah purohitāḥ*) in v. 46, since the latter also officiate at sacrifices. The honourable position assigned to Daityas in the lowest class of "good" beings (v. 48) is also deserving of notice. We shall see in the following chapter that the Purānas variously describe mankind as belonging entirely to the "passionate" class (see v. 40, above) and as characterized by the three other "qualities," according to their caste.

creators were engaged in sacrifice . . . Thence was born the preserver of the world, the golden bird called Brahma, by whom the sun glows, kindled with light. . . . 8. . . . Through this the creators created this universe. As they created the universe, they are called *visvarijah*. . . Everything is created after them." See above the reference made to *rishayo bhūta-kritāḥ* in p. 37. The allegory in this extract from the Taitt. Br. resembles in its character that in the sixth verse of the Purusha Sūkta.

* *Sārstārthakalaha-priyū cha* | Comm.

SECT. VI.—*Account of the System of Yugas, Manvantaras, and Kalpas, according to the Vishnu Purāna, and other authorities.*

I shall in the next section adduce the description given in the Vishnu Purāna of the creation of living creatures, and the origin of the four castes, after first supplying in the present some explanation of the great mundane periods, the *Yugas*, *Manvantaras*, *Kalpas*, etc.

The computations of these great periods are stated in the third chapter of the first book, and in the first chapter of the sixth book, and are clearly explained by Professor Wilson in his notes to page 50 of his translation.

One year of mortals is equal to one day of the gods.⁶⁸

12,000 divine years are equal to a period of four *Yugas*, which is

thus made up, viz.:—

Krita Yuga with its mornings and evenings.....	4,800 divine years
--	--------------------

Tretā Yuga " " "	3,600 " "
------------------	-----------

Dvāpara Yuga " " "	2,400 " "
--------------------	-----------

Kali Yuga " " "	1,200 " "
-----------------	-----------

making... 12,000 divine years.⁶⁹

As a day of the gods is = to one year of mortals, the 12,000 divine years must be multiplied by 360, the assumed number of days in a year, to give the number of the years of mortals in this great period of four *yugas*, thus: 12,000 divine years × 360 = 4,320,000 years of mortals. 1000 of these periods of 12,000 divine, or 4,320,000 human, years—i.e., 4,320,000,000 human years are = 1 day of Brahmā,⁷⁰ and his night is of the same duration. Within that period of a day of Brahmā, 14 Manus reign,⁷¹ and a *Manvantara*, or period of Manu,

⁶⁸ Vishnu P. vi. 1, 4 ahorātram pitṛīnām tu māso'bdaś tridivaukasām | See also Manu i. 66 and 67. The Taitt. Br. iii. 9, 22, 1, too, states: ekaṁ vā etad devānām ahar yat sañivatsarāḥ | “This period of a year is one day of the gods.”

⁶⁹ i. 3, 10. Divyair varsha-sahaśraistu kṛita - tretādi - sanjnitam | chaturyugam dvadasabhis tad-vibhūgaṁ nibodha me | 11. chatvāri trīṇi dee chaikam kṛitādihiḥ yathākramam | divyābdānām sahaśrāṇi yugesho āhur purāvidah | 12. Tal-pranāṇaiḥ ēataiḥ sandhyā pūrvā tatrābhiddhīyate | sandhyāñśakaś cha tat-tulyo yugasyānantardhi sah | 13. Sandhyā-sandhyāñśayor autar yah kālo muni-sattama | yugākhyāḥ se tu vijneyah kṛita-tretādi-sanjnitih |

⁷⁰ V. P. i. 3, 14. Kṛitām tretā dvīparasāḥ cha kalis chaiva chaturyugam yato tat-sahaśraīḥ oha Brahmano divasam mune | See also Manu i. 72.

⁷¹ V. P. i. 3, 15. Brahmaṇo divas brahmaṇ Manavaś cha chaturdaiṣaḥ bhadgeni |

is consequently = the 14th part of a day of Brahmā. In the present Kalpa (= a day of Brahmā) six Manus, of whom Svāyambhuva was the first, have already passed away, the present Manu being Vaivasvata.⁷² In each Manvantara seven rishis, certain deities, an Indra, a Manu, and the kings, his sons, are created and perish.⁷³ A thousand of the systems of 4 Yugas, as has been before explained, occur coincidently with these 14 Manvantaras; and consequently about 71 systems of 4 Yugas elapse during each Manvantara, and measure the lives of the Manu and the deities of the period.⁷⁴ At the close of this day of Brahmā a collapse (*pratisancharah*) of the universe takes place, which lasts through a night of Brahmā, equal in duration to his day, during which period the three worlds are converted into one great ocean, when the lotus-born god,⁷⁵ expanded by his deglutition of the universe, and contemplated by the yogis and gods in Janaloka, sleeps on the serpent Sesha. At the end of that night he awakes and creates anew.⁷⁶

A year of Brahmā is composed of the proper number of such days and nights; and 100 such years constitute his whole life. The period of his life is called *Para*, and the half of it *Parārddha*, or the half of a *Para*. One Parārddha, or half of Brahmā's existence, has now expired, terminating with the great Kalpa, called the Pādma Kalpa. The now existing Kalpa, or day of Brahmā, called Vārāha (or that of the boar), is the first of the second Parārddha of Brahmā's existence.⁷⁷ The

⁷² This is stated by Manu i. 62 ff. (see above), as well as in the third book of the V. P. i. 3, which gives the names in the same order: *Svīyambhuvo Manuh pūrve Manuh Svārochishas tathā | Auttamis Tāmasas chaiva Raivatas Chākshushas tathā | saha ete Manavo 'titih sāmpratañ tu Raveh sutah | Vaivasvato 'yañ yasyaitat saptamāñ varttate 'ntaram |*

⁷³ V. P. i. 3, 16. *Saptarshayāḥ surāḥ Śakro Manus tat-sūnavo nṛpāḥ | ekakūle hi sriyante samṛiyante cha pūrvavat |*

⁷⁴ Ibid ver. 17. *Chaturyugāñām sankhyātā sūdhikā hy eka saptatiḥ | manvantaram Manoh kālaḥ suradīnām cha sattama |* See also Mann i. 79.

⁷⁵ The birth of Prajāpati on a lotus-leaf is mentioned in the Taitt. Ārany. i. 23, 1, quoted above, p. 32.

⁷⁶ Ibid 20. *Chaturdāśa-guno hy esha kālo brāhmaṁ ahaḥ smritam | brāhmaṁ naimit-giko nāma tasyānte pratisancharah | . . . 22. Ekārnave tu trailokye Brahmā Nārāyanātmakah | bhogi-sāyyāgataḥ etē trailokya-grāsa-vrīñihitah | 23. Janasthair yogibhir devais chintyamāno 'bja-sambhavaḥ | tat-pramāñāñ hi tām rātrīm tadanto sriyate punah |* See also V. P. i. 2, 59-62, as translated by Wilson, vol. i. p. 41.

⁷⁷ Ibid ver. 24. *Evaṁ tu Brahmano varsham evañāñ varsha-satam̄ oha tat | satam̄ hi tasya varehāñāñ param̄ āyur mahātmanaḥ | 25. Ekam aya vyañitam̄ tu parārddham Brahmano 'nagha | tasyānte 'bhūd mahākalpaḥ Pādmah iūy abhivirutah | dvitiyasya*

dissolution, which occurs at the end of each Kalpa, or day of Brahmā, is called *naimittika*, incidental, occasional, or contingent. (See Wilson's *Vishṇu Purana*, vol. i. of Dr. Hall's edition, p. 52, with the editor's note; and vol. ii. p. 269. For an account of the other dissolutions of the universe I refer to the same work, vol. i. p. 113, and to pp. 630–633 of the original 4to. edition.)

Of this elaborate system of Yugas, Manvantaras, and Kalpas, of enormous duration, no traces are found in the hymns of the Rig-veda. Their authors were, indeed, familiar with the word *Yuga*,⁷⁸ which frequently occurs in the sense of age, generation, or tribe. Thus in i. 139, 8; iii. 26, 3; vi. 8, 5; vi. 15, 8; vi. 36, 5; x. 94, 12, the phrase *yuge yuge*⁷⁹ means "in every age." In iii. 33, 8; x. 10, 10, we have *uttarā yugāni*, "future ages," and in x. 72, 1, *uttare yuge*, "in a later age;" in vii. 70, 4, *pūrvāni yugāni*, "former ages,"⁸⁰ and in i. 184, 3, *yuga jūrnā*, "past ages." In i. 92, 11; i. 103, 4; i. 115, 2; i. 124, 2; i. 144, 4;⁸¹ ii. 2, 2; v. 52, 4; vi. 16, 23; vii. 9, 4; viii. 46, 12; viii. 51, 9; ix. 12, 7;⁸² x. 27, 19; x. 140, 6⁸³ (in all of which places, except i. 115, 2, the word is combined with *manushyā*, *mānushā*, *manushāḥ*, or *janānām*), *yuga* seems to denote "generations" of men, or *parūrddhasya vartamānasya* *eai dvija* | *Vārāhaḥ iti kalpo 'yam prathamaḥ parikalpitāḥ* |

⁷⁸ In Professor Willson's Dictionary three senses are assigned to *yuga* (neuter) (1) a pair; (2) an age as the Kṛita, Tretā, etc.; (3) a lustre, or period of five years. When used as masculine the word means, according to the same authority, (1) a yoke; (2) a measure of four cubits, etc.; (3) a particular drug.

⁷⁹ Sāyana, on iii. 36, 3, explains it by *pratidinam*, "every day;" on vi. 8, 5; vi. 15, 8; vi. 36, 5, by *kāle kāle*, "at every time."

⁸⁰ Sāyana takes the phrase for former "couples of husbands and wives," *mīlunām jāyāpatirūpāṇi*.

⁸¹ In i. 92, 11 and i. 124, 2, Ushas (the Dawn) is spoken of as, *praminati manushyā yugāni*, "wearing away human terms of existence, or generations." In commenting on the former text Sāyana explains *yugāni* as equivalent to *kṛita-tretādīni*, "the Kṛita, Tretā, and other ages," whilst in explaining the second, he takes the same word as signifying *yugopalakṣitān nimeshādi-kālāvayarān*, "the seconds and other component parts of time indicated by the word," or as equivalent to *yugmāni*, "the conjunctions of men,"—since the dawn scatters abroad to their several occupations men who had been previously congregated together!" In his note on i. 144, 4, he gives an option of two different senses: *manoh sambandhīni yugāni jāyāpati-rupāni hotradhvaryu rūpāṇi vā* | "couples consisting of husband and wife, or of the hotri and adhvaryu priests."

⁸² This verse, ix. 12, 7, is also found in Sāma V. ii. 552, where, however, *yujā* is substituted for *yugā*.

⁸³ This verse occurs also in Sāma V. ii. 1171, and Vāj. S. xii. 111.

rather, in some places, "tribes" of men. In v. 73, 3, the phrase *nāhushā yugā* must have a similar meaning. In i. 158, 6, it is said that the rishi Dirghatamas became worn out in the tenth *yuga*; on which Professor Wilson remarks (R. V. vol. ii. 104, note): "The scholar understands *yuga* in its ordinary interpretation; but the *yuga* of five years is perhaps intended, a lustrum, which would be nothing marvellous." Professor Aufrecht proposes to render, "in the tenth stage of life." The first passage of the Rig-veda, in which there is any indication of a considerable mundane period being denoted, is x. 72, 2 f., where "a first," or, "an earlier age (*yuga*) of the gods" is mentioned (*derānām pūrrye yuge; derānām prathame yuge*) when "the existent sprang from the non-existent" (*asataḥ sad ajāyata*); but no allusion is made to its length. In the same indefinite way reference is made in x. 97, 1, to certain "plants which were produced before the gods,—three ages (*yugas*) earlier" (*yāḥ oshadhiḥ pūrrāḥ jātāḥ dṛebhyas tri-yugam purā*). In one verse of the Atharva-veda, however, the word *yuga* is so employed as to lead to the supposition that a period of very long duration is intended. It is there said, viii. 2, 21: *śataṁ te ayutaṁ hāyanān dve yuge trīṇi chatrāri kṛiṇmah* | "we allot to thee a hundred, ten thousand, years, two, three, four ages (*yugas*)."⁶⁴ As we may with probability assume that the periods here mentioned proceed in the ascending scale of duration, two *yugas*, and perhaps even one *yuga*, must be supposed to exceed 10,000 years.

The earliest comparison between divine and human periods of duration of which I am aware is found in the text of the Taitt. Br. quoted above in a note to p. 43: "A year is one day of the gods."⁶⁵ But so far as that passage itself shows, there is no reason to imagine that the statement it contains was anything more than an isolated idea, or that the conception had, at the time when the Brāhmaṇas were compiled, been developed, and a system of immense mundane periods, whether

⁶⁴ For the context of this line see Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society for 1866, page 42.

⁶⁵ An analogous idea is found in the Śātapatha Brāhmaṇa xiv. 7, 1, 33 ff. (= Brihadāraṇyaka Upanishad pp. 817 ff. of Cal. ed.) *atha ye śatam manushyāñām ānandāḥ sa ekāḥ pitriṇām jitalokāñām ānandaḥ* | "now a hundred pleasures of men are one pleasure of the Pitris who have conquered the worlds." And so on in the same way: a hundred pleasures of the Pitris equalling one pleasure of the Karmadevas (or gods who have become so by works); a hundred pleasures of the latter equalling one pleasure of the gods who were born such, etc.

human or divine, had been elaborated. That, however, the authors of the Brâhmaṇas were becoming familiar with the idea of extravagantly large numbers is clear from the passage in the Taitt. Br. iii. 12, 9, 2, quoted above, p. 41, in the note on Manu xii. 50, where it is said that the creators were engaged in a sacrifice for 100,000 years.

Professor Roth is of opinion (see his remarks under the word Krita in his Lexicon) that according to the earlier conception stated in Manu i. 69, and the Mahâbhârata (iii. 826 ff.), the four Yugas—Krita, Tretâ, Dvâpara, and Kali, with their mornings and evenings, consisted respectively of no more than 4,800 ; 3,600 ; 2,400 ; and 1,200 ordinary years of mortals; and that it was the commentators on Manu, and the compilers of the Purânas, who first converted the years of which they were made up into divine years. The verse of Manu to which Professor Roth refers (i. 69), and the one which follows, are certainly quite silent about the years composing the Krita age being divine years :

*Chatrâry âhuḥ sahasrâṇi varshâṇam tu kritaṇi yugam | tasya târach
chhatî sandhyâ sandhyâñśchaścha tathâvidhaḥ | 70. Itareshu sasandhyeshu
sasandhâñśeshu cha trishu | ekâpâyena rartante sahasrâṇi śatâni cha |*
“They say that four thousand years compose the krita yuga, with as many hundred years for its morning and the same for its evening. 70. In the other three yugas, with their mornings and evenings, the thousands and hundreds are diminished successively by one.”

Verse 71 is as follows : *Yad etat parisankhyâtam âdâv eva chatur-
yugam | etad dvâdaśa-sahasraṇi devânâṇi yugam uchyate |* which, as explained by Medhâtithi, may be thus rendered : “Twelve thousand of these periods of four yugas, as above reckoned, are called a Yuga of the gods.” Medhâtithi’s words, as quoted by Kullûka, are these : *Chaturyugair eva dvâdaśa-sahasra-sankhyair divyam yugam |* “A divine Yuga is formed by four yugas to the number of twelve thousand.” Kullûka, however, says that his predecessor’s explanation is mistaken, and must not be adopted (*Medhâtithiher bhramo nâdarattaryah*). His own opinion is that the system of yugas mentioned in vv. 69 and 71 are identical, both being made up of divine years. According to this view, we must translate v. 71 as follows : “The period of four yugas, consisting of twelve thousand years, which has been reckoned above, is called a Yuga of the gods.” This certainly appears to be the

preferable translation, and it is confirmed by the tenor of verse 79. Verse 71, however, may represent a later stage of opinion, as it is not found in the following passage of the Mahābhārata, where the previous verse (69) is repeated, and verse 70 is expanded into three verses, though without any alteration of the sense :

M. Bh. iii. 12826 ff. — *Ādito manuja-vyāghra kṛtsnasya jagataḥ kshaye | chatvāry āhuḥ sahasrāṇi varṣhāṇūṁ tat kṛitaṁ yugam | tasya tārachchhati sandhyā sandhyāṁścha tathāvidhaḥ |*

" In the beginning, after the destruction of the entire universe, they say that there are four thousand years : that is the Kṛita Yuga, which has a morning of as many hundred years, and an evening of the same duration." And then, after enumerating in like manner the other three Yugas with their respective thousands and hundreds successively diminished by one, the speaker (the sage Mārkandeya) proceeds in verse 12831 : *Eshā drādaśahasrī yugākhyā parikirttī | etat sahasraparyantam aho brāhmaṇam udāhritam |* " This period of twelve thousand years is known by the appellation of the Yugas. A period extending to a thousand of these is called a day of Brahmā."

Nowhere, certainly, in this passage is any mention made of the years being divine years.

The earliest known text in which the names of the four Yugas are found is a verse occurring in the story of Sunahṣepa in the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa vii. 15 : *Kaliḥ śayāno bharati sanjihānas tu drāparāḥ | uttishthaṁs tretā bhavati kṛitaṁ sampadyate charan |* " A man while lying is the Kali; moving himself, he is the Dvāpara; rising, he is the Tretā; walking, he becomes the Kṛita."⁶⁶ But this brief allusion leaves us

⁶⁶ This verse has been already translated no less than six times ; twice into German by Weber and Roth (Ind. Stud. i. 286 and 460), once into Latin by Streiter (see Ind. Stud. ix. 315), and thrice into English, by Wilson (Journ. R. A. S. for 1851, p. 99), Müller (Anc. Sansk. Lit. p. 412), and Haug (Ait. Br. ii. 464). All these authors, except the last, concur in considering the verse as referring to the four Yugas. Dr. Haug, however, has the following note : " Śāyana does not give any explanation of this important passage, where the names of the Yugas are mentioned for the first time. These four names are, as is well known from other sources, . . . names of dice, used at gambling. The meaning of this Gāthā is, There is every success to be hoped; for the unluckiest die, the Kali is lying, two others are slowly moving and half fallen, but the luckiest, the Kṛita, is in full motion. The position of dice here given is indicatory of a fair chance of winning the game." Both Dr. Haug's translation and note are criticised by Professor Weber (Ind. Stud. ix. 319). Of the following verses, which occur in Manu ix. 301 f., the second is a paraphrase of that in the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa.

quite in the dark as to the duration which was assigned to these *yugas* in the age when the Brâhmaṇa was compiled.

SECT. VII.—*Account of the different creations, including that of the castes, according to the Vishnu Purâna.*

I commence with the following general account of the cosmogony of the Vishnu Purâna, extracted from Professor Wilson's Preface to his translation of that work, vol. i. p. xciii. :

"The first book of the six, into which the work is divided, is occupied chiefly with the details of creation, primary (*sarga*), and secondary (*pratisarga*); the first explains how the universe proceeds from ^{the} Prakriti, or eternal crude matter;⁸⁷ the second, in what manner the forms of things are developed from the elementary substances previously evolved, or how they re-appear after their temporary destruction.⁸⁸ Both these creations are periodical; but the termination of the first occurs only at the end of the life of Brahmâ, when not only all the gods and all other forms are annihilated, but the elements are again merged into primary substance, besides which only one spiritual being exists. The latter takes place at the end of every Kalpa or day of Brahmâ, and affects only the forms of inferior creatures and lower worlds, leaving the substances of the universe entire, and sages and gods unharmed."⁸⁹

mana : Kritam tretâ-yugañ chaiva dvâparam kalir eva cha | râjno vrittâni sarvâni
râja hi yugam uchyate | 302. Kalih prasupto bhavati sa jâgrat dvâparam yugam |
karmasv abhyudyatâ tretâ vicharâns tu kritañ yugam | "301. The Krita, Tretâ,
Dvâpara, and Kali yugas are all modes of a king's action; for a king is called a *yuga*.
302. While asleep he is the Kali; waking he is the Dvâpara age; intent upon action
he is the Tretâ, moving about he is the Krita." The former of these two verses of
Manu is reproduced nearly verbatim in the M. Bh. xii. 3408; and the same idea is ex-
panded in the same book of the same poem, vv. 2674 ff., 2682, 2684, 2686, 2693 ff.
The words *krita*, *tretâ*, *dvâpara*, and *kali*, are found in the Vâj.-Sanhitâ, xxx. 18, and
in the Taitt. Brûhmana, iii. 4, 1, 16; but in both places they denote dice, as does also
the word *krita* in the Chhândogya Upan. iv. 1, 4 (where see the commentary). On
the Yugas the reader of German may also consult Weber's Indische Studien, i. pp. 39,
87 f., 282 ff.

⁸⁷ [See Book i. chapter ii.]

⁸⁸ [See the fourth and following chapters of Book i.]

⁸⁹ See Book i. at the close of chapter vii. p. 113 of vol. i. of Professor Wilson's translation, 2nd edition, and also p. 621 and 630 of the original 4to. edition. As regards,

I proceed with the details of the creation which took place in the Vārāha Kalpa, as described in book i. chapter 4, vv. 2, ff.:

*Atīta-kalpārasāne niśā-suptotthitah prabhuh | sattrodriktas tato
Brahmā śūnyaṁ lokam arakshata | 3. Nārāyaṇah paro 'chintyāḥ
pareshāṁ api sa prabhuh | Brahma-srarūpi bhavagān anādiḥ sarva-
sambhavaḥ | . . . 6. Toyāntah sa mahīn jnātrā jagaty ekārṇare pra-
bhuh | anumānād tad-uddhāraṁ karttu-kāmaḥ prajāpatih | 7. Akarot sa
tanūm anyām kalpādīshu yathā purā | matsya-kūrmādikām tadrād
vārāhaṁ rapur āsthitaḥ | 8. Veda-yajnamayaṁ rūpam aśeṣha-jagatuh
sthitau | sthitāḥ sthirātmā sarrātmā paramātmā prajāpatih | 9. Jana-
loka-gataih siddhair Sanakādyair abhishṭhutaḥ | praviveśa tadā toyam
ātmādhāro dharā-dharah | . . . 45. Evaṁ śāṁstuyamānastu para-
mātmā mahīdharaḥ | ujjahāra mahīn kshipraṁ nyastarāṁś cha mahām-
bhasi | 46. Tasyopari jalaughasya mahatī naur iva sthitā | vitatatatvāt
tu dehasya na mahī yāti samparam | tataḥ kshitiṁ samānī kṛitrā pṛithi-
vyān so 'chinod girin | yathā-vibhāgam bhagavān anādiḥ purushottamaḥ
| 47. Prāk-sarga-dagdhān akhilān parvatān pṛithivītale | amoghena
prabhāvena sasarjāmogha-rāṁchhitah | 48. Bhuri bhāgaṁ tataḥ kṛitrā
sapta-dvīpān yathātathā | bhūr-ādyāṁś chaturo lokān pūrvarat sama-
kalpayat | 49. Brahma-rūpadhāro deras tato 'sau rajaś "vritah |
chakāra śrīṣṭim bhagavānīś chatur-vaktra-dhāro Harih | 50. nimitta-
mātram evāsau śrījyānām sarga-karmanām | pradhāna-kāraṇībhūtā
yato rai śrījya-śaktayah | 51. Nimitta-mātram muktraikam nānyat
kinchid apekshyate | nīyate tapatāmī śreshṭha svā-śaktvā vastutām |*

"2. At the end of the past (or Pādma) Kalpa, arising from his night slumber, Brahmā, the lord, endowed predominantly with the quality of goodness, beheld the universe void. 3. He (was) the supreme lord Nārāyaṇa, who cannot even be conceived by other beings, the deity without beginning, the source of all things, existing in the form of Brahmā." [The verse given in Manu i. 10, regarding the derivation of the word Nārāyaṇa (see above p. 35) is here quoted]. "6. This lord of creatures, discovering by inference,—when the world had become one ocean,—that the earth lay within the waters, and being desirous to raise it up, (7) assumed another body. As formerly, at the beginnings of the Kalpas, he had taken the form of a fish, however, the statement with which the paragraph concludes, compare vol. i. p. 50, as well as vol. ii. p. 269, of the same work.

a tortoise, and so forth,⁹⁰ (so now) entering the body of a boar (8),—a form composed of the vedas and of sacrifice,—the lord of creatures, who, throughout the entire continuance of the world, remains fixed, the universal soul, the supreme soul, self-sustained, the supporter of the earth (9),—being hymned by Sanaka and the other saints, who had (at the dissolution of the lower worlds) proceeded to Janaloka,—entered the water.” [He is then addressed by the goddess Earth in a hymn of praise, as Vishṇu, and as the supreme Brahmā, vv. 10-24. The boar then rises from the lower regions, tossing up the earth with his tusk, and is again lauded by Sanandana and other saints in a second hymn, in the course of which he himself is identified with sacrifice, and his various members with its different instruments and accompaniments, vv. 25-44]. “45. Being thus lauded, the supreme soul, the upholder of the earth, lifted her up quickly and placed her upon the great waters. 46. Resting upon this mass of water, like a vast ship, she does not sink, owing to her expansion. Then, having levelled the earth, the divine eternal Purushottama heaped together mountains according to their divisions. 47. He whose will cannot be frustrated, by his unfailing power, created on the surface of the earth all those mountains which had been burnt up in the former creation. 48. Having then divided the earth, just as it had been, into seven dvīpas, he formed the four worlds Bhūrloka and others as before. 49. Becoming next pervaded with the quality of passion, that divine being Hari, assuming the form of Brahmā, with four faces, effected the creation. 50. But he is merely the instrumental cause of the things to be created and of the creative operations, since the properties of the things to be created arise from Pradhāna as their (material) cause. 51. Excepting an instrumental cause alone, nothing else is required. Every substance (*vastu*) is brought into the state of substance (*vastutā*) by its own inherent power.”⁹¹

⁹⁰ No mention is made in the Brāhmaṇas (as I have already observed) of any such periods as the Kalpas. But here an attempt is made to systematize the different stories scattered through those older works which variously describe the manner in which the creation was effected—with the view, perhaps, of reconciling the discrepancies in those free and artless speculations which offended the critical sense of a later age.

⁹¹ See Professor Wilson's translation of these verses, and the new version proposed by the editor of the second edition, Dr. Hall, p. 66, note. I do not think the phrase

[Before proceeding further with the narrative of the Vishnu Purana, I wish to quote or refer to some passages from the Taittirīya Sanhitā and Brāhmaṇa and from the Satapatha Brāhmaṇa, which appear to furnish the original germs of the legends of the boar, fish, tortoise, and dwarf incarnations.

The first of these texts is from the Taittirīya Sanhitā, vii. 1, 5, 1 ff.:

*Āpo vai idam agre salilam āśit | tasmin Prajāpatir vāyur bhūtvā ach-
arat | sa imām apaśyat | tam varāhō bhūtvā āharat | tām Viśvakarmā
bhūtrā vyamārt | sā aprathata | sā prithivī abharat | tat prithivīyi
prithivītvam | tasyām aśrāmyat Prajāpatih | sa devān asrījata Vasūn
Rudrān Ādityān | te devāḥ Prajāpatim abruvan “prajāyāmahai” iti |
so ‘bravīd “yathā aham yushmāns tapasā asrīkshi evam tapasi pra-
jananam ichchhadhvam” iti | tobhyo ‘gnim āyatanam prāyachhad “etena
āyatanena śrāmyata” iti | te ‘gninā āyatanena aśrāmyan | te saṁvatsare
skām gām asrījanta |*

“This universe was formerly waters, fluid. On it Prajāpati, becoming wind, moved.⁹² He saw this (earth). Becoming a boar, he took her up. Becoming Viśvakarman, he wiped (the moisture from)⁹³ her. She extended. She became the extended one (*prithivi*). From this the earth derives her designation as the extended one. In her Prajāpati performed arduous devotion. He created gods, Vasus, Rudras,⁹⁴ and Adityas. The gods said to Prajāpati, ‘let us be propagated.’ He answered, ‘As I have created you through austere fervour, so do ye seek after propagation in austere fervour.’ He gave them Agni as a resting-place (saying), ‘With this as a resting-place perform your devotion.’ They (accordingly) performed devotion with Agni as a resting-place. In a year they created one cow, etc.”⁹⁵

eva-saktyā can be properly rendered, as Dr. Hall does, “by its potency.” The reading of the MSS. in v. 50, *pradhāna-kāraṇibhūtāḥ* seems to me doubtful, as it would most naturally mean “have become the Pradhāna-cause.” I conjecture *pradhāna-kāraṇodbhūtāḥ*, which gives the sense which seems to be required.

⁹² It is possible that the idea assigned to the word Nārāyaṇa (see Manu i. 10, above), “he whose place of movement is the waters,” may be connected with this passage. See also Genesis i. 2, “And the Spirit of God moved upon the face of the waters.”

⁹³ After having noticed this passage in the Taittirīya Sanhitā, I became aware that it had been previously translated by Mr. Colebrooke (Essays i. 75, or p. 44 of Williams & Norgate’s edition). Mr. Colebrooke prefaces his version by remarking, “The pre-

The second passage is from the Taittirīya Brāhmaṇa, i. 1, 3, 5 ff.
*Āpo vai idam agre salilam āśit | tena Prajūpatir aśrāmyat “katham idam
 syād” iti | so ‘paśyat pushkara-parnaṁ tishthat | so ‘manyata “asti vai
 tad yasminn idam adhitishṭhati” iti | sa varāḥ rūpaṁ kṛtvā upa-
 nyamajjat | sa prithivīṁ adhaḥ ārchedhat | tasyā upahatya udamajjat | tat
 pushkara-parne ‘prathayat | yad “aprathata” tat prithivyai prithivit-
 vam | “abhud vai idam” iti tad bhūmyai bhūmitvam | tāṁ diśo ‘nu vātaḥ
 samavahat | tāṁ śarkarābhīr adriṁhat |*

"This (universe) was formerly water, fluid.⁹⁴ With that (water) Prajāpati practised arduous devotion (saying), 'how shall this (universe be (developed))?' He beheld a lotus-leaf standing.⁹⁵ He thought, 'there is somewhat on which this (lotus-leaf) rests.' He as a boar—having assumed that form—plunged beneath towards it. He found the earth down below. Breaking off (a portion of) her, he rose to the surface. He then extended it on the lotus-leaf. Inasmuch as he extended it, that is the extension of the extended one (the earth). This became (*abhūt*). From this the earth derives its name of *bhūmī*. The wind carried her, to the four quarters. He strengthened her with gravel, etc., etc. १२१ २३० १७४५, ११८११११६१५

The Satapatha Brâhmaña, xiv. 1, 2, 11, has the following reference to the same idea, although here Prajâpati himself is not the boar:

*Iyatī ha vai iyam agre prīthivī āsa prādeśa-mātrī | tām Emūshah iti
varāhah ujjaghāna | so 'syāḥ patiḥ Prajāpatiḥ tena eva enam etan-milhu-
nena priyena dhāmnā samardhayati kṛitsnaṁ karoti |*

"Formerly this earth was only so large, of the size of a span. A boar called Emūsha raised her up. Her lord Prajāpati, therefore, prospers him with (the gift of) this pair, the object of his desire, and makes him complete."

Another of the incarnations referred to in the preceding passage of

sent extract was recommended for selection by its allusion to a mythological notion, which apparently gave origin to the story of the *Varāha-avatāra*, and from which an astronomical period, entitled *Calpa*. has perhaps been taken."

⁹⁴ The Commentator gives an alternative explanation, viz., that the word *salila* is the same as *sarira*, according to the text of the Veda, "these worlds are *sarira*" ("ime vāi lokāḥ *sariram*" *iti śruteḥ*).

⁸⁵ "Supported upon the end of a long stalk" (*dīrghanātāgrevasthitam*), according to the Commentator. In a passage from the Taitt. Āranyaka, already quoted (p. 82, above), it is said that Prajāpati himself was born on a lotus-leaf.

the Vishnu Purana is foreshadowed in the following text from the Satapatha Brähmana, vii. 5, 1, 5 :

Sa yat kürmo nāma | etad vai rūpaṁ kṛtvā Prajāpatih prajāḥ asrījata | yad asrījata akarot tat | yad akarot tasmāt kürmaḥ | kaśyapo vai kürmaḥ | tasmād āhuḥ “sarvāḥ prajāḥ kāśyapaḥ” iti | sa yaḥ sa kürmo sau sa Ādityaḥ |

“As to its being called *kürma* (a tortoise); Prajāpati having taken this form, created offspring. That which he created, he made (*akarot*); since he made, he is (called) *kürmaḥ*. The word *kaśyapa* means tortoise; hence men say all creatures are descendants of Kaśyapa. This tortoise is the same as Āditya.”⁹⁶

The oldest version of the story of the fish incarnation, which is to be found in the Satapatha Brähmana, i. 8, 1, 1 ff., will be quoted in the next chapter.

For the passages which appear to supply the germ of the dwarf incarnation, the reader may consult the fourth volume of this work, pp. 54–58 and 107 f.

It will have been noticed that in the passage above adduced from the Vishnu Purana, the word Nārāyaṇa is applied to Vishnu, and that it is the last named deity who (though in the form of Brahmā) is said to have taken the form of a boar. In the verses formerly cited from Manu (i. 9, 10), however, Nārāyaṇa is an epithet, not of Vishnu, but of Brahmā; and in the following text, from the Rāmāyaṇa, xi. 110, 3, it is Brahmā who is said to have become a boar :

Sarvāṁ salilam evāśit prithivī tatra nirmitā | tataḥ samabhavad Brahmā svayambhūr daivataḥ saha⁹⁷ | sa varūhas tato bhūtvā projahāra vāsundharām ityādi |

“All was water only, and in it the earth was fashioned. Then arose

⁹⁶ With this compare the mention made of a tortoise in the passage cited above, p. 32, from the Taitt. Āranyaka.

⁹⁷ Such is the reading of Schlegel's edition, and of that which was recently printed at Bombay, both of which, no doubt, present the most ancient text of the Rāmāyaṇa. The Gauḍa recension, however, which deviates widely from the other, and appears to have modified it in conformity with more modern taste and ideas, has here also introduced a various reading in the second of the lines quoted in the text, and identifies Brahmā with Vishnu in the following manner : *tataḥ samabhavad Brahmā svayambhūr Vishnūr aryayaḥ* | “Then arose Brahmā the self-existent and imperishable Vishnu.”

Brahmā, the self existent, with the deities. He then, becoming a boar, raised up the earth," etc.

I now return to the narrative of the Vishṇu Purāṇa.]

The further process of cosmogony is thus described in chapter v. :

Maitreya uvācha | 1. Yathā sasarjja devo 'sau devarshi-pitṛi-dānavān | manushya-tiryag-vṛikshādīn bhū-vyoma-salilaukasāḥ | 2. Yad-guṇāṁ yat-svabhāvāṁ cha yad-rūpaṁ cha jagad dvija | sargādau śrīshatvān Brahmā tad mamāchaksha vistarāt | Parāśara uvācha | 3. Maitreya kathayāmy esha śrīnushva susamāhitāḥ | yathā sasarjja devo 'sau devādīn akhilān vibhuḥ | śrīshṭīṁ chintayatas tasya kalpādīshu yathā purā | abuddhi-pūrvakaḥ sargaḥ prādurbhūtas tamomayaḥ | 4. Tamo moho māhōhas tāmisro hy andha-saṁjnītaḥ | aridyā pancha-parraishā prādurbhūtā mahātmānaḥ | 5. Panchadhā 'vasthitāḥ sargo dhyāyato 'prati-bodharān | vahir-anto-'prakāśaḥ cha saṁvrittātmā nagātmakaḥ | 6. Mukhyā nagā yataś choktā mukhya-sargas tatas tv ayam | 7. Taṁ drish-tvā 'sādhakaṁ sargam amanyad aparam punaḥ | tasyābhidhyāyataḥ sargas tiryak-srotū⁹⁸ 'bhyavarttata | 8. Yasmāt tiryak pravrīttāḥ sa tiryak-srotas tataḥ smṛitāḥ | 9. Paśvādayas te rikhyātās tamāḥ-prayāḥ hy are-dināḥ | utpatha-grāhiṇāś chaiva te 'jnāne jnāna-mānināḥ | 10. Ahamkṛitā ahammānā ashtāviṁśad-vadhānvitāḥ | antaḥ-prakāśās te sarve ārvitāś cha paraspāram | 11. Tam apy asādhakam matvā dhyāyato 'nyas tato 'bhārat | ūrdhvāsrotas trītyas tu sāttvikorddhram avarttata⁹⁹ | 12. Te sukha-priti-bahulā bahir antaś cha nārvitāḥ¹⁰⁰ | prakāśā bahir antaś cha ūrdhva-sroto-bhavāḥ smṛitāḥ | 13. Tushṭy-ātmakas trītyas tu deva-sargas tu yaḥ smṛitāḥ | tasmin sarge 'bhārat prītir nishpanne Brahmanas tādā | 14. Tato 'nyaṁ sa tādā dadhyau sādhakaṁ sargam uttamam | asādhakāṁs tu tān jnātvā mukhya-sargādi-sambhārān | 15. Tathā 'bhidhyāyatas tasya satyābhidhyāyinas tataḥ | prādurbhūtas tādā 'vyaktiād arvāk-srotas tu sādhakāḥ | 16. Yasmād arvāg vyavarttanta tato 'rvāk-srotas tu te | te cha prakāśa-bahulā tamodrikta¹⁰¹ rajo 'dhikāḥ | tasmāt te duḥkhā-bahulā bhūyo bhūyas cha kāriṇāḥ | prakāśā bahir antaś cha manushyā sādhakās tu te | 23. Ity ete tu samākhya-tā nava sargūḥ Prajā-

⁹⁸ iti sandhīr ārshaḥ —Comm.

⁹⁹ The reading of the Vāyu P., in the parallel passage, is tasyābhidhyāyato nityāṁ sāttvikāḥ samavarttata | ūrdhvāsrotas trītyas tu sa chaivordhvaṁ vyavasthitāḥ | The combination sāttvikorddhram in the text of the Vishṇu P. must be ārsha.

¹⁰⁰ For nārvitāḥ the Vāyu P. reads saṁvritōḥ.

¹⁰¹ Iti sandhīrārshaḥ | Comm. But there is a form *tama*. The Vāyu P. has *tamaḥ-saktāḥ*.

pateḥ | prākṛitā caikritāś chaiva jagato mūla-hetavaḥ | srijato jagadīśa-sya kim anyach chhrotum ichhasi | Maitreya uvācha | 24. Saṁkshepāt kathitaḥ sargo devādīnāṁ tvayā mune | vistarāch chhrotum ichhāmi tratto munivarottama | Parāśara uvācha | karmabhir bhāvitāḥ pūrvaiḥ kuśalākuśalaīs tu tāḥ | khyātyā tayā hy anirmuktāḥ saṁhāre hy upasamhīritāḥ | 25. Sthāvarāntāḥ surādyāścha prajā brahmaṇś chaturvidhāḥ | Brahmaṇaḥ kurvataḥ śrīshṭīṁ jajnire mānasīs tu tāḥ | 26. Tato devāsurapitṛīn mānushāṁś cha chatuṣṭayam | sisrikshur ambhāṁsy etāni sram ātmānam ayūyujat | 27. Yuktālmanas tamomātrā udrikta 'bhūt Prajāpateḥ | sisrikshor jaghanāt pūrvam asurāḥ jajnire tataḥ | 28. Utsasarja tatas tām tu tamo-mātrātmikām tanum | sā tu tyaktā tanus tena Maitreyābhūd vibhāvari | 29. Sisrikshur anya-deha-sthāḥ prītim āpa tataḥ surāḥ | sattvodriktaḥ samudbhūtāḥ mukhato Brahmaṇo dvija | 30. Tyaktā sā 'pi tanus tena sattva-prāyam abhūd dinam | tato hi balino rātrāv asurā deratā dirā | 31. Sattvamātrātmikām eva tato 'nyām jagrihe tanum | pitṛirad manyamānasya pitaras tasya jajnire | 32. Utsasarja pitṛīn śrīshṭrā tatas tām api sa prabhūḥ | sā chotsrishṭā 'bharat sandhyā dina-naktāntara-sthitīḥ | 33. Rajo-mātrātmikām anyām jagrihe sa tanuṁ tataḥ | rajo-mātrotkaṭā jātā manushyā dvija-sattama | tām apy āśu sa tatyāja tanum ādyāḥ Prajāpatīḥ | jyotsnā samabharat sā 'pi prāk-sandhyā yā 'bhidhīyute | 34. Jyotsnodgame tu balino manushyāḥ pitaras tathā | Maitreya sandhyā-samaye tasmād ete bharanti rai | 35. Jyotsnā-rātry-ahānī sandhyā chatvāry etāni rai vibhoḥ | Brahmaṇas tu śārirāṇī trigunāpūśrayāṇī cha | 36. Rajo-mātrātmikām eva tato 'nyām jagrihe tanum | tataḥ kshud Brahmaṇo jātā jajne kopas tayā tataḥ | 37. Kshut-khāmān andhakāre 'tha so 'srijad bhagavāṁś tataḥ | Virūpāḥ śmaśrulā jātās te 'bhyadhā-vaṁś tataḥ prabhūm | 38. "Maivam bho rakshyatām esha" yair uktāṁ rākshasās tu te | ūchuḥ "khādāma" ity anye ye te yakshās tu yakshanāt |

"Maitreya said: 1. Tell me in detail how at the beginning of the creation that deity Brahmā formed the gods, rishis, fathers, dānavas, men, beasts, trees, etc., dwelling respectively on the earth, in the sky, and in the water; 2. and with what qualities, with what nature, and of what form he made the world. Parāśara replied: 3. I declare to thee, Maitreya, how that deity created the gods and all other beings; listen with attention. While he was meditating on creation, as at the beginnings of the (previous) Kalpas, there appeared an insentient crea-

tion, composed of gloom (*tamas*). 4. Gloom, illusion, great illusion, darkness, and what is called utter darkness—such was the five-fold ignorance, which was manifested from that great Being, 5. as he was meditating—an insensible creation,¹⁰² under five conditions, devoid of feeling either without or within,¹⁰³ closed up, motionless. 6. And since motionless objects are called the primary objects, this is called the primary (*mukhya*) creation.¹⁰⁴ 7. Beholding this creation to be ineffective, he again contemplated another. As he was desiring it the brute (*tiryaksrotas*) creation came forth. 8. Since (in its natural functions) it acts horizontally it is called *Tiryaksrotas*. 9. The (creatures composing it) are known as cattle, etc., distinguished mainly by darkness (*tamas*) ignorant, following irregular courses,¹⁰⁵ while in a state of ignorance having a conceit of knowledge, (10) self-regarding, self-esteeming, affected by the twenty-eight kinds of defects, endowed with inward feeling, and mutually closed. 11. As Brahmā, regarding this creation also as ineffective, was again meditating, another creation, the third, or *ürdhvasrotas*, which was good, rose upward. 12. They (the creatures belonging to this creation) abounding in happiness and satisfaction, being unclosed both without and within, and possessed both of external and internal feeling, are called the offspring of the *Ürdhvásrotas* creation. 13. This third creation, known as that of the gods, was one full of enjoyment. When it was completed, Brahmā was pleased. 14. He then contemplated another creation, effective and most excellent, since he regarded as ineffective the beings sprung from the primary and other creations. 15. While he, whose will is efficacious, was so desiring, the *Arváksrotas*, an effective creation, was manifested.¹⁰⁶ 16. They

¹⁰² The Väyu P. here inserts an additional line, *sarvatas tamasā chaiva dīpaḥ kumbha-vad āvritah* | “and covered on all sides with darkness, as a lamp by a jar.”

¹⁰³ *Vahir-anto'prakāśascha* appears to be the true reading, as the Commentator renders the last word by *prakṛishṭa-jnāna-sūnyaḥ*, “devoid of knowledge.” But if this be the correct reading, it is ungrammatical, as *antaḥ* and *aprakāśa* would properly make *antar-aprakāśa*, not *anto'prakāśa*. But the Purāṇas have many forms which are irregular (*ārsha*, “peculiar to the rishis,” “vedic,” or “antiquated” as the Commentators style them). The Taylor MS. of the Väyu Purāṇa reads in the parallel passage *bahir-antaḥ-prakāśascha*.

¹⁰⁴ See Dr. Hall's note p. 70 on Professor Wilson's translation; and also the passage quoted above p. 16 from the Taitt. Sanh. vii. 1, 1, 4, where the word *mukhya* is otherwise applied and explained.

¹⁰⁵ *Bhakshyādi-vivekak-hīnāḥ* | “Making no distinction in food, etc., etc.” Comm.

¹⁰⁶ Compare M. Bh. xiv. 1038.

(the creatures belonging to it) are called Arvāksrotas, because (in their natural functions) they acted downwardly. And they abound in sensation (*prakūṣa*) and are full of darkness (*tamas*) with a preponderance of passion (*rajas*). Hence they endure much suffering, and are constantly active, with both outward and inward feeling. These beings were men, and effective.”¹⁰⁷

In the next following verses, 17–22, the names of the different creations, described in the first part of this section, and in the second chapter of the first book of the Vishnu Purāṇa, are recapitulated, and two others, the Anugraha and the Kaumāra, are noticed, but not explained.¹⁰⁸

The speaker Parāśara then adds: “ 23. Thus have the nine creations of Prajāpati, both Prākṛita and Vaikṛita, the radical causes of the world, been recounted. What else dost thou desire to hear regarding the creative lord of the world? Maitreya replies: 24. By thee, most excellent Muni, the creation of the gods and other beings has been summarily narrated: I desire to hear it from thee in detail. Parāśara rejoins: Called into (renewed) existence in consequence of former actions, good or bad, and unliberated from that destination when they were absorbed at the (former) dissolution of the world, (25) the four descriptions of creatures, beginning with things immovable and ending with gods, were produced, o Brāhmaṇa, from Brahmā when he was creating, and they sprang from his mind. 26. Being then desirous to create these streams (*ambhāīnsi*)¹⁰⁹—the four classes of Gods, Asuras, Fathers, and Men, he concentrated himself. 27. Prajāpati, thus concentrated, received a body, which was formed of the quality of gloom (*tamas*); and as he desired to create, Asuras were first produced from his groin. 28. He then abandoned that body formed entirely of gloom; which when abandoned by him became night. 29. Desiring to create, when he had occupied another body, Brahmā experienced pleasure; and then gods, full of the quality of goodness, sprang from his mouth. 30. That body

¹⁰⁷ The Vāyu P. adds here: *Lakshanais tārakadyaiścha ashṭādhū cha vyavasthitāḥ | siddhātmāno manusyās te gandharva-saha-dharmīnāḥ | ity esha taijasah sargo hy arvāksrotāḥ prakīrtitāḥ |* “Constituted with preservative(?) characteristics, and in an eightfold manner. These were men perfect in their essence, and in nature equal to Gandharvas. This was the lustrous creation known as Arvāksrotas.”

¹⁰⁸ See Dr. Hall's edition of Wilson's V. P. pp. 32 ff.; and pp. 74 ff.

¹⁰⁹ This word is borrowed from the passage of the Taittiriya Brāhmaṇa, ii. 3, 8, 3, quoted above, p. 23. Most of the particulars in the rest of the narrative are imitated from another passage of the same Brāhmaṇa, ii. 2, 9, 5 ff., also quoted above, p. 28.

also, being abandoned by him, became day, which is almost entirely good. Hence the Asuras are powerful by night¹¹⁰ and the gods by day. 31. He then assumed another body formed of pure goodness; and the Fathers were born from him, when he was regarding himself as a father.¹¹¹ 32. The Lord, after creating the Fathers, abandoned that body also; which, when so abandoned, became twilight, existing between day and night. 33. He next took another body entirely formed of passion; and men, in whom passion is violent, were produced. The primeval Prajāpati speedily discarded this body also, which became faint light (*jyotsnā*), which is called early twilight. 34. Hence, at the appearance of this faint light, men are strong, while the fathers are strong at evening-twilight. 35. Morning-twilight, night, day, and evening-twilight, these are the four bodies of Brahmā, and the receptacles of the three qualities. 36. Brahmā next took another body entirely formed of passion, from which sprang hunger, and through it anger was produced. 37. The Divine Being then in darkness created beings emaciated with hunger, which, hideous of aspect, and with long beards, rushed against the lord. 38. Those who said, 'Let him not be preserved' (*rakhyatām*) were called Rākshasas, whilst those others who cried, 'Let us eat (him)' were called Yakshas from 'eating' (*yakshanāt*).¹¹²

It is not necessary for my purpose that I should quote at length the conclusion of the section. It may suffice to say that verses 39 to 51 describe the creation of serpents from Brahmā's hair; of Bhūtas; of Gandharvas; of birds (*vayāñsi*) from the creator's life (*vayas*), of sheep from his breast, of goats from his mouth, of kine from his belly and sides, and of horses,¹¹³ elephants, and other animals from his feet; of plants from his hairs; of the different metres and vedas from his eastern, southern, western, and northern mouths. Verses 52 ff. contain a recapitulation of the creative operations, with some statement of the

¹¹⁰ In the Rāmāyana, Sundara Kānda 82, 13 f. (Gorresio's edit.) we read: *Rakshasām rajanī-kūlāḥ sañyugeshu prasasyate* | 14. *Tasmād rājan nisā-yauddhe jayo 'snākam na sañśayah* | "Night is the approved time for the Rakahases to fight. We should therefore undoubtedly conquer in a nocturnal conflict."

¹¹¹ This idea also is borrowed from Taitt. Br. ii. 3, 8, 2.

¹¹² See Wilson's V. P. vol. i. p. 83, and Dr. Hall's note.

¹¹³ See the passage from the Taitt. Sanh. vii. 1, 1, 4 ff. quoted above, p. 16, where the same origin is ascribed to horses.

principles according to which they were conducted. Of these verses I quote only the following : 55. *Teshāṁ ye yāni karmāṇi prāk-srīṣṭhyāṁ pratipedire | tāny eva pratipadyante sriyyamānāḥ punāḥ punāḥ | . . .* 60. *Yathārtāv ritu-lingāni nānārūpāṇi paryaye | dṛiṣyante tāni tānyeva tathā bhārā yugādīshu |* 61. *Karoty evāṁvidhāṁ srīṣṭim kalpādau sa punāḥ punāḥ | sisṛikshāśakti-yukto 'sau sriyya-śakti-prachoditāḥ |* “These creatures, as they are reproduced time after time, discharge the same functions as they had fulfilled in the previous creation . . . 60. Just as, in each season of the year, all the various characteristics of that season are perceived, on its recurrence, to be the very same as they had been before ; so too are the beings produced at the beginnings of the ages¹¹⁴ 61. Possessing both the will and the ability to create, and impelled by the powers inherent in the things to be created, the deity produces again and again a creation of the very same description at the beginning of every Kalpa.”

The sixth section of the same book of the V. P., of which I shall cite the larger portion, professes to give a more detailed account of the creation of mankind.

V. P. i. 6. 1. *Maitreya uvācha | Arrāksrotas tu kathilo bhavatā yas tu mānushaḥ | brahmaṇa ristarato brūhi Brahmā tam asrījad yathā |* 2. *Yathā cha varnān asrījad yad-guṇāṁś cha mahāmune | yachcha teshāṁ smṛitaṁ karma vīprādīnaṁ tad uchyatāṁ | Parāśara uvācha |* 3. *Satyābhīdhyāyinas tasya sisṛikshor Brahmaṇo jugat | ajāyanta dvijaśreshṭha sattvodriktaṁ mukhāt prajāḥ |* 4. *Vakshaso rajasodriktaś tathā 'nyā Brahmaṇo 'bharan | rajasā tamasā chāira samudriktaś tathorutaḥ |* 5. *Padbhyaṁ anyāḥ prajā Brahmā sasarjja dvija-sattama | tamah-pradhānāś tāḥ sarrāś chāturvarṇyam idāṁ tataḥ | brāhmaṇāḥ kshatritryā vaiśyāḥ śūdrāścha dvija-sattama | pādoru-vakshaḥ-sthalato mukhataś cha samudgatāḥ |* 6. *Yajna-nishpattaye sarvam etad Brahmā chakāra rai | chāturvarṇyam mahābhūga yajna-sādhanam uttamam |* 7. *Yajnair āpyāyitā devā vṛiṣṭy-utsargena rai prajāḥ | āpyāyayante dharma-jna yājñāḥ kalyāṇa-hetavaḥ |* 8. *Nishpadyante naraīs tais tu eva-karmābhīrataīḥ sadā | viruddhācharanāpetaiḥ sadbhīḥ sanmārga-gāmibhīḥ |* 9. *Svargāparavargau mānushyāt prāpnuvanti narā mune | yach chābhīru-chitāṁ sthānāṁ tad yānti manujā dvija |* 10. *Prajās tāḥ Brahmaṇaḥ srīṣṭūś chāturvarṇya-vyavasthitau | samyak śraddhā-samāchāra-pra-*

¹¹⁴ Verses similar to this occur in Manu i. 30 ; and in the Mahābhārata xii. 8650 f.

vanā muni-sattama | 11. Yat hechhā-vāsa-niratāḥ sarvābādha-vitarjitaḥ |
 śuddhāntaḥ-karaṇāḥ śuddhāḥ sarvānushṭhāna-nirmalāḥ | 14.¹¹⁵ Sud-
 dha cha tāsām manasi śuddhe 'ntaḥ-saṁsthite Hareu | śuddha-jnānam
 prapaśyanti Viṣhv-ākhyam yena tatpadam | 15. Tataḥ kälātmako yo
 'sau sa chāṁśaḥ kathito Hareḥ | sa pātayaty agho ghoram alpam alpālpa-
 sārarat | 16. Adharma-viṣṭa-bhūtaṁ tu tamo-lobha-samudbhavam | pra-
 jāsu tāsu Maitreya rāgādikam asādhakam | 17. Tataḥ sā sahajā siddhiḥ
 tāsām nātīra jāyate | rasollāsādayaś chānyāḥ siddhayo 'shṭau bharanti
 yāḥ | 18. Tāsu kshīṇāsv aśeshāsu varddhamāne cha pātakē | dvandvādi-
 bhara-duḥkhārttās tā bharanti tataḥ prajāḥ | 19. Tato durgāṇi tāś cha-
 krur vārkhyam pārratam audakam | kṛitimāṁ cha tathā durgam pura-
 karraṭakādi yat | 20. Grīhāṇi cha yathānyāyaṁ teshu chakruḥ purā-
 dishu | śītātapādi-bādhānām praśamāya mahāmate | 21. Pratikāram
 īmaṁ kṛitvā śītādes tāḥ prajāḥ punaḥ | vārttopāyaṁ tataś chakrur
 hasta-siddhaṁ cha karma-jam | . . . 26. Grāmyāranyāḥ smṛitā hy etā
 oshadhyāś cha chaturdaśa | yajna-nishpattaye yajnas tathā "sāṁ helur
 uttamaḥ | 27. Etāś cha saha yajñena prajānām karāṇam param |
 parāpara-vidaḥ prajnās tato yajnān ritanvate | 28. Ahany ahany
 anushṭhānam yajnānām munisattama | upakūra-karam puṁsāṁ kriya-
 mānāch cha sānti-dam | 29. Teshāṁ tu kāla-srishto 'sau pāpa-vindur
 mahāmate | chetassu varridhe chakrus te na yajñeshu mānasam | 30.
 Veda-vādāṁs tathā devān yajnakarmādikāṁ cha yat | tat sarvaṁ nin-
 damānās te yajna-ryāsedha-kāriṇaḥ | 31. Praritti-mārga-ryuchchitti-
 kāriṇo veda-nindakāḥ | durātmāno durāchārā babhūruḥ kuṭilāśayāḥ |
 32. Saṁsiddhāyāṁ tu vārttāyāṁ prajāḥ sriṣṭrā Prajāpatiḥ | maryā-
 dām sthāpayāmāsa yathā-sthānam yathā-guṇam | 34. Varnāṇām āśra-
 mānām cha dharmān dharma-bhrītāmvara | lokāṁś sarta-varṇānām
 samyag dharmānupālinām | 35. Prājāpatyam brāhmaṇānām smṛitām
 sthānaṁ kriyāratām | sthānam aindraṁ kshattriyānām sangrāmesho
 anivarttinām | 36. Vaiśyānām mārutam sthānaṁ sva-dharmam anu-
 varltinām | gāndharvām śūdra-jātiṇām paricharyāsu varltinām |

“Maitreya says: 1. You have described to me the Arvāksrotas, or
 human, creation: declare to me, o Brahman, in detail the manner in
 which Brahmā formed it. 2. Tell me how, and with what qualities,
 he created the castes, and what are traditionally reputed to be the

¹¹⁵ There are no verses numbered 12 and 13, the MSS. passing from the 11th to the 14th.

functions of the Brāhmans and others. Parāśara replies : 3. When, true to his design, Brahmā became desirous to create the world, creatures in whom goodness (*sattva*) prevailed sprang from his mouth ; (4) others in whom passion (*rajas*) predominated came from his breast; others in whom both passion and darkness (*tamas*) were strong, proceeded from his thighs ; (5) others he created from his feet, whose chief characteristic was darkness. Of these was composed the system of four castes, Brāhmans, Kshattriyas, Vaiśyas, and Sūdras, who had respectively issued from his mouth, breast, thighs, and feet. 6. Brahmā formed this¹¹⁶ entire fourfold institution of classes for the performance of sacrifice, of which it is an excellent instrument. 7. Nourished by sacrifices, the gods nourish mankind by discharging rain. Sacrifices, the causes of prosperity, (8) are constantly celebrated by virtuous men, devoted to their duties, who avoid wrong observances, and walk in the right path. 9. Men, in consequence of their humanity, obtain heaven and final liberation ; and they proceed to the world which they desire. 10. These creatures formed by Brahmā in the condition of the four castes, (were) perfectly inclined to conduct springing from religious faith, (11) loving to dwell wherever they pleased, free from all sufferings, pure in heart, pure, spotless in all observances. 14. And in their pure minds,—the pure Hari dwelling within them,—(there existed) pure knowledge whereby they beheld his highest station, called (that of) Vishṇu.¹¹⁷ 15. Afterwards that which is described as the portion of Hari consisting of Time¹¹⁸ infused into those beings direful sin, in the form of desire and the like, ineffective (of man's end), small in amount, but gradually increasing in force, (16) the seed of unrighteousness, and sprung from darkness and cupidity. 17. Thenceforward their innate perfectness was but slightly evolved : and as all the other eight perfections called *rasollāsa* and the rest (18) declined, and sin increased, these creatures (mankind) were afflicted with suffering arising

¹¹⁶ How does this agree with the statements made in the Taitt. Sanh. vii. 1, 1, 4 ff. as quoted above, p. 16, and in the Taitt. Br. iii. 2, 3, 9, p. 21, that the Sūdra is incapacitated for sacrifice, and that anything he milks out is no oblation?

¹¹⁷ This alludes to an expression in the Rig-veda, i. 22, 20. See the 4th vol. of this work, p. 54.

¹¹⁸ In regard to *Kāla*, "Time," see Wilson's V. P. vol. i. p. 18 f., and the passages from the Atharva-veda, extracted in the Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society for 1866, pp. 380 ff.

out of the pairs (of susceptibilities to pleasure and pain, etc., etc.) 19. They then constructed fastnesses among trees, on hills, or amid waters, as well as artificial fortresses, towns, villages, etc. 20. And in these towns, etc., they built houses on the proper plan, in order to counteract cold, heat, and other discomforts. 21. Having thus provided against cold, etc., they devised methods of livelihood depending upon labour, and executed by their hands." The kinds of grain which they cultivated are next described in the following verses 22 to 25. The text then proceeds, verse 26: "These are declared to be the fourteen kinds of grain, cultivated and wild, fitted for sacrifice; and sacrifice is an eminent cause of their existence. 27. These, too, along with sacrifice, are the most efficacious sources of progeny. Hence those who understand cause and effect celebrate sacrifices. 28. Their daily performance is beneficial to men, and delivers from sins committed. 29. But that drop of sin which had been created by time increased in men's hearts, and they disregarded sacrifice. 30. Reviling the Vedas, and the prescriptions of the Vedas, the gods, and all sacrificial rites, etc., obstructing oblations, (31) and cutting off the path of activity,¹¹⁹ they became malignant, vicious, and perverse in their designs. 32. The means of subsistence being provided, Prajāpati, having created living beings, established a distinction according to their position and qualities (see verses 3 to 5 above), (and fixed) the duties of the castes and orders, and the worlds (to be attained after death) by all the castes which perfectly fulfilled their duties. 33. The world of Prajāpati is declared to be the (future) abode of those Brāhmans who are assiduous in religious rites; the realm of Indra the abode of those Kshattriyas who turn not back in battle; (34) that of the Maruts the abode of those Vaiśyas who fulfil their duties; and that of the Gandharvas the abode of the men of Sudra race who abide in their vocation of service." In the remaining verses of the chapter (35 to 39) the realms of blessedness destined for the reception of more eminent saints are briefly noticed, as well as the infernal regions, to which the wicked are doomed.

¹¹⁹ *Pravṛitti-mārga-vyucchchitti-kūrināḥ*. The Commentator ascribes this to the human race being no longer sufficiently propagated, for he adds the explanation: *yajnānanushthāne devair avarṣhaṇānd annābhāvena prajā-eriddher asiddheḥ* | "because population did not increase from the want of food caused by the gods ceasing to send rain in consequence of the non-celebration of sacrifice."

At the beginning of the seventh section, without any further enquiry on the part of Maitreya, Parāśara proceeds as follows :

V. P. i. 7. 1. *Tato 'bhidhyāyatas tasya jajnire mānasīḥ prajāḥ | tach-chharīra-samutpannaiḥ kāryais taiḥ kāraṇaiḥ saha |* 2. *Kshettrajnāḥ samavarttanta gātrebhyas tasya dhīmataḥ | te sarve samavarttanta ye mayā prāg udāhṛitāḥ |* 3. *Derādyāḥ sthāvarāntāś cha traiguṇya-vishaye sthitāḥ | eram bhūtāni śrīṣṭāni charāni sthāvarāni cha |* 4. *Yadā 'syā tāḥ prajāḥ sarvā ra ṛyāraddhanta dhīmataḥ | athānyān mānasān putrān sadṛisān ātmāno 'strijat |* 5. *Bhrigum Pulastyam Pu-lahāṁ Kratum Angirasaṁ tathā | Marīchiṁ Daksham Atriṁ cha Vasish-ṭhaṁ chaiva mānasān | nara brahmāna ity ete purāne niśchayaṁ gatāḥ |* 6. *Sanandanādayo ye cha purvāṁ śrīṣṭās tu Vedhasā | na te lokeśhv asajjanta nirapekshāḥ prajāsu te | sarve te chāgata-jnānā vīta-rāgā vimatsarāḥ |* 7. *Teshv eraṁ nirapeksheshu loka-śrīṣṭau mahātmanāḥ | Brahmano 'bhūd mahākroḍhas trailokyā-dahana-kshamaḥ |* 8. *Tasya kroḍhāt samudbhūta-jvālā-mālā-vidīpitam | Brahmano 'bhūt tadā sarvāṁ trailokyam akhilam mune |* 9. *Bhrūkuṭī-kuṭīlāt tasya lalāṭāt kroḍha-dīpitāt | samutpannas tadā Rudro madhyāhnārka-sama-prabhāḥ | ardhā-nārī-nara-rapuh prachāndo 'tiśārīravān | vibhajātmānam ity uktrā tam Brahmā 'ntardadhe punāḥ |* 10. *Tathokto 'sau drīdhā strītrām purushat-vaṁ tathā 'karot | bibheda purushtvaṁ cha daśadhā chaikadhā cha saḥ |* 11. *Saumyāsaumyais tathā śāntāśāntaiḥ strītraṁ cha sā prabhuḥ | bi-bheda bahudhā devaḥ svarūpair asitaiḥ sitaiḥ |* 12. *Tato Brahmā 'tmā-sambhūtam pūrvāṁ svāyambhuram prabhūm | ātmānam eva kṛitavān pra-jāpālam Manuṁ dvija |* 13. *Satarūpāṁ cha tāṁ nārīṁ tapo-nirdhūta-kalmashām | svāyambhuvo Manur devaḥ patnyarthāṁ jagrihe vibhuḥ |* 14. *Tasmāch cha purushād devī Satarūpā vyajāyata | Priyavratottāna-pādau Prasūtyākūti-sanjnītam | kanyā-drayām cha dharma-jna rūpau-dārya-guṇānritam |* 15. *Dadau Prasūtiṁ Dakshāyāthākūtiṁ Ruchayo purā ityādi |*

" 1. Then from him, as he was desiring, there were born mental sons with effects and causes¹²⁰ derived from his body. 2. Embodied spirits sprang from the limbs of that wise Being. All those creatures sprang forth which have been already described by me, (3) beginning

¹²⁰ The Commentator explains these words *kāryais taiḥ kāraṇaiḥ saha* to mean "bodies and senses."

with gods and ending with motionless objects, and existing in the condition of the three qualities. Thus were created beings moving and stationary. 4. When none of these creatures of the Wise Being multiplied, he next formed other, mental, sons like to himself, (5) Bhṛigu, Pulastya, Pulaha, Kratu, Angiras, Marīchi, Daksha, Atri, and Vasishtha, all born from his mind. These are the nine Brahmās who have been determined in the Purāṇas. 6. But Sanandana and the others who had been previously created by Vedhas (Brahmā) had no regard for the worlds, and were indifferent to offspring. They had all attained to knowledge, were freed from desire, and devoid of envy. 7. As they were thus indifferent about the creation of the world, great wrath, sufficient to burn up the three worlds, arose in the mighty Brahmā. 8. The three worlds became entirely illuminated by the wreath of flame which sprang from his anger. 9. Then from his forehead, wrinkled by frowns and inflamed by fury, arose Rudra, luminous as the midday sun, with a body half male and half female, fiery, and huge in bulk. After saying to him, 'Divide thyself,' Brahmā vanished. 10. Being so addressed, Rudra severed himself into two, into a male and a female form. The god next divided his male body into eleven parts, (11) beautiful and hideous, gentle and ungentle; and his female figure into numerous portions with appearances black and white. 12. Brahmā then made the lord Svāyambhuva, who had formerly sprung from himself, and was none other than himself, to be Manu the protector of creatures. 13. The god Manu Svāyambhuva took for his wife the female Satarūpā, who by austere fervour had become freed from all defilement. 14. To that Male the goddess Satarūpā bore Priyavrata and Uttānapāda, and two daughters called Prasūti and Ākūti, distinguished by the qualities of beauty and magnanimity. 15. He of old gave Prasūti in marriage to Daksha, and Ākūti to Ruchi."

From a comparison of the preceding narratives of the creation of mankind, extracted from the fifth and sixth chapters of the First Book of the Vishṇu Purāṇa, it will be seen that the details given in the different accounts are not consistent with each other. It is first of all stated in the fifth chapter (verse 16) that the arvāksrotas, or human creation was characterized by the qualities of darkness and passion. In the second account (verse 33) we are told that Brahmā assumed a body composed of passion, from which men, in whom that quality is power-

ful, were produced.¹²¹ In neither of these narratives is the slightest allusion made to there having been any primeval and congenital distinction of classes. In the third statement given in the sixth chapter (verses 3 to 5) the human race is said to have been the result of a four-fold creation; and the four castes, produced from different parts of the creator's body, are declared to have been each especially characterized by different qualities (*gunas*), viz., those who issued from his mouth by goodness (*sattva*), those who proceeded from his breast by passion (*rajas*), those who were produced from his thighs by both passion and darkness (*tamas*), and those who sprang from his feet by darkness. In the sequel of this account, however, no mention is made of any differences of conduct arising from innate diversities of disposition having been manifested in the earliest age by the members of the different classes. On the contrary, they are described (verses 10 ff.) in language applicable to a state of perfection which was universal and uniform, as full of faith, pure-hearted and devout. In like manner the declension in purity and goodness which ensued is not represented as peculiar to any of the classes, but as common to all. So far, therefore, the different castes seem, according to this account, to have been undistinguished by any variety of mental or moral constitution. And it is not until after the deterioration of the entire race has been related, that we are told (in verses 32 f.) that the separate duties of the several castes were fixed in accordance with their position and qualities. This sketch of the moral and religious history of mankind, in the earliest period, is thus deficient in failing to explain how beings, who were originally formed with very different ethical characters, should have been all equally excellent during their period of perfection, and have also experienced an uniform process of decline.

In regard to the variation between the two narratives of the creation found in the fifth chapter of the Vishṇu Purāṇa, Professor Wilson remarks as follows in a note to vol. i. p. 80: "These reiterated, and not always very congruous, accounts of the creation are explained by the Purāṇas as referring to different Kalpas or renovations of the world, and therefore involving no incompatibility. A better reason for their appearance

¹²¹ Compare the passage given above at the close of Sect. V. pp. 41 ff., from Manu xii. 39 ff. and the remarks theron.

is the probability that they have been borrowed from different original authorities.”¹²²

As regards the first of these explanations of the discrepancies in question, it must be observed that it is inapplicable to the case before us, as the text of the Vishnu Purana itself says nothing of the different accounts of the creation having reference to different Kalpas: and in absence of any intimation to the contrary we must naturally assume that the various portions of the consecutive narration in the fourth, fifth, sixth, and seventh chapters, which are connected with each other by a series of questions and answers, must all have reference to the creation which took place at the commencement of the existing or Vārāha Kalpa, as stated in the opening verse of the fourth chapter. Professor Wilson’s supposition that the various and discrepant accounts “have been borrowed from different original authorities” appears to have probability in its favour. I am unable to point out the source from which the first description of the creation, in the early part of the fifth chapter, verses 1 to 23, has been derived. But the second account, given in verses 26 to 35, has evidently drawn many of its details from the passages of the Taittiriya Brähmana ii. 2, 9, 5–9, and ii. 3, 8, 2 f., and Satapatha Brähmana xi. 1, 6, 6 ff. which I have quoted above. And it is possible that the references which are found in the former of these descriptions in the Vishnu Purana to different portions of the creation

¹²² The discrepancies between current legends on different subjects are occasionally noticed in the text of the Vishnu Purana. Thus in the eighth chapter of the first book, v. 12, Maitreya, who had been told by Parusara that S'ri was the daughter of Bhṛigu and Khyāti, enquires : *Kshirābdhau S'rīh puotpannā śrūyate 'mrīta-manthane | Bhṛigoh Khyātyām samutpannety etad āha katham bhavīn |* “It is reported that S'ri was produced in the ocean of milk when ambrosia was churned. How do you say that she was born to Bhṛigu by Khyāti ?” He receives for answer : 13. *Nityaiva sā jagannātā Vishnoh S'rīr anapayinī* (another MS. reads *anuyāy nī*) *yathā sarvagato Vishnus tathaiveyam devijottama |* “S'ri, the mother of the world, and wife of Vishnu, is eternal and undecaying” (or, according to the other reading, “is the eternal follower of Vishnu”). “As he is omnipresent, so is she,” and so on. The case of Daksha will be noticed further on in the text. On the method resorted to by the Commentators in cases of this description Professor Wilson observes in a note to p. 203 (4to. edition), “other calculations occur, the incompatibility of which is said, by the Commentators on our text and on that of the Bhāgavata, to arise from reference being made to different Kalpas; and they quote the same stanza to this effect : *Kvachit kvachit purāñeshu virodro yadi lakṣhyate | kalpa-bhedabhibhiḥ tatra virodhah sadbhīr iṣhyate |* ‘Whenever any contradictions in different Purāṇas are observed, they are ascribed by the pious to differences of Kalpas and the like.’”

being ineffective may have been suggested by some of the other details in the Brāhmaṇas, which I shall now proceed to cite. At all events some of the latter appear to have given rise to the statement in the fourth verse of the seventh chapter of the Vishṇu P. that the creatures formed by Brahmā did not multiply, as well as to various particulars in the narratives which will be quoted below from the Vāyu and Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇas. The Brāhmaṇas describe the creative operations of Prajāpati as having been attended with intense effort, and often followed by great exhaustion; and not only so, but they represent many of these attempts to bring living creatures of various kinds into existence, to sustain them after they were produced, and to ensure their propagation, as having been either altogether abortive, or only partially successful. The following quotations will afford illustrations of these different points :

Taitt. Br. i. 1, 10, 1. *Prajāpatiḥ prajāḥ asrijata | sa ririchāno 'man-*
yata | sa tapo 'tapyata | sa ātman vīryam apaśyat tad ararddhata |

“Prajāpati created living beings. He felt himself emptied. He performed austere abstraction. He perceived vigour in himself. It increased, etc.”

Taitt. Br. i. 2, 6, 1. *Prajāpatiḥ prajāḥ śrishṭrū vṛitto¹²³ 'śayat | taṁ*
devāḥ bhūtānām rasañ tejah sambhritya tena enam abhishajyan “mahān
avaratti” iti |

“Prajāpati after creating living beings lay exhausted. The gods, collecting the essence and vigour of existing things, cured him therewith, saying he has become great, etc.”

Taitt. Br. ii. 3, 6, 1. *Prajāpatiḥ prajāḥ śrishṭrū vyasraṁsata | sa hrī-*
dayam bhūto 'śayat |

“Prajāpati, after creating living beings, was paralysed. Becoming a heart, he slept.”

S. P. Br. iii. 9, 1, 1. *Prajāpatiḥ vai prajāḥ sasrijāno ririchānah ira-*
amanyata | tasmāt parāchyaḥ prajāḥ āsuḥ | na asya prajāḥ śriye 'nnād-
yāya jajnire | 2. Sa aikshata “arikṣy aham asmai (? yasmai) u kāmāya
asrīkṣhi na me sa kāmaḥ samārdhi parāchyo mat-prajāḥ abhūvan na me
prajāḥ śriye 'nnādyāya asthishata” iti | 3. Sa aikshata Prajāpatiḥ
“kathām nu punar ātmānam āpyādyeyā upa mā prajāḥ samāvartterāṁs
tih̄heran me prajāḥ śriye annādyāya” iti | so 'rchanā śrāmyamś cha-

¹²³ *Śrāntah—Comm.*

chāra prajā-kāmaḥ | sa etām ekādaśinīm apaśyat | sa ekādaśinyā iṣṭvā Prajāpatiḥ punar ātmānam āpyāyata upa enam prajāḥ samāvarttanta atiṣṭhanta asya prajāḥ śriye 'nnādyāya sa vasīyān eva iṣṭvā 'bhavat |

“Prajāpati when creating living beings felt himself as it were emptied. The living creatures went away from him. They were not produced so as to prosper and to eat food. 2. He considered : ‘I have become emptied: the object for which I created them has not been fulfilled: they have gone away, and have not gained prosperity and food.’ 3. He considered : ‘how can I again replenish myself; and how shall my creatures return to me, and acquire prosperity and food?’ Desirous of progeny, he went on worshipping and performing religious rites. He beheld this Ekādaśinī (Eleven); and sacrificeing with it, he again replenished himself; his creatures returned to him, and gained prosperity and food. Having sacrificed, he became more brilliant.”

S. P. Br. x. 4, 2, 2. *So yañ saṁvatsaraḥ Prajāpatiḥ sarrāṇi bhūtāni saśrīje yach cha prāṇi yach cha aprāṇam ubhayān dera-manushyān | sa sarvāṇi bhūtāni śrīṣṭvā rīrichāna ira mene | sa mrityor bibhiyānchakāra |* 2. *Sa ha iṣkhanchakre “kathaṁ nv aham imāni sarrāṇi bhūtāni punar ātmann āvaprya punar ātman dadhīya kathaṁ nv aham eva eshām sarveshām bhūtānām punar ātmā syām” iti |*

“This Year, (who is) Prajāpati, created all beings, both those which breathe and those that are without breath, both gods and men. Having created all beings he felt himself as it were emptied. He was afraid of death. 2. He reflected, ‘How can I again unite all these beings with myself, again place them in myself? How can I alone be again the soul of all these beings?’ ”

S. P. Br. x. 4, 4, 1. *Prajāpatiṁ vai prajāḥ śrijamānam pāpmā mrityur abhiparijaghāna | sa tapo 'tapyata sahasraṁ saṁvatsarān pāpmānaṁ vijihāsan |*

“Misery, death, smote Prajāpati, as he was creating living beings. He performed austere abstraction for a thousand years, with the view of shaking off misery.”

S. P. Br. ii. 5, 1, 1. *Prajāpatiḥ ha vai idam agre ekaḥ eva āsa | sa aikshata “kathaṁ nu prajāyeya” iti | so 'śrāmyat sa tapo 'tapyata | sa prajāḥ asrijata | tāḥ asya prajāḥ śrīṣṭiḥ parābabhūruḥ | tāni imāni vayāṁsi | purusho vai Prajāpater nedishṭham | dvipād vai ayam puruṣaḥ | tasmād dvipādo vayāṁsi | 2. Sa aikshata Prajāpatiḥ | “yathā*

nv eva purā eko 'bhūram evam u nv eva apy etarhy eka eva asmi" iti | sa dvitiyāḥ sasrije | tāḥ asya parā eva babhūruḥ | tad idam kshudram sariśripaṁ yad anyat sarpebhyaḥ | tritiyāḥ sasrije ity āhus tāḥ asya parā eva babhūruḥ | te ime sarpāḥ . . . | 3 So 'rchanā śrāmyan Prajāpatir ikshānchakre "kathaṁ nu me prajāḥ śrīshṭāḥ parābhavanti" iti | sa ha etad era dadarśa "anaśanatayā rai me prajāḥ parābhavanti" iti | sa ātmanāḥ eva agre stanayoḥ paya ḫpyāyayānchakre | sa prajāḥ asrijata | tāḥ asya prajāḥ śrīshṭāḥ stanāv era abhipadya tās tataḥ sambabbūruḥ | tāḥ imāḥ aparābhūtāḥ |

"1. Prajāpati alone was formerly this universe. He reflected, 'How can I be propagated?' He toiled in religious rites, and practised austere fervour. He created living beings. After being created by him they perished. They were these birds. Man is the thing nearest to Prajāpati. This being, man, is two-footed. Hence birds are two-footed creatures. Prajāpati reflected, 'As I was formerly but one, so am I now also only one.' He created a second set of living beings. They also perished. This was the class of small reptiles other than serpents. They say he created a third set of beings, which also perished. They were these serpents . . . 3. Worshipping and toiling in religious rites, Prajāpati reflected, 'How is it that my creatures perish after they have been formed?' He perceived this, 'they perish from want of food.' In his own presence he caused milk to be supplied to breasts. He created living beings, which resorting to the breasts were thus preserved. These are the creatures which did not perish."

Taitt. Br. i. 6, 2, 1. *Vaiśradevena vai Prajāpatih prajāḥ asrijata | tāḥ śrīshṭāḥ na prājāyanta | so'gnir akāmayata "aham imāḥ prajanayeyam" iti | sa Prajāpataye śucham adadhāt | so'sochat prajām ichhamānāḥ | tasmād yaṁ cha prajā bhunakti yaṁ cha na tāv ubhau śochataḥ prajām ichhamānau | tāsv Agnim apy asrijat | tā Agnir adhyait (2) Somo reto 'dadhat Saritā prājanayat | Sarasvatī vācham adadhāt | Pūshā 'poshayat | te vai ete triḥ saṁvatsarasya prayuṣyante ye devāḥ pushṭipatayah | saṁvatsaro vai Prajāpatih | saṁvatsareṇa eva asmai prajāḥ prājanayat | tāḥ prajāḥ jātāḥ Maruto 'ghnan "asmān api na prāyukshata" iti | 3. Sa etam Prajāpatir mārutam saptakapālam apaśyat | tam niravapat | tato vai prajābhyo 'kalpata | . . . sa Prajāpatir aśochat "yūḥ pūrvāḥ prajāḥ asrikshi Marutas tāḥ avadhishuḥ katham aparāḥ*

sriyēya” iti | tasya śushma āñdam bhūtañ niravartata | tad vyudharat | tad aposhayat | tat prājāyata |

“Prajāpati formed living creatures by the vaiśvadeva (offering to the Viśvedevas). Being created they did not propagate. Agni desired ‘let me beget these creatures.’ He imparted grief to Prajāpati. He grieved, desiring offspring. Hence he whom offspring blesses, and he whom it does not bless, both of them grieve, desiring progeny. Among them he created Agni also. Agni desired (?) them. Soma infused seed. Savitṛi begot them. Sarasvatī infused into them speech. Pūshan nourished them. These (gods) who are lords of nourishment are employed thrice in the year. Prajāpati is the Year. It was through the year that he generated offspring for him. The Maruts killed those creatures when they had been born, saying ‘they have not employed us also. 3. Prajāpati saw this Māruta oblation in seven platters. He offered it. In consequence of it he became capable of producing offspring . . . Prajāpati lamented, (saying) ‘the Maruts have slain the former living beings whom I created. How can I create others?’ His vigour sprang forth in the shape of an egg. He took it up. He cherished it. It became productive.”

Taitt. Br. iii. 10, 9, 1. *Prajāpatir devān asrijata | te pāpmanā sanditāḥ ajāyanta | tān vyadyat |*

“Prajāpati created gods. They were born bound by misery. He released them.”

Taitt. Br. ii. 7, 9, 1. *Prajāpatiḥ prajāḥ asrijata | tāḥ asmāt srishṭāḥ parāchīr āyan | sa etam Prajāpatir odanam apaśyat | so 'nnam bhūto 'tishṭhat | tāḥ anyatra annādyam avitvā Prajāpatim prajāḥ upāvarttanta |*

“Prajāpati created living beings. They went away from him. He beheld this odana. He was turned into food. Having found food nowhere else, they returned to him.”

Taitt. Br. i. 6, 4, 1. *Prajāpatiḥ Savitā bhūtrā prajāḥ asrijata | tā enam atyamanyanta | ta asmād apākrāman | tā Varuno bhūtrā prajāḥ Varunena agrāhayat | tāḥ prajāḥ Varuna-grihitāḥ Prajāpatim punar upādhāvan nātham ichhamānāḥ |*

“Prajāpati, becoming Savitṛi, created living beings. They disregarded him, and went away from him. Becoming Varuṇa he caused Varuṇa to seize them. Being seized by Varuṇa, they again ran to Prajāpati, desiring help.”

Taitt. Br. ii. 2, 1, 1. *Tato vai sa (Prajāpatih) prajūḥ asrijata | tūl
asmat sriṣṭā apākrāman |*

"Prajāpati then created living beings. They went away from him."

I have perhaps quoted too many of these stories, which are all similar in character. But I was desirous to afford some idea of their number as well as of their tenor.

As regards the legend of Satarūpā, referred to in the seventh chapter of the first book of the Vishṇu Purāna, I shall make some further remarks in a future section, quoting a more detailed account given in the Matsya Purāna.

Of the two sons of Manu Svāyambhuva and Satarūpā, the name of the second, Uttānapāda, seems to have been suggested by the appearance of the word Uttānapad in Rig-veda x. 72, 3, 4, as the designation (nowhere else traceable, I believe) of one of the intermediate agents in the creation.¹²⁴ A Priyavrata is mentioned in the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa vii. 34, and also in the Satapatha Brāhmaṇa x. 3, 5, 14, (where he has the patronymic of Rauhiṇāyana) but in both these texts he appears rather in the light of a religious teacher, who had lived not very long before the age of the author, than as a personage belonging to a very remote antiquity. Daksha also, who appears in this seventh chapter as one of the mindborn sons of Brahmā, is named in R. V. ii. 27, 1, as one of the Ādityas, and in the other hymn of the R.V. just alluded to, x. 72, vv. 4 and 5, he is noticed as being both the son and the father of the goddess Aditi. In the S. P. ii. 4, 4, he is identified with Prajāpati.¹²⁵ In regard to his origin various legends are discoverable in the Purāṇas. Besides the passage before us, there are others in the V. P. in which he is mentioned. In iv. 1, 5, it is said that he sprang from the right thumb of Brahmā, and that Aditi was his daughter (*Brahmaṇaścha dakṣināngushṭha-janmā Dakshāḥ | Prajāpater Dakshasyāpy Aditiḥ*). In another place, V. P. i. 15, 52, it is said that Daksha, although formerly the son of Brahmā, was born to the ten Prachetasas by Mārīshā (*Daśabhyas tu Prachetobhyo Mārīshyām Prajāpatih | jajne Daksho mahābhāgo yaḥ pūrvam Brahmano 'bhavat |*). This double pa-

¹²⁴ See the 4th vol. of this work, pp. 10 f.

¹²⁵ See the 4th vol. of this work, pp. 10 ff. 24, 101; Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society, for 1865, pp. 72 ff.; Roth in the Journal of the German Oriental Society,

rentage of Daksha appears to Maitreya, one of the interlocutors in the Purāṇa, to require explanation, and he accordingly enquires of his informant, vv. 60 ff.: *Angushṭhād dakṣinād Dakṣaḥ pūrvam jātaḥ śrutam mayā | katham Prāchetaso bhūyah sa sambhuto mahāmune | esha me saṁśayo brahmaṇ sumahān hrīdī varttate | yad dāuhitras cha somasya punaḥ śvaśuratām gataḥ | Parāśara urācha | utpattiś cha nirodhāś cha nityau bhūteshu vai mune | ṛshayo 'tra na muhyanti ye chānye dīrya-chakshushaḥ | 61. Yuge yuge bhavanty ete Dakṣhādyā muni-sattama | punaś chaiva nirudhyante ridrāma tatra na muhyati | 62. Kāniṣṭhyām jyaishṭhyam apy eshām pūrvam nābhūd dṛijottama | tapa eva garīyo 'bhūt prabhāvāś chaiva kāranam |*

“60. I have heard that Daksha was formerly born from the right thumb of Brahmā. How was he again produced as the son of the Prachetas? This great doubt arises in my mind; and also (the question) how he, who was the daughter's son of Soma,¹²⁶ afterwards became his father-in-law. Parāśara answered: Both birth and destruction are perpetual among all creatures. Rishis, and others who have celestial insight, are not bewildered by this. In every age Daksha and the rest are born and are again destroyed: a wise man is not bewildered by this. Formerly, too, there was neither juniority nor seniority: austere fervour was the chief thing, and power was the cause (of distinction).”

The reader who desires further information regarding the part played by Daksha, whether as a progenitor of allegorical beings, or as a creator, may compare the accounts given in the sequel of the seventh and in the eleventh chapters of Book I. of the V. P. (pp. 108 ff. and 152 ff.) with that to be found in the fifteenth chapter (vol. ii. pp. 10 ff.).

I will merely add, in reference to Akūti, the second daughter of Manu Svāyambhuva and Satarūpā, that the word is found in the Rig-veda with the signification of “will” or “design;” but appears to be personified in a passage of the Taittirīya Brāhmaṇa, iii. 12, 9, 5 (the context of which has been cited above, p. 41), where it is said: *Irā patnī viśvaerijām ākūtir apinād hariḥ |* “Irā (Idā) was the wife of the creators. Akūti kneaded the oblation.”

SECT. VIII.—Account of the different creations, including that of the castes, according to the Vāyu and Mārkandeya Purāṇas.

I now proceed to extract from the Vāyu and Mārkandeya Purāṇas the accounts which they supply of the creation, and which are to the same effect as those which have been quoted from the Vishṇu Purāṇa, although with many varieties of detail.

I shall first adduce a passage from the fifth chapter of the Vāyu (which to some extent runs parallel with the second chapter of the Vishṇu Purāṇa¹²⁷), on account of its containing a different account from that generally given of the triad of gods who correspond to the triad of qualities (*gunas*).

Vāyu Purāṇa, chapter v. verse 11. *Ahar-mukhe prarritte cha paraḥ prakṛiti-sambharaḥ | kshobhayāmāsa yogena pareṇa parameśvaraḥ |* 12. *Pradhānam purusham chaira praviṣyāṇḍam Maheśvaraḥ |* 13. *Pradhānāt kshobhyamānāt tu rajo rai samavarttata | rajaḥ pravarttakaṁ tatra cījeshv api yathā jalam |* 14. *Guṇa-raishamyam āśādya prasūyante hy adhishṭhitāḥ | gunebhyaḥ kshobhyamānebhyaḥ trayo devā rījajnire |* 15. *Āśritāḥ¹²⁸ paramā guhyāḥ sarrātmānah śarīriṇāḥ | rajo Brahmā tamо hy Agnih sattram Vishṇur ajāyata |* 16. *Rajaḥ-prakāśako Brahmā sraṣṭṛlvena ryavasthitāḥ | tamah-¹²⁹prakāśako 'gnis tu kālatrena ryavasthitāḥ |* 17. *Sattva-prakāśako Vishṇur audāśīnye ryavasthitāḥ | ete eva trayo lokā ete eva trayo gunāḥ |* 18. *Ete eva trayo vedā ete eva trayo 'gnayah | parasparāśritāḥ hy ete paraspāram anuvratāḥ |* 19. *Paraspāreṇa varttante dhārayanti paraspāram | anyonya-mithunā hy ete hy anyonyam upajīvināḥ |* 20. *Kshanañ viyoga na hy eshām na tyajanti paraspāram | Iśvaro hi paro devo Vishṇus tu mahataḥ paraḥ |* 21. *Brahmā tu rajosadrīktaḥ sargāyeha pravarttate | paraścha purusho jneyaḥ prakṛitiścha parā smṛitā |*

¶ “ 11, 12. At the beginning of the day, the supreme Lord Maheśvara, sprung from Prakṛiti, entering the egg, agitated with extreme intentness both Pradhāna (= Prakṛiti) and Purusha. 13. From

¹²⁷ See pp. 27 and 41 f. of Wilson's V. P. vol. i.

¹²⁸ The Gaikowar MS. of the India office, No. 2102, reads āsthitāḥ, instead of e reading of the Taylor MS.

Pradhāna, when agitated, the quality of passion (*rajas*) arose, which was there a stimulating cause, as water is in seeds. 14. When an inequality in the Gunas arises, then (the deities) who preside over them are generated. From the Gunas thus agitated there sprang three gods (15), indwelling, supreme, mysterious, animating all things, embodied. The rajas quality was born as Brahmā, the tamas as Agni,¹²⁹ the sattva as Vishṇu. 16. Brahmā, the manifester of rajas, acts in the character of creator; Agni, the manifester of tamas, acts in the capacity of time; 17. Vishṇu, the manifester of sattva, abides in a condition of indifference. These deities are the three worlds, the three qualities, (18) the three Vedas, the three fires; they are mutually dependent, mutually devoted. 19. They exist through each other, and uphold each other; they are twin-parts of one another, they subsist through one another. 20. They are not for a moment separated; they never abandon one another. Isvara (Mahādeva) is the supreme god; and Vishṇu is superior to Mahat (the principle of intelligence); while Brahmā, filled with rajas, engages in creation. Purusha is to be regarded as supreme, as Prakṛiti is also declared to be."

The sixth section of the Vāyu P., from which the next quotation will be made, corresponds to the fourth of the Vishṇu P. quoted above.

1. Āpo hy agre samabharan nashṭe 'gnau prithivī-tale | sāntarālaikaline 'smīn nashṭe sthārara-jangame | 2. Ekārṇave tadā tasmin na prājnāyata kinchana | tadā sa bhagavān Brahmā sahasrākṣaḥ sahasra-pāt | 3. Sahasra-śirshā Purusho rukma-varno hy atīndriyah | Brahmā Nārāyanākhyah sa sushvāpa salile tadā | 4. Sattvodrekāt prabuddhas tu śūnyam lokam udīkshya saḥ | imam chodāharanty atra ślokam Nārāyanām prati | 5. Āpo nārā vai tanarah¹³⁰ ity apām nāma śuśruma | apsu śete cha yat tasmāt tena Nārāyanāḥ smṛitah | 6. Tulyaṁ yuga-sahasrasya naiśam kālam upāsyā saḥ | śarvāry-ante prakurute brahmavatram sargakāraṇat | 7. Brahmā tu salile tasmin vāyur bhūtvā tadā 'charat | niśyām iva khadyotih prārpiṭ-kūle tatas tataḥ | 8. Tatas tu salile tasmin vijñāyāntargatām mahīm | anumānād asammūḍho bhūmer uddharanam prati !

¹²⁹ The Mūrk. P. chap. 46, verse 18, has the same line, but substitutes Rudra for Agni, thus: *Rajo Brahmā tamo Rudro Viṣṇuh sattvaṁ jagat-patiḥ* | The two are often identified. See Vol. IV. of this work, 282 ff.

¹³⁰ See Wilson's Vishṇu Purāṇa, p. 57, with the translator's and editor's notes. Verses 1 to 6 are repeated towards the close of the 7th section of the Vāyu P. with variations.

9. *Akarot sa tanum hy anyam kalpadishu yathā purā | tato mahātmā manasā diryam rūpam achintayat |* 10. *Salilenāplutām bhūmim dṛishtvā sa tu samantataḥ | “kim nu rūpam mahat kṛitvā uddhareyam aham mahīm” |* 11. *Jala-kriḍā-suruchiram vārāhaṁ rūpam asmarat | adhṛishyaṁ sarra-bhūtānāṁ vāñmayam dharma-sanjnitam |*

“1. When fire had perished from the earth, and this entire world motionless and moving, together with all intermediate things, had been dissolved into one mass, and had been destroyed—waters first were produced. As the world formed at that time but one ocean, nothing could be distinguished. Then the divine Brahmā, Purusha, with a thousand eyes, a thousand feet, (3) a thousand heads, of golden hue, beyond the reach of the senses—Brahmā, called Nārāyaṇa, slept on the water. 4. But awaking in consequence of the predominance (in him) of the sattva quality, and beholding the world a void—: Here they quote a verse regarding Nārāyaṇa: 5. ‘The waters are the bodies of Nara: such is the name we have heard given to them; and because he sleeps upon them, he is called Nārāyaṇa.’ 6. Having so continued for a nocturnal period equal to a thousand Yugas, at the end of the night he takes the character of Brahmā in order to create. 7. Brahmā then becoming Vāyu (wind) moved upon that water,¹³¹ hither and thither, like a firefly at night in the rainy season. 8. Discovering then by inference that the earth lay within the waters, but unbewildered, (9) he took, for the purpose of raising it up, another body, as he had done at the beginnings of the (previous) Kalpas. Then that Great Being devised a celestial form. 10. Perceiving the earth to be entirely covered with water, (and asking himself) ‘what great shape shall I assume in order that I may raise it up?’—he thought upon the form of a boar, brilliant from aquatic play, invincible by all creatures, formed of speech, and bearing the name of righteousness.”

The body of the boar is then described in detail, and afterwards the elevation of the earth from beneath the waters, and the restoration of its former shape, divisions, etc.¹³²—the substance of the account being

¹³¹ This statement, which is not in the corresponding passage of the Vishnu P., is evidently borrowed, along with other particulars, from the text of the Taittirīya Sanhitā, vii. 1, 5, 1, quoted above p. 52.

¹³² Following the passage of the Taittirīya Sanhitā, quoted above, the writer in one verse ascribes to Brahmā as Visvakarman the arrangement of the earth, *tatas teṣu viśiṣṭeshu lokodadhi-girishv atha | Visvakarmā vibhajate kalpadishu punah punah |*

much the same, but the particulars different from those of the parallel passage in the Vishṇu Purāṇa.

Then follows a description of the creation coinciding in all essential points¹³³ with that quoted above, p. 55, from the beginning of the fifth chapter of the Vishṇu Purāṇa.

The further account of the creation, however, corresponding to that which I have quoted from the next part of the same chapter of that Purāṇa, is not found in the same position in the Vāyu Purāṇa,¹³⁴ but is placed at the beginning of the ninth chapter, two others, entitled *Pratisandhi-kīrttana* and *Chaturāśrama-ribhāga*, being interposed as the seventh and eighth. With the view, however, of facilitating comparison between the various cosmogonies described in the two works, I shall preserve the order of the accounts as found in the Vishṇu Purāṇa, and place the details given in the ninth chapter of the Vāyu Purāṇa before those supplied in the eighth.

The ninth chapter of the Vāyu Purāṇa, which is fuller in its details than the parallel passage in the Vishṇu Purāṇa, begins thus, without any specific reference to the contents of the preceding chapter:

Sūta uvācha | 1. Tato 'bhidhyāyatas tasya jajnire mānasīḥ prajāḥ | tach - chharīra - samutpannaiḥ kāryais taiḥ kāraṇaiḥ saha | 2. Kshe-trujñāḥ samavarttanta gātrebhyas tasya dhīmataḥ | tato devāsura-pitrīn mānarāṁ cha chatushṭayam | 3. Sisṛikshur ambhāñsy etāni svātmanā samayāyujat | yukltātmanas tatas tasya tamomātrā srayambhuraḥ | 4. Tam abhidhyāyataḥ sargam prayatno 'bhūt Prajāpateḥ | tato 'sya jaghanāt pūrvam asurā jajnire sutāḥ | 5. Asuḥ prānah smṛito vīprais taj-janmānas tato 'surāḥ | yayā śrīshṭasurās tanvā tām tanum sa vyapohata¹³⁵ | 6. Sā 'pariddhā tanus tena sadyo rātrir ajāyata | sā tamo-bahulā yasmāt tato rātris triyāmikā | 7. Ārvitās tamasā rātrau prajās tasmāt srapanty uta | dṛishṭrā 'surāṁs tu dereśas tanum anyām apadyata | 8. Aryaktām sattrā-bahulāṁ tatas tām so 'bhyayāyujat | tatas tām yunjatas tasya priyam āśit prabhoḥ kila | 9. Tato mukhe samutpannā dīryatas tasya devatāḥ | yato 'sya dīvyato jātūs tena derūḥ

¹³³ This is also the case with the details given in the Mūrk. P. xlvi. 15-27 and ff.

¹³⁴ The Mūrk. P. however observes the same order as the Vishṇu P.

¹³⁵ The reading in the passage of the Taitt. Br. ii. 2, 9, 6, from which this narrative is borrowed (see above, p. 28), is *apāhata*,—which, however, does not prove that that verb with *vi* prefixed should necessarily be the true reading here; as the Taylor and Gaikowar MSS. have *vyapohata* throughout, and in one place *vyapohat*.

prakīrttitāḥ | 10. *Dhātūr dīvīti yaḥ proktah kṛidāyām sa vibhāryate | tasmāt (?) yasmāt) tanvān tu dīryāyām jajnire tena devatāḥ* | 11. *Devān śrīshatrū'tha deresās tanum anyām apadyata | sattva - mātrātmikām devas tato 'nyām so 'bhypadyata¹²⁶* | 12. *Pitrirad manyamānas tān putrān prādhyāyata prabhuḥ | pitaro hy upapakshābhyaṁ¹²⁷ rātry-ahnor antarā'śrijat* | 13. *Tasmāt te pitaro devāḥ putratrām tena teshu tat | yayā śrīshṭas tu pitaras tām tanum sa ryapohata* | 14. *Sā'pariddhā tanus tena sadyah sandhyā prajāyata | tasmād ahas tu derānām rātrir yā sā "suri smṛitā* | 15. *Tayor madhye tu rai paītrī yā tanuh sā garīyasī | tasmād derāsurāḥ sarve rishayo manaras tathā* | 16. *Te yuktās tām upāsante rātry-ahnor¹²⁸ madhyamām tanum | tato 'nyām sa punar Brahmā tanum rai pratyapadyata* | 17. *Rajō-mātrātmikām yām tu mānasā so 'śrijat prabhuḥ | rajah-prāyān tataḥ so 'tha mānasān asrijat sutān* | 18. *Manasas tu tatas tasya mānasā jajnire prajāḥ | dṛishṭrā punah prajāś chāpi srām tanum tām apohata* | 19. *Sā'pariddhā tanus tena jyotsnā sadyas tv ajāyata | tasmād bharanti sañhṛishṭā jyotsnāyām udbhave prajāḥ* | 20. *Ity etās tanaras tena ryapariddhā mahatmanā | sadyo rātry-ahanī chaira sandhyā jyotsnā cha jajnire* | 21. *Jyotsnā sandhyā tathā 'haścha sattva-mātrātmakām srayam | tamo-mātrātmikā rātriḥ sā rai tasmāt triyāmikā* | 22. *Tasmād derā dīrya-tanvā¹²⁹ dṛishṭāḥ śrīshṭā mukhāt tu rai | yasmāt teshām dīvā janma balinas tena te dīvā* | 23. *Tanvā yad asurān rātrau jaghanād asrijat punah | prānebhyo rātri-janmāno hy asahyā niśi tena te* | 24. *Etāny evam bhavishyānūm devānām asuraiḥ saha | pitṛinām mānavānām cha atītānāgateshu rai* | 25. *Manvantareshu sarveshu nimittāni bhavanti hi | jyotsnā rātry-ahanī sandhyā chatvāry ambhāmisi tāni rai* | 26. *Bhānti yasmāt tato 'mbhāmisi bhā-śabdo 'yam manīshibhiḥ | ryāpti-dīptyām nigadito pumāmś chāha Prajāpatiḥ* | 27. *So 'mbhāmṣy etāni dṛishṭvā tu deva-dānava-mānavān | pitṛinām chaivāśrijat so 'nyān ātmano vividhān punah* | 28. *Tām utṣṛijya tanum kṛitsnām tato 'nyām asrijat prabhuḥ | mūrttiṁ rajas-tama-prāyām punar evābhayayūyujat* | 29. *Andhakāre kshudhāvishṭas tato 'nyām śrijate punah | tena śrīshṭāḥ kshudhātmānas te 'mbhāmṣy ādātum udyatāḥ* | 30. *"Ambhāmṣy etāni rakshāma" uktavantaścha teshu ye | rākshasas te smṛitāḥ loke krodhātmāno niśācharāḥ* |

¹²⁶ This line is omitted in the Gaikowar MS.

¹²⁷ The Gaikowar MS. seems to read *upapūrśvābhyaṁ*.

¹²⁸ The Gaikowar MS. reads *Brahmāgo madhyamām tanum*.

¹²⁹ The Guikowar MS. reads *dīvā tanvā*.

"Sūta says : 1. Then, as he was desiring, there sprang from him mind-born sons, with those effects and causes derived from his body. 2. Embodied spirits were produced from the bodies of that wise Being. 3. Then willing to create these four streams (*ambhāmsi*) gods, Asuras, Fathers, and men, he fixed his spirit in abstraction. As Svayambhū was thus fixed in abstraction, a body consisting of nothing but darkness (invested him). 4. While desiring this creation, Prajāpati put forth an effort. Then Asuras were first produced as sons from his groin. 5. *Asu* is declared by Brahmans to mean breath. From it these beings were produced ; hence they are *Asuras*.¹⁴⁰ He cast aside the body with which the Asuras were created. 6. Being cast away by him, that body immediately became night. Inasmuch as darkness predominated in it, night consists of three watches. 7. Hence, being enveloped in darkness, all creatures sleep at night. Beholding the Asuras, however, the Lord of gods took another body, (8) imperceptible, and having a predominance of goodness, which he then fixed in abstraction. While he continued thus to fix it, he experienced pleasure. 9. Then as he was sporting, gods were produced in his mouth. As they were born from him, while he was sporting (*dīryataḥ*), they are known as *Devas* (gods). 10. The root *dīr* is understood in the sense of sporting. As they were born in a sportive (*dīrya*)¹⁴¹ body, they are called *Devatās*. 11. Having created the deities, the Lord of gods then took another body, consisting entirely of goodness (*sattrā*). 12. Regarding himself as a father, he thought upon these sons : he created Fathers (*Pitrīs*) from his armpits in the interval between night and day. 13. Hence these Fathers are gods : therefore that sonship belongs to them. He cast aside the body with which the Fathers were created. 14. Being cast away by him, it straightway became twilight. Hence day belongs to the gods, and night is said to belong to the Asuras. 15. The body intermediate between them, which is that of the Fathers, is the most important. Hence gods, Asuras, Fathers, and men (16) worship intently this intermediate body of Brūhmā. He then took again another body. But from that body, composed altogether of passion (*rājas*)

¹⁴⁰ This statement, which is not found in the parallel passage of the *Vishṇu Purāṇa* is borrowed from Taitt. Br. ii. 3, 3, 2, quoted above.

¹⁴¹ *Divya* properly means "celestial." But from the play of words in the passage the writer may intend it to have here the sense of "sportive."

which he created by his mind, he formed mind-born¹⁴² sons who had almost entirely a passionate character. 18. Then from his mind sprang mind-born sons. Beholding again his creatures, he cast away that body of his. 19. Being thrown off by him it straightway became morning twilight. Hence living beings are gladdened by the rise of early twilight. 20. Such were the bodies which, when cast aside by the Great Being, became immediately night and day, twilight and early twilight. 21. Early twilight, twilight, and day have all the character of pure goodness. Night has entirely the character of darkness (*tamas*) ; and hence it consists of three watches. 22. Hence the gods are beheld with a celestial body, and they were created from the mouth. As they were created during the day, they are strong during that period. 23. Inasmuch as he created the Asuras from his groin at night, they, having been born from his breath, during the night, are unconquerable during that season. 24, 25. Thus these four streams, early twilight, night, day, and twilight, are the causes of gods, Asuras, Fathers, and men, in all the Manvantaras that are past, as well as in those that are to come. 26. As these (streams) shine, they are called *ambhāñsi*. This root *bhā* is used by the intelligent in the senses of pervading and shining, and the Male, Prajāpati, declares (the fact). 27. Having beheld these streams (*ambhañsi*), gods, Dānavas, men, and fathers, he again created various others from himself. 28. Abandoning that entire body, the lord created another, a form consisting almost entirely of passion and darkness, and again fixed it in abstraction. 29. Being possessed with hunger in the darkness, he then created another. The hungry beings formed by him were bent on seizing the streams (*ambhañsi*). 30. Those of them, who said ‘let us preserve (*rakshāma*) these streams,’ are known in the world as Rākshasas, wrathful, and prowling about at night.”

This description is followed by an account of the further creation corresponding with that given in the same sequence in the Vishṇu Purāṇa ; and the rest of the chapter is occupied with other details which it is not necessary that I should notice. I therefore proceed to make some quotations from the eighth chapter, entitled *Chaturāśrama-vibhāga*, or “the distribution into four orders,” which corresponds, in

¹⁴² *Mānasān*. We might expect here however, *mānavān* or *mānushān*, “human,” in conformity with the parallel passages both in the Vishṇu Purāṇa (see above, p. 56), and the Mārkandeya Purāṇa, xlvi. 11.

its general contents, with the sixth chapter of the Vishṇu Purāṇa, book i., but is of far greater length, and, in fact, extremely prolix, as well as confused, full of repetitions, and not always very intelligible.

The chapter immediately preceding (*i.e.* the seventh), entitled *Pratīsandhi-kirttanam*, ends with the words: “I shall now declare to you the present Kalpa; understand.” Sūta accordingly proceeds at the opening of the eighth chapter to repeat some verses, which have been already quoted from the beginning of the sixth chapter, descriptive of Brahmā’s sleep during the night after the universe had been dissolved, and to recapitulate briefly the elevation of the earth from beneath the waters, its reconstruction, and the institution of Yugas. At verse 22 the narrative proceeds:

Kalpasyādau kṛtayuge prathame so 'rjijat prajāḥ | 23. Prāg uktā yā mayā tubhyam pūrva-kāle prajās tu tāḥ | tasmin samvarttamāne tu kalpe dagdhāś tadā 'gninā | 24. Aprāptā yās tapo-lokāṁ jana-lokāṁ samāśritāḥ | pravarttati punah sarge vijarthaṁ tā bhavanti hi | 25. Vijarthena sthitās tatra punah sargasya kāraṇāt | tatas tāḥ sr̥iyamānās tu santānārtham bhavanti hi | 26. Dharmārtha-kāma-mokshāṇām iha tāḥ sādhikāḥ smṛitāḥ | devāś cha pitaraśchaitra ṛishayo manaras tathā | 27. Tatas te tapasā yuktāḥ sthānāny āpūrayanti hi | Brahmano mānasās te vai siddhātmāno bhavanti hi | 28. Ye sangādvesha-yuktena karmanā te divāṁ gatāḥ | āvarttamānā iha te sambhavanti yuge yuge | 29. Sra-karma-phala-śeshena khyātyā chaitra tathātmikā (? tathātmakāḥ) | sambhavanti janāl lokāt karma-saṁśaya-bandhanāt | 30. Āśayāḥ kāraṇām tatra boddhavyām karmanā tu saḥ | taiḥ karmabbhis tu jāyante janāl lokāt śubhāśubhaiḥ | 31. Grihṇanti te śarīrāṇi nānā-rūpāṇi yonishu | devād-yāḥ sthāvarāntās cha utpadyante parasparama (?) paramparama | 32. Teshāṁ ye yāni karmāṇi prāk-sriṣṭau pratipedire | tāny eva pratipadyante sr̥iyamānāḥ punah punah | 33. Hīṁsrāhiṁsre mṛidu-krūre dhar-mādharme ritānṛite | tadbhāvitāḥ prapadyante tasmāt tat tasya rochate | 34. Kalpeshv āsan vyatiteshu rūpa-nāmāni yāni cha | tāny evānāgatē kāle prāyaśāḥ pratipedire | 35. Tasmāt tu nāma-rūpāṇi tāny eva pratipedire | punah punas te kalpeshu jāyante nāma-rūpātāḥ | 36. Tataḥ sarge hy avashṭabdhe sisṛikshor Brahmanas tu vai | 37.¹⁴³ Prajās tā dhyāyatās

¹⁴³ The narrative in the 49th chapter of the Mārkandeya Purāṇa (verses 3-13) begins at this verse, the 37th of the Vāyu Purāṇa, and coincides, though with verbal differences, with what follows down to verse 47. After that there is more variation.

*tasya satyābhidhyāyinas tadā | mithunānām sahasram tu so 'srijad vai
 mukhāt tadā | 38. Janās te hy upapadyante sattvodriktaḥ suchetasah¹⁴⁴ |
 sahasram anyad vakshasto mithunānām sasarja ha | 39. Te sarve rajaso-
 driktāḥ śushmināś chāpy aśushmināḥ¹⁴⁵ | śrīshṭrā sahasram anyat tu
 dvandvānām ūrutaḥ punaḥ | 40. Rajas-tamobhyām udrikta īhāśilās tu
 te smṛitāḥ | padbhyām sahasram anyat tu mithunānām sasarja ha | 41.
 Udriktās tamasā sarve niḥśrīkā hy alpa-tejasāḥ | tato rai harshamāṇas
 te drandrotpannās tu prāṇināḥ | 42. Anyonya-hṛichhayārishiḥtā maithu-
 nāyopachakramuḥ | tataḥprabhṛiti kalpe 'smīn maithunotpatlir uchyate |
 43. Māsi māsy ārttaraṁ yat tu na tadā "sīt tu yoshtām¹⁴⁶ | tasmāt tadā
 na sushuruh sevitair api maithunaiḥ | 44. Āyusho 'nte prasūyante mi-
 thunāny eva tāḥ sakriti | kūṇṭhakāḥ kūṇṭhikāś chaivā utpadyante munūr-
 shatām¹⁴⁷ | 45. Tataḥ prabhṛiti kalpe 'smīn mithunānām hi sambharaḥ |
 dhyāne tu manasā tāsām prajānām jāyate sakriti | 46. Sabdādi-rishayah
 śuddhaḥ pratye kam pancha-lakṣhaṇaḥ | ity evam mānasī¹⁴⁸ pūrvam prāk-
 śrīshṭir yā Prajāpateḥ | 47. Tasyānvavāye sambhūtā yair idam pūritām
 jagat | sarit-sarāḥ-samudrāṁś cha serante parratān api | 48. Tadā
 nātyanta-śitoshnā yuge tasmin charanti rai | prīthvī-rasodbharaṁ nāma
 āhāraṁ hy āharanti rai¹⁴⁹ | 49. Tāḥ prajāḥ kāma-chāriṇyo mānasīm
 siddhim āsthitāḥ | dharmādharmau na tāsv āstām nirriśeshāḥ prajās tu
 tāḥ | 50. Tulyam āyuḥ sukhām rūpaṁ tāsām tasmin kṛite yuge | dharm-
 ādharmau na tāsv āstām kalpādau tu kṛite yuge | 51. Sreṇa svenādhī-
 kārena jajnire te kṛite yuge | chatrāri tu sahasrāṇi varshāṇām dirya-
 sankhyayā | 52. Ādyām kṛita-yugam prāhuḥ sandhyānām tu chatuḥ-
 śatam | tataḥ sahasrāś tāsa prajāsu prathitāsv api | 53.¹⁵⁰ Na tāsām
 pratighāto 'sti na dvandvaṁ nāpi cha klamaḥ | parratodadhi-sevinyo hy
 aniketāśrayās tu tāḥ | 54. Viśokāḥ sattrā-bahulāḥ hy ekānta-sukhitāḥ
 prajāḥ | tāḥ vai nishkāma-chāriṇyo nityam mudita-mānasāḥ | 55. Paśa-*

¹⁴⁴ For *suchetasah* the Märk. P. reads *sutejasah*.

¹⁴⁵ For *aśushmināḥ* the Märk. P. reads *amarshināḥ*, "irascible."

¹⁴⁶ I have corrected this line from the Märkandeya Purāṇa, 49, 9 b. The reading of the MSS. of the Vāyu Purāṇa cannot be correct. It appears to be: *māse māse 'rttavaṁ yad yat tat tadāśid hi yoshtām* | The negative particle seems to be indispensable here.

¹⁴⁷ This half verse is not found in the Märk. P.

¹⁴⁸ The Märk. P. has *mānushi*, "human," instead of *mānasī*, "mental."

¹⁴⁹ This verse is not in the Märk. P.; and after this point the verses which are common to both Purāṇas do not occur in the same places.

¹⁵⁰ Verses 53–56 coincide generally with verses 14–18 of the Märk. P.

evāḥ pakshināś chaiva na tadāsan sarīśripāḥ | nobhijjā nārakaś¹⁵¹ chaiva
 te hy adharma-prasūtayah | 56. Na mūla-phala-pushpaṁ cha nārttavam
 ritavo na cha | sarva-kāma-sukhaḥ kālo nātyartham̄ hy ushna-śitataḥ¹⁵² |
 57. Manobhilashitāḥ kāmāś tāśām sarratra sarradā | uttishṭhanti prīthiv-
 yām̄ vai tābhīr dhyātā rasolvanāḥ | 58. Balararṇa-karī tūśām siddhiḥ
 sā roga-nāśinī | asāṃskāryyaiḥ śārīraiś cha prajāḥ tāḥ sthirayauvanāḥ |
 59. Tūśām viśuddhāt sankalpāj jāyante mithunāḥ prajāḥ | samam janma
 cha rūpaṁ cha mriyante chaīra tāḥ samam | 60. Tadā satyam alobhāś
 cha kshamā tuṣṭiḥ sukhām damaḥ | nirvīśeshās tu tāḥ sarvā rūpāyuh-
 śīla-cheshṭitaiḥ | 61. Abuddhipūrvakām vṛittam prajānām jāyate svayam |
 apravrīttiḥ kṛita-yuge karmaṇoh śubhapāpayoḥ | 62. Varṇāśrama-rya-
 vasthāś cha na tadā "san na sankarah | anicchādresha-yuktās te vartta-
 yanti parasparam | 63. Tulya-rūpāyushaḥ sarrāḥ adhamottama-varj-
 itāḥ¹⁵³ | sukhā-prāyā hy aśokāś cha udapadyante kṛite yuge | 64. Nitya-
 prahṛishṭa-manaso mahāsatatrā mahābalāḥ | lābhālābhau na tāsv āstām
 mitrāmitre priyāpriye | 65. Manasā viśhayas tāśām nīrīhāṇām pravart-
 tate | na lipsanti hi tā'nyoyām nānugṛihṇanti chaire hi | 66. Dhyānam
 paraṁ kṛita-yuge tretāyām jñānam uchyate | pravrīttām dvāpare yajñām
 dānam kali-yuge varam | 67. Sattraṁ kṛitām rajas tretā dvāparām tu
 rajas-tamau | kalau tamas tu vijneyam yuga-vṛitta-raśena tu | 68. Kālaḥ
 kṛite yuge tv esha tasya sankhyām nibodhata | chatvāri tu sahasrāṇi var-
 shāṇām tat kṛitām yugam | 69. Sandhyāmśau tasya diryāni śatāny
 ashṭau cha sankhyayā | tadā tāśām babhūvāyur na cha kleśa-vipat-
 tayah¹⁵⁴ | 70. Tataḥ kṛitayuge tasmin sandhyānse hi gate tu rai | pādā-
 vaśiṣṭo bhavati yuga-dharmas tu sarrāsaḥ | 71. Saundhyāyām apy atītā-
 yām anta-kāle yugasya rai | pādaśas chāraśiṣṭe tu sandhyā-dharmo
 yugasya tu | 72. Eraṁ kṛite tu niḥśeshe siddhis tv antardadhe tada |
 tasyām cha siddhau bhrashṭāyām mānasyām abhavat tataḥ | 73. Siddhir

¹⁵¹ The Mūrk. P. has nakrāḥ, "crocodiles," in its enumeration.

¹⁵² The Mūrk. P. here inserts some other lines, 18b-21a, instead of 57 and 58a of the Vāyu P.

¹⁵³ The Mūrk. P. inserts here the following verses: 24. Chatvāri tu sahasrāṇi varshāṇām mānushāṇi tu | āyuḥ-pramāṇām jīvanti na cha kleśād ripattayah | 25. Kvachit kvachit punaḥ sā bhūt kshitir bhāgyaṇa sarrāsaḥ | kālena gachhatā nāśam upayānti yathā prajāḥ | 26. Tathā tāḥ kramāśaḥ nāśām jagmuḥ sarratra siddhayaḥ | tāśu sarrāsu nashfāsu nabhasaḥ prachyutā narūḥ (latāḥ in one MS.) | prāyaśaḥ kāpa-vrikshāḥ te sambhūtā griha-samīṣṭitāḥ |

¹⁵⁴ Instead of babhūvāyuh, etc., the Gaikowar MS. has prayuktāni na cha kleśo babhūva ha |

anyā yuge tasmīns tretāyām antare kṛitā | sargādau yā mayā 'shṭau tu
 mānasyo rai prakīrttitāḥ | 74. *Ashṭau tāḥ krama-yogena siddhayo yānti*
sankshayam | kalpādau mānasī hy ekā siddhir bharati sā kṛite | 75.
Manvantareshu sarveshu chatur-yuga-ribhāgaśāḥ | varṇāśramāchāra-kṛitāḥ
karma-siddhodbhāraḥ (karma-siddhyudbhāraḥ?) smṛitāḥ | 76. Sandhyā
kṛitasya pādena sandhyā pādena chāñśataḥ | kṛita-sandhyāñśakū hy ete
trīṁs trīn pādān paraspāram | 77. Hrasanti yuga-dharmais te tapaḥ-
śruta-balāyushaiḥ | tataḥ kṛitāṁśe kshīne tu babhūva tad-anantaram |
 78. *Tretā-yugam amanyanta kṛitāṁśam ṛishi-sattamāḥ | tasmin kshīne*
kṛitāṁśe tu tach-chhishṭāsu prajāsv iha | 79. Kalpādau sampravṛttāyāś
tretāyāḥ pramukhe tadā | pranaśyati tadā siddhiḥ kāla-yogena nānyathā |
 80. *Tasyāṁ siddhau pranashṭāyāṁ anyā siddhir avarttata | apūṁ sauk-*
shmye pratigate tadā meghātmāna tu rai | 81. Meghebhyāḥ stanayitnu-
bhyāḥ pravṛittaṁ ṛiṣiḥ-sarjanam | sakṛid era tayā vṛiṣṭyā saṁyukte
vṛiṣhīvī-tale | 82. Prādūrāsaṁs tadā tāśāṁ Ṛikshās tu griha-saṁsthī-
tāḥ¹⁵⁵ | sarva-pratyupabhogaḥ tu tāśāṁ tebhyaḥ prajāyate | 83. Vart-
tayanti hi tebhyaḥ tāś tretā-yuga-mukhe prajāḥ | tataḥ kālena mahatā
tāśāṁ eva vīpariyayāt | 84. Rāgalobhātmako bhāvaḥ tadā hy ākasmiko
'bhavaḥ | yat tad bhavati nārīṇāṁ jīvitānte tad ārtaram | 85. Tadā tad
vai na bhavati punar yuga-balena tu | tāśāṁ punaḥ pravṛitte tu māse māse
tad ārttaram (-re?) | 86. Tatas tenaiva yogena varttatām maithune tadā |
tāśāṁ tāt-kāla-bhāritvād māsi māsy upayachhatām | 87. Akāle hy ārttavot-
pattir garbhotpattir ajāyata | vīpariyayena tāśāṁ tu tena kālena bhāvinā |
 88. *Pranaśyanti tataḥ sarve Ṛikshās te grihasaṁsthītāḥ | tatas tehu*
pranashṭeshu vibhrāntā vyākulendriyāḥ | 89. Abhidhyāyanti tāṁ siddhiṁ
satyābhīdhyāyinas tadā | prādurbabhuṣus tāśāṁ tu Ṛikshās te griha-
saṁsthītāḥ | 90.¹⁵⁶ Vastrāni cha prasūyante phaleshv ābharanāni cha |
teshv era jāyate tāśāṁ gandha-varṇa-rasānvitam | 91. Amākshikam ma-
hāvīryam puṭake puṭake madhu | tena tā varttayanti sma mukhe tretā-
yugasya rai | 92. Hṛiṣṭa-tuṣṭās tayā siddhyā prajā vai vigata-jvarāḥ |
punaḥ kūlāntareṇaiva punar lobhāvṛitās tu tāḥ | 93. Ṛikshāṁs tān
paryagṛihṇanta madhu chāmākshikam balāt | tāśāṁ tenāpachāreṇa punar
lobha-kṛitena rai | 94. Pranashṭā madhunā sārdham kalpa-ṛikshāḥ kva-

¹⁵⁵ Verses 27–35 of the Mārk. P. correspond more or less to this and the following verses down to 98.

¹⁵⁶ This and the following verses correspond more or less closely to the Mārk. P. 30 ff.

chit kvachit | tasyām evālpa-śishṭāyāṁ sandhyā-kāla-vaśat tada | 95.
 varttatāṁ tu tadā tāsāṁ dvandvāny abhyutthitāni tu | śītarātātapais
 tivrais tatas tāḥ duḥkhita bhṛiṣam | 96. Dvandvais tāḥ pīḍyamānās tu
 chakrur āvaraṇāni cha | kṛitvā dvandva-pratikāram niketāni hi bhejire |
 97. Pūrvāṁ nikāma-chārās te aniketāśrayā bhṛiṣam | yathā-yogyaṁ
 yathā-priti niketesu avasan punah | 98. Maru-dhanrasu nimmeshu par-
 vateshu darishu cha¹⁵⁷ | saṁśrayanti cha durgāṇi dhanvānam śūśratoda-
 kam | 99. Yathā-yogaṁ yathā-kāmaṁ sameshu vishameshu cha | ārabdhās
 te niketā vai karttuṁ śītoshṇa-pāraṇam | 100. Tatas tā māpayāmāsuḥ
 khetāni cha purāṇi cha | grāmāṇś chaiva yathā-bhāgaṁ tathaivāntaḥ-
 purāṇi cha | . . . 123.¹⁵⁸ Kṛiteshu teshu sthāneshu punaś chakrur gri-
 hāni cha | yathā cha pūrram āsan vai vṛikshās tu griha-saṁsthitāḥ |
 124. Tathā karttuṁ samārabdhāś chintayitrā punah punah | vṛiduhāś
 chaiva gatāḥ śākhā natāś chairāparā gatāḥ | 125. Ata ūrdhvam gatāś
 chānyā enam tiryaggatāḥ parāḥ | buddhyā 'nriṣhya tathā 'nyā yā vṛik-
 sha-śākhā yathā gatāḥ | 126. Tathā kṛitās tu taiḥ śākhās tāsmāch
 chhālās tu tāḥ smritāḥ | evam prasiddhāḥ śākhābhyaḥ śālāś chaiva
 grihāṇi cha | 127. Tasmāt tā rai smritāḥ śālāḥ śālātraṁ chaiva
 tāsu tat | prasīdati manas tāsu manah prasādayamś cha tāḥ | 128.
 Tasmād grihāni śālāś cha prasādāś chaiva sanjnītāḥ | kṛitvā dran-
 drovaghātāṁs tān vārttopāyam achintayan | 129.¹⁵⁹ Nashteshu ma-
 dhunā sārddhaṁ kalpa-vṛiksheshu vai tadā | vishāda-vyākulās tā rai
 prajās triśṇā-kshudhānvitāḥ | 130. Tataḥ prādurbabhu tāsāṁ sid-
 dhis tretā-yuge punah | vārttārtha-sādhikā hy anyā vriṣṭis tāsāṁ hi
 kāmataḥ | 131. Tāsāṁ vriṣṭy-udakānīha yāni nimmair gatāni tu |
 vriṣṭyā nimmā(?) nirabhavan srotaḥ-khātāni nimmagāḥ | 132. Eraṁ
 nadyah prarūttās tu drittīye vriṣṭi-sarjane | ye purastād apām stokā
 āpannāḥ prithivītale | 133. Apām bhūmeś cha saṁyogād oshadhyas tāsu
 chābhavan | pushpa-mūlaphalinīyas tv oshadhyas tāḥ prajajnire | 134.
 Aphāla-krishṭās chānuptā grāmyāraṇyāś chaturdaśa | ritu-pushpa-pha-
 laśchaiva vṛikshāḥ gulmāś cha jajnire | 135. Prādurbhavaś cha tretāyāṁ
 adyo 'yam aushadhaṣya tu | tenaushadhenā vartante prajās tretāyuge
 tadā | 136. Tataḥ punar abhūt tāsāṁ rāgo lobhaś cha sarvaśaḥ | avaśyam-

¹⁵⁷ I have corrected this line from Mārk. P. xl ix. 35.

¹⁵⁸ Verses 52–54 of the Mārk. P. correspond in substance to verses 123–128 of the Vāyu P.

Verses 55–62 of the Mārk. P. correspond to verses 129–137 of the Vāyu P.

bhāvinā 'rthena tretā-yuga-vaśena tu | 137. Tatas tāḥ paryagrihnanta
 nadīḥ kshetrāṇī parvatān | vrikshān gulmaushadhiś chaiva prasahya tu
 yathā-balām | 138. Siddhātmānas tu ye pūrvam vyākhyātāḥ prāk krite
 mayā | Brahmaṇo mānasās te rai utpannā ye janād iha | 139. Sāntāś
 cha śushmināś chaiva karmīṇo duḥkhinās tadā | tataḥ pravarttamānās te
 tretāyāṁ jajnire punaḥ | 140. Brāhmaṇāḥ kshattriyā raiṣyāḥ śūdrā
 drohijanās tathā | bhāvitāḥ pūrra-jātīshu karmabhiś cha śubhāśubhai! |
 141. Itas tebhyo 'balā ye tu śatyasīlā hy ahīnsakāḥ | vīta-lobhā jitāt-
 māno nivasanti sma teshu rai | 142. Pratigrihnānti kurvanti tebhyaś
 chānye 'lpa-tejasāḥ | eraṁ vīpratipanneshu prapanneshu parasparam |
 143. Tena dosheṇa teshāṁ tā oshadhyo mishatāṁ tadā¹⁶⁰ | prāṇashṭā hriya-
 mānā rai mushṭibhyāṁ sīkātā yathā | 144.¹⁶¹ Agrasad bhūr yuga-balād
 grāmyāranyāś chaturdaśa | phalam grihnānti pushpāischa phalaiḥ patraiḥ
 punaḥ punaḥ | 145.¹⁶² Tatas tāsu prāṇashṭāsu vibhrāntās tāḥ prajās
 tadā | Sravambhūram prabhūm jagmuḥ kshudhārishiṣṭāḥ prajāpatim | 146.
 vītīty-artham abhilipsantāḥ ādau tretā-yugasya tu | Brahmā Sravambhūr
 bhagavān jnātvā tāsām manishitam | 147. Yuktam pratyaksha-dṛiṣṭenā
 darśanena vīchāryya cha | grastāḥ prīthiryā oshadhyo jnātvā pratyadūhat
 punaḥ | 148. Kṛitvā ratsāṁ sumerum tu dudoha prīthivīm īmām | dugdhe-
 yām gaus tadā tena vījāni prīthivī-tale | 149. Jajnire tāni vījāni grāmyā-
 ranyās tu tāḥ punaḥ | oshadhyāḥ phala-pākāntāḥ sāṇa-saptadasās tu tāḥ |
 . . . 155. Utpannāḥ prathamaṁ hy etā ādau tretā-yugasya tu | 156.
 Aphāla-krishṭā oshadhyo grāmyāranyās tu sarvaśāḥ | vrikshān gulma-
 latā-vallyo vīrudhas trīna-jātayāḥ | 157. Mūlaiḥ phalaiś cha rohinyo
 'grihnān pushpāis cha yāḥ phalam | prīthivī dugdhā tu vījāni yāni pūr-
 vaṁ Sravambhūvā | 158. Rītu-pushpa-phalās tū rai oshadhyo jajnire tv
 iha |¹⁶³ yadā prasrīshṭā oshadyo na prarohanti tāḥ punaḥ | 159. Tataḥ
 sa tāsām vītīty-artham vārttopāyāṁ chakāra ha | Brahmā Sravambhūr
 bhagavān hasta-siddhaṁ tu karma-jam | 160. Tataḥ-prabhṛity athau-
 shadhyāḥ krishṭa-pachyās tū jajnire | sāṁsiddhāyām tu vārttāyām tatas
 tāsām Sravambhūrah | 161. Maryādāḥ sthāpayāmāsa yathārabdhāḥ
 parasparam |¹⁶⁴ ye rai parigrihitāras tāsām āsan badhātmakāḥ | 162.
 Itarehāṁ kṛita-trāṇān sthāpayāmāsa kshattriyān | upatiṣṭhanti ye tān

¹⁶⁰ Mārk. P. verse 63a.

¹⁶¹ Mārk. P. verse 68b.

¹⁶² Verses 64–67 of the Mārk. P. correspond to verses 145–149 of the Vāyu P.

¹⁶³ Verses 73–75 of the Mārk. P. correspond to verses 158b–160a of the Vāyu P.

¹⁶⁴ This with all what follows down to verse 171 is omitted in the Mārk. P.

vai yāvanto nirbhayās tathā | 163. Satyam brahma yathā bhūtam bruvanto brāhmaṇās tu te | ye chānye 'py abalās teshām vaiśasām karma saṁsthitāḥ | 164. Kīnāśa nāśayanti sma prīthivyām prāg atandritāḥ | vaiśyān eva tu tān āhuḥ kīnāśān vṛitti-sādhakān | 165. Sochantaś cha dravantaś cha paricharyyāsu ye ratāḥ | nistejaso 'lpa-vīryyāś cha śūdrān tān abravīt tu saḥ | 166. Teshām karmāṇī dharmāṇīs cha Brahmā 'nūryadadhāt prabhūḥ | saṁsthitaḥ prakṛitāyām tu chāturvarṇasya sarvasaḥ | 167. Funaḥ prajās tu tā mohāt tān dharmān nānrapālayan | varṇa-dharmair ajīvantyo vyarudhyanta paraspāram | 168. Brahmā tam artham buddhvā tu yāthātathyena vai prabhūḥ | kshattriyāṇām balam daṇḍam yuddhaṁ ājīram adīsat | 169. Yājanādhyayanam chaiva trītyām cha parigraham | brāhmaṇānām vibhus teshām karmāṇy etāny athādiśat | 170. Pāsupālyām vāṇījyām cha kṛishīm chaiva viśām dadau | śilpājīvam bhṛtiṁ chaiva śūdrānām ryadadhāt prabhūḥ | 171. Sāmānyāni tu karmāṇī brahma-kshatra-viśām punaḥ | yājanādhyayanām dānam sāmānyāni tu teshu vai | 172. Karmājīvām tato datrā tebhyaś chaiva paraspāram | lokāntareshu sthānāni teshām siddhyāy¹⁸⁵ adāt prabhūḥ | 173.¹⁸⁶ Prājāpatyaṁ brāhmaṇānām smṛitaṁ sthānām kriyāratām | sthānaṁ aindraṁ kshattriyāṇām sangrāmeshv apālāyinām | 174. Vaiśyānām mārutaṁ sthānām sra-dharmam upajīvinām | gāndharvaṁ śūdra-jātīnām pratīchāreṇa (parīchārena?) tishṭhatām | 175. Sthānānām etāni varṇānām vyasyāchārāratām svayam | tataḥ sthiteshu varṇeshu sthāpayāmāsa chāśramān | 176. Gṛihastham brahmachāritraṁ vanaprastham sabhikshukam | āśramāṁś chaturo hy etān pūrrvam asthāpayat prabhūḥ | 177. Varṇa-karmāṇī ye kechit teshām iha na kurvate | kṛita-karmakshitiḥ(?) prāhur āśrama-sthāna-rāśināḥ | 178. Brahmā tān sthāpāyāmāsa āśramān nāma nāmataḥ | nirdeśārthaṁ tatas teshām Brahmā dharmān prābhāshata | 179. Prasthānāni cha teshām vai yamāṁśha niyamāṁścha ha | chāturvarṇāt-makah pūrvām gṛihasthas tv āśramāḥ smṛitaḥ | 180. Trāyānām āśramānām cha pratishṭhā yonir eva cha | yathākramam pravakṣyāmi yamais cha niyamais cha taiḥ | 190. Vedāḥ sāṅgāś cha yajnāś cha tra-tāni niyamāś cha yo | 191. Na siddhyanti prāduṣṭasya bhāradoshe upāgate | bahiḥ-karmāṇī sarvāni prasiddhyanti (na siddhyanti ?) kadāchana |

¹⁸⁵ I conjecture siddhyāy adāt to be the proper reading. The MSS. | dadāt, or siddhyādadāt, etc. .

¹⁸⁶ Verses 173 f. are found in the Mūrk. P. verscs 77 f.; but all that follows down to verse 193 is omitted there

192. *Antar-bhāra-pradushṭasya kurvato’hi parākramāt | sarvasvam api yo dadyāt kaluṣhenāntarātmanā |* 193. *Na tona dharma-bhāk sa syād bhāva eva hi kāraṇam | |* 199. *Evaṁ varnāśramānāṁ vai prati-bhāge kṛite tadā |* 200. *Yadā’ya na vyavardhanta prajā varnāśramat-mikāḥ | tato’nyā mānasīḥ so’tha tretā-madhye ’srijat prajāḥ |* 201. *Ātmanas tāḥ śārirāchcha tulyāś chaivātmanā tu rai | tasmin tretā-yuge prāpte madhyam prāpte kramenā tu |* 202. *Tato’nyā mānasīs tatra prajāḥ srashṭum prachakrane | tataḥ satva-rajodriktāḥ prajāḥ so’thāsrijat prabhūḥ |* 203. *Dharmārtha-kūma-mokshānāṁ vārtlāyāś chaiva sādhikāḥ | devāś cha pitaraś chaiva rishayo manavas tathā |* 204. *Yugānu-rūpā dharmena yair imā richitāḥ prajāḥ | upasthitē tadā tasmin prajā-dharme (-sarge?) Svayambhuraḥ |* 205. *Abhidadhyaū prajāḥ sarvā nānā-rūpās tu mānasīḥ | pūrvoktā yā mayā tubhyaṁ jana-lokaṁ samāśritāḥ |* 206. *Kalpe’tītu tā hy āsan devādyās tu prajā iha | dhyāyatās tasya tāḥ sarvāḥ sambhūty-artham upasthitāḥ |* 207. *Manvantara-kramenācha kā-nishṭhe prathame matāḥ | khyātyā ‘nubandhais tais tais tu sarrārthair iha bhāvitāḥ |* 208. *Kuśalākuśala-prāyaiḥ karmabhis taiḥ sadā prajāḥ | tat-karma-phala-śeshena upashṭabdāḥ prajajnire |* 209. *Devāsura-pitṛi-trais tu paśu-pakshi-sarīśripaiḥ | eriksha-nāraka-kiṭatvais tais tair bhā-vair upasthitāḥ | ādhinārtham prajānām cha ātmanā vai rinirmame |*

“22. At the beginning of the Kalpa, in the first Kṛita age, he created those living beings (23) which I have formerly described to thee; but in the olden time, at the close of the Kalpa, those creatures were burnt up by fire. 24. Those of them who did not reach the Tapoloka took refuge in the Janaloka; and when the creation again commences, they form its seed. 25. Existing there as a seed for the sake of another creation, they then, as they are created, are produced with a view to progeny. 26. These are declared to accomplish, in the present state (the four ends of human life, viz.), duty, the acquisition of wealth, the gratification of love, and the attainment of final liberation,— both gods, Fathers, Rishis, and Manus. 27. They, then, filled with austere fervour, replenish (all) places. These are the mental sons of Brahmā, perfect in their nature. 28. Those who ascended to the sky by works characterized by devotion to external objects, but not by hatred, return to this world and are born in every age. 29. As the result of their works, and of their destination, (returning) from the Janaloka, they are born of the same character (as

before), in consequence of the (previous) deeds by which they are bound.¹⁶⁷ 30. It is to be understood that the cause of this is their tendency (or fate), which itself is the result of works. In consequence of these works, good or bad, they return from Janaloka and are born, (31) and receive various bodies in (different) wombs. They are produced again and again in all states, from that of gods to that of motionless substances. 32. These creatures, as they are born time after time, receive the same functions as they had obtained in each previous creation. 33. Destructiveness and undestructiveness, mildness and cruelty, righteousness and unrighteousness, truth and falsehood—actuated by such dispositions as these, they obtain (their several conditions); and hence particular actions are agreeable to particular creatures. 34. And in succeeding periods they for the most part obtain the forms and the names which they had in the past Kalpas. 35. Hence they obtain the same names and forms. In the different Kalpas they are born with the same name and form. 36. Afterwards, when the creation had been suspended, as Brahmā was desirous to create, (37) and, fixed in his design, was meditating upon offspring,—he created from his mouth a thousand couples of living beings, (38) who were born with an abundance of goodness (*sattva*) and full of intelligence.¹⁶⁸ He then created another thousand couples from his breast: (39) they all abounded in passion (*rajas*) and were both vigorous and destitute of vigour.¹⁶⁹ After creating from his thighs another thousand pairs, (40) in whom both passion and darkness (*tamas*) prevailed, and who are described as active,—he formed from his feet yet another thousand couples (41) who were all full of darkness, inglorious, and of little vigour. Then the creatures sprung from the couples (or thus produced in couples) rejoicing, (42) and filled with mutual love, began to cohabit. From that period sexual intercourse is said to have arisen in this Kalpa. 43. But at that time women had no monthly discharge: and they consequently bore no children, although cohabit-

¹⁶⁷ *Karma-samīkaya-bandhanāt*. I am unable to state the sense of *saṃkaya* in this compound.

¹⁶⁸ *Suchetasāḥ*. The reading of the Mārk. P. *sutjeśasāḥ*, “full of vigour,” is recommended, as an epithet of the Brāhmaṇas, by its being in opposition to *alpa-tejasaḥ*, “of little vigour,” which is applied to the Sūdras a few lines below.

¹⁶⁹ The reading of the Mārk. P. *amarashināḥ*, “irascible,” gives a better sense than *asushnīgāḥ*, “devoid of vigour,” which the Vāyu P. has.

ation was practised. 44. At the end of their lives they once bore twins. Weak-minded boys and girls were produced when (their parents) were on the point of death. 45. From that period commenced, in this Kalpa, the birth of twins; and such offspring was once only born to these creatures by a mental effort, in meditation (46),—(offspring which was) receptive (?) of sound and the other objects of sense, pure, and in every case distinguished by five marks. Such was formerly the early mental creation of Prajapāti. 47. Those creatures by whom the world was replenished, born as the descendants of this stock, frequented rivers, lakes, seas, and mountains. 48. In that age (*yuga*) they lived unaffected by excessive cold or heat, and appropriated the food which was produced from the essences of the earth. 49. They acted according to their pleasure, existing in a state of mental perfection. They were characterized neither by righteousness nor unrighteousness; were marked by no distinctions. 50. In that Kṛita yuga, in the beginning of the Kalpa, their age, happiness, and form were alike: they were neither righteous nor unrighteous. 51. In the Kṛita age they were produced each with authority over himself. Four thousand years, according to the calculation of the gods, (52) and four hundred years for each of the morning and evening twilights, are said to form the first, or Kṛita, age.¹⁷⁰ Then, although these creatures were multiplied by thousands, (53) they suffered no impediment, no susceptibility to the pairs of opposites (pleasure and pain, cold and heat, etc.) and no fatigue. They frequented mountains and seas, and did not dwell in houses. 54. They never sorrowed, were full of goodness (*sattrā*), and supremely happy; acted from no impulse of desire,¹⁷¹ and lived in continual delight. 55. There were at that time no beasts, birds, reptiles, or plants,¹⁷² (for these things are produced by unrighteousness),¹⁷³ (56) no roots, fruits,

¹⁷⁰ The first of the verses, which will be quoted below, in a note on verse 63, from the Märk. P., seems to be more in place than the description of the Kṛita age given here, of which the substance is repeated in verses 68 and 69.

¹⁷¹ Perhaps we should read here *nikūma-chārinyo* instead of *nishkūma-*: if so, the sense will be, “they moved about at will.”

¹⁷² The text adds here *nārakāḥ* or *narakāḥ*, which may mean “hellish creatures.”

¹⁷³ This, although agreeing with what is said further on in verses 82, 133, and 165, does not seem in consonance with what is stated in the Vishṇu Purāṇa, verse 46, where it is declared: *osadhyāḥ phala-mūlyino romabhyas tasya jainire | tretā-yuga-mukhe Brahmā kalpasyādau drījottama | śrīśaṭvā paśv-osadhiḥ samyag yuyoga sa tada 'dhvare |* “Plants bearing roots and fruits sprang from his hairs. At the com-

flowers, productions of the seasons, nor seasons. The time brought with it every object of desire and every enjoyment. There was no excess of heat or cold. 57. The things which these people desired sprang up from the earth everywhere and always, when thought of, and had a powerful relish. 58. That perfection of theirs both produced strength and beauty, and annihilated disease. With bodies, which needed no decoration, they enjoyed perpetual youth. 59. From their pure will alone twin children were produced. Their form was the same. They were born and died together. 60. Then truth, contentment, patience, satisfaction, happiness, and self-command prevailed. They were all without distinction in respect of form, term of life, disposition and actions. 61. The means of subsistence were produced spontaneously, without forethought on their parts. In the Kṛita age they engaged in no works which were either virtuous or sinful. 62. And there were then no distinctions of castes or orders, and no mixture of castes. Men acted towards each other without any feeling of love or hatred. 63. In the Kṛita age they were born alike in form and duration of life, without any distinction of lower and higher,¹⁷⁴ with abundant happiness, free from grief, (64) with hearts continually exulting, great in dignity

mencement of the Tretā age Brahmā—having at the beginning of the Kalpa created animals and plants—employed them in sacrifice.” Although the order of the words renders the sense in some degree uncertain, it appears to be that which Prof. Wilson assigns in his translation (i. 84), “Brahmā, having created, in the commencement of the Kalpa, various [animals and] plants, employed them in sacrifices in the beginning of the Tretā age.” This interpretation is supported by the Commentator, who remarks: *Tad evān kalpasyādāv eva paśūn oshadhīs cha śrīshṭrā ‘nantaram tretā-yuga-mukhe prūpē sati samyag grāmyāranya-ryasthāyā tada dhecure sūnatayā (samyaktayā?) vinyoja kṛita-yuge yajnasyāpravritteḥ* | “Having then thus at the very beginning of the Kalpa created animals and plants, he afterwards, when the commencement of the Tretā age arrived, employed them properly, according to the distinction of domestic and wild, in sacrifice,—since sacrifice did not prevail in the Kṛita age.” This agrees with the course of the preceding narrative which makes no allusion to plants and animals having been produced in a different Yuga from the other beings whose creation had been previously described. (See Wilson i. 82-84.) The parallel passage in the Vāyu P. x. 44-46, is confused.

¹⁷⁴ The Mārk. P. xlvi. 24 inserts here the following lines: “They lived for four thousand years of mortals, as the measure of their existence, and suffered no calamities from distress. 25. In some places the earth again enjoyed prosperity in every respect. As through lapse of time the creatures were destroyed, so too those perfections everywhere gradually perished. 26. When they had all been destroyed, creeping-plants fell from the sky, which had nearly the character of Kalpa-trees (*i.e.* trees which yield all that is desired), and resembled houses.”

and in force. There existed among them no such things as gain or loss, friendship or enmity, liking or dislike. 65. It was through the mind (alone, i.e. without passion?) that these disinterested beings acted towards each other. They neither desired anything from one another; nor shewed any kindness to each other.¹⁷⁶ Contemplation is declared to be supreme in the Kṛita age, knowledge in the Tretā; sacrifice began in the Dvāpara; liberality is the highest merit in the Kali. 67. The Kṛita age is goodness (*sattva*), the Tretā is passion (*rajas*), the Dvāpara is passion and darkness (*tamas*), in the Kali it is to be understood that darkness (prevails), according to the necessary course of these ages. 68. The following is the time in the Kṛita age: understand its amount. Four thousand years constitute the Kṛita; (69) and its twilights endure for eight hundred divine years. Then their life was (so long?)¹⁷⁷ and no distresses or calamities befel them. 70. Afterwards, when the twilight in the Kṛita was gone, the righteousness peculiar to that age was in all respects reduced to a quarter (of its original sum). 71. When further the twilight had passed, at the close of the Yuga, and the righteousness peculiar to the twilight had been reduced to a quarter, (72) and when the Kṛita had thus come altogether to an end,—then perfection vanished. When this mental perfection had been destroyed, there arose (73) another perfection formed in the period of the Tretā age. The eight mental perfections, which I declared (to have existed) at the creation, (74) were gradually extinguished. At the beginning of the Kalpa mental perfection alone (existed), viz., that which existed in the Kṛita age. 75. In all the Manvantaras there is declared to arise a perfection proceeding from works, produced by the discharge of the duties belonging to castes and orders, according to the fourfold division of Yugas. 76. The (morning) twilight (deteriorates) by a quarter of the (entire) Kṛita,—and the evening twilight by (another) quarter;—(thus) the Kṛita, the morning twilight, and the evening

¹⁷⁶ This representation of the condition of mankind during the Kṛita age, the period of ideal goodness, was no doubt sketched in conformity with the opinions which prevailed at the period when the Purāṇa was compiled; when dispassion was regarded as the highest state of perfection.

¹⁷⁷ It would seem as if the writer here meant to state that the period of life was that which in the verse of the Mārk. P. (xlii. 24), quoted in the note on verse 63, it is declared to have been. But the expression here is, from some cause or other, imperfect.

twilight (together) deteriorate successively to the extent of three quarters, in the duties peculiar to the Yuga, and in austere fervour, sacred knowledge, strength, and length of life.¹⁷⁷ Then after the evening of the Kṛita had died out, (78) the Tretā age succeeded,— (which) the most excellent rishis regarded as the evening of the Kṛita. But when the evening of the Kṛita had died out, (79) from the influence of time, and for no other reason, perfection disappeared from among the creatures who survived at the commencement of the Tretā age which ensued at the beginning of the Kalpa. 80. When that perfection had perished, another perfection arose. The subtle form of water having returned in the form of cloud (to the sky),¹⁷⁸ (81) rain began to be discharged from the thundering clouds. The earth having once received that rain, (82) trees resembling houses¹⁷⁹ were provided for these creatures. From them all means of enjoyment were produced. 83. Men derived their subsistence from them at the beginning of the Tretā. Subsequently, after a great length of time, owing to their ill fortune, (84) the passions of desire and covetousness arose in their hearts uncaused. The monthly discharge, which occurred at the end of women's lives, (85) did not then take place: but as it commenced again, owing to the force of the age (*yuga*), (86) and as the couples, in consequence of it, began to cohabit, and approached each other monthly, from necessity occasioned by the time,—(87) an unseasonable^{179a} production of the monthly discharge, and of pregnancy ensued. Then through their misfortune, and owing to that fated time, (88) all those house-like trees perished. When these had been destroyed, men disturbed and agitated, (89) but genuine in their desire, longed after that perfection (which they had lost). Then those house-like trees appeared to them; (90) and among their fruits yielded clothes and jewels. On these trees too, in the hollow of every leaf, there was produced, (91) without the aid of bees, honey of great potency, having scent, colour, and flavour. By this means they subsisted at the beginning of the Tretā, (92) delighted with this per-

¹⁷⁷ Such is the only sense I can extract from these rather obscure lines.

¹⁷⁸ Such is the only sense of the words here rendered which occurs to me.

¹⁷⁹ *Griha-saṁsthitāḥ*. Professor Wilson, in his Dictionary, gives "like, resembling," among the meanings of *saṁsthita*.

^{179a} Instead of *ākāle*, "out of season," Professor Aufrecht suggests *ākāle*, "in season," as the proper reading.

fection and free from trouble. Again, through the lapse of time, becoming greedy, (93) they seized by force those trees, and that honey produced without bees. And then, owing to that misconduct of theirs, occasioned by cupidity, (94) the Kalpa trees, together with their honey, were in some places destroyed. As but little of it¹⁸⁰ remained, owing to the effects of the period of twilight, (95) the pairs (of opposites, as pleasure and pain, etc.) arose in men when existing (in this state); and they became greatly distressed by sharp cold winds, and heats. 96. Being thus afflicted by these opposites, they adopted means of shelter: and to counteract the opposites they resorted to houses. 97. Formerly they had moved about at their will, and had not dwelt at all in houses: but subsequently they abode in dwellings, as they found suitable and pleasant, (98) in barren deserts, in valleys, on mountains, in caves; and took refuge in fortresses,—(in a) desert with perpetual water.¹⁸¹ 99. As a protection against cold and heat they began to construct houses on even and uneven places, according to opportunity and at their pleasure. 100. They then measured out towns, cities, villages, and private apartments, according to the distribution of each.” [The following verses 101–107 give an account of the different measures of length and breadth, which is followed, in verses 108–122, by a description of the various kinds of fortresses, towns, and villages, their shapes and sizes, and of roads. The author then proceeds in verse 123:] “These places having been made, they next constructed houses; and as formerly trees existed, formed like houses,¹⁸² (124) so did they (now) begin to erect them, after repeated consideration. (Some) boughs are spread out, others are bent down, (125) others rise upwards, while others again stretch horizontally. After examining thus by reflection how the different boughs of trees branch out, (126) they constructed in like manner the apartments (*sākhāḥ*) (of their houses): hence they

¹⁸⁰ “Perfection” seems to be here intended. If so, it would seem as if this line had been separated from its proper context.

¹⁸¹ *Dhanvānam sāśvatodakam*. Perhaps we should read here with the Märk. P. xlix. 35, *vārkṣyam pūrvatam audakam* “(fortresses) protected by trees, built on mountains, or surrounded by water.”

¹⁸² Whatever may be thought of this rendering of the phrase, *vrīkshāḥ grihasām-*
sthitāḥ, the Märk. P. (xlix. 52), at least, is quite clear: *grihākārū yathā pūrvam-*
teshām āśān mahīruhāḥ | tathā sāmṛitya tat sarvāṁ chakrur veśmāni tūḥ prajāḥ |
 “As they had formerly had trees with the shape of houses, so recalling all that to
 mind, these people built their dwellings.”

are called rooms (*sālāh*).¹⁸³ In this way rooms and houses derive their appellation from branches. 127. Hence rooms are called *sāla*, and in that their character as rooms (*sālātram*) consists. And inasmuch as the mind takes pleasure in them, and as they have gladdened (*prasādayan*), the mind, (128) houses, rooms, and palaces are termed respectively *griha*, *sālā*, and *prasāda*. Having adopted these means of defence against the 'opposites,' they devised methods of subsistence. 129. The kalpa-trees having been destroyed along with their honey, those creatures, afflicted with thirst and hunger, became disquieted by dejection. 130. Then again another perfection arose for them in the Tretā age,—which fulfilled the purpose of subsistence,—viz., rain at their pleasure. 131. The rain-water, which flowed into the hollows, burst out in the form of springs, water-courses, and rivers,¹⁸⁴ through the rain. 132. Thus at the second fall of rain rivers began to flow. When the drops of water first reached the ground, then (133) from the conjunction of the waters and the earth plants sprang up among them, which bore both flowers, roots, and fruits. 134. Fourteen kinds of plants, cultivated and wild, were produced without ploughing or sowing, as well as trees and shrubs which bore flowers and fruit at the proper season. 135. This was the first appearance of plants in the Tretā age, and by them men subsisted at that period. 136. Then there again arose among them, universally, desire and cupidity, through a necessary process, and as a result of the Tretā age. 137. They then appropriated to themselves, by force and violence, rivers, fields, hills, trees, shrubs, and plants. 138. Those perfect beings, who were described by me as existing formerly in the Kṛita,—the mind-born children of Brahmā, who had been produced in this world when they came from the Janaloka,—(139) who were (some) tranquil, (some) fiery, (some) active, and (others) distressed,—were again born in the Tretā, (140) as Brāhmans, Kshattriyas, Vaiśyas, Sūdras, and injurious men, governed by the good and bad actions (performed) in former births. 141. Then those who were weaker than they, being truthful and innocent, dwelt among them, free from cupidity, and self-restrained; (142) whilst

¹⁸³ The reasoning here does not seem very cogent, as the two words *sākha* and *sāla* do not appear to have any close connection. But such unsuccessful attempts at etymology are frequent in Sanskrit works.

¹⁸⁴ The text here does not seem to be in a satisfactory state. The Calc. edition of the Mārk. P. reads *vrishṭyāvaruddhair abhavat*, etc.

others, less glorious than they, took and did.¹⁸⁵ When they had thus become opposed to each other,—(143) through their misconduct, while they struggled together, the plants were destroyed, being seized with their fists like gravel. 144. Then the earth swallowed up the fourteen kinds of cultivated and wild plants, in consequence of the influence exerted by the Yuga: for men had seized again and again the fruit, together with the flowers and leaves. 145. After the plants had perished, the famished people, becoming bewildered, repaired to Svayambhū the lord of creatures, (146) in the beginning of the Tretā age, seeking the means of subsistence.¹⁸⁶ Learning what they desired, (147) and determining by intuition what was proper to be done, the Lord Brahmanā Svayambhū, knowing that the plants had been swallowed up by the earth, milked them back. 148. Taking Sumeru as a calf, he milked this earth. When this earth (or cow)¹⁸⁷ was milked by him, roots were

¹⁸⁵ It is difficult to extract any satisfactory sense out of this line.

¹⁸⁶ The S. P. Br. ii. 4, 2, 1, also speaks of different classes of creatures applying to the creator for food: *Prajāpatiṁ vai bhūtāny upāśidān | prajāḥ vai bhūtāni | "vi no dhehi yathā jīvāma"* iti | *tato devā yajnopavītino bhūtvā dakshinām jānv āchya upāśidān | tān abravid* “*yajno vo 'nnam amritatvām va ūrg vah sūryo vo jyotir*” iti | 2. *Atha enam pitaraḥ prāchīnāvītinah savyām jānv āchya upāśidān | tān abravid* “*māsi māsi vo 'śanām svadhā vo manojava vas' chandramā vo jyotir*” iti | 3. *Atha enam manushyāḥ prāeritāḥ upasthañ kṛtvā upāśidān | tān abravit* “*sāyam prātar vo 'śanam prajāḥ vo mṛityur vo gnir vo jyotir*” iti | 4. *Atha enam pāśavāḥ upāśidān | tebhyaḥ svāisham eva chakūra* “*yadā eva yūyam kadūcha labhādhvai yadi kūle yady anākāle atha eva aśnātha*” iti | *tasmād ete yadān kadūcha labhante yadi kūle yady anākāle atha eva aśnanti* | 5. *Atha ha enam śas'vad apy asurūḥ upasedur ity āhuh | tebhyaś tamaś cha māyām cha pradādāu | asty aha eva asura-māyā* iti iwa | *parābhūtā ha tv eva tāḥ prajāḥ | tāḥ imāḥ prajās tathaiva upajīvanti yathaiva ābhyaḥ Prajāpatir adadāt* | ‘All beings resorted to Prajāpati,—(creatures are beings),—(saying) ‘provide for us that we may live.’ Then the gods, wearing the sacrificial cord, and bending the right knee, approached him. To them he said, ‘let sacrifice be your food, your immortality your strength, the sun your light.’ 2. Then the Fathers, wearing the sacrificial cord on their right shoulders, and bending the left knee, approached him. To them he said, ‘you shall eat monthly, your oblation (*svadhā*) shall be your rapidity of thought, the moon your light.’ 3. Then men, clothed, and inclining their bodies, approached him. To them he said, ‘ye shall eat morning and evening, your offspring shall be your death, Agni your light.’ 4. Then cattle repaired to him. To them he accorded their desire, (saying), ‘Whencever ye find anything, whether at the proper season or not, eat it.’ Hence whenever they find anything, whether at the proper season or not, they eat it. 5. Then they say that the Asuras again and again resorted to him. To them he gave darkness (*tamas*) and illusion. There is, indeed, such a thing as the illusion, as it were, of the Asuras. But those creatures succumbed. These creatures subsist in the very manner which Prajāpati allotted to them.”

¹⁸⁷ *Gauḥ* means both.

produced again in the ground,—(149) those plants, whereof hemp is the seventeenth, which end with the ripening of fruits.” [The plants fit for domestic use, and for sacrifice are then enumerated in verses 150–155.] “155. All these plants, domestic and wild, were for the first time¹⁸⁸ produced at the beginning of the Tretā age, (156) without cultivation, trees, shrubs, and the various sorts of creepers and grasses, both those which produce roots as their fruits, and those which bear fruit after flowering. The seeds for which the earth was formerly milked by Svayambhū (158) now became plants bearing flowers and fruits in their season. When these plants, though created, did not afterwards grow, (159) the divine Brahmā Svayambhū devised for the people means of subsistence depending on labour effected by their hands. 160. From that time forward the plants were produced and ripened through cultivation. The means of subsistence having been provided, Svayambhū (161) established divisions among them according to their tendencies.¹⁸⁹ Those of them who were rapacious, and destructive, (162) he ordained to be Kshattriyas, protectors of the others.¹⁹⁰ As many men as attended on these, fearless, (163) speaking truth and propounding sacred knowledge (*brahma*) with exactness, (were made) Brāhmans. Those others of them who had previously been feeble, engaged in the work of slaughter,¹⁹¹ who, as cultivators (*kīnāśāḥ*), had been destructive, and were active in connection with the ground, were called Vaiśyas, husbandmen (*kīnāśān*), providers of subsistence. 165. And he designated as Sūdras those who grieved (*śocharataḥ*), and ran (*dravantaḥ*),¹⁹² who were addicted to menial tasks, inglorious and feeble.

¹⁸⁸ See the note on verse 55, above.

¹⁸⁹ *Yathāratabhāḥ*. The Mārk. P. has *yathā-nyāyaṁ yathā-guṇam*, “according to fitness and their qualities.”

¹⁹⁰ *Itareshāñi krita-trāṇān*. The M. Bh. xii. 2247, thus explains the word Kshatriya : *brāhmaṇāñi kshata-trāṇāt tataḥ kshatriya uchyate* | “(a king) is called Kshatriya because he protects Brāhmans from injuries.”

¹⁹¹ *Vaiśasāṁ karma*. The former word has the senses of (1) “hindrance, impediment,” and (2) “slaughter,” assigned to it in Wilson’s Dictionary.

¹⁹² The reader who is familiar with the etymologies given in Yāska’s Nirukta, or in Professor Wilson’s Dictionary on Indian authority, will not be surprised at the absurdity of the attempts made here by the Purāṇa-writer to explain the origin of the words Kshatriya, Vaiśya and Sūdra. To account for the last of these names he combines the roots *sūch*, “to grieve,” and *drū*, “to run,” dropping, however, of necessity the last letter (*ch*) of the former. The word *kshatriya* is really derived from *kshatra*, “royal power;” and *vaiśya* comes from *vii*, “people,” and means “a man of the people.”

166. Brahmā determined the respective functions and duties of all these persons. But after the system of the four castes had been in all respects established, (167) those men from infatuation did not fulfil their several duties. Not living conformably to those class-duties, they came into mutual conflict. 168. Having become aware of this fact, precisely as it stood, the Lord Brahmā prescribed force, criminal justice, and war, as the profession of the Kshattriyas. 169. He then appointed these, viz., the duty of officiating at sacrifices, sacred study, and the receipt of presents, to be the functions of Brāhmans. 170. The care of cattle, traffic, and agriculture, he allotted as the work of the Vaiśyas; and the practice of the mechanical arts, and service, he assigned as that of the Sūdras. 171. The duties common to Brāhmans, Kshattriyas, and Vaiśyas were the offering of sacrifice, study, and liberality. 172. Having distributed to the classes their respective functions and occupations, the Lord then allotted to them abodes in other worlds for their perfection. 173. The world of Prajāpati is declared to be the (destined) abode of Brāhmans practising rites; Indra's world that of Kshattriyas who do not flee in battle; (174) the world of the Maruts that of Vaiśyas who fulfil their proper duty; the world of the Gandharvas that of men of Sūdra birth who abide in the work of service. 175. Having allotted these as the future abodes of (the men of the different) classes, who should be correct in their conduct, he ordained orders (*āśramas*) in the classes which had been established. 176. The Lord formerly instituted the four orders of householder, religious student, dweller in the woods, and mendicant. 177. To those of them who do not in this world perform the duties of their castes, the men who dwell in hermitages apply the appellation of 'destroyer of works.' 178. Brahmā established these orders by name, and in explanation of them he declared their duties, (179) their methods of procedure, and their various rites. First of all there is the order of householder, which belongs to all the four classes, (180) and is the foundation and source of the other three orders. I shall declare them in order with their several observances." [The following verses 181-189, which detail these duties, need not be cited here. I shall, however, quote verses 190 ff. for their excellent moral tone.] "190. The Vedas, with their appendages, sacrifices, fasts, and ceremonies, (191) avail not to a depraved man, when his disposition has become corrupted. All external rites are

fruitless (192) to one who is inwardly debased, however energetically he may perform them. A man who bestows even the whole of his substance with a defiled heart will thereby acquire no merit—of which a good disposition is the only cause.” [After giving some further particulars about the celestial abodes of the righteous, verses 194–198, the writer proceeds:] “199. When—after the division into castes and orders had thus been made—(200) the people living under that system did not multiply, Brahmā formed other mind-born creatures in the middle of the Tretā (201) from his own body and resembling himself. When the Tretā age had arrived, and had gradually reached its middle, (202) the Lord then began to form other mind-born creatures. He next formed creatures in whom goodness (*sattva*) and passion (*rajas*) predominated, (203) and who were capable of attaining (the four objects of human pursuit) righteousness, wealth, love, and final liberation, together with the means of subsistence. Gods, too, and Fathers, and Rishis, and Manus (were formed), (204) by whom these creatures were classified (?) according to their natures in conformity with the Yuga. When this character(?) of his offspring had been attained, Brahmā (205) longed after mental offspring of all kinds and of various forms. Those creatures, whom I described to you as having taken refuge in Janaloka, (206) at the end of the Kalpa, all these arrived here, when he thought upon them, in order to be reproduced in the form of gods and other beings. 207. According to the course of the Manvantaras the least were esteemed the first (?), being swayed by destiny, and by connections and circumstances of every description. 208. These creatures were always born, under the controlling influence of, and as a recompence for their good or bad deeds. 209. He by himself formed those creatures which arrived in their several characters of gods, asuras, fathers, cattle, birds, reptiles, trees, and insects, in order that they might be subjected (anew) to the condition of creatures.”¹⁹³

The substance of the curious speculations on the origin and primeval condition of mankind contained in the preceding passage may be stated as follows: In verses 22–34 we are told that the creatures, who at the close of the preceding Kalpa had been driven by the mundane conflagration to Janaloka, now formed the seed of the new creation, which took place in the Kṛita Yuga, at the commencement of the present

¹⁹³ I confess that I have had great difficulty in attaching any sense to the last words.

Kalpa. These were mind-born sons of Brahmā, perfect in nature, and they peopled the world. As a rule, we are informed, those beings who have formerly been elevated from the earth to higher regions, return again and again to this world, and, as a result of their previous works, are born in every age, in every possible variety of condition, exhibiting the same dispositions and fulfilling the same functions as in their former states of existence. It is next stated, verses 35–40, that when creation had, in some way not explained, come to a stand-still, four classes of human beings, consisting each of a thousand pairs of males and females, characterized respectively by different qualities, physical and moral, were produced from different members of the Creator's body.¹⁹⁴ These creatures sought to propagate the race, but abortively, for the reason specified (43). Children however were produced by mental effort (45 and 59), and in considerable numbers (52). The state of physical happiness, absolute and universal equality, moral perfection, and complete dispassion, in which mankind then existed, is depicted (48–65). The means of subsistence and enjoyment, which they are said to have drawn from the earth (48 and 57), were not of the ordinary kind, as we are informed (55 f.) that neither animals nor plants, which are the products of unrighteousness, existed at that period. No division into castes or orders prevailed during that age of perfection (62). A gradual declension, however, had been going on, and at the end of the Krīta Yuga, the perfection peculiar to it had altogether disappeared (70–79). Another kind of perfection, peculiar to the Tretā, however, subsequently arose (73 and 80), and in the different Yugas there has existed a perfection springing from the performance of the duties belonging to each caste and order (75). The perfection described as prevailing in the Tretā was of a physical kind, consisting in the production of rain and the growth of trees, shaped like houses, which at the same time yielded the materials of all sorts of enjoyments (80–82). Passion, however, in its various forms began to take the place of the previous dispassion (84). The constitution of women, which had formerly incapacitated them for effective impregnation, became ultimately so modified as to ensure the successful propagation of the species, which

¹⁹⁴ This statement agrees with that in the Märk. P. xlix. 3 ff. but differs from that already given from the Vishṇu P. in so far as the latter does not specify the numbers created, or say anything about pairs being formed.

accordingly proceeded (84-87).¹⁰⁵ We have then the destruction, and subsequent reproduction of the trees, formed like houses, described (88-91). These trees now produced clothes and jewels, as well as honey without bees, and enabled mankind to live in happiness and enjoyment. Again, however, the trees disappeared in consequence of the cupidity which led to their misuse (92-94). The absence of perfection occasioned suffering of various kinds, from moral as well as physical causes, and men were now driven to construct houses, which they had hitherto found unnecessary (96-99 and 123), and to congregate in towns and cities (100). Their houses were built after the model furnished by trees (123-128). The hunger and thirst which men endured from the loss of the trees which had formerly yielded all the means of subsistence and enjoyment, were relieved by means of a new perfection which appeared in the shape of rain, and the streams thereby generated, and by the growth of plants, which now sprang up for the first time as a result of the conjunction of water and earth (130-135 and 155). Desire and cupidity, however, now again arose and led to acts of violent appropriation (136 f.). At this juncture the perfect mind-born sons of Brahmā, of different dispositions, who had formerly existed in the Kṛita age, were reproduced in the Tretā as Brāhmans, Kshatriyas, Vaiśyas, Sūdras, and destructive men, as a result of their actions in their former existence (138-140). But in consequence of their dissensions and rapacity, the earth swallowed up all the existing plants (142-144). Under the pressure of the distress thus occasioned the inhabitants of the earth resorted to Brahmā, who milked the earth, through the medium of mount Sumeru acting as a calf, and recovered the plants which had disappeared (145-149). As, however, these plants did not propagate themselves spontaneously, Brahmā introduced agriculture (158-160). Having thus provided the means of subsistence, he divided the people into classes according to their characteristics (160-165). But as these classes did not perform their several duties, and came into mutual conflict, Brahmā prescribed their respective functions with greater precision (166-171); and assigned the future celestial abodes which the members of each class might attain by their fulfilment (172-174). He then ordained the four orders of householder, religious

¹⁰⁵ It is not quite clear, however, what is intended by the word *akāla*, "out of season," in verse 87. See the emendation proposed above in the note on that verse.

student, etc. (175-190). After a few verses in praise of moral purity (190-193), the abodes and destinies of the eminently righteous are set forth (194-199). Just when we had arrived at a point in the narrative, from which we might have imagined that it had only to be carried on further to afford us a sufficient explanation of the state of things existing up to the present age, we are suddenly arrested (199-202) by being informed that the people distributed according to the system of castes and orders did not multiply, and are introduced to a new mind-born creation, which took place in the Tretā age, to remedy this failure. We are next told (203) of what appears to be another creation of beings endowed with goodness and passion. And, finally, a yet further re-incorporation of previously existing souls is described as having taken place (205-209). It would thus seem that after all we are left without any account of the origin of the system of castes which prevailed when the Purāṇa was compiled. The only suppositions on which this conclusion can be avoided are either (1) that the cessation in the increase of the generation alluded to in verse 200, which led to the new creation, was not universal, that the race than existing did not entirely die out, but that the old blood was re-invigorated by that of the newly created beings; or (2) that the other set of creatures, mentioned in verse 203, as characterized by goodness and passion, were the progenitors of the present race of men. On these points, however, the text throws no light.

The preceding account of the creation of mankind and of the vicissitudes and deterioration of society, is in some places obscure and confused, and its several parts do not appear to be consistent with each other. At the outset the writer describes the creation of four thousand pairs of human beings, of whom each separate set of one thousand is distinguished by widely different innate characters, the first class having the quality of goodness, the second that of passion, the third those of passion and darkness, and the fourth that of darkness. Nevertheless (as in the parallel passage of the Vishṇu Purāṇa) we cannot find in the narrative the least trace of those inherent differences of character having for a long time manifested themselves by producing dissimilarity either of moral conduct or of physical condition; for the perfection, which is described as existing in the Kṛita age, is spoken of as if it was universal; and not only is no distinction alluded to as prevailing at this period between

the component parts of society, but we are expressly told that no castes or orders then existed. The deterioration also, which ensued towards the end of the Kṛita age, is described as general, and not peculiar to any class. How is this complete uniformity, first of perfection, and afterwards of declension, which, for anything that appears to the contrary, is predicated of the descendants of the whole of the four thousand pairs, to be reconciled with the assertion that each thousand of those pairs was characterized by different innate qualities? The difficulty is not removed by saying that the writer supposed that these inherent varieties of character existed in a latent or dormant state in the different classes, and were afterwards developed in their descendants; for he distinctly declares (verse 54) in general terms that mankind were at that period *sattrabahulāḥ*, i.e. "possessed the quality of goodness in abundance;" and in the earlier part of the subsequent narrative no allusion is made to the different qualities at first ascribed to the four sets of a thousand pairs being separately developed in the members of the four classes respectively. In verse 74, indeed, it appears to be assumed that the division into castes had existed from the creation; for we there find an assertion that in "all the Manvantaras, according to the division of the four yugas," (including apparently the Kṛita) "there is declared to have existed a perfection effected by the observances of the castes and orders, and arising from the fulfilment of works;" but how is this to be reconciled with the express statement of verses 60 and 61, that "in the Kṛita age no works were performed which were either virtuous or sinful," and that "there then existed neither distinctions of caste or order, nor any mixture of castes?" In the Tretā age the state of deterioration continued, but no reference is made of any separation of classes till we come to verse 138, where it is said that the beings who in the Kṛita age had existed as the perfect mind-born sons of Brahmā, were now, as a consequence of their former actions, recalled into human existence, and in conformity with their previous characters as calm, fiery, laborious, or depressed, became Brāhmans, Kshatriyas, Vaiśyas, Sūdras, and men of violence. These creatures, after they had been furnished with the means of subsistence, were eventually divided into classes, according to their varieties of disposition, character, and occupation; and as at first they did not fulfil their proper duties, but encroached upon each others'

provinces, their functions were afterwards more stringently defined and the means of enforcing obedience were provided. Here it is intimated that different sets of beings were born as Brāhmans, Kshattriyas, Vaiśyas, and Sūdras, on account of the different qualities which they had manifested in a previous existence, and that in conformity with those same characteristics they were afterwards formally distributed into castes. This description is therefore so far consistent with itself. The difference of caste is made to depend upon the dispositions of the soul. But how are we to reconcile this postulation of different characters formerly exhibited with the description given in the previous part of the narrative, where we are informed that, in the earlier parts, at least, of the Kṛita age, all men were alike perfect, and that no actions were performed which were either virtuous or vicious? If such was the case at that period, how could the beings who then existed have manifested those differences of disposition and character which are asserted to have been the causes of their being subsequently reborn as Brāhmans, Kshattriyas, Sūdras, and Vaiśyas? It may be admitted that the differences of character, which are attributed in the Purāṇa to the four primeval sets of a thousand pairs of human beings, correspond to those qualities which are described as having subsequently given rise to the division into castes; but the assertion of such a state of uniform and universal perfection, as is said to have intervened between the creation of mankind and the realization of caste, seems incompatible with the existence of any such original distinctions of a moral character.

As regards this entire account when compared with the other two descriptions of the creation given in the previous part of this section, the same remarks are applicable as have been made in the last section, p. 65 f., on the corresponding passages from the Vishṇu Purāṇa.

The chapter which I have just translated and examined, is followed immediately by the one of which I have already in a preceding page quoted the commencement, descriptive of the creation of Asuras, Gods, Fathers, etc., from the different bodies assumed and cast off successively by Brahmā.

I shall now give an extract from the following, or tenth chapter, in which the legend of Śatarūpā is related.

Sāta uvācha | 1. Evambhūteshu lokeśhu Brahmanā loka-karītrinā¹⁰⁰ |

¹⁰⁰ This form *karītrigā* (one which, as is well known, may be optionally employed in

*yadā tāḥ na pravarttante prajāḥ kenāpi hetunā | 2. Tamo-mātrāvritto
Brahmā tadā-prabhṛiti duḥkhitaḥ | tataḥ sa vidadhe buddhim artha-
niśchaya-gāminīm | 3. Athātmani samasrākṣhit tamo-mātrām niyat-
mikām | rajaḥ-sallvam parājitya varttamānam sa dharmataḥ | 4.
Tapyate tena duḥkhena śokaṁ chakre jagat-patiḥ | tamas tu ryanudat
tasmād rajas tach cha samāvṛinot | 5. Tat tamāḥ pratinuttamā rai mi-
thunañ sumryajāyata | adharmaś charanāj jajne hiṁsā śokā ajāyata |
6. Tatas tasmin sumudbhūte mithune charanātmani | tataś cha bhagavān
āśit pritiśchainam aśisriyat | 7. Srām tanuñ sa tato Brahmā tām
apohad abhāsvaram | dvidhā 'karot sa tām deham ardhena purusho
'bharat | 8. Ardhena nārī sā tasya Satarūpā ryajāyata | prākṛtām
bhūta-dhātrim tām kāmād rai śrīshṭarān vibhuḥ | 9. Sā diram prīhi-
rīm chaire mahimnā ryāpya dhishṭhitā | Brahmanāḥ sā tanuh pūrrā
divam ārṛitya tishṭhati | 10. Tā tr ardhāt sriyate nārī Satarūpā ryajā-
yata | sā derī niyataṁ taptrā tapaḥ parama-duścharam | bhartāram
diptayāśasam Purusham pratyapadyata | 11. Sa rai Śrāyambhurāḥ
pūrram Purusho Manur uchyate | tasyaikasaptati-yugam Mantranta-
ram ihochyate | 12. Labdhvā tu purushāḥ patnīm Satarūpām ayonijām |
tayā sa ramate sārddham tasmāt sā Ratir uchyate | 13. Prathamāḥ
samprayogaḥ sa kalpādau samararttata | Virājam asrījad Brahmā so
'bharat Purusho Virāt | 14. Sa samrāt māsarūpāt tu rairājas tu Manuḥ
smṛitaḥ | sa rairājaḥ prajā-sargaḥ sa sarge purusho Manuḥ | 15. Rai-
rājāt purushād rīrāch chhatarūpā ryajāyata | Priyavrattottānapādau
putrau putraratalām raraū |*

“ 1. When the worlds had thus been formed by Brahmā their creator,¹⁹⁷ but the creatures, for some reason did not engage in action,¹⁹⁷(2) Brahmā, enveloped in gloom, and thenceforward dejected, formed a resolution tending to ascertain the fact. 3. He then created in himself (a body) of his own, formed of pure gloom (*tamas*), having overpowered the passion (*rajas*) and goodness (*sallva*) which existed (in him) naturally. 4. The Lord of the world was afflicted with that suffering, and la-

the neuter, but not in the masculine) is here used for metrical reasons. Such irregularities are, as we have seen, designated by the Commentators as *ārsha*. It is unlikely that Brahma should be here used in a neuter sense.

¹⁹⁷ The true reading here may be *pravarddhante*, in which case the sense will be “did not multiply.” Compare the parallel passage in the Vishṇu Purāṇa, i. 7, 4, p. 64.

mented.¹⁹⁸ He then dispelled the gloom, and covered over the passion.

5. The gloom, when scattered, was formed into a pair.¹⁹⁹ Unrighteousness arose from activity (?), and mischief sprang from sorrow.²⁰⁰

6. That active (?) pair having been produced, he became glorious (?) and pleasure took possession of him. 7. Brahmā after that cast off that body of his, which was devoid of lustre, and divided his person into two parts; with the half he became a male (*purusha*) (8) and with the half a female: it was Satarūpā who was so produced to him.

Under the impulse of lust he created her a material supporter of beings. 9. By her magnitude she pervaded both heaven and earth.

That former body of Brahmā invests the sky. 10. This divine female Satarūpā, who was born to him from his half, as he was creating, by incessantly practising austere fervour of a highly arduous description, acquired for herself as a husband a Male (*purusha*) of glorious renown.

He is called of old the Male, Manu Svāyambhuva; and his period (*manvantara*) is declared to extend to seventy-one Yugas. 12. This Male, having obtained for his wife, Satarūpā, not sprung from any womb, lived in dalliance with her (*ramate*); and from this she is called

Rati (the female personification of sexual love). 13. This was the first cohabitation practised in the beginning of the Kalpa. Brahmā

created Virāj; he was the Male, Virāj. 14. He is the sovereign (*samrāj*), from his having the form of a month; and Manu is known as the son of Virāj.²⁰⁰ This creation of living beings is called that of Virāj. In this creation Manu is the male. 15. Satarūpā bore to the heroic Purusha, son of Virāj, two sons, Priyavrata and Uttānapāda, the most eminent of these who have sons.” This is followed by a further genealogy, into which I will not enter.

By comparing this account with the one extracted above, p. 64 f. from the Vishṇu Purāṇa, i. 7, 1 ff., it will be seen that while it makes no allusion to the production of Rudra, as related in the Vishṇu Purāṇa (which, as well as the birth of the mental sons of Brahmā, the Vāyu Purāṇa had described in the preceding chapter, verses 67–83), it is somewhat fuller in regard to the legend of Satarūpā; and although it

¹⁹⁸ With this account of Brahmā's dejection and grief the accounts quoted above pp. 68 ff. from the Brāhmaṇas may be compared.

¹⁹⁹ Compare the narrative of the Vishṇu Purāṇa i. 7, 9 ff. quoted in p. 64 f.

²⁰⁰ Compare the account given in Manu's Institutes, above, p. 36.

does not allow that Brahmā cohabited with his daughter, and assigns to her another husband, Manu Svāyambhūva, it describes the creator as having been actuated by carnal desire in generating her. I shall give further illustrations of this story in the next section.

Sect. IX.—*Legend of Brahmā and his daughter, according to the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa, and of Satarūpā, according to the Matsya Purāṇa.*

The story which forms the subject of the present section is noticed at some length in the fourth volume of this work, pp. 38–46, where one of the oldest passages in which it is related, is quoted from the Satapatha Brāhmaṇa, i. 7, 4, 1 ff., together with one of a comparatively late age from the Bhāgavata Purāṇa, iii. 12, 28 ff. As however the legend, ~~though repulsive in its character~~, is not without interest as illustrating the opinions which Indian mythologists have entertained regarding their deities, I shall quote two other texts in which it is narrated.

The first, from the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa, iii. 33, has, no doubt (along with the passage of the Satapatha Brāhmaṇa just referred to, and another from the same work, xiv. 4, 2, 1 ff., quoted above, in p. 24 ff.), furnished the ideas which are expanded in the later versions of the story. It is as follows:

Prajāpatir vai svāṁ duhitaram abhyadhyāyat | Diram ity anye āhur Ushasam ity anye | tām riśyo bhūtevā rohitām bhūtām abhyait | tam derā apaśyan | “akrītam rai Prajāpatiḥ karoti” iti | te tam aichhan yaḥ enam ārishiya | etam anyonyasmin na avindan | teshām yā eva ghoratamās tanuḥ āsaṁs tāḥ ekadhā samabharan | tāḥ sambhṛitāḥ esha devo’bharat | tad asya etad bhūtaran-nāma | bharati rai sa yo’sya etad evaṁ nāma veda | tam derā abrurann “ayaṁ rai Prajāpatir akritam akar imam vidhya” iti | sa “tathā” ity abrarit | “sa rai vo rarañ vrīñai” iti | “vrīñishra” iti | sa etam eva raram arrinīta paśūnām ādhipatyam | tad asya etat paśuman-nāma | paśumān bhavati yo’sya etad evaṁ nāma veda | tam abhyāyatya aridhyat | sa viddhaḥ ūrddhvē udaprāpatad ityādi²⁰¹ |

²⁰¹ See the translation of this passage given by Dr. Haug in his Aitareya Brāhmaṇa

"Prajāpati lusted after his own daughter. Some call her the Sky, others Ushas. Becoming a buck, he approached her after she had become a doe. The gods saw him; (and said) Prajāpati does a deed which was never done (before).²⁰² They sought some one who should

be vengeance on him. Such a person they did not find among themselves. They then gathered together their most dreadful bodies. These when combined formed this god (Rudra). Hence (arises) his name connected with Bhūta (*Bhūtapati*). That man flourishes²⁰³ who thus knows this name of his. The gods said to him, 'This Prajāpati has done a deed which was never done before: pierce him.' He replied, 'so be it,' (adding), 'let me ask a boon of you.' They rejoined, 'ask.' He asked for this boon, viz., lordship over cattle. Hence arises his name connected with Paśu (*Paśupati*). He who thus knows his name, becomes the owner of cattle. He then attacked (Prajāpati) and pierced him. He, when pierced, soared upwards," etc. etc.

The second passage I proposed to cite is from the Matsya Purāṇa, chapter iii. verses 32 ff.: *Etad tattrātmakaṁ kritrā jagad dredhā ajījanat | 33. Sātritṛm loka-siddhyartham hridi kritrā samāsthitaḥ | tataḥ sanjapatas tasya bhītrā deham akalmasham | 34. strī-rūpam arddham akarod arddham purusha-rūparat | Satarūpā cha sā khyātā Sāritrī cha nigadyate | 35. Sarasraty atha Gāyatrī Brahmāṇī cha parantapa | tataḥ sa Brahmaṇevās tām ātmajām ity akalpayat | 36. Dṛishṭrā tām tyathitas tāvat kāma-vāñārdito vibhuḥ | "aho rūpam aho rūpam" ity urācha tadā 'tyayaḥ | 37. Tato Vasishṭha-pramukhā "bhaginīm" iti chukruṣuḥ | Brahmā na kinchid dadṛise tan-mukhālokanād rite | 38. "Aho rūpam aho rūpam" iti āha punaḥ punaḥ | tataḥ pranāma-namrām tām punas tām abhyalokayat | 39. Atha praduksinām chakre sā pitur varavarṇinī | putreḥhyo lajjitasyāsyā tād-rūpāloka-nechhayā | 40. Āvirbhūtaṁ tato vāktrum dakshinām pāṇḍu-ganduravat |*

vol. ii. pp. 218 ff.; and the remarks on this translation by Professor Weber, Indische Studien, ix. 217 ff.; and also Professor Roth's explanation of the word *bhūtavat* in his Lexicon.

²⁰² This seems to be imitated in the line of the Bhāgavata Purāṇa iii. 12, 30, quoted in vol. iv. of this work, p. 40: *nālāt pūrvaiḥ kṛitaṁ tvad ye na karishyanti chāpare | "This was never done by those before thee, nor will those after thee do it."*

²⁰³ *Bhavati*. In the Brāhmaṇas this verb has frequently the sense of prospering, as opposed to *parābhavati*, "he perishes." See Böhlking and Roth's Lexicon, s. v., and the passages there referred to.

vismaya-sphurad-oshthaṁ cha pāśchātyam udagāt tataḥ | 41. Chatur-
 thum abhavat paśchād vāmañ kāma-śarūtam | tato 'nyad abharat
 tasya kāmātūratayā tathā | 42. Utpatantyās tada "kāśe ālokena kutū-
 halat | śrīṣṭy-arthān yat kṛitam tena tapaḥ paramadāruṇam | 43. Tat
 sarvam nāśam agamat sva-sutopagamechhayā | tenāśu²⁰⁴ vaktram abharat
 panchamañ tasya dhīmataḥ | 44. Āvirbhavaraj jaṭābhīścha tad vaktranchā-
 rrinot prabhuh | tatas tān abravīd Brahmā putrān ātma-samudbhārān |
 45. "Prajāḥ śrijadhr̥am abhitah sa-devāsura-mānushāḥ" | evam uktās
 tataḥ sarve sasrījur vividhāḥ prajāḥ | 46. Gateshu teshu śrīṣṭyarthatam
 pranāmāranatām imām | upayeme sa riśvātmā S'atarūpām aninditām |
 47. Sambabhūra tayā sārddham atikāmāturo vibhuḥ | salajjām chakame
 deraḥ kamalodara-mandire | 48. Xārad abda-śatañ diryañ yathā 'nyāḥ
 prākrīto janāḥ | tataḥ kālena mahatā tasyāḥ putro 'bhārad Manuḥ | 49.
 Srāyambhūra iti khyātāḥ sa Virāḍ iti naḥ śrutam | tad-rūpa-guṇa-sāmā-
 nyād adhipūrusha uchyate | 50. Vairājā yatra te jātāḥ bahāraḥ sāṁśita-
 vratāḥ | Srāyambhūra mahābhāgāḥ saptā saptā tathā 'pare | 51. Srā-
 rochishādyāḥ sarve te Brahma-tulya-srārūpiṇāḥ | Auttami-pramukhās
 tadrād yeshām trañ saptamo 'dhunā | (Adhyāya. 4.) Manur urācha |
 1. Aho kashṭatarām chaitad angajāgamanañ ribhoḥ | Kathañ na dosham
 agamat karmanā tena Padmajāḥ | 2. Parasparañcha sambandhaḥ sago-
 trāñām abhūt katham | rairāhikas tat-sutlāñām chhindi me sāṁśayām
 vibho | Matrya urācha | 3. Dirye Yam ādi-śrīṣṭis tu rajo-guṇa-samud-
 bharā | atīndriyendriyā tadrād atīndriya-śārīrikā | 4. Dirya-tejomayī
 bhūpa dirya-jnāna-samudbhārā | na chānyair abhitah śakyā jnātuṁ rai
 māṁsa-chakshushā | 5. Yathā bhujangāḥ sarpāñām ākāśe sarva-pakshi-
 nām | vidanti mārgām diryāñām diryā eva na mānarāḥ | 6. Kāryā-
 kāryena devāscha śubhāśubha-phala-pradāḥ | yasmāt tasmād na rājendra
 tad-vichārō nṛīñām śubhaḥ | 7. Anyachcha sarva-devāñām adhishṭhātā
 chaturmukhaḥ | gāyatrī Brahmaṇas tadrād anga-bhūtā nigadyate | 8.
 Amūrtta-mūrttimad vāpi mithunancha prachakshate | Viranchir yatra
 bhagavāns tatra devī Sarasvatī | 9. Bhāratī yatra yatraira tatra tatra
 Prajāpatih | yathā tapena rahitā chhāyā rai (? na) dṛiṣyato krachit |
 10. Gāyatrī Brahmaṇāḥ pārśvam tathāira na vimunchati | veda-rāśih
 smrito Brahmā Sāvitrī tad-adhishṭhitā | 11. Tasmād na kaścid doshaḥ
 syāt Sāvitrī-gamano vibhoḥ | tathāpi lajjāvanataḥ Prajāpatir abhūt purā |
 12. Sva-sutopagamād Brāhmā śāśūpa Kusumāyudham | yaemūd manūpi

²⁰⁴ Instead of tenāśu the Gaikwar MS. reads tenordhva.

bharatā manah saṁkshobhitam̄ śaraiḥ 13. *Tasmāt trad-deham achirād Rudro bhasmīkarishyati* | *tataḥ prasādayāmāsa Kāmaderas Chaturmukham* | 14. “*Nā mām akāraṇāṁ śaptūṁ tam iḥārhasi mām ara* | *aham eraṁ-vidhaḥ śriṣṭas trayairā chaturānana* | 15. *Indriya-kshobha-janakah sarveshāṁ era dehināṁ* | *stri-puṁsor arīchāreṇa mayā sarvatra sarvadā* | 16. *Kshobhyam manah prayatnena trayairoktam purā vibho* | *tasmād anaparādhena trayā śaptas tathā vibho* | 17. *Kuru prasādam bhagaran sra-śarīrāptaye punah* | *Brahmā uvācha* | 18. *Fairasvate 'ntare prāpte Yādarānraya-sambharaḥ* | *Rāmo nāma yadā martyo mat-sattra-balām āśritah* | 19. *Aratiryyūsura-dhrañsi Drārakām adhiratsyati* | *tad-dhātus tat-samaścha²⁰⁵ traṁ tadā putratram eshyasi ityādi* |

“32. Having thus formed the universe, consisting of the principles, he generated a twofold creation, (33) having, with a view to the completion of the world, placed and kept Sāvitri in his heart. Then as he was muttering prayers, he divided his spotless body (34) and gave to the half the form of a woman, and to the half that of a male. (This female) is called Satarūpā, Sāvitri, (35) Sarasvatī, Gayatrī, and Brahmāṇī. Brahmā then took her for his daughter. 36. Beholding her, the imperishable deity, distressed, tortured with the arrows of love, exclaimed, ‘o what beauty! o what beauty!’ 37. Then (his sons) headed by Vasishṭha, cried aloud, ‘(our) sister.’ Brahmā saw nothing else, looking only at her face; (38) and exclaimed again and again, ‘o what beauty! o what beauty!’ He then again gazed upon her, as she bend forward in obeisance. 39. The fair woman then made a circuit round her father. As on account of his sons he felt ashamed from his desire of gazing on her beauty (40) there appeared (on his head) a southern face with pale cheeks; and there was afterwards manifested a western face with lips quivering with astonishment. 41. A fourth was subsequently formed, beautiful, disquieted by the arrows of love. Then another was produced from the disturbing influence of the same passion, (42) and from eagerness in gazing after her as she rose upwards in the sky. That austere fervour, extremely dreadful, which Brahmā had practised with a view to creation, (43) was entirely lost through his desire to approach his daughter (carnally). Through this was produced speedily the fifth face (or, according to one MS., the upper

²⁰⁵ Such appears to be the reading of the Gaikwar MS. The original reading of the Taylor MS. has been erased, and another substituted, *tatas tat-samaye tvam cha.*

AND OF THE ORIGIN OF THE FOUR CASTES.

the fifth face) of the wise deity, (44) which appeared with matted hair, and which he covered up. Brahmā then said to the sons who had sprung from him, (45) 'create living beings everywhere, gods, asuras, and men.' They, being thus addressed, created beings of various kinds.
 46. When they had gone away for the purpose of creating, he, who is the universe, took for his wife the unblamed Satarūpā. 47. Sickened with love, he cohabited with her: like any ordinary being, he loved her,—though she was full of shame—embowered in the hollow of a lotus, (48) for a hundred years of the gods. A long time after, a son was born to her, Manu (49) called Svāyambhuva, who, as we have heard, is Virāj. From their community of form and qualities he is called Adhipūrusha.²⁶ 50. From him were sprung those numerous Vairājas, steadfast in religious observances, those seven glorious sons of Svayambhū, and those other seven Manus, (51) beginning with Svārochisha and Auttami, in form equal to Brahmā, of whom thou²⁷ art now the seventh. (4th chapter) 1. Manu says: 'Ah! this is most afflicting, this entrance of love into the god. How was it that the lotus-born did not incur guilt by that act? 2. And how did a matrimonial connection take place between persons of the same family who were sprung from him? Solve this doubt of mine, o Lord. The Fish replied: 3. This primeval creation was celestial, produced from the quality of passion (*rajas*); it had senses removed beyond the cognizance of sense, and bodies of the same description, (4) was possessed of celestial energy, derived from celestial knowledge, and cannot be perfectly perceived by others with the eye of flesh. 5. Just as serpents know the path of serpents, and (beings living) in the sky know the path of all sorts of birds, so too the celestials alone, and not men, know the way of celestials. 6. And since it is the gods who award the recompence, favourable or unfavourable, according as good or bad deeds have been done,—it is not good for men to examine this (question). 7. Furthermore, the four-faced (Brahmā) is the ruler of all the gods, and in like manner the Gāyatrī is declared to be a member of Brahmā. 8. And, as
Na sasādāsādā

²⁶ Compare the Purusha Sukta, above p. 8, in the fifth verse of which the words *Virājo adhi pūrushah* occur. If the last two words are combined they give the name in the text.

²⁷ This account is given by the deity represented as incarnate in a Fish, to Manu Vaivasvata.

they say, there is a pair consisting of the formless, and of that which has form. Wherever the divine Viranchi (Brahmā) is, there is also the goddess Sarasvatī. 9. Wherever Bhāratī (a name of Sarasvatī) is, there is also Prajāpatī. Just as shadow is nowhere seen without sunshine, (10) so Gāyatrī never forsakes the side of Brahmā. He is called the collected Veda, and Sāvitrī rests upon him; (11) there can therefore be no fault in his approaching her. Nevertheless, Brahmā, the lord of creatures, was bowed down with shame, (12) because he had approached his own daughter, and cursed Kusumāyudha²⁰⁸ (Kāma), (in these words) 'As even my mind has been agitated by thy arrows, Rudra shall speedily reduce thy body to ashes.' Kāmadeva then propitiated the four-faced deity, saying, (14) 'Thou oughtest not to curse me without cause: preserve me. It is by thee thyself that I have been created with such a character, (15) an agitator of the organs of sense of all embodied creatures. The minds both of men and women must always and everywhere (16) be energetically stirred up by me without hesitation: this thou thyself hast formerly declared. It is therefore without any fault of mine that I have been thus cursed by thee. 17. Be gracious, lord, that I may recover my body.' Brahmā answered: 18. 'When the Vairavata Manvantara shall have arrived, a mortal, named Rāma, sprung from the Yādava race, deriving force from my essence, (19) and, becoming incarnate as a destroyer of Asuras, shall inhabit Dvārakā. Thou shalt then become a son of his substance and like to him,' etc.

The narrator of this legend does not hesitate to depict in the strongest colours (though without the least approach to grossness) the helpless subjection of Brahmā to the influence of sexual desire. This illicit indulgence was regarded by the authors of the Satapatha and Aitareya Brāhmaṇas as in the highest degree scandalous, and they do not attempt to palliate its enormity by any mystical explanation, such as that which we find in the Matsya Purāṇa. Whether this apology proceeded from the original narrator, or from a later writer of a more sensitive disposition, who perceived its inconsistency with any elevated idea of the superior powers, is difficult to say. It is quite possible that the same writer who gave his fancy scope in describing the unbecoming scene, of which the substance had been handed down in works regarded

²⁰⁸ The word means "He whose weapons are flowers."

as authoritative, may also have thought it necessary to discover some device for counteracting the scandal. On the other hand, the original writer seems to cut himself off from the privilege of resorting to any mystical refinements to explain away the offence, by having in the first instance represented Brahmā's indulgence as on a level with that of ordinary beings. And even after the apology has been concluded, we are still told that Brahmā could not help feeling ashamed of what he had done. The writer of the explanation ought to have perceived that if his defence was of any value, the deity for whom he was apologizing had no ground for humiliation. But he did not venture to expunge the popular features of the story. The grounds on which the apology proceeds are partly of the same character as those which the writer of the Bhāgavata Purāṇa assumes in the passage (x. 33, 27 ff.) which is given in the fourth volume of this work, pp. 42 f., viz., that the gods are not to be judged on the same principles as men,—that "the celestials have laws of their own" (*sunt superis sua jura*). The Bhāgavata Purāṇa has, however, different measures for Brahmā and for Krishna; for whilst the adultery of the latter is defended in the verses just referred to, no desire is shown to vindicate the former in the other passage, iii. 12, 28 ff., adduced in the same volume, page 40.

As regards the details of the story according to the different Purāṇas, I may observe that while the Vishṇu, the Vāyu (see above, pp. 65, and 106), and the Mārkandeya Purāṇas, xl. 13 f., represent Satarūpā as the wife of Manu Svāyambhuva, the Matsya Purāṇa, as we have just seen, declares her to have been the spouse of Brahmā himself, and the mother of Manu Svāyambhuva.²⁰⁰ This is repeated in the twenty-sixth verse of the fourth chapter:

Yā sā dehārddha-sambhūtā Gāyatrī brahma-rādinī | jananī yā Manor
devī S'atarūpā S'atendriyā | 27. Eति॒र॒ Manas॑ Tapo॒ Buddhir॑ mahad-ādi-
samudbhārā²¹⁰ | tataḥ sa S'atarūpāyāṁ saptāpatyāny aṣṭjanat | 28. Ye
Marichyādayaḥ putrāḥ mānasāś tasya dhimataḥ | teshām ayam abhūl
lokaḥ sarva-jnānātmakaḥ purā | 29. Tato 'srijad Vāmadevam triśūla-
vara-dhārinam | Sanatkumārañcha vibhūm pūrveshām api pūrvajam | 30.

²⁰⁰ Compare the account given in Manu's Institutes (above, p. 36), which does not coincide in all particulars with any of the Purāṇas here quoted.

²¹⁰ In this line the original readings are in several places erased in the Taylor MS. I have endeavoured to restore it with the help of the Gaikwar MS.

*Vāmadevaś tu bhagarān asrijad mukhato dvijān | rājanyān asrijad bāhvor
Viś-sūdrāv ūru-pādayoh | 35. Svāyambhuvo Manur dhīmāṁs
tapas taptrā euduścharam | patnīm arāpa rūpādhyām Anantām nāma
nāmataḥ | Priyavrattānapādau Manus tasyām ajījanat |*

“She who was produced from the half of his body, Gāyatrī the declarer of sacred science, she who was the mother of Manu, the goddess Satarūpā (*i.e.* having a hundred forms), Satendriyā (*i.e.* having a hundred senses), (27) (was also) Rati, Mind, Austere Fervour, Intellect, sprung from Mahat and the other principles. He then begot upon Satarūpā seven sons. 28. This world, composed of all knowledge, sprang from Marīchi, and the others who were the mind-born sons of that wise Being. He next created Vāmadeva (Mahādeva), the wielder of the excellent trident, and the lord Sanatkumāra, born before the earliest. 30. Then the divine Vāmadeva created Brāhmans from his mouth, Rājanyas from his breast, the Viś and the Sūdra from his thighs and feet.” [After describing in the following verses some other creations of Vāmadeva, the writer proceeds in verse 35:] “The wise Manu Svāyambhuva, having practised austere fervour of the most arduous kind, obtained a beautiful wife named Anantā. On her he begot Priyavrata and Uttānapāda.”

Having made Manu the son of Satarūpā, the writer was obliged to give him another female for a wife, as we see he has here done.

It will be observed that in this passage Vāmadeva—and not Brahmā, as in the other Purāṇas—is described as the creator of the four castes.

Sect. X.—Quotations from the *Rāmāyaṇa* on the Creation, and on the Origin of Castes.

The substance of the first of the following passages has already been stated above in a note on page 36. Part of it is also quoted in p. 54, and it is more fully cited in the fourth volume of this work, p. 29, but for facility of reference I repeat it here.

Rāmāyaṇa (Bombay edition) ii. 110, 1. *Kruddham ajnāya Rāmām tu
Vasishṭhaḥ pratyuvācha ha | Jābālir api jāñite lokasyāya gatāgatim |*
2. *Nivarttayitu-kāmas tu tvām etad rākyam abravit | imām loka-samut-*

*pattiṁ loka-nātha nibodha me | 3. Sarvaṁ salilam evāśit prithivī tatra
nirmitū | tataḥ samabhavat Brahmā Svayambhūr daivataḥ saha | 4. Sa
varāhas tato bhūtvā projjahāra vasundharām | asrijah cha jagat sarvām
saha putraiḥ kṛitātmabhiḥ | 5. Ākāśaprabhavo Brahmā śūśvato nitya
aryayaḥ | tasmād Marichiḥ sanjajne Maricheḥ Kaśyapaḥ sutaḥ | 6. Viras-
rāṇi Kaśyapāj jajne Manur Vairasvataḥ svayam | sa tu prajāpatiḥ pūr-
ram Ikshvākus tu Manoh sutaḥ | 7. Yasyeyam prathamām dattā samṛid-
dhā Manunā mahī | tam Ikshvākum Ayodhyāyām rājānaṁ viddhi pūr-
vakam |*

" 1. Perceiving Rāma to be incensed²¹¹ Vasishṭha replied: 'Jābāli also knows the destruction and renovation of this world. 2. But he spoke as he did from a desire to induce you to return. Learn from me, lord of the earth, this (account of) the origin of the world. 3. The universe was nothing but water. In it the earth was fashioned. Then Brahmā Svayambhū came into existence, with the deities. He next, becoming a boar, raised up the earth, and created the entire world, with the saints his sons. 5. Brahmā, the eternal, unchanging, and undecaying, was produced from the ether (*ākāśa*). From him sprang Marichi, of whom Kaśyapa was the son. 6. From Kaśyapa sprang Vivasvat: and from him was descended Manu, who was formerly the lord of creatures (*prajāpati*). Ikshvāku²¹² was the son of Manu (7) and to him this prosperous earth was formerly given by his father. Know that this Ikshvāku was the former king in Ayodhyā."

The account which I next quote does not agree with the last in its details, as, besides representing the Prajāpatis or sons of Brahmā to be seventeen in number, it places Marichi, Kaśyapa, and Vivasvat in the same rank as contemporaries, while the former narrative declares them to have been respectively father, son, and grandson.

Rāmāyaṇa iii. 14, 5. *Rāmasya rachanaṁ śrutrā kulam ātmānam era
cha | āchachakshe dvījas tasmai sarva-bhūta-samudbhavam | 6. Pūrra-
kāle mahābāho ye prajāpatayo 'bhavan | tān me nigadataḥ sarrān āditāḥ
śrīnu Rāghava | 7. Kardamaḥ prathamas teshām Vikritas tad-anan-
tarām | S'esaś cha Saṁśrayaś chaiva Bahuputraś cha vīryavān | 8.*

²¹¹ On account of a materialistic and immoral argument which had been addressed to him by Jābāli to induce him to disregard his deceased father's arrangements regarding the succession to the throne. See Journ. Roy. As. Soc. vol. xix. pp. 303 ff.

²¹² The name Ikshvāku occurs in R. V. x. 60, 4. See Professor Max Müller's article in Journ. Roy. As. Soc. for 1866, pp. 461 and 462.

Sthāñur Marīchir Atriś cha Kratuś chaira mahābalah | Pulastaś chāngirāś chaira Prachetāḥ Pulahas tathā | 9. Daksho Virasvān aparo 'rishṭanemis cha Rāghava | Kaśyapaś cha mahatjāś teshām āśic̄ha paśchimah | 10. Prajāpates tu Dakshasya babbūrur iti viśrutāḥ | shashṭir duhitaro Rāma yaśasvinyo mahāyasāḥ | 11. Kaśyapāḥ pratijagrāha tāśām ashtau sumadhyamāḥ | Aditiṁ cha Ditiṁ chaira Danūm api cha Kālakām | 12. Tāmrām Krodhavaśāṁ chaira Manuṁ²¹³ chāpy Analām api | tās tu kanyās tataḥ prītāḥ Kaśyapāḥ punar abravīt | 13. Putrāṁs trailokya-bhātrīn rai janayishyatha mat-samān | Aditis tan-mānāḥ Rāma Ditiścha Danūr era cha | 14. Kālakā cha mahābāho śeshās tv amanaso²¹⁴ bhāvan | Adityām jajnire devās trayastriṁśad arindama | 15. Ādityā Vasaro Rudrā Aśvināu cha parantapa | 29. Manur manushyān janayat Kaśyapasya mahātmanaḥ | brāhmaṇān kshattriyān vaiśyān śūdrānś cha manujarshabha | 30. Mukhato brāhmaṇā jātāḥ urasah kshattriyās tathā | ūrubhyām jajnire raiśyāḥ padbhyaṁ śūdrā iti śrutiḥ | 31. Sarvān puṇya-phalān vṛikṣhān Analā 'pi vyajāyata |

“5. Having heard the words of Rāma, the bird (*Jatāyus*) made known to him his own race, and himself, and the origin of all beings. 6. ‘Listen while I declare to you from the commencement all the Prajāpatis (lords of creatures) who came into existence in the earliest time. 7. Kardama was the first, then Vikṛita, Sesha, Saṁśraya, the energetic Bahuputra, (8) Sthānu, Marīchi, Atri, the strong Kratu, Pulasta, Angiras, Prachetas, Pulaha, (9) Daksha, then Vivasvat, Arishṭanemi, and the glorious Kaśyapa, who was the last. 10. The Prajāpati Daksha is famed to have had sixty daughters. 11. Of these Kaśyapa took in marriage eight elegant maidens, Aditi, Diti, Danū, Kālakā, (12) Tāmrā, Krodhavaśā, Manu,²¹⁵ and Analā. Kaśyapa, pleased, then said

²¹³ *Balām Atibalām api*.—Gorr.

²¹⁴ *Manoratha-hīmāḥ*.—Comm.

²¹⁵ I should have doubted whether Manu could have been the right reading here, but that it occurs again in verse 29, where it is in like manner followed in verse 31 by Analā, so that it would certainly seem that the name Manu is intended to stand for a female, the daughter of Daksha. The Gauḍa recension, followed by Signor Gorresio (iii. 20, 12), adopts an entirely different reading at the end of the line, viz. *Balām Atibalām api*, “Balā and Atibalā,” instead of Manu and Analā. I see that Professor Roth s.v. adduces the authority of the Amara Kosha and of the Commentator on Pāṇini for stating that the word sometimes means “the wife of Manu.” In the following text of the Mahābhārata i. 2553, also, Manu appears to be the name of a female: *Anavadyām Manuṁ Vañśām Asurām Mūrganapriyām | Anūpām Subhagām Bhāśīm iti Prādhā vyajāyata |* “Prādhā (daughter of Daksha) bore Anavadyā, Manu, Vanśā, Asurā, Mūrganapriyā, Anūpā, Subhagā, and Bhāśī.

to these maids, (13) ‘ye shall bring forth sons like to me, preservers of the three worlds.’ Aditi, Diti, Danū, (14) and Kālakā assented; but the others did not agree. Thirty-three gods were borne by Aditi, the Ādityas, Vasus, Rudras, and the two Aśvins.” [The following verses 15–28 detail the offspring of Diti, Danū, Kālakā, Tāmrā, Krodhavaśā, as well as of Kraunchī, Bhāsi, Syenī, Dhṛitarāshṭri, and Sūkī the daughters of Kālakā, and of the daughters of Krodhavaśā. (Compare the Mahābhārata, i. 2620–2635; and Wilson’s Vishṇu Purāṇa, vol. ii. pp. 72 f.) After this we come upon Manu and the creation of mankind.] “29. Manu, (wife) of Kaśyapa,²¹⁶ produced men, Brāhmans, Kshattriyas, Vaiśyas, and Sūdras. 30. ‘Brāhmans were born from the mouth, Kshattriyas from the breast, Vaiśyas from the thighs, and Sūdras from the feet,’ so says the Veda. 31. Analā gave birth to all trees with pure fruits.”

It is singular to observe that in this passage, after having represented men of all castes as sprung from Manu, the writer next adds a verse to state, on the authority of the Veda, that the different castes were produced from the different parts of the body out of which they issued. Unless Manu’s body be here meant, there is a contradiction between the two statements. If Manu’s body is meant, the assertion conflicts with the common account. And if the Manu here mentioned is, as appears from the context, a woman, we should naturally conclude that her offspring was born in the ordinary way; especially as she is said to have been one of the wives of Kaśyapa.

The next passage from the Uttara Kāṇḍa of the Rāmāyaṇa, 74, 8 f., describes the condition of men in the Kṛita age, and the subsequent introduction of the caste system in the Tretā. The description purports to have been occasioned by an incident which had occurred just before. A Brāhmaṇ had come to the door of Rāma’s palace in Ayodhyā, carrying the body of his dead son,²¹⁷ and bewailing his loss, the blame

²¹⁶ The text reads Kuśyapa, “a descendant of Kaśyapa,” who, according to Rām. ii, 110, 6, ought to be Vivasvat. But as it is stated in the preceding part of this passage iii. 14, 11 f. that Manu was one of Kaśyapa’s eight wives, we must here read Kaśyapa. The Gauda recension reads (iii. 20, 30) *Manur manushyāṁś cha tathā janayāmāsa Rāghava*, instead of the corresponding line in the Bombay edition.

²¹⁷ The boy is said, in 73, 5, to have been *aprūpta-yauvanam bālam pancha-varsha-sahasrakam* | “a boy of five thousand years who had not attained to puberty!” The Commentator says that *varsha* here means not a year, but a day (*varsha-sabdo ’tre*)

of which (as he was himself unconscious of any fault) he attributed to some misconduct on the part of the king. Rāma in consequence convened his councillors, when the divine sage Nārada spoke as follows :

8. *Srinu rājan yathā 'kālē prāpto bālasya sankshayaḥ | śrutrā karttaryatāṁ rājan kurushva Raghunandana |* 9. *purā kṛita-yuge rājan brāhmaṇā vai tapasvināḥ |* 10. *Abrāhmaṇas tādā rājan na tapasvī kāthanchana | tasmin yuge prajvalite brahmabhūte tv anārvite |* 11. *Amritiyavas tādā sarve jajnire dīrgha-darśināḥ | tatas tretā-yugāṁ nāma mānarānāṁ rapushmatāṁ |* 12. *Kshattriyā yatra jāyante pūrvēṇa tapasā 'nrītāḥ | vīryyena tapasā chaiva te 'dhikāḥ pūrrva-janmani | mānavā ye mahātmānas tatra tretā-yuge yuge |* 13. *Brahma kshattram cha tat sarvām yat pūrrvam avaram cha yat | yugayor ubhayor asit sama-vīryya-samanritam |* 14. *Apaśyantas tu te sarve viśesham adhikāmataḥ | sthāpanāṁ chakrire tatra chāturvarṇasya sammatam |* 15. *Tasmin yuge prajvalite dharmabhūte hy anārvite | adharmaḥ pādam ekaṁ tu pātayat prithivītale | 19. Pātite tv anṛite tasminn adharmeṇu muhītale | śubhāny evācharal lokāḥ satya-dharma-parāyanāḥ |* 20. *Tretā-yuge cha varttante brāhmaṇāḥ kshattriyāś cha ye | tapo 'tapyanta te sarve śuśrūshām apare janāḥ |* 21. *Sra-dhaimāḥ paramas teshām raiṣya-śūdrām tādā "gamat | pūjām cha sarra-varṇānāṁ śūdrāś chakrur viśeshataḥ | 23. Tataḥ pādam adharmaśya drītiyam arātārayat | tato drāpara-sankhyā sā yugasya samujāyata |* 24. *Tasmin drāparā-sankhye tu varttamāne yuga-kshaye | adharmaś chānritaṁ chaiva varṣidhe puruśarshabha |* 25. *Asmin drāpara-sankhyātē tapo raiṣyān samāriṣat | tribhyo yugebhyaḥ trīn varṇān kramād rai tapa āriṣat |* 26. *Tribhyo yugebhyaḥ trīn varṇān dharmaścha parinishṭhitāḥ | na śūdra labhatे dharmām yugatas tu nararshabha |* 27. *Hīna-varṇo nṛipu-śreshṭha tupyate sumahat tapāḥ | bharishyachchhūdrayonyām hi tapaś-churyā kalau yuge |* 28. *adharmaḥ paramo rājan drāpare śūdra-janmanāḥ | sa vai vishaya-paryante tara rājan malātapāḥ |* 29. *Adya tupyati durbuddhis tena bāla-budho hy ayam |*

Nārada speaks : 8. "Hear, o king, how the boy's untimely death occurred : and having heard the truth regarding what ought to be

dīnaparāḥ),—just as it does in the ritual prescription that a man should perform a sacrifice lasting a thousand years ("sahasra-saṁvatsaram satram upāsīta" iti vat),—and that thus some interpreters made out the boy's age to be sixteen, and others under fourteen. But this would be a most unusual mode of reckoning age.

done, do it. 9. Formerly, in the Kṛita age, Brāhmans alone practised austere fervour (*tapas*). 10. None who was not a Brāhmaṇ did so in that enlightened age, instinct with divine knowledge (or, with Brahma) unclouded (by darkness). 11. At that period all were born immortal, and far-sighted. Then (came) the Tretā age, the era of embodied men, (12) in which the Kshattriyas were born, distinguished still by their former austere fervour; although those men who were great in the Tretā age had been greater, both in energy and austere fervour, in the former birth. 13. All the Brāhmans and Kshattriyas, both the former and the later, were of equal energy in both Yugas.²¹⁸ 14. But not perceiving any more distinction (between the then existing men) they all²¹⁹ next established the approved system of the four castes. 15. Yet in that enlightened age, instinct with righteousness, unclouded (by darkness), unrighteousness planted one foot upon the earth." [After some other remarks (verses 16–18), which are in parts obscure, the writer proceeds:] 19. "But, although this falsehood had been planted upon the earth by unrighteousness, the people, devoted to true righteousness, practised salutary observances. 20. Those Brāhmans and Kshattriyas who lived in the Tretā practised austere fervour, and the rest of mankind obedience. 21. (The principle that) their own duty was the chief thing pervaded the Vaiśyas and Sūdras among them: and the Sūdras especially paid honour to all the (other) classes. . . . 23. Next the second foot of unrighteousness was planted on the earth, and the number of the Dvāpara (the third yuga) was produced. 24. When this deterioration of the age numbered as the Dvāpara, had come into existence,

Deva bhāṣā. manuḥ tu dharma-Classez

²¹⁸ The Commentator says, this means that in the Kṛita age the Brāhmans were superior, and the Kshattriyas inferior (as the latter had not then the prerogative of practising *tapas*), but that in the Tretā both classes were equal (*ubhayor yugayor madhye kṛita-yuge brahma pūrvam tapo-vīryābhyaṁ utkrishṭam kshattrāñ chāvarañ cha tābhyañ tapo-vīryābhyaṁ nyūnam āśit | tat sarvam brahma-kshatra-rūpam ubhayam tretāyām sama-vīrya-samanvitam āśit | kṛite kshattriyānām tapasy anadhi-kārūt tadyugiyebhyo brāhmaṇebhyas teshām nyūnatā | tretāyām tu ubhayo rapi tapo-dhikārād ubhāv api tapo-vīryābhyaṁ sanau |* But in the previous verse (12) it is said that the Kshattriyas were born in the Tretā distinguished by their former *tapas*. But perhaps they were formerly Brāhmans, according to verses 9, 10, and 12.

²¹⁹ Manu and other legislators of that age, according to the Commentator (*Mānūdayaḥ sarve tātkūlikāḥ dharma-pravarttanādhikritāḥ*). He adds that in the Kṛita age all the castes were spontaneously devoted to their several duties, although no fixed system had been prescribed (*kṛite tu vinaiva sthāpanam evayam eva sarve varṇāḥ svā-eva-dharma-ratāḥ*).

unrighteousness and falsehood increased. 25. In this age, numbered as the Dvāpara, austere fervour entered into the Vaiśyas. Thus in the course of three ages it entered into three castes; (26) and in the three ages righteousness (*dharma*) was established in three castes. But the Sūdra does not attain to righteousness through the (lapse of these three) ages. 27. A man of low caste performs a great act of austere fervour. Such observance will belong to the future race of Sūdras in the Kali age, (28) but is unrighteous in the extreme if practised by that caste in the Dvāpara. On the outskirts of thy territory such a foolish person, of intense fervour, is practising austerity. Hence this slaughter of the boy."

Here then was a clue to the mystery of the young Brāhmaṇ's death. A presumptuous Sūdra, paying no regard to the fact that in the age²²⁰ in which he lived the prerogative of practising self-mortification had not yet descended to the humble class to which he belonged, had been guilty of seeking to secure a store of religious merit by its exercise. Rāma mounts his car Pushpaka, makes search in different regions, and at length comes upon a person who was engaged in the manner alleged. The Sūdra, on being questioned, avows his caste, and his desire to conquer for himself the rank of a god by the self-mortification he was undergoing. Rāma instantly cuts off the offender's head. The gods applaud the deed, and a shower of flowers descends from the sky upon the vindicator of righteousness. Having been invited to solicit a boon from the gods, he asks that the Brāhmaṇ boy may be resuscitated, and is informed that he was restored to life at the same moment when the Sūdra was slain. (Sections 75 and 76.)²²¹

The following curious account of the creation of mankind, among whom it states that no distinction of class (or colour) originally existed, is given in the Uttara Kānda, xxx. 19 ff., where Brahmā says to Indra:

Amarendra mayā buddhyā prajāḥ sriṣṭās tathā prabho | eka-rarnāḥ sama-bhāshā eka-rūpāś cha sarrasāḥ | 20. Tāsām nāsti viśesho hi darsane lakshane 'pi rā | tato 'ham ekāgramanāś tāḥ prajāḥ samachintayam | 21. So 'ham tāsām viśeshārtham striyam ekām vinirmame | yad yat prajānām pratyangam viśiṣṭām tat tad uddhritam | 22. Tato mayā

²²⁰ The Tretā, according to the Commentator.

²²¹ See the Rev. Professor Banerjea's Dialogues on the Hindu philosophy, pp. 44 ff., where attention had previously been drawn to the story.

rūpa-gūnair ahalyā strī vinirmitā | halam nāmsha vairūpyam halyam
 tat-prabharam bhavet | 23. Yasyā na vidyate halyam tenāhalyeti viśrutā |
 Ahalyety eva cha mayā tasyā nāma prakirtitam | 24. Nirmitāyām cha
 devendra tasyām nāryām surarshabha | bhavishyatiti kasyaishā mama
 chintā tato 'bharat | 25. Trañ tu Śakra tadā nārīm jānīshe manasā
 prabho | sthānādhikatayā patnī mamaisheti purandara | 26. Sa mayā
 nyāsa-bhūtā tu Gautamasya mahātmanah | nyastā bahūni varshāṇi tena
 niryātīta cha ha | 27. Tatas tasya pariṇāya mahāsthairyam mahāmu-
 neḥ | jnātvā tapasi siddhiṁ cha patny-arthaṁ sparśitā tadā | 28. Sa
 tayā saha dharmātmā ramate sma mahāmuniḥ | āsan nirāśā devās tu
 Gautame dattayā tayā | 29. Trañ kruddhas tv iha kāmātmā gatrā
 tasyāśramam muneḥ | dṛishṭarāmś cha tadā tām strīm diptām agni-
 śikhām ira | 30. Sā trayā dharshitā Śakra kāmārttena samanyunā ;
 dṛishṭas trañ cha tadā tena āśrame paramarshinā | 31. Tataḥ kruddhenā
 tenāśi śaptah paramatejasā | gato 'si yena devendra daśā-bhāga-ripar-
 rayam |

“ 19. O chief of the immortals (Indra) all creatures were formed by my will of one class (or colour), with the same speech, and uniform in every respect. 20. There was no distinction between them in appearance, or in characteristic marks. I then intently reflected on these creatures. 21. To distinguish between them I fashioned one woman. Whatever was most excellent in the several members of different creatures was taken from them, (22) and with this (aggregate) I formed a female, faultless in beauty and in all her qualities. *Hala* means ‘ugliness,’ and *halya*, ‘what is produced from ugliness.’ 23. The woman in whom there is no *halya*, is called *Ahalyā*. And this was her name to which I gave currency. 24. When this female had been fashioned, I anxiously considered to whom she should belong. 25. Thou, Indra, didst, from the eminence of thy rank, determine in thy mind, ‘She must be my spouse.’ 26. I, however, gave her in trust to the great Gautama; and after having retained her in charge for many years, ~~he~~ restored her. 27. Knowing then the great steadfastness of that distinguished Muni, and the perfection of his austere fervour, I, in due form, gave her to him for his wife. 28. The holy sage lived with her in the enjoyment of connubial love. But the gods were filled with despair when she had been given away to Gautama. 29. And thou, Indra, angry, as well as inflamed with lust, wentest to the Muni’s hermitage,

and didst behold that female brilliant as the flame of fire. 30. She was then corrupted by thee who wert tormented by lust, as well as heated by anger.²² But thou wert then seen by the eminent rishi in the hermitage, (31) and cursed by that glorious being in his indignation. Thou didst in consequence fall into a reverse of condition and fortune," etc., etc.

SECT. XI.—*Extracts from the Mahābhārata on the same subjects.*

The first passage which I shall adduce is from the Ādi Parvan, or first book, verses 2517 ff. :

Vaiśampāyana uvācha | hanta te kathayishyāmi namaskṛitya Srayambhure | surādīnām ahaṁ samyak lokānām prabhavāpīyam | Brahmano mānasāḥ putrāḥ vīditāḥ shan-maharshayaḥ | Marīchir Atry-angirasau Pulastyāḥ Pulahāḥ Kratuḥ | Marīcheḥ Kaśyapaḥ putraḥ Kaśyapāt tu prajā imāḥ | prajajnire mahābhāgā Daksha-kanyās trayodaśa | 2520. Aditir Dītīr Danuḥ Kālā Danāyuḥ Siṁhikā tathā | Kroḍhā Pradhā eha Viśvā cha Viśatā Kapilā Muniḥ | Kadruś cha manujaryāghra Daksha-kanyairā Bhārata | etāsām vīrya-sampannam putra-pautram anantakam |

“Vaiśampayana said : I shall, after making obeisance to Svayambhū, relate to thee exactly the production and destruction of the gods and other beings. Six²²³ great rishis are known as the mind-born sons

²²² In regard to this story of Indra and Ahalyā, as well as to that of Brahmā and his daughter, above referred to, see the explanation given by Kumārila Bhatta, as quoted by Professor Max Müller in his Hist. of Anc. Sansk. Lit. p. 529 f. The name of Ahalyā is there allegorically interpreted of the night, to which this name is said to have been given because it is absorbed in the day (*ahanī līyamānatayā*). Indra is the sun.

²²³ Another passage (Śānti-p. 7569 ff.) raises the number of Brahmā's sons to seven by adding Vasishṭha : *Ekaḥ Srayambhūr bhagavān ḫdyo Brahmā sanātanaḥ | Brahmaṇaḥ sūpta rai putrā mahātmānaḥ Svayambhuvaḥ | Marīchir Atry-Angirasau Pulastyāḥ Pulahāḥ Kratuḥ | Vaśishṭhaścha mahābhāgāḥ sadṛiṣo rai Svayambhuvaḥ | sapta Brahmīṇa ity ete purāne niśchayañ gatāḥ |* “There is one primeval eternal lord, Brahmā Svayambhū; who had seven great sons, Marichi, Atri, Angiras, Pulastyā, Pulaha, Kratu, and Vasishṭha, who was like Svayambhū. These are the seven Brahmās who have been ascertained in the Puranic records.” In another part of the same Śāntiparvan, verses 12685 ff., however, the Prajūpatis are increased to twenty-one : *Brahmā Sthānuḥ Manur Dakho Bhṛiguḥ Dharmas tathā Yamaḥ | Marīchir Angirā triścha Pulastyāḥ Pulahāḥ Kratuḥ | Vaśishṭhaḥ Parameṣṭhi cha Vivasvān Soma eva cha | Kardamaś chāpi yah proktāḥ Kroḍhō Viśvīta eva cha | ekaviṁsatir utsannās te prajāpatayah smṛitāḥ |* “There are reputed to have been twenty-one Prajūpatis produced, viz. Brahmā, Sthānu, Manu, Daksha, Bhṛigu, Dharmas, Yama, Marichi,

of Brahmā, viz., Marīchi, Atri, Angiras, Pulastyā, Pulaha, and Kratu. ¹⁷
 Kaśyapa was the son of Marīchi; and from Kaśyapa sprang these creatures. There were born to Daksha thirteen daughters of eminent rank, (2520) Aditi, Diti, Danu, Kālā, ^Danāyū, Siṁhikā, Krodhā,⁷ Pradhā, Viśvā, Vinatā, Kapilā, and Muni.²²⁴ Kadrū also was of the number. These daughters had valorous sons and grandsons innu-²merable."

Daksha, however, had other daughters, as we learn further on in verses 2574 ff., where the manner of his own birth also is related :

Dakshas tv ajāyatāngushṭhād dakṣinād bhagavān rishih | Brahmanāḥ prīthivīpāla śāntātmā sumahātāpāḥ | vāmād ajāyatāngushṭhād bhāryā tasyā mahāltmanāḥ | tasyām panchāśatam kanyāḥ sa evājanayad muniḥ | 2577. Dadau cha daśa Dharmāya saptavimśatim Indare | diryena vīdhina rājan Kaśyapāya trayodaśa | 2581. Paitāmahaḥ Manur deras tasya putraḥ prajāpatiḥ | tasyāshṭau Vasavāḥ putrāḥ teshām rakṣhyāmi vistaram | 2595. Stanañ tu dākṣinām bhītvā Brahmano nara-vigrahāḥ | nissṛito bhagavān Dharmāḥ sarva-loka-sukhātāhaḥ | trayas tasya varāḥ putrāḥ sarva-bhūta-manoharāḥ | Sāmaḥ Kāmaś cha Harshaś cha tejasā loka-dhārināḥ | 2610. Ārushī tu Manoh kanyā tasya patnī maniṣhiṇāḥ | 2614. Drau putrau Brahmanas tv anyau yayos tishṭhati lakṣhaṇam | loke Dhātā Vīdhātā cha yau sthitā Manunā saha | taylor eva srasā devī Lakṣmī padma-grihā śubhā | tasyās tu mānasāḥ putrāḥ turagāḥ ryoma-chāriṇāḥ | 2617. Prajānām annakāmānām anyonya-paribhakṣṇāt | Adharmaś tatram sanjātāḥ sarva-bhūta-vināśakah | tasyāpi Nirritir bhāryā nairritā yena Rākshasāḥ | ghorāḥ tasyās trayāḥ putrāḥ pūpa-karma-ratāḥ sudā | Bhayo Mahābhayas chāira Mrityur bhūtāntakas tathā | na tasya bhāryā putro vā kaścid asty antuko hi saḥ |

Angiras, Atri, Pulastyā, Pulaha, Kratu, Vaśiṣṭha, Paramesbhin, Vivasvat, Soma, the person called Kardama, Krodha, and Vikṛita." (Here, however, only twenty names are specified including Brahmā himself.) Compare this list with those quoted above, p. 116, from the Rāmāyaṇa, iii. 14, 7 ff., from Manu in p. 36, and from the Vishṇu P. in p. 65.

²²⁴ That Muni is a name, and not an epithet, is shown (1) by the fact that we have otherwise only twelve names; and (2) by her descendants, both gods and gandharvas, being afterwards enumerated in verses 2550 ff. (*ity ete deva-gandharvā Mauneyiḥ parikīrtitītāḥ*). Kapilā, another of the thirteen daughters of Daksha is said to have been the mother of Ambrosia, Brāhmaṇas, kine, Gandharvas and Apsarasas (*amṛitam brāhmaṇyā gāvo gandharvāpsurasas tathā | apatyam kapilāyās tu purā*).

“2574. Daksha, the glorious rishi, tranquil in spirit, and great in austere fervour, sprang from the right thumb of Brahmā.²²⁵ From the left thumb sprang that great Muni’s wife, on whom he begot fifty²²⁶ daughters. Of these he gave ten to Dharma, twenty-seven to Indu (Soma),²²⁷ and according to the celestial system, thirteen to Kaśyapa.”

I proceed with some other details given in the verses I have extracted:

2581. “Pitāmaha’s descendant, Manu, the god and the lord of creatures, was his (it does not clearly appear whose) son. The eight Vasus, whom

I shall detail, were his sons. 2595. Dividing the right breast of

Brahmā, the glorious Dharma (Righteousness), issued in a human form, bringing happiness to all people. He had three eminent sons, Sama, Kāma, and Harsha (Tranquillity, Love, and Joy), who are the delight of all creatures, and by their might support the world. 2610.

Arushī, the daughter of Manu, was the wife of that sage (Chyavana, son of Bhrigu). 2614. There are two other sons of Brahmā, whose mark remains in the world, Dhātṛi,²²⁸ and Viḍhātṛi, who re-

mained with Manu. Their sister was the beautiful goddess Lakṣmī,²²⁹ whose home is in the lotus.²³⁰ Her mind-born sons are the steeds who move in the sky. 2617. When the creatures who were de-

sirous of food, had devoured one another, Adharmā (Unrighteousness) was produced, the destroyer of all beings. His wife was Nirṛiti, and hence the Rākshasas are called Nairṛitas, or the offspring of Nirṛiti. She had three dreadful sons, continually addicted to evil deeds, Bhaya Mahābhaya (Fear and Terror) and Mṛityu (Death) the ender of beings. He has neither wife, nor any son, for he is the ender.”²³⁰

The next passage gives a different account of the origin of Daksha; and describes the descent of mankind from Manu:

Adip. 3128. *Tejobhir uditāḥ sarve maharshi-sama-tejasāḥ | daśa Pra-*

²²⁵ See above, p. 72 f. The Matsya P. also states that Daksha sprang from Brahmā’s right thumb, Dharma from his nipple, Kāma from his heart, etc.

²²⁶ The passage of the Rāmāyaṇa, quoted above, p. 116, affirms that they were sixty in number. Compare Wilson’s Vishṇu P. vol. i. pp. 109 ff., and vol. ii. pp. 19 ff.

²²⁷ The Taitt. Sanhitā, ii. 3, 5, 1, says Prajāpati had thirty-three daughters, whom he gave to King Soma (*Prajāpates trayastrīṁśad duhitura āsan | tāḥ Somāya rājne dadūt*).

²²⁸ Dhātṛi had been previously mentioned, in verse 2523, as one of the sons of Aditi. See also Wilson’s Vishṇu P. ii. 152.

²²⁹ See Wilson’s Vishṇu P. i. pp. 109, 118 ff., 144 ff. and 152.

²³⁰ The Vishṇu P. (Wilson, i. 112) says he had five children.

*chetasah putrāḥ sataḥ puṇya-janāḥ smṛitāḥ | mukha-jenāgninā yaś te
 pūrvam̄ dagdhā mahaujasah | tebhyaḥ Prāchetaso jajne Daksho Dakshād
 īmāḥ prajāḥ | sambhūtāḥ purusha-vyāghra sa hi loka-pitāmahāḥ |
 Viriyā saha sangamya Dakshaḥ Prāchetaso muniḥ | ātma-tulyān aja-
 nayat sahasram̄ śāṁsita-vratān | sahasra-sankhyān sambhūtān Daksha-
 putrām̄ cha Nāradāḥ | moksham adhyāpayāmāsa sāṅkhyā-jñānam anu-
 tamam | tataḥ panchāśataṁ kanyāḥ putrikāḥ abhisandadhe | Prajāpatiḥ
 prajāḥ Dakshaḥ sisrikshur Janamejaya | dādau cha dasa Dharmāya
 Kaśyapāya trayodaśa | kālaśya nayane yuktāḥ saptavimśatim Indare |*

3135. *Trayodaśānām patnīnām yā tu Dākshāyanī varā | Māričaḥ
 Kaśyapas tasyām Ādityān sumajjanat | Indrādīn vīryya-sampannān
 Virasvāntam athāpi cha | Virasrataḥ suto jajne Yamo Virasrataḥ pra-
 bhuh | Mārlaṇḍasya Manur dhīmān ajāyata sutaḥ prabhuh | Yamaś
 chāpi suto jajne khyātas tasyānujaḥ prabhuh | dharmātmā sa Manur
 dhīmān yatra raṁśah pratiṣṭhitāḥ | Manor raṁśo mānarānām tato 'yam
 prathito 'bhavat | brahma-kshatrādayas tasmād Manor jātās tu mānarāḥ |
 tato 'bharad mahārāja brahma kshattreṇa sangatam | 3140. Brāhmaṇā
 mānarāś teshām sāṅgam redam adhārayan | Venam Dhrishnum Narish-
 yantam Nābhāgekshvākum era cha | Kārūsham atha Sāryatiṁ tathā
 chaivāśṭamīm Ilām | Prishadhrān naramam prāhuḥ kshattra-dharma-
 parāyaṇam | Nābhāgārishṭa-duśamān Manoh putrān prachakshate | pan-
 chāśat tu Manoh putrās tathairānye 'bhavan kshitau | anyonya-bhedāt te
 sarve vineśur iti naḥ śrutam | Purūravaras tato vidrān Ilāyām samapad-
 yata | sā rai tasyābhavat mātā pitā chaiveti naḥ śrutam |*

"3128. Born all with splendour, like that of great rishis, the ten sons of Prāchetas are reputed to have been virtuous and holy; and by them the glorious beings²³¹ were formerly burnt up by fire springing from their mouths. From them was born Daksha Prāchetasa;²³² and from Daksha, the Parent of the world (were produced), these creatures. Cohabiting with Viriṇī, the Muni Daksha begot a thousand sons like himself, famous

²³¹ "Trees and plants," according to the Commentator (*māhāprabhāvā vrikshashadhyāḥ*). Compare Wilson's Vishnu P. ii. p. 1.

²³² The same account of Daksha's birth is given in the Sāntip. 7573: *Daśānāṁ tanayas tv eko Daksho nāmā prajāpatiḥ | tasya deś nāmanī loke Dakshaḥ Ka iti chachyate |* "These ten Prāchetases had one son called Daksha, the lord of creatures. He is commonly called by two names, Daksha and Ka." (Compare vol. iv. of this work, p. 13, note 30, and p. 24; and the Sātapatha Brāhmaṇa, vii. 4, 1, 19, and ii. 4, 4, 1, there quoted.) The following verse 7574 tells us that Kaśyapa also had two names, the other being Arishṭanemi. See Rūm. iii. 14, 9, quoted above.

for their religious observances, to whom Nārada taught the doctrine of final liberation, the unequalled knowledge of the Sāṅkhya. Desirous of creating offspring, the Prajāpati Daksha next formed fifty daughters, of whom he gave ten to Dharma, thirteen to Kaśyapa, and twenty-seven, devoted to the regulation of time,²³³ to Indu (Soma). 3135. On Dākshāyāni,²³⁴ the most excellent of his thirteen wives, Kaśyapa, the son of Marichi, begot the Ādityas, headed by Indra and distinguished by their energy, and also Vivasvat.²³⁵ To Vivasvat was born a son, the mighty Yama Vaivasvata. To Mārtanda (*i.e.* Vivasvat, the Sun) was born the wise and mighty Manu, and also the renowned Yama, his (Manu's) younger brother. Righteous was this wise Manu, on whom a race was founded. Hence this (family) of men became known as the race of Manu. Brāhmans, Kshattriyas, and other men sprang from this Manu. From him, o king, came the Brāhmaṇa conjoined with the Kshattriya. 3140. Among them the Brāhmans, children of Manu, held the Veda with the Vedāngas. The children of Manu are said to have been Vena, Dhṛishṇu, Narishyanta, Nābhāga, Ikshvāku, Kārusha, Suryāti, Ilā the eighth, Prishadra the ninth, who was addicted to the duties of a Kshattriya, and Nābhāgārishṭa the tenth. Manu had also fifty other sons; but they all, as we have heard, perished in consequence of mutual dissensions. Subsequently the wise Purūravas was born of Ilā, who, we heard, was both his mother and his father."

The tradition, followed in this passage, which assigns to all the castes one common ancestor, removed by several stages from the creator, is, of course, in conflict with the account which assigns to them a fourfold descent from the body of Brahmā himself.

The Sāntiparvan, verses 2719 ff., contains an account of the origin of castes which has evidently proceeded from an extreme assertor of the dignity of the Brahmanical order. The description given of the prerogatives of the priestly class is precisely in the style, and partly in almost the identical words, of the most extravagant declarations of

²³³ This phrase *kūlanya nayane yuktāḥ* had previously occurred in verse 2580, where it is followed by the words *sarvā nakshatra-yogino loka-yūtrā-vidhānataḥ* | "all identified with the lunar asterisms, and appointed to regulate the life of men." See also Vishnu P. i. 15, 56, and Professor Wilson's translation ii. p. 10, note 1, and p. 28, note 1.

²³⁴ *i.e.* Aditi. See verses 2520, 2522, and 2600 of this same book.

²³⁵ The account in the Rāmāyaṇa, ii. 110, 5 ff., agrees with this in making Kaśyapa son of Marichi, and father of Vivasvat.

Manu (i. 99 f.) on the same subject. In other places, however, the *Mahābhārata* contains explanations of a very different character regarding the origin of the distinctions, social and professional, which prevailed at the period of its composition. A comparison of these various passages will afford an illustration of the fact already intimated in p. 6,²³⁰ that this gigantic poem is made up of heterogeneous elements, the products of different ages, and representing widely different dogmatical tendencies, the later portions having been introduced by successive editors of the work to support their own particular views, without any regard to their inconsistency with its earlier contents. In fact, a work so vast, the unaided compilation of which would have taxed all the powers of a Didymus Chalkenterus, could scarcely have been created in any other way than that of gradual accretion. And some supposition of this kind is certainly necessary in order to explain such discrepancies as will be found between the passages I have to quote, of which the three first are the productions of believers (real or pretended) in the existence of a natural distinction between their own Brahmanical order and the other classes of the community, while two of those which follow, viz., in pp. 134 and 139, have emanated from fair and moderate writers who had rational views of the essential unity of mankind, and of the superiority of moral and religious character to any factitious divisions of a social description.

In the first passage, Bhīshma, the great uncle of the Pāndus, when describing to Yudhishthira the duties of kings, introduces one of those ancient stories which are so frequently appealed to in the *Mahābhārata*. Without a minute study of the poem it would be difficult to say whether these are ever based on old traditions, or are anything more than mere vehicles invented to convey the individual views of the writers who narrate them. Bhīshma says, Sāntiparvan, 2749 :

*Ya era tu sato rakshed asatas cha nirarttayet | sa era rājnā karttaryo
rājan rāja-purohitāḥ | 2750. Atrāpy udāharantimam itihāsam purā-
tanam | Purūrarasa Ailasya saṁvādām Mātariśvanāḥ | Purūrarā urācha |
Kutah svid brāhmaṇo jāta varṇāś chāpi kutas trayāḥ | kasmāchcha bhavati
śreshṭhas tan me ryākhyātum arhasi | Mātariścavācha | Brāhmaṇo mu-
khataḥ śriḥto brāhmaṇo rāja-sattama | bāhubhyāṁ kshattriyāḥ śriḥta
urubhyāṁ vaiśya era cha | varṇānām parichāryyārtham trayānām Bha-*

²³⁰ See also the fourth volume of this work, pp. 141 ff. and 152.

ratarshabha | *varṇāś chaturthaḥ sambhūtaḥ padbhyaṁ śūdra vinirmitah* |
*brāhmaṇo jāyamāno hi prithiryām anujāyate*²⁵⁷ | *īśraraḥ sarva-bhūtānām*
dharma-koshasya guptaye | 2755. *Atah prithiryā yantāram kshattriyaṁ*
dāṇḍa-dhāraṇe | *drittīyam Dāṇḍam akarot prajānām anutriptaye* | *vaiśyas*
tu dhana-dhānyena trīṇ varṇān bibhṛiyād imān | *śūdra hy etān pari-*
chared iti Brahmānuśāsanam | *Aīla urācha* | *dvijasya kshattrabandhor*
rā kasyeyam prithirī bharet | *dharmataḥ saha rittenā samyag Vāyo pra-*
chakshra me | *Vāyur urācha* | *viprasya sarvam eraitad yat kinchij jagatī-*
gatam | *jyeshṭhenābhijaneneha tad dharma-kuśalā riduḥ* | *sram era brāh-*
maṇo bhunkte sram raste sram dadāti cha | *gurur hi sareva-varṇānām*
jyeshṭhaḥ śreshṭhaś cha rai dvijaḥ | 2760. *Paty-abhāre yathaiva strī*
devarām kurute patim | *esha te prathamaḥ kalpaḥ āpady anyo bhaved*
ataḥ |

“ 2749. The king should appoint to be his royal priest²⁵⁸ a man who will protect the good, and restrain the wicked. 2750. On this subject they relate this following ancient story of a conversation between Purūravas the son of Ilā, and Mātariśvan (Vāyu, the Wind-god). Purūravas said : You must explain to me whence the Brāhman, and whence the (other) three castes were produced, and whence the superiority (of the first) arises. Mātariśvan answered : The Brāhman was created from Brahmā's mouth, the Kshattriya from his arms, the Vaiśya from his thighs, while for the purpose of serving these three

²⁵⁷ Manu, i. 99, has *adhi jāyate*.

²⁵⁸ *Rūja-purohitah*. The king's priest (*rūja-purohitah*) is here represented as one who should be a confidential and virtuous minister of state. Such is not, however, the character always assigned to this class of persons. In Manu xii. 46, quoted above (p. 41f.), the purohita is placed in a lower class than other Brāhmans. And in the following verse (4527) of the Anusūasanaparvan, taken from a story in which the Rishis utter maledictions against anyone who should have stolen certain lotus roots, part of the curse spoken by Viśvāmitra is as follows : *varṣhācharo'stu bhrītako rājnaś chāstu puro-*
hitah | *ayājyasya bhavatv ritrig visa-stainyām karoti yah* | “Let the man who steals lotus roots be a hireling trafficker in rain incantations (?) and the domestic priest of a king, and the priest of one for whom no Brāhman should officiate.” Again, in verse 4579, the same person says : *karotu bhrītako'varṣhām rājnaś chāstu purohitah* | *ritrig*
astu hy ayājyasya yas te harati pushkaram | “Let him who steals thy lotus perform as a hireling incantations to cause drought, and be a king's domestic priest, and the priest of one for whom no Brāhman should officiate.” I have had partly to guess at the sense of the words *varṣhācharah* and *avarshām*. The Commentator does not explain the former ; and interprets the latter (for which the Edinburgh MS. reads *avar-*
shāḥ) by *vrishṭi-nibandham*, “causing drought.” He adds, *papiśhāḥ eva avarshāḥ*, “those who cause drought are most wicked.”

castes was produced the fourth class, the Sūdra, fashioned from his feet. The Brāhmaṇa, as soon as born, becomes the lord of all beings upon the earth, for the purpose of protecting the treasure of righteousness. 2755. Then (the creator) constituted the Kshattriya the controller of the earth, a second Yama to bear the rod, for the satisfaction of the people. And it was Brahmā's ordinance that the Vaiśya should sustain these three classes with money and grain, and that the Sūdra should serve them. The son of Ilā then enquired : Tell me, Vāyu, to whom the earth, with its wealth, rightfully belongs, to the Brāhmaṇa or the Kshattriya ? Vāyu replied : All this, whatever exists in the world, is the Brāhmaṇa's property²³⁹ by right of primogeniture : this is known to those who are skilled in the laws of duty. It is his own which the Brāhmaṇa eats, puts on, and bestows. He is the chief of all the castes, the first-born and the most excellent. Just as a woman when she has lost her (first) husband, takes her brother in law for a second ; so the Brāhmaṇa is thy first resource in calamity ; afterwards another may arise."

A great deal is shortly afterwards added about the advantages of concord between Brāhmaṇas and Kshattriyas. Such verses as the following (2802) : "From the dissensions of Brāhmaṇas and Kshattriyas the people incur intolerable suffering" (*mitho bhedād brāhmaṇa-kshattriyānām prajā duḥkhaṁ dussahaṁ chāriṣanti*) afford tolerably clear evidence that the interests of these two classes must frequently have clashed.

In the same strain as the preceding passage is the following :

Vanaparvan, 13436. *Nādhyāpanād yājanād vā anyasmād vā prati-grahāt | dosho bharati viprānām jralitāgni-samā drijāḥ | durredā vā su-vedā vā prākritāḥ sañskritās tathā | brāhmaṇā nāramantaryā bhasma-channā ivāgnayaḥ | yathā śmaśāne diptaujāḥ pāvako naiva dushyati | evaṁ vidvān avidvān vā brāhmaṇo daivatam mahat | prākārais cha pura-dvāraih prāsūdaisiḥ cha prīthag-vidhaiḥ | nagarāni na śobhante hīnāni brāhmaṇotlamaiḥ | vedāḍhyā vṛitta-sampannā jnānarantas tapasvināḥ | yatra tishṭhanti vai vīprās tan-nāma nagaraṁ nrīpa | vraje vā py athavā*

²³⁹ Kullūka, the Commentator on Manu (i. 100), is obliged to admit that this is only spoken in a panegyrical or hyperbolical way, and that property is here used in a figurative sense, since theft is afterwards predicated by Manu of Brāhmaṇas as well as others ("svam" iti stutya uchyate | svam iva svam na tu svam eva | brāhmaṇasyāpi Manunā steyasya vakshyamāṇatvāt).

'rānye yatra santi bahu-śrutāḥ | tat tad nagaram ity āhuh pārtha tīrthaṁ cha tad bhavet |

"No blame accrues to Brāhmans from teaching or sacrificing, or from receiving money in any other way : Brāhmans are like flaming fire. Whether ill or well versed in the Veda, whether untrained or accomplished, Brāhmans must never be despised, like fires covered by ashes. Just as fire does not lose its purity by blazing even in a cemetery, so too, whether learned or unlearned, a Brāhmaṇa is a great deity. Cities are not rendered magnificent by ramparts, gates, or palaces of various kinds, if they are destitute of excellent Brāhmans. 13440. The place where Brāhmans, rich in the Veda, perfect in their conduct, and austere fervid, reside, is (really) a city (*nagara*). Wherever there are men abounding in Vedic lore, whether it be a cattle-pen, or a forest, that is called a city, and that will be a sacred locality."

The following verses from the Anusāsanap. 2160 ff. are even more extreme in their character, and are, in fact, perfectly sublime in their insolence :

Brāhmaṇānām paribharād asurāḥ salile śayāḥ | brāhmaṇānām prasādāch cha devāḥ svarga-nivāsināḥ | aśakyaṁ srashṭum ākūśam achālyo himarān giriḥ | adhāryyā setunā Gangā durjayā brāhmaṇā bhuvi | na brāhmaṇa-virodhena sakyā śāstūm vasundharā | brāhmaṇā hi mahātmāno devānām api devatāḥ | tān pūjayasva satataṁ dānena paricharyyayā | yadīchhasi mahīm bhoktum imām sāgara-mekhalām |

"Through the prowess of the Brāhmans the Asuras were prostrated on the waters ; by the favour of the Brāhmans the gods inhabit heaven. The ether cannot be created ; the mountain Himavat cannot be shaken ; the Gangā cannot be stemmed by a dam ; the Brāhmans cannot be conquered by any one upon earth. The world cannot be ruled in opposition to the Brāhmans ; for the mighty Brāhmans are the deities even of the gods. If thou desire to possess the sea-girt earth, honour them continually with gifts and with service."

The next passage seems to be self-contradictory, as it appears to set out with the supposition that the distinction of castes arose after the creation ; while it goes on to assert the separate origin of the four classes :

Sāntiparvan, 10861. *Janaka uvācha | varno viśeṣha-varṇānām māhārāṣe kena jāyate | etad icchāmy aham jnātum tad brūhi vadatām vara | yad etaj jāyate 'patyaṁ sa evāyam iti śrutiḥ | kaiham brāhmaṇato jāto*

*viśeṣhe grahaṇāṁ gataḥ | Parāśara uvācha | Evam etad mahārāja yena
jātāḥ sa eva saḥ | tapasas tv apakarshena jāti-grahaṇatām gataḥ | sukhet-
trāchāha suvijāch cha punyo bhavati sambhavaḥ | ato 'nyatarato hīnād
avaro nāma jāyate | 10865. Vaktrād bhujābhyaṁ ūrubhyaṁ padbhyaṁ
chaivātha jajnire | srijataḥ Prajāpater lokān iti dharmavido viduh | mu-
khajā brāhmaṇās tāta bāhujāḥ kshattriyāḥ smṛitāḥ | ūrujāḥ dhanino
rājan pādājāḥ parichārakāḥ | chaturṇām eva varṇānām āgamaḥ puru-
sharshabha | ato 'nye vyatirikta ye te vai sankarajāḥ smṛitāḥ |
10870. Janaka uvācha | Brahmaṇaikenā jālānām nānātvām gotrataḥ
katham | bahūnīha hi loke vai gotrāṇi muni sattama | yatra tatra kathaṁ
jātāḥ svayonim (? suyonim) munayo gatāḥ | śuddha-yonau samutpannā
riyonau cha tathā 'pare | Parāśara uvācha | rājan naitad bhaved grāhyam
apakṛishṭena janmanā | matātmanām samutpattis tapasā bhāvitatmanām |
utpādyā putrān munayo nrīpate yatra tatra ha | svenaiva tapasā teshūm
rishitram pradadhuh punah | 10876. Ete strām prakṛitim prāptā
Vaideha tapasośrayāt | pratishṭhitā veda-vido damena tapasaiva hi |*

“Janaka asks: 10861. How, o great rishi, does the caste of the separate classes arise? Tell me, as I desire to know. According to the Veda, the offspring which is born (to any one) is the very man himself. How does offspring born of a Brāhmaṇa fall into distinct classes? Parāśara replied: It is just as you say, o great king. A son is the very same as he by whom he was begotten; but from decline of austere fervour, (men) have become included under different classes. And from good soil and good seed a pure production arises, whilst from those which are different and faulty springs an inferior production. Those acquainted with duty know that men were born from the mouth, arms, thighs, and feet of Prajāpati when he was creating the worlds. The Brāhmaṇas sprang from his mouth, the Kshattriyas from his arms, the merchants from his thighs, and the servants from his feet. The scriptural tradition speaks only of four classes. The men not included in these are declared to have sprung from a mixture (of the four). 10870. Janaka asked: How is there a difference in race between men sprung from one and the same Brahman? for there are now many races in the world. How have Munis born anywhere (indiscriminately) entered into a good family; some of them having sprung from a pure source and others from an inferior stock? Parāśara replied: It would not be credible that noble-minded men, whose souls

had been perfected by austere fervour, should have been the offspring of a degraded birth. Munis who had begotten sons in an indiscriminate way conferred on them the position of rishis by their own austere fervour." The speaker then names a number of sages (10876) "famed for their acquaintance with the Veda, and for their self-command and austere fervour," as "having all attained to their respective conditions by practising the latter observance."

In the latter verses the speaker appears to admit, at the very moment that he denies, the degraded origin of some of the renowned saints of Indian antiquity. What else is the meaning of the verse, "Munis who had begotten sons in an indiscriminate way conferred on them the position of rishis by their own austere fervour?" No doubt it is intended to represent those as exceptional times: but while we refuse to admit this assumption, we may find some reason to suppose that the irregularities, as they were afterwards considered to be, which this assumption was intended to explain away, were really samples of the state of things which commonly prevailed in earlier ages.

The next extract declares that there is a natural distinction between the Brāhmans and the other castes; and appears to intimate that the barrier so constituted can only be overpassed when the soul re-appears in another body in another birth:

Anuśāsana-parva, 6570. *Deva uvācha | Brāhmaṇyam devi dushprāpyam nisargād brāhmaṇaḥ śubhe | kshattriyo vaiśyaśūdrau vā nisargād iti me matih | karmanā dushkrīteneha sthānād bhraśyati vai dvijah | jyeshṭham varnam anuprāpya tasmād raksheta vai dvijah | sthito brāhmaṇa-dharmena brāhmaṇyam upajivati | kshattriyo vā 'tha vaiśyo vā brahmabhyum sa gachhati | yas tu brahmavam utsrijya kshattram dharmām nisherate | brāhmaṇyāt sa paribhrasṭah kshattra-yonau prajāyate | vaiśya-karma cha yo vipro lobha-moha-vyapāśrayah | brāhmaṇyam durlabham prāpya karoty alpa-matiḥ sadā | sa dvijo vaiśyatām eti vaiśyo vā śūdratām iyat | eva-dharmāt prachyuto vipras tataḥ śūdratvam āpnute | 6590. Ebhis tu karmabhir devi śubhair ācharitaīs tathā | śūdro brāhmaṇatām yāti vaiśyah kshattriyatām vrajet | śūdra-karmāṇi sarvāṇi yathānyāyam yathāvidhi | śūrūṣhām paricharyyām oha jyeshṭha varne prayatnataḥ | kuryād ityādi |*

Mahādeva says: 6570. "Brahmanhood, o fair goddess, is difficult to

be attained. A man, whether he be a Brāhmaṇa, Kshattriya, Vaiśya, or Sūdra, is such by nature; this is my opinion. By evil deeds a twice-born man falls from his position. Then let a twice-born man who has attained to the highest caste, keep it. The Kshattriya, or Vaiśya, who lives in the condition of a Brāhmaṇa, by practising the duties of one, attains to Brāhmaṇhood. But he who abandons the state of a Brāhmaṇa and practises the duty of a Kshattriya, falls from Brāhmaṇhood and is born in a Kshattriya womb. And the foolish Brāhmaṇa, who, having attained that Brāhmaṇhood which is so hard to get, follows the profession of a Vaiśya, under the influence of cupidity and delusion, falls into the condition of a Vaiśya. (In like manner) a Vaiśya may sink into the state of a Sūdra. A Brāhmaṇa who falls away from his own duty becomes afterwards a Sūdra. 6590. But by practising the following good works, o goddess, a Sūdra becomes a Brāhmaṇa, and a Vaiśya becomes a Kshattriya: Let him actively perform all the functions of a Sūdra according to propriety and rule, i.e. obedience and service to the highest caste," etc.

The next passage is the first of those which I have already noted, as in spirit and tenor very different from the preceding. The conversation which it records arose as follows: Yudhishtira found his brother Bhimasena caught in the coils of a serpent, which, it turned out, was no other than the famous king Nahusha, who by his sacrifices, austerities, etc., had formerly raised himself to the sovereignty of the three worlds; but had been reduced to the condition in which he was now seen, as a punishment for his pride and contempt of the Brāhmaṇas. He promises to let Bhīmaseva go, if Yudhishtira will answer certain questions. Yudhishtira agrees, and remarks that the serpent was acquainted with whatever a Brāhmaṇ ought to know. Whereupon the Serpent proceeds:

Vana-parva, verses 12469 ff.: Sarpa uvācha | brāhmaṇaḥ ko bhaved
rājan vedyāṁ kiṁ cha Yudhishtira | 12470. Bravīḥ atimatim trāṁ hi
vākyair anumim̄mahe | Yudhishtira uvācha | satyāṁ dūnam kshamā
śilam ānṛisaṁsyāṁ tapo ghrinā | dṛiṣyante yatra nāgendra sa brāhmaṇah
iti smṛitih | vedyāṁ sarpa param Brahma nirduhkham asukham cha yat |
yatra gatvā na śochanti bhavataḥ kiṁ vivakshitam | Sarpa uvācha | chā-
turvarṇyam pramīnaṁ cha satyāṁ cha brahma chaiva hi | Sūdreshv api
cha satyāṁ cha dūnam akrodha rāga cha | īnṛiṣamsyam ahiṁsā cha ghrinā
chaiva Yudhishtirās | vedyāṁ uch chātra nirduhkham asukham cha na-

rādhīpa | tābhyaṁ hīnam padāṁ chānyad na tad astīti lakshaye | Yudhishthira uvācha | 12475. Sūdre tu yad bhavel lakshma dvije tach cha na vidyate | na vai sūdro bhavech chhūdro brāhmaṇo na cha brāhmaṇah | yatraital lakhyate sarpa vṛittam sa brāhmaṇah smṛitah | yatraitad na bharet sarpa tam śūdrām iti nirddisēt | yat punar bhavatā proktam na vedyāṁ vidyatīti cha | tābhyaṁ hīnam ato 'nyatra padāṁ nāstīti ched api | evam etad matam sarpa tābhyaṁ hīnam na vidyate | yathā śitoshṇayor madhye bhaved noshṇām na śitatā | evam vai sukha-duḥkhābhyaṁ hīnam nāsti padāṁ krachit | eshā mama matih sarpa yathā rā manyate bhavān | Sarpa uvācha | 12480. Yadi te vṛittato rājan brāhmaṇah prasamīkshitaḥ | vṛithā jātis tadā "yushman kṛitir yāvad na vidyate | Yudhishthira uvācha | jātir atra mahāsarpa manushyatve mahāmate | sankarāt sarva-varṇānām dushparīkshyeti me matih | sarve sarvāsv apatyāni janayanti sadā narāḥ | vāñ maithunam atho janma maranām cha samam nrinām | idam ārsham pramāṇām cha "ye yājamahe" ity api | tasmāch chhīlam pradhāneshṭām vidur ye tattvadarśinah | "prāñ nābhi-varddhanāt puñśo jāta-karma vidhīyate" | "tadā 'syā mātā sāvitri pitā tv āhāryya uchyate" | 12485. "Tāvach chhūdra-samo hy esha yāvad vede na jāyate" | tasminn evam mati-dvaidhe Manuh Svāyambhuvo 'bravīt | kṛita-krityāḥ punar varṇā yadi vṛittam na vidyate | sankaras tatra nāgendra balavān prasamīkshitaḥ | yatreduṇīm mahāsarpa samskṛitām vṛittam ishyate | tam brāhmaṇam aham pūrvam uktarān bhujagottama |

" 12469. The Serpent said: Who may be a Brāhmaṇ, and what is the thing to be known, o Yudhishthira;—tell me, since by thy words I infer thee to be a person of extreme intelligence. Yudhishthira replied: 12470. The Smṛiti declares, o chief of Serpents, that he is a Brāhmaṇ, in whom truth, liberality, patience, virtue, innocence, austere fervour, and compassion are seen. And the thing to be known is the supreme Brahma, free from pain, as well as from pleasure,—to whom, when men have attained, they no longer sorrow. What is your opinion? The Serpent replied: The Veda (*brahma*) is beneficial to all the four castes and is authoritative and true.²⁴⁰ And so we find in

²⁴⁰ Such is the sense assigned by the Commentator to this line, the drift of which is not very clear. The comment runs thus: *Sarpas tu brāhmaṇa-padena jāti-mātram vivakṣitvā sūdre tal lakṣaṇām vyabhicārayati "chāturvarṇyam" iti sārddhenā | chaturyāñi varṇānām hitam | satyam pramāṇām cha dharma-vyapasthāpakam brahma vedāḥ | sūdrāchāra-smṛitor api veda-mūlakatvāt sarvo 'py ādhārādiḥ śruti-mūlakah*

Südras also truth, liberality, calmness, innocence, harmlessness, and compassion. And as for the thing to be known, which is free from pain and pleasure, I perceive that there is no other thing free from these two influences. Yudhishtira rejoined : 12475. The qualities characteristic of a Südra do not exist in a Brähman (nor *vice versa*). (Were it otherwise) the Südra would not be a Südra, nor the Brähman a Brähman.²⁴¹ The person in whom this regulated practice is perceived is declared to be a Brähman ; and the man, in whom it is absent, should be designated as a Südra. And as to what you say further, that there is nothing other than this (Brahma) to be known, which is free from the susceptibilities in question ; this is also (my own) opinion, that there is nothing free from them. Just as between cold and heat there can be neither heat nor cold, so there is nothing free from the feeling of pleasure and pain. Such is my view ; or how do you consider ? The Serpent remarked : 12480. If a man is regarded by you as being a Brähman only in consequence of his conduct, then birth is vain until action is shown. Yudhishtira replied : O most sapient Serpent, birth is difficult to be discriminated in the present condition

*ity arthaḥ | evāñ cha satyādikāṁ yadi sūdre 'py asti tarhi so 'pi brāhmaṇa eva syād
iti āha "sūdreshv api" iti |* “The serpent, however, understanding by the term Brähman mere birth, shows in a sloka and a half that Yudhishtira’s definition fails by being applicable also to a Südra. *Chāturvarṇya* means ‘beneficial to the four castes.’ (Such is the Veda), which is also ‘true’ and ‘authoritative,’ as establishing what is duty. Inasmuch as the Smṛiti which prescribes a Südra’s conduct is itself founded on the Veda ; all conduct, etc., is based on the Veda. And so if (the characters of) truth, etc., are found also in a Südra, he too must be a Brähman—such is his argument in the words ‘In Südras also.’” According to this explanation the connection between the first line and the second and third may be as follows : The Veda is beneficial to all the castes, and therefore Südras also, having the advantage of its guidance, although at second hand, may practise all the virtues you enumerate ; but would you therefore call them Brähmans ?

²⁴¹ This verse is not very lucid; but the sense may be that which I have assigned. The Commentator says : *Itaras tu brāhmaṇa-padena brahma-vidāṁ vivakṣitvā sūdrārē api brāhmaṇatvam abhyupaganya parihaṛati “Sūdre tv” iti | Sūdrā-lakṣhya-kāmādikāṁ na brāhmaṇe 'sti na brāhmaṇa-lakṣhya-samādikāṁ sūdre 'sti ity arthaḥ | sūdro 'pi sāmādy-upeto brāhmaṇah | brāhmaṇo 'pi kāmādy-upetah sūdra eva ity arthaḥ |* “The other (Yudhishtira), however, understanding by the word Brähmana one who knows the Veda (or, Brahma), and conceding the fact of a Südra’s Brähmanhood, obviates by the words ‘but in a Südra,’ etc. (the objection thence drawn). The qualities, lust, etc., distinctive of a Südra, do not exist in a Brähman, nor do the qualities tranquillity, etc., characteristic of a Brähman exist in a Südra. A Südra distinguished by the latter is a Brähman ; while a Brähman characterized by lust, etc., is a Südra.”

of humanity, on account of the confusion of all castes.²⁴² All (sorts of)

²⁴² In the tenth vol. of his *Indische Studien*, p. 83, Professor Weber adduces some curious evidence of the little confidence entertained in ancient times by the Indians in the chastity of their women. He refers to the following passages : (1) *Nidāna Sutra*, iii. 8. *Uchchāvacha-charanāḥ striyo bhavanti | saha deva-sākshye cha manushya-sākshye cha yeshām putro vakshye teshām putro bhavishyāmi | yāṁścha putrān rakshye te me putrāḥ bhavishyāti* | "Women are irregular in their conduct. Of whatsoever men, I, taking gods and men to witness, shall declare myself to be the son, I shall be their son ; and they whom I shall name as my sons shall be so." (2) *S'atapatha Brāhmaṇa*, iii. 2, 1, 40. *Atha yad "brāhmaṇāḥ" ityāha | anaddhā iva vai asya atah purā jānam bhavati | idām hy āhuḥ "rakṣānīsi yoshitam anusachte tad uṭa rakṣānīsy eva reta ādadhati iti | atha atra addhā jāyate yo brāhmaṇo yo yajñāj jāyate | tasmād api rājanyaṁ vā vaisyaṁ vā "brāhmaṇāḥ" ity eva brūyat | brāhmaṇo hi jāyate yo yajñāj jāyate | tasmād āhuḥ "na savana-kṛitaṁ hanyad enasvī ha eva savana-kṛitā" iti | "Now as regards what he says '(this) Brāhmaṇ (has been consecrated)' before this his birth is uncertain. For they say this that 'Rakshases follow after women, and therefore that it is Rakshases who inject seed into them.'" (Compare what it said of the *Gandharvas* in *Atharva V.* iv. 37, 11, 12, and *Journ. Roy. As. Soc.* for 1865, p. 301.) So then he is certainly born who is born from sacred science (*brahma*) and from sacrifice. Wherefore also let him address a Rājanya or a Vaiśya as 'Brāhmaṇ,' for he is born from sacred science (*brāhma*, and consequently a Brāhmaṇ) who is born from sacrifice. Hence they say 'let no one slay an offerer of a libation, for he incurs (the) sin (of Brahmanicide?) by so doing.' (3) On the next passage of the *S'. P. Br.* ii. 5, 2, 20, Professor Weber remarks that it is assumed that the wife of the person offering the *Varuna praghāsa* must have one or more paramours : *Atha pratipras'hātā pratiparaiti | sa patūm udāneshyān prichhati 'kena (jāreṇa Comm.) charasi'* iti | *Varunyaṁ vai etat strī karoti yad anyasya saty anyena charati | atho "na id me 'ntaḥ-salpā juhuvad"* iti *tasmāt prichhati | niruktaṁ vai enāḥ kan̄yo bhavati | satyaṁ hi bhavati | tusmād vā iva prichhati | sū yad na pratijānīta jnātibhyo ha asyai tad ahitaṁ syat |* "The pratiprasthātī (one of the priests) returns. Being about to bring forward the wife, he asks her, 'with what (paramour) dost thou keep company?' For it is an offence incurring punishment from *Varuna* that being the wife of one man she keeps company with another. He enquires 'in order that she may not sacrifice with me while she feels an inward pang.' For a sin when declared becomes less : for it is not attended with falsehood. Therefore he enquires. If she does not confess, it will be ill for her relations." (This passage is explained in *Kūtyāyana's S'rāuta Sūtras*, v. 5, 6–11.) (4) *S'. P. Br.* i. 3, 2, 21. *Tad u ha uvācha Yūjnavalkyo "yathādīshikam patnyāḥ astu | kas tad ādriyeta yat parapuṇśā vā patni syat"* | "Yūjnavalkya said this (in opposition to the doctrine of some other teachers) : 'let the prescribed rule be followed regarding a wife. Who would mind his wife consorting with other men?'" The last clause has reference to the consequence which the other teachers said would follow from adopting the course they disapproved, viz., that the wife of the man who did so would become an adulteress. (5) *Taitt. S.* v. 6, 8, 3. *Na agniṁ chitvā rāmām upeyād "ayonau reto dhasyāmi"* iti | *na dvitīyāṁ chitvā 'nyasya striyam upeyāt | na tritīyāṁ chitvā kāñchana upeyāt | reto vai etad niḍhatte yad agniṁ chinute | yad upeyād retasā vyādhīyeta |* "Let not a man, after preparing the altar for the sacred fire, approach a woman (a S'ūdra-woman, according to the Commentator), (considering) that in doing so, he would be discharging seed into an improper place. Let no man, after a second time preparing the fire-*

men are continually begetting children on all (sorts of) women. The speech, the mode of propagation, the birth, the death of all mankind are alike. The text which follows is Vedic and authoritative: ‘We who (are called upon) we recite the text.’²⁴³ Hence those men who have an insight into truth know that virtuous character is the thing chiefly to be desired. ‘The natal rites of a male are enjoined to be performed before the section of the umbilical cord (Manu, ii. 29). Then Sāvitri (the Gāyatrī, Manu ii. 77) becomes his mother and his

altar, approach another man’s wife. Let no man, after a third time preparing the fire-altar, approach any woman: for in preparing the fire-altar he is discharging seed. Should he approach (a woman in these forbidden cases) he will miscarry with his seed.” This prohibition of adultery in a certain case, seems to prove that it was no uncommon occurrence, and is calculated, as Professor Weber remarks, to throw great doubt on the purity of blood in the old Indian families.

²⁴³ To explain the last elliptical expression I will quote part of the Commentator’s remarks on the beginning of Yudhishtira’s reply: *Vāgādīnām iva maithunasyāpi sādhāranyāj jātir durjneyā | tathā chā śrutih “na chaitad vidmo brāhmaṇāḥ smo vayam abrahmaṇā vā” iti brāhmaṇya-samsayaṁ upanyasyati | nanu jāty-anisichaye katham “brāhmaṇo ‘ham” ityādy abhīmāna-purassaram yāgādau pravartteta ity āśankyāha “idam ārsham” iti | atra “ye yajāmahe” ity anena cha ye vayāṁ smo brāhmaṇāḥ anye vā te vayam yajāmahe iti brāhmaṇye navadhāraṇāṁ darsitam | mantra-lingam api “ya evāsmi sa san yaje” iti | . . . Tasmād āchāra eva brāhmaṇya-nisichayahetur veda-prūmānyād ity upasāñharati | “As the mode of propagation is common to all the castes, just as speech, etc. are, birth is difficult to be determined. And accordingly, by the words: ‘We know not this, whether we are Brāhmans or no Brāhmans,’ the Veda signifies a doubt as to Brāmanhood. Then, having raised the difficulty ‘how, if birth is undetermined, can a man engage in sacrifice, etc., with the previous consciousness that he is a Brāhman, etc.?’ the author answers in the words ‘this text is Vedic, etc.’ It is both shewn by the words ‘we who . . . recite,’ (which mean) ‘we, whoever we are,—Brāhmans or others,—we recite,’ that the fact of Brāmanhood is unascertained; and this is also a characteristic of the formula, ‘whosoever I am, being he who I am, I recite.’” The comment concludes: “Hence he briefly infers from the authoritative character of the Veda, that conduct is the cause of certainty in regard to Brāmanhood.” Prof. Aufrecht has pointed out to me that the words *ye yajāmahe* occur in S. P. Br. i. 5, 2, 16, and in Taitt. S. i. 16, 11, 1. The Commentator on the last-named passage refers in explanation of them to Asvalāyana’s S’rauta Sūtras, i. 5, 4 f., where it is said that these two words constitute the formula called *aguh*, which comes in at the beginning of all the *yājyās* which are unaccompanied by any *anuyāja*. The Commentator interprets the two words thus: *sarve “ye” vayāṁ hotāro dhvaryaṇā “yaja” iti preshitās te vayam “yajāmahe” yājyām paṭhāmaḥ* | “All we hotri priests who are called upon by the adhvaryu by the word ‘recite,’ we recite, i.e. repeat the *yājyā*.” (See Haug’s Ait. Br. ii. p. 133, and note 11.) Prof. Aufrecht thinks the words in the Commentator’s note *ya evāsmi sa san yaje* may be a free adaptation of Atharva V. vi. 123, 3, 4. It does not appear from what source the words *na chaitad vidmaḥ* etc. are derived.*

religious teacher his father (Manu, ii. 170, 225). 12485. Until he is born in the Veda, he is on a level with a Sūdra' (Manu, ii. 172);—so, in this diversity of opinions did Manu Svāyambhuva declare. The castes (though they have done nothing) will have done all they need do,²⁴ if no fixed rules of conduct are observed. In such a case there is considered to be a gross confusion of castes. I have already declared that he is a Brāhmaṇ in whom purity of conduct is recognized."

The next passage from the Sāntiparvan, verses 6930 ff., is even more explicit than the last in denying any natural distinction between the people of the different castes :

*Bhrigur uvācha | Asrijad brāhmaṇān evam pūrvam Brahmā prajū-
patīn | ātma-tejo'bhinirvrittān bhāskarāgni-sama-prabhān | tataḥ satyaṁ
cha dharmāṁ cha tapo brahma cha śāśvatam | āchāram chaiva śaucharām
cha svargāya vidadhe prabhuh | deva-dānava-gandharvā daityāsura-ma-
horagāḥ | yaksha-rākshasa-nāgāś cha piśāchā manujāś tathā | brāhmaṇāḥ
kshattriyā vaiśyāḥ sūdrāś cha dvija-sattama | ye chānye bhūta-sanghānām
varṇāś tāṁś chāpi nirmame | brāhmaṇānām sito varṇāḥ kshattriyānām
cha lohitāḥ | vaiśyānām pītako varṇāḥ sūdrānām asitas tatha | 6935.
Bharadrāja uvācha | Chāturvarṇyasya varṇena yadi varṇo vibhidhyate |
sarveshāṁ khalu varṇānām dṛiṣyate varṇa-sankarah | kāmaḥ krodho bha-
yaṁ lobhaḥ śokaś chintā kshudhā śramaḥ | sarveshāṁ naḥ²⁴⁵ prabhavati
kasmād varṇo vibhidhyate | sveda-mūtra-purīshāṇī śleshmā pittām sa-śoni-
tam | tanuh ksharati sarveshāṁ kasmād varṇo vibhajyate | jangamānām
asaṁkhyeyāḥ sthāvarānām cha jātayah | teshāṁ vividha-varṇānām kuto
varṇa-viniśchayāḥ | Bhrigur uvācha | Na viśesho 'sti varṇānām sarvam
brāhmam idāṁ jagat | Brahmanā pūrva śriṣṭām hi karmabhir varṇatām
gatam | 6940. Kāma-bhoga-priyās tīkshṇāḥ kroḍhanāḥ priya-sāhasāḥ |*

²⁴ The Commentator thus explains the word *krita-kṛitya* : *Kṛita-kṛityāḥ sūdra-tulyāḥ | tathā cha smṛitih "na sūdre pātakām kinchid na cha sañkāram arhati" iti teshāṁ samskūrānarhatva-nishpāpatvābhidūnat kṛita-kṛityatvam darsayati | tadvat traivarnikā api syur ity arthaḥ | "Kṛita kṛityāḥ (lit. having done what was to be done) means, like Sūdras; so the Smṛiti (when it says), 'No sin exists in a Sūdra, nor is he fit for purificatory rites,' shews, by declaring the unfitness of this class for such rites, and its freedom from sin, that it has the character of *kṛita-kṛityatvata*, i.e. of having done all it had to do. And such (in the event supposed) would be the case with men of the three (upper) classes also."*

²⁴⁵ The Calcutta edition reads *na*, "not," which cannot be right. The MS. in the Library of the Edinburgh University has *naḥ*, "of us."

*tyakta-svadharmā raktāngās te dvijāḥ kshattratāṁ gatāḥ | gobhyo vṛittim
 samāsthāya pītāḥ krishy-upajīvināḥ | sva-dharmān nānutishṭhanti te
 dvijā vaiśyatāṁ gatāḥ | hiṁsānrita-priyā lubdhāḥ sarva-karmopajīvinah |
 krishṇāḥ śaucha-paribhrashṭas te dvijāḥ śūdratāṁ gatāḥ | ity etaiḥ kar-
 mabhir vyastā dvijā varṇāntaram gatāḥ | dharmo yajna-kriyā teshāṁ
 nityām na pratiṣidhyate | ity ete chaturo varṇā yeshāṁ brāhmaṇī saras-
 vatī | vihitā Brāhmaṇā pūrvām lobhāt tv ajanānatāṁ gatāḥ | 6945.
 Brāhmaṇā brahma-tantra-sthās²⁴⁶ tapas teshāṁ na naśyati | brahma dhā-
 rayatāṁ nityām vratāni uiyamāns tathā | brahma chaiva param sriṣṭitāṁ
 ye na jānanti te 'dvijāḥ | teshāṁ bahuvidhāś tv anyās tatra tatra hi
 jātayāḥ | piśāchā rākshasāḥ pretā vividhā mlechha-jātayāḥ | praṇashṭa-
 jnāna-vijñānāḥ svachhandāchāra-cheshtītāḥ | prajā brāhmaṇa-saṁskārāḥ
 sva-karma-kṛita-niśchayāḥ | rishibhiḥ svena tapasā sriyante chāpare
 paraiḥ | ādi-deva-samudbhūtā brahma-mūlā 'kshayā 'ryayā | sā sriṣṭir
 mānasī nāma dharma-tantra-parāyanā | 6950. Bharadvāja urācha |
 Brāhmaṇāḥ kena bhavati kshattriyo vā drijottama | vaiśyah śūdraś cha
 vīprarshe tad brāhi vadatāṁ vara | Bhṛigur urācha | Jata-karmādibhir
 yas tu saṁskāriḥ saṁskṛitaḥ śuchiḥ | vedādhyayana-sampannaḥ shaṭsu
 karmasv avasthitāḥ | śaučāchāra-sthītāḥ samyag vīghasāśi guru-priyah |
 nitya-vratī satyaparaḥ sa vai brāhmaṇa uchyate | satyaṁ dānam athā-
 droha ānṛisaṁsyāṁ trapā ghṛinā | tapas cha driṣyate yatra sa brāhmaṇa
 iti smṛitāḥ | kshattra-jāṁ sevate karma vedādhyayana-sangataḥ | dānā-
 dāna-ratir yas tu sa vai kshattriya uchyate | 6955. Viśaty āśu paśubhyas
 cha krishy-ādāna-ratiḥ śuchiḥ | vedādhyayana-sampannaḥ sa vaiśyah iti
 sanjnītāḥ | sarva-bhakshya-ratir nityām sarva-karma-karo 'śuchiḥ |
 tyakta-vedas tv anāchāraḥ sa vai śūdraḥ iti smṛitāḥ | śūdrō chaitad
 bhavel lakṣhyaṁ dvije tach cha na vidyate | sa vai śūdro bhavech chhūdro
 brāhmaṇo brāhmaṇo na cha |*

"Bṛigu replied: 6930. 'Brahmā thus formerly created the Prajā-
 patis, Brahmanic,²⁴⁷ penetrated by his own energy, and in splendour
 equalling the sun and fire. The lord then formed truth, righteousness,
 austere fervour, and the eternal veda (or sacred science), virtuous
 practice, and purity for (the attainment of) heaven. He also formed
 the gods, Dānavas, Gandharvas, Daityas, Asuras, Mahoragas, Yakshas,

²⁴⁶ *Brahma-tantram* = *vedoktānushṭhānam* | Comm.

²⁴⁷ *Brāhmaṇān*, "Brāhmans," is the word employed. It may mean here "sons of
 Brahmā."

Rākshasas, Nāgas, Piśāchas, and men, Brāhmans, Kshattriyas, Vaiśyas, and Sūdras, as well as all other classes (*varnāḥ*) of beings. The colour (*varṇa*) of the Brāhmans was white; that of the Kshattriyas red; that of the Vaiśyas yellow, and that of the Sūdras black.'²⁴⁸ 6935. Bharadvāja here rejoins: 'If the caste (*varṇa*) of the four classes is distinguished by their colour (*varṇa*), then a confusion of all the castes is observable. Desire, anger, fear, cupidity, grief, apprehension, hunger, fatigue, prevail over us all: by what, then, is caste discriminated? Sweat, urine, excrement, phlegm, bile, and blood (are common to all); the bodies of all decay: by what then is caste discriminated? There are innumerable kinds of things moving and stationary: how is the class (*varṇa*) of these various objects to be determined?' Bhṛigu replies: 'There is no difference of castes:²⁴⁹ this world, having been at first created by Brahmā entirely Brahmanic,²⁵⁰

²⁴⁸ It is somewhat strange, as Professor Weber remarks in a note to p. 215 of his German translation of the Vajra Sūchi, that in the passage of the Kāthaka Brāhmaṇa xi. 6, which he there quotes, a white colour is ascribed to the Vais'ya and a dark hue to the Rājanya. The words are these: *Yach chhuklānām (brihīnām) ādityebhyo nir-vapati tasmāch chhukla ita vaisyo jāyate | yat krishṇānām vārunām tasmād dhūmra ita rājanyaḥ |* "Since the Vais'ya offers an oblation of white (rice) to the Ādityas, he is born as it were white; and as the Vāruṇa oblation is of black (rice) the Rājanya is as it were dusky."

²⁴⁹ Compare with this the words attributed in Śāntiparvan, verses 2819 ff., to King Muchukunda, who had been reproached by the god Kuvera with trusting for victory to the aid of his domestic priest instead of to his own prowess: *Muchukundas tataḥ kruddhah pratyuviccha Dhāneśvaram | nyāya-pūrvam asāmrubdhān asambhrāntam idān vachāḥ | brahma kshattram idān śrīṣṭam eka-yoni svayambhuvaḥ | prithag-balavidhānāṁ tanna lokam paripūlayet | tapo-mantra-balām nityam brāhmaṇeshu pratishṭhitam | astra-bāhu-balām nityām kshattriyeshu pratishṭhitam | tābhyaṁ sambhūya karttavyam prajānām paripālanam |* "Muchukunda then, incensed, addressed to the Lord of riches these reasonable words, which did not partake of his anger or excitement: 'Brāhmans and Kshattriyas were created by Brahmā from the same womb (or source) with different forces appointed to them: this cannot (neither of these separate forces can?) protect the world. The force of austere fervour and of sacred texts abides constantly in the Brāhmans; and that of weapons and their own arms in the Kshattriyas. By these two forces combined the people must be protected.'

²⁵⁰ *Brāhmam* is the word employed. That it is to be understood in the sense of "Brāhmanical" appears from the following lines in which the word *dvijāḥ* must be taken in the special signification of Brāhmans and not of "twice-born men" (who may be either Brāhmans, Kshattriyas, or Vais'yas) in general. The Brāhman is considered to have been formed of the essence of Brahmā, and to represent the original type of perfect humanity as it existed at the creation. The Commentator takes the word *brāhmam* as = *brāhmaṇa-jātīmat*, "having the caste of Brāhmans;" and he explains the different colours mentioned in the next verses as follows: red (*rakta*)

became (afterwards) separated into castes in consequence of works. 6940. Those Brāhmans (*lit.* twice-born men), who were fond of sensual pleasure, fiery, irascible, prone to violence, who had forsaken their duty, and were red-limbed, fell into the condition of Kshattriyas. Those Brāhmans, who derived their livelihood from kine, who were yellow, who subsisted by agriculture, and who neglected to practise their duties, entered into the state of Vaiśyas. Those Brāhmans, who were addicted to mischief and falsehood, who were covetous, who lived by all kinds of work, who were black and had fallen from purity, sank into the condition of Sūdras. Being separated from each other by these works, the Brāhmans became divided into different castes. Duty and the rites of sacrifice have not been always forbidden to (any of) them. Such are the four classes for whom the Brahmanic²⁵¹ Sarasvatī was at first designed by Brahmā, but who through their cupidity fell into ignorance. 6945. Brāhmans live agreeably to the prescriptions of the Veda; while they continually hold fast the Veda, and observances, and ceremonies, their austere fervour (*tapas*) does not perish. And sacred science was created the highest thing: they who are ignorant of it are no twice-born men. Of these there are various other classes in different places, Piśāchas, Rākshasas, Pretas, various tribes of Mlechhas, who have lost all knowledge sacred and profane, and practise whatever observances they please. And different sorts of creatures with the purificatory rites of Brāhmans, and discerning their own duties, are created by different rishis through their own austere fervour. This creation, sprung from the primal god, having its root in Brahma, undecaying, imperishable, is called the mind-born creation, and is devoted to the prescriptions of duty.' 6950. Bharadvāya again enquires: 'What is that in virtue of which a man is a Brāhman, a Kshattriya,

means "formed of the quality of passion" (*rajo-guṇa-maya*); yellow (*pīṭa*) "formed of the qualities of passion and darkness" (*rajas-tamo-maya*), and black (*kriṅga* or *asita*) "formed of darkness only" (*kevala-tamomaya*).

²⁵¹ *Brāhmī*. This word is thus interpreted by the Commentator: *vedamayī | chatur-*
nām api varṇānām Brahmanā pūrvam vihitā | lobha-doshena tu ajñānatān tamo-
bhāvān gatāḥ sūdrāḥ anadhiकārino vede jūtāḥ | 'Sarasvatī, consisting of the Veda, was formerly designed by Brahmā for all the four castes: but the Sūdras having through cupidity fallen into 'ignorance,' i.e. a condition of darkness, lost their right to the Veda.' See Indische Studien, ii. 194, note, where Professor Weber understands this passage to import that in ancient times the Sūdras spoke the language of the Aryas.

a Vaiśya, or a Sūdra; tell me, o most eloquent Brahman rishi.' Bhrigu replies: 'He who is pure, consecrated by the natal and other ceremonies, who has completely studied the Veda, lives in the practice of the six ceremonies, performs perfectly the rites of purification, who eats the remains of oblations, is attached to his religious teacher, is constant in religious observances, and devoted to truth,—is called a Brāhmaṇ. 6953. He in whom are seen truth, liberality, inoffensiveness, harmlessness, modesty, compassion, and austere fervour,—is declared to be a Brāhmaṇ. He who practises the duty arising out of the kingly office, who is addicted to the study of the Veda, and who delights in giving and receiving,²⁵²—is called a Kshattriya. 6955. He who readily occupies himself with cattle,²⁵³ who is devoted to agriculture and acquisition, who is pure, and is perfect in the study of the Veda,—is denominated a Vaiśya. 6956. He who is habitually addicted to all kinds of food, performs all kinds of work, who is unclean, who has abandoned the Veda, and does not practise pure observances,—is traditionally called a Sūdra. And this (which I have stated) is the mark of a Sūdra, and it is not found in a Brāhmaṇ: (such) a Sūdra will remain a Sūdra, while the Brāhmaṇ (who so acts) will be no Brāhmaṇ.'²⁵⁴

The passage next to be quoted recognizes, indeed, the existence of castes in the Kṛita age, but represents the members of them all as having been perfect in their character and condition, and as not differing from one another in any essential respects.

It is related in the Vanaparvan that Bhimasena, one of the Pāndus,

²⁵² *Dānam vīprebhyaḥ | ādānam prajabhyāḥ*, "Giving to Brāhmans, receiving from his subjects."—Comm.

²⁵³ *Paśūn vāñjyāya upayogināḥ upalabdhvā visati pratishṭhām labhate |* "Who perceiving cattle to be useful for trade, 'enters,' obtains a basis (for his operations)."—Comm. As we have seen above p. 97, these etymologies are frequently far-fetched and absurd.

²⁵⁴ On this verse the Commentator annotates as follows: *etat satyādi-saptakam dvije traivarnike | dharma eva varna-vibhāge kāraṇāṁ na jātir ity arthaḥ |* "These seven virtues, beginning with truth (mentioned in verse 6953), exist in the twice-born man of the first three classes. The sense is that righteousness, and not birth, is the cause of the division into classes." This explanation is not very lucid. But the sense seems to be that the seven good qualities referred to are the proper characteristics of the three upper castes, while the defects specified in verse 6956 are the proper distinctive marks of the Sūdras. Thus the Sūdra who has the four defects will remain a Sūdra, but a Brāhmaṇ who has them will be no Brāhmaṇ.

in the course of a conversation with his brother²⁵⁵ Hanūmat the monkey chief, had requested information on the subject of the Yugas and their characteristics. Hanūmat's reply is given in verses 11234 ff.:

Kṛitam nāma yugam tāta yatra dharmah sanātanaḥ | kṛitam eva na karttavyam̄ tasmin kāle yugottame | na tatra dharmah sīdanti kshīyante na cha vai prajāḥ | tataḥ kṛita-yugam nāma kālena gunatām̄ gatam | deva-dānava-gandharva-yaksha-rākshasa-pannagāḥ | nāsan kṛita-yuge tāta tadā na kraya-vikrayāḥ²⁵⁶ | na sāma-ṛig-yajur-varṇāḥ²⁵⁷ kriyā nāśich cha mānarī | abhidhyāya phalaṁ tatra dharmah sannyāsa eva cha | na tasmin yuga-saṁsarge vyādhayo nendriya-kshayāḥ | nāsuyā nāpi ruditam na darpo nāpi vaikṛitam²⁵⁸ | na vigrāhāḥ²⁵⁹ kutas tandrī na dresho na cha paśunam | 11240. Na bhayaṁ nāpi santāpo na chershīyā na cha matsarah | tataḥ paramakam Brahma sā gatir yoginām parā | ātmā cha sarva-bhūtānām śuklo Nārāyanas tadā | brāhmaṇāḥ kshattriyāḥ raiṣyāḥ śūdrāścha kṛita-lakshanāḥ | kṛite yuge samabhavan sva-karma-niratāḥ prajāḥ | sa-māśrayam̄ samāchāraṁ sama-jnānaṁ cha keralam | tadā hi sāmakarmāṇo varṇā dharmān avāpnovan | eka-deva-sadā-yuktāḥ eka-mantra-vidhi-kriyāḥ | prithagdharmās tv eka-vedā dharmam ekam anurātāḥ | chāturaśramya-yuktena karmanā kāla-yoginā | 11245. Akāma-phala-saṁyogūt prāpnuvanti parām gatim | ātma-yoga-samāyukto dharmo 'yam kṛita-lakshanāḥ | kṛite yuge chatushpādāś chāturrvarnyasya śāśvataḥ | etat kṛita-yugam nāma traigunya-parivarjītam | tretām api nibodha traṁ tasmin sattram pravarttate | pādena hrasate dharmo raktatām yāti chāchyutāḥ | satya-pravrittāḥ cha narāḥ kriyā-dharma-parāyanāḥ | tato yajnāḥ pravarttante dharmāścha viridhāḥ kriyāḥ | tretāyām bhāra-sankalpīḥ kriyā-dāna-phalopagāḥ | prachalanti na vai dharmāt tapo-dāna-parāyanāḥ | 11250. Sva-dharma-sthāḥ kriyārvanto narās tretā-yuge 'bhavan | dvāpare tu yuge dharmo dṛibhāgonāḥ pravarttate | Vishṇur vai pītātām yāti chaturdhā reda era cha | tato 'nye cha chatur-vedāś tri-vedāś cha talhā pare | dvi-vedāś chaika-vedāś chūpy anṛichaś cha talhā pare | evāṁ sūstreshu bhinneshu bahudhā nīyate kriyā | tapo-dāna-pravrittāḥ cha rājasī bhavati prajā | eka-vedasya chājñānād vedāś te bahavāḥ

²⁵⁵ Both were sons of Vāyu. See verses 11134, 11169 f. and 11176 f. of this same book. The Rāmūyana is mentioned in verse 11177.

²⁵⁶ The MS. in the Edinburgh University Library reads as the last pāda: dānū-dhyayana-viśramāḥ.

²⁵⁷ The Edinburgh MS. reads *vedāḥ* instead *varṇāḥ*.

²⁵⁸ *Kapāṭam*—Comm.

²⁵⁹ *Vairam*—Comm.

kṛitāḥ | *sattrasya cheha vibhraṁśat satye*²⁰⁰ *kaścid avasthitāḥ* | *sattvāt prachyaramānānāṁ ryādhayo bahavo 'bhavan* | 11255. *Kāmāś chopadra-vāśchaiva tadā vai daiva-kārītāḥ* | *yair ardyamānāḥ subhṛīśam tapas tapyanti mānarāḥ* | *kāma-kāmāḥ svarga-kāmā yajnāṁs tanvanti chāpare* | *evaṁ drāparam āśādyā prajāḥ kshīyanty adharmataḥ* | *pādenaikena Kaunteya dharmāḥ kali-yuge sīhītaḥ* | *tāmasaṁ yugam āśādyā kṛishṇo bhavati Keśavaḥ* | *vedāchārāḥ praśāmyanti dharma-yajna-kriyās tathā* | *ītayo vyādhayas trandī doshāḥ krodhādayās tathā* | *upadravāś cha varttante ādhayah kshud bhayam tathā* | *yugeshv āvarittamāneshu dharmo vyāvartataḥ punaḥ* | *dharame vyāvarttamāne tu loko vyāvarttate punaḥ* | *loke kehīne kshayaṁ yānti bhārā loka-pravarttakāḥ* | *yuga-kshaya-kṛitā dharmāḥ prārthanāni vikurratē* | *etat kaliyugaṁ nāma achirūd yat pravarttate* | *yugānuvarittanāṁ tv etat kurvanti chirajivināḥ* |

“11234. The Kṛita is that age in which righteousness is eternal. In the time of that most excellent of Yugas (everything) had been done (*kṛita*), and nothing (remained) to be done. Duties did not then languish, nor did the people decline. Afterwards, through (the influence of) time, this yuga fell into a state of inferiority.²⁰¹ In that age there were neither Gods,²⁰² Dānavas, Gandharvas, Yakshas, Rākshasas, nor Pannagas; no buying or selling went on; tho Vēdas were not classed²⁰³ as Sāman, Rich, and Yajush; no efforts were made by men:²⁰⁴ the fruit (of the earth was obtained) by their mere wish: righteousness and abandonment of the world (prevailed).

²⁰⁰ The Edinburgh MS. reads *sattve* instead of *satye*.

²⁰¹ In thus rendering, I follow the Commentator, whose gloss is this: *Mukhyam apy amukhyatāṁ gatam* | “although the chief, it fell into inferiority.” In Bühtlingk and Roth’s Lexicon this line is quoted under the word *gunatā*, to which the sense of “superiority, excellence,” is assigned.

²⁰² Compare with this the verses of the Vāyu Purāṇa quoted in p. 90, which state that in the Kṛita age there were neither plants nor animals; which are the products of unrighteousness.

²⁰³ I do not venture to translate “there was then no [division of the Veda into] Sāman, Rich, and Yajush, nor any castes,” (1) because the Edinburgh MS. reads *vedāḥ* instead of *varṇāḥ*, and the Commentator does not allude to the word *varṇāḥ*; and (2) castes (*varṇāḥ*) are referred to below (verses 11242 f.) as existing, though without much distinction of character. The Commentator explains: *trayī-dharmasya chittasuddhy-arthatvāt tasyāḥ cha tadānīṁ svabhāvatvāt na sāmādīny āsan* | “As the object of the triple Veda is purity of heart, and as that existed naturally at that period, there were no (divisions of) Sāman, etc.”

²⁰⁴ I follow the Commentator whose gloss is: “*Mānavī kriyā*” *kṛishy-ādy-ārambha-bhūta* | *kintu “abhidhīyāya phalam,” sankalpād eva sarvam sampadyate* |

No disease or decline of the organs of sense arose through the influence of the age; there was no malice, weeping, pride, or deceit; no contention, and how could there be any lassitude? no hatred, cruelty, (11240) fear, affliction, jealousy, or envy. Hence the supreme Brahma was the transcendent resort of those Yogins. Then Nārāyaṇa, the soul of all beings, was white.²⁶⁵ Brāhmans, Kshattriyas, Vaiśyas, and Sūdras possessed the characteristics of the Kṛita.²⁶⁶ In that age were born creatures devoted to their duties. They were alike in the object of their trust, in observances and in their knowledge. At that period the castes, alike in their functions, fulfilled their duties, were unceasingly devoted to one deity, and used one formula (*mantra*), one rule, and one rite. Though they had separate duties, they had but one Veda, and practised one duty.²⁶⁷ By works connected with the four orders, and dependent on conjunctures of time,²⁶⁸ (11245) but unaffected by desire, or (hope of) reward, they attained to supreme felicity. This complete and eternal righteousness of the four castes during the Kṛita was marked by the character of that age and sought after union with the supreme soul. The Kṛita age was free from the three qualities.²⁶⁹ Understand now the Tretā, in which sacrifice commenced,²⁷⁰ righteousness decreased by a fourth, Vishnu became red;

²⁶⁵ In verse 12981 of this same Vanaparvan the god says of himself: *svetāḥ kṛita-yuge varṇah pītāḥ tretāyuge mama | rakto dvāparam āśādya krishnāḥ kali-yuge tathā |* “My colour in the Kṛita age is white, in the Tretā yellow, when I reach the Dvāpara it is red, and in the Kali black.”

²⁶⁶ The Commentator's gloss is: *kṛitāni svataḥ siddhāni lakṣayāni śamo damas tapa ity-ādāni yeshām te |* “They were men whose characteristics, tranquillity, etc., were effected, spontaneously accomplished.” On verse 11245 he explains the same term *kṛita-lakṣhanāḥ* by *kṛita-yuga-sūchakah*, “indicative of the Kṛita age.”

²⁶⁷ The different clauses of this line can only be reconciled on the supposition that the general principle of duty, and the details of the duties are distinguished. *Dharma* is the word used in both parts of the verse for “duty.”

²⁶⁸ *Kāla-yoginā*. The Commentator explains: *kālo darsādiḥ | tad-yuktena |* “connected with time, i.e. the appearance of the new moon, etc.”

²⁶⁹ And yet we are told in the Vāyu P. that the creation itself proceeded from the influence of the quality of passion (see above, p. 75), and that the four castes when originally produced were characterized in different ways by the three qualities, pp. 62 and 89

²⁷⁰ Compare Śānti-parva, 13088. *Idam kṛita-yugāṁ nāma kālaḥ śreshṭhāḥ pravarttitāḥ | ahimsyā yajna-pāśavo yuge'smin na tad anyathā | chatushpāt sakalo dharma bhavishyati atra vai surāḥ | tatas tretā-yugāṁ nāma trayī yatra bhavishyati | prokshītā yatra pāśavo badham prāpsyanti vai makhe |* “This Kṛita age is the most excellent of periods: then victims are not allowed to be slaughtered; complete and

and men adhered to truth, and were devoted to a righteousness dependent on ceremonies. Then sacrifices prevailed, with holy acts and a variety of rites. In the Tretā men acted with an object in view, seeking after reward for their rites and their gifts, and no longer disposed to austerities and to liberality from (a simple feeling of) duty. 11250. In this age, however, they were devoted to their own duties, and to religious ceremonies. In the Dvāpara age righteousness was diminished by two quarters, Vishnu became yellow, and the Veda fourfold. Some studied four Vedas, others three, others two, others one, and some none at all.²⁷¹ The scriptures being thus divided, ceremonies were celebrated in a great variety of ways; and the people being occupied with austerity and the bestowal of gifts, became full of passion (*rājasī*). Owing to ignorance of the one Veda, Vedas were multiplied. And now from the decline of goodness (*sattva*) few only adhered to truth. When men had fallen away from goodness, many diseases, (11255) desires and calamities, caused by destiny, assailed them, by which they were severely afflicted, and driven to practice austerities. Others desiring enjoyments and heavenly bliss, offered sacrifices. Thus, when they had reached the Dvāpara, men declined through unrighteousness. In the Kali righteousness remained to the extent of one-fourth only. Arrived in that age of darkness, Vishnu became black: practices enjoined by the Vedas, works of righteousness, and rites of sacrifice, ceased. Calamities, diseases, fatigue, faults, such as anger, etc., distresses, anxiety, hunger, fear, prevailed. As the ages revolve, righteousness again declines. When this takes place, the people also decline. When they decay, the impulses which actuate them also decay. The practices generated by this declension of the Yugas frustrate men's aims. Such is the Kali Yuga which has existed for a short time. Those who are long-lived act in conformity with the character of the age."

The next passage from the same book (the *Vana-parvan*) does not make any allusion to the Yugas, but depicts the primeval perfection of mankind with some traits peculiar to itself, and then goes on to describe their decline. Mārkandeya is the speaker.

perfect righteousness will prevail. Next is the Tretā in which the triple veda will come into existence; and animals will be slain in sacrifice." See note 65, page 39, above.

²⁷¹ The Commentator explains *anṛīcas* ("without the Rig-veda") by *kṛita
krityāḥ*. On the sense of the latter word see above.

12619. *Nirmalāni śarīrāṇi viśuddhāni śarīrinām | sasarja dharma-tantrāṇi pūrvotpannah Prajāpatih | amogha-phala-sankalpāḥ suvratāḥ satyavādinaḥ | brahma-bhūtā narāḥ punyāḥ purāṇāḥ kuru-sattama | sarve devaiḥ samāḥ yānti svachhandena nabhas-talam | tataś cha punar āyānti sarve svachhanda-chārinah | svachhanda-maranāś chāsan narāḥ svachhanda-chārinah | alpa-bādhā nirātankāḥ siddhārthā nirupadravāḥ | drashṭāro deva-sanghānām rishīnām cha mahātmanām | pratyakshāḥ sarvadharmanām dāntā vigata-matsarāḥ | āsan varsha-sahasrīyās tathā putra-sahasrīnāḥ | 12625. Tataḥ kālāntare 'nyasmin prīthivī-tala-chārinah | kāma-krodhādhibhūtās te māyā-ryājopajīvinah | lobha-mohābhībhūtās te saktā dehais tato narāḥ | aśubhaiḥ karmabhiḥ pāpāś tiryañ-niraya-gāminah |*

"The first-born Prajāpati formed the bodies of corporeal creatures pure, spotless, and obedient to duty. The holy men of old were not frustrated in the results at which they aimed; they were religious, truth-speaking, and partook of Brahma's nature. Being all like gods they ascended to the sky and returned at will. They died too when they desired, suffered few annoyances, were free from disease, accomplished all their objects, and endured no oppression. Self-subdued and free from envy, they beheld the gods⁷² and the mighty rishis, and had an intuitive perception of all duties.⁷³ They lived for a thousand years, and had each a thousand sons. Then at a later period of time, the in-

⁷² See the passage from S'ankara's Commentary on the Brahma Sūtras i. 3, 32, in the 3rd vol. of this work, pp. 49 f., and note 49 in p. 95; and S'atapatha Brāhmaṇa, ii. 3, 4, 4, ubhaye ha vai idam agre saha āsur devīś cha manushyāś cha | tad yad ha sma manushyāṇām na bhavati tad ha devān yāchante "idaṁ vai no nāsti idaṁ no 'stv" iti | te tasyai eva yāchhyāyai dveshena devāś tirobhūtā "na id hinasāni na id dveshyo 'vāni" iti | "Gods and men, together, were both originally (component parts of) this world. Whatever men had not they asked from the gods, saying, 'We have not this; let us have it.' From dislike of this solicitation the gods disappeared, (saying each of them) 'let me not hurt (them), let me not be hateful.'" Compare also the passage of the S. P. Br. iii. 6, 2, 26, referred to by Professor Weber in Indische Studien, x. 158: *Te ha sma ete ubhaye deva-manushyāḥ pitaraḥ sampibante | sū eshā sampā | te ha sma dṛśyamānā eva purā sampibante uta etarhy adris-yamānāḥ* | "Both gods, men, and fathers drink together. This is their symposium. Formerly they drank together visibly: now they do so unseen." Compare also Plato, Philebus, 18: *Καὶ δι μὲν παλαιοῖ, κρέπττονες ἡμῶν καὶ ἐγγυτέρω θεῶν δικοῦντες, ταῦτην φημην παρέδοσαν, "And the ancients who were better than ourselves, and dwelt nearer to the gods, have handed down this tradition."*

⁷³ Compare the passage of the Nirukta, i. 20, beginning, *sākshūt-kṛita-dharmāṇa rishayo babbhūnuḥ*, quoted in the 2nd vol. of this work, p. 174.

habitants of the earth became subject to desire and anger, and subsisted by deceit and fraud. Governed by cupidity and delusion, devoted to carnal pursuits, sinful men by their evil deeds walked in crooked paths leading to hell," etc., etc.

At the end of the chapter of the Bhishmaparvan, entitled *Jambū-khaṇḍa-nirmāṇa*, there is a paragraph in which Sanjaya gives an account of the four yugas in Bhāratavarsha (Hindustan), and of the condition of mankind during each of those periods. After stating the names and order of the yugas, the speaker proceeds:

389. *Chatvāri tu sahasrāṇi varshāṇāṁ Kuru-sattama | āyuḥ-sankhyā kṛīta-yuge sankhyātā rāja-sattama | tathā trīṇi sahasrāṇi tretāyāṁ manujādhipa | dvē sahasre dvāpare cha bhūvi tishṭhanti sāmpratam | na pramāṇa-sthitir hy asti tishye 'smīn Bharatarshabha | garbha-sthāś cha mriyante cha tathā jātā mriyanti cha | mahābalā mahāsattvāḥ prajñā-guṇa-samanvitāḥ | prajāyante cha jātāś cha śataśo 'tha sahasrasāḥ | jātāḥ kṛīta-yuge rājan dhanināḥ priya-darśināḥ | prajāyante cha jātāś cha munayo vai tapodhanāḥ | mahotsāhāḥ mahātmāno dhārmikāḥ satya-vādināḥ | priyadarśanā vāpushmanto mahāvīryā dhanurdharāḥ | varārhā yudhi jāyante kshattriyāḥ śūra-sattamāḥ | tretāyāṁ kshattriyā rājan sarve vai chakravarttināḥ | āyushmanto mahāvīrā dhanurdhara-varā yudhi | jāyante kshattriyā virāś tretāyāṁ vaśa-varttināḥ | sarve varnā mahārāja jāyante dvāpare sati | mahotsāhā vīryavantāḥ parasparsa-jayaishiḥāḥ | tejasā 'lpena sañyuktāḥ krodhanāḥ purushā nṛīpa | lubdhā anṛitakāś chaiva tishye jāyanti Bhārata | īrshā mānas tathā krodho māyā 'sūyā tathaiva cha | tishye bhavati bhūtānāṁ rāgo lobhaś cha Bhārata | sankshepo vart-rājan dvāpare 'smīn narādhipa |*

"389. Four thousand years are specified as the duration of life in the Kṛīta age,⁷⁴ three thousand in the Tretā, and two thousand form the period at present established on earth in the Dvāpara. There is no fixed measure in the Tishya (Kali): embryos die in the womb, as well as children after their birth. Men of great strength, goodness, wisdom, and virtue were born, and born too in hundreds and thousands. In the Kṛīta age men were produced opulent and beautiful, as well as munis rich in austere fervour. Energetic, mighty, righteous, veracious, beautiful, well-formed, valorous, bow-carrying, (395) heroic Kshatriyas,

⁷⁴ See above, p. 91, note 174.

distinguished in battle, were born.²⁷⁵ In the Tretā all sovereigns were Kshattriyas. Heroic Kshattriyas were born in the Tretā, long-lived, great warriors, carrying bows in the fight, and living subject to authority. During the Dvāpara all castes are produced, energetic, valorous, striving for victory over one another. In the Tishya age are born men of little vigour, irascible, covetous, and mendacious. During that period, envy, pride, anger, delusion, ill-will, desire, and cupidity prevail among all beings. During this Dvāpara age there is some restriction."

As it is here stated that men of all castes were born in the Dvāpara, while Brāhmans and Kshattriyas only are spoken of as previously existing, it is to be presumed that the writer intends to intimate that no Vaiśyas or Sūdras existed during the Kṛita and Tretā ages. This accords with the account given in the passage quoted above from the Uttara Kānda of the Rāmāyaṇa, chapter 74, as well as with other texts which will be quoted below.

The following verses might be taken for a rationalistic explanation of the traditions regarding the yugas; but may be intended as nothing more than a hyperbolical expression of the good or bad effects of a king's more or less active discharge of his duties:

Sānti-parva, 2674. *Kālo vā kāraṇam rājno rājā vā kāla-kāraṇam | iti te sāṁsayo mā bhūd rājā kalasya kāraṇam | danda-nītyāṁ yadā rājā samyak kārtṣṇyena varttate | tadā kṛita-yugam nāma kāla-srīshṭam pravarttate |* 2682. *Danda-nītyāṁ yadā rājā trin amśān anuvarttate | chaturtham amśam utsṛiyya tadā tretā pravarttate |* 2684. *Ard-dham tyaktvā yadā rājā nīty-artham anuvarttate | tatas tu dvāparāṁ nāma sa kālaḥ sampravarttate |* 2686. *Danda-nītim parityajya yadā kārtṣṇyena bhūmipah | prajāḥ kliśnāty ayogena pravartteta tadā kaliḥ |* 2693. *Rājā kṛita-yuga-srashṭā tretāyā dvāparasya cha | yugasya cha chaturthasya rājā bhavati kāraṇam |*

"2674. The time is either the cause of the king, or the king is the cause of the time. Do not doubt (which of these alternatives is true): the king is the cause of the time. When a king occupies himself fully in criminal justice, then the Kṛita age, brought into existence by time,

²⁷⁵ It does not appear clearly whether we are to suppose them to have been produced in the Kṛita, or in the Tretā, as in the passage of the Rāmāyaṇa, quoted in page 119.

prevails." [Then follows a description of the results of such good government: righteousness alone is practised; prosperity reigns; the seasons are pleasant and salubrious; longevity is universal; no widows are seen; and the earth yields her increase without cultivation.]

"2682. When the king practises criminal justice only to the extent of three parts, abandoning the fourth, then the Tretā prevails." [Then evil is introduced to the extent of a fourth, and the earth has to be tilled.]

"2684. When the king administers justice with the omission of a half, then the period called the Dvāpara prevails." [Then evil is increased to a half, and the earth even when tilled yields only half her produce.]

"2686. When, relinquishing criminal law altogether, the king actively oppresses his subjects, then the Kali age prevails." [Then the state of things, which existed in the Kṛita age, is nearly reversed.] "2693. The king is the creator of the Kṛita, Tretā, and Dvāpara ages, and the cause also of the fourth yuga."

The next extract is on the same subject of the duties of a king, and on the yugas as forms of his action (see Manu, ix. 301, quoted above, p. 49):

Sūnti-parvan, 3406. *Karma sūdre krishir vaiśye danda-nātiś cha rājani | abrahmacharyyaṁ tapo mantrāḥ satyāṁ chāpi drijātishu | teshāṁ yaḥ kshattriyo veda vastrāṇām iva sodhanam²⁷⁶ | śīla-doshān vinirhartum sa pitā sa prajāpatih | kṛitaṁ tretā dvāparaṁ cha kaliś Bharatarshabha | rāja-vṛittāni sarvāni rājaiva yugam uchyate | chāturvarṇyām tathā vedāś chāturāśramyam eva cha | sarvam prāmūlyate, hy etad yadā rājā prāmādyati |*

"3406. Labour (should be found) in a Sūdra, agriculture in a Vaiśya, criminal justice in a King, continence, austere fervour, and the use of sacred texts in a Brāhmaṇa. The Kshattriya, who knows how to separate their good and bad qualities, (as (a washerman) understands the cleansing of clothes), is a father and lord of his subjects. The Kṛita, Tretā, Dvāpara, and Kali, are all modes of a King's action. It is a King who is called by the name of Yuga. The four castes, the Vedas, and the four orders, are all thrown into disorder when the king is regardless."

²⁷⁶ This comparison is more fully expressed in a preceding verse (3404): *Yo na janāti nirhartitum vasitānām rājako snalam | raktānām vā sodhayitūm yathā nāsti tathāiva suḥ |*

In two of the preceding passages different colours are represented as characteristic either of particular castes (Sānti-p. verses 6934 ff.), or of particular yugas (Vana-p. verses 11241 ff.). Colours (though not ranked in the same order of goodness) are similarly connected with moral and physical conditions in verses 10058 ff. of the Sāntiparvan, of which I shall offer a few specimens :

Shad jīva-varṇūḥ paramam pramāṇāṁ kṛishno dhūmro nīlam athāsyā madhyam | raktam punah sahyatarañ sukhāṁ tu hāridra-varṇam susukhāṁ cha śuklam | parantu śuklam vimalāṁ viśokaṁ gata-klamāṁ siddhyati dānavendra | gatvā tu yoni-prabhavāñi daitya sahasraśā siddhim upaiti jīrak | 10060. . . . Gatiḥ punar varṇa-kṛita prajānāṁ varṇas tathā kāla-kṛito 'surendra | 10062. Krishṇasya varṇasya gatir nikṛishṭā sa sajate narake pachyamānah |

" 10058. Six colours of living creatures are of principal importance, black, dusky, and blue which lies between them; then red is more tolerable, yellow is happiness, and white is extreme happiness. White is perfect, being exempted from stain, sorrow, and exhaustion; (possessed of it) a being going through (various) births, arrives at perfection in a thousand forms. 10060. . . . Thus destination is caused by colour, and colour is caused by time. . . . 10062. The destination of the black colour is bad. When it has produced its results, it clings to hell."

The next passage, from the Harivanśa, assigns to each of the four castes a separate origin, but at the same time gives an explanation of their diversity which differs from any that we have yet encountered: unless, indeed, any one is prepared to maintain that the four principles, out of which the castes are here represented to have arisen, are respectively identical with the mouth, arms, thighs, and feet of Brāhmā! This passage, however, corresponds with one of those already quoted in associating different colours with the several castes. The question with which the passage opens refers to an account which had been given in the preceding section (verses 11799 ff.) of the creation of

and Angiras, to both of whom the epithet "progenitor of Brāhma- mans" (*brahma-vāṁsa-kara*) is applied. No mention is made there of Kshattriyas or any other castes. M. Langlois, the French translator of the Harivanśa, remarks that the distinction between the age of the Brāhmans and that of the Kshattriyas is an unusual one, and receives

no explanation in the context. But in two of the passages which have been quoted above (1) from the Uttara Kāṇḍa of the Rāmāyaṇa, chapter 74 (p. 119), and (2) from the Bhishma-parva of the Mahābhārata, verses 393 ff. (p. 149), I think we find indications that the Kṛita Yuga was regarded as an age in which Brāhmans alone existed, and that Kshattriyas only began to be born in the Tretā.

Harivāṁśa, 11808. *Janameya uvācha | Srutam brahma-yugam brahma-nugānām prathamañ yugam | kshattrasyāpi yugam brahmaṇ śrotum ičchāmi tattvataḥ | sāsaṁskhepañ savistarañ niyamaiḥ bahubhiḥ chitam | upāya-jnaiś cha kathitāñ kratubhiḥ chopaśobhitam | Vaiśampāyanā uvācha | 11810. Etat te kathayishyāmi yajna-karmabhir architam | dāra-dharmaiś cha vividhaiḥ prajābhiḥ upaśobhitam | te 'ngushṭha-mātrā munayah ādattāḥ sūrya-raśmibhiḥ | moksha-prāptena vidhinā nirābhādhena karmanā | praritte chāprarritte cha nityam Brahma-parāyanāḥ | parāyanasya sangamyā Brahmaṇas tu mahīpate | śrī-vrittāḥ pāvanāś chaiva brāhmaṇāś cha mahīpate | chārita-brahmacharyyāś cha brahma-jnānenā bodhitāḥ | pūrñe yuga-sahasrānte prabhāve pralayāñ gataḥ | brāhmaṇā vritta-sampannā jnāna-siddhāḥ samāhitāḥ | 11815. Vyatirik-tendriyo Vishṇur yogātmā brahma-sambhavah | Dakshaḥ prajāpatir bhūtvā srijate ripulāḥ prajāḥ | aksharād brāhmaṇāḥ saumyāḥ ksharāt kshatriya-bāndhavāḥ | vaiśyā vikārataś chaiva sūdrāḥ dhūma-vikārataḥ | śveta-lohitakair varṇaiḥ pitair nīlaiś cha brāhmaṇāḥ | abhinirvartitāḥ varṇāmāś chintayānena Vishṇunā | tato varṇatvam āpannāḥ prajā loke chaturvidhāḥ | brāhmaṇāḥ kshattriyā vaiśyāḥ sūdrāś chaiva mahīpate | eka-lingāḥ prithag-dharmā dvipādāḥ paramādbhutāḥ | yātanayā 'bhisaṁpannā gati-jnāḥ sarva-karmasu | trayāñām varṇa-jātānām veda-proktāḥ kriyāḥ smṛitāḥ | tena brāhmaṇa-yogena vaishṇavena mahīpate | prajnayā tejasā yogāt tasmāt Prāchetasaḥ prabhuḥ | Vishṇur eva mahāyogi karmanām antarañ gataḥ | tato nirvāṇa-sambhūtāḥ sūdrāḥ karma-vivarjītāḥ | tasmād nārhanti saṁskāram na hy atra brahma vidyate | yathā 'gnau dhūma-sanghāto hy aranyā mathyamānayā | prādurbhūto visarpan vai nopayujyati karmani | evaṁ sūdrā visarpanto bhūvi kārṣṇyena janmanā | na saṁskritena²⁷ dhārmena veda-proktena karmanā |*

"Janamejaya says: 11808. I have heard, o Brāhmaṇa, the (description of the) Brahma Yuga, the first of the ages. I desire also to be accurately informed, both summarily and in detail, about the age of the

²⁷ The printed text reads nāsaṁskritena; but na saṁskritena seems necessary.

Kshattriyas, with its numerous observances, illustrated as it was by sacrifices, and described as it has been by men skilled in the art of narration. Vaiśampāyana replied: 11810. I shall describe to you that age revered for its sacrifices and distinguished for its various works of liberality, as well as for its people. Those Munis of the size of a thumb had been absorbed by the sun's rays. Following a rule of life leading to final emancipation, practising unobstructed ceremonies, both in action and in abstinence from action constantly intent upon Brahma, united to Brahma as the highest object,—Brāhmans glorious and sanctified in their conduct, leading a life of continence, disciplined by the knowledge of Brahma,—Brāhmans complete in their observances, perfect in knowledge, and contemplative,—when at the end of a thousand yugas, their majesty was full, these Munis became involved in the dissolution of the world. 11815. Then Vishṇu sprung from Brahma, removed beyond the sphere of sense, absorbed in contemplation, became the Prajāpati Daksha, and formed numerous creatures. The Brāhmans, beautiful (or, dear to Soma),²⁷⁸ were formed from an imperishable (*akṣara*), the Kshattriyas from a perishable (*kshara*), element, the Vaiśyas from alteration, the Sūdras from a modification of smoke. While Vishṇu was thinking upon the castes (*varṇān*), Brāhmans were formed with white, red, yellow, and blue colours (*varṇaiḥ*).²⁷⁹ Hence in the world men have become divided into castes, being of four descriptions, Brāhmans, Kshattriyas, Vaiśyas, and Sūdras, one in form, distinct in their duties, two-footed, very wonderful, full of energy(?), skilled in expedients in all their occupations. 11820. Rites are declared to be prescribed by the Vedas for the three (highest) castes. By that contemplation practised by the being sprung from Brahma (see v. 11815)—by that practised in his character as Vishṇu,—the Lord Prāchetasa (Daksha), i.e. Vishṇu the great contemplator (*yogin*), passed through his wisdom and energy from that state of meditation into the sphere of works.²⁸⁰ Next the Sūdras, produced from extinction, are destitute

²⁷⁸ In verse 11802, we read *abhisichya tu Somaṁ cha yauvarōjye Pitāmahah | brāhmaṇānāṁ cha rājānāṁ sāsvataṁ rajanī-charam |* “Brahmā also inaugurated Soma as the heir to the kingdom, as the king of the Brāhmans who walks eternally through the night.”

²⁷⁹ This play upon the two senses of the word *varṇa* will be noticed.

²⁸⁰ I do not profess to be certain that I have succeeded in discovering the proper meaning of this last sentence.

of rites. Hence they are not entitled to be admitted to the purificatory ceremonies, nor does sacred science belong to them. Just as the cloud of smoke which rises from the fire on the friction of the fuel, and is dissipated, is of no service in the sacrificial rite, so too the Sūdras wandering over the earth, are altogether (useless for purposes of sacrifice) owing to their birth, their mode of life devoid of purity and their want of the observances prescribed in the Veda."

The next extract gives an account at variance with all that precedes, as it does not assign to all the Brāhmans themselves the same origin, but describes the various kinds of officiating priests as having been formed from different members of Vishṇu's body :

Harivāṁśa, 11355. *Evaṁ ekārṇave bhūte śete loke mahādyutiḥ | prabhādyā salilāṁ sarrām Harir Nārāyaṇaḥ prabhuḥ | mahato rājaso madhye mahārṇava-samasya rai | virajasko mahābhāhur aksharam brāhmaṇā viduh | ātma-rūpa-prakāśena tapasā saṁritāḥ prabhuḥ | trikam āchādyā kālāṁ tu tataḥ sushrāpa sas tadā | purusho yajna ity evāṁ yat param parikīrtitam | yach chānyat purushākhyāṁ tu tat sarrām purushottamaḥ | ye cha yajnaparā vīprā ritivijā iti sanjnītāḥ | ātma-dehāt purā bhūtā yajnebhyaḥ śrūyatāṁ tadā | 11360. Brahmāṇam paramāṁ vakraṁ udgātāraṁ cha sāma-gāṁ | hotāraṁ atha chādhvaryyūṁ bāhubhyāṁ asrīyat prabhuḥ | brāhmaṇo brāhmaṇatvāch cha prastotāraṁ cha sarrāsaḥ | tam maitrāvaruṇam śrīshṭrā pratishṭhātāram eva cha | udarāt pratiharttāram potāraṁ chaiva Bhārata | achārākam atherubhyāṁ neshṭāraṁ chaiva Bhārata | pāṇibhyāṁ athachāgnidhram brahmaṇyāṁ chaiva yajniyam | grāvāṇam atha bāhubhyāṁ unnetāraṁ cha yājnikam | evam eraisha bhagavān shoḍāśaitān jagatpatiḥ | pravaktrīn sarrā-yajnānāṁ ritvijo 'srijad uttamān | tad esha rai yajnamayaḥ purusho veda-saṁjnītāḥ | vedāś cha tanmayāḥ sarve sāṅgopanishada-kriyāḥ |*

Vaisampāyana said : 1135. "Thus the glorious Lord Hari Nārāyaṇa, covering the entire waters, slept on (the world) which had become one sea, in the midst of the vast expanse of fluid²⁸¹ (*rajas*), resembling a mighty ocean, himself free from passion (*virajaskah*), with mighty arms.—Brāhmans know him as the undecaying. Invested through austere fervour with the light of his own form, and clothed with triple time (past, present, and future), the Lord then slept. Purushottama

²⁸¹ *Rajas* is said in two places of the Nirukta, iv. 19, and x. 44, to have the sense of "water."

(Vishnu) is whatever is declared to be the highest, Purusha the sacrifice, and everything else which is known by the name of Purusha. Hear how the Brāhmans devoted to sacrifice, and called *ṛitvījēs*, were formerly produced by him from his own body for offering sacrifices. 11360. The Lord created from his mouth the brāhmaṇa, who is the chief, and the udgātri, who chaunts the Sāman; from his arms the hotri and the adhvaryu. He then²⁸² created the prastotri, the maitrāvaraṇa, and the pratishṭhātri; from his belly the pratiharttri and the potri, from his thighs the achhāvaka and the neshtri, from his hands the grāvan and the sacrificial brahmanyā, from his arms the grāvan and the sacrificial unnetri. Thus did the divine Lord of the world create these sixteen excellent *ṛitvījēs*, the utterers of all sacrifices. Therefore this Purusha is formed of sacrifice and is called the Veda; and all the Vedas with the Vedāngas, Upanishads, and ceremonies, are formed of his essence."

SECT. XII.—*Extracts from the Bhāgavata Purāna on the same subject.*

I will conclude my quotations from the Purāṇas on the subject of the origin of mankind and of castes with a few passages from the Bhāgavata Purāṇa. The first extract reproduces some of the ideas of the Purusha Sūkta²⁸³ more closely than any of the Puranic accounts yet given.

ii. 5, 34. *Varsha-pūga-sahasrānte tad andam udake śayam | kāla-karma-svabhāva-stho jīvo jīvam ajīvayat |* 35. *Sa eva Purushas tasmād andam nirbheda nigrataḥ; sahasrorv-anghri-būhv-akshah sahasrānanaśirshavān |* 36. *Yasyehārayavair lokān kalpayanti maniṣināḥ | katy-*

²⁸² I am unable to make a proper sense out of the words *brahmaṇo brāhmaṇatvāch oha*, which, however, as I learn from Dr. FitzEdward Hall, are found (with only a difference of long and short vowels) in the best MSS. to which he has access, as well as in the Bombay edition. One of the sixteen priests, the Brāhmaṇāchhaṇḍin, is not found in the enumeration, and his name may therefore have stood at the beginning of the line. Instead of the inept reading *sarvāśah*, at the end, the author may perhaps have written *vakshasāḥ*, "from his chest," as, indeed, one MS. reads in the next line. The Bombay edition reads *prishṭhāt*, "from the back," instead of *śrīshṭvā*.

²⁸³ M. Burnouf remarks in the Preface to the first vol. of his edition of the Bhāgavata, pp. cxxii. ff., on the manner in which its author has gone back to Vedic sources for his materials. The same thing is noticed by Professor Weber, *Indische Studien*, i. 286, note.

ādibhir adhaḥ sapta saptordhvam jaghanādibhiḥ | 37. Purushasya mukham brahma kshatram etasya bāhavah | ūrvor vaiśyo bhagavataḥ padbhyaṁ śūdra ṛyajāyata | 38. Bhūrlokaḥ kalpitah padbhyaṁ bhūvarloko 'ya nābhitaḥ | hṛidā svarloka urasā maharloko mahātmānah |

“34. At the end of many thousand years the living soul which resides in time, action, and natural quality gave life to that lifeless egg floating on the water. 35. Purusha then having burst the egg, issued from it with a thousand thighs, feet, arms, eyes, faces, and heads. 36. With his members the sages fashion the worlds, the seven lower worlds with his loins, etc., and the seven upper worlds with his groin, etc. 37. The Brāhmaṇa (was) the mouth of Purusha, the Kshattriya his arms, the Vaiśya was born from the thighs, the Śūdra from the feet of the divine being. The earth was formed from his feet, the air from his navel; the heaven by the heart, and the maharloka by the breast of the mighty one.”

In the following verse the figurative character of the representation is manifest :

ii. 1, 37. *Brahmānanām kshattrā-bhujo mahātmā vid-ūrur anghrī-śrita-krishna-varṇaḥ |*

“The Brāhmaṇa is his mouth; he is Kshattriya-armed, that great One, Vaiśya-thighed, and has the black caste abiding in his feet.”

The next passage is more in accord with the ordinary representation, though here, too, the mystical view is introduced at the close :

iii. 22, 2. *Brahmā 'srijat eva-mukhato yushmān ātma-parīpsayā | chhandomayas tapo-vidyā-yoga-yuktān alampaṭān | 3. Tat-trāṇāyā-srijach chāsmān doh-sahasrāt sahasra-pāt | hṛidayām tasya hi brahma kshattram angam prachakshate |*

“Brahmā, who is formed of the Veda (*chhandas*), with a view to the recognition of himself, created you (the Brāhmaṇas) who are characterized by austere fervour, science, devotion and chastity, from his mouth. For their protection he, the thousand-footed, created us (the Kshattriyas) from his thousand arms : for they declare the Brāhmaṇa to be his heart, and the Kshattriya his body.”

iii. 6, 29 ff. contains another reference to the production of the castes :

29. *Mukhato 'varttata brahma Purushasya Kurūdvaha | yastūn-mukhatvād varṇānām mukhyo 'bhūd brāhmaṇo guruḥ | 30. Bāhubhyo 'varttata kshattrām kshattriyas tad-anuvrataḥ | yo jātas trāyato varṇān*

paurushah kanṭaka-kshatāt | 31. Viśo 'varttanta tasyorvor loka-vritti-karīr vibhōḥ | vaiśyas tad-udbhavo vārttām nrinām yaḥ samavarttayat | 32. Padbhām bhagavato jajne śuśrūshā dharma-siddhaye | tasyām jātāḥ purā śūdra yad-vrittyā tushyate Hariḥ | 33. Ete varṇāḥ sva-dharmena yajanti sva-guruṁ Harim | śraddhayā "tma-viśuddhyarthām yaj jātāḥ saha vrīttibhiḥ |

"29. From the mouth of Purusha, o descendant of Kuru, issued divine knowledge (*brahma*), and the Brāhmaṇa, who through his production from the mouth became the chief of the castes and the preceptor. 30. From his arms issued kingly power (*kshattra*), and the Kshattriya devoted to that function, who, springing from Purusha, as soon as born defends the castes from the injury of enemies. 31. From the thighs of the Lord issued the arts,²⁸⁴ affording subsistence to the world; and from them was produced the Vaiśya who provided the maintenance of mankind. 32. From the feet of the divine Being sprang service for the fulfilment of duty. In it the Śūdra was formerly born, with whose function Hari is well satisfied. By fulfilling their own duties, with faith, for the purification of their souls, these castes worship Hari their parent, from whom they have sprung together with their functions."

In viii. 5, 41, we find the following:

Vipro mukhād brahma cha yasya guhyaṁ rājanya āśid bhujayor balaṁ cha | ūrvor viḍ ojo 'nghrir areda-śūdrau prasīdatām nah sa mahā-vibhūtiḥ |

"May that Being of great glory be gracious to us, from whose mouth sprang the Brāhmaṇa and the mysterious Veda, from whose arms came the Rājanya and force, from whose thighs issued the Viś and energy, and whose foot is no-veda (*areda*) and the Śūdra."

The same work gives the following very brief account of the *Arvāk-srotas* creation, which is described with somewhat more detail in the passages extracted above from the Vishṇu and Vāyu Purāṇas:

iii. 20, 25. *Arvāk-srotas tu naramaḥ kshattar eka-vidho nrinām | rajo 'dhikāḥ karma-parāḥ duḥkhō cha sukha-māninaḥ |*

²⁸⁴ The word so rendered is *viśaḥ*, which in the hymns of the Rig-veda has always the sense of "people." Here, however, it seems to have the sense assigned in the text, if one may judge from the analogy of the following verse, in which the Śūdra is said to be produced from his special function, *śuśrūshā*, "service." The Commentator explains *viśaḥ* = *kṛishy-ādi-vyavasāyāḥ*, "the professions of agriculture," etc.

"The Arvaksrotas creation was of one description,²³⁵ viz., of men, in whom the quality of passion abounded, who were addicted to works, and imagined that in pain they experienced pleasure."

In vi. 6, 40, a new account is given of the origin of mankind. We are there told :

Aryamānō Mātṛikā patnī tayoś Charshāṇayaḥ sutāḥ | yatra rai mā-nushī jātir Brahmanā chopakalpitā |

"The wife of Aryaman (the son of Aditi) was Mātṛikā. The Charshāṇis were the sons of this pair, and among them the race of men was formed by Brahmā." The word *charshāṇi* signifies "men," or "people" in the Veda.

In the following verse (which forms part of the legend of Purūravas, quoted in the 3rd vol. of this work, pp. 27 ff.) it is declared that in the Kṛita age there was only one caste :

ix. 14, 48. *Eka eva purā vedāḥ prāṇaraḥ sarva-vāñmayāḥ | devo Nārāyaṇo nānya eko 'gnir varṇa eva cha | Purūravasa evāśit trayī tretā-mukhe nrīpa |*

"There was formerly but one Veda, the *prāṇara* (the monosyllable *Om*), the essence of all speech; only one god, Nārāyaṇa, one Agni, and (one) caste. From Purūravas came the triple Veda, in the beginning of the Tretā."

Some of the Commentator's remarks on this text will be found in vol. iii. p. 29. He says the one caste was called "Hansa" (*varṇaś cha eka era haṁso nāma*), and concludes his note by remarking : "The meaning is this: In the Kṛita age when the quality of goodness predominated in men, they were almost all absorbed in meditation; but in the Tretā, when passion prevailed, the method of works was manifested by the division of the Vedas, etc."

²³⁵ The Sāṅkhyā Kārikā, 53, says: *ashṭa-vikalpa daivās tairyoggyonyas cha paṇ-chadhā bhavati mānushyas chaika-vidhāḥ saṁśāto bhautikāḥ sargāḥ*; which is thus translated by Mr. Colebrooke (in Wilson's Sāṅkhyā Kārikā, p. 164): "The divine kind is of eight sorts; the grovelling is five-fold; mankind is single in its class. This, briefly, is the world of living beings." The Commentator Gaudapāda shortly explains the words *mānushyas chaikavidhāḥ* by *mānushayonir ekaiva*, "the source of production of mankind is one only." Vijnāna Bhikshu, the Commentator on the Sāṅkhyā Pravachana, iii. 46, paraphrases the same words thus, *mānushya-sargas chaika-prakāraḥ*, "the human creation is of one sort."

SECT. XIII.—*Results of this Chapter.*

The details which I have supplied in the course of this chapter must have rendered it abundantly evident that the sacred books of the Hindus contain no uniform or consistent account of the origin of castes; but, on the contrary, present the greatest varieties of speculation on this subject. Explanations mystical, mythical, and rationalistic, are all offered in turn; and the freest scope is given by the individual writers to fanciful and arbitrary conjecture.

First: we have the set of accounts in which the four castes are said to have sprung from progenitors who were separately created; but in regard to the manner of their creation we find the greatest diversity of statement. The most common story is that the castes issued from the mouth, arms, thighs, and feet of Purusha, or Brahmā. The oldest extant passage in which this idea occurs, and from which all the later myths of a similar tenor have no doubt been borrowed, is, as we have seen, to be found in the Purusha Sūkta; but it is doubtful whether, in the form in which it is there presented, this representation is anything more than an allegory. In some of the texts which I have quoted from the Bhāgavata Purāṇa, traces of the same allegorical character may be perceived; but in Manu and the Puranas the mystical import of the Vedic text disappears, and the figurative narration is hardened into a literal statement of fact. In other passages, where a separate origin is assigned to the castes, they are variously said to have sprung from the words Bhūḥ, Bhuvah, Svah; from different Vedas; from different sets of prayers; from the gods, and the asuras; from nonentity (pp. 17–21), and from the imperishable, the perishable, and other principles (Harivamśa, 11816). In the chapters of the Vishṇu, Vāyu, and Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇas, where castes are described as coeval with the creation, and as having been naturally distinguished by different gunas, or qualities, involving varieties of moral character, we are nevertheless allowed to infer that those qualities exerted no influence on the classes in whom they were inherent, as the condition of the whole race during the Kṛita age is described as one of uniform perfection and happiness; while the actual separation into castes did

not take place, according to the *Vāyu Purāṇa*, until men had become deteriorated in the Tretā age.

Second : in various passages from the Brāhmaṇas, Epic poems, and Puranas, the creation of mankind is, as we have seen, described without the least allusion to any separate production of the progenitors of the four castes (pp. 23-27, and elsewhere). And whilst in the chapters where they relate the distinct formation of the castes, the Puranas, as has been observed, assign different natural dispositions to each class, they elsewhere represent all mankind as being at the creation uniformly distinguished by the quality of passion. In one of the texts I have quoted (p. 26 f.) men are said to be the offspring of Vivasvat; in another his son Manu is said to be their progenitor; whilst in a third they are said to be descended from a female of the same name. The passage which declares Manu to have been the father of the human race explicitly affirms that men of all the four castes were descended from him. In another remarkable text the Mahābhārata categorically asserts that originally there was no distinction of classes, the existing distribution having arisen out of differences of character and occupation. Similarly, the Bhāgavata Purāṇa in one place informs us that in the Kṛita age there was but one caste; and this view appears also to be taken in some passages which I have adduced from the Epic poems.

In these circumstances we may fairly conclude that the separate origination of the four castes was far from being an article of belief universally received by Indian antiquity.

I shall now proceed to enquire what opinion the writers of the older Vedic hymns appear to have entertained in regard to the origin of the race to which they themselves belonged.

CHAPTER II.

TRADITION OF THE DESCENT OF THE INDIAN RACE FROM MANU.¹

It appears from the considerations urged in the preceding chapter that in all probability the Purusha Sūkta belongs to the most recent portion of the Rig-veda Sanhitā, and that it is at least doubtful whether the verse in which it connects the four castes with the different members of the creator's body is not allegorical. And we have seen that even if that representation is to be taken as a literal account of the creation of the different classes, it cannot, in the face of many other statements of a different tenor, and of great antiquity, be regarded as expressing the fixed belief of the writers of the period immediately succeeding the collection of the hymns in regard to the origin of the social divisions which prevailed in their own time. But the notions entertained of the origin of caste at the date of the Purusha Sūkta, whatever they may have been, will afford no criterion of the state of opinion on the same subject in an earlier age; and it therefore remains to enquire whether those hymns of the Rig-veda, which appear to be the most ancient, contain either (1) any tradition regarding the origin of mankind, or of the Indian tribes; or (2) any allusion to the existence, in the community contemporary with their composition, of separate classes corresponding to those afterwards known as Brāhmans, Kshattriyas, Vaiśyas, and S'ūdras; and if they embrace any reference of the latter kind, whether they afford any explanation of the manner in which these orders of men came to occupy their respective positions

¹ On the subjects treated in this chapter compare my article in the Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society, vol. xx. for 1863, pp. 406 ff., where a reference is made to the other writers who had previously treated of them, such as M. Nève, *Mythe des Ribhavas, etc.*

in society. We shall find on examination that the hymns supply some information on both these branches of enquiry.

Numerous references are undoubtedly to be found in all parts of the hymn-collection to a variety of ranks, classes, and professions; of which an account will be given in the next chapter; but no hint is anywhere discoverable, except in the single text of the Purusha Sūkta, of those classes being distinguished from each other by any original difference of race. If, however, the early Vedic Indians had all along believed in the quadruple production of their nation from the different members of Purusha, one might naturally have expected to find allusions to such a variety of birth running through the hymns. But nothing, I repeat, of this kind is to be traced. On the contrary it appears from a considerable number of passages that at least the superior ranks of the community were regarded as being of one stock, the Aryan, and as having one common ancestor. This chapter will therefore embrace, First, the texts which are found in the hymns regarding the origin of the Indian tribes, and the history of their progenitor, and Secondly those passages which occur in the Brāhmaṇas, and other later works in which the statements of the early Vedic poets on these subjects are re-echoed or developed.

SECT. I.—*Manu as the progenitor of the Āryan Indians and the institutor of religious rites according to the Hymns of the Rig-veda.*

In this section I shall first quote the texts which allude to Manu as father (which must of course be understood to designate him as the actual human progenitor of the authors of the hymns, and of the bulk of the people to whom they addressed themselves); and then adduce those which speak of him as the institutor of religious rites, or as the object of divine protection.

(1) The following texts are of the first class :

i. 80, 16. *Yām Atharvā Manush pītā Dadhyāñ dhiyam atnata | tasmin brahmāni pūrvathā Indre ukthā samagmata |*

“Prayers and hymns were formerly congregated in that Indra, in the ceremony which Atharvan, father Manu, and Dadhyanch celebrated.”*

* This verse is quoted in the Nirukta, xii. 34, where the words *Manush pītā*,

i. 114, 2. *Yat śām̄ cha yoś cha Manur āyeje pitā tad aśyāma tard Rudra pranītishu |*

“ Whatever prosperity or succour father Manu obtained by sacrifice, may we gain all that under thy guidance, O Rudra.”

ii. 33, 13. *Yā vo bheshajā Marutah śuchinī yā śantamā vrishano yā mayobhū | yāni Manur avrīnīta pitā nah tā śām̄ cha yoś cha Rudrasya vaśmi |*

“ Those pure remedies of yours, O Maruts, those which are most auspicious, ye vigorous gods, those which are beneficent, those which our³ father Manu chose, those, and the blessing and succour of Rudra, I desire.”

viii. 52, 1 (Sāma-veda, i. 355). *Sa pūrryo mahānām veno kratubhir ānaje | yasya drārā Manush pitā deveshu dhiyah ānaje |*

“ That ancient friend hath been equipped with the powers of the mighty (gods). Father Manu has prepared hymns to him, as portals of access to the gods.”⁴

“ father Manu,” are explained as meaning *Manuscha pitā mānavānām*, “ Manu the father of men.” Sūyana, the Commentator on the Rig-veda, interprets them as meaning *sarevām prajānām pitribhūto Manuscha*, “ Manu the father of all creatures.” In R.V., x. 82, 3, the words “ our father and generator” (*yo nah pitā janitā*), are applied to Visvakarman, the creator of the universe. The word “ father” in the R.V. is often applied to Dyaus, the Sky, and “ mother” to the Earth, as in vi. 51 5. (Compare Journ. Roy. As. Soc. for 1864, pp. 55 ff.) But in these passages it is not necessary to suppose that the words are employed in any other than a figurative sense; although in a hymn to the Earth in the Atharva-veda, xii. 1, we find the following verse (the 15th): *Tvaj-jātas tvayi charanti martyas tvam bibharshi dvipadas tvām chatushpadaḥ | tareme prithivi pancha-mānavāḥ yebhyo jyotir amritam martyebhyah udyan sūryo rāsmibhir ātanoti |* “ Mortals born of thee live on thee: thou supportest both bipeds and quadrupeds. Thine, o Earth, are these five races of men, these mortals on whom the sun rising, sheds undying light with his rays;”— where it might almost appear as if the poet meant to represent mankind as actually generated by the earth. Brihaspati (iv. 50, 6; vi. 73, 1) and the other gods, as Indra, are called “ father,” or compared to fathers (vii. 52, 3); as are Rudra, vi. 49, 10; and the Rishi, R.V., x. 81, 1; x. 82, 1, 3, 4. S. P. Br., i. 5, 3, 2, has *Prajāpatau pitari*; and Taitt. Br. iii. 9, 22, 1, *Prajāpatim pitaram*. In both the last places Prajāpati is referred to as the father of the gods.

³ It is to be observed that while in the two preceding passages Manu is styled merely “ father Manu,” he is here called “ our father Manu” (*Manuh pitā nah*).

⁴ I am indebted to Professor Aufrecht for the above translation of this, to me, obscure verse. Sūyana explains it thus: *Sa pūrvyo mukhyo mahānām pūjyānām yajamānānām kratubhīk karmabhir nimittabhūtair venah kāntas teshām havīk kāmāyamūnaḥ ānayo ūgachhati | yasyendrasya dvārā dvārāṇī prāptyupāyāni dhiyah karmanyā deveshu eteshu madhye pitā sarveshām pālako Manur ānaje prāpa | ānajīb prāpti-*

The sense of the next text is less clear, but it appears at least to allude to the common designation of Manu as a father:

x. 100, 5. *Yajno Manuḥ pramatir nah pitā hi kam |*

“Sacrifice is Manu, our protecting father.”

The following verse, according to the Commentator at least, speaks of the *paternal* or *ancestral* path of Manu. Professor Aufrecht thinks it need not mean more than the ancestral human path:

viii. 30. 3. *Te nas trādhram te arata te u no adhi rochata | mā nah pathaḥ pitryād mānarād adhi dūram naishṭa parāvataḥ |*

“Do ye (gods) deliver, protect, and intercede for us; do not lead us far away from the paternal path of Manu.⁵

As in the preceding passages Manu is spoken of as the progenitor of the worshippers, so in the following the same persons may perhaps be spoken of as his descendants, although it is also true that the phrases employed may be merely equivalent to “children of men.”

i. 68, 4. *Hotā nishatto Manor apatye sa chit nu āśām patiḥ rayinām |*

“He (Agni) who abides among the offspring of Manu as the invoker (of the gods), is even the lord of these riches.”⁶

karmā | “This chief one, in consequence of the rites of the venerable sacrificers, desiring their oblation, comes,—he (Indra) as means of attaining whom Manu the preserver of all has obtained rites among these gods.” Professor Benfey renders the verse, where it occurs in the Sāma-veda, thus: “He is the chief of the rich, through works the dear one enlightens him, whose doors father Manu has, and illuminates observances towards the gods.” From Prof. Benfey’s note to the passage (p. 230) it appears that the Commentator on the Sāma-veda explains *ānaje* by *vyaktikaroti ātmānam*, “makes himself distinct” (herein differing from Sūyana), Manu by *jñātā sarvasya = Indraḥ*, “the knower of all, Indra,” and *ānaje*, where it occurs the second time, by *āgamayati*, “causes to come.” Such are the differences of opinion regarding the interpretation of some parts of the hymns.

On this verse Sāyana comments thus: *Sarveshām Manuḥ pitā tataḥ āgatāt | parāvataḥ | pitā Manur dūram mārgam chakre | tasmat̄ patho mūrgat̄ no asmān mā naishṭa mā nayata | apanayanam mā kuruta ity arthaḥ | sarvadā brahmacharyyagnihotrādi-karmāni yena mārgena bhavanti tam eva asmān nayata | kintu dūram ya etad-vyatirikto vīprakrishṇo mārgo ‘sti tasmat̄ adhi adhikam ity arthaḥ asmān apanayata |* “‘Of Manu’ means, come from Manu who is the father of all. ‘Distant:’ Father Manu journeyed along a distant path. Do not lead us away from that path. Lead us along that path in which continence, the agnihotra sacrifice, and other duties have always been practised. But lead us away from the distant path which is different from that.”

The Commentator here explains “the offspring of Manu” as offspring or creatures in the form of worshippers (*yajamāna-varūpāyām prajāyām*); and adds that according to a Brāhmaṇa “creatures are sprung from Manu” (“*Mānavyo hi prajāḥ*”

iii. 3, 6. *Agnir devebhir manushaścha jantubhis tanvāno yajnam puru-
peśasam dhiyā |*

“Agni, together with the gods, and the children (*jantubhīḥ*) of Manush, celebrating a multiform sacrifice with hymns,” etc.

In the following texts reference is made to the *people* of Manu, the word for “people” being *viś*, from which *vaiśya*, “a man of the people,” is derived:

iv. 37, 1. *Upa no Vājāḥ adhvaram Ribukshāḥ devāḥ yāta pathibhir
devayānaiḥ | yathā yajnam manusho vikshu āsu dadhidre rāvāḥ sudine-
shu ahnām |*

“Ye gods, Vājas, and Ribukshans, come to our sacrifice by the path travelled by the gods, that ye, pleasing deities, may institute a sacrifice among these people of Manush (*Manusho vikshu*) on auspicious days.”

vi. 14, 2. *Agnim hotāram īlate yajneshu manusho viśāḥ |*

“The people of Manush praise in the sacrifices Agni the invoker.”

viii. 23, 13. *Yad rai ī viśpatiḥ śitāḥ suprīto manusho viśi | viśrā id
Agniḥ prati rakshāñsi sedhati |*

“Whenever Agni, lord of the people,⁷ kindled, abides gratified among the people of Manush, he repels all Rakshases.”

(2.) From the preceding texts it appears that the authors of the hymns regarded Manu as the progenitor of their race. But (as is clear from many other passages) they also looked upon him as the first person by whom the sacrificial fire had been kindled, and as the institutor of the ceremonial of worship; though the tradition is not always consistent on this subject. In one of the verses already quoted (i. 80, 16) Manu is mentioned in this way, along with Atharvan and *iti hi brāhmaṇam*). Yūska (Nir. iii. 7) gives the following derivations of the word *manushya*, “man:” *Manushyāḥ kasmāt | matvā karmāṇi sīvanti | manasyāmāna
śrīṣṭāḥ . . . | Manor apatyam Manusho vā |* “From what are men (named)? Because after reflection they sew together works; (or) because they were created by one who reflected (or, according to Durga, “rejoiced”) . . . (or) because they are the offspring of Manu, or Manush.”

⁷ *Viśpati*. Compare vi. 48, 8, where it is said: *viśvāśām grihapatir viśām asi
tvam Agne mānushinam |* “Agni, thou art the master of the house of all human people (or, people sprung from Manush);” and x. 80, 6, *Agnim viśāḥ īlate mānushīr
yāḥ Agnim Manusho Nahusho vi jātāḥ |* “Human people (or, people descended from Manush) praise Agni: (people) sprung from Manush, from Nahush, (praise) Agni.” Or if *manushāḥ* be the nom. plur. the last clause will run thus. “men sprung from Nahush (praise) Agni.”

Dadhyanch, as having celebrated religious rites in ancient times. The following further passages refer to him as a kindler of fire, and offerer of oblations :

i. 36, 19. *Ni tvām Agne Manur dadhe jyotir janēya śāśvate |*

“ Manu has placed (or ordained) thee, Agni, a light to all the people.”

i. 76, 5. *Yathā vīprasya Manusho havirbhīr devān ayajah kavibhīḥ kariḥ san | era hotah satyatara tram adya Agne mandrayā juhvā yajasva |*

“ As thou, thyself a sage, didst, with the sages, worship the gods with the oblations of the wise Manush, so to-day, Agni, most true invoker, worship them with a cheerful flame.”

v. 45, 6. *Ā ita dhiyam kṛinārāma sakhāyah . . . ?yāya Manur Viśiśipram jīgāya*

“ Come, friends, let us perform the prayer whereby Manu conquered Viśiśipra

viii. 10. 2. *Yad vā yajnam Manave sammimikshathur eva it Kānrasya bodhatam |*

“ Or if ye (Aśvins) sprinkled the sacrifice for Manu, think in like manner of the descendant of Kanva.”

ix. 96, 11. *Trayā hi naḥ pitarah Soma pūrve karmāṇi chakruḥ para-*
māna dhīrāḥ | 12. Yathā apavathāḥ Manave vayodhāḥ amitrahā
varivorid harishmān | era parasva

“ For through thee, O pure Soma, our early fathers, who were wise, performed their rites . . . 12. As thou didst flow clear for Manu, thou upholder of life, destroyer of foes, possessor of wealth, rich in oblations, so (now) flow clear.”

x. 63, 7. *Yebhyo hotrām prathamām āyejā Manuh samiddhūgnir ma-*
nasā sapta hotribhīḥ | tā Ādityā abhayam śarma yachhata

“ O ye Ādityas, to whom Manu, when he had kindled fire, presented along with seven hotri priests the first oblation with a prayer, bestow on us secure protection.”

x. 69, 3. “ *Yat te Manur yad anīkam Sumitraḥ samīdhe Agne tad*
īdam navīyah”⁶ |

⁶ The S'atapatha Brāhmaṇa (i. 4, 2, 5) thus explains the words *deveddho Manividhāḥ* :—*Manividhāḥ iti | Manur hy etam agre aindha | tasnūd āha “ Manividhāḥ” iti |* “ The gods formerly kindled it (fire) : hence it is called ‘ god-kindled.’ Manu formerly kindled it : and hence it is called ‘ kindled by Manu.’ ” The Aitareya Brāhmaṇa (ii. 34), however, explains the word *Manv-iddhāḥ* from the fact that “ men kindle it” (*īmām hi manushyā indhate*).

"That lustre of thine which Manu, which Sumitra, kindled is this same which is now renewed."

In conformity with the preceding texts, the following may be understood as declaring that the sacrificial fire had been first kindled by Manu :

i. 13, 4 (= S.V. ii. 700). *Agne sukhata me rathe devān īlītah ā vaha | asi hotā Manurhitah |*

"O Agni, lauded, bring the gods hither in a most pleasant chariot. Thou art the invoker (of the gods) placed by Manush."⁹

i. 14, 11. *Tvam hotā Manurhito 'gne yajneshu sīdasi | sah imam no adhvaram yaja |*

"Thou, Agni, the invoker placed by Manush, art present at the sacrifices : do thou present this our oblation." (See also R.V. iii. 2, 15.)

vi. 16, 9. *Tvam hotā Manurhitah*

"Thou art the invoker placed by Manush"

viii. 19, 21. *Īle girū Manurhitam yam devā dūtam aratim ni erire | yajishtham harya-vāhanam |*

"With a hymn I laud that adorable bearer of oblations placed by Manush,¹⁰ whom the gods have sent as a ministering messenger."

⁹ The compound word which I have here rendered "placed by Manush" is in the original *Manur-hita*. Professor Aufrecht would render it "given to man," and quotes i. 36, 10, in support of this view. The sense I have given is supported by i. 36, 19, where the same root, *dhā*, from which *hita* (originally *dhita*) comes, is used, joined with the particle *ni*. The same participle *hita* is used in vi. 16, 1, where it is said : *Tvam Agne yajnūnām hotā sareshām hitah | devebhir mānushe Jane |* "Thou, Agni, hast been placed, or ordained, among the race of Manush by the gods as the invoker at all sacrifices." The fact that Agni is here said to have been placed by the gods among the race of Manush does not forbid us to suppose that there are other passages in which, either inconsistently, or from a different point of view, Agni may have been said to be placed by Manu. The compound *manur-hita* occurs also in the following texts, where, however, it has probably the sense of "good for man," viz. : i. 106, 5. *Brihaspate sadam id nah sugaṇ kṛidhi sām yor yat te manur-hitam tad īmaha |* "Brihaspati, do us always good : we desire that blessing and protection of thine which is *good for man*." (Sūyana says that here *manur-hitam* means either "placed in thee by Manu, i.e., Brahmā," or, "favourable to man." Benfey, in loco, renders "destined for man.") vi. 70, 2. *Rājantī asya bhuvanasya rodasī asme retah sinchataṁ yad manur-hitam |* "Heaven and earth, ruling over this world, drop on us that seed which is *good for man*." x. 26, 5. *Rishiḥ sa yo manur-hitah |* "He (Pūshan) who is a rishi *kind to man*," etc. Professor Roth s.v. gives only the latter sense.

¹⁰ Though the word *manur-hita* is here interpreted by Sūyana as meaning "placed by Manu Prajāpati who sacrificed," it might also signify "friendly to men," as Agni is also said to have been sent by the gods.

viii. 34, 8. *Ā tvā hotā Manurhito devatrā vakshad īḍyah |*

“ May the adorable invoker placed by Manu bring thee (Indra) hither among the gods,” etc.

There is also a class of passages in which the example of Manush may be referred to by the phrase *manush-vat*, “like Manush,” or, “as in the case of Manush.”¹¹ Thus in i. 44, 11, it is said:

Ni tvā yajnasya sādhanam Agne hotāram ritvijam manushvad deva dhīmahi |

“ Divine Agni, we, like Manush, place thee, the accomplisher of the sacrifice, the invoker, the priest,” etc.

v. 21, 1. *Manushvat tvā ni dhīmahi Manushvat sam idhīmahi | Agne Manushvad Angiro devān devayate yaja |*

“ Agni, we place thee like Manush, we kindle thee like Manush. Agni, Angiras, worship the gods like Manush, for him who adores them.”

vii. 2, 3. *Manushvad Agṇim Manunā samiddham sam adhvārāya sadam in mahema |*

“ Let us, like Manush, continually invoke to the sacrifice Agni who was kindled by Manu.”

viii. 27, 7. *Suta-somāso Varuna havāmahe Manushvad iddhūgnayah |*

“ We invoke thee, Varuṇa, having poured out soma, and having kindled fire, like Manush.”

viii. 43, 13. *Uta tvā Bṛigurat śuche Manushvad Agne āhuta | Angirrasrad havāmahe | 27. Yam tvā janāsa indhate Manushvad Angirastama | Agne sa bodhi me rachah |*

“ Like Bṛigu, like Manush, like Angiras, we invoke thee, bright Agni, who hast been invoked. 27. Agni, most like to Angiras, whom men kindle like Manush, attend to my words.”

The Satapatha Brāhmaṇa, i. 5, 1, 7, explains thus the word *Manushvat*:¹²—*Manur ha vai agre yajnena īje | tad anukṛitya imāḥ prajāḥ ya-*

¹¹ I should observe that Prof. Aufrecht thinks the phrase—except perhaps with the single exception of viii. 43, 13—means “amongst men.” Prof. Roth gives only the sense “like men,” “as among, or for, men.”

¹² The same work in the same passage thus explains the phrase *Bharata-vat*. “He bears (*bharati*) the oblation to the gods; wherefore men say, Bharata (or ‘the bearer’) is Agni. Or, he is called Bharata (the ‘sustainer’) because, being breath, he sustains these creatures.” This phrase may, however, refer to the example of King Bharata. See Satapatha Brāhmaṇa, xiii. 5, 4, 14.

*jante | tasmād āha “Manush-vad” iti | “Manor yajnah” iti u vai
āhuḥ | tasmād vā iva āhur “Manushvad” iti | “Manu formerly sacri-
ficed with a sacrifice. Imitating this, these creatures sacrifice. He
therefore says, Manushvat, ‘like Manu.’ Or, they say ‘like Manu,’
because men speak of the sacrifice as being Manu’s.”*

It must, however, be admitted that Manu is not always spoken of in the hymns of the first, or only, kindler of fire or celebrator of religious rites. In i. 80, 16, already quoted, Atharvan and Dadhyanch are specified along with him as having offered sacrifice in early times.

In the following verses Atharvan is mentioned as having generated fire :

vi. 16, 13. *Imam tu tyam Atharva-vad Agnim mathanti vedhasaḥ |*

“The wise draw forth this Agni, as Atharvan did.”

vi. 16, 13 (= S. V. i. 9; Vāj. Sanh. xi. 32). *Trām Agne pushkarād
adhy Atharvā nir amanhata | 14. Tam u tvā Dadhyāññ rishih
putraḥ idhe Atharvanah |*

“Agni, Atharvan drew thee forth from the lotus leaf,” etc. 14.
“Thee the rishi Dadhyanch, son of Atharvan, kindled,” etc.

[In the Vājasaneyi Sanhitā, the first of these verses is immediately preceded by the following words (xi. 32): *Atharvā tvā prathamo nir
amanhad Agne |* “Atharvan was the first who drew thee forth,
Agni.”]

Again it is said in the Rig-veda, x. 21, 5. *Agnir jāto Atharvanā
vidad viśvāni kāryā | bhuvad dūto Vivasvataḥ |* “Agni, produced by
Atharvan, knows all wisdom, and has become the messenger of Vi-
vasvata.”

In i. 83, 5, Atharvan is mentioned as the earliest institutor of sacrifice : *Yajnair Atharvā prathamah pathas tate tataḥ sūryo vrata-pāḥ
venaḥ ājani |* “Atharvan was the first who by sacrifices opened up
paths; then the friendly Sun, the upholder of ordinances, was pro-
duced,” etc.: so too in x. 92, 10. *Yajnair Atharvā prathamo vi dhārayad
devā dakshair Bhrigavaḥ sam chikitrire |* “Atharvan, the first, estab-
lished (all things) with sacrifices. The divine Bhrigus co-operated with
their powers.”¹³

¹³ These two texts might, though not very probably, be understood to mean not that Atharvan was the first to employ sacrifice, but to use it for the purpose referred to in the context.

The next texts speak of the Bhṛigus as the institutors of sacrifice by fire :

i. 58, 6. *Dadhus tvā Bhṛigavo mānusheshv ā rayim na chārum suhavam Janebhyah | hotāram Agne |*

“The Bhṛigus have placed thee, o Agni, among men, as an invoker, like a beautiful treasure, and easily invoked for men,” etc.

ii. 4, 2. *Imam vidhanto apām sadasthe dvitā adadhur Bhṛigavo vikshu Āyoh |*

“Worshipping him (Agni) in the receptacle of waters, the Bhṛigus placed him among the people of Āyu.”

x. 46, 2. *Imam vidhanto apām sadasthu paśum na nashṭam padair anugman | guhā chatantam usījo namobhir ichhanto dhīrā Bhṛigaro avindan |*

“Worshipping him in the receptacle of waters, and desiring him with prostrations, the wise and longing Bhṛigus followed him with their steps, like a beast who had been lost, and found him lurking in concealment”¹⁴ (i. 65, 1).

In other places, the gods, as well as different sages, are mentioned as introducing or practising worship by fire, or as bringing down the sacred flame from heaven :

i. 36, 10. *Yam tvā devāso manare dadhur iha yajishṭham haryavāhana | Yam Kanvo Medhyātithir dhanaspritam Yam Vṛishā Yam Upastutah |*

“Thou, o bearer of oblations, whom the gods placed here as an object of adoration to man (or Manu); whom Kanva, whom Medhyātithi, whom Vṛishan, whom Upastuta (have placed) a bringer of wealth,” etc. Compare vi. 16, 1, quoted above, p. 167, note 9.

iii. 5, 10. *Yadī Bhṛigubhyah pari Mātariśvā guhā santañ haryavāham samidhe |*

“When Mātariśvan kindled for the Bhṛigus Agni, the bearer of oblations, who was in concealment.”

x. 46, 9. *Dyāvā Yam Agnim prithivī janishṭām āpas Trashṭā Bhṛigavo Yam sahobhiḥ | īlenyam prathamam Mātariśvā devās tatakshur manave yajatram |*

“Mātariśvan and the gods have made, as the first adorable object of worship to man (or Manu), that Agni whom heaven and earth, whom

¹⁴ In the following passages also the Bhṛigus are mentioned as connected with the worship of Agni: i. 71, 4; i. 127, 7; i. 143, 4; iii. 2, 4; iv. 7, 1; vi. 15, 2; viii. 43, 13; viii. 91, 4; x. 122, 5.

the waters, whom Tvashtṛi, whom the Bhṛigus, have generated by their powers."

In the 8th verse the Āyus, and in the 10th the gods, as well as men, are said to have placed Agni.

In i. 60, 1; i. 93, 6; i. 148, 1; iii. 2, 13; iii. 5, 10; iii. 9, 5; vi. 8, 4, Mātariśvan is again spoken of as the bringer or generator of fire. (Compare note 1, in p. 416, of my article "On Manu the progenitor of the Āryan Indians," in the Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society, vol. **xx.** for 1863.)

But to return to Manu. Although the distinction of having been the first to kindle fire is thus, in various passages, ascribed to Atharvan or the Bhṛigus, this does not disprove the fact that in other places, it is, somewhat inconsistently, assigned to Manu; and none of these other personages is ever brought forward as disputing with Manu the honour of having been the progenitor of the Aryan race. In this respect the Vedic tradition exhibits no variation, except that Yama also seems in some places to be represented as the first man. (See my article in the Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society, for 1865, pp. 287 ff., and especially the words of the Atharva-veda, xviii. 3, 14. *Yo mamāra prathamo martyānām* | "Who (Yama) died first of men.")

(III.) The following passages describe Manu as being the object of special favour or intervention on the part of some of the gods:

i. 112, 16. *Yābhīr narā Sayare yābhīr Atraye yābhīḥ purā Manave gātum iṣhathuh* | *yābhīḥ sārir ājatam Syūmaraśmaye tābhīr u shu īti-*
bhir Aśrinā gatam | 18. *Yabhir Manum śuram iṣhā samāvatam* |

"Come, Aśvins, with those succours, whereby, o heroes, ye effected deliverance for Sayu, for Atri, and formerly for Manu, whereby ye shot arrows for Syūmaraśmi. 18. whereby ye preserved the hero Manu with food."¹⁶

viii. 15, 5. *Yena jyotiṁshi Āyave Manave cha riveditha* | *mandāno asya barhisho vi rājasī* |

"Exulting in this (exhilaration), wherewith thou didst make known the luminaries to Āyu, and to Manu, thou art lord of the sacrificial grass."

¹⁶ This passage, as far as it concerns Manu, is thus explained by Sāyana: "And with those succours, whereby ye made a path, a road which was the cause of escape from poverty, by sowing barley and other kinds of grain, etc., for Manu, the royal hi of that name; according to another text" (i. 117, 21).

When compared with the preceding verse it seems not improbable that the following text may refer to the same tradition, and that instead of *Vāyare* we should read *Āyave* :

vii. 91, 1. *Kuvid anga namasā ye vriddhāsaḥ purā devā anavadyāsaḥ
āsan | te Vāyare (Āyave ?) Manave bādhitāya avāsayan Ushasam
Suryena |*

“ Certainly those gods who were magnified by worship were of old faultless. They displayed the dawn with the sun to *Vāyu* (Āyu ?), to *Manu* when distressed.

There is also a reference to the sky being displayed to *Manu* in the following verse, unless the word (*manu*) is to be there taken as an epithet of *Purūravas*, which does not seem a probable supposition :

i. 31, 4. *Tram Agne Manave dyām avāśayaḥ Purūravase sukrīte su-
krīttarāḥ |*

“ Thou, Agni, didst display the sky to *Manu*, to the beneficent *Pu-
rūravas*, (thyself) more beneficent.”

If *Manu* be taken for a proper name in vii. 91, 1, it may reasonably be understood in the same way in vi. 49, 13, where the person referred is similarly spoken of as distressed :

vi. 49, 13. *Yo rajāṁsi vimame pārthirāni triś chid Vishnur Manave
bādhitāya |*

“ *Vishnu* who thrice measured the terrestrial regions for *Manu* when distressed.”

And in that case the word *Manu* may perhaps also be taken to denote a person in vii. 100, 4, *Vichakrame prithivim esha etām kshetrāya Vish-
nur Manave daśasyan |* “ This *Vishnu* strode over this earth, bestowing *it* on *Manu* for an abode.” Although here the general sense of “ man ” would make an equally good sense.

I may introduce here another text in which, from its conjunction with other proper names, it must be held that the word *Manu* denotes a person.

i. 139, 9. *Dadhyāñ ha me janusham pūrvo Angirāḥ Priyamedhaḥ
Kanvo Atrir Manur vidus te me pūrve Manur viduh |*

“ *Dadhyanch*, the ancient *Angiras*, *Priyamedha*, *Kanva*, *Atri*, *Manu*, know my (Paruchhepa’s?) birth ; they, my predecessors, *Manu*, know it.”

There are, as we have seen, some passages in the hymns in which it is doubtful whether the words *manu* and *manush* denote an

individual, or stand for man in general; and there are also texts in which the latter sense is clearly the only one that can be assigned. Such are the following :

(1.) *Manu* in the singular :

i. 130, 5. . . . *Dhenur iva manave viśvadohaso janāya viśvadohasah* |

“All-productive as a cow to *man*, all-productive to a person.”

v. 2, 12. *Barhishmate manave śarma yaṁsad harishmate manave śarma yaṁsat* |

“That he may bestow protection on the *man* who sacrifices, on the *man* who offers oblations.”

viii. 47, 4. *Manor viśrasya gha id ime Ādityāḥ rāya iśate* |

“These Ādityas are lords of every *man's* riches”

(2.) *Manu* in the plural :

viii. 18, 22. *Ye chid hi mrityubandharaḥ Ādityāḥ manavāḥ smasi* |
pra su naḥ āyur jīvase tiretana |

“O ye Ādityas, prolong the days of us who are *men* who are of kin to death, that we may live.”

x. 91, 9. *Yad devayanto dadhati prayāṁsi te harishmanto manaro vrikta-barhishāḥ* |

“When these pious *men* sacrificing, and spreading the sacrificial grass, offer thee oblations.”

(3.) *Manush* in the singular :

i. 167, 7. *Guhā charantī manusho na yoshaḥ* |

“Like the wife of a *man* moving secretly.”

vii. 70, 2. . . . *atāpi gharmo manusho duroṇe* |

“Fire has been kindled in the *man's* abode.”

The same phrase *manusho duroṇe* occurs also in viii. 76, 2; x. 40, 13; x. 104, 4; x. 110, 1. In x. 99, 7, we find the words *druhvane manushe*, “against the injurious man.”

(4.) *Manush* in the plural :

iv. 6, 11. *Hötaram Agnim manusho nishedur namasyanta uṣijāḥ śāṁsam āyoh* |

“Men offering worship, and eager, attend upon Agni the invoker, the object of man's (or Āyu's) praises.”

In the following passages, if the word *Manu* is not to be understood as denoting a person, the progenitor of men, it seems, at all events, to designate his descendants, the favoured race to which the authors of

the hymns believed themselves to belong, and appears to be in some cases at least nearly synonymous with Ārya, the name by which they called men of their own stock and religion, in contradistinction to the Dasyus, a term by which we are either to understand hostile demons, or the rude aboriginal tribes :

i. 130, 8. *Indraḥ samatsu yajamānam āryam prāvad viśveshu śatamūlīr
ājishu . . . | manare sāsad arratān tracham krishnām arandhayat |*¹⁶

“ Indra who bestows a hundred succours in all conflicts . . . has preserved the Ārya in the fights. Chastising the lawless, he has subjected the black skin to the man (*manare*). ”

Compare i. 117, 21, where instead of *manu*, or *manush*, the word *manusha* is employed :

*Yarañ crikena Aśvinā rapantā isham duhantā manushāya dasrā |
abhi dasyum bakurena dhamantā uru jyotiś chakrathur āryāya |*

“ Sowing barley with the wolf, ye, o potent Aśvins, milking out food for *man* (*manusha*), blowing away the Dasyu with the thunder-bolt (?), have made a broad light for the Ārya.”¹⁷

i. 175, 3. *Tram hi śurāḥ sanilā chodayo manusho ratham | sahārān
dasyum arratam oshāḥ pātram na śochishā |*

“ Thou, a hero, a benefactor, hast impelled the chariot of *man* : victorious, thou hast burnt up the rite-less Dasyu, as a vessel is consumed by a blaze.”

ii. 20, 6. *Sa ha śruta Indro nāma dera ūrddhvo bhurad manushe das-
matamāḥ | ara priyam arśasānasya sahvān śiro bharad dāsasya svadhā-
vān | 7. Sa vrittrahā Indraḥ krishnayoniḥ purandaro dāsīr airayad ri |
ajanayad manave kshām apaścha satrā śāṁsam yajamānasya tūtot |*

“ The god renowned as Indra hath arisen most mighty for the sake of *man*. Violent, self-reliant, he has smitten down the dear head 'of the destructive Dāsa. 7. Indra, the slayer of Vṛittra, the destroyer of cities, has scattered the Dasyu (hosts) sprung from a black womb. Ille

¹⁶ A similar opposition between the word *āyu*, “ man,” and *dasyu* is to be noted in the following passage, vi. 14, 3 : *nānā hi Agne avase spardhante rāyo aryaḥ | tūrvanto dasyum āyavo vrataih sīkshanto avratam |* “ In various ways, o Agni, the riches of the enemy emulously hasten to the help (of thy worshippers). The men destroy the Dasyu, and seek by rites to overcome the riteless.”

¹⁷ See Prof. Roth's explanation of this passage as given in a note to the article on Manu the progenitor of the Aryan Indians, Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society, vol. xx. p. 418.

has produced for *man* the earth¹⁸ and the waters; he has perfectly fulfilled the aspiration of his worshipper."

vi. 21, 11. *Nu me ā vācham upa yāhi vidvān viśvebhīḥ sūno sahaso yajatratīḥ | ye agnijihvāḥ ritasāpah ḫsur ye manum chakrur uparam dasāya |*

"Do thou, o wise god, son of strength, approach my hymn with all the adorable (deities), who were fire-tongued, rite-frequenting, and made *man* superior to the Dāsa."

viii. 87, 5. *Abhi hi satya somapāḥ ubhe babbhūtha rodasi | Indrāsi sunvato vridhāḥ patir divāḥ | 6. Tram hi śāśratīnām Indra darta pūrām asi | hantā dasyor manor vridhāḥ patir divāḥ |*

"5. For thou, o true soma-drinker, hast overcome both worlds. Indra, thou art the prosperer of him who makes libations, the lord of the sky. 6. Thou, Indra, art the destroyer of all the cities, the slayer of the Dasyu, the prosperer of *man*, the lord of the sky."

ix. 92, 5. *Tan nu satyam paramānasya astu yatra riśre kāravāḥ saṁnasanta | jyotir yad ahne akriṇod u lokam prāvad manum dasyare kar abhikam |*

"Let this be the true (abode) of the pure god (Soma) where all the sages have assembled; since he has made light and space for the day, has protected man, and repelled the Dasyu."

x. 49, 7. *Yad mā sāvo manushāḥ āha nirṇije rīdhak kriṣe dāsām kṛitvyam hathaiḥ |*

"When the libation of *man* calls me to splendour, I tear in pieces (?) with blows the vigorous Dāsa."

x. 73, 7. *Tram jaghantha Namuchim makhasyum dāsam kṛinrānah rishaye vimāyam | tram chakartha manave syonān patho devatrā anjasā iwa yānān |*

"Thou hast slain the lusty Namuchi, making the Dāsa bereft of magic against the rishi: thou made for man beautiful paths leading as it were straightway to the gods."

It is to be observed that in none of these passages is the Brahmanical, or any other, caste singled out as having been the special object of divine protection. Men, or Āryas, are the favourites of the gods. And

¹⁸ In iv. 26, 7, Indra says: "Aham bhūnim adadām āryāya aham vṛishṭim dāsushe martyāya |" I gave the earth to the Ārya; I gave rain to the sacrificing mortal."

even in such hymns as R.V. i. 112; i. 116; i. 117; i. 119, etc., where the Aśvins are celebrated as having interposed for the deliverance of many of their worshippers, whose names are there specified, we are nowhere informed that any of these were Brāhmans, although reference is often made to their being rishis.¹⁹

There is one other text of considerable interest and importance, R.V. iii. 34, 9, which, although it is unconnected with Manu, may be here cited, as it connects the word *ārya* with the term *varṇa*, "colour," which in later times came to signify "caste," as applied to the Brāhmans and other classes. It is this:

Sasānātīyān uta sūryaṁ sasāna Indraḥ sasāna purubhojasāṁ gām | hiranyayam uta bhogaṁ sasāna hatrī dasyūn pra āryaṁ varṇam ārat |

"Indra bestowed horses, he bestowed the sun, he bestowed the many-nourishing cow, he bestowed golden wealth: having slain the Dasyu, he protected the Āryan colour."

It is to be observed that here the word *varṇa* is used in the singular. Thus all the persons coming under the designation of Ārya, are included under one class or colour, not several.²⁰

We shall see in the next chapter that, irrespective of the verse of the Purusha Sūkta, there are in the Rig-veda Sanhitā a few texts in which the Brāhmans are mentioned alone of all the four castes, without any distinct reference being found anywhere to the second class as Rājanyas, or Kshattriyas, or to the third and fourth as Vaiśyas and Sūdras.

In the mean time I shall advert to some other phrases which are employed in the hymns, either to denote mankind in general, or to signify certain national or tribal divisions. The most important of these is that of the "five tribes," who are frequently referred to under the appellations of *pancha-kṛishṭayah*, *pancha-kshitayah*, *pancha-kshitayo mānushyyah* (vii. 97, 1), *pancha-charshanayah*, *pancha-janūḥ*, *pāñchajanyā viś* (viii. 52, 7), *pancha bhūma* (vii. 69, 2), *pancha jūtā* (vi. 61, 12).²¹

¹⁹ See Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society for 1866, pp. 7 ff.

²⁰ Sāyaṇa, indeed, interprets the word *āryam varṇam* by *uttamam varṇam traivarnikam* | "the most excellent class consisting of the three upper castes;" but he of course explains according to the ideas of his own age. In the S'atapatha Brāhmaṇa, Kāṇva Sākhā (Adhvara Kāṇḍa, i. 6) it is stated that the upper three castes only were Āryas and fit to offer sacrifice (*ārya eva brāhmaṇo vā kshattriyo vā vaisyo vā te hi yajniyāḥ*) see Journ. Roy. As. Soc. for 1866, p. 281.

²¹ In iii. 49, 1, mention is made not of the five tribes, but of all the tribes: *S'āṅgas*

Some of these terms are occasionally used of the gods, as in x. 53, 4 : *arjāda uta yajniyāsaḥ panchajanā mama hotraṁ jushadhvam* | “Ye five tribes who eat (sacrificial) food, and are worthy of adoration, receive my oblation with favour.”²²

On this verse Yāska remarks, Nirukta, iii. 8 : “*Gandharvāḥ pitaro derā asurā rakshānsi*” ity eke | “*chatvāro varṇā nishādaḥ panchamaḥ*” ity Aupamanyarah | “Some say the word denotes the Gandharvas, fathers, gods, asuras, and rakshasas. Aupamanyava says it denotes the four castes and the Nishādas.”²³

If Aupamayava was right, the Nishādas also were admissible to the worship of the gods in the Vedic age, as the “five classes” are represented in various texts as votaries of Agni. Such are the following :

vi. 11, 4. *Āyuñ na yañ namasā rātaharyāḥ anjanti suprayasam panchajanāḥ* |

“Agni, whom, abounding in oblations, the five tribes, bringing offerings, honour with prostrations, as if he were a man.”¹

Sāyana here defines the five tribes as “priests and offerers of sacrifices” (*ritvig-yajamāna-lakshanāḥ*).

ix. 65, 22. *Ye somāsaḥ . . . sunvire . . .* | 23. *Ye vā janeshu panchasu |*

mahām Indrañ yasmin viśvā ā krishṭayaḥ somapāḥ kāmam aryan | “Praise the great Indra, in whom all the tribes drinking soma have obtained their desire.”

²² Compare x. 60, 4. “In whose worship Ikshvāku prospers, wealthy and foe-destroying, like the five tribes in the sky (*dvīra pancha krishṭayah*). Sāyana, however, renders “His five tribes (the four castes and the Nishādas) are as (happy as) if in heaven.” Prof. Müller, Journ. Roy. As. Soc. for 1866, p. 462, renders, “as the five tribes in heaven.”

²³ In his note on this passage in his “Illustrations of the Nirukta,” p. 28, Prof. Roth remarks : “The conception of the five races which originally comprehended all mankind . . . is here transferred to the totality of the divine beings. Hence also arises the diversity of understanding, when the number has to be indicated.” Prof. Roth then quotes part of Aitareya Brāhmaṇa, iii. 31, which I give a little more fully from Dr. Haug’s edition : *Panchajanām etat ukthaṁ yad vai vadevam* | *sarveshām* *vai etat panchajanānām ukthaṁ deva-monushyānām gandharvāpsarasānām sarpañānām cha pitrīnām chu* | *etesānām vai etat panchajanānām ukthaṁ* | *sarve enam panchajanā viduh* | *ā enam panchinyai janatāyai havino gachhanti ya evām veda* | “This Vais’va-deva uktha belongs to the five classes of beings. It belongs to all the five classes of gods, men, gandharvas and apsaras, serpents, and fathers. To these five classes belongs this uktha. All these five classes know him (who uses it). Those of this five-fold set of beings who are skilled in invocation come to the man who knows this.” See Dr. Haug’s Ait. Br. ii. 214, where it is said that Gandharvas and Apsaras are counted as one class.

"Or those soma-libations which have been poured out . . (23) among the five tribes."

x. 45, 6. *Vilum chid adrim abhinat parāyan janāḥ yad agnim aya-janta pancha |* ८२५, ५६, ४३६, ८१५, ८१५

"He (Agni), travelling afar, clove even the strong mountain, when the five tribes worshipped Agni."

vii. 15, 2. *Yah pancha charshāñir abhi nishasāda dame dame | karir grihapatir yurā |*

"The wise and youthful master of the house (Agni) who has taken up his abode among the five tribes in every house."

In vi. 61, 12, Sarasvatī is spoken of as "augmenting or prospering the five tribes" (*pancha jātā vardhayanti*).

In viii. 52, 7, it is said: *Yat pāñchajanyaya riśā Indre ghoshāḥ asrīkṣata |* "When shouts were uttered to Indra by the people of the five tribes," etc.

In R.V. i. 117, 3, Atri is styled *rishim pāñchajanyam*, "a rishi belonging to the five tribes." In v. 32, 11, the epithet *satpatiḥ pāñchajanyāḥ*, "the good lord of the five tribes," is applied to Indra. And in ix. 66, 20, Agni is called the purified rishi, the priest of the five tribes (*pāñchajayaḥ purohitāḥ*).²⁴ ८१८.७.१

In other passages, however, it is far from clear that the "five races" are intended to be identified with the Aryas, or people of honourable race, to whom the authors of the hymns belonged. Such, perhaps, is the case in the following verse: ii. 2, 10. *Asmākāṁ dyumnam adhi pancha kṛiṣṭishu uchchā svar na śuśuchīta dushtaram |* "May our glory shine aloft among the five tribes, like the heaven unsurpassable." See also vi. 46, 7, to be quoted below.

On the same subject, Professor Roth remarks as follows in his Lexicon under the word *kṛiṣṭi*: "The phrase *five races* is a designation of all nations, not merely of the Aryyan tribes. It is an ancient enumeration, of the origin of which we find no express explanation in the Vedic texts. We may compare the fact that the cosmical spaces or points of the compass are frequently enumerated as *five*, especially in

²⁴ See Mahābhārata, iii. 14160, as referred to by Roth under *jana*, where the birth of a being of five colours, apparently a form of Agni, is described, who was generated by five rishis, and who was known as the god of the five tribes (*pāñchajanya*) and the producer of five races.

the following text of the A.V. iii. 24, 2 : *imā yāḥ pancha pradiśo mā-navīḥ pancha krishṭayah* | ‘these five regions; the five tribes sprung from Manu’; among which (regions) we should have here to reckon as the fifth the one lying in the middle (*dhruvā dik*, A.V. iv. 14, 8; xviii. 3, 34), that is, to regard the Aryyas as the central point, and round about them the nations of the four regions of the world. According to the Vedic usage, five cannot be considered as designating an indefinite number.”

We cannot therefore regard the use of the term “five races” as affording any evidence of the existence of a rigidly defined caste-system at the period when it was in frequent use. The frequent reference to such a division, which fell into disuse in later times, rather proves the contrary. The caste-system was always a quadruple, not a quintuple, one; and although the Nishādas are added by Aupamanyava as a fifth ^{५/८१} division of the population, this class was esteemed too degraded to allow us to suppose that they could ever have formed part of a universally recognized five-fold division, of which all the parts appear to be regarded as standing on an equal, or nearly equal, footing.

It is supposed by Dr. Kuhn²⁵ that the “five tribes” are to be identified with the clans whose names are mentioned in the following verse :

i. 108, 8. *Yad Indragnī Yadushu Turvaśeshu yad Druhyushv Anushu Pūrushu sthāḥ* | *ataḥ pari vrishanāv ā hi yātam athā somasya pibatañ sutasya* |

“If, o Indra and Agni, ye are abiding among the Yadus, Turvaśas, Druhyus, Anus, Pūrus,—come hither, vigorous heroes, from all quarters, and drink the Soma which has been poured out.”

Although, however, these tribes are often mentioned separately in the Rig-veda, this is either the only, or almost the only, text in which they are all connected with one another. Their identity with the “five classes” is therefore doubtful.

There is another word employed in the Rig-veda to designate a race well known to the authors of the hymns, viz., *nahush*. We have already met with this term in a verse (x. 80, 6) I have quoted above, where it appears clearly to denote a tribe distinct from the descendants of Manush; and the adjective derived from it occurs in vi. 46, 7 (=

²⁵ See Weber's *Indische Studien*, i. 202, where Dr. Kuhn's paper in the *Hall. Allg. Lit. Z.* for 1846, p. 1086, is referred to.

S.V. i. 262), where also the tribes of Nahush appear to be discriminated from the five tribes, whoever these may be supposed to be. The words are these : *Yad Indra nāhushishv ā ojo nrīmnaṁ cha kṛiṣṭishu | yad eñ pancha kshitiṇāṁ dyumnam ā bhara satrā viśvāni paumṣyā |* "Indra, whatever force or vigour exists in the tribes of Nahush, or whatever glory belongs to the five races, bring it (for us); yea all manly energies together." *The 1212 & 1221 words mean the Community of the* ~~other~~ *tribes.*

Professor Roth (see his Lexicon, s. v.) regards the people designated by the word *nahush* as denoting men generally, but with the special sense of stranger, or neighbour, in opposition to members of the speaker's own community; and he explains the words of x. 80, 6, twice referred to above, as signifying "the sons of our own people, and of those who surround us."

These descendants of Nahush, whoever they may have been, are, however, distinctly spoken of in x. 80, 6 (the passage just adverted to), as worshippers of Agni, and can scarcely, therefore, have been regarded by the Aryas as altogether aliens from their race and worship.

Setting aside, as before, the Purusha Sūkta, there are few distinct references in the hymns of the Rig-veda to the creation of men, and none at all to the separate creation of castes. The following text ascribes the generation of mankind to Agni, R.V. i. 96, 2 : *Sa pūrrayā nividā karyatā āyor imāḥ prajāḥ ajanayad manūnām | vitasvatā cha kshasā dyām apaś cha devā Agniṁ dhārayan dravīṇodām |* "By the first nivid, by the wisdom of Āyu, he (Agni) created these children of men; by his gleaming light the earth and the waters: the gods sustained Agni the giver of riches."²⁸

The Aitareya Brāhmaṇa introduces this verse by the following passage, ii. 33: *Prajāpatir vai idam eka eva agre āsa | so'kāmayata "prajāyeya bhūyān syām" iti | sa tapo 'tapyata | sa rācham ayachhat | sa samvat-sarasya parastād vyāharad dvādaśa kritvāḥ | dvādaśapadū vai eshū nivit | etām rāvā tām nividām vyāharat | tām sarvāni bhūtāny anvāriyanta | tad etad rishiḥ paśyann abhyānūvacha "sa pūrvaya" ityādinā |* "Prajāpati alone was formerly this universe. He desired 'may I be propagated, and multiplied.' He practised austere fervour. He suppressed his voice. After a year he spoke twelve times. This nivid

²⁸ See Dr. Haug's translation in his Ait. Br. ii. 143; and Beaufort's German version in his Orient und Occident, ii. 512.

consists of twelve words. This nivid he uttered. After it all beings were created. Beholding this the rishi uttered this verse, ‘by the first nivid,’ ” etc.

The generation of “creatures” (*prajāḥ*) is ascribed in various texts to different gods, in iii. 55, 19²⁷ to Tvashtṛi Savitṛi; in ix. 86, 28 to Soma; in viii. 85, 6 (*ya imā jajāna viśvā jātāni*) to Indra. In x. 54, 5 Indra is said to have “generated the father and mother (heaven and earth) from his own body” (*yan mātarāñ cha pitarañ cha sākam ajanayathās tāvah svāyūḥ*); while Viśvakarman, who in x. 81, 2, 3 is said to have generated heaven and earth, is also in x. 82, 3 called “our father and generator” (*yo naḥ pītā janitā*). All these passages are, however, too vague to afford us any insight into the ideas of their authors regarding the creation of the human race.

SECT. II.—Legends and Notices regarding Manu from the Satapatha, Aitareya, and Taittirīya Brāhmaṇas, the Taittirīya Sanhitā, and the Chhāndogya Upanishad.

The first passage which I adduce contains the very important legend of the deluge, which has already been quoted in the 2nd vol. of this work, pp. 324 ff., and which has also been rendered into English by Professor Max Müller (Anc. Sansk. Lit. pp. 425 ff.) and by Professor M. Williams (Ind. Epic Poetry, p. 34), as well as into German by its earliest translator, Professor Weber, in the year 1849 (Ind. Studien, i. 163 f.).

Satapatha Brāhmaṇa, i. 8, 1, 1. *Manave ha vai prātar avaneygam udakam ājahrur yathā idam pāñibhyām aranejanāya āharanti | evāñ tasya avanenijānasya matsyah pāñī āpede | 2. Sa ha asmai vācham uvāda “bibhrīhi mā pārayishyāmi tvā” iti | “kasmād mā pārayishyasi” iti | “aughaḥ imāḥ sarāḥ prajāḥ nirvṛdhā tatas tvā pārayitūsmi” iti | “Katham te bhṛtitir” iti | 3. Sa ha vācha “yāvad vai kshullakāḥ bhavāmo bahuḥ vai nas tāvad nāshṭrā bhavaty uta matsya eva matsyam gilati | kumbhyāñ mā agre bibharāsi | sa yadā tām ativardhā atha karshūm khātvā tasyāñ mā bibharāsi | sa yadā tām ativardhā atha mā samudram abhyavaharāsi | tarhi vai atināshṭro bhavitāsmi” iti | 4. Sāsvad²⁸ ha*

²⁷ Perhaps, however, we are to understand Tvashtṛi’s function of aiding in procreation to be here referred to.

²⁸ *S'as'vat-sabdo 'tra sāmarthyāt kshīpra-vachanaḥ*.—Comm.

' āsa sa hi jyeshṭham²⁰ vardhate | "atha itithīm samām tad aughaḥ
 āgantā tad mā nāvam upakalpya upāsāsai | sa aughe utthite nāram
 āpadyāsai tatas trā pārayitāsmi" iti | 5. Tam evam bhṛitvā samudram
 abhyarajahāra | sa yatithīm tat samām paridideśa tatithīm samām nāram
 upakalpya upāsānchakre | sa aughe utthite nāram āpede | tam sa matsyaḥ
 upanyāpuplure | tasya śringe nārāḥ pūśām pratimumocha | tena etam ut-
 taram girim²¹ atidudrāva²² | 6. Sa ha urācha "apīparam rai trā ṛṇikshē
 nāram pratibadhnīshra | tam tu trā mā girau santam udakam antaśchhait-
 sid yārad yārad udakaṁ samarāyāt tārat tārad anvarasarpāsi" iti | Sa
 ha tārat tārad eva anvarasasarpa | tad api etad uttarasya girer "Manor
 avasarpaṇam" iti | augho ha tāḥ sarrāḥ prajāḥ nirurāha atha iha Manur
 era ekaḥ pariśiśhe | 7. Sah archan śrāmyaṁś chachāra prajākāmaḥ |
 tatra api pāka-yajnena īje | sa ghrītam dadhi mastv āmikshām ity apsu
 juhvānchakāra | tataḥ saṁratsare yoshit sambabbhūra | sā ha pībdamānā²³
 iva udeyāya | tasyai ha sma ghrītaṁ pade santishthate | tayā Mitrā-Ta-
 runau sanjagmāte | 8. Tām ha ūchatuh "kā asi" iti | "Manor duhitā"
 iti | "ārayor brūshra" iti | "na" iti ha urācha "yah eva mām ajīja-
 nata tasya eva aham asmi" iti | tasyām apītram²⁴ īshāte | tad rā jajnau
 tad rā na jajnār²⁵ ati tu eva iyāya | sā Manum ūjagāma | 9. Tām ha
 Manur urācha "kā asi" iti | "tara duhitā" iti | "katham bhagarati
 mama duhitā" iti | "yah amūr apsu āhutir ahaushir ghrītaṁ dadhi
 mastv āmikshām tato mām ajījanathāḥ | sā ūśir asmi tām mā yajne ar-
 akalpaya | yajne ched rai mā arakalpayishyasi bahuḥ prajayā paśubhir bha-
 rishyasi yām u mayā kāncha āśisham āśāśishyase sā te sarrā samardhi-
 shyate" iti | tām etad madhye yajnasya arākalpayat | madhyām hi etad
 yajnasya yad antarā prayājānuyājān | 10. Tayā archan śrāmyaṁś
 chachāra prajākāmaḥ | tayā imām prajātim prajajne yā iyam Manoh
 prajātiḥ | yām u enayā kāncha āśisham āśāsta sā asmai sarrā samār-
 dhyata | sā eshā nidānenā yad Idā | sa yo ha eram idrāvā Idāyā cha-
 ratī etām ha era prajātim prajāyate yām Manuḥ prājāyata | yām u
 enayā kāncha āśisham āśāste sā asmai sarrā samārdhyate |

"1. In the morning they brought to Manu water for washing, as

²⁰ Jhasho mahā-matsyaḥ.—Comm.

²⁰ Jyeshṭham ṛṇiddhatamam.—Comm.

²¹ Uttarām girim Himavantam.—Comm.

²² Some MSS. read adhidudrāva.

²³ Pībdamānā . . . ghrīta-prabhavatvāt ghrītam eravantī sunighdhā udakād ut-
 hitā.—Comm.

²⁴ Apītram bhāgaḥ | tam prārthitavantau.—Comm.

²⁵ Pratijñālavatī oha na cha pratijñālavatī.—Comm.

men are in the habit of bringing it to wash with the hands. As he was thus washing, a fish³⁶ came into his hands, (2) (which spake to him) ‘preserve me; I shall save thee.’ (Manu enquired) ‘From what wilt thou save me?’ (The fish replied) ‘A flood shall sweep away all these creatures;³⁷ from it I will rescue thee.’ (Manu asked) ‘How (shall) thy preservation (be effected)?’ 3. The fish said: ‘So long as we are small, we are in great peril, for fish devours fish; thou shalt preserve me first in a jar. When I grow too large for the jar, then thou shalt dig a trench, and preserve me in that. When I grow too large for the trench, then thou shalt carry me away to the ocean. I shall then be beyond the reach of danger.’ 4. Straightway he became a large fish; for he waxes to the utmost. (He said) ‘Now in such and such a year, then the flood will come; thou shalt, therefore, construct a ship, and resort to me; thou shalt embark in the ship when the flood rises, and I shall deliver thee from it.’ 5. Having thus preserved the fish, Manu carried him away to the sea. Then in the same year which the fish had enjoined, he constructed a ship and resorted to him. When the flood rose, Manu embarked in the ship. The fish swam towards him. He fastened the cable of the ship to the fish’s horn. By this means he passed over³⁸ this northern mountain.³⁹ 6. The fish said, ‘I have delivered thee; fasten the ship to a tree. But lest the water should cut thee off whilst thou art on the mountain, as much as the water subsides, so much shalt thou descend after it.’ He accordingly descended after it as much (as it subsided). Wherefore also this, viz., ‘Manu’s descent’ is (the name) of the northern mountain. Now the flood had swept away all these creatures; so Manu alone was left here. 7. Desirous of offspring, he lived worshipping and toiling in arduous religious rites. Among these he also sacrificed with the pāka offering. He cast clarified butter, thickened milk, whey and curds, as an oblation into the waters. Thence in a year a woman was produced. She rose

³⁶ Bhārino'rthasya siddhyarthān devatā eva māsyā-rūpenā ujagāma | “To accomplish what was to follow, it was a deity which came in the form of a fish.”—Comm.

³⁷ Aṅghāḥ udaka-saṅghātāḥ | sa imāḥ Bharata-varsha-nirāśinīḥ prajāḥ niheshām vodhū | desānturām prāpāyitā | “The flood will entirely carry these creatures abiding in Bharatavarsha;—will convey them to another country.”—Comm.—I do not see why the verb *nirvoda* should have the sense here assigned to it: at all events we are afterwards told that Manu alone was left after the flood.

³⁸ Or, if *adhidudrāva* be the true reading, “he hastened to.”

³⁹ The Himavat or Himālaya, according to the Commentator.

up as it were unctuous.⁴⁰ Clarified butter adheres to her steps. Mitra and Varuna met her. They said to her, 'Who art thou?' 'Manu's daughter,' (she replied). 'Say (thou art) ours,' (they rejoined). 'No,' she said, 'I am his who begot me.' They desired a share in her. She promised that, or she did not promise that; but passed onward. She came to Manu. 9. Manu said to her, 'Who art thou?' 'Thy daughter,' she replied. 'How, glorious one,' asked Manu, '(art thou) my daughter?' 'Thou hast generated me,' she said, 'from those oblations, butter, thick milk, whey and curds, which thou didst cast into the waters. I am a benediction. Apply me in the sacrifice. If thou wilt employ me in the sacrifice, thou shalt abound in offspring and cattle. Whatever benediction thou wilt ask through me, shall accrue to thee.' He (accordingly) introduced her (as) that (which comes in) the middle of the sacrifice; for that is the middle of the sacrifice which (comes) between the introductory and concluding forms. 10. With her he lived worshipping and toiling in arduous religious rites, desirous of offspring. With her he begot⁴¹ this offspring which is this offspring of Manu.⁴² Whatever benediction he asked with her, was all vouchsafed to him. This is essentially that which is Idā. Whosoever, knowing this, lives with Idā, begets this offspring which Manu begot. Whatever benediction he asks with her, is all vouchsafed to him."

⁴⁰ Such is the rendering of *pibdamānā* given by the Commentator, who is followed by Professors Weber and Müller. Professor Roth in his Lexicon, s.v., explains it by "firm," i.e. "the woman arose solid out of the fluid mass."

⁴¹ I should observe that the same verb (*prajāne*) by which the generative act of Manu is here described, is in other passages of the same Brähmana (ii. 2, 4, 1; ii. 5, 1, 1; vi. 1, 1, 8; vi. 1, 3, 1; vii. 5, 2, 6; xi. 5, 8, 1) applied in another tense to the god Prajāpati, of whom it is said that he considered how he should *beget* progeny ('sa aikshata 'katham nu prajāyeya). (Compare xi. 1, 6, 1.) In other parts of the same work, however, it is said that Prajāpati *created* (*asrijata*) the waters (vi. 1, 1, 9), or creatures (*prajāḥ asrijata*, vii. 4, 3, 5; x. 2, 2, 1); and the fact of the word "beget" being applied to Prajāpati, either in a figurative, or anthropomorphic sense, does not authorize us to suppose that the author of the Satapatha Brähmana, in the passage before us (the legend of the deluge), intended to represent Manu as the creator of the human race, and not as their progenitor in the natural sense. (In R.V. ii. 33, 1; i. 70, 3, we find the phrase *prajāyemahi prajābhīḥ | pra prajābhīr jāyate |* "let us beget children," "he begets children.")

⁴² Compare Taitt. Sanhitā, v. 1, 5, 6. "*Sivo bhava prajābhyaṁ*" ity āha *prajābhya* *va enām īamayati* | "*mānushībhyaś tvāṁ angirāḥ*" ity āha *mānavyo hi prajāḥ* | He says, 'be auspicious to the twain offspring;' for he pacifies him from (injuring) the offspring. He says, '(We pacify) thee from (injuring) the human offspring, *angiras.*' For creatures are descended from Manu."

From this interesting legend we learn that, according to its author's belief, Manu was not the creator of mankind, as some later accounts considered him to have been, but himself belonged to an earlier race of living beings, which was entirely destroyed by the deluge which is described. The legend regards him as a representative of his generation, who, for some reason, perhaps his superior wisdom, or sanctity, or position, was selected out of the crowd of ordinary mortals to be rescued from the impending destruction. That he was regarded as a mere man, and not as a being of a superior order, is shown by the fact of his requiring the aid of a higher power to preserve him. A supernatural fish, apparently some divine person, conceived as taking the form of a creature which would be perfectly secure and at home in the midst of the raging waters, undertook to deliver him, and guided the ship on which he was directed to embark, through all dangers to its destined haven. No one but Manu took refuge in the ship, for he alone, the story expressly records, was preserved, while all the other living beings were overwhelmed. Finding himself the sole survivor when the waters subsided, he became desirous of progeny; and with intense devotion performed certain religious rites in the hope of realizing his wish through their efficacy. As a result of his oblations, a woman arose from the waters into which they had been cast. A male and a female now existed, the destined parents of a new race of men who sprang from their union,—a union the fruitfulness of which was assured by their assiduous practice of sacred ceremonies. From Manu and Idā, we are expressly told, the race known as that of Manu, *i.e.* the race of men, was produced. The legend says nothing whatever of this race being originally characterized by any distinction of castes, or about four sons, the ancestors of Brāhmans, Kshattriyas, Vaiśyas, and Sūdras being born to Manu and Idā. We must therefore suppose that the author of the legend intends to represent the early race of mankind, or at least the first inhabitants of Bharata-varsha, as descended from one common progenitor without any original varieties of caste, however different the professions and social position of their descendants afterwards became. We are consequently entitled to regard this legend of the Satapatha Brāhmaṇa as at variance with the common fable regarding the separate origin of the Brāhmans, Kshattriyas, Vaiśyas, and Sūdras.

The following are some other passages in which Manu and Idā are both referred to :

Taitt. S. ii. 6, 7, 1. *Manuh prithivyāḥ yajniyam aichhat | sa ghritam
nishiktam avindat | so 'bravīt "ko 'sya īśraro yajne 'pi karttor" iti | tāv
abrutām Mitrā-Varunau "gor era ārām īśraraū karttoḥ svāḥ" iti | tau
tato gām śamairayatām | sā yatra yatra nyakrāmat tato ghritam apīḍy-
yata | tasmād ghritapadī uchyate | tad asyai janma | 3. Idām
upahrayate | paśavo rai Idā | paśūn era upahrayate | chatur upahrayate |
chatushpūdo hi paśarāḥ | "Mānari" ity āha | Manur hy etām agre
'paśyat | "ghritapadī" ity āha | yad era asyai padād ghritam apīḍyata
tasmād evam āha | "Maitrāvaraṇī" ity āha | Mitrāvaraṇau hy enām
samairayatām |*

"Manu sought whatever upon earth was fit for sacrifice. He found butter poured out. He said, 'Who has power to employ this in sacrifice also?' Mitra and Varuna replied, 'We two have power to employ the cow.' They then sent forth the cow. Wherever she went forth, butter was pressed out. Hence she is called the 'butter-footed.' This is her birth 3. He calls upon Idā. Animals are Idā. He calls upon animals. He calls upon them four times. For animals are four-footed. He says 'Mānavī.' For Manu first saw her. He says 'Butter-footed.' He says so, because butter was pressed from her foot. He says 'Maitrāvaraṇī.' For Mitra and Varuna sent her forth." (Comp. Taitt. Br. iii. 7, 5, 6.)

Taitt. Br. i. 1, 4, 4. *Idā rai Mānari yajnānukāśinī⁴³ āśīt | sā 'śriṇod
"Asurā agnim adadhate" iti | 6. Sā 'bravīd Idā Manum "tathā
rai aham tava agnim ādhāsyāmi yathā pra prajayā paśubhir mithunair
janishyase praty asmin loke sthāsyasi abhi suvargām lokaṁ jeshyasi"
iti | gārhapatyam agre ādadhāt | gārhapatyena eva asmai prajām
paśūn prājanayat |*

"Idā, the daughter of Manu, was a revealer of sacrifice. She heard, 'the Asuras are placing fire.' 6. Idā said to Manu, 'I shall so place thy fire that thou shalt increase in offspring, cattle, and twins; thou shalt be firmly established in this world, and shalt conquer the heavenly world.'⁴⁴ She first placed the gārhapatyā fire. It was

⁴³ *Yajna-tattva-prakāśana-samarthā*.—Comm.

⁴⁴ Compare the Kāthaka Br. viii. 4, quoted in Weber's Indische Studien, iii. 463, where Idā is said to have promised to Manu: *tathā te Agnim ādhāsyāmi yathā ma-*

through the gārhapatya that she produced for him offspring and cattle." c. 16¹

Taitt. S. i. 7. 1, 3. *Sarvena vai yajnena devāḥ suvargam̄ lokam̄ āyan | pākayajnena Manur aśrāmyat | sā Idā Manum upāvarttata | tām̄ devā-surāḥ ryahvayanta pratīchīm̄ devāḥ parāchīm̄ Asurāḥ | sā devān̄ upā-varttata |*

"The gods arrived at the heavenly world by the whole sacrifice. Manu worshipped with the *pākayajna*. That Idā came to Manu. The gods and asuras called her away in different directions, the gods in front, the asuras behind. She came to the gods."

The following texts refer to Manu alone, as a celebrator of religious ceremonies :

Taitt. S. ii. 5, 9, 1. "Agne mahān̄ asi" ity āha | mahān̄ hy esha yad Agnih | "brāhmaṇa" ity āha | brāhmaṇo hy esha | "bhārata" ity āha | esha hi devebhyo haryam bharati | "devēddha" ity āha | devāḥ hy etam aindhata | "Manviddha" ity āha | Manur hy etam uttaro deve-bhyāḥ aindha |

"He says, 'Agni, thou art great.' For this Agni is great. He says, 'o Brāhmaṇ.' For he is a Brāhmaṇ. He says, 'o Bhārata.' For he bears the oblation to the gods. He says, 'kindled by the gods.' For the gods kindled him. He says, 'kindled by Manu.' For Manu kindled him after the gods.'

Taitt. S. vi. 2, 5, 2 f. *Tricrato vai Manur asid dviratā asurā ekavrata devāḥ | prātar madhyandine sāyañ tad Manor vratam̄ āsit pākayajnasya rūpam pushṭyai | prātaścha sāyāncha asurānām̄ nirmadhyam kshudho rūpam | tatas te parābharan | madhyandine madhyarāttre devānām tatas te'bhavan suvargam̄ lokam̄ āyan |*

"Manu performed three rites; the asuras two, the gods one. Manu's rite was in the morning, at noon, and in the evening, the form of a *pākayajna* for nourishment. That of the asuras was in the morning and evening, without any midday rite, a form of hunger. Hence they perished. That of the gods was at midday and midnight. Hence they prospered, and arrived at the heavenly world."

Taitt. S. vii. 5, 15, 3. *Etayā (i.e. abhijityā) vai Indram devāḥ ayājayan | tasmād "Indrasaraḥ" | etayā Manum manushyāḥ | tasmād "Manu-savaḥ" | mushyā devān̄ upaprajaniṣhyante | "I will so place Agni for thee, than men shall be born among the gods."*

*yathā Indro devānām yathā Manur manushyānām eva bhavati yaḥ evaṁ
vidrān etayā iṣṭyā yajate |*

"With this (*abhijiti*) the gods sacrificed for Indra. Hence it is called 'Indra-sava.' Men sacrificed with it for Manu. Hence it is called 'Manu-sava.' As Indra is among gods, and Manu among men, so he becomes who thus knowing sacrifices with this oblation."

In Taitt. S. ii. 2, 10, 2, we find nearly the words which Kulluka quotes on Manu's Institutes, i. 1: *Yad vai kincha Manur avadat tad
bheshajam |* "Whatever Manu said was a remedy."

In Satapatha Br. vi. 6, 1, 19, Manu is called a Prajāpati: "*Prajā-
pataye Manave siāhā*" iti | *Prajāpatir vai Manuḥ* | *sa hi idam sarvam
amanuta* | *Prajāpatir vai etad agre karma akarot* | "Svāhā to Manu
the lord of creatures. Manu is a lord of creatures (*prajā-pati*) for he
thought (amanuta) all this. The lord of creatures (*prajā-pati*) formerly
did all this work."

The following story in its different versions also connects Manu with religious observances and represents him as very devout:

S. P. Br. i. 1, 4, 14 ff. *Manor ha rai rishabhaḥ āśa | tasminn asura-
ghnī sapatna-ghnī vāk pravishṭā āśa | tasya ha sma śrasathād ravathād
asura-rākshasāni mr̄idyamānāni yanti | te ha asurāḥ samūdire “pāpaṁ
vata no ‘yam rishabhaḥ sachate kathān nv imān dabhnuyāma”* iti |
"*Kilātakulī*" iti ha asura-brahmār āsatuh | tau ha ūchatuḥ "śraddhā-
devo rai Manuḥ | ācām nu vedāva" iti | tau ha āgatya ūchatur "*Mano
yājayāva tvā*" iti | "kena" iti | "anena rishabhenā" iti | "tathā" iti |
tasya ālabdhasya sū vāg apachakrāma | sū Manor era jāyām Mānūrim
praviveśa | tasyai ha sma yatra vadantyai śrin̄vanti tato ha sma era
asura-rākshasāni mr̄idyamānāni yanti | te ha asurāḥ samūdire "ilo rai
naḥ pāpiyāḥ sachate bhūyo hi mānushī vāg vaduti" iti | *Kilātakulī* ha
era ūchatuḥ "śraddhā-devo rai Manur āvūm nv eva vedāva" iti | tau
ha āgatya ūchatur "*Mano yājayāva tvā*" iti | "kena" iti | "enayā
eva jāyayā" iti | "tathā" iti | tasyai ālabdhāyai sū vāg apachakrāma
sū yajnam eva yajna-pātrāni praviveśa | tato ha enām na śekutur nirhan-
tum | sū eshū asura-ghnī vāg udvadati | sa yasya ha evaṁ vidushaḥ ctūm
atra vācham pratyudvādayanti pāpiyāṁśo ha eva asya sapatnāḥ bhavanti |

"Manu had a bull. Into it an Asura-slaying, enemy-slaying voice had entered. In consequence of this (bull's) snorting and bellowing, Asuras and Rakshasas were continually destroyed. Then the Asuras

said : 'This bull, alas, does us mischief; how shall we overcome him?' Now there were two priests of the Asuras called Kilāta and Akuli. They said: 'Manu is a devout believer: let us make trial of him.' They went and said to him, 'let us sacrifice for thee.' 'With what (victim)?' he asked. 'With this bull,' they replied. 'Be it so,' he answered. When it had been slaughtered, the voice departed out of it, and entered into Manu's wife Manavī. Wherever they hear her speaking, the Asuras and Rākshasas continue to be destroyed in consequence of her voice. The Asuras said: 'She does us yet more mischief; for the human voice speaks more.' Kilāta and Akuli said, 'Manu is a devout believer: let us make trial of him.' They came and said to him, 'Manu, let us sacrifice for thee.' 'With what (victim)?' he asked. 'With this (thy) wife,' they replied. 'Be it so,' he answered. When she had been slaughtered the voice departed out of her and entered into the sacrifice and the sacrificial vessels. Thence they were unable to expel it. This is the Asura-slaying voice which speaks out (when the two stones are struck with the śamyā, as a part of the ceremonial). Wretched become the enemies of that man for whom, when he knows this, they cause this voice here to reverberate."

Taitt. Br. iii. 2, 5, 9. *Manoh śraddhā-derasya yajamānasya asura-ghnī rāg yajnāyudhesu pravishṭā āsit | te 'surāḥ yāvanto yajnāyudhānām udvadatām upāśrin̄vans te parābharan |*

"An asura-slaying voice had entered into the sacrificial implements of the devout believer and sacrificer Manu. The Asuras, as many as heard the sacrificial implements sounding, were overcome."

Kāṭhaka Br. ii. 30, 1.⁴⁵ *Manor vā kapālāny āsan | tair yāvato yāvato 'surān abhyupādadhat te parābharan | atha tarhi Trishṭhā-varūtri⁴⁶ āstām asura-brahmau | tā asurāḥ abrurann "imāni shaṭ kapālāni yāche-thām" iti | tau prataritvānā abhiprāpadyetām "Vāyare Agne Vāyare Indra" iti | "kiñkāmāu sthāḥ" ity abravīt | "imāni nau kapālāni dehi" iti | tāny abhyām adāīāt | tāny aranyām parāhṛitya sama-piñshṭām | tad Manor gāvo 'bhiryatishṭhanta | tāni rishabhaḥ samaleṭ | tasya ruvato yāvanto 'surāḥ upāśrin̄vāns te parābharan |*

⁴⁵ Extracted from Weber's *Indische Studien*, iii. 461 f. A translation of this, as well as of the next passage, is given by Prof. Weber in the *Journal of the German Oriental Society*, vol. xviii. 284 ff.

⁴⁶ Rāth in his Lexicon s. v. reads :

tau prātaritrānā abhiprāpadyetām “Vāyavē Agne Vāyavē Indra” iti | “kiṁkāmau sthāḥ” ity abrarīt | “anena trā ṛishabhenā yājayāra” iti | tat patnīm yajur vadantīm pratyapadyata | tasyāḥ dyām rāg ātishthat | tasyāḥ vadantyāḥ yāvanto ’surāḥ upāśriṇraṁs te parābharaṇ | tasmād naktānī strī chandratarānī radati | tau prātaritrānā abhiprāpadyetām “Vāyavē Agne Vāyavē Indra” iti | “kiṁkāmau sthāḥ” ity abrarīt | “anayā trā patnyā yājayara” iti | sā paryagnikritā āśīt | atha Indro ’chāyad “Manvam śraddhāderam Trishṭhāraruṭrī asura-brahmau jāyayā ṛyardhayatam” iti | sa āgachhat | so ’brarīd “ābhyaṁ trā yājayāni” iti | “na” ity abrarīd “na rai aham anayor īśe” iti | atithipatir vāra atither īśe” ity abrarīt | tā asmai prāyaśchhat | sa pratireso vediū kurvann āśta | tā apriśchhatām “ko’si” iti | “brāhmaṇaḥ” iti | “katamo brāhmaṇaḥ” iti | “kim brāhmaṇasya pitaram kim u pri-chhasi mātaram | śrutanā ched asmin vedyam sa pitā sa pitāmahāḥ” iti | tā arīttām “Indro rai” iti | tau prāpatatām | taylor yāḥ prokshāṇīr āpāḥ āśāṁs tābhīr anurisrijya śirshe aschhinat | tau vṛishaś cha yarāshaś cha abhavatām | tasmāt tau varsheshu śushyataḥ | adbhir hi hatau | tām paryagnikritām udāśrijat | tayā ”rdhnot | tāḥ imāḥ Mānavyāḥ prajāḥ | yat paryagni-kritām pātnīratam utsrijati yām eva Manur ṛiddhim ārdhnot tām ṛidhnoti |

“Manu had platters. All the Asuras, against whom he laid out the sacrifice with these were destroyed. Now Trishtha and Varuṭri were at that time the priests of the Asuras. The Asuras said to them, ‘ask for these six platters.’ These two arrived as morning guests, repeating the formula, ‘To Vāyu, o Agni, to Vāyu, o Indra.’ ‘What do you desire?’ asked Manu. ‘Give us these platters,’ they replied. He gave them to them. Taking them they smashed them in the forest. Then Manu’s cattle were standing round. The bull licked the platters. As many Asuras as heard him bellowing were destroyed. The two Asura priests came as morning guests, repeating the formula, ‘To Vāyu, o Agni, to Vāyu, o Indra.’ ‘What do you desire?’ enquired Manu. ‘Let us sacrifice for thee with this bull,’ they answered. He then came to his wife who was uttering a yajush. Her voice reached to the sky. As many Asuras as heard her speaking were destroyed. Hence a woman speaks more pleasantly by night. The two Asura priests arrived as morning guests, repeating the formula, ‘To Vāyu, o Agni, to Vāyu, o Indra.’ ‘What do you desire?’ asked Manu. ‘Let us sacrifice for thee with

this thy wife (as the victim),' they replied. The fire was carried round her. Then Indra perceived, 'Trishtha and Varuti, the two Asura priests are depriving the devout believer Manu of his wife.' He came and said (to Manu), 'Let me sacrifice for thee with these two Asura priests (for victims).' 'No,' answered Manu, 'I am not their master.' 'The host is master of the guest,' rejoined Indra. Manu then gave them to him. (Standing) near them he was making an altar. They asked 'Who art thou?' 'A Brähman,' he replied. 'What (class of) Brähman,' they enquired. He rejoined (with a verse), 'Why askest thou the father or the mother of a Brähman? If Vedic tradition is to be discovered in him, that is his father, that his grandfather.' They knew, 'this is Indra.' They fled. He threw after them the water which was there for consecration, and therewith cut off their heads. They became, (the one) a *vrisha*, (the other) a *yarasha* plant. Hence these (two plants) wither in the rains, because they were killed with water. He released her (Manu's wife) after the fire had been carried round her. By her he prospered. These are the creatures sprung from Manu. Whenever a man releases the victim offered to Agni Pātnivata, after fire has been carried round it, he prospers with the same prosperity with which Manu prospered."

Compare with this a passage of the Taitt. Sanh. vi. 6, 6, 1. *Indrah patniyā Manum ayajayat | tām paryagnikṛitām udasrijat | tayā Manur ārdhnōt | yat paryagnikṛitam pātnīratam utsrijati yām eva Manur ridhīm ārdhnōt tām eva yajamāna ridhnoti |*

"Indra was sacrificing for Manu with his wife (as the victim). He released her after the fire had been carried round her. By her Manu prospered. Whenever the worshipper releases the victim offered to Agni Pātnivata after fire has been carried round it, he prospers with the same prosperity with which Manu prospered."

I quote the following passages also from the interest which they possess as relating to a personage so ancient and venerable as Manu is reputed to be:

Aitareya Brähmana, v. 14. *Nābhānedishthaṁ vai Mānavam brahma-charyyaṁ rasantam bhrātaro nirabhajan | so 'bravīd etya "kim mahyam abhākta" iti | "etam eva nishṭhāvam aravaditūram" ity abruvan | tas-mād ha apy etarhi pitaram putrāḥ "nishṭhāvo 'vavaditā" ity eva āchakshate | sa pitaram etya abravit "trām ha vāva mahyām tata abhākekur"*

īti | tam pitā 'bravīd "mā putraka tad ādrithāḥ | Angiraso rai īme
 svargāya lokāya satram āsato | te shashṭham shashṭham era ahar āgatya
 muhyanti | tān ete sūkte shashṭhe 'hani śāṁsaya | teshāṁ yat sahasraṁ
 satra-pariveshaṇāṁ tat te svar yanto dāsyanti" iti | "tathā" iti | tān
 upait "pratigṛibhñita Mānarām sumedhasaḥ" iti | tam abrūvan "kiṁ-
 kāmo vadasī" iti | "idam era vāḥ shashṭham ahaḥ prajñāpayaṇī" ity
 bravīd "atha yad rai etat sahasraṁ satra-pariveshaṇam tad me svar
 yanto datta" iti | "tathā" iti | tān ete sūkte shashṭhe 'hany aśāṁsayaḥ |
 tato rai te pra yajnam ajānan pra svargaṁ lokam | tad yad ete sūkte
 shashṭhe 'hani śāṁsati yajnasya prajñātyai svargasya lokasya anukhyāt-
 yai | tām svar yanto 'bruvann "etat te brāhmaṇa sahasram" iti | tad
 enāṁ samākurvānam purushaḥ kṛishṇaśa-rāsy uttarataḥ upothāya abravīd
 "mama rai idam mama rai vāstuham" iti | so 'bravīd "māhyāṁ rai
 idam adur" iti | tam abravīt "tad rai nau tara era pitari praśnaḥ" iti |
 sa pitaram ait | tam pitā 'bravīd "nanu te putraka adur" iti | "adur
 era me" ity abravīt "tat tu me purushaḥ kṛishṇaśa-rāsy uttarataḥ upo-
 datishṭhat 'mama rai idāṁ mama rai vāstuham' iti ādīta" iti | tam pitā
 'bravīt "tasya era putraka | tat tubhyāṁ sa dāsyati" iti | sa punar etya
 abravīt "tara ha vāra kila bhagaraḥ idam iti me pitā ūha" iti | so
 'bravīt "tad aham tubhyam era dadāmi yaḥ era satyam avādīr" iti |
 tasmād eraṁ ridushā satyam era raditaryam | sa esha sahasra-sanir man-
 tro yad nābhānedishṭham | upa enām sahasraṁ namati pra shashṭhenā
 ahnā svargaṁ lokam jānāti yaḥ eraṁ reda |⁴⁷

"The brothers of Nābhānedishṭha disinherited him whilst he was living in the state of a Brahmachārin. Coming (to them) he said : 'What share have you given to me?' They replied, '(we have given thee) this judge and divider (as thy share).' In consequence sons even now speak of their father as the 'judge and divider.' He came to his father and said, 'Father, they have given thee to me as my share.' His father answered, 'Do not, my son, care about that. These Angirases are performing a sacrifice in order to (secure) the heavenly world; but as often as they come to the sixth day (of the ceremony) they become perplexed. Make them recite these two hymns (R.V. x. 61 and 62) on the sixth day; and when they are going to heaven, they will give

⁴⁷ This passage has been already translated into German by Prof. R. Roth, Journal of the German Oriental Society, vi. 244, and into English by Prof. Max Müller in his Anc. Sansk. Lit. p. 423 f., and by Dr. M. Haug in his Ait. Br. vol. ii. p. 341 f.

thee that provision of a thousand ⁴⁸ which has been made for the sacrifice.' He said, 'So be it.' He approached them, saying, 'Receive me, the son of Manu, ye sages.' They replied, 'With what object dost thou speak?' He said, 'Let me make known to you this sixth day; and then you shall give me this sacrificial provision of a thousand, when ye are going to heaven.' 'Let it be so,' they answered. He made them repeat these two hymns on the sixth day. They then knew the sacrifice, and the heavenly world. Hence when any one repeats these two hymns on the sixth day, it is with a view to a knowledge of the sacrifice, and to the revelation of the heavenly world. When they were going to the heavenly world, they said to him, 'This thousand, o Brûhman,⁴⁹ is thine.' As he was collecting (the thousand) a man in dark clothing rose up before him from the north, and said, 'This is mine; what remains on the spot is mine.' Nâbhânédishtha replied: 'But they have given it to me.' (The man) rejoined: 'It belongs to (one of) us; let thy father be asked.' He went to his father, who enquired: 'Have they not given thee (the thousand), my son?' 'They did give it to me,' he replied, 'but a man in dark clothes rose up before me from the north, and took it from me, saying, 'This is mine; what remains on the spot is mine.'" His father said: 'It is his; but he will give it to thee.' He returned, and said (to the man): 'This is thine, reverend sir, so my father says.' (The man) replied: 'I will give it to thee, who hast spoken the truth.' Wherefore one who has this knowledge should speak only truth. That is a hymn which bestows a thousand, that Nâbhânédishtha hymn. A thousand falls to his lot, he knows the heavenly world on the sixth day—the man who knows this."

Taittirîya Sanhitâ, iii. 1, 9, 4. *Manuh putrebhyo dâyañ vyabhajat | sa Nâbhânédishtham brahmacharryañ rasantañ nirabhajat | sa âgachhat | so 'bravît "kathâ mâ nirabhâg" iti | "na tvâ nirabhâksham" ity abravîd "Angirasah ime satram ûsate te survargam lokam na prajâ-nanti | tebhyâh idam brâhmañam brûhi | te survargam lokam yanto yo eshâm paśavas tâms te dâsyanti" iti | tad ebhyo 'bravît | te survargam*

⁴⁸ See R.V. x. 62, 7.

⁴⁹ The application of this title to Nâbhânédishtha is to be remarked, as his father Manu is recorded in the Puranic legends as ancestor of the solar race of kings. See the passage from the M. Bh. i. 3135 ff., quoted above, p. 126.

*lokam yanto ye eshām paśarāḥ āsaṁś tān asmai adaduḥ | tam pi
charantam yajna-vāstau Rudraḥ āgachhat | so'brarit "mama rai i me
paśarāḥ" iti | "adur vai mahyam imān" ity abrariit | "na rai tasya te
iśate" ity abrariit | "yad yajnarāstau hīyate mama rai tad" iti | tas-
mād yājnarāśu na abhyavetyam | so'brarit | "yajne māūbhaja atha te
paśūn na abhimāneye" iti | tasmai etam manthinaḥ saṁsrāvam ajuhot |
tato rai tasya Rudro paśūn na abhyamanyata | yatra etam eva vīdrūn
manthinaḥ saṁsrāvam juhoti na tatra Rudraḥ paśūn abhimanyata |*

"Manu divided his property among his sons. He disinherited his son Nābhānedishṭha who was living as a Brahmachārin. He came and said, 'How hast thou disinherited me?' 'I have not disinherited thee,' replied (his father); 'these Angirases are celebrating a sacrifice; they do not know the heavenly world; declare to them this Brāhmaṇa; and when they are going to heaven, they will give thee the cattle they have.' He declared the Brāhmaṇa to them, and when they were going to heaven they gave him the cattle they had. Rudra came to him as he was on the place of sacrifice employed with the cattle and said: 'These are my cattle.' 'But,' replied Nābhānedishṭha, 'they have given them to me.' 'They have not power to do so; that which is left on the place of sacrifice is mine,' answered Rudra. Hence the place of sacrifice must not be approached. (Rudra further) said: 'Give me a share in the sacrifice, and I shall not injure thy cattle.' He offered him this libation of soma and flour. Then Rudra did not injure his cattle. Whenever any one knows this libation of soma and flour and offers it up, Rudra does not injure his cattle."⁵⁰

A passage, quoted above, p. 26 f., from the Taittirīya Sanhitā, vi. 5,

⁵⁰ The reader who knows German, and wishes to see an able discussion of the question, whether the legend of Nābhānedishṭha, as given in the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa, has any real connection with the two hymns of the Rig-veda (x. 61 and 62) which are referred to in it, and whether it contains any reminiscence, or symbolical representation, of ancient historical events, may consult Prof. Roth's paper on the subject, in the 6th vol. of the Journal of the German Oriental Society, pp. 243 ff. The learned writer settles both questions in the negative, maintaining that the legend is manufactured out of certain misinterpreted allusions in the hymns, with the view of asserting the superiority of priestly knowledge to earthly power and worldly wealth, and that there never existed either a Nābhānedishṭha or a Manu. The object which I have in view in the collection of these texts does not require that I should express any opinion on these points. I only seek to ascertain what were the traditions received by the most ancient Indian writers themselves regarding the origin of their race, and not what was the historical value of those traditions.

6, 1 ff., may perhaps also be considered as affirming the descent of men from Manu when it declares them to be the offspring of Vivasvat; since the latter is regarded as the father of Manu.

In the Chhāndoga Upanishad, iii. 11, 4 (p. 178 of *Bibliotheca Indica*, vol. iii.) the following reference to Manu occurs :

Tad ha etad Brahmā Prajāpataye Prajāpatir Manave Manuḥ prajābhyaḥ | tad ha etad Uddälakāya Ārunaye putrāya jyeshṭhāya pitā brahma prorācha |

" This (doctrine) Brahmā declared to Prajāpati, Prajāpati to Manu, Manu to (his) offspring. This sacred truth was declared to his eldest son Uddälaka Aruṇi by his father."

The first half of this passage is repeated in viii. 15, 1, of the same work (p. 625).

In his commentary on the former of the two passages, Sankara Āchāryya gives this explanation :

Brahmā Hiranyagarbho Virāje Prajāpataye urācha | so 'pi Manare | Manur Ikshvākva-ādibhyaḥ prajābhyaḥ prorācha |

" Brahmā Hiranyagarbha declared it to the Prajāpati Virāj ; he to Manu ; and Manu declared it to his descendants Ikshvāku and the rest."

In his note on the second passage, viii. 15, 1, he varies somewhat in his explanation of the personages by whom the doctrine was transmitted :

Brahmā Hiranyagarbhaḥ Parameśvara rā tad-drārena Prajāpataye Kaśyapāya urācha | asāv api Manare sra-putrāya | Manuḥ prajābhyaḥ |

" Brahmā Hiranyagarbha, or the supreme Lord (Parameśvara) through his instrumentality, declared it to the Prajāpati Kaśyapa ; he to his son Manu ; Manu to his descendants."

In these two passages of the Chhāndoga Upanishad Brahmā is distinguished from Prajāpati, and Prajāpati from Manu, who again is said to have handed down the doctrine, not to any one person in particular, but " to the offspring," or " descendants " (*prajābhyaḥ*), apparently his own descendants. This Upanishad therefore seems to coincide in the doctrine of the hymns, and of the *Satapatha Brāhmaṇa*, that Manu was the progenitor of mankind. The Commentator, it will have been noticed, in one place declares that Prajāpati is identifiable with Virāj, and again that Kaśyapa is to be understood under that appellation. Virāj and Kaśyapa are not, however, generally regarded as the same.

Nor is Kaśyapa commonly considered to be Manu's father. In the passages from the Rāmāyaṇa, ii. 110, and Mahābhārata, quoted above, pp. 115 and 126, Kaśyapa is said to be the father of Vivasvat, and he again of Manu.

However this may be, as Manu is said to have handed down the sacred tradition to his descendants, we must suppose that those descendants included the whole of the progenitors of the Aryan Indians who were worthy of being made the depositaries of such a tradition; and must therefore conclude that the Chhāndogya Upanishad agrees with the passage quoted above, p. 126, from the Mahābhārata, in recognizing Manu as the progenitor of the Brāhmans, as well as the other castes.

SECT. III.—*Extracts from the Mahābhārata regarding Manu.*

I have already adduced in the preceding chapter, page 126, an important passage of the Mahābhārata, Ādiparvan verses 3128 ff., in which Manu Vaivasvata is expressly declared to have been the progenitor of mankind including the four castes. A legend of the deluge, corresponding to the one which has been adduced from the Satapatha Brāhmaṇa, in the last section, is also to be found in the Vana-parvan of the Mahābhārata, and although it does not represent Manu as the parent from whom the human race was reproduced, but as the creator by whom the world was renewed, after the flood, I shall extract the entire text. Its style of narration is tedious, when compared with the quaint brevity of the Brāhmaṇa; but I shall condense it as much as possible in the translation. It begins thus, verse 12747 :

Märkanḍeya uvācha | Vivasvataḥ suto rājan maharshiḥ suprātāparavān | babbūra nara-śārdūla Prajāpati-sama-dyutih | ojasā tejasā lakṣmyā tapasā cha viśeshataḥ | atichakrāma pitaram Manuh svāṁ cha pitāmaham | ūrddhva-bahur viśulāyām Badaryām sa narādhīpaḥ | eka-pāda-sthitas tīvram chachāra sumahat tapaḥ | 12750. Avāk-sirūs tathā chāpi netrair animishair dṛidham | so 'tapyata tapo ghorām varshānām ayutaṁ tada | tam kadāchit tapasyantam ādrachīraṁ jaṭā-dharam | Chiriṇi-tīram āgamyā matsyo vachanam abravit | “bhagavan kshudra-matsyo 'smi balavadbhyo bhayam mama | matsyebhyo hi tato māṁ tvam trātum arhasi suvrata | durbalam balavanto hi matsyam matsyā viśeshataḥ | āvadanti sudūrīttir vihitā naḥ sanātanī | tasmād bhayaughād mahato majjantam māṁ viśeshataḥ | trātum arhasi karttāsmi krite pratikṛitaṁ tava” | 12755.

Sa matsya-vachanaṁ śrutvā kṛipayā 'bhipariplutah | Manur Vaivasvato
 'grihnat tam matsyaṁ pāṇinā svayam | udakāntam upāṇīya matsyaṁ
 Vairavato Manuh | alinjire prākshipat tam chandrāṁśu - sadṛiśa-
 prabhe | sa tatra vavṛidhe rājan matsyah parama - satkrītah | pu-
 trarāt svikarot tasmai Manur bhāvam viśeshataḥ | atha kālena mahatā
 sa matsyah sumahān abhūt | alinjire yathā chaira nāsau samabhūtat
 kīla | atha matsyo Manuṁ dṛishṭrā punar evābhyaabhāshata | “bhā-
 gavan sādhu me 'dyānyat sthānaṁ sampratipādaya” | 12760. Uddhri-
 tyālinjirāt tasmāt tataḥ sa bhagavān Manuh | tam matsyam anayaād
 rāpiṁ mahutīm sa Manus tadā | tatra tam prākshipach chāpi Manuh
 para-puranjaya | athāvararddhata matsyah sa punar varsha-gaṇān ba-
 hūn | dri-yojanāyatā rāpiṁ ristritā chāpi yojanam | tasyāṁ nāsau sama-
 bharat matsyo rājīva-lochanah | richeshṭitum cha Kaunteya matsyo rā-
 pyāṁ viśampate | Manuṁ matsyas tato dṛishṭrā punar evābhyaabhāshata |
 “naya mām bhagavan sādho samudra-mahishīm priyām | Gangāṁ tatra
 niratsyāmi yathā rā tāta mānyase | 12765. Nideśe hi mayā tubhyāṁ
 sthātaryam anasūyatā | vriddhir hi paramā prāptā trat-krite hi mayā
 ‘nagha” | eram ukto Manur matsyam anayaād bhagavān raśi | nadīm
 Gangāṁ tatra chainam svayam prākshipad achyutah | sa tatra varṣidhe
 matsyah kanchit kālam arindama | tataḥ punar Manuṁ dṛishṭrā mat-
 syo rachanam abravīt | “Gangāyāṁ na hi śaknomi bṛihatrāch cheshṭitum
 prabho | samudraṁ naya mām āśu prasīda bhagavann” iti | uddhṛitya
 Gangā-salilāt tato matsyam Manuh svayam | samudram anayat pārtha
 tatra chainam avāśrijat | 12770. Sumahān api matsyas tu sa Manor
 nayatas tadā | āśid yatheshṭa-hāryyaścha sparśa-gandha-sukhaścha var |
 yadū samudro prakshiptah sa matsyo Manunā tadā | tata enam idāṁ
 vākyāṁ smayamāna ivābravīt | “bhagavan hi kṛitā rakshā trayā sarvā
 viśeshataḥ | prāpta-kūlaṁ tu yat kāryyāṁ trayā tach chhṛuyatām
 mama | acharād bhagavan bhaumam idāṁ sthāvara-jāngamam | sarvam
 eva muhābhāga pralayaām rai gamishyati | samprakshālana-kālo 'yām
 lokānāṁ sumupasthitah | tasmāt trām bodhayāmy adya yat te hitam
 anuttamam | trasānāṁ sthāvarāṇāṁ cha yach chēṅgaṁ yach cha nen-
 gati | tasya surasya samprāptah kālah parama-dārunah | nauś eha
 kārayitavyā te dṛidhā yukta-vaṭārakā | tatra saptarshibhiḥ sārddham
 āruhethā mahāmune | vijāni chaira sarvāni yathoktāni dvijaiḥ pura |
 tasyāṁ ārohayer nāvi susanguptāni bhāgaśah | nau-sthāś eha mām
 pratīkshethās tato muni-juna-priya | āgamishyāmy ahaṁ śringi vijno-

yas tena tāpasa | eram etat trayā kāryam āpriśhṭo 'si vrājāmy aham |
 tā na śakyā mahatyo vai āpas tarttum mayā vinā | 12780. Nābhi-
 śankym idāṁ chāpi vachanam me trayā viḍho” | “evāṁ karishye”
 iti tam sa matsyam pratyabhāshata | jagmatuś cha yathākāmam anu-
 jnāpya parasparam | tato Manur mahārāja yathoktam matsyakena ha |
 vijñāyā ādāya sarvāṇī sāgaram pupluve tadā | naukayā śubhayā vira
 mahorminam arindama | chintayāmāsa cha Manus tam matsyam pri-
 thirīpate | sa cha tach-chintitam jnātvā matsyah parapuranjaya | śringī
 tatrājagāmāśu tadā Bharata-sattama | taṁ dṛishṭvā manuja-vyāghra
 Manur matsyam jalārṇave | 12785. Śringinām tam yathoktena rūpenā-
 drim irochhritam | vaṭārakamayam pāśam atha matsyasya mūrdhani |
 Manur manuja-śārdūla tasmin śringe nyareśyat | saṁyatas tena pāśena
 matsyah para-puranjaya | vegena mahatā nāvam prākarshal laranām-
 bhasi | sa cha tāṁs tārayan nāvā samudram manujesvara | nrityamānam
 ivormibhir garjamānam irāmbhasā | kshobhyamāṇā mahāvātaiḥ sā nau-
 tasmin mahodadhabu | ghūrnate chapalera strī mattā para-puranjaya |
 nairā bhūmir na cha diśah pradiso vā chakūśire | 12790. Sarvam ām-
 bhasam evāśit khaṁ dyauś cha narapungara | erambhūte tadā loke sankule
 Bharatarshabha | adriśyanta saptarshayah Manur matsyas tathaiva cha |
 evam bahūn varsha-gaṇān tāṁ nāvam so'tha matsyakah | chakarshātandrito
 rājan tasmin salila-sanchaye | tato Hīmarataḥ śringāṁ yat param Bharatar-
 shabha | tatrākarshat tato nāvāṁ sa matsyah Kurunandana | athābravīt
 tadā matsyas tāṁ ṛishin prahasan śanaiḥ | “asmin Hīmarataḥ śringe nāvāṁ
 badhnīta mūchiram” | sā baddhā tatra tais tūrṇam ṛishibhir Bharatarshab-
 ha | 12795. Naur matsyasya vachaḥ śrutrā śringe Hīmaratas tadā | tach
 cha Naubandhanaṁ nāma śringam Hīmarataḥ param | khyātam adyāpi
 Kaunteya tad viddhi Bharatarshabha | athābravīd anismishas tāṁ ṛishin
 sa hitas tadā | “aham Prajāpatir Brahmā yat-parāṁ nādhigamyate |
 matsya-rūpeṇa yūyaṁ cha mayā 'smād mokshitā bhayāt | Manunā cha
 prajāḥ sarvāḥ sa-devāsura-mōnushāḥ | srashṭaryāḥ sarva-lokāś cha yach
 chengāṁ yach cha nengati | tapasā chāpi tīrreṇa pratibhā 'syā bharish-
 yati | mat-prasādāt prajā-sarge na cha mohāṁ gamishyati” | 12800. Ity
 uktrā vachanam matsyah kṣaṇenādarśanāṁ gataḥ | srashṭu-kāmaḥ prajāś
 chāpi Manur Vaivasataḥ svayam | pramūḍho 'bhūt prajā-sarge tapas tepe
 mahat tataḥ | tapasā mahatā yuktaḥ so'tha srashṭum prachakrame | sar-
 vāḥ prajā Manuḥ sākshād yathāvad Bharatarshabha | ity etad mūtsyakam
 nāma purāṇam parikīrtitam |

" 12747. Mārkandeya said: There was a great rishi Manu, son of Vivasvat, majestic, in lustre equal to Prajāpati. In energy, fiery vigour, prosperity, and austere fervour he surpassed both his father and his grandfather. Standing with uplifted arm, on one foot, on the spacious Badari, he practised intense austere fervour. 12750. This direful exercise he performed, with his head downwards,⁵¹ and with unwinking eyes, for 10,000 years. Once, when, clad in dripping rags, with matted hair, he was so engaged, a fish came to him on the banks of the Chirinī, and spake: 'Lord, I am a small fish; I dread the stronger ones, and from them you must save me. For the stronger fish devour the weaker; this has been immemorially ordained as our means of subsistence. Deliver me from this flood of apprehension in which I am sinking, and I will requite the deed.' 12755. Hearing this, Manu, filled with compassion, took the fish in his hand, and bringing him to the water threw him into a jar bright as a moon-beam. In it the fish, being excellently tended, grew; for Manu treated him like a son. After a long time he became very large, and could not be contained in the jar. Then, seeing Manu, he said again: 'In order that I may thrive, remove me elsewhere.' 12760. Manu then took him out of the jar, brought him to a large pond, and threw him in. There he continued to grow for very many years. Although the pond was two *yojanas* long, and one *yojana* broad, the lotus-eyed fish found in it no room to move; and again said to Manu: 'Take me to Gangā, the dear queen of the ocean-monarch; in her I shall dwell; or do as thou thinkest best, (12765) for I must contentedly submit to thy authority, as through thee I have exceedingly increased.' Manu accordingly took the fish and threw him into the river Gangā. There he waxed for some time, when he again said to Manu: 'From my great bulk I cannot move in the Gangā; be gracious and remove me quickly to the ocean.' Manu took him out of the Gangā; and cast him into the sea. 12770. Although so huge, the fish was easily borne, and pleasant to touch and smell, as Manu carried him. When he had been thrown into the ocean he said to Manu: 'Great lord, thou hast in every way preserved me: now hear from me what thou must do when the

⁵¹ He could not have stood on one foot and with his head downwards (if this means standing on his head) at one and the same time. The text may mean that these attitudes were successively adopted

time arrives. Soon shall all these terrestrial objects, both fixed and moving, be dissolved. The time for the purification of the worlds has now arrived. I therefore inform thee what is for thy greatest good. 12775. The period dreadful for the universe, moving and fixed, has come. Make for thyself a strong ship, with a cable attached ; embark in it with the seven rishis, and stow in it, carefully preserved and assorted, all the seeds which have been described of old by Brāhmans.⁵² When embarked in the ship, look out for me : I shall come recognizable by my horn. So shalt thou do ; I greet thee and depart. These great waters cannot be crossed over without me. 12780. Distrust not my word.' Manu replied, 'I shall do as thou hast said.' After taking mutual leave they departed each on his own way. Manu then, as enjoined, taking with him the seeds, floated on the billowy ocean in the beautiful ship. He then thought on the fish, which, knowing his desire, arrived with all speed, distinguished by a horn. When Manu saw the horned leviathan, lofty as a mountain, he fastened the ship's cable to the horn. Being thus attached, the fish dragged the ship with great rapidity, transporting it across the briny ocean which seemed to dance with its waves and thunder with its waters. Tossed by the tempests, the ship whirled like a reeling and intoxicated woman. Neither the earth, nor the quarters of the world appeared ; (12790) there was nothing but water, air, and sky. In the world thus confounded, the seven rishis, Manu, and the fish were beheld. So, for very many years, the fish, unwearied, drew the ship over the waters ; and brought it at length to the highest peak of Himavat. He then, smiling gently, said to the rishis, 'Bind the ship without delay to this peak.' They did so accordingly. 12795. And that highest peak of Himavat is still known by the name of Naubandhana ('the Binding of the Ship'). The friendly fish (or god, *animisha*) then said to the rishis, 'I am the Prajāpati Brahmā, than whom nothing higher can be reached. In the form of a fish I have delivered you from this great danger. Manu shall create all living beings, gods, asuras, MEN, with all worlds, and all things moving and fixed. By my favour and through severe austere fervour, he shall attain perfect insight into his creative work, and shall not be-

⁵² The S'atapatha Brāhmaṇa is silent as to these seeds, as well as to the seven rishis ; but it is possible that the reference here made to them may have been borrowed from some other ancient source.

come bewildered.' 12800. Having thus spoken, the fish in an instant disappeared. Manu, desirous to call creatures into existence and bewildered in his work, performed a great act of austere fervour; and then began visibly to create all living beings. This which I have narrated is known as the Mātsyaka Purāṇa (or 'Legend of the Fish')."

It will be observed that towards the close of this narrative it is stated that Manu (not Brahmā himself) was the creator of Men, as well of gods and asuras; and that no reference is made to the formation of separate castes.

The commentators seem disinclined to take this legend in its literal sense. We shall see below what reason the scholiast on the Bhāgavata Purāṇa assigns for this procedure. The following are some of the remarks of the Commentator Nilakanṭha on the above passage of the Mahābhārata :

" *Manoh*" manute ity abhimānātmako 'hankāro Manuh | riśeshena
vaste āchhādayati chit-prakāśam iti vireka-jnānam tad-vān tirasrān mā-
yāvī īsraraḥ "māyinām tu māheśvaram" iti śruteḥ | tasya Fairasratasya
charitam sancharaṇam | "aridyā-nāśe saty aridyako 'hankāraḥ kathaṁ
sancharati | nahi tantu-dāhe paṭas tishṭhati" ity ākshepaḥ | atra
para-brahmaṇa era rūpāntaram matsyākhyo jīraḥ | so 'hankāreṇa Manunā
uttarottara-śreshṭhesu alinjirādi-rūpeshu sthūla-dehesu tapo-balād ni-
pātyate | sa cha samudrākhye rairāje dehe nipātitaś cha kalpante aridyā-
nāśa-rūpe saty api dādha- (dagdha ?) -paṭa-nyāyena anuvarttamānam
ahankāraṁ saptarshi-sanjnaiḥ prāṇādibhiḥ vīja-sanjnaiḥ prārabdhā-
karmabhiḥ cha sahitām charama-deha-nāry ārūḍham rāsanā-raratrayā jīra-
matsyo pralaya-kāle 'py uhyamānam meru-śringa same 'chale bhavato
(Himarud-?) rūpe sadrāsanayā labdhāspadām vilinam anulakshya jīra-
matsyo 'darśanam prāptaḥ | ati-vilīne hy ahankāre jīvatvam naṣyati |
sa punar nirasta-jīra-bhāvo 'hankāro brahma-rūpalām āpanno yathā
pūrvam rāsanayā jagat srijati | naṣṭe 'py aridyākhye kāraṇe saṁsāra-
bhāna-lakṣhaṇām kāryām chakra-bhramam ira kanchit kālam anurart-
tate ity adhyāya-tātparyam | aksharārthaḥ tv ityādi |

" 'Manu,' that which imagines, denotes the consciousness of self (*ahankāra*), consisting in the idea that objects refer to one's self (*abhi-māna*).⁵³ 'Vivasvat' is he who possesses the discriminating know-
ledge that (such and such a thing) obscures the light of the mind, i.e.

⁵³ See Colebrooke's Misc. Essays, vol. i. 212.

he is the Illuder, Īśvara, for the Veda⁴⁴ speaks of ‘Maheśvara the Illuder.’ It is the ‘history,’ the action, of this son of Vivasvat, that is related. It is objected, ‘how can Ahankāra, which arises from ignorance, operate when ignorance is destroyed?’ for when the threads are burnt the cloth no longer remains’ Here the embodied soul, called in this passage a ‘Fish,’ is only another form of the supreme Brahma. This ‘Fish’ is thrown by ‘Manu,’ who is Ahankāra, through the power of austere fervour, into gross bodies, here represented by ‘a jar,’ ‘a pond,’ etc., which gradually rise in excellence. Being at last cast into the body of Virāj, called ‘the ocean,’ although ‘the close of the Kalpa’ means the destruction of ignorance, still the embodied soul denoted by the ‘Fish,’ contemplating Ahankāra still remaining like the ashes of burnt cloth, then entering, along with the breath and other vital airs named ‘the seven rishis,’ and the works of a former birth designated as ‘seeds,’ into the ship which signifies its last body, and then borne along even in the period of dissolution by the embodied soul itself symbolized as a ‘Fish,’ by means of the ‘rope’ of the remaining consciousness of past perceptions (*rūsanā*), obtaining at length through a consciousness of former perceptions, which were pure (*sadvāsanā*), a resting-place on a mountain like the peak of Meru, represented by the Himavat(?), and finally dissolved;—the embodied soul under the figure of a ‘Fish’ having contemplated all this,—vanishes. For when Ahankāra has become entirely dissolved, the state of the embodied soul ceases. Then Ahankāra, after the state of the embodied soul has been dispelled, obtains the condition of Brahma; but by its consciousness of past perceptions creates the world as before. Even when the cause called ignorance has been destroyed, the effect in the shape of the semblance of the world continues for some time, like the revolution of a wheel. Such is signification of the section.”

According to this allegorical interpretation “Vivasvat,” father of Manu, represents Īśvara, the Illuder. “Manu” is Ahankāra, or self-consciousness. The “Fish” is the embodied soul, which fancies itself to be, but is not, distinct from the Supreme spirit. Ahankāra, denoted by ‘Manu,’ places the embodied soul, symbolized by the “Fish,” in a variety of bodies gradually increasing in excellence, which are signified

⁴⁴ The words are taken from one of the Upanishads, to which, at the time of correcting this sheet, I am unable to give the necessary reference.

by the "jar," "pond," "Gangā," and "ocean." Although the end of the Kalpa means the removal of ignorance, still Ahankāra continues for a time; and along with the "seven rishis," who stand for the vital airs, and the "seeds," which are former works, embarks on the "ship," which is its last body, and is drawn over the ocean by the embodied soul by means of a "rope," which signifies the consciousness of former perceptions. Ahankāra at length finds a resting-place, denoted by Mount Himavat; and when it has been destroyed, the embodied soul vanishes. Ahankāra, however, passes into the form of Brahma, and, through the operation of the cause explained by the Commentator, creates the world anew.

It is scarcely necessary to remark that the narrator of the legend himself appears to have had no idea of making it the vehicle of any Vedantic allegory such as is here propounded.

The following is another version of the same legend from the Matsya Purāṇa :

i. 12.⁵⁵ *Purā rājā Manur nāma chīrñarān vipulaṁ tapaḥ | putre rājyaṁ samāropya kshamārān Ravi-nandanaḥ |* 13. *Mulayasyaika-deśe tu sarvātmagūna-saṁyutaḥ | sama-duḥkha-sukho vīrah prāptarān yogam uttamam |* 14. *Vachanām⁵⁶ varadaś chāsyā varshāyuta-śate gate | "varān vīṇīshva" provācha prītātmā Kamalāsanaḥ |* 15. *Eram ukto 'bravid rājā pranāmya sa Pitāmaham | "ekam evāham icchāmi tratto raram anuttamam |* 16. *Bhūta-grāmasya sarrasya sthāvarasya charasya cha | bhavayāṁ rakshaṇāyālam pralaye samupasthite" |* 17. *"Eram astv" iti viśrātmā tatraivāntaradhiyata | pushpa-vṛishṭiś cha mahati khāt papāta surārpitā |* 18. *Kadāchid āśrame tasya kurvataḥ pitri-tarpanam | papāta pānyor upari śaphari jala-saṁyutā |* 19. *Drishtrā tach-chhaphari-rūpaṁ sa dayālur mahipatiḥ | rakshaṇāyākarod yatnaṁ sa tasmin karukodare |* 20. *Ahorātreṇa chaikena shoḍaśāngula-ristṛitiḥ | so 'bharad matsya-rūpena "pāhi pāhīti" chābrarit |* 21. *Sa tam ādāya maṇike prākshipaj jalu-chāriṇam | tatrāpi chaikarātrena hasta-trayam ararddhata |* 22. *Punah prāhārttanādena Suhasrakiranātmajam | sa matsyāḥ "pāhi pāhīti" "tvāṁ ahaṁ śaraṇāṁ gataḥ" |* 23. *Tataḥ sa kūpe tam matsyam prāhīnōd Ravi-nandanaḥ | yadā na māti tatrapi kūpe matsyāḥ*

⁵⁵ This passage is extracted in Professor Aufrecht's Catalogue of the Bodleian Sanskrit MSS. p. 347.

⁵⁶ The Taylor MS. reads *babbhūva*, instead of *vachanam*.

sarmare | 24. *Kshiptah sa prithutam agat punar yojana-sammilam* | *tatrāpy āha punar dīnah “pāhi pāhi nṛipottama”* | 25. *Tataḥ sa Manunā kshipto Gangāyām apy avarddhata* | *yadā tadā samudre tam prākshipad medinīpatih* | 26. *Yadā samudram akhilam vyāpyasau samarasthitah* | *tadā prāha Manur bhītah “ko’pi tram asuretarah* | 27. *Atharā Vāsudevas tram anya idrik katham bharet* | *yojanāyuta-vimśatyā kasya tulyam bhared rapuh* | 28. *Jnātas tram matsya-rūpena mān khedayasi Keśava* | *Hṛishikeśa jagannātha jagad-dhāma namo ‘stu te”* | 29. *Eram uktaḥ sa bhagavān matsya-rūpi Janārdanah* | *“sādhu sādhu” iti chorācha “samyang jnātam trayā ‘nagha* | 30. *Achire-naivā kālena medinī medinīpate* | *bharishyati jale magnā sā-saila-ranakānanā* ; 31. *Naur iyaṁ sarva-derānām nikāyena rinirmilā* | *mahā-jirani-kāyasya rakṣaṇārtham mahīpate* | 32. *Sredāṇḍajodbhījā jīvā ye cha jīvā jarāyujāḥ* | *asyaṁ nidhāya sarrāṁs tān anarthāt⁵⁷ pāhi surrata* | 33. *Yugānta-rātābhīhatā yadā chalati naur nṛipa* | *śringe ‘smīn mama rājendra tademām saṁyamishyasi* | 34. *Tato layānte sarrasya sthārarasya charasya cha* | *prajāpatis tram bharitā jagataḥ prithivī-pate* | 35. *Evaṁ kṛite mahārāja⁵⁸ sarrajno dhritimān rishiḥ* | *manvantarādhīpaś chāpi dera-pūjyo bharishyasi* | 36. *Adhyāya ii. Sūta uvācha* | 1. *Evaṁ ukto Manus tena paprachhāsura-sūdanam* | *varshair kiyadbhir bhagavān bharishyat* antara-kshayah | 2. *Sattrāni cha kathaṁ nātha rakshishye Madhusūdana* | *trayā saha punar yogah kathaṁ vā bharitā mama* | 3. *Śrī-matsya uvācha* | *adya-prabhṛity anārishiṣṭir bharishyati mahītale* | *yārad varshaśataṁ sāgraṁ durbhikshāṁ narakārahām* | 4. *Tato ’lpa-sattra-kshayadā rcīmayah sapta dārunāḥ* | *sapta-sapter bharishyanti prataptāṅgāra-varshīnah* | 5. *Aurvānalo ’pi vikritīm gamishyati yuga-kshaye* | *vishāgniś chāpi pātālāt sankarshana-mukha-chyutah* | 6. *Bharasyāpi lalāṭotthas tritiya-nayanānalaḥ* | *jagad dagdhaṁ tathā kshobhaṁ gamishyati mahāmate* | 7. *Evaṁ dagdhā mahī sarrā yadā eyād bhasma-sannibhā⁵⁹* | *ākāśam ushmanā taptam bharishyati parantapa* | 8. *Tataḥ sa-deva-nakshatraṁ jagad yāsyati sankshayam* | *saṁvaratto bhīmanādaś cha dronaś chandro⁶⁰ balaḥakah* | 9. *Vidyutpatākah śonāmbuḥ saptaite laya-vāridāḥ* | *agni-prasveda-sambhūtāḥ plārayishyanti medinīm* | 10. *Samudrāḥ kshobham āgatya*

⁵⁷ Instead of *anarthāt* the Taylor MS. reads *anāthān*.

⁵⁸ The Taylor MS. reads here *evaṁ kṛita-yugasyādau*.

⁵⁹ *Kūrma-sannibhā* | Taylor MS.

⁶⁰ The Taylor and Guikowar MSS. have *chandro*.

chaikatrena vyavasthitāḥ | etad ekārṇavaṁ sarvam karishyanti jagat-trayam | 11. Divyāṁ nāvam⁶¹ imāṁ grīhya sarva-vijāni sarvaśāḥ | āropya rajvā yogena mat-prayuktena suvrata | 12. Saṁyamya nāvam mach-chhṛinge mat-prabhāvābhīrakshitaḥ | ekaḥ sthāsyasi deveshu dagdheshv apि parantapa | 13. Soma-sūryāv aham Brahmā chatur-loka-samanvītaḥ | Narmadā cha nadī puṇyā Mārkandeyo mahān ṛishiḥ | 14. Bhavo vedāḥ purāṇāḥ cha ridyābhiḥ sarrato vritam | trayā sārddham idāṁ sarrām sthāsyaty antara-sankshaye | 15. Eram ekārṇare jāte Chākshushāntara-sankshaye | vedān pravarttayishyāmi tvat-sargādau mahipate | 16. Sūta urācha | Eram uktrā sa bhagavāṁs tatraivāntaradhīyata | Manur apy āsthito yoguṁ Vāsudera-prasādajam | 17. Athābhūch cha tathā-bhūtaḥ samplaraḥ pūrva-sūchitah | kāle yathokte sanjāte Vāsudera-mukhodyate | 18. Śringī prādurbabbhūvātha matsya-rūpi Janārdanaḥ | Ananto raju-rūpena Manoh pārśvam upāgamat | 19. Bhūta-sangān samākrishya yoge-nāropya dharmarit | bhujanga-rajjrā matsyasya śringe nāram ayojayat | 20. Uparyy upasthitas tasyāḥ pranipatya Janārdanam | ābhūta-samplare tasminn atite yoga-sūyinā | 21. Priṣṭena Manunā proktam purāṇam matsyarūpiṇī | tad idānīm pravakshyāmi śrinudhvam ṛishi-sattamāḥ |

“ 12. Formerly a heroic king called Manu, the patient son of the Sun, endowed with all good qualities, indifferent to pain and pleasure, after investing his son with the royal authority, practised intense austere fervour, (13) in a certain region of Malaya (Malabar), and attained to transcendent union with the Deity (yoga). 14. When a million years had elapsed, Brahmā became pleased and disposed to bestow a boon, which he desired Manu to choose. 15. Bowing before the father of the world the monarch said, ‘I desire of thee this one incomparable boon, that when the dissolution of the universe arrives I may have power to preserve all existing things, whether moving or stationary.’ 17. ‘So be it,’ said the Soul of all things, and vanished on the spot; when a great shower of flowers, thrown down by the gods, fell from the sky. 18. Once as, in his hermitage, Manu offered the oblation to the Manes, there fell, upon his hands, along with some water, a Saphari fish (a carp), (19) which the kind-hearted king perceiving, strove to preserve in his water-jar. 20. In one day and night the fish grew to the size of sixteen fingers, and cried, ‘preserve me, preserve me.’ 21. Manu then took and threw him into a large pitcher, where in one night he

⁶¹ The Taylor MS. reads *evā veda-* nāvār “the chin of the Vedas.”

increased three cubits, (22) and again cried, with the voice of one distressed, to the son of Vivasvat, 'preserve me, preserve me, I have sought refuge with thee.' 23. Manu next put him into a well, and when he could not be contained even in that, (24) he was thrown into a lake, where he attained to the size of a yojana; but still cried in humble tones, 'preserve me, preserve me.' 25. When, after being flung into the Gangā he increased there also, the king threw him into the ocean. 26. When he filled the entire ocean, Manu said, in terror, 'Thou art some god, (27) or thou art Vāsudeva; how can any one else be like this? Whose body could equal 200,000 yojanas? 28. Thou art recognised under this form of a fish, and thou tormentest me, Kēśava; reverence be to thee, Hrishikeśa, lord of the world, abode of the universe!' 29. Thus addressed, the divine Janārdana, in the form of a fish, replied: 'Thou hast well spoken, and hast rightly known me. 30. In a short time the earth with its mountains, groves, and forests, shall be submerged in the waters. 31. This ship has been constructed by the company of all the gods⁶² for the preservation of the vast host of living creatures. 32. Embarking in it all living creatures, both those engendered from moisture and from eggs, as well as the viviparous, and plants, preserve them from calamity. 33. When driven by the blasts at the end of the yuga, the ship is swept along, thou shalt bind it to this horn of mine. 34. Then at the close of the dissolution thou shalt be the Prajāpati (lord of creatures) of this world, fixed and moving. 35. When this shall have been done,⁶³ thou, the omniscient, patient rishi, and lord of the Manyantara, shalt be an object of worship to the gods.'

2nd Adhyāya: "1. Sūta said: Being thus addressed, Manu asked the slayer of the Asura, 'In how many years shall the (existing) Manvantara come to an end? 2. And how shall I preserve the living creatures? or how shall I meet again with thee?' The fish answered: 'From this day forward a drought shall visit the earth for a hundred years and more, with a tormenting famine.⁶⁴ 4. Then the seven direful rays of the sun, of little power, destructive, shall rain burning charcoal. 5. At the close of the yuga the submarine fire shall burst forth,

⁶² The reading of the Taylor MS. here is partially erased; but it may have been *sarva-vedānūm*, "of all the Vedas." Compare the various reading in verse 11 of the next adhyāya.

⁶³ According to the reading of the Taylor MS. we should have to substitute the words, "Thus at the beginning of the Krita age, thou" etc.

while the poisonous flame issuing from the mouth of Sankarshana (shall) blaze) from Patala, and the fire from Mahadeva's third eye shall issue from his forehead. Thus kindled the world shall become confounded.

7. When, consumed in this manner, the earth shall become like ashes, the æther too shall be scorched with heat. 8. Then the world, together with the gods and planets, shall be destroyed. The seven clouds of the period of dissolution, called Sañvartta, Bhimanāda, Drona, Chanda, Balāhaka, (9) Vidyutpatāka, and Sunāmbu, produced from the steam of the fire, shall inundate the earth. 10. The seas agitated, and joined together, shall reduce these entire three worlds to one ocean. 11. Taking

this celestial ship, embarking on it all the seeds, and through contemplation fixed on me fastening it by a rope (12) to my horn, thou alone shalt remain, protected by my power, when even the gods are burnt up.

13. The sun and moon, I Brahmā with the four worlds, the holy river-

Narmadā,¹⁴ the great rishi Mürkandeya, (14) Mahadeva, the Vedas, the

Purāna with the sciences,—these shall remain with thee at the close of the Manvantara. 15. The world having thus become one ocean at the

end of the Chākshusha manvantara, I shall give currency to the Vedas at the commencement of thy creation.' 16. Sūta continued: Having

thus spoken, the divine Being vanished on the spot; while Manu fell into a state of contemplation (*yoga*) induced by the favour of Vāsudeva.

17. When the time announced by Vāsudeva had arrived, the predicted deluge took place in that very manner. Then Janārdana appeared in

the form of a horned fish; (the serpent) Ananta came to Manu in the shape of a rope.¹⁵ 19. Then he who was skilled in duty (i.e. Manu)

drew towards himself all creatures by contemplation (*yoga*) and stowed them in the ship, which he then attached to the fish's horn by the

serpent-rope, (20) as he stood upon the ship, and after he had made obeisance to Janārdana. 21. I shall now declare the Purāna which,

in answer to an enquiry from Manu, was uttered by the deity in the form of the fish, as he lay in a sleep of contemplation till the end of the universal inundation: Listen." The Matsya Purāna gives us no further information here about the progress and results of the deluge; and this narrative does not appear to be ever afterwards resumed.

¹⁴ In the opinion of this writer, therefore, the Narmadā (Nerbudda) must have been a holier stream than the Gangā: otherwise we should have expected him to select the latter as the river to be preserved at the dissolution.

The Bhāgavata P. viii. 24, 7, gives the same story with variations as follows :

Āśid atīta-kalpānte brāhma naimittiko layaḥ | samudropaplutās tatra
lokā bhūr-ādayo nṛipā | 8. Kālenāgata-nidrasya Dhātuḥ śisayishor baliḥ |
mukhato nissritān vedān Hayagrīvo 'ntike 'harat | 9. Jnātrā tad dāna-
vendrasya Hayagrīvasya cheshtitam | dadhāra śaphari-rūpam bhagarān
Harir īśvaraḥ | 10. Tatra rāja-ṛishiḥ kaścid nāmnā Satyavrato mahān |
Nārāyaṇa-paro 'tapyat tapaḥ sa salilāśanaḥ | 11. Yo 'sāv asmin mahā-
kalpe tanayaḥ sa Viśvarataḥ | Srūddhadera iti khyāto manutre Hariṇā
'rpitaḥ | 12. Ekadha Kṛitamālāyām kurvato jala-tarpaṇam | tasyānjaly-
udake kāchich chhaphary ekā 'bhyapadyata | 13. Satyavrato 'njali-gatām
saha toyena Bhārata | utsasarya nadī-toye śaphariṁ Dravidēśvaraḥ | tam
āha sātikaruṇam mahākāruṇikām nṛipam | yādobhyo jnāti-ghātibhyo
dīnām mām dīnavatsala | kathaṁ risijase rājan bhūtām asmin sarij-jale |
. 32. Saptame 'dyatanād ūrddham ahany etad arindama | ni-
mankshyaty apyayāmbhodhau trailokyam bhūr-bhūrādikam | 33. Triloc-
yām liyamānāyām saṁvarttāmbhasi rai tadā | upasthāsyati nauḥ kāchid
riśālā trām Mayeritā | 34. Traṁ tārad oshadhīḥ sarrā vījāny uchchā-
vachāni cha | saptarshibhiḥ parirṛitaḥ sarra-sattropavīnhitaḥ | 45.
Āruhya vīhatiṁ nāraṁ richarishyasya ariklarāḥ | ekārṇare nirālokoe
rīshīnām eva rarchasā | 36. Dodhūyamānām tām nāraṁ samīreya bali-
yasā | upasthitasya me śringe nibadhñihī mahāhinā | 37. Ahaṁ trām
rīshibhiḥ sākām sahanāvram udanratī | rikarshan richarishyāmi yāvad
Brāhmī niśā prabho | 41. Tulaḥ samudraḥ udevalaḥ surataḥ
plāvayan mahīm | vardhamāno mahāmeghair varshadbhiḥ samadrīsyata |
42. Dhyāyan bhagarat-ādeśān dadṛiṣe nāvam āgatām | tām āruroha
viprendrair ādāyaushadhi-vīrudhaḥ | 43. Tam ūchur munayah prītā
rājan dhyāyasra Keśavam | sa vai naḥ sankatād asmād avitā śām vidhā-
syati | 44. So 'nudhyātas tato rājnā prādūrāśid mahārṇare | eka-śringa-
dharo matsyo haimo niyuta-yojanāḥ | 45. Nibadhyā nāraṁ tach-chhṛinge
yathokto Hariṇā purā | varatreṇāhinā tushṭas tushṭāra Madhusūdanam |
. 54. Ity uktavantaṁ nṛipatim bhagavān Ādipūrushah | matsya-
rūpi mahāmbhodhau vīharaṁs tattvam abravīt | 55. Purāṇa-saṁhitām
diryām Sāṅkhya-Yoga-kriyāvatīm | Salyavrataḥ rājarsher ātma-guh-
yam aśeshataḥ | 56. Āśraushīd rīshibhiḥ sākām ātma-tattvam asaṁ-
śayam | nāvy āśino bhagavatā proktam brahma sanātanam | 57. Atīta-
pralayāpāye utthitūya sa Vedhass | hatvūśuraṁ Hayagrīvaṁ vedān prat-

*yāharad Hariḥ | 58. Sa tu Satyavrato rājā jnāna-vijnāna-samyutah
Vishnoḥ prasādāt kalpe 'smīn āśid Vaivasvato Manuḥ |*

1. "7. At the close of the past Kalpa there occurred an occasional dissolution of the universe arising from Brahmā's nocturnal repose; in which the Bhūrloka and other worlds were submerged in the ocean. 8. When the creator, desirous of rest, had under the influence of time been overcome by sleep, the strong Hayagrīva coming near, carried off the Vedas which had issued from his mouth. 9. Discovering this deed of the prince of the Dānavas, the divine Hari, the Lord, took the form of a Saphari fish. 10. At that time a certain great royal rishi, called Satyavrata, who was devoted to Nārāyaṇa, practised austere fervour, subsisting on water. 11. He was the same who in the present great Kalpa is the son of Visvasvat, called Srūddhadeva,⁶⁵ and was appointed by Hari to the office of Manu. 12. Once, as in the river Kṛitamālā he was offering the oblation of water to the Pitrīs, a Saphari fish came into the water in the hollow of his hands. 13. The lord of Dravida, Satyavrata, cast the fish in his hands with the water into the river. 14. The fish very piteously cried to the merciful king, 'Why dost thou abandon me poor and terrified to the monsters who destroy their kindred in this river?' [Satyavrata then took the fish from the river, placed it in his waterpot, and as it grew larger and larger, threw it successively into a larger vessel, a pond, various lakes, and at length into the sea. The fish objects to be left there on the plea that it would be devoured; but Manu replies that it can be no real fish, but Vishnu himself; and with various expressions of devotion enquires why he had assumed this disguise, verses 15–31.] The god replies: 32. "On the seventh day after this the three worlds Bhūrloka, etc., shall sink beneath the ocean of the dissolution. 33. When the universe is dissolved in that ocean, a large ship, sent by me, shall come to thee. 34. Taking with thee the plants and various seeds, surrounded by the seven rishis, and attended by all existences, (35) thou shalt embark on the great ship, and shalt without alarm move over the one dark ocean, by the sole light of the rishis. When the ship shall be vehemently shaken by

⁶⁵ *Naimittika*. See above p. 45.

Manu is called S'rāddhadeva in the Mahābhārata also, S'āntip. 4507. In the Brāhmaṇas, however, he receives the appellation, or epithet, not of *S'rāddhadeva*, but of *S'rāddhādeva*. See above, p. 188 ff.

the tempestuous wind, fasten it by the great serpent to my horn—for I shall come near. 37. So long as the night of Brahmā lasts, I shall draw thee with the rishis and the ship over the ocean.” [The god then disappears after promising that Satyavrata shall practically know his greatness and experience his kindness, and Satyavrata awaits the predicted events, verses 38–40.] 41. “Then the sea, augmenting as the great clouds poured down their waters, was seen overflowing its shores and everywhere inundating the earth. 42. Meditating on the injunctions of the deity, Satyavrata beheld the arrival of the ship, on which he embarked with the Brāhmans, taking along with him the various kinds of plants. 43. Delighted, the Munis said to him, ‘meditate on Keśava; he will deliver us from this danger, and grant us prosperity.’ 44. Accordingly when the king had meditated on him, there appeared on the ocean a golden fish, with one horn, a million yojanas long. 45. Binding the ship to his horn with the serpent for a rope, as he had been before commanded by Hari, Satyavrata lauded Madhusūdana.” [Verses 46–53 contain the hymn.] 54. When the king had thus spoken, the divine primeval Male, in the form of a fish, moving on the vast ocean declared to him the truth; (55) the celestial collection of Puranas, with the Sāṅkhya, Yoga, the ceremonial, and the mystery of the soul. 56. Seated on the ship with the rishis, Satyavrata heard the true doctrine of the soul, of the eternal Brahmā, declared by the god. 57. When Brahmā arose at the end of the past dissolution, Hari restored to him the Vedas, after slaying Hayagrīva. 58. And King Satyavrata, master of all knowledge, sacred and profane, became, by the favour of Viṣṇu, the son of Vivasvat, the Manu in this

Before adducing the remarks of the commentator Śridhara Svāmin on the passage last cited from the Bhāgavata Purāṇa, I shall quote one more version of the same legend from the Agni Purāṇa.⁶⁷ It is not of any great consequence, as, though more condensed, it coincides in purport with that in the Bhāgavata Purāṇa: which of the two has bor-

⁶⁷ This has been copied by Professor Aufrecht from a MS. of the Agni Purāṇa, belonging to the Royal Asiatic Society of London. I am informed by Prof. Aufrecht that the East India Office Library has two MSS. of the Vahni Purāṇa, which (although Vahni is, in later Sanskrit, synonymous with Agni) differ entirely in their contents from the Agni Purāṇa.

rowed from the other, or whether both are derived from a common source, I am unable to say.

Vasishtha uvācha | 1. *Matsyādi-rūpiṇāṁ Viṣṇum brūhi sargādi-kāranam* | *purāṇam brahma chāgneyaṁ yathā Viṣṇoḥ purā śrutam* | *Agnir uvācha* | 2. *Matsyāratāraṁ vakshye'haṁ Vasishtha śriṇu vai Ḫareḥ* | *avatāra-kriyāṁ dushṭa-nashṭyai sat-pālānāya hi* | 3. *Āśid atīta-kalpānte brāhma naimittiko layaḥ* | *sanudropaplutās tatra lokā bhūrādikā mune* | 4. *Manur Vairasrataś tepe tapo rai bhukti-muktaye* | *ekadū Kṛitalmālā-yāṁ kurato jala-tarpaṇam* | 5. *Tasyāñjaly-udake mateyaḥ srālpa eko 'bhypadyata* | *kṣeptu-kāmaṇi jale prāha "na māṁ kṣipā narottama* | 6. *Grahādibhyo bhayam me 'tra* | *tach chhrutrā kalaśe 'kṣipat* | *Manuṁ rīddhaḥ punar matsyaḥ prāla taṁ "dehi me rīhat"* | 7. *Tasya tad vachanāṁ śrutvā rājā 'tha randane 'kṣipat* | *tatra rīddho 'brāvi bhūpam "prītu dehi padam mama"* | 8. *Sarovare punaḥ kṣipto varṣidhe tat-pramāṇarān* | *ūche "dehi rīhat sthānam" prūkṣipach chāmbudhau tataḥ* | 9. *Laksha-yojana-vistīrṇaḥ kṣhana-mātrena so 'bharat* | *matsyaṁ tam adbhutaṁ dṛiṣṭvā vismitaḥ prābravīd Manuḥ* | 10. *"Ko bharān nanu rai Viṣṇu Nārāyaṇa namo 'stu te* | *māyayā mohayasi mām kīmar-thām cha Janārdana"* | 11. *Manur-ukto⁶⁸ 'brāvi matsyo Manuṁ rai pālāne ratam* | *avatīrṇo bharāyāsyā jagato dushṭa-nashṭaye* | 12. *"Saptame dirase tr abdhīḥ plārayishyati rai jagat* | *upasthitāyāṁ nārī traṁ rījadīni rīdhāya cha* | 13. *Saptarshibhiḥ parīṛito nisāṁ brāhmīṁ charishyasi* | *upasthitasya me śringe nibadhnīhi mahāhina"* | 14. *Ity uktrā 'ntardadhe matsyo Manuḥ kāla-pratīkshakah* | *stitaḥ samudra udrele nāram āruruhe tadā* | 15. *Eka-śringa-dharo matsyo haimo niyutayojanāḥ* | *nāram babandha tach-chhṛinge matsyākhyāṁ cha purāṇakam* | 16. *Suśrāva matsyāt pāpa-ghnām sa-śrutam śruti�hiḥ śrutam (?)* | *brahma-reda-prahartāraṁ Hayagrīraṁ cha dānaram* | 17. *Avadhīd veda-mantrādyān pālayāmāsa Keśavaḥ* |

"Vasishtha said : 1. Declare to me Vishnu, the cause of the creation, in the form of a Fish and his other incarnations; and the Puranic revelation of Agni, as it was originally heard from Vishnu. Agni replied : 2. Hear, o Vasishtha, I shall relate to thee the Fish-incarnation of Vishnu, and his acts when so incarnate for the destruction of

⁶⁸ Professor Aufrecht's transcript has this reading *Manur-ukto*; which I have retained, although I was not aware that *Manus* was commonly used for *Manu*, except in the Vedic period.

the wicked, and protection of the good. 3. At the close of the past Kalpa there occurred an occasional dissolution of the universe caused by Brahma's sleep, when the Bhūrloka and other worlds were inundated by the ocean. 4. Manu, the son of Vivasvat, practised austere fervour for the sake of worldly enjoyment as well as final liberation. Once, when he was offering the libation of water to the Pitrīs in the river Kṛitamālā, (5) a small fish came into the water in the hollow of his hands, and said to him when he sought to cast it into the stream, 'Do not throw me in, (6) for I am afraid of alligators and other monsters which are here.' On hearing this Manu threw it into a jar. Again, when grown, the Fish said to him, 'Provide me a large place.' 7. Manu then cast it into a larger vessel (?). When it increased there, it said to the king, 'Give me a wide space.' 8. When, after being thrown into a pond, it became as large as its receptacle, and cried out for greater room, he flung it into the sea. 9. In a moment it became a hundred thousand yojanas in bulk. Beholding the wonderful Fish, Manu said in astonishment: (10) 'Who art thou? Art thou Vishnu? Adoration be paid to thee, o Nārāyaṇa. Why, o Janārdana, dost thou bewilder me by thy illusion?' 11. The Fish, which had become incarnate for the welfare of this world and the destruction of the wicked, when so addressed, replied to Manu, who had been intent upon its preservation: (12) 'Seven days after this the ocean shall inundate the world. A ship shall come to thee, in which thou shalt place the seeds, (13) and accompanied by the rishis shalt sail during the night of Brahmanā. Bind it with the great serpent to my horn, when I arrive. 14. Having thus spoken the Fish vanished. Manu awaited the promised period, and embarked on the ship when the sea overflowed its shores. 15. (There appeared) a golden Fish, a million yojanas long, with one horn, to which Manu attached the ship, (16) and heard from the Fish the Matsya Purāṇa, which takes away sin, together with the Veda. Keśava then slew the Dānava Hayagrīva who had snatched away the Vedas, and preserved its mantras and other portions."

The following is Śridhara's comment, before referred to, on the legend of the deluge, as told in the Bhāgavata Purāṇa. These remarks have been well translated and explained in the preface to the 3rd volume of his edition of this Purāṇa (pp. xxxviii ff.) by M. Burnouf, whose elaborate discussion of the legend extends from p. xxiii to p. liv.

Atra idam chintyam "kim ayam mahāpralayo dainandino vā" iti | tatra tāvad "brāhma layah" (v. 7) iti "yo 'sāv asmin mahā-kalpe" (v. 11) iti cha ukter "mahāpralayah" iti prāptam "na" iti brūmāḥ | mahāpralaye prīthivy-ādīnām avaśeshasambharād "yāvad brāhmī niśā" (v. 37) ity-ādy-ukti- virodhāch cha | ato "dainandana" iti yuktam | na cha etad api sangachhate | saṁvarttakair anāvṛishṭy-ādibhir vinā akaśmād eva "saptame 'hani trailokyaṁ nimankshyati" (v. 32) iti mātreyokter anupapatteḥ | yathoktam prathama-skandhe "rūpam" (i. 3, 15) ity ādi tad api tadā durghaṭam | na hi pralaya-draye 'pi "mahimayyām nāry" ārohaḥ sambharati na cha Chākshusha-manvantare pralayo 'sti | tathā cha sati saptamo Manur Vaivasvataḥ ity api durghaṭam syāt | "trām tārad oshadhīḥ sarrāḥ" (viii. 24, 34) ity-ādi-nirdeśo 'pi na sangachhate | na hi tadā oshadhy-ādīnām satrānām cha arāśehaḥ sambharati | tasmōd anyathā varṇyate | naivāyām rāstaraḥ ko 'pi pralayah | kintu Satyavrata-saya jnānopadeśaya ārirbhūto bhagarān rairāgyārtham akasmāt pralayam ira darśayāmāsa yathā 'smīn era Fairasrata-manvantare Mārkan-deyāya darśitavān | tad-apēkshayā era cha "mahā-kalpe 'smīn" iti viśeshanām sangachhate | tathā cha "tataḥ samudraḥ udrelah sarrataḥ samadriśyata" (v. 41) iti tasyaiva yathā darśanam uktam ity eshā dik |

"Here we have to consider whether this was a great dissolution of the universe, or one of those which occur at the close of each day of Brahmā. If it be supposed from the expressions 'a dissolution proceeding from Brahmā' (v. 7), and 'he is the same who in this Mahākalpa' (v. 11), that it was a great dissolution, we reply,—no; because in a great dissolution the earth and other worlds cannot possibly remain in existence, and because this would be opposed to the words 'so long as the night of Brahmā lasts' (v. 37). Hence it might appear that it must be one of the dissolutions which occur at the end of a day of Brahmā. But this also is impossible, because it would be at variance with the Fish's words that 'the three worlds should be submerged on the seventh day,' (v. 32) suddenly, without the drought and other calamities which precede a dissolution. What is stated in the first book (iii. 15), 'at the deluge, in the Chākshusha Manvantara, he took the form of a Fish, and preserved Manu Vaivasvata, whom he placed in a ship formed of the earth,'⁶⁹ would also in that case be inconceivable; for

⁶⁹ Bhāgavata Purāṇa, i. 3. 15. *Rupaṁ sa jagriḥ mātroyām Chākshushodadhi-āśmavane | nāvy āropya mahimayyām apād Fairasratam Manum |* On this passage also

(1.) in neither of the two dissolutions could any one be placed 'in a ship in the form of the earth' (as the earth is submerged in the one case and altogether destroyed in the other); (2.) there is no dissolution of the world in the Chākshusha Manvantara; (3.) in the case supposed the existence of a seventh Manu, the son of Vivasvat would be impossible (for the fourteen Manus succeed each other in one Kalpa without the intervention of any dissolution). And in that case the command to take 'all the plants into the ship' (viii. 24, 34), would be inconceivable, since no plants or other such substances are left at such a period. Such being the fact, the narrative must be otherwise explained. It was in fact no real dissolution which is here related. But the deity, who appeared to teach Satyavrata knowledge, shewed him suddenly the semblance of a dissolution to instil into him dispassion, just as in the Vaivasvata Manvantara he shewed to Mārkandeya. And if referred to this, the words 'in this Māhakalpa' will be conceivable. And consequently the words 'Then the sea was beheld overflowing its shores on every side' are spoken with reference to what Satyavrata saw (in the vision). Such is an indication of the purport of the Section."

Sridhara Svāmin here reasons only upon the data supplied by the particular version of the story which he found before him in the Bhāgavata, and does not seem to have extended his researches so far as to ascertain whether the legend might not exhibit some variations as narrated in other Puranas. If he had turned to the Matsya Purāṇa he would have found that one of his objections, viz., that drawn from the absence of any reference to the calamities supposed to precede a dissolution, did not apply to the account there given; since that narrative expressly asserts that these premonitory signs were manifested. Others of his objections apply no doubt to the other narratives as well as to that in the Bhāgavata. According to the ordinary Puranic theory (see above, pp. 43 ff.) fourteen Manus exist in each Kalpa, and one succeeds another without the intervention of any *pralaya* or dissolution. It is obviously inconsistent with this theory to represent such a dissolution. Sridhara remarks : *Yadyapi manvantarāvasthāne pralayo nīsti tathāpi kenachit knutukena Satyavrataliya māyā pradarśit | yathā "akūṇde Mārkandeyāya" iti drashṭavyam |* "Although there is no dissolution at the end of a Manvantara, yet, through a certain sport an illusion was shown to Satyavrata, as in the other passage where it is said 'Suddenly to Mārkandeya,' etc."

as taking place either during the life of any of the Manus, or after his disappearance. It is even doubtful, or more than doubtful (Wilson's Vish. P. i. p. 50 f. and p. 44, above) whether one Manu can exist contemporaneously with another, and yet, according to the Matsya and Agni Purāṇas (see above, pp. 205 ff., 211 f.) Manu Vaivasvata is said to have lived during his predecessor's period, although the Bhāgavata avoids this difficulty by making Satyavrata the hero of the story and by representing him as being born again as Manu Vaivasvata at the beginning of the next Manvantara. (M. Burnouf's Preface above referred to may be consulted for further remarks on this subject.) The authors of the Mahābhārata and the Purāṇas do not, however, appear to have been so sensitively alive to inconsistencies of this description as Śridhara. Perhaps the system of Kalpas and Manvantaras may not have been so clearly defined, or so generally current, when the older parts, at least of the Mahābhārata, were composed, as at a later period.⁷⁰ And even the Puranic writers may not have cared very much to preserve a strict congruity in all that they wrote. In fact they may have had no great faith in the authority of speculations so arbitrary and artificial as those relating to the great mundane periods to which I refer,—speculations which were derived from no higher source than previous writers of their own class. The case, however, was different with the Commentators, who lived at a later period, and who seem to have regarded the established doctrine regarding Kalpas and Manvantaras as an article of faith.

There is, however, no doubt that, for the reasons above assigned, this legend of a Flood, such as is described in the Mahābhārata and the Purāṇas, does not fit into the system of Kalpas and Manvantaras. But what is the inference which we ought to draw from this circumstance? M. Burnouf believes (1.) that the theory of great mundane periods and periodical dissolutions of the universe was received in India from very early times (Bhāg. P. iii. Pref. p. xlvi.) and (2) that it was older than the legend of a deluge, as, although the latter may have been derived from ancient tradition, the style in which it is related in the Mahābhārata and the Purāṇas has nothing of the archaic colouring of the Itihāsas contained in the Brāhmaṇas, and it had not, so far as he knew,

⁷⁰ The Svūyambhuva Manvantara is mentioned in the S'āntip. verse 12658, but no details are given (*kṛte yuge mahārāja pura Svūyambhuva 'ntara*).

been found in any work of the class last named (p. xxvii.), and was not, he anticipated, likely to be discovered there (lii.). The conclusion which he deduces from these premises, and from the absence of any tradition of any great local inundation (pp. xlviij. and li.), is that, although, as related in the Mahābhārata and the Purāṇas, the legend of the deluge has received in some respects an Indian character (xxxij. ff.; xlvj. ff.), it is not in its origin Indian, (li.), but was most probably imported into Hindustan from a Semitic source, whether Hebrew or Assyrian (lii.-liv.). The first of M. Burnouf's premises, regarding the great antiquity of the system of Kalpas, Manvantaras, and mundane dissolutions, is not borne out by the Vedic hymns, or anything that has yet been found in the Brāhmaṇas (see above, pp. 45 ff.). And his anticipation that no reference to a deluge would be discovered in any of the older Indian records has proved incorrect, as is shewn by the legend of Manu quoted above (p. 181 ff.) from the Satapatha Brāhmaṇa.

Professor Weber, by whom attention was first drawn (in his *Indische Studien*, i. 160 ff.) to this passage, shows how materially it interferes with Burnouf's results. If there is no proof of the great antiquity of the cosmical theory which that great scholar supposes to be inconsistent with the early existence in India of any tradition of a deluge, whilst on the other hand there is distinct evidence that that tradition was actually current there at a much earlier period than he imagined, it is clear that his supposition of its having been introduced into that country from an exclusively Semitic source loses much of its probability.

The explanation by which Śridhara endeavours to maintain the consistency of the Puranic narratives and theories seems to be altogether unfounded. There is no appearance of the authors either of the Bhāgavata, or Matsya, or Agni Purāṇas having intended to represent the deluge as a mere vision. They evidently meant this narrative to be taken literally, just as much as anything else that they describe.

I shall now compare the versions of the legend given in the Mahābhārata and Purāṇas with each other, and with that quoted above from the Satapatha Brāhmaṇa.

I. The following are the peculiarities of the narrative in the Satapatha Brāhmaṇa :

(1.) It makes no reference to any great mundane periods, such as Kalpas or Manvantaras.

(2.) It does not speak of a dissolution of the world (*pralaya*), but of a flood (*augha*) which swept away all living creatures except Manu.

(3.) It does not fix the number of days or years after which the flood should come.

(4.) It speaks of Manu simply, without assigning to him any patronymic, such as Vaivasvata.⁷¹

(5.) It contains no allusion to the locality in which he was when the fish came to him.

(6.) It makes no mention of the fish being thrown into any river.

(7.) It is silent as to Manu being accompanied by any rishis when he embarked on the ship, and as to his taking any seeds along with him.

(8.) It speaks of the ship as having rested on the "Northern mountain," and of a place called "Manu's Descent."

(9.) It does not say anything of any deity being incarnate in the fish.

(10.) It represents Idū as produced from Manu's oblation, and as the mother of his offspring, begotten apparently in the natural way.

It is manifest from this abstract, when compared with what follows, that the flood described in the Brāhmaṇa is distinguishable in various respects from the dissolution, or *pralaya*, of the later works.

II. The legend as told in the Mahābhārata agrees with that of the S. P. Br. in some, and differs from it in other particulars:

(1.) It does not specify any Kalpa or Manvantara.

(2.) It speaks of a dissolution of the universe (*pralaya*), and of the time of its purification by water (*samprakshālana-kālah*) having arrived.

(3.) It makes the fish declare that this event should take place speedily (*achirāt*), and alludes to no antecedent calamities.

⁷¹ Manu Vaivasvata is however mentioned in S. P. Br. xiii. 4, 3, 3. "Manur Vaivasvato rājā" ity āha | *tasyā manushyā vatsah* | "He says 'Manu Vaivasvata king.' Men are his subjects." Further on, xiii. 4, 3, 6, Yama Vaivasvata is spoken of as King of the Pitris. Compare R.V. x. 14, 1; 17, 1. In the Vālakhilya hymns attached to the R.V. iv. 1, Indra is mentioned as drinking Soma in the house of Manu Vivasvat (not Vaivasvata). In the Atharva-veda, viii. 10, 24, Manu Vaivasvata is spoken of as the calf of the cow Virūj (*tasyā Manur Vaivasvato vatsah*). Yama is similarly spoken of in the preceding verse. In Vālakhilya, iii. 1, Indra is said to have drunk Soma in Manu Sūmvaruṇi's house. The connection of the words *Sāvarṇya* and *Sūmariṇi* with the word *manu*, "man," in R.V. x. 68, 8 f. and 11, no doubt gave rise to the idea of a Manu Sāvarpi. See Wilson's Vishnu P. tto. ed. pp. 266 ff., and Roth's remark in Journal Germ. Or. Soc. vi. 245 f., and R.V. x. 17, 2.

(4.) It assigns to Manu the patronymic of Vaivasvata, but mentions no other Manu.

(5.) It represents the fish as coming to him when on the banks of the Chirinī river.

(6.) It describes the fish as thrown into the Ganges before it was taken to the sea.

(7.) It speaks of Manu as embarking on the ship with the seven rishis, and as taking with him all the seeds described by the Brāhmans.

(8.) It declares that the ship rested on the highest peak of the Himalaya, which was thence called Naubandhana.

(9.) It makes the fish reveal himself as Brahmā Prajāpati.

(10.) It describes Manu not as begetting offspring but as creating all sorts of living beings including MEN.

III. The Matsya Purāṇa agrees in some points, and differs in others from the above details.

(1.) It states that Manu, whom it styles the son of the Sun (*Sahasrakiranātmaja*, and *Ravi-nandana*), i.e. Manu Vaivasvata, practised austerity after making over his kingdom to his son (v. 12). One might have supposed that he could only have done this in his own Manvantara; but it is said further on (v. 34 f.) that he was informed by the fish that when the dissolution should come to an end, he should become a Prajāpati and lord of the Manvantara; and he receives a promise that he should be preserved during the dissolution (ii. 12), which, as appears from v. 15, was to take place at the end of the Chākshusha Manvantara. After this he was to create the world anew. We must therefore suppose the writer to have regarded Manu Vaivasvata as existing during the period of his predecessor, but as then occupying the inferior position of a king. This difficulty is, as I have already remarked, avoided in the Bhāgavata, which makes King Satyavrata the hero of the story.

(2.) This Purāṇa speaks of a dissolution (*pralaya*) and yet (i. 15 ff.) represents Manu as asking and receiving from Brahmā as a boon that when that dissolution should arrive, he should be the preserver of all things stationary and moving.

(3.) It states that a hundred years and more would elapse before the dissolution, which was to be preceded by famine and various terrific phenomena.

(4.) It represents Manu as the son of the Sun. See under head (1.).

(5.) It mentions Malaya (Malabar) as the scene of Manu's austerity, and of the apparition of the fish.

(6.) It agrees with the Mahâbhârata in describing the fish as thrown into the Ganges, though at so great a distance from Malabar.

(7.) It is silent as to the seven rishis embarking on the ship, but speaks of Manu taking with him all sorts of creatures (living apparently) as well as seeds (chap. ii. v. 11).

(8.) It does not bring the narrative to a conclusion (see above, p. 207), and thus has no opportunity of saying anything of the place where the ship rested.

(9.) It speaks of Janârdana (Vishnu) as the god who was manifested in the Fish.

(10.) It refers to Manu as about to effect a creation (ii. 15), but also as preserving the existing animals and plants (ch. i. 15 ff., 31 f.; ii. 2, 19).

IV. According to the Bhâgavata Purâna:

(1.) The event described was an "occasional dissolution" (*naimittiko layah*, see above, p. 45) at the end of a Kalpa (viii. 24, 7); and yet in contradiction with this it had previously been alluded to (i. 3, 15) as occurring at the close of the Châkshusha Manvantara.

(2.) See head (1.).

(3.) The dissolution was to take place after seven days (viii. 24, 32); and no premonitory calamities are referred to.

(4.) The hero of the story is Satyavrata, king of Draviâ, who was born again in the present *mahâkalpa* as the son of Vivasvat (vv. 10, 11, 58).

(5.) The scene of the incidents, with which the narrative begins, was the river Kritamûlî, in the country of Draviâ.

(6.) The fish is not thrown into any river after it had been once taken out of the Kritamûlî, and had grown large.

(7.) Satyavrata is commanded to take with him into the ship the seven rishis, as well as plants, seeds, and all beings (*sarva-sattropâ-*

(8.) Nothing is said of the place where the ship rested.

(9.) Vishnu is the deity who took the form of a fish with the view of recovering the Vedas carried away by the Dânava Hayagriva (vv. 9, 57).

(10.) No mention is made in this chapter of any creation effected by Manu: but in ix. i. an account is given of his descendants.

V. The narrative in the Agni Purāṇa agrees with that in the Bhāgavata, except in its much greater conciseness, and in making Manu Vaivasvata, and not Satyavrata, the hero of the story.

SECT. IV.—*Legendary Accounts of the Origin of Castes among the Descendants of Manu and Atri, according to the Purāṇas.*

We have already seen that it is distinctly affirmed in a passage quoted above (p. 126) from the Ādiparvan of the Mahābhārata, verses 3138 ff., that men of all classes, Brāhmans, Kshattriyas, Vaiśyas, and Sūdras were descended from Manu, a statement which is clearly at variance with the notion of their having been separately created from different members of Brahmā. This tallies with the account of the origin of castes which is found in those parts of the Purāṇas which profess to record the history of the two royal races, the solar and the lunar, which are said to have sprung from Manu Vaivasvata and Atri.

The Vishṇu Purāṇa (which is here written in prose) makes the following statement regarding Manu's descendants :

iv. 1. 4. *Sakala-jagatām anādir ādibhūtaḥ rig-yajuh-sāmādimaya-bhagarad-Vishnumayasya Brahmano mūrttirūpam Hiranyagarbho brahmāñda-to bhagavān Brahmā prāg babbūra | Brahmanas cha dakshināngushṭha-jānmā Dakshaḥ prajāpatiḥ | Dakshasyāpy Adilīḥ | Aditer Vivasvān | Vivasvato Manuh | Manor Ikshvāku-Nṛiga-Dhrishta-Sāryāti-Narish-yanta-Prāṁsu-Nābhāganedishṭa-Kārūsha-Prishadhrākhyāḥ putrāḥ babhūruḥ | 6. Ishṭiñ cha Mitrā-Varunayor Manuh putra-kāmaś chakāra | 7. Tatrāpahute hotur apachārād Ilā nāma kanyā babbūra | 8. Saiva Mitra-Varuna-prasādāt Sudyumno nāma Manoh putro Maitreyāśit | punaś cha Īvara-kopāt strī satī Soma-sūnor Budhasya āśrama-samipe babhrāma | 9. Sānurāgaś cha tasyām Budhah Purūravasam ātmajam ut-pādayāmāsa | 10. Jāte cha tasminn amita-tejobhiḥ paramarshibhir ishṭimayah riūmayo yajurmayah sāmamayo 'tharvamayah sarvamayo mano-mayo jnānamayo 'kinchinmayo bhagavān yajna-purusha-svarūpi Sudyum-nasya puñṣṭram abhilashadbhir yathāvad ishṭah | tatprasādād Ilā punar api Sudyumno 'bhavat |*

" Before the mundane egg existed the divine Brahmā Hiranyagarbha, the eternal originator of all worlds, who was the form and essence of Brahmā, who consists of the divine Vishṇu, who again is identical with

the Rik, Yajush, Sāman and Atharva-Vedas. From Brahmā's right thumb⁷² was born the Prajāpati Daksha; Daksha had a daughter Aditi; from her was born Vivasvat; and from him sprang Manu. Manu had sons called Ikshvāku, Nṛiga, Dhṛishṭa, Saryāti, Narishyanta, Prāṁśu, Nābhāganedishṭa, Karuṣha, and Pṛishadhra.⁷³ Desirous of a son, Manu sacrificed to Mitra and Varuṇa; but in consequence of a wrong invocation through an irregularity of the hotṛi-priest, a daughter called Ilā was born. Then through the favour of Mitra and Varuṇa she became to Manu a son called Sudyumna. But being again changed into a female through the wrath of Iśvara (Mahādeva) she wandered near the hermitage of Budha the son of Soma (the Moon); who becoming enamoured of her had by her a son called Purūravas. After his birth, the god who is formed of sacrifice, of the Rik, Yajush, Sāman, and Atharva Vedas, of all things, of mind, of nothing,⁷⁴ he who is in the form of the sacrificial Male, was worshipped by the rishis of infinite splendour who desired that Sudyumna should recover his manhood. Through the favour of this god Ilā became again Sudyumna."

Regarding the different sons of Manu the Purāṇas supply the following particulars :

(1.) Pṛishadhra.—The Vishṇu Purāṇa says , iv. 1, 12 :

Pṛishadhras tu guru-go-badhāch chhūdratram āgamat |

"Pṛishadhra became a Sūdra in consequence of his having killed his religious preceptor's cow."

On the same subject the Harivaṁśa tells us, verse 659 :

Pṛishadhrō hiṁsayitrā tu guror gām Janamejaya | śāpāch chhūdratram āpannah |

"Pṛishadhra having killed his Guru's cow, became a Sūdra in consequence of his curse."

This story is variously amplified in the Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa, section cxii., and in the Bhāgavata Purāṇa ix. 2, 3-14. See Professor Wilson's note, Vishṇu Purāṇa, 4to. edit. p. 351, where the author remarks that

⁷² See above, p. 72 f.

⁷³ Compare with this the list of Manu's sons given in the passage from the M. Bh. Ādip. quoted above, p. 126. Nūbhānēdishṭa (not Nābhāganedishṭa) is mentioned in the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa, and Taittirīya Sanhitā (see above, p. 191), and S'aryāti in the S. P. Br. iv. 1, 5, 1. See Journ. Roy. As. Soc. for 1866, p. 11 ff. The Mārk. P. cxi. 3 ff., and the Bhāg. P. ix. 1, 11 ff. treat also of Manu's sons and of the birth of Ilā. See Wilson's Vishṇu P. 4to. ed. pp. 348-58, and Burnouf's Bhāg. P. vol. iii. pref. lxx. ff.

⁷⁴ *Akinchinmayah*, "not consisting of anything."

"the obvious purport of this legend, and of some that follow, is to account for the origin of the different castes from one common ancestor."

(2.) Karūsha.—The Vishṇu Purāṇa says, iv. 1, 13 :

Karūshāt Kārūshā mahābalāḥ Kshattriyā babbūruḥ |

"From Kārūsha the Kārūshas, Kshattriyas of great power, were descended."

The Bhāgavata Purāṇa, ix. 2, 16, says :

Kārūshād Mānarād āsan Kārūshāḥ Kshattra-jātayah | uttarāpatha-goptāro brahmaṇyā dharma-ratsalāḥ |

"From Karūsha, son of Manu, came the Kārūshas of the Kshatriya caste, protectors of the northern region, devout, and lovers of duty."

(3.) Nābhāga.—The Vishṇu Purāṇa says, iv. 1, 14 :

Nābhāgo Nedishṭa-putras tu raiśyatām agamat |

"Nābhāga, the son of Nedishṭa, became a Vaiśya."

The Mārkandeya Purāṇa says he was the son of Dishṭa, and relates how he became a Vaiśya, by marrying the daughter of a man of that class (section cxiii. and Wilson, p. 352, note). The Bhāgavata Purāṇa, ix. 2, 23, says he became a Vaiśya in consequence of his works (*Nābhāgo Dishṭa-putro 'nyaḥ karmabhir raiśyatām gataḥ*). And yet a long list of his descendants is given, and among them occurs Marutta who was a Chakravarttin, or universal monarch (Vishṇu P. iv. 1. 15-17; Bhāg. P. ix. 2, 23-28; Mārk. P. cxxviii.-cxxxii.). He had a grandson called Dama, of whom the Mārkandeya Purāṇa relates that at a Svayamvara he was chosen by the daughter of the King of Daśār̄ha for her husband (cxxxiv. 8), and that when the bride had been seized by three of his rejected rivals (verse 16) she was rescued by him after he had slain one of them and vanquished another (verse 53); that subsequently that same vanquished rival in revenge killed Dama's father, who had retired into the wilderness as an ascetic (cxxxv. 18). The Purāṇa in one of its recensions ends with the following curious particulars :

Tatas chakāra tātasya raktenaivodaka-kriyām | ānṛīnyam prāpya sa pituḥ punah prāyāt sva-mandiram | Vapushmatāś cha mānsena piṇḍā-dānaṁ chakāra ha | brāhmaṇān bhojāyāmāsa rakshāḥ-kula-samudbhavān | evaṁvidhā hi rājāno babbūruḥ sūrya-rāmā-jāḥ | anye 'pi sudhiyāḥ śūrā yajvānāḥ śāstra-kovidāḥ | vedāntam paṭhamānāṁs tān na sankhyātum ihotsehaḥ |

"Dama then (after tearing out the heart of Vapushmat) performed

with blood the rites to the manes of his father; and having thus discharged his debt to his parent, he returned home. With the flesh of Vapushmat he formed the oblation which he offered, and fed the Brāhmans who were of Rākshasa descent. Of such character were the kings of the Solar race. There were also others who were wise, brave, priests, and skilled in the scriptures. I am unable here to enumerate those of them who studied the Vedānta.”⁷⁵

The Harivañśa (section xi. verse 658) tells us that “two sons of Nābhāgāriṣṭa, who were Vaiśyas, became Brāhmans” (*Nābhāgāriṣṭa-putrau dvau raiśyau brāhmaṇatām gatau*).

(4.) Dhṛishṭa.—Of him the *Vishṇu Purāṇa* relates, iv. 2, 2 :

Dhṛishṭasyāpi Dhārṣṭakam Kshattrān samabharat |

“ From Dhṛishṭa sprang the Dhārṣṭaka Kshatriyas.”

The *Bhāgavata Purāṇa* says, ix. 2, 17 :

Dhṛishṭād Dhārṣṭam abhūt Kshattram brahma-bhūyam gatam kshitau |

“ From Dhṛishṭa were descended the Dhārṣṭa Kshatriyas, who obtained Brāhmanhood⁷⁶ on earth.”

(5.) The last-named *Purāṇa* enumerates in verses 19 ff. of the same section the descendants of Narishyanta, among whom was Agniveśya, verse 21 :

Tato 'gniveśyo bhagārān Agniḥ srayam abhūt sutah | Kānīna iti vikhyāto Jātūkarṇyo mahān ṛishiḥ | tato brahma-kulaṁ jātam Āgniveśyāyanām nrīpa | Narishyantānrayaḥ proktah |

“ From him (Devadatta) sprang a son Agniveśya, who was the lord Agni himself, and who was also called Kānīna and Jātūkarṇya the great rishi. From him was descended the Agniveśyāya race of

⁷⁵ This quotation, which will be partly found in Prof. Wilson's note 22, p. 353, is taken from the section given separately by Prof. Banerjea at the end of his edition of this *Purāṇa* from a Maithila MS. which differs from that followed in his text (see his Preface, p. 30). In verses 6 f. of section cxxxvi. however, of Prof. Banerjea's text, Dama threatens to do something of the same sort as in the other recension he is described to have actually done : 6. *Iad aham tasya raktena dehothena Vapushmataḥ | na karomi guros triptim tat pravekshye hutāśanam |* 7. *Tachchhoitenodaka-karma tasya tātasya sankhye rinipītītasya | māṇseṇa samyag dvija-bhojanām cha na chet pravekshyāmi hutūśanām tat |* “ 6. If I do not satiate my father with the blood from Vapushmat's body, then I shall enter the fire 7. If I do not celebrate with his blood the obsequial rites of my father prostrated in the fray, and feed the Brāhmans with (his) flesh, I shall enter the fire.”

⁷⁶ The Commentator explains *brahma-bhūyam* by *brāhmaṇatvam*, “the state of Brāhmans.”

Brāhmans. The offspring of Narishyanta has been declared." That of Dīshṭa is next taken up.

Some of the names of Manu's sons are repeated in the subsequent narrative. Thus we find a second Prānśu named among the descendants of Nābhāga (Wilson, 352). And in the Vishṇu Purāna, iv. 2, 2, a second Nābhāga is mentioned as follows :

*Nābhāgasyātmajo Nābhāgas tasya Ambariṣah | Ambariṣhasyāpi
Virūpo 'bharat Virūpāt Prishadaśro jajne tataś cha Rathitaraḥ | tatrāyaṁ
slokāḥ | “ete kshattrā-prasūtā rai punas chāngirasaḥ smṛitāḥ | Rathitā-
rānām prararāḥ kshattropetā drījātayaḥ” |*

"The son of Nābhāga was Nābhāga; his son was Ambariṣha. From him sprang Virūpa; from him Prishadaśva; and from him Rathitara; regarding whom this verse is current: 'These persons sprung from a Kshattriya, and afterwards called Angirases, were the chief of the Rathitaras, twice-born men (Brāhmans) of Kshattriya race.'"¹¹

The Bhāgavata thus explains the circumstance, ix. 6, 2 :

*Rathitarasyāprajasya bhāryāyaṁ tantare 'rthitāḥ | Angirā janayā-
māsa brahmaṛarchasinaḥ sutān | ete kshetre prasūtā rai punas tv Āngi-
rasāḥ smṛitāḥ | Rathitarānām prararāḥ kshattropetā drījātayaḥ |*

"Angiras being solicited for progeny, begot sons possessing Brahmanical glory on the wife of Rathitara who was childless. These persons being born of a (Kshattriya's) wife, but afterwards called descendants of Angiras, were the chief of the Rathitaras, twice-born men (Brāhmans) of Kshattriya lineage."

It will be observed that in this last verse the Bhāgavata reads *kshetre prasūtāḥ* "born of the wife (of a Kshattriya)," instead of *kshattrā-prasūtāḥ*, "sprung from a Kshattriya," and thus brings this verse into a closer conformity with the one preceding it. Professor Wilson (p. 359, note) considers that the form given to the legend in the Bhāgavata "is an afterthought, not warranted by the memorial verse cited in our text." It is difficult to determine whether or not this may be the case without knowing which of the two readings in that verse is the original one.

(6.) The Vishṇu Purāna next proceeds to enumerate the descendants of Ikshvāku son of Manu. The representative of his line in the twenty-first generation was Harita, of whom it is said, iv. 3, 5 :

¹¹ See Prof. Wilson's note in p. 359 on this passage.

*Ambarīshasya Māndhātūs tanayasya Yuvanāśvah putro 'bhūt | tasmād
Harito yato 'ngiraso Hāritāḥ |*

“The son of Ambarīsha⁷⁸ son of Māndhātri was Yuvanāśva. From him sprang Harita, from whom the Hārita Angirases were descended.”

These words are thus paraphrased by the Commentator: “from him sprang the Hārita Angirases, Brāhmans, chief of the family of Harita” (*tasmād Hāritā Angiraso drijāḥ Harita-gotra-pravarāḥ*).

The Linga Purāṇa, quoted by Prof. Wilson, states the same thing:

*Harito Yuvanāśvasya Hāritā yata ātmajāḥ | ete hy Angirasāḥ pakṣe
kshattropetā drijātayah |*

“The son of Yuvanāśva was Harita, of whom the Hāritas were sons. They were on the side of Angiras, twice-born men (Brāhmans) of Kshattriya lineage.”

And the Vāyu Purāṇa tells us with some variation:

*Harito Yuvanāśvasya Hāritā bhūrayāḥ smṛitāḥ | ete hy Angirasāḥ
putrāḥ kshattropetā drijātayah |*

“Harita was the son of Yuvanāśva: (after whom) many persons were called Hāritas. These were the sons of Angiras, twice-born men (Brāhmans) of Kshattriya race.”

This may mean that they were begotten by Angiras, as is said by the Bhāgavata (see above) to have been the case with Rathitara’s sons. In that case, however, as Nābhāga and Ikshvāku were brothers and Rathitara was only the fifth in descent from Nābhāga, whilst Harita was the twenty-first after Ikshvāku,—Angiras (if we suppose one and the same person be meant in both cases) must have lived for sixteen generations!

Such are the remarkable notices given in the Purāṇas of the rise of different castes among the descendants of some of the sons of Manu Vaivasvata the legendary head of the solar line of kings. I shall now add some similar particulars connected with the lunar dynasty.

According to the Vishṇu Purāṇa (iv. 6, 2 ff.) Atri was the son of Brahmā, and the father of Soma (the moon), whom Brahmā installed as the sovereign of plants, Brāhmans and stars⁷⁹ (*aśeṣaushadhi-drija-nakṣatrāṇām ādhipatye 'bhyasechayat*). After celebrating the rājasūya sacrifice, Soma became intoxicated with pride, and carried off Tārā

⁷⁸ We have already had a person of this name the son of Nābhāga. See above.

⁷⁹ See Journ. Roy. As. Soc. for 1865, p. 135 ff.

(Star), the wife of Brīhaspati the preceptor of the gods, whom, although admonished and entreated by Brahmā, the gods, and rishis, he refused to restore. Soma's part was taken by Uśanas; and Rudra, who had studied under Angiras, aided Brīhaspati (*Angirasaścha sakūśopalabdha-tidyo bhagavān Rudro Brīhaspateḥ sāhāyyam akarot*) ⁶⁰ A fierce conflict ensued between the two sides, supported respectively by the gods and the Daityas, etc. Brahmā interposed, and compelled Soma to restore Tāra to her husband. She had, however, in the mean time become pregnant, and bore a son Budha (the planet Mercury), of whom, when strongly urged, she acknowledged Soma to be the father. Purūravas, as has been already mentioned, was the son of this Budha by Ilā, the daughter of Manu. The loves of Purūravas and the Apsaras Urvaśi are related in the Satapatha Brāhmaṇa, xi. 5, 1, 1; ⁶¹ in the Vishṇu Purāṇa, iv. 6, 19 ff.; in the Bhāgavata Purāṇa, ix. 14; ⁶² and in the Harivāṁśa, section 26. The Mahābhārata, Ādip. sect. 75, alludes to Purūravas as having been engaged in a contest with the Brāhmans. This passage will be quoted hereafter. According to the Vishṇu Purāṇa, iv. 7, 1, Purūravas had six sons, of whom the eldest was Āyus. Āyus had five sons: Nahusha, Kshattravṛiddha, Rambha, Raji, and Anenas. The narrative proceeds (iv. 8, 1):

Kshattravṛiddhāt Sunahotraḥ⁶³ putro 'bharat | Kāśa-Leśa-Grītsama-das trayo 'syābhavan | Grītsamadasya Saunakaś chāturvarṇya-pravarltayitā 'bhūt | Kāśasya Kāśirājas tato Dirghatamāḥ putro 'bhavat | Dhanvantaris Dirghatamaso 'bhūt |

"Kshattravṛiddha had a son Sunahotra, who had three sons, Kāśa, Leśa, and Grītsamada. From the last sprang Saunaka, who originated the system of four castes.⁶⁴ Kāśa had a son Kāśirāja, of whom again Dirghatamas was the son, as Dhanvantari was of Dirghatamas."

⁶⁰ This is the only mention I have ever happened to encounter of the great Māhādeva having been at school!

⁶¹ This passage is translated by Professor Müller in the Oxford Essays for 1856, pp. 62 f.; and the legend has been formed on the basis of the obscure hymn in the R.V. x. 95, in which the two names of Purūravas and Urvaśi occur as those of the interlocutors in a dialogue.

⁶² A short quotation has been already made from this narrative. See above, p. 158.

⁶³ Both my MSS. read *Sunahotra*. Professor Wilson has *Suhotra*.

⁶⁴ The Commentator explains the words *chāturvarṇya-pravarltayitā* by saying that the four castes were produced among his descendants (*tnd-vāṁśe chatvāro varṇā abhavan*). This explanation agrees with the statement of the Vāyu Purāṇa given in the text.

The Vayu Purāṇa, as quoted by Professor Wilson (V. P. 4to. ed. p. 406), expresses the matter differently, thus :

Putro Gṛitsamadasya cha Sunako yasya Saunakah | brāhmaṇāḥ kshattriyāś chaiva vaiśyāḥ śūdrāś tathaiva cha | etasya vāṁśe samudbhūtā vichitraiḥ karmabhir dvijāḥ |

“The son of Gṛitsamada was Sunaka, from whom sprang Saunaka. In his family were born Brāhmans, Kshattriyas, Vaiśyas, and Śūdras, twice-born men with various functions.”^{ss}

In like manner the Harivāṁśa states in section 29, verse 1520 :

Putro Gṛitsamadasyāpi Sunako yasya Saunakah | brāhmaṇāḥ kshattriyāś chaira raiśyāḥ śūdrāś tathaiva cha |

“The son of Gṛitsamadu was Sunaka, from whom sprang the Saunakas, Brāhmans, Kshattriyas, Vaiśyas, and Śūdras.”

Something similar is said of Gṛitsamati (who was the son of a Suhotra, although not the grandson of Kshattravṛiddha) in a following section, the 32nd of the same work, verse 1732 :

Sa chāpi Vitathah putrān janayāmāsa pancha rai | Suhotraṁ cha Suhotāram Gayaṁ Gargaṁ tathaiva cha | Kapilaṁ cha mahātmānam Suhotrasya suta-dvayam | Kāśakaś cha mahāsattvas tathā Gṛitsamatir nripath | tathā Gṛitsamateḥ putrā brāhmaṇāḥ kshattriyāḥ viśāḥ |

“Vitatha was the father of five sons, Suhotra, Suhotri, Gaya, Garga, and the great Kapila. Suhotra had two sons, the exalted Kāśaka, and King Gṛitsamati. The sons of the latter were Brāhmans, Kshattriyas, and Vaiśyas.”

The Bhagavata Purāṇa, ix. 17, 2 f., has the following notice of Kshattravṛiddha’s descendants :

Kshattravriddha-sutasyāsan Suhotrasyāmajāś trayāḥ | Kāśyah Kuśo Gṛitsamadah iti Gṛitsamadād abhūt | Sunako Saunako yasya bahṛi-chaḥ prararo munih |

“Suhotra, son of Kshattravṛiddha, had three sons, Kāśya, Kuśa, and Gṛitsamada. From the last sprang Sunaka, and from him Saunaka, the eminent Muni, versed in the Rig-veda.”

^{ss} On this Professor Wilson remarks, note, p. 406 : “The existence of but one caste in the age of purity, however incompatible with the legend which ascribes the origin of the four tribes to Brahmā, is everywhere admitted. Their separation is assigned to different individuals, whether accurately to any one may be doubted ; but the notion indicates that the distinction was of a social or political character.”

It is to be observed that this Gr̄itsamada, who is here described as belonging to the regal lineage of Purūravas, is the reputed rishi of many hymns in the second Maṇḍala of the Rig-veda. Regarding him the Commentator Sāyaṇa has the following remarks in his introduction to that Maṇḍala :

*Maṇḍala-drashṭu Gr̄itsamadah rishiḥ | sa cha pūrvam Āngirasa-kule
Sunahotrasya putrah san yajna-kāle 'surair grihītaḥ Indrena mochituh |
paśchāt tad-rachanenaira Bhrigu-kule Sunaka-putro Gr̄itsamada nāmā
'bhūt | tathā chānukramanikā “Yah Āngirasaḥ Saunahotro bhūtrā Bhārg-
avarah Saunako 'bhavat sa Gr̄itsamado drītiyam maṇḍalam apaśyad” iti |
tathā tasyaiva Saunakasya rachanam rishy-anukramane “tram Agne”
iti | “Gr̄itsamadah Saunako Bhrigutām gataḥ | Saunahotro prakṛityā tu
yah Āngirasa uchyate” iti | tasmād maṇḍala-drashṭu Saunako Gr̄itsa-
madaḥ rishiḥ |*

“The seer (*i.e.* he who received the revelation) of this Maṇḍala was the rishi Gr̄itsamada. He, being formerly the son of Sunahotra in the family of the Āngirasas, was seized by the Asuras at the time of sacrifice and rescued by Indra. Afterwards, by the command of that god, he became the person named Gr̄itsamada, son of Sunaka, in the family of Bhrigu. Thus the Anukramanikā (Index to the Rig-veda) says of him : ‘That Gr̄itsamada, who, having been an Āngirasa, and son of Sunahotra, became a Bhārgava and son of Sunaka, saw the second Maṇḍala.’ So, too, the same Saunaka says in his Rishi-anukramaṇa regarding the Maṇḍala beginning with ‘Thou, o Agni’ :—‘Gr̄itsamada son of Sunaka who is declared to have been naturally an Āngirasa, and the son of Sunahotra, became a Bhrigu.’ Hence the seer of the Maṇḍala is the rishi Gr̄itsamada son of Sunaka.”

It will be noticed that (unless we are to suppose a different Gr̄itsamada to be intended in each case) there is a discrepancy between the Purāṇas on the one hand, and Sāyaṇa and the Anukramanikā on the other ; as the Purāṇas make Gr̄itsamada the son of Sunahotra or Suhotra, and the father of Sunaka ; whilst the Anukramanikā, followed by Sāyaṇa, represents the same personage as having been, indeed, originally the son of Sunahotra of the race of Angiras, but as having afterwards become, by what process does not appear, the son of Sunaka of the race of Bhrigu.

In his translation of the Rig-veda (ii. 207 f.) Professor Wilson refers

to a legend about King Vītahavya in the Anuśāsana-parvan of the Māhābhārata (verses 1944–2006) which gives a different account of Gṛitsamada's parentage. It begins: *Sṛinu rājān yathā rājā Vītahavyo mahāyaśāḥ | rājarshir durlabham prāpto brāhmaṇyāṁ loka-satkṛitam |* “Hear, o king, how the renowned Vītahavya, the royal rishi, attained the condition of Brāhmaṇhood venerated by mankind, and so difficult to be acquired.” It happened that Divodāsa, King of Kāśī (Benares) was attacked by the sons of Vītahavya, and all his family slain by them in battle. The afflicted monarch thereupon resorted to the sage Bhārādvāja, who performed for him a sacrifice in consequence of which a son named Pratardana was born to him. Pratardana, becoming an accomplished warrior, was sent by his father to take vengeance on the Vītahavyas. They rained upon him showers of arrows and other missiles, “as clouds pour down upon the Himālaya”⁶⁶ (*abhyararshanta rājānam himavantam irāmbudāḥ*); but he destroyed them all, and “they lay with their bodies besmeared with blood, like kinsuka-trees⁶⁷ cut down” (*apatan rudhirārdrāngā nikrittā ira kiṁśukāḥ*). Vītahavya himself had now to fly to another sage, Bhṛigu, who promised him protection. The avenger Pratardana, however, followed and demanded that the refugee should be delivered up:

Asyedānīm badhād adya bharishyāmy anrināḥ pituḥ | tam urācha kri-pāvishṭo Bhṛigur dharma-bhṛitāṁ raraḥ | “nehāsti kshattriyāḥ kaśchit sarre hīme dvijātayah” | etat tu rachanāṁ śrutiā Bhṛigos tathyam Pratardanāḥ | pādāv upasprīṣya śanaiḥ prahrishṭo rākyam abravīt | evam apy asmi bhagavan kritakṛityo na saṁśayah | tyājito hi mayā jūtim esha rājā Bhṛigūdraha | tatas tenābhyanujnāto yayau rājā Pratardanāḥ | yathā-gatam mahārāja muktrā visham ivoragāḥ | Bhṛigor rachana-mātreṇa sa cha brahmashitāṁ gataḥ | Vītaharyo mahārāja brahmāditram era cha | tasya Gṛitsamadaḥ putro rūpenendra irāparah | “Sakras trām” iti yo daityair nigrihitāḥ kilābhārat | ṛigredē varttate chāgryā śrutiā yasya mahātmanāḥ | yatra Gṛitsamado “brahman” brāhmaṇaiḥ sa mahīyatō | sa brahmachārī vīprarshih̄ śrīmān Gṛitsamado ‘bhavat |

“Pratardana says: ‘By the slaughter of this (Vītahavya) I shall

⁶⁶ This simile seems to indicate a familiarity with the manner in which the clouds collect, and discharge their contents on the outer range of the Himālaya.

⁶⁷ The Kinsuka is a tree bearing a red |

now, to-day, be acquitted of my debt to my father.' Bhṛigu, the most eminent of religious men, filled with compassion, answered : 'There is no Kshattriya here : all these are Brāhmans.' Hearing this true assertion of Bhṛigu, Pratardana was glad, and gently touching the sage's feet, rejoined : 'Even thus, o glorious saint, I have gained my object . . . for I have compelled this King (*i.e.* Rājanya) to relinquish his caste.' King Pratardana then, after receiving the sage's salutations, departed, as he came, like a serpent which has discharged its poison · while Vītahavya by the mere word of Bhṛigu became a Brāhmaṇ-rishi, and an utterer of the Veda. Grītsamada, in form like a second Indra, was his son ; he was seized by the Daityas, who said to him, 'Thou art Sūkra' (Indra). In the Rig-veda the texts (*śruti*) of this great rishi stand first.⁸⁸ There Grītsamada is honoured by the Brāhmans (with the title of) 'Brāhmāṇ.' This illustrious personage was a Brahmacārin, and a Brāhmaṇ-rishi.'

According to the enumeration of Grītsamada's family, which follows here, Sunaka was his descendant in the twelfth generation, and Śunaka in the thirteenth. The story concludes with these words :

*Evaṁ vīpratvam agamad Vītaharyo narādhipah | Bhṛigoḥ prasādād
rājendra kshattriyah kshattriyarshabha |*

"Thus did King Vītahavya, a Kshattriya, enter into the condition of Brāhmaṇhood by the favour of Bhṛigu."

In the next chapter we shall again notice Vītahavya among the Kshattriyas who are declared by tradition to have been the authors of Vedic hymns.

King Divodāsa was the sixth in descent from Kāśa brother of Grītsamada. Of him the Harivāñśa states, section 32, verse 789 f.:

*Divodāsasya dāyādo brahmārshir Mitrāyur nrīpah | Maitrāyanas
tataḥ Somo Maitreyās tu tataḥ smṛitāḥ | ete vai saṃśritāḥ paksham
kshattropetās tu Bhārgavāḥ |*

"The son of Divodāsa was the King Mitrāyu a Brāhmaṇ-rishi. From him sprang Soma Maitrāyaṇa, from whom the Maitreyaṇas received their name. They, being of Kshattriya lineage, adhered as Bhārgavas to the side (of the latter)."

⁸⁸ If I have correctly interpreted this verse, and if by "first" we are to understand first in order, it does not accurately represent the state of the case : as the hymns of Grītsamada only appear in the second Mandala.

The twentieth in descent from the same Kāśa, brother of Gr̥itsamada, was Bhārgabhūmi, of whom the Vishṇu Purāṇa says, iv. 8, 9 :

*Bhārgasya Bhārgabhūmih | tatas chāturvarṇya-pravṛittiḥ | ity etc
Kāśayo bhūpatayah kathitāḥ |*

"The son of Bhārga was Bhārgabhūmi, from whom the four castes originated. Thus have the kings called Kāśis been declared."

In two passages of the Harivāṁśa, names identical, or nearly so, are found, but with a different progenitor in each case, in reference to which a similar statement is made. The first is in section 29, verse 1596 :

Venuhotra-sutaś chāpi Bhargo nāma prajeśvaraḥ | Vatsasya Vatsabhbūmis tu Bhrigubhbūmis tu Bhārgavāt | etc hy Angirasaḥ putrā jātā vāñše 'tha Bhārgave | brāhmaṇāḥ kshattriyā vaiśyās trayah putrāḥ⁵⁹ sahaśraśāḥ |

"The son of Venuhotra was King Bharga. From Vatsa sprang Vatsabhūmi, and Bhrigubhbūmi from Bhārgava. These descendants of Angiras were then born in the family of Bhrigu, Brāhmans, Kshattriyas, and Vaiśyas three (classes of) descendants in thousands."

The second passage is in the 32nd section, verse 1752 :

Sukumārasya putras tu Satyaketur mahārathaḥ | suto 'bharad mahātejā rājā parama-dhārmikāḥ | Vatsasya Vatsabhbūmis tu Bhārgabhūmis tu Bhārgavāt | etc hy Angirasaḥ putrā jātā vāñše 'tha Bhārgave | brāhmaṇāḥ kshattriyā vaiśyāḥ śūdrāś cha Bharatarshabha |

"The warrior Satyaketu was the son of Sukumāra, and a prince of great lustre and virtue. From Vatsa sprang Vatsabhūmi, and Bhārgabhūmi from Bhārgava. These descendants of Angiras were then born in the family of Bhrigu, Brāhmans, Kshattriyas, Vaiśyas and Śūdras."

The parallel passage in the Vāyu Purāṇa, as quoted by Professor Wilson, p. 409, has names which are mostly different :

Venuhotra-sutaś chāpi Gārgyo rai nāma viśrutāḥ | Gārgyasya Gārgabhbūmis tu Vatso Vatsasya dhīmataḥ | brāhmaṇāḥ kshattriyāś chaiva tayoh putrāḥ sudhārmikāḥ |

"The son of Venuhotra was the renowned Gārgya. Gargabhūmi was the son of Gārgya; and Vatsa of the wise Vatsa. Brāhmans and Kshattriyas were the virtuous sons of these two."⁶⁰

⁵⁹ Professor Wilson, p. 410, note, gives *tejoyuktāḥ*, "glorious," instead of *trayaḥ putrāḥ*, as the reading either of the Brāhma Purāṇa, or of the Harivāṁśa, or both.

⁶⁰ In regard to these passages the reader may consult the remarks of Professor

Another son of Āyus (son of Purūravas) was Rambha, of whom the Bhāgavata Purāṇa says, ix. 17, 10 :

Rambhasya Rabhasaḥ putro Gabhīraś chākriyas tataḥ | tasya kshettre brahma jajne śrīnu vañśam Anenasaḥ |

"The son of Rambha was Rabhasa, from whom sprang Gabhīra and Akriya. From his wife Brāhmans were born : here now the race of Ancnas" (another son of Āyus).

Of the same Rambha the Vishṇu Purāṇa says (iv. 9, 8), *Rambhas tv anapatyo 'bhārat |* "Rambha was childless."

Another son of Āyus, as we have seen, Vishṇu Purāṇa, iv. 8, 1, was Nahusha. He had six sons (V. P. iv. 10, 1), of whom one was Yayāti. The sons of the latter were Yadu, Turvasu, Druhyu, Anu, and Pūru (Ibid. iv. 10, 2).⁹¹ One of these five, Anu, had, as we are told, in the twelfth generation a son called Bali, of whom the Vishṇu Purāṇa, iv. 18, 1, relates :

Hemāt Sulapās tasmād Balir yasya kshettre Dirghatamasā Anga-Banga-Kalinga-Suhma-Puṇḍrākhyam Bāleyaṁ kshattram ajanyata |

"From Hema sprang Sutapas ; and from him Bali, on whose wife⁹² Bāleya Kshattriyas (*i.e.* Kshatriyas of the race of Bali), called Anga, Banga, Kalinga, Suhma, and Puṇḍra were begotten by Dirghatamas."

Professor Wilson (p. 445, note 12) quotes from the Vāyu Purāṇa a statement regarding the same person that he had "sons who founded the four castes" (*putrān chāturvarṇya-karān*) ; and refers to a passage in the Matsya Purāṇa, in which Bali is said to have obtained from

Wilson, p. 409, note 16, where a commentator (on the Brāhma Purāṇa, or the Hari-vāṁśa) is quoted, who says that in the passage from these works "another son of Vatsa the father of Alarka is specified, viz., Vatsabhūmi; while Bhārgava is the brother of Vatsa ; and that (the persons referred to were) Angirases because Gālava belonged to that family, and (were born in the family) of Bhrigu, because Visvāmitra belonged to it" (*Vatsasya Alarka-pituh putrāntaram ūha "Vatsabhūmir" iti | "Bhārgavād" Vatsa-bhrūtuḥ | "Angiraso" Gālavarasya Angirasatvī | "Bhārgave" Viśvāmitrasya Bhārgavatvī*). The Vishṇu Purāṇa, iv. 8, 6, says that Vatsa was one of the names of Pratardana, son of Divodāsa, a descendant of Kuśa, and a remote ancestor of Bhārgabhūmi. See however Professor Wilson's note 13, p. 408. It is possible that the resemblance of the word Bhārga to Bhārgava may have occasioned the descendants of the former to be connected with the family of Bhrigu.

⁹¹ These five names occur together in the plural in a verse of the Rig-veda, i. 109, quoted above, p. 179.

⁹² *Kshettra bhāryāyām jātatvād Bāleyāḥ |* "They were called descendants of Bali because they were born of his wife."

Brahmā the boon that he should "establish the four fixed castes" (*chaturo niyatān varnāñs trañ sthāpayeti*).

The Harivañśa gives the following account of Bali, in the course of which the same thing is stated; section 31, verses 1682 ff.:

*Phenāt tu Sutapā jajne sutah Sutapaso Balih | jāto mānusha-yonau tu
sa rājā kānchaneshudhih | mahāyogī sa tu Balir babbūra nrīpatiḥ purā |
putrān utpādayāmāsa pancha vañśa-karān bhuri | Angah prathamato
jajne Vangaḥ Suhmas tathaiva cha | Pundraḥ Kalingaś cha tathā Bāle-
yañ kshattram uchyate | Bāleyā brāhmaṇāś chaira tasya vañśakarā
bhuri | Bales tu Brahmaṇā datto varah prītena Bhārata | mahāyogitvam
āyuś cha kalpasya parimāṇataḥ | sangrāme chāpy ajeyatvañ dharme
chaiva pradhānatā | trailokya-darśanañ chāpi prādhānyam prasave
tathā | bale chāpratimatvañ rai dharma-tatrārtha-darśanam | chاتuro
niyatān varnāñs trañ cha sthāpayiteti cha | ity ukto vibhunā rājā Balih
śāntim parāñ yayau | tasyaite tanayāḥ sarve kshettrajā muni-pungavāt |
sambhūtā Dirghatapasah Sudeshñāyām mahaujausah |*

"From Phena sprang Sutapas; and the son of Sutapas was Bali. He was born of a human mother, this prince with the golden quiver; but King Bali was of old a great yogin. He begot five sons, who were the heads of races upon the earth. Anga was first born, then Vanga, Suhma, Pundra and Kalinga; such are the names of the Kshatriyas descended from Bali (*Bāleyāḥ*). There were also Bāleya Brāhmans, founders of his race upon the earth. By Brahmā, who was pleased, the boon was granted to Bali that he should be a great yogin, should live the entire length of a Kalpa, should be invincible in battle, should have pre-eminence in virtue, should have the power of beholding the whole three worlds, should have a superiority in begetting progeny, should be unequalled in strength, and should comprehend the essential principles of duty. And being thus addressed by the Lord in these words, 'Thou shalt establish the four regulated castes,' King Bali attained supreme tranquillity. All these sons, the offspring of his wife, were begotten on Sudeshnā by the glorious muni Dīrghatapas."⁹³

⁹³ M. Langlois must have found in his MS. a different reading of the last line, as he renders it otherwise. Professor Wilson remarks (V.P. pp. 444, note 12): "The Matsya calls Bali the son of Virochana, and āyu-kalpa-pramāṇikah, 'existing for a whole Kalpa'; identifying him, therefore, only in a different period and form, with the Bali of the Vāmana Avatāra" (Dwarf-incarnation). (See Wilson's Vishnu P. p. 265, note, and the Bhāgavata P. ix. sects. 15-23, and other works quoted in the 4th vol. of this work, pp. 116 ff.)

Apratiratha is recorded as being a descendant of Pūru (another of Yayāti's sons), in the thirteenth generation (Wilson, p. 448). Of him it is related, Vishṇu Purāṇa, iv. 19, 2:

*Riteyoḥ Rantināraḥ putro 'bhūt | Taṁśeum Apratirathāṁ Dhruvaṁ cha
Rantināraḥ putrān arāpa | Apratirathāḥ Kāṇvaḥ | tasyāpi Medhātithih |
yataḥ Kāṇvāyanā drijā babbūbhūḥ | Taṁśor Anilas tato Dushyantādyās
chatrāraḥ putrā babbūruḥ | Dushyantāḥ chakrarartti Bharato 'bharat |*

"Riteyu had a son Rantināra, who had Tansu, Apratiratha and Dhruva for his sons. From Apratiratha sprang Kāṇva. His son was Medhātithi; from whom the Kāṇvāyan Brāhmans were descended. From Tansu sprang Anila, who had four sons, Dushyanta, and others. From Dushyanta sprang the emperor Bharata."

With some variations the Bhāgavata Purāṇa says, ix. 20, 1 :

*Pūrō rāmśam prarakshyāmi yatra jāto 'si Bhārata | yatra rājarshayo
vāṁsyā brahma-vāṁsyāś cha jajnire | 6. Riteyoḥ Rantibhāro 'bhūt
trayas tasyātmajā nṛipa | Sumati Dhruvo 'pratirathāḥ Kāṇvo 'pratira-
thāmajāḥ | tasya Medhātithis tasmāt Praskaṇprādyā drijātayaḥ | putro
'bhūt Sumater Raibhyo Dushyantas tat-suto mataḥ |*

"I shall declare the race of Pūru from which thou hast sprung, o Bhārata; and in which there have been born royal rishis, and men of Brahmanical family 6. From Riteyu sprang Rantibhāra; who had three sons, Sumati, Dhruva, and Apratiratha. Kāṇva was the son of the last; and the son of Kāṇva was Medhātithi, from whom the Praskaṇvas and other Brāhmans were descended."

A little further on, in the chapter of the Vishṇu Purāṇa just quoted (iv. 19, 10), Kāṇva and Medhātithi are mentioned as having had a different parentage from that before assigned, viz., as being the son and grandson of Ajamīḍha, who was a descendant in the ninth generation of Tansu, the brother of Apratiratha:

*Ajamīḍhāt Kāṇvaḥ | Kāṇvād Medhātithir yataḥ Kāṇvāyanā dvijāḥ |
Ajamīḍhasyānyaḥ putro Brihadishuh |*

"From Ajamīḍha sprang Kāṇva: from Kāṇva Medhātithi, from whom were descended the Kāṇvāyan Brāhmans. Ajamīḍha had another son Brihadishu."⁹⁴

⁹⁴ On this the Commentator remarks : *Ajamīḍhasya Kāṇvādir eko vāṁśo Briha-
dishu-ādir aparo vāṁśo Nīlādir aparaḥ Rikshādiś chāparah |* "Ajamīḍha had one
set of descendants, consisting of Kāṇva, etc., a second consisting of Brihadishu, etc.,

On this last passage Professor Wilson observes, p. 452, note : "The copies agree in this reading, yet it can scarcely be correct. Kanya has already been noticed as the son of Apratiratha." But the compiler of the Purāṇa may here be merely repeating the discordant accounts which he found in the older authorities which he had before him.

Regarding Ajamīḍha the Bhāgavata says, ix. 21, 21 :

Ajamīḍhasya vaṁśyāḥ syuḥ Priyamedhādayo dvijāḥ | Ajamīḍhād Brihadishuh |

"Priyamedha and other Brāhmans were descendants of Ajamīḍha. From Ajamīḍha sprang Brihadishu."

The Viṣṇu Purāṇa (iv. 19, 16) gives the following account of Mudgala, a descendant of Ajamīḍha in the seventh generation :

Mudgalāch cha Maudgalyāḥ kshattropetā dvijatayo babhūruḥ | Mudgalād Bahvaśvo Bahvaśvād Divodāso 'halyā cha mithunam abhūt | Saradvato 'halyāyām Satānanda 'bharat |

"From Mudgala were descended the Maudgalya Brāhmans of Kshattriya stock. From Mudgala sprang Bahvaśva; from him again twins, Divodāsa and Ahalyā. Satānanda was born to Saradvat⁵⁵ by Ahalyā."

Similarly the Bhāgavata Purāṇa says, ix. 21, 33 f. :

Mudgalād brahma nirvrittām gotram Maudgalya-sanjnitam | mithunam Mulgalād Bhārmyād Divodāsaḥ pumān abhūt | Ahalyā kanyakā yasyām Satānandas tu Gautamāt |

"From Mudgala sprang Brāhmans, the family called Maudgalyas. To the same father, who was son of Bhārmyāśva, were born twins, Divodāsa, a male, and Ahalyā, a female child, who bore Satānanda to Gautama."

The words of the Matsya Purāṇa on the same subject, as quoted by Professor Wilson, p. 454, note 50, are :

Mudgalasyāpi Maudgalyāḥ kshattropetā dvijatāyah | ete hy Angirasah pakshe sañsthitāḥ Kanva-Mudgalāḥ |

"From Mudgala sprang the Maudgalyas, Brāhmans of Kshattriya stock. These Kanva and Mudgalas stood on the side of Angiras."

⁵⁵ a third consisting of Nīla, etc., and a fourth consisting of Riksha, etc." The last two sons of Ajamīḍha are mentioned further on, Nīla in v. 15, and Riksha in v. 18, of the same chapter of the V. P.

⁵⁶ The Commentator says this is a name of Gautama. Regarding Ahalyā and Gautama see the story extracted above, p. 121, from the Rāmāyaṇa.

The Harivānśa, section 32, verse 1781, thus notices the same family :

Mudgalasya tu dāyādo Maudgalyaḥ sumahāyaśāḥ | ete sarve mahāt-māno kshattropetā dvijātayaḥ | ete hy Angirasaḥ pakṣamān saṁśritāḥ Kāṇva-Mudgalāḥ | Maudgalyasya suto jyeshṭhaḥ brahmaṛshiḥ sumahāyaśāḥ |

"The renowned Maudgalya was the son of Mudgala. All these great personages were Brāhmans of Kshattriya descent. These Kāṇvas and Mudgalas adhered to the side of Angiras. Maudgalya's eldest son was a celebrated Brahman-rishi."

Regarding Kshemaka, a future descendant of Ajamīḍha in the 31st generation, the Vishṇu Purāṇa says, iv. 21, 4 :

Tato Niramitras tasmāch cha Kshemakāḥ | tatrāyaṁ slokaḥ | "brahma-kshattrasya yo yonir⁶⁶ vañśo rājarshi-satkrītāḥ | Kshemakam prāpya rājānaṁ sa saṁsthām prāpsyate kalau |

"From him (Khandapāni) shall spring Niramitra; and from him Kshemaka; regarding whom this verse (is current): 'The race, consecrated by royal rishis, which gave birth to Brāhmans and Kshattriyas, shall terminate in the Kali age, after reaching King Kshemaka.'

The corresponding verse quoted by Professor Wilson (p. 462, note 24) from the Matsya and Vāyu Purāṇas substitutes *devarshi*, "divine rishis," or "gods and rishis," for the *rājarshi*, "royal rishis," of the Vishṇu Purāṇa. The verse in question is there described as *anurañśa-śloko'yaṁ gīto vipraih purātanaiḥ*, "a genealogical verse sung by ancient Brāhmans."

According to the details given from the Purāṇas in this section several persons, Grītsamada, Kāṇva, Medhātithi, and Priyamedha, to whom hymns of the Rig-veda are ascribed by Indian tradition as their rishis, were of Kshattriya descent.

In the line of the same Tansu, brother of Apratiratha, we find in the sixth generation a person named Garga, of whom the Vishṇu Purāṇa relates, iv. 19, 9 :

Gargāt S'iniḥ | tato Gārgyāḥ S'ainyāḥ kshattropetā dvijātayo babhūvuh |

"From Garga sprang Sini; from them were descended the Gārgyas and Sainyas, Brāhmans of Kshattriya race."⁶⁷

⁶⁶ On this words the Commentator has this note : *Brahmanah brāhmaṇasya Kshattrasya kshattriyasya cha yoniḥ kāraṇam pūrvam yathoktavāt |* "Brahma" and "Kshatra" stand for Brāhmaṇ and Kshattriya. This race is the 'source,' cause (of these), as has been declared above."

⁶⁷ On this the Commentator only remarks : *Tatas tābhyaṁ Gārgyāḥ S'ainyāḥ cha*

Similarly the Bhāgavata Purāṇa, ix. 21, 19, says:

Gargat S'inis tato Gārgyāḥ kshattrād brahma hy avarttata |

"From Garga sprang Sini; from them Gārgya, who from a Kshatriya became a Brāhmaṇa."⁹⁸

The Vishṇu Purāṇa records a similar circumstance regarding the family of Mahāvīryya, the brother of Garga (iv. 19, 10):

Mahāvīryyād Urukshayo nāma putro 'bhūt | tasya Trayyaruna-Pushkarīṇau Kapiś cha putra-trayam abhūt | tach cha tritayam api paśchād vīpratām upajagāma |

"Mahāvīryya had a son named Urukshaya; who again had three sons, Trayyaruna, Puskarin, and Kapi; and these three⁹⁹ afterwards entered into the state of Brāhmans (*i.e.* became such)."

The Bhāgavata states, ix. 21, 19 f.:

Duritakshayo Mahāvīryyāt tasya Trayyārūṇih Kavih | Pushkarārūṇir ity altra ye brāhmaṇa-gatīm gatāḥ |

"From Mahāvīryya sprang Duritakshaya. From him were descended Trayyārūṇi, Kavi, and Pushkarārūṇi, who attained to the destination of Brāhmans."¹⁰⁰

According to the Matsya Purāṇa also, as quoted by Professor Wilson (451, note 22), "all these sons of Uruksha (*sic*) attained the state of Brāhmans" (*Urukshataḥ sutā hy ete sarve brāhmaṇatām gatāḥ*); and in another verse of the same Purāṇa, cited in the same note, it is added: *Kāryānām tu varā hy ete trayāḥ proktā maharshayah | Gargāḥ Sankritayāḥ Kāryā kshattropetā dvijātayah |* "These three classes of great rishis, viz. the Gargas, Sankritis, and Kāvyas, Brāhmans of Kshattriya race, are declared to be the most eminent of the Kāvyas, or descendants of Kavi." The original Garga was, as we have seen, the brother of Mahavīryya, the father of Kavi, or Kapi; while, according to the

Garga-vāñśyatvāt S'ini-vāñśyatvāch cha samākhyātāḥ | kshattriyā eva kenachit kāraṇena brāhmaṇāś cha babhūvuh | "They were called Gārgyas and Sainyas because they were of the race of Gūrga and S'ini. Being indeed Kshatriyas they became Brāhmans from some cause or other."

⁹⁸ The Commentator does not say how this happened.

⁹⁹ Unless Professor Wilson's MSS. had a different reading from mine, it must have been by an oversight that he has translated here, "The last of whom became a Brāhmaṇa."

¹⁰⁰ On this the Commentator annotates: *Ye altra kshatra-vāñśe brāhmaṇa-gatim brāhmaṇa-rūpatām gatā te |* "Who in this Kshattriya race attained the destination of Brāhmans,—the form of Brāhmans."

Vishṇu Purāṇa (iv. 19, 9), and Bhāgavata Purāṇa (ix. 21, 1), Sankṛiti was the son of Nara, another brother of Mahavīryya.

The series of passages just quoted is amply sufficient to prove that according to the traditions received by the compilers of the ancient legendary history of India (traditions so general and undisputed as to prevail over even their strong hierarchical prepossessions), Brāhmans, Kshattriyas, and even Vaiśyas and Sūdras, were, at least in many cases, originally descended from one and the same stock. The European critic can have no difficulty in receiving these obscure accounts as true in their literal sense; though the absence of precise historical data may leave him without any other guide than speculation to assist him in determining the process by which a community originally composed for the most part of one uniform element, was broken up into different classes and professions, separated from each other by impassable barriers. On the other hand, the possibility of this common origin of the different castes, though firmly based on tradition, appeared in later times so incredible, or so unpalatable, to some of the compilers of the Purāṇas, that we find them occasionally attempting to explain away the facts which they record, by statements such as we have encountered in the case of the Kings Rathītara and Bāli, that their progeny was begotten upon their wives by the sages Angiras and Dirghatamas, or Dirghatapas; or by the introduction of a miraculous element into the story, as we have already seen in one of the legends regarding Grītsamada, and as we shall have occasion to notice in a future chapter in the account of Viśvāmitra.

CHAPTER III.

ON THE MUTUAL RELATIONS OF THE DIFFERENT CLASSES OF INDIAN SOCIETY ACCORDING TO THE HYMNS OF THE RIG-AND ATHARVA-VEDAS.

In the last chapter I have attempted to shew that in general the authors of the hymns of the Rig-veda regarded the whole of the Aryan people, embracing not only the priests and chiefs, but the middle classes also of the population, as descended from one common father, or ancestor, whom they designate by the name of Manu. This reference to a common progenitor excludes, of course, the supposition that the writers by whom it is made could have had any belief in the myth which became afterwards current among their countrymen, that their nation consisted of four castes, differing naturally in dignity, and separately created by Brahmā.

In that chapter I proposed to leave for further consideration any specific notices which the Rig-veda might contain regarding the different classes of which the society contemporary with its composition was made up. On this consideration I now enter. As that great collection of hymns embodies numerous references, both to the authors themselves and to the other agents in the celebration of divine worship, it may be expected to supply, incidentally or indirectly, at least, some information respecting the opinion which these ministers of religion entertained of themselves, and of the ecclesiastical and civil relations in which they stood to the other sections of the community. I shall now endeavour to shew how far this expectation is justified by an examination of the Rig-veda.

It will be understood, from what I have already (pp. 7 and 11 ff.) written on the subject of that one hymn of the Rig-veda in which the

four castes are distinctly specified, *i.e.* the Purusha Sūkta, that in the enquiry, which I am now about to undertake, I confine myself in the first instance to those hymns which for any reason (see p. 4, above) appear to be the most ancient, leaving out of account until afterwards, all those compositions which, like the one just mentioned, are presumably of a later age.

It will, I think, be found on investigation that not only the older hymns, but the great bulk of the hymns, supply no distinct evidence of the existence of a well defined and developed caste-system at the time when they were composed.

SECT. I.—*On the signification of the words brāhmān, brāhmaṇa, etc., in the Rig-veda.*

As the Rig-veda Sanhitā is made up almost entirely of hymns in praise of the gods, it was not to be anticipated that it should furnish any systematic or detailed explanations on the points which form the object of our enquiry. But as was natural in compositions of the early and simple age to which these hymns belong, they do not always confine themselves to matters strictly connected with their principal subject, but indulge in occasional references to the names, families, personal merits, qualifications, relations, circumstances, and fortunes of the poets by whom they were produced, or of their patrons or other contemporaries, or of their predecessors.

I have, in another volume of this work,¹ enquired into the views which the authors of the hymns appear to have held on the subject of their own authorship. The conclusion at which I arrived was, that they did not in general look upon their compositions as divinely inspired, since they frequently speak of them as the productions of their own minds (vol. iii. pp. 128-140). But although this is most commonly the case (and especially, as we may conjecture, in regard to the older hymns), there is no doubt that they also attached a high value to these productions, which they describe as being acceptable to the gods (R.V. v. 45, 4; v. 85, 1; vii. 26, 1, 2; x. 23, 6; x. 54, 6; x. 105,

¹ Original Sanskrit Texts, vol. iii. pp. 116-161.

8), whose activity they stimulated (iii. 34, 1; vii. 19, 11), and whose blessing they drew down. In some of the hymns a supernatural character or insight is claimed for the rishis (i. 179, 2; vii. 76, 4; iii. 53, 9; vii. 33, 11 ff.; vii. 87, 4; vii. 88, 3 ff.; x. 14, 15; x. 62, 4, 5), and a mysterious efficacy is ascribed to their compositions (vol. iii. pp. 173 f.) The rishis called their hymns by various names, as *arka*, *uktha*, *rich*, *gir*, *dhi*, *nītha*, *nivid*, *mantra*, *mati*, *sūkta*, *stoma*, *vāch*, *rachas*, etc. etc.; and these also applied to them the appellation of *brahma* in numerous passages.² That in the passages in question *brahma* has generally the sense of hymn or prayer is clear from the context of some of them (as in i. 37, 4; viii. 32, 27, where the word is joined with the verb *gāyata*, "sing," and in vi. 69, 7, where the gods are supplicated to hear the *brahma*), as well as from the fact that the poets are said (in i. 62, 13; v. 73, 10; vii. 22, 9; vii. 31, 11; x. 80, 7) to have fashioned or generated the prayer, in the same way as they are said to have fashioned or generated hymns in other texts (as i. 109, 1; v. 2, 11; vii. 15, 4; viii. 77, 4; x. 23, 6; x. 39, 14), where the sense is indisputable; while in other places (iv. 16, 21; v. 29, 15; vi. 17, 13; vi. 50, 6; vii. 61, 6; x. 89, 3) new productions of the poets are spoken of under the appellation of *brahma*.

That *brahma* has the sense of hymn or prayer is also shown by the two following passages. In vii. 26, 1, it is said: *Na somaḥ Indram asuto mamāda na abrahmāṇo maghavānañ sutāsaḥ | tasmai ukthāṁ janaye yaj jujoshad nṛivad navīyah śrinavat yathā naḥ |* 2. *Ukthe ukthe somaḥ Indram mamāda nīthe nīthe maghavānañ sutāsaḥ | yad īṁ sabādhaḥ pitaram na putrāḥ samāna-dakshāḥ avare havante |* "Soma unless poured out does not exhilarate Indra; nor do libations without hymns (*abrahmāṇah*). I generate for him a hymn (*uktha*) which he will love, so that like a man he may hear our new (production). 2. At each hymn (*uktha*) the soma exhilarates Indra, at each psalm (*nītha*) the libations (exhilarate) Maghavat, when the worshippers united, with one effort, invoke him for help, as sons do a father."³ Again in x. 105, 8, it is

² For a list of these texts and other details which are here omitted, I refer to my article "On the relations of the priests to the other classes of Indian Society in the Vedic age," in the Journal of the Roy. As. Soc. for 1866 (from which this section is mostly borrowed).

³ It is clear from the context of this passage that *abrahmāṇah* means "unattended by hymns," and not "without a priest." After saying that soma-libations without

said: *Ava no trijind̄ siśhi rīchā vānema anyichah | na abrahmā
rīdhag joshati tve |* “Drive away our calamities. With a hymn (*rīchā*)
may we slay the men who are hymnless (*anyichah*). A sacrifice without
prayer (*abrahmā*) does not please thee well.”

I have said that great virtue is occasionally attributed by the poets to their hymns and prayers; and this is true of those sacred texts when called by the name of *brahma*, as well as when they receive other appellations, such as *mantra*. Thus it is said, iii. 53, 12, *Viśvāmitrasya rakshati brahma idam Bhāratām janam |* “This prayer (*brahma*) of Viśvāmitra protects the tribe of Bharata;” v. 40, 6, *Gūlham sūryām tamasā aparratena turiyena brahmaṇā arindad Atriḥ |* “Atri with the fourth prayer (*brahmaṇā*) discovered the sun concealed by unholy darkness;” vi. 75, 19, *Brahma varma mama antaram |* “Prayer (*brahma*) is my protecting armour;” vii. 33, 3, *Era id nu kam dūśarājne Sudāsam prāvad Indro brahmaṇā vo Vasishṭhāḥ |* “Indra preserved Sudās in the battle of the ten kings through your prayer, o Vasishṭhas.” In ii. 23, 1, *Brahmaṇaspati* is said to be the “great king of prayers” (*jyeshṭha-rājām brahmaṇām*) (compare vii. 97, 3), and in verse 2, to be the “generator of prayers” (*janitā brahmaṇām*); whilst in x. 61, 7, prayer is declared to have been generated by the gods (*srādhyo ajanayan brahma devāḥ*). Compare vii. 35, 7.

Brāhmāṇ in the masculine is no doubt derived from the same root as *brāhmāṇ* neuter, and though differing from it in accent⁴ as well as gender, must be presumed to be closely connected with it in signification, just as the English “prayer” in the sense of a petition would be with “prayer,” a petitioner, if the word were used in the latter sense. As, then, *brāhmāṇ* in the neuter means a hymn or prayer, *brāhmāṇ* in the masculine must naturally be taken to denote the person who composes or repeats a hymn or prayer. We do not, however, find that the composers of the hymns are in general designated by the word

hymns are unacceptable to Indra, the poet does not add that he is himself a *priest*, or that he is attended by one, but that he generates a hymn; and the same sense is required by what follows in the second verse. Accordingly we find that Sāyaṇa explains *abrahmāṇah* by *stotra-hīnāḥ*, “destitute of hymns.” The same sense is equally appropriate in the next passage cited, x. 105, 8. On iv. 16, 9, where *abrahmā* is an epithet of *dasyu*, “demon,” Sāyaṇa understands it to mean “without a priest,” but it may mean equally well or better, “without devotion, or prayer.”

⁴ In *brāhmāṇ* neuter the accent is on the first syllable; in *brāhmāṇ* masculine on the last.

brāhmān, the name most commonly applied to them being *rishi*, though they are also called *vipra*, *vedhas*, *kavi*, etc. (see vol. iii. of this work, pp. 116 ff.). There are, however, a few texts, such as i. 80, 1; i. 164, 35; ii. 12, 6; ii. 39, 1; v. 31, 4; v. 40, 8; ix. 113, 6, etc., in which the *brāhmān* may or must be understood as referred to in the capacity of author of the hymn he utters. So, too, in ii. 20, 4, and vi. 21, 8, a new composer of hymns seems to be spoken of under the appellation of *nutānasya brāhmānyataḥ*; and in ii. 19, 8, the Gr̥itsamadas are referred to both as the fabricators of a new hymn (*manma navīyah*) and as (*brāhmānyāntaḥ*) performing devotion.⁵ In three passages, vii. 28, 2; vii. 70, 5, and x. 89, 16, the *brāhmā* and *brāhmāni*, “prayer” and “prayers,” or “hymn” and “hymns,” of the rishis are spoken of; and in vii. 22, 9, it is said, “that both the ancient and the recent rishis have generated prayers” (*ye cha pūrve rishayo ye cha nūtnāḥ Indra brahmāni janayanta vīprāḥ*). In i. 177, 5, we find *brahmāni kāroḥ*, “the prayers of the poet.” The fact that in various hymns the authors speak of themselves as having received valuable gifts from the princes their patrons, and that they do not there allude to any class of officiating priests as separate from themselves, would also seem to indicate an identity of the poet and priest at that early period.

The term *brahman* must therefore, as we may conclude, have been originally applied (1) to the same persons who are spoken of elsewhere in the hymns as *rishi*, *kavi*, etc., and have denoted devout worshippers and contemplative sages who composed prayers and hymns which they themselves recited in praise of the gods. Afterwards when the ceremonial gradually became more complicated, and a division of sacred functions took place, the word was more ordinarily employed (2) for a minister of public worship, and at length came to signify (3) one particular kind of priest with special duties. I subjoin a translation of the different passages in which the word occurs in the Rig-veda, and I have attempted to classify them according as it seems to bear, in each case, the first, second, or third of the senses just indicated. This, however, is not always an easy task, as in many of these texts there is nothing to fix the meaning of the term with precision, and one signi-

⁵ In another place (x. 96, 5) Indra is said to have been lauded by former worshippers, *pūrvebhīr yājvābhiḥ*, a term usually confined (as *brāhmān* was frequently applied) in after times to the offerers of sacrifice.

fication easily runs into another, and the same person may be at once the author and the reciter of the hymn.

I. Passages in which *brāhmān* may signify “contemplator, sage, or poet.”

(In all these texts I shall leave the word untranslated.)

i. 80, 1. *Iithā hi some id mado brahmā chakāra varddhanam* |

“Thus in his exhilaration from soma juice the *brāhmān* has made (or uttered) a magnifying⁶ (hymn).”

i. 164, 34. *Pṛichhāmi tvā param antam prithivyāḥ pṛichhāmi yatra bhurānasya nābhiḥ* | *pṛichhāmi tvā vrishṇo aśvasya retaḥ pṛichhāmi vāchāḥ pāramāñ ryoma* | 35. *Iyaṁ vediḥ paro antaḥ prithivyāḥ ayañ yajno bhurānasya nābhiḥ ayañ somo vrishṇo aśvasya reto brahmā ayam vāchāḥ paramāñ ryoma* |

“I ask thee (what is) the remotest end of the earth; I ask where is the central point of the world; I ask thee (what is) the seed of the vigorous horse; I ask (what is) the highest heaven⁷ of speech. 35. This altar is the remotest end of the earth; this sacrifice is the central point of the world; this soma is the seed of the vigorous horse; this *brāhmān* is the highest heaven of speech.⁸

ii. 12, 6. *Yo radhrasya choditā yaḥ kriśasya yo brahmaṇo nādhamā-nasya kireḥ* |

“He (Indra) who is the quickener of the sluggish, of the emaciated, of the suppliant *brāhmān* who praises him,” etc.

vi. 45, 7. *Brahmāṇam brahma-vāhasam gīrbhiḥ sakhāyam ṛigmiyam* | *gāñ na dohase huve* |

“With hymns I call Indra, the *brāhmān*,—the carrier of prayers (*brāhmā-vāhasam*), the friend who is worthy of praise,—as men do a cow which is to be milked.”

vii. 33, 11. *Uta asi Maitrāvaruno Vasishṭha Urvaśyāḥ brahman manaso* | *dhi jātaḥ drapsaṁ skannam brahmaṇā daivyena viśve devāḥ pushkare tvā 'dadanta* |

“And thou, o Vasishṭha, art a son of Mitra and Varuna (or a *Maitrāvaruna*-priest), born, o *brāhmān*, from the soul of Urvaśi. All the

⁶ *Varddhanam* = *vriddhi-karam stotram* (Sāyaṇa).

⁷ Compare R.V. iii. 32, 10; x. 109, 4, below, and the words, the highest heaven of invention.”

⁸ Compare R.V. x. 71 and x. 125.

gods placed in the vessel thee, the drop which had fallen through divine contemplation."

viii. 16, 7. *Indro brahmā Indraḥ rishir Indraḥ puru puruhūtaḥ | mahān mahībhiḥ śachiibhiḥ |*

"Indra is a *brāhmān*, Indra is a rishi,⁹ Indra is much and often invoked, great through his mighty powers."

x. 71, 11. (See the translation of the entire hymn below. The sense of *brāhmān* in verse 11 will depend on the meaning assigned to *jātāvidyā*.)

x. 77, 1. (In this passage, the sense of which is not very clear, the word *brāhmān* appears to be an epithet of the host of Maruts.)

x. 85, 3. *Somam manyate papivān yat sampiñshanti oshadhim | somaṁ yam brahmāno vidur na tasya aśnāti kaśchana | 16. Dve te chakre Sūrye brahmāno rituthā viduḥ | atha ekaṁ chakram yad guhā tad addhātayah id viduḥ | 34. . . . Sūryāṁ yo brahmā vidyāt et id vādhuyam arhati |*

"A man thinks he has drunk soma when they crush the plant (so called). But no one tastes of that which the *brāhmāns* know to be soma (the moon). 16. The *brāhmāns* rightly know, Sūryā, that thou hast two wheels; but it is sages (*addhātayah*) alone who know the one wheel which is hidden. 34. The *brāhmān* who knows Sūryā deserves the bride's garment."¹⁰

x. 107, 6. *Tam eva rishiṁ tam u brahmānam āhur yajnanyaṁ sāma-gām uktha-śasam | sa śukrasya tanvo veda tisrah yah prathamo dakshinayā rarādha |*

"They call him a rishi, him a *brāhmān*, reverend, a chanter of Sāma verses (*sāma-gām*), and reciter of *ukthas*,—he knows the three forms of the brilliant (Agni)—the man who first worshipped with a largess."

Even in later times a man belonging to the Kshattriya and Vaiśya castes may perform all the Vedic rites. Any such person, therefore, and consequently a person not a Brāhmaṇ might, according to this verse, have been called, though, no doubt, figuratively, a priest (*brahmā*).

⁹ Different deities are called *rishi*, *kavi*, etc., in the following texts: v. 29, 1; vi. 14, 2; viii. 6, 41; ix. 96, 18; ix. 107, 7; x. 27, 22; x. 112, 9.

¹⁰ See Dr. Haug's Ait. Br. vol. i. Introduction, p. 20.

x. 117, 7. . . . *Vadan brahmā avadato vanīyān prinann āpir aprinan-tam abhi syāt |*

“A *brāhmān*¹¹ who speaks is more acceptable than one who does not speak: a friend who is liberal excels one who is illiberal.”¹²

x. 125, 5. *Yāñ kāmaye tañ tam ugrañ kriñomi tam brahmāñāñ tam rishiñ tañ sumedhāñ |*

“I (says Vāch) make him whom I love formidable, him a *brāhmaṇ*, him a rishi, him a sage.”

This would seem to prove that sometimes, at least, the *brāhmān* was such not by birth or nature, but by special favour and inspiration of the goddess. In this passage, therefore, the word cannot denote the member of a caste, who would not be dependent on the good will of Vāch for his position.

II. In the passages which follow the word *brāhmān* does not seem to signify so much a “sage or poet,” as a “worshipper or priest.”

i. 10, 1. *Gāyanti trā gāyatriñō archanti arkam arkiñah | brahmāñas tvā Satakrato ud vañśam iva yemire |*

“The singers sing thee, the hymners recite a hymn, the *brāhmāns*, o Satakratu, have raised thee up like a pole.”¹³

i. 33, 9. *Āmanyamānāñ abhi manyamānair nir brahmabhir adhamo dasyum Indra |*

“Thou, Indra, with the believers, didst blow against the unbelievers, with the *brāhmāns* thou didst blow away the Dasyu.”¹⁴

i. 101, 5. *Yo viśvasya jagatah prānatas patir yo brahmane prathamo gāh arindat | Indro yo dasyūñ adharāñ avūtirat . . .*

“Indra, who is lord of all that moves and breathes, who first found the cows for the *brāhmān*, who hurled down the Dasyu.”

i. 108, 7. *Yad Indragnī madathaḥ sve durone yad brahmani rājani vā yajatrā | atah pari vrishanāv ā hi yātam athā somasya pibatāñ sutasya |*

“When, o adorable Indra and Agni, ye are exhilarated in your own

¹¹ The word here seems clearly to indicate an order or profession, as the *silent priest* is still a priest.

¹² See Dr. Haug's remark on this verse, Ait. Br. Introd. p. 20. The contexts of the two last passages are given in my article “Miscellaneous Hymns from the R. and A. Vedas,” pp. 32 f.

¹³ Compare i. 5, 8; i. 7, 1; viii. 16, 9. See Dr. Haug's remark on this verse, Ait. Br. Introd. p 20.

¹⁴ See on this verse the remarks of M. Bréal, Hercule et Cacus, etc. p. 152.

abode, or with a *brāhmān* or a *rājan*,¹⁵ come thence, ye vigorous (deities), and then drink of the poured out soma.”¹⁶

i. 158, 6. *Dirghatamāḥ Māmateyo jujurvān daśame yuge | apām arthaṁ yatiñām brahmā bhavati sārathih |*

“Dirghatamas, son of Mamatā, being decrepit in his tenth lustre, (though) a *brāhmān*, becomes the charioteer of (or is borne upon) the waters which are hastening to their goal.”

(Professor Aufrecht understands this to mean that Dirghatamas is verging towards his end, and thinks there is a play on the word “charioteer” as an employment not befitting a priest.)

ii. 39, 1. . . . *Gṛidhrā iva vrikshaṁ nidhimantam acha | brahmāṇā iva, vidatha ukthaśāsā . . . |*

“Ye (Aśvins) (cry) like two vultures on a tree which contains their nest; like two *brāhmāns* singing a hymn at a sacrifice.”

iv. 50, 7. *Sa id rājā pratijanyāni viśvā śushmena tasiḥāv abhi riryena | Bṛihaspatiṁ yaḥ subhṛitam bibhartti valgūyati randate pūrra-bhājam |*
 8. *Sa it ksheti sudhitāḥ okasi sve tasmai iḷā pinrate viśradānīm | tasmai viśāḥ svayam eva namante yasmin brahmā rājani pūrrah eti |* 9. *Apratito iayati saṁ dhanāni pratijanyāni uta yā sajanyā | arasyave yo varivāḥ kriṇoti brahmaṇe rājā tam avanti devāḥ |*

“That king overcomes all hostile powers in force and valour who maintains Bṛihaspati in abundance, who praises and magnifies him as (a deity) enjoying the first distinction. 8. He dwells prosperous in his own palace, to him the earth always yields her increase,¹⁷ to him the

¹⁵ A distinction of orders or professions appears to be here recognised. But in v. 54, 7, a *rishi* and a *rājan* are distinguished much in the same way as a *brāhmān* and *rājan* are in i. 108, 7 : *Sa na jīyate Maruto na hanyate na sredhati na vyathate na rishyati | na asya rāyah upa dasyanti na ütayah rishim vā yaṁ rājanaṁ vā sushūdatha |* “That man, whether rishi or prince, whom ye, o Maruts, support, is neither conquered nor killed, he neither decays nor is distressed, nor is injured; his riches do not decline, nor his supports.” Compare v. 14, where it is said : *Yūgaṁ rayim marutah spārha-vīraṁ yūyam rishim avatha sāma-vipram | yūyan arvantam Bharatāya vājāṁ yūyam dhattha rājanaṁ śrushtimantam |* “Ye, o Maruts, give riches with desirable men, ye protect a rishi who is skilled in hymns; ye give a horse and food to Bharata, ye make a king prosperous.” In iii. 43, 6, reverence is found to Viśvāmitra, or the author, being made by Indra both a prince and a rishi (*kuvid mā gopāṁ karase janasya kuvid rājānam maghavann ryōshin | kuvid mā rishim papivāṁsaṁ sutarya*).

¹⁶ See on this verse Prof. Benfey's note, Orient und Occident, 3, 142.

¹⁷ Compare R.V. v. 37, 4 f. : *Na sa rājā vyathate yasminn Indras tīvram somam pivati go-sakhāyam |* “That king suffers no distress in whose house Indra drinks the pungent soma mixed with milk,” etc.

people bow down of themselves,—that king in whose house a *brāhmān* walks first.¹⁸ 9. Unrivalled, he conquers the riches both of his enemies and his kinsmen—the gods preserve the king who bestows wealth on the *brāhmān* who asks his assistance.”¹⁹

iv. 58, 2. *Vayaṁ nāma pra bravāma ghritasya asmin yajne dhārayāma namobhiḥ | upa brahmā śrinavat śasyamānaṁ chatuh-śringo avamīd gaurāḥ etat |*

“Let us proclaim the name of butter; let us at this sacrifice hold it (in mind) with prostrations. May the *brāhmān* (Agni?) hear the praise which is chanted. The four-horned bright-coloured (god) has sent this forth.”

v. 29, 3. *Uta brahmāṇo Maruto me asya Indraḥ somasya sushutasya peyāḥ |*

“And, ye Maruts, *brāhmāns*, may Indra drink of this my soma which has been poured out,” etc.

v. 31, 4. *Anavas te ratham aśvāya takshan Tvashṭā vajram puruhūta dyumantam | brahmāṇah Indram mahayanto arkair avarddhayann Ahaye hantavai u |*

“The men²⁰ have fashioned a car for thy (Indra’s) horse, and *Tvashṭṛi* a gleaming thunderbolt, o god greatly invoked. The *brāhmāns*, magnifying Indra, have strengthened him for the slaughter of *Ahi*.”

v. 32, 12. *Evā hi tvām rituthā yātayantam maghā viprebhyo dadataṁ śrinomi | kiṁ te brahmāṇo grihate sakhāyo ye trāyāḥ nidadhuḥ kāmam Indra |*

“I hear of thee thus rightly prospering, and bestowing wealth on, the sages (*viprebhyaḥ*). What, o Indra, do the *brāhmāns*, thy friends, who have reposed their wishes on thee, obtain?”

v. 40, 8. *Grāvno brahmā yuyujānah saparyan kīriṇā devān namaśū upasikshan | Atriḥ sūryasya divi chakshur ā adhūt Svarbhānor apa māyāḥ aghukshat |*

“Applying the stones (for pressing soma), performing worship, honouring the gods with praise and obeisance, the *brāhmān* Atri placed

¹⁸ Compare viii. 69, 4; x. 39, 11; x. 107, 5; and the word *purohita*, used of a ministering priest as one *placed in front*. Prof. Aufrecht, however, would translate the last words, “under whose rule the priest receives the first or principal portion.”

¹⁹ See on this passage Roth’s article, “On Brahma and the Brāhmans,” Journ. Germ. Or. Soc. i. 77 ff. See also Aitareya Brāhmaṇa, viii. 26.

²⁰ Are the Ribhus intended?

the eye of the sun in the sky, and swept away the magical arts of Svarbhānu."

vii. 7, 5. *Asādi vrīto vahnīr ājaganvān Agnī brahmā nri-shadane
vidharttā* |

"The chosen bearer (of oblations), Agni, the *brāhmān*, having arrived, has sat down in a mortal's abode, the upholder."

vii. 42, 1. *Pra brahmāno Angiraso nakshanta* |

"The *brāhmāns*, the Angirases, have arrived," etc.

viii. 7, 20. *Kva nūnaṁ sudānavo madatha vrikta-barhishah | brahmā
ko vah saparyati* |

"Where now, bountiful (Maruts), are ye exhilarated, with the sacrificial grass spread beneath you? What *brāhmān* is serving you?"

viii. 17, 2. *Ā tvā brahma-yujā hari vahatām Indra kesiñā | upa brah-
māni naḥ śrinu |* 3. *Brahmānas tvā vayaṁ yujā somapām Indra somināḥ |
sutāvanto havāmahe* |

"Thy tawny steeds with flowing manes, yoked by prayer (*brahma-
yujā*),²¹ bring thee hither, Indra; listen to our prayers (*brāhmāni*). 3.
We *brāhmāns*, offerers of soma, bringing oblations, continually invoke
the drinker of soma."

viii. 31, 1. *Yo yajāti yajāte it sunavach cha pachāti cha | brahmā id
Indrasya chākanat* |

"That *brāhmān* is beloved of Indra who worships, sacrifices, pours out libations, and cooks offerings."

viii. 32, 16. *Na nūnam brahmanam rinam prāśnām asīt̄ sunvatām |
na somo apratā pape* |

"There is not now any debt due by the active *brāhmāns* who pour out libations. Soma has not been drunk without an equivalent."

viii. 33, 19. *Adhāḥ paśyasva mā upari santaram pādakau hara | mā
te kaśa-plakau dṛiṣṇā stī hi brahmā babbhūpitha* |

"Look downward, not upward; keep thy feet close together; let them not see those parts which should be covered; thou, a *brāhmān*, hast become a woman."

viii. 45, 39. *Ā te etā vacho-yujā hari gribhne sumadrathā | yad im
brahmabhyah id dadaḥ* |

²¹ Compare viii. 45, 39, below: *brahma-yuj* occurs also in i. 177, 2; iii. 35, 4; viii. 1, 24; viii. 2, 27.

"I seize these thy tawny steeds, yoked by our hymn (*vacho-yujā*)²² to a splendid chariot, since thou didst give (wealth) to the *brāhmāns*.

viii. 53, 7. *Kva sya vrishabho yuvā tuvi-grīvo anānataḥ* | *brahmā kaś taṁ saparyati* |

"Where is that vigorous, youthful, large-necked, unconquered (Indra)? What *brāhmān* serves him?

viii. 66, 5. *Abhi Gandharvam atrinad abudhneshu rajassu ā* | *Indro brahmabhyah id ṛtidhe* |

"Indra clove the Gandharva in the bottomless mists, for the prosperity of the *brāhmāns*."

viii. 81, 30. *Mo su brahmā iva tandrayur bhuvo vājānām pate* | *matra sutasya gomataḥ* |

"Be not, o lord of riches (Indra), sluggish like a *brāhmān*.²³ Be exhilarated by the libation mixed with milk."

viii. 85, 5. *Ā yad rajram bāhvor Indra dhatse mada-chyutam Ahare hantarai u* | *pra parvatāḥ anavanta pra brahmāṇo abhinakshanta Indram* |

"When, Indra, thou seighest in thine arms the thunderbolt which brings down pride, in order to slay Ahi, the (aerial) hills and the cows utter their voice, and the *brāhmāns* draw near to thee."

ix. 96, 6. *Brahmā devānām padavīḥ kavīnām rishir viprānām mahisho mṛigānām* | *śyeno gridhrānām svadhitir vanānām somāḥ pavitram ati eti rebhan* |

"Soma, resounding, overflows the filter, he who is a *brāhmān* among the gods, a leader among poets, a *rishi* among the wise, a buffalo among wild beasts, a falcon among kites, an axe among the woods."

ix. 112, 1. *Nānānām vai u no dhiyo vi vratāni janānām* | *takṣā rishītām rutam bhishag brahmā sunvantam ichhati*.

"Various are the thoughts and endeavours of us different men. The carpenter seeks something broken, the doctor a patient, the *brāhmān* some one to offer libations."²⁴

²² Compare viii. 87, 9, *yunjanti harī ishiraśya gāthayū urau rathe uruyuge* | *Indra-vāhā vachoyujā*; i. 7, 2, *vachoyujā*; i. 14, 6, *manoyujā*; vi. 49, 5, *ratho . . . manasā yujānāḥ*.

²³ Dr. Haug (Introd. to Ait. Br. p. 20) refers to Ait. Br. v. 34, as illustrating this reproach. See p. 376 of his translation. This verse clearly shows that the priests formed a professional body.

²⁴ This verse also distinctly proves that the priesthood already formed a profession. Verse 3 of the same hymn is as follows: "I am a poet, my father a physician, my

ix. 113, 6. *Yatra brahmā pavamāna chhandasyām vāchaṁ vadān | grāvñā some mahīyate somena ānandaṁ janayann Indrāya Indo pari srava |*

"O pure Soma, in the place where the *brāhmān*, uttering a metrical hymn, is exalted at the soma sacrifice through (the sound of) the crushing-stone, producing pleasure with soma, o Indu (Soma) flow for Indra."

x. 28, 11. *Tebhyo godhā ayathām karshad etad ye brahmaṇah pratipī- yanti annaiḥ | sime ukshnaḥ avasṛiṣṭān adanti svayam balāni tanvāḥ śriṇānāḥ |* (The word *brahmaṇah* occurs in this verse, but I am unable to offer any translation, as the sense is not clear.)

x. 71, 11. (See translation of this verse below, where the entire hymn is given.)

x. 85, 29. *Parā dehi śāmulyam brahmabhyo vi bhaja vasu | . . . 35. Sūryāyāḥ paśya rūpāni tāni brahmā tu śundhati |*

"Put away that which requires expiation (?). Distribute money to the *brāhmāns*. . . . 35. Behold the forms of Sūryā. But the *brāhmān* purifies them."

x. 141, 3. *Somaṁ rājānam avase Agniṁ gīrbhir havāmahe | Ādityān Vishṇūn Sūryam brahmānam cha Brihaspatim |*

"With hymns we invoke to our aid king Soma, Agni, the Adityas, Vishṇu, Sūrya, and Brihaspati, the *brāhmān*.

III. In the following passages the word *brāhmān* appears to designate the special class of priest so called, in contradistinction to *hotṛi*, *udgātri*, and *adhvaryu*.

ii. 1, 2 (= x. 91, 10). *Tava Agne hotraṁ tava potram ritviyaṁ tava neshṭraṁ tvam id agnid ritayataḥ | tava praśūstraṁ tvam adhvaryasi brahmā cha asi grihapatiś cha no dame | 2. Tvaṁ Agne Indro vṛishabhaḥ satām asi tvāṁ Vishṇur urugāyo namasyaḥ | tvam brahmā rayivid Brahmaṇaspate tvāṁ vidharttaḥ sachase purandhyā |*

"Thine, Agni, is the office of *hotṛi*, thine the regulated function of *potṛi*, thine the office of *neshṭri*, thou art the *agnidh* of the pious man, thine is the function of *praśūstṛi*, thou actest as *adhvaryu*, thou art the *brāhmān*, and the lord of the house in our abode. 2. Thou, Agni, art Indra, the chief of the holy, thou art Vishṇu, the wide-stepping, the

mother a grinder of corn" (*kārur ahaṁ tato bhishag upala-prakshinī nānā*). Unfortunately there is nothing further said which could throw light on the relations in which the different professions and classes of society stood to each other.

adorable, thou, o Brahmanaspati, art the *brāhmān*, the possessor of wealth, thou, o sustainer, art associated with the ceremonial."

iv. 9, 3. *Sa sadma pari nīyate hotā mandro divishṭishu | uta potā ni shīdati |* 4. *Uta gnā Agnir adhvare uta grihapatir dame | uta brahmā ni shīdati |*

"He (Agni) is led round the house, a joyous *hotri* at the ceremonies, and sits a *potri*. 4. And Agni is a wife (*i.e.* a mistress of the house) at the sacrifice, and the master of the house in our abode, and he sits a *brāhmān*."

x. 52, 2. *Aham hotā ni asidam̄ yajīyān viśve devāḥ maruto mā junanti | ahar ahar Aśvinā ādhvaryavaṁ vām brahmā samid bharati sā ahutir vām |*

(Agni says) "I have sat down an adorable *hotri*; all the gods, the Maruts, stimulate me. Day by day, ye Aśvins, I have acted as your *adhvaryu*; the *brāhmān* is he who kindles the fire: this is your invocation."

I shall now bring forward the whole of the texts in which the word *brāhmāna*, which, no doubt, originally meant a son, or descendant, of a *brāhmān*, occurs in the Rig-veda.²⁵ They are the following:

i. 164, 45. *Chatvāri vāk parimitā padāni tāni vidur brāhmaṇāḥ ye maniṣināḥ | guhā trīṇi nihitā na ingayanti turiyam vācho manushyāḥ vadanti |* ॥३॥, ॥३॥, ॥१॥, ॥२॥, ॥४॥, ॥५॥, ॥६॥

"Speech consists of four defined grades. These are known by those *brāhmans* who are wise. They do not reveal the three which are esoteric. Men speak the fourth grade of speech."

This text is quoted and commented upon in Nirukta xiii. 9. ॥७॥
§ vi. 75, 10. *Brāhmaṇasāḥ pitaraḥ somyāsaḥ śive no dyāvā-prithivī ane-hasā | Pūshā nah pātu duritād ritārvidhāḥ . . . !* ॥८॥

"May the *brāhmaṇ* fathers, drinkers of soma, may the auspicious, the sinless, heaven and earth, may Pūshan, preserve us, who prosper by righteousness, from evil, etc."

²⁵ There are two more texts in which the word *brāhmaṇa* is found, viz. i. 15, 5, and ii. 36, 5, on which see the following note. The word *brahmaputra* (compare Aśv. S. S. ii. 18, 13) "son of a brahman," is found in ii. 43, 2: *Udgātā iva śakune sāma gāyasi brāhmā-putraḥ iwa savaneshu śāmsasi |* "Thou, o bird, singest a sāma verse like an *udgātri*; thou singest praises like the son of a *brāhmān* at the libations." (Ind. Stud. ix. 342 ff.) *Vipra*, used in later Sanskrit as synonymous with *Brāhmaṇ*, has in the R.V. the sense of "wise," "sage" assigned by Nigh. 3, 15 (= *medhāvi-nāma*), and in Nir. 10, 19, = *medhāvinaḥ*. It is often applied as an epithet to the gods.

. vii. 103, 1 (= Nirukta 9, 6). *Sāṁvatsaraṁ śaśayānāḥ brāhmaṇāḥ vrata-chāriṇāḥ | vācham Parjanya-jinavitām pra manḍūkāḥ avādihuḥ |* 7. *Brāhmaṇāśo atirātre na some saro na pūrṇam abhito vadantaḥ | sāṁvatsarasya tad ahaḥ pari shṭha yad manḍūkāḥ prāvṛishīnam babhūva |* 8. *Brāhmaṇāsaḥ somino vācham akrata brahma kṛinvantāḥ parivatsarīnam | adhvaryavo gharmināḥ sishvidānāḥ āvir bhavanti guhyā ke chit |*

“After lying quiet for a year, those rite-fulfilling *brāhmaṇas*²⁶ the frogs have (now) uttered their voice, which has been inspired by Parjanya 7. Like *brāhmaṇas* at the Atirātra soma rite, like (those *brāhmaṇas*) speaking round about the full pond (or soma-bowl²⁷), you, frogs, surround (the pond) on this day of the year, which is that of the autumnal rains. 8. These soma-offering *brāhmaṇas* (the frogs) have uttered their voice, performing their annual devotion (*brahma*); these adhvaryu priests sweating with their boiled oblations (or in the hot season) come forth from their retreats like persons who have been concealed.”

x. 16, 6. *Yat te krishṇāḥ śakunāḥ ātutoda pipīlāḥ sarpaḥ uta rā śvāvadaḥ | Agnis tad viśvād agadañ karotu Somaś cha yo brāhmaṇān āviveśa |*

“Whatever part of thee any black bird, or ant, or serpent, or wild beast has mutilated, may Agni cure thee of all that, and Soma who has entered into the *brāhmaṇas*.²⁸”

²⁶ In the Nighantu, iii. 13, these words *brāhmaṇāḥ vrata-chāriṇāḥ* are referred to as conveying the sense of a simile, though they are unaccompanied by a particle of similitude. In his Illustrations of the Nirukta, p. 126, Roth thus remarks on this passage: “This is the only place in the first nine mandalas of the R.V. in which the word Brāhmaṇa is found with its later sense, whilst the tenth mandala offers a number of instances. This is one of the proofs that many of the hymns in this book were composed considerably later (than the rest of the R.V.). The word *brāhmaṇa* has another signification in i. 15, 5; ii. 36, 5; and vi. 75, 10.” (In the first of these texts, Roth assigns to the word the sense of the Brāhmaṇa’s soma-vessel. See his Lexicon, s.v. It does not appear what meaning he would give to the word in vi. 75, 10. He has in this passage overlooked R.V. i. 164, 45, which, however, is duly adduced in his Lexicon). See Wilson’s translation of the hymn; as also Müller’s, in his *Anc. Sansk. Lit.* p. 494 f.

²⁷ *Saras*. See R.V. viii. 66, 4, quoted in Nirukta, v. 11, where Yāska says, “The ritualists inform us that at the mid-day oblation there are thirty *uktha* platters destined for one deity, which are then drunk at one draught. These are here called *saras*.” (Compare Roth’s Illustrations on the passage. See also R.V. vi. 17, 11, and viii. 7, 10, with Śāyaṇa’s explanations of all three passages).

²⁸ Compare A.V. vii. 115, 1 f.; xii. 5, 6.

x. 71, 1.²⁹ *Bṛihaspate prathamam vāchō agrañ yat prairata nāmadhe-yañ dadhānāḥ | yad eshāñ śreshṭhañ yad aripram asīt preṇā tad eshāñ nihitāñ guhā āriḥ |* 2. (= Nirukta iv. 10) *Saktum iva titāñna punanto yatra dhīrāḥ manasā vācham akrata | atra sakhyāyah sakhyāni jānate bhadrā eshāñ lakshmīr nihitā adhi vāchi |* 3. *Yajnena vāchāḥ padarīyam āyan tām anv arindann ṛishishu prarishṭām | tām ābhṛitya vi adadhūḥ purutrā tām sapta rebhāḥ abhi sañ navante |* 4. (= Nir. i. 19) *Uta traḥ paśyan na dadarśa vācham uta traḥ śrīñvan na śriṇoti enām | uto trasmai tanrañ vi sasre jāyā iva patye uśati surāsāḥ |* 5. (= Nir. i. 20) *Uta tvañ sakhye sthirapītām āhur na enām hinrvanty api rājinešhu | adhenvā charati māyayā esha vācham śuśruvān aphalām apush-pām |* 6. *Yas tityāja sachī-ridām sakhyām na tasya vāchi api bhāgo asti | yad iñ śriṇoti alakām śriṇoti na hi prareda sukṛitasya panthām |* 7. *Akṣanvantaḥ karṇavantaḥ sakhyāyo manojareshu asamāḥ babhūruḥ | ādaghnūsaḥ upakakshūsaḥ u tre hradāḥ iva snātvāḥ u tre dadṛiṣe |* 8. (= Nir. xiii. 13) *Hṛidā tashṭeshu manaso jareshu yad brāhmaṇāḥ sañyajante sakhyāyah | atra aha trañ ri jahur vedyābhīr ohabrahmāno vi charanti u tre |* 9. *Ine ye na arrāñ na paraś charanti na brāhmaṇāso na sute-karāsaḥ | te ete vācham abhipadya pāpayā sirīs tantrañ tanvate aprajajnayah |* 10. *Sarve nandanti yaśasā āgatena sabhā-sahena sakhyā sakhyāyah | kilbisha-sprīt pitu-shanīr hi eshām arām hito bharati rājināya |* 11. (= Nir. i. 8) *Rīchām traḥ posham āste pupushvān gāyatrām tuo gāyati śakvarīshu | brahmā tuo vadati jāta-vidyām yajnasya mātrām vi mimīte u traḥ |*

“When, o Bṛihspati, men first sent forth the earliest utterance of speech, giving a name (to things), then all that was treasured within them, most excellent and pure, was disclosed through love. 2. Wherever the wise,—as if cleansing meal with a sieve,—have uttered speech with intelligence, there friends recognize acts of friendliness; good fortune dwells in their speech.³⁰ 3. Through sacrifice they came upon

²⁹ I cannot pretend that I am satisfied with some parts of the translation I have attempted of this very difficult hymn; but I give it such as it is, as the interpretation of the Vedic poems is still to a certain extent tentative. Verses 4 and 5 are explained in Sayana's Introduction to the Rig-veda, pp. 30 f. of Müller's edition. I am indebted here, as elsewhere, to Prof. Aufrecht for his suggestions.

³⁰ I quote here, as somewhat akin to this hymn, another from the A.V. vi. 108, being a prayer for wisdom or intelligence: 1. *Tvañ no medhe prathamā gobhir as'vebhīr ā gahi | tvañ sūryasya rātmībhīs tvañ no asi yajniyā |* 2. *Medhām aham vrathamām*

the track of speech, and found her entered into the rishis. Taking, they divided her into many parts ;³¹ the seven poets celebrate her in concert. 4. And one man, seeing, sees not speech, and another, hearing, hears her not ;³² while to a third she discloses her form, as a loving well-dressed wife does to her husband. 5. They say that one man has a sure defence in (her³³) friendship ; he is not overcome even in the conflicts (of discussion). But that person consorts with a barren delusion who has listened to speech without fruit or flower. 6. He who abandons a friend who appreciates friendship, has no portion whatever in speech. All that he hears, he hears in vain, for he knows not the path of righteousness. 7. Friends gifted both with eyes and ears have proved unequal in mental efforts. Some have been (as waters) reaching to the face or armpit, while others have been seen like ponds in which one might bathe. 8. When brāhmans who are friends strive (?) together in efforts of the mind produced by the heart,³⁴ they leave one man behind through their acquirements, whilst others walk about boasting to be brāhmāns. (This is the sense Professor Aufrecht suggests for the word *ohabrahmāṇah*. Professor Roth s.v. thinks it may mean "real priests." The author of Nirukta xiii. 13, explains it as meaning "reasoning priests," or "those of whom reasoning is the sacred science.") 9. The men who range neither near nor far, who are neither (reflecting) brāhmans nor yet pious worshippers at libations,—these, having acquired speech, frame their web imperfectly, (like) female

brahmaṇavatūm brahma-jūtūm rishishṭutūm | prapītūm brahmachārībhīr devānām avase huve | 3. *Yām medlām Ribhavo vidur yām medhām asurāḥ viduḥ | rishayo bhadrām medhām yām vidū tām mayy ā vesiayāmasi |* 4. *Yām rishayo bhūta-krito medhām medhāvino viduḥ | tayā mūm adya medhayā Agne medhāvinām kriṇu |* 5. *Medhām sāyam medhām prātar medhām madhyaudinam pari | medhām sūryasya rāśmibhir vachaśā "vesiayāmahe* 1. "Come to us, wisdom, the first, with cows and horses ; (come) thou with the rays of the sun ; thou art to us an object of worship. 2. To (obtain) the succour of the gods, I invoke wisdom the first, full of prayer, inspired by prayer, praised by rishis, imbibed by Brahmachārins. 3. We introduce within me that wisdom which Ribhus know, that wisdom which divine beings (*asurāḥ*) know, that excellent wisdom which rishis know. 4. Make me, o Agni, wise to-day with that wisdom which the wise rishis — the makers of things existing — know. 5. We introduce wisdom in the evening, wisdom in the morning, wiscom at noon, wisdom with the rays of the sun, and with speech" (*vachasā*). Regarding the *rishayo bhūtakritāḥ* see above, p. 37, note.

³¹ Compare x. 125, 3; i. 164, 45; (x. 90, 11); and A.V. xii. 1, 45.

³² Compare Isaiah vi. 9, 10; and St. Matthew xiii. 14, 15.

³³ *Vāk-sakhya*, Yūska.

³⁴ Compare i. 171, 2; ii. 35, 2; vi. 16, 47.

weavers,³⁵ being destitute of skill. 10. All friends rejoice at the arrival of a renowned friend who rules the assembly; for such a one, repelling evil, and bestowing nourishment upon them, is thoroughly prepared for the conflict (of discussion). 11. One man possesses a store of verses (*richām*); a second sings a hymn (*gāyatra*) during (the chanting of) the *śakraris*; one who is a *brāhmān* declares the science of being (*jāta-vidyām*), whilst another prescribes the order of the ceremonial.”³⁶

R.V. x. 88, 19 (= Nir. vii. 31). *Yāvan-mātram ushaso na pratikām suparnyo vasate Mātariśvah | tāvad dadhāti upa yajnam āyan brāhmaṇo hotur araro nishidān |*

“As long as the fair-winged Dawns do not array themselves in light, o Mātariśvan, so long the *brāhmaṇ* coming to the sacrifice, keeps (the fire), sitting below the *hotri*-priest.”³⁷

(See Professor Roth's translation of this verse in his Illustrations of the Nirukta, p. 113).

x. 90, 11 (= A.V. xix. 5, 6; Vaj. S. xxxi.). See above, pp. 8-15.

x. 97, 22. *Oshadhayah saṁradante Somena saha rājnā | yasmai kriṇoti brāhmaṇas taṁ rājan parayāmasi |*

“The plants converse with king Soma,³⁸ (and say), for whomsoever a *brāhmaṇ* acts (*kriṇoti*, officiates), him, o king, we deliver.”

x. 109, 1. *Te 'vadan prathamāḥ brahma-kilbiske akūpāraḥ salilo Mātariśvā | viluharās tapa ugro mayobhūr āpo devīr prathamajāḥ ṛitenā | Soma rājā prathamo brahma-jāyām punāḥ prāyachhad ahriṇīyamānaḥ | anvartitā Varuno Mitrahā ūśid Agnir hotū hastagṛihya nināya | 3. Itastena eva grāhyah ādhir aryāḥ “brahma-jāyā iyam” iti cha id arochan | na dūtāya prahye tasthe eshā tathā rāshṭram gupitāṁ kshattriyasya | 4. Devāḥ etasyām avadanta pūrve sapta ṛishayas tapase ye nisheduḥ | bhīmā jāyā brāhmaṇasya upanītā durdhām dadhāti parame ryoman |*

³⁵ Such is the sense which Prof. Aufrecht thinks may, with probability, be assigned to *sīrīs*, a word which occurs only here.

³⁶ According to Yūska (Nir. i. 8), these four persons are respectively the *hotri*, *udgātri*, *brahmaṇ*, and *adhvaryu* priests. The *brahmaṇ*, he says, being possessed of all science, ought to know everything; and gives utterance to his knowledge as occasion arises for it (*jāte jāte*). See Dr. Haug's remarks on this verse, Ait. Br. Introd. p. 20.

³⁷ Compare *oshadhīḥ Soma-rājnīḥ*, “the plants whose king is Soma,” in verses 18 and 19 of this hymn.

5. *Brahmachārī charati verishad rishaḥ sa devānām bharati ekam angam | tena jāyām anv avindad Brihaspatih Somena nītām juhvaṁ na devāḥ |*

6. *Punar vai devāḥ adaduḥ punar manushyāḥ uta | rājānah satyām krīvānāḥ brahma-jāyām punar daduḥ | 7. Punardāya brahma-jāyām kritvī derair nikilbisham | ūrjam pṛihiṣyāḥ bhaktrāya urugāyam upāsate |*

"These (deities), the boundless, liquid Mātariśvan (Air), the fiercely-flaming, ardently-burning, beneficent (Fire), and the divine primeval Waters, first through righteousness exclaimed against the outrage on a *brāhmān*. 2. King Soma,³⁸ unenvious, first gave back the *brāhmān's* wife; Varuna and Mitra were the inviters; Agni, the invoker, brought her, taking her hand. 3. When restored, she had to be received back by the hand, and they then proclaimed aloud, 'This is the *brāhmān's* wife;' she was not committed to a messenger to be sent:—in this way it is that the kingdom of a ruler (or Kshatriya) remains secured to him.³⁹ 4. Those ancient deities, the Rishis, who sat down to perform austerities, spoke thus of her, 'Terrible is the wife of the *brāhmān*; when approached, she plants confusion in the highest heaven.'⁴⁰ 5. The Brahmachārin⁴¹ (religious student) continues to perform observances. He becomes one member⁴² of the gods. Through him Brihaspati obtained his wife, as the gods obtained the ladle which was brought by Soma. 6. The gods gave her back, and men gave her back; kings, performing righteousness, gave back the *brāhmān's* wife. 7. Giving back the *brāhmān's* wife, delivering themselves from sin against the gods, (these kings) enjoy the abundance of the earth, and possess a free range of movement."

³⁸ Compare R.V. x. 85, 39 ff. (=A.V. xiv. 2, 2 ff.) *Punah patnīm Agnir adād āyushā saha varchasū | dirghāyur asyāḥ yaḥ patir jīvāti śaradaḥ śatam | 40. Somāḥ prathamo vivide Gandharvo vivide uttarāḥ* (the A.V. reads: *Somasya jāyā prathamaṁ Gandharvas te'parah patih | trītyo Agnish te patis turīyas te manushyajāḥ | Somo dadad Gandharvāya Gandharvo dadad Agnaye | rayām cha putrāns chādād Agnir mahayam atho imām |* "Agni gave back the wife with life and splendour: may he who is her husband live to an old age of 100 years! Soma was thy first, the Gandharva was thy second, Agni thy third, husband; thy fourth is one of human birth. Soma gave her to the Gandharva, the Gandharva to Agni, Agni gave me wealth and sons, and then this woman." The idea contained in this passage may possibly be referred to in the verse before us (x. 109, 2).

³⁹ I am indebted to Prof. Aufrecht for this explanation of the verse.

⁴⁰ See R.V. i. 164, 34, 35, above.

⁴¹ See my paper on the Progress of the Vedic Religion, in the Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society for 1865, pp. 374 ff.

⁴² See A.V. x. 7, 1 ff.; 9, 28.

This hymn is repeated in the Atharva-veda with the addition of ten more verses which I shall quote in the next section.

I shall here state summarily the remarks suggested by a perusal of the texts which I have quoted, and the conclusions which they appear to authorize regarding the relation of the Vedic poets and priests to the other classes of the Indian community at the time when the earlier hymns of the Rig-veda were composed.

First: Except in the Purusha Sūkta (translated above in pp. 9 ff.) there is no distinct reference in the hymns to any recognised system of four castes.

Second: In one text (iii. 34, 9, see p. 176) where mention is made of the Āryan "colour," or "race," all the upper classes of the Indian community are comprehended under one designation, as the Kshattriyas and Vaiśyas as well as the Brāhmans were always in after-times regarded as Āryas (see above, p. 176.).

Third: The term *brāhmaṇa* occurs only in eight hymns of the Rig-veda, besides the Purusha Sūkta, whilst *brāhmaṇ* occurs in forty-six. The former of these words could not therefore have been in common use at the time when the greater part of the hymns were composed. The term *rājanya* is found only in the Purusha Sūkta; and *kshattriya* in the sense of a person belonging to a royal family, a noble, occurs only in a few places, such as x. 109, 3.⁴⁴ The terms Vaiśya and Sūdra are only found in the Purusha Sūkta, although *viś*, from which the former is derived, is of frequent occurrence in the sense of "people" (see p. 14, above).

Fourth: The word *brāhmaṇ*, as we have seen, appears to have had at first the sense of "sage," "poet;" next, that of "officiating priest;" and ultimately that of a "special description of priest."

Fifth: In some of the texts which have been quoted (particularly i. 108, 7; iv. 50, 8 f.; viii. 7, 20; viii. 45, 39; viii. 53, 7; viii. 81, 30; ix. 112, 1; x. 85, 29) *brāhmaṇ* seems to designate a "priest by profession."

Sixth: In other places the word seems rather to imply something peculiar to the individual, and to denote a person distinguished for

⁴⁴ This text is quoted above. In vii. 104, 13, Kshattriya is perhaps a neuter substantive: *Na vai u Somo vṛijinam hinoti na kshattriyam mithuyā dhārayantam*! "Soma does not prosper the sinner, nor the man who wields royal power deceitfully."

genius or virtue (x. 107, 6), or elected by special divine favour to receive the gift of inspiration (x. 125, 5).

Seventh : *Brāhmāna* appears to be equivalent to *brāhmā-putra*, “the son of a *brāhmān*” (which, as we have seen, occurs in ii. 43, 2), and the employment of such a term seems necessarily to presuppose that, at the time when it began to become current, the function of a *brāhmān*, the priesthood, had already become a profession.

The Rig-veda Sanhitā contains a considerable number of texts in which the large gifts of different kinds bestowed by different princes on the authors of the hymns are specified, and these instances of bounty are eulogized.

Of these passages R.V. i. 125 ; i. 126 ; v. 27 ; v. 30, 12 ff. ; v. 61, 10 ; vi. 27, 8 ; vi. 45, 31 ff. ; vi. 47, 22 ff. may be consulted in Prof. Wilson's translation ; and a version of R.V. x. 107, which contains a general encomium on liberality will be found in the article entitled “Miscellaneous Hymns from the Rig- and Atharva-vedas,” in the Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society for 1866, p. 32 f. The following further texts, which describe the presents given by different princes to the rishis, viz. vii. 18, 22 ff. ; viii. 3, 21 ff. ; viii. 4, 19 ff. ; viii. 5, 37 ff. ; viii. 6, 46 ff. ; viii. 19, 36 f. ; viii. 21, 17 f. ; viii. 24, 29 f. ; viii. 46, 21 ff. ; viii. 54, 10 ff. ; viii. 57, 14 ff. ; x. 33, 4 ff. ; x. 62, 6 ff. ; x. 93, 14 f. are translated in the article “On the relations of the priests to the other classes of Indian Society in the Vedic age” in the same Journal for 1866, pp. 272 ff., to which I refer.

On the other hand the hymns of the Rig-veda contain numerous references to persons who, if not hostile, were at least indifferent and inattentive to the system of worship which the rishis professed and inculcated ; and niggardly in their offerings to the gods and their gifts to the priests. The article to which I have just referred contains (pp. 286 ff.) a long list of such passages, from which I extract the following :

i. 84, 7. *Yah ekaḥ id vidayate vasu marttaya dūśushe | iśāno apratish-kutah Indro anga |* 8. *Kadū martyam arādhasam padā kshumpam iva sphurat | kadū nah śuśruvad giraḥ Indro anga |*

“Indra, who alone distributes riches to the sacrificing mortal, is lord and irresistible. 8. When will Indra crush the illiberal man like a bush with his foot? when will he hear our hymns?”

i. 101, 4. . . . *viloś chid Indro yo asunvato vadhaḥ . . . |*

“Indra, who is the slayer of him, however strong, who offers no libations.”

i. 122, 9. *Jano yo Mitrā-varuṇāv abhidhrug apo na vāṁ sunoti akṣṇayādhruk | svayaṁ sa yakṣmaṁ hrīdaye ni dhatte āpa yad iṁ hotrābhīr ritārā |*

“The hostile man, the malicious enemy, who pours out no libations to you, o Mitra and Varuṇa, plants fever in his own heart, when the pious man has by his offerings obtained (your blessing).”

i. 125, 7. *Mā priṇanto duritam enaḥ ā aran mā jāriṣuh sūrayaḥ surratāsaḥ | anyas teshāṁ paridhir astu kaś chid aprīṇantam abhi saṁ yantu śokāḥ |*

“Let not the liberal suffer evil or calamity; let not devout sages decay; let them have some further term; let griefs befall the illiberal (*aprīṇantam*). ”

i. 182, 3. *Kim atra dasrā kṛiṇuthaḥ kim āsāthe janō yaḥ kaścid ahavir mahīyate | ati kramiṣṭam juratam pañer asum jyotiḥ vīprāya kṛiṇutāṁ vachasyave |*

“What do ye here, o powerful (Aśvins)? why do ye sit (in the house of) a man who offers no oblation, and (yet) is honoured? Assail, wear away the breath of the niggard, and create light for the sage who desires to extol you.”

ii. 23, 4. *Sūnitibhir nayasi trāyase janāṁ yas tubhyāṁ dāśad na tam aṁho aśnavat | brahma-dvishas tapano manyumīr asi Brīhaspate mahi tat te mahitranam |*

“By thy wise leadings thou guidest and protectest the man who worships thee; no calamity can assail him. Thou art the vexer of him who hates devotion (*brahma-dvishaḥ*), and the queller of his wrath: this, o Brīhaspati, is thy great glory.”

iv. 25, 6. . . . *na asuśver āpir na sakhā na jāmir dushprāryo avahantā id avāchaḥ | 7. Na reratā pañinā sakhyam Indro asunvatā sutapāḥ saṁ grīṇite | ā aye vedāḥ khidati hanti nagnāṁ vi sushraye paktaye kevalo 'bhūt |*

“Indra is not the relation or friend or kinsman of the man who offers no libations; he is the destroyer of the prostrate irreligious man. 7. Indra, the soma-drinker, accepts not friendship with the wealthy niggard who makes no soma-libations; but robs him of his riches, and

slays him when stripped bare, whilst he is the exclusive patron of the man who pours out soma and cooks oblations."

vi. 44, 11. . . . *jahi asushvīn pra vṛiha aprinataḥ* |

"Slay (o Indra) those who offer no libations; root out the illiberal."

viii. 53, 1. *Ut tvā mandantu stomāḥ kriṇushva rādho adrivaḥ* | *ava brahma-drisho jahi* | *pādā pañin arādhaso ni badhasva mahān asi* | *na hi tvā kaśchana prati* |

"Let our hymns gladden thee; give us wealth, o thunderer. Slay the haters of devotion. 2. Crush with thy foot the niggards who bestow nothing. Thou art great; no one is comparable to thee."

It seems evident, then, from these texts (and there are many more of the same tenor), that the irreligious man, the *parcus deorum cultor et infrequens*, was by no means a rare character among the Āryas of the Vedic age, and that the priests often found no little difficulty in drawing forth the liberality of their contemporaries towards themselves and in enforcing a due regard to the ceremonials of devotion. And if we consider, on the other hand, that the encomiums on the liberality of different princes to the poets and priests which are contained in the passages to which I before adverted, are the production of the class whose pretensions they represent, and whose dignity they exalt, we shall, no doubt, see reason to conclude that the value of the presents bestowed has been enormously exaggerated, and make some deduction from the impression which these texts are calculated to convey of the estimation in which the priests were held at the time when they were composed. But after every allowance has been made for such considerations, and for the state of feeling indicated by the complaints of irreligion and illiberality of which I have cited specimens, it will remain certain that the *brāhmān*, whether we look upon him as a sage and poet, or as an officiating priest, or in both capacities, was regarded with respect and reverence, and even that his presence had begun to be considered as an important condition of the efficacy of the ceremonial. Thus, as we have already seen, in i. 164, 35, the *brāhmān* is described as the highest heaven of "speech;" in x. 107, 6, a liberal patron is called a rishi and a *brāhmān*, as epithets expressive of the most distinguished eulogy; in x. 125, 5, the goddess Vāch is said to make the man who is the object of her special affection a *brāhmān* and a rishi; in vi. 45 7; vii. 7, 5; viii. 16, 7; and ix. 96, 6, the term *brāhmān* is applied

honorifically to the gods Indra, Agni, and Soma ; in iv. 50, 8, 9, great prosperity is declared to attend the prince by whom a *brāhmān* is employed, honoured, and succoured ; and in iii. 53, 9, 12 ; v. 2, 6 ; vii. 33, 2, 3, 5 ; and vii. 83, 4, the highest efficacy is ascribed to the intervention and intercession of this class of functionaries.

Again, whatever exaggeration we may suppose in the texts which eulogize the liberality of princely patrons, in regard to the value of the presents bestowed, there is no reason to doubt that the ministers of public worship, who possessed the gift of expression and of poetry, who were the depositaries of all sacred science, and who were regarded as the channels of access to the gods, would be largely rewarded and honoured.⁴⁴

⁴⁴ It is to be observed that, in these eulogies of liberality, mention is nowhere made of *Brāhmans* as the recipients of the gifts. In two places, viii. 4, 20, and x. 33, 4, a rishi is mentioned as the receiver. In later works, such as the *S'atapatha Brāhmaṇa*, on the contrary, the presents are distinctly connected with *Brāhmans*. Thus it is said in that work, ii. 2, 2, 6 : *Dvayāḥ rai devāḥ devāḥ aha eva devāḥ atha ye brāhmaṇāḥ sūsrutāṁśo 'nūchānāś te manushya-devāḥ | teshāṁ dveḍhā vibhaktāḥ eva yajnaḥ āhutayaḥ eva devānāṁ dakṣināḥ manushya-devānām brāhmaṇānām sūsrutu-shām anūchānānām | āhutibhir eva devān prīṇāti dakṣinibhir manushya-devān brāhmaṇān sūsrutusho 'nūchānān | te enam ubhaye devāḥ prītāḥ sūdhyāyām dadhati |* “Two kinds of gods are gods, viz. the gods (proper), whilst those *Brāhmans* who have the Vedic tradition, and are learned, are the human gods. The worship (*yajna*) of these is divided into two kinds. Oblations constitute the worship offered to the gods, and presents (*dakṣinā*) that, offered to the human gods, the *Brāhmans*, who possess the Vedic tradition and are learned. It is with oblations that a man gratifies the gods, and with presents that he gratifies the human gods, the *Brāhmans*, who possess the Vedic tradition, and are learned. Both these two kinds of gods, when gratified, place him in a state of happiness” (*sūdhyāyām*) ; (or “convey him to the heavenly world,” as the expression is varied in the parallel passage of the same work, iv. 3, 4, 4). It is similarly said in the *Taitt. Sanh.* i. 7, 3, 1 : *Parokshām vai anye devāḥ ijyante pratyaksham anye | yad yajata ye eva devāḥ paroksham ijyante tān eva tad yajata | yad anvāhāryam āharati ete vai devāḥ pratyaksham yad brāhmaṇān tān era tena prīṇāti | atmo dakṣinā eva anya eshā | atmo yajnasya eva chhīdrām apidādhātū | yad vai yajnasya kūṭram yad vilishṭam tad anvāhāryena aneāharati | tad anvāhāryasya anvāhāryavatam | devadūtāḥ vai ete yad ritivyo yad unvāhāryam āharati devadūtān eva prīṇāti |* “Some gods are worshipped in their absence, and others in their presence. It is to those gods who are worshipped in their absence that the sacrificer offers the oblation which he presents. And it is these gods who are visible, i.e. the *Brāhmans*, whom he gratifies with the *anvāhārya* (present of cooked rice) which he afterwards brings. Now this *anvāhārya* is the present (*dakṣinā*) connected with it (the sacrifice). Then he covers over the faults of the sacrifice. Whatever in it is excessive or defective, that he removes by means of the *anvāhārya*. In this consists the nature of that offering. These officiating priests are the messengers of the gods; and it is the messengers of the gods whom the sacrificer gratifies with this *anvāhārya* gift which he presents.”

It is further clear, from some of the texts quoted above (ii. 1, 2; iv. 9, 3; x. 52, 2), as well as i. 162, 5, and from the contents of hymns ii. 36; ii. 37; ii. 43; and x. 124, 1,⁴⁵ that in the later part of the Vedic era, to which these productions are probably to be assigned, the ceremonial of worship had become highly developed and complicated, and that different classes of priests were required for its proper celebration.⁴⁶ It is manifest that considerable skill must have been required for the due performance of these several functions; and as such skill could only be acquired by early instruction and by practice, there can be little doubt that the priesthood must at that period have become a regular profession.⁴⁷ The distinction of king or noble and priest appears to be recognized in i. 108, 7, as well as in iv. 50, 8, 9; whilst in v. 47, 7, 14, a similar distinction is made between king and rishi; and it is noticeable that the verse, in other respects nearly identical, with which the 36th and 37th hymns of the eight *mandūla* respectively conclude, ends in the one hymn with the words, "Thou alone, Indra, didst deliver Trasadasyu in the conflict of men, magnifying prayers" (*brahmāṇi vārdhayān*); whilst in the other the last words are, "magnifying (royal) powers" (*kshattrāṇi vārdhayān*), as if the former contained a reference to the functions of the priest, and the latter to those of the prince. (Compare viii. 35, 16, 17.)

While, however, there thus appears to be every reason for supposing that towards the close of the Vedic period the priesthood had become a profession, the texts which have been quoted, with the exception of the verse in the Purusha Sūkta (x. 90, 12), do not contain anything which necessarily implies that the priests formed an exclusive caste, or, at least, a caste separated from all others by insurmountable barriers, as in later times. There is a wide difference between a profession, or even a hereditary order, and a caste in the fully developed Brahmanical sense.

⁴⁵ See also i. 94, 6, where it is said: "Thou (Agni) art an *adhvaryu*, and the earliest *hotri*, a *prasāstri*, a *potri*, and by nature a *purohita*. Knowing all the priestly functions (ārtijyā) wise, thou nourishest us," etc. (*tram adhvaryur uta hotī 'si pūrryaḥ prasāstā potā janushā purohitaḥ | vis'vā vidvān ārtijyā dhīra pushyasy Agne ity ādi*).

⁴⁶ See Prof. Müller's remarks on this subject, *Anc. Sansk. Lit.* pp. 485 ff.; and Dr. Haug's somewhat different view of the same matter in his *Introd. to Ait. Br.* pp. 11 ff.

⁴⁷ In regard to the great importance and influence of the priests, see Müller's *Anc. Sansk. Lit.* pp. 485 ff.

Even in countries where the dignity and exclusive prerogatives of the priesthood are most fully recognized (as in Roman Catholic Europe), the clergy form only a profession, and their ranks may be recruited from all sections of the community. So, too, is it in most countries, even with a hereditary nobility. Plebeians may be ennobled at the will of the sovereign. There is, therefore, no difficulty in supposing that in the Vedic era the Indian priesthood—even if we suppose its members to have been for the most part sprung from priestly families—may have often admitted aspirants to the sacerdotal character from other classes of their countrymen. Even the employment of the word *brāhmaṇa* in the Rig-veda does not disprove this. This term, derived from *brahman*, “priest,” need not, as already intimated, signify anything further than the son or descendant of a priest (the word *brahmaputra*, “son of a priest,” is, as we have seen, actually used in one text),—just as the *rājanya* means nothing more than the descendant of a king or chief (*rājan*), a member of the royal family, or of the nobility.

The paucity of the texts (and those, too, probably of a date comparatively recent) in which the word *brāhmaṇa* occurs, when contrasted with the large number of those in which *brāhmāṇ* is found, seems, as I have already observed, to prove conclusively that the former word was but little employed in the earlier part of the Vedic era, and only came into common use towards its close. In some of these passages (as in vii. 103, 1, 7, 8; x. 88, 19) there is nothing to shew that the Brāhmaṇ is alluded to as anything more than a professional priest, and in vii. 103, the comparison of frogs to Brāhmaṇs may seem even to imply a want of respect for the latter and their office.⁴³ In other places (i. 164, 45, and x. 71, 8, 9) a distinction appears to be drawn between intelligent and unintelligent Brāhmaṇs, between such as were thoughtful and others who were mere mechanical instruments in carrying on the ceremonial of worship,⁴⁴ which, certainly points to the existence of a sacerdotal class. In another passage (x. 97, 22) the importance of a Brāhmaṇ to the proper performance of religious rites appears to be clearly expressed. In x. 109, where the words *brāhmāṇ* (*passim*) and *brāh-*

⁴³ See Müller's remarks on this hymn in his *Anc. Sansk. Lit.* p. 494.

⁴⁴ In R.V. viii. 50, 9, it is said: “Whether an unwise or a wise man, o Indra, has offered to thee a hymn, he has gladdened (thee) through his devotion to thee (*avipre vā yad avidhad vipro vā Indra te vachah | sa pra mamandat tvāyā ity ādi*).”

mana (in verse 4) seem to be used interchangeably—the inviolability of Brāhmaṇa's wives, the peril of interfering with them, and the blessing attendant on reparation for any outrage committed against them, are referred to in such a way as to shew at once the loftiness of the claim set up by the Brāhmans on their own behalf, and to prove that these pretensions were frequently disregarded by the nobles. In x. 16, 6, the Brāhmans are spoken of as inspired by Soma, and in vi. 75, 10, the manes of earlier Brāhmans are reckoned among those divine beings who have power to protect the suppliant. But in none of these texts is any clear reference made to the Brāhmans as constituting an exclusive caste or race, and nothing whatever is said about their being descended from an ancestor distinct from those of the other classes of their countrymen.

SECT. II.—*Quotations from the Rig-veda, the Nirukta, the Mahābhārata, and other works, to shew that according to ancient Indian tradition, persons not of priestly families were authors of Vedic hymns, and exercised priestly functions.*

But in addition to the negative evidence adduced in the preceding section, that during the age to which the greater part of the hymns of the Rig-veda are referable, the system of castes had, to say the least, not yet attained its full development, we find also a considerable amount of proof in the hymns themselves, or in later works, or from a comparison of both, that many of the hymns either were, or from a remote antiquity were believed to be, the productions of authors not of sacerdotal descent; and that some of these persons also acted as priests. The most signal instance of this kind is that of Viśvāmitra; but from the abundance of the materials which exist for its illustration I shall reserve it for the next chapter, where I shall treat of the contests between the Brāhmans and the Kshattriyas.

In later times, when none but Brāhmaṇa priests were known, it seemed to be an unaccountable, and—as contradicting the exclusive sacerdotal pretensions of the Brāhmans—an inconvenient circumstance, that priestly functions should have been recorded as exercised by persons whom tradition represented as Rājanyas; and it therefore became necessary to explain away the historical facts, by inventing miraculous legends to make it appear that these men of the royal order had been

in reality transformed into Brāhmans, as the reward of their super-human merits and austerities—an idea of which we shall meet with various illustrations in the sequel. The very existence, however, of such a word as *rājarshi*, or “royal rishi,” proves that Indian tradition recognized as rishis or authors of Vedic hymns persons who were considered to belong to Rājanya families. A number of such are named (though without the epithet of *rājarshi*) in the Anukramanīkā or index to the Rig-veda; but Sāyaṇa, who quotes that old document, gives them this title. Thus, in the introduction to hymn i. 100, he says: *Atra anukramyate “sa yo ṛishāḥ ēkonā Vārshāgirāḥ Rijrāśrāmbariṣha-Sahadeva-Bhayamāna-Surādhāsaḥ” iti | Vṛishāgirō mahārājasya putrabhūtāḥ Rijrāśvādayāḥ pancha rājarshayaḥ sadhaṁ sūktāṁ dadriśuḥ | atas te asya sūktasya ṛishayaḥ | uktāṁ hy ārshānukramanyām “sūktāṁ sa yo ṛishety etat pancha Vārshāgirāḥ viduḥ | niyuktāḥ nāmadheyaiḥ svair api ‘chaitat tyad’ iti rīchi” iti |* “It is said in the Anukramanīkā, ‘Of this hymn (the rishis) are Rijrāśva, Ambariṣha, Sahadeva, Bhayamāna, and Surādhas, sons of Vṛishāgir.’ Rijrāśva and others, sons of King Vṛishāgir, in all five rājarshis, saw this hymn in a bodily form. Hence they are its rishis (or seers). For it is declared in the Ārsha Anukramanī: ‘The five sons of Vṛishāgir, who are mentioned by name in the verse beginning “this praise” (the 17th), know this hymn.’” The 17th verse is as follows: *Etat tyat te Indra ṛishne ukthaṁ Vārshagirāḥ abhi gri-nanti rādhāḥ | Rijrāśvāḥ prashṭibhir Ambariṣhāḥ Sahadevo Bhayamānah Surādhāḥ |* “This hymn the Vārshāgiras, Rijrāśva, with his attendants, and Ambariṣha, Sahadeva, Bhayamāna, and Surādhas, utter to thee, the vigorous, o Indra, as their homage;” on which Sāyaṇa repeats the remark that these persons were rājarshis (*etad ukthaṁ stotraṁ rādhāḥ saṁrādhakāṁ trat-priti-hetuṁ Vārshagirāḥ Vṛishāgirō rājnah putrāḥ Rijrāśvādayo ’bhi grīnanti ābhimukhyena vadanti | Rijrāśvāḥ etat-sanjno rājarshih prashṭibhiḥ pārśva-sthair anyair ṛishibhiḥ saha Indram astaut | ke te pārśva-sthāḥ | Ambariṣhādayas chatvāro rājarshayaḥ*). Ambariṣha is also said to be the rishi of ix. 98. Again, “Trasadasyu, son of Purukutsa, a Rājarshi,” is said by Sāyaṇa on R.V. iv. 42, to be the rishi of that hymn (*Purukutsasya putras Trasadasyuh rājarshih | atrānukramanīkā ‘mama dvitā’ daśa Trasadasyuh Paurukutsyah*). In the 8th and 9th verses Trasadasyu is thus mentioned: *Asmākam atra pitaras te āsan sapta ṛishayo Daurgaho badhyamāne | te ā*

ayajanta Trasadasylum asyāḥ Indram na vrittraturam arddhaddevam | 9.
Purukutsānī hi vām adāśad havyebhir Indrā-varuṇā namobhiḥ | atha rā-
jānāṁ Trasadasylum asyāḥ vrittrahanaṁ dadathur arddhaddevam | 8.
 “These seven rishis were our fathers. When the son of Durgaha was bound they gained by sacrifice for her (Purukutsāni) a son Trasadasyu, a slayer of foes, like Indra, a demigod. 9. Purukutsāni worshipped you, o Indra and Varuṇa, with salutations and obeisances; then ye gave her king Trasadasyu, a slayer of enemies, a demigod.” I give Sāyaṇa’s note on these verses : “*Purukutsasya mahishī Daurgahe bandhana-sthite | patyāv arājakāṁ dṛishṭvā rāshṭram putrasya lipsyā | yadrichchaya samāyatāṁ saptarshīn paryapūjyat | te cha prītāḥ punāḥ prochur ‘yajendrā-varuṇau bhṛiṣam’ | sā chendra-varuṇāv iṣṭvā Trasadasylum ajījanat | itihāsam imāṁ jānann rishir brūte richāv iha” | atha asmākam atra asminn arājake deśe asyāṁ prithivyāṁ vā pitaraḥ pālayitūraḥ utpādakāś te āsann abhāvan | ete saptarshayaḥ prasiddhāḥ Daurgahe Durgahasya putre Purukutse badhyamāne dṛidham pāśair yasmād asyāḥ asyai Purukutsānyai Trasadasylum āyajanta prādūr Indrā-Varuṇayor anugrahāt | “‘The queen of Purukutsa, when her husband, the son of Durgaha, was imprisoned, seeing the kingdom to be destitute of a ruler, and desirous of a son, of her own accord paid honour to the seven rishis who had arrived. And they, again, being pleased told her to sacrifice to Indra and Varuna. Having done so she bore Trasadasyu. Knowing this story, the rishi utters these two verses,’ which Sāyaṇa then explains. Similarly Sāyaṇa says on v. 27 : “Tryaruna son of Trivṛishṇa, Trasadasyu son of Purukutsa, and Aśvamedha son of Bharata, these three kings conjoined, are the rishis of this hymn ; or Atri is the rishi” (*Atrānukramanikā* | “*Anas-*
vantā shaṭ Trairishṇa-paurukutsyau drau Tryaruna-Trasadasyū rājānau
Bhārataś cha Aśvamedhāḥ | . . . ‘na ātmā ītmane dadyād’ iti sarvāś
Atrīṁ kechit” . . . *Trivṛishṇasya putras Tryarunāḥ Purukutsasya putras*
Trasadasyur Bharatasya putro śvamedhāḥ ete trayo ‘pi rājānāḥ sambhūya
asya sūktasya rishayah | yadvā Atrīr eva rishiḥ). The Anukramanikā, however, adds that according to some, as “no one would give gifts to himself, none of the princes mentioned as donors could be the author; but Atri must be the rishi.” As the hymn is spoken by a fourth person, in praise of the liberality of these kings, it is clear they cannot well be its authors. And a similar remark applies to iv. 42, 8 f. However, the Hindu tradition, being such as it is, is good proof that kings could, in*

conformity with ancient opinion, be rishis. *Trasadasyu* and *Trayaruna* are also mentioned as the rishis of ix. 110.⁵⁰ The rishis of iv. 43 and iv. 44 are declared by *Sāyana*, and by the *Anukramaṇikā*, to be *Purumīlha*, and *Ajamīlha*, sons or descendants of *Suhotra* (iv. 43, *Atrānukramāṇikā* ‘*kah u śāśrat*’ *sapta Purumīlhājamīlhā* *Sauhotrau tu Āśrinām hi* | iv. 44, *Purumīlhājamīlhār eva rishi*). Though these persons are not said by either of these authorities to be kings, yet in the *Vishṇu* and *Bhāgavata Purāṇas* the latter is mentioned as being of royal race, and a tribe of Brāhmans is said to have been descended from him (see above p. 227). In the sixth verse of iv. 44, the descendants of *Ajamīlha* are said to have come to the worship of the *Āśvins* (*naro yad tām Āśrinā stomaṁ ḫran sadhastutim Ajamīlhūso agman*). The following hymns, also, are said by tradition to have had the undermentioned kings for their rishis, viz.: vi. 15, *Vitahavya* (or *Bharadvāja*); x. 9, *Sindhudvīpa*, son of *Ambariṣha* (or *Triśiras*, son of *Tvaṣṭṛi*); x. 75, *Sindhukshit*, son of *Priyamedha*; x. 133, *Sudās*, son of *Pijavana*; x. 134, *Māndhātṛi*, son of *Yuvanāśva* (see above, p. 225); x. 179, *Sibi*, son of *Uśinara*, *Pratardana*, son of *Divodāsa* and king of *Kāśi* (see above, p. 229), and *Vasumanas*, son of *Rohidaśva*; and x. 148 is declared to have had *Prīthī Vainya*⁵¹ as its rishi. In the fifth verse of that hymn it is said: *Srudhi havam Indra śūra Prīthyāḥ uta starase Venyasya arkaiḥ* | “Hear, o heroic Indra; the invocation of *Prīthī*; and thou art praised by the hymn of *Venya*.” In viii. 9, 10, also, *Prīthī Vainya* is mentioned at the same time with three rishis: *Yad tām Kakshīvān uta yad Vyāsvāḥ rishir yad vām Dirghatamāḥ juhāva* | *Prīthī yad vām Vainyāḥ sadaneshu eva id ato Āśvinā chetayethām* | “Whatever oblation (or invocation) Kakshīvat has made to you, or the rishi *Vyāsva*, or *Dirghatamas*, or *Prīthī*, son of *Vena*, in the places of

⁵⁰ In the *Vishnu Purāṇa*, as we have seen above, p. 237, *Trayyaruṇa*, *Pushkarin*, and *Kapi* are said to have been sons of *Urukshaya*, and all of them to have become Brāhmans; and in the *Bhāgavata Purāṇa*, *Trayyaruni*, *Pushkarūni*, and *Kapi* are said to have all become Brāhmans.

⁵¹ The S'. P. Br. v. 3, 5, 4, refers to *Prīthī* as “first of men who was installed as a king” (*Prīthī ha vai Vainyo manushyānām pruthamo 'bhishishicō*). I extract from Dr. Hall's edition of Prof. Wilson's *Vishṇu Purāṇa*, vol. iii. the following verse, adduced by the editor from the *Vāyu Purāṇa* about royal rishis: *Mūnave Vainave (?) vāmē Aīde vañée cha ye nrīpāḥ* | *Aīdā Aīkshvākā Nābhāgā jneyā rājarshayas tu te* | “Kings in the race of *Manu*, *Vena* (?), and *Iḍa*, the descendants of *Iḍa*, *Ikashvāku*, and *Nābhāga* are to be known as having been rājarshis.”

sacrifice, take notice of that, o Aśvins." Here Sāyana refers to Pṛithī as "the royal rishi of that name."

From the details I have supplied it is clear that in many cases the evidence is against the supposition that the princes to whom the hymns are ascribed were in reality their authors. The only instances in which the authorship seems to be established by the tenor of the hymns themselves are those of the Vārshagiras, or, at all events, that of Pṛithī. But, as has been already remarked, the fact that ancient Hindu tradition recognizes royal rishis as the authors of hymns is sufficient to prove that such cases were not unknown. Even if we were to suppose that flattery had any share in the creation of these traditions, it no doubt proceeded upon the belief of those who put them into circulation, that in earlier times the distinction between the priests and other classes was not so sharply defined as in their own day.

I proceed, however, to the case of Devāpi, in which the materials for forming a judgment are more adequate and satisfactory, and prove that he was not merely a rishi but an officiating priest.

In the Anukramanikā, R.V. x. 98 is ascribed to him as its author; and Yāska states as follows in the Nirukta, ii. 10 :

*Tatra itihāsam āchakshate | Devāpiś cha Ārṣṭishenāḥ S'antanuś cha
Kauravyau bhrātarau babhūratuh | sa S'antanuh kanīyāḥ abhishechayān-
chakre | Devāpis tapah pratipede | tataḥ S'antanoh rājye drādaśa var-
shāni devo na vararsha | tam učhur brāhmaṇāḥ “adharmaś trayā charito
jyeshṭham bhrātarām qntaritya abhishechitam | tasmāt te devo na var-
shati” iti | sa S'antanur Devāpiṁ śiśiksha rājyena | tam uvācha Devā-
piḥ “purohitas te 'sāni yājayāni cha trā” iti | tasya etad varsha-kāma-
sūktam | tasya eshā bhavati |*

"Here they relate a story. Devāpi son of Rishṭishena, and Santanu, belonged to the race of Kuru and were brothers. Santanu, who was the younger, caused himself to be installed as king, whilst Devāpi betook himself to austere fervour. Then the god did not rain for twelve years of Santanu's reign. The Brāhmans said to him: 'Thou hast practised unrighteousness in that, passing by thy elder brother, thou hast caused thyself to be installed as king. It is for this reason that the god does not rain.' Santanu then sought to invest Devāpi with the sovereignty; but the latter said to him: 'Let me be th-

purohita and perform sacrifice for thee.' This hymn, expressing a desire of rain, is his. The following verse is part of it."

Yâska then quotes a verse of R.V. x. 98, the whole of which is as follows :

*Brihaspate prati me deratam ihi Mitro vā yad Varuno vā asi Pūshā | Ādityair vā yad Vasubhir Marutrān sa Parjanyām S'antanave vrishaya | 2. Ā dero dūto ajiraś chikitrān trad Derāpe abhi mām ḗgachhat | pratīchīnaḥ prati mām ā rarrītsra dadhāmi te dyumatīm vācham āsan | 3. Asme dhehi dyumatīm vācham āsan Brihaspate anamīvām ishirām | yayā vrishṭīm S'antanare vanāra diro drapsō madhumān ā riveśa | 4. Ā no drapsāḥ madhumanto riśantu Indra dehi adhirathām sahasram | ni shīda hotram⁵² rituthā yajasra devān Devāpe harishā saparya | 5. Ārsh-
tisheno hotram rishir nishīdan Devāpir dera-sumatiṁ chikitvān | sa uttarasmād adharam samudram apo diryāḥ asrijad varshyāḥ abhi | 6. Asmin samudre adhi uttarasmin āpo drevbir nirritāḥ atishthan | tāḥ adravann Ārshishenena srishtāḥ Devāpinā preshitāḥ mṛikshinīshu | 7. Yad Devāpiḥ S'antanave purohito hotrāya vṛitaḥ kripayann adidhet | dera-śrutām
vrishṭi-vaniṁ rarāṇo Brihaspatir vācham asmai ayachhat | 8. Yaṁ trā Devāpiḥ śuśuchāno Agne Ārshisheno manushyāḥ samīdhe | viśrebhir devair anumadyamānah pra Parjanyam īraya vrishṭimantam | 9. Trām pūrvē rishayo gīrbhir āyan trām adhvareshu puruhāta viśre | sahasrāni adhirathāni asme ā no yajnaṁ rohidaśva upa yāhi | 10. Etāni Agni na-
eatir nāra twe āhutāni adhirathā sahasrā | tebhīr vardhasva tanvāḥ sūra pūrvīr diro no vrishṭim ishito rīrīhi | 11. Etāni Agni navatīm sahasrā sam pra yachha vrishne Indrāya bhāgam | riḍvān pathāḥ rituso derayā-
nān apy aulānām divi deveshu dhehi | 12. Agne būdhasva vi mṛidho vi durgahā apa amīvām apa rakshāmīsi sedha | asmāt samudrād brihato diro no apām bhūmānam upa naḥ srija iha |*

"Approach, Brihaspati,⁵³ to my worship of the gods, whether thou art Mitra, Varuna, Pūshan, or art attended by the Ādityas, Vasus, or Maruts: cause Parjanya to rain for Santanu. 2. The god, a rapid messenger, has become aware, and has come from thee, o Devāpi, to me, (saying) 'approach towards me; I will place a brilliant hymu

⁵² Compare R.V. ii. 1, 2.

⁵³ It looks as if Agni were here to be understood by Brihaspati, see verses 9-12. In R.V. ii. 1, 4 ff. Agni is identified with Varuna, Mitra, Aryaman, Añśa, Tvaṣṭri, Rudra, Pūshan, Savitri, Bhaga.

in thy mouth.' 3. Place in our mouth, o Bṛihaspati, a brilliant hymn, powerful, and spirited, whereby we two may solicit rain for Santanu. The drop full of sweetness has descended on us from the sky. 4. May the drops full of sweetness come down upon us: give us, o Indra, a thousand waggon-loads (of them?). Perform the function of a hotṛi, sacrifice in due form, worship the gods with an oblation, o Devāpi. 5. The rishi Devāpi, son of Rishṭishena, performing the function of a hotṛi, knowing (how to gain) the goodwill of the gods, has discharged from the upper to the lower ocean those waters of the sky which fall in rain. 6. The waters remained shut up by the gods in this upper ocean: they rushed forth when released by the son of Rishṭishena, when discharged by Devāpi into the torrents.⁶⁴ 7. When Devāpi, placed in front of Santanu (as his purohita), chosen for the office of hotṛi, fulfilling his function, kindled (the fire),—then, granting the prayer for rain which was heard by the gods, Bṛihaspati gave him a hymn. 8. Do thou, o Agni, whom the man⁶⁵ Devāpi the son of Rishṭishena has inflamed and kindled,—do thou, delighted, with all the gods, send hither the rain-bearing Parjanya. 9. Former rishis have approached thee with their hymns; and all (approach) thee, o god, much-invoked, in their sacrifices: give us thousands of waggon-loads: come, thou who art borne by red horses,⁶⁶ to our sacrifice. 10. These ninety-nine thousands of waggon-loads (of wood and butter?) have been thrown into thee, o Agni, as oblations. Through them grow, hero, to (the bulk of) thy former bodies;⁶⁷ and stimulated, grant us rain from the sky. 11. (Of) these ninety thousands give, o Agni, a share to the vigorous Indra. Knowing the paths which rightly lead to the gods, convey the oblation (?) to the deities in the sky. 12. Overcome, o Agni, our enemies, our calamities; drive away sickness, and rakshases. From this great ocean of the sky discharge upon us an abundance of waters."

The fact of Devāpi being reputed as the author of this hymn, and as the purohita and hotṛi of his brother, seems to have led the legendary writers to invent the story of his becoming a Brāhmaṇa, which (as men-

⁶⁴ So the word *mṛikshinī* is explained in Böhtlingk and Roth's Lexicon,

⁶⁵ Or, "descendant of Manush" (*manushya*).

⁶⁶ This is a common epithet of Agni.

⁶⁷ This means, I suppose, "burst forth into vast flames."

tioned by Professor Weber, *Indische Studien*, i. p. 203) is recorded in the *Salya-parvan* of the *Mahābhārata*, verses 2281 ff. where he is there said to have attained this distinction at a certain place of pilgrimage called *Pṛithūdaka*; where *Sindhudvīpa* and *Viśvāmitra* also were received into the higher caste:

Tatrārṣṭiṣhenāḥ Kauravya brāhmaṇyaṁ sañśīla-vrataḥ | tapasā ma-
hatā rājan prāptavān rishi-sattamāḥ | Sindhudvīpaś cha rājarshir Devāpiś
cha mahātapāḥ | brāhmaṇyaṁ labdhavān yatra Viśvāmitras tathā munīḥ |
mahātapasē bhagavān ugra-tejāḥ mahātapāḥ | 2287. Purā kṛita-
yuge rajann Ārṣṭiṣheno drijottamāḥ | vasan guru-kule nityaṁ nityam
adhyayane rataḥ | tasya rājan guru-kule rasato nityam eva cha | samāptīṁ
nāgamad vidyā nāpi redūḥ viśampate | sa nirvinṇas tato rājaṁs tapas
tepe mahātapāḥ | tato vai tapasā tena prāpya redān anuttamanān | sa
vidvān veda-yuktaś cha siddhaś chāpy rishi-sattamāḥ | | eram siddhaḥ
sa bhagavān Ārṣṭiṣhenāḥ pratāparān | tasminn eva tadā tūrthe Sindhu-
dvipāḥ pratāparān | Devāpiś cha mahārāja brāhmaṇyam prāpatur
mahat |

2281. “There the most excellent rishi Ārṣṭiṣheṇa, constant in his observances, obtained Brāhmaṇhood by great austere fervour; as did also the royal rishi *Sindhudvīpa*,⁵⁸ and *Devāpi* great in austere fervour, and the glorious muni *Viśvāmitra*, of great austere fervour and fiery vigour.” Some other particulars of *Arṣṭiṣheṇa* are given further on: 2287. “Formerly in the *Krita* age the most excellent Brāhmaṇ Ārṣṭiṣheṇa dwelt constantly in his preceptor’s family, devoted to incessant study; but could not complete his mastery of science or of the *Vedas*.⁵⁹ Being in consequence discouraged, he betook himself to intense austere fervour. By this means he acquired the incomparable *Vedas*, and became learned and perfect. . . . At the same place of pilgrimage the majestic *Sindhudvīpa* and *Devāpi* obtained the great distinction of Brāhmaṇhood.”

It will be observed that here Ārṣṭiṣheṇa is, in opposition to the authority of the *Nirukta*, made a distinct person from *Devāpi*.

⁵⁸ This prince also, as we have seen above, is mentioned among those *Rājanyas* who composed Vedic hymns.

⁵⁹ The *Vedas* are here spoken of in the plural, although Ārṣṭiṣheṇa is said to have lived in the *Krita* age. But the M. Bh. itself says elsewhere (see above, p. 145) that there was then but one *Veda*.

In a note to his (French) translation of the Rig-veda, M. Langlois (vol. iv. 502) supposes that the hymn above translated (x. 98), like the Purusha Sūkta, is very much posterior in date to the other hymns in the collection. The names of Devāpi and Sāntanu indicate, he thinks, as the date of its composition, a period not far preceding that of the great war of the Mahābhārata. Professor Weber, on the other hand, considers (Indische Studien, i. 203) that the Sāntanu and Devāpi mentioned in that work (Ādi-parvan, 3750 f.) cannot be the same as the persons alluded to in the Rigveda, because their father was Pratīpa, not Rishṭishena; and because he thinks it doubtful whether a prince who preceded the Pāṇḍavas by only two generations could have been named in the Rig-veda, and appear there as an author of hymns.

The verses of the Ādi-parvan just referred to are as follows :

*Pratīpasya trayah putrāḥ jajnire Bharatarshabha | Devāpiḥ Sāntanuś
chaiva Vāhlīkaś mahārathāḥ | Devāpiś cha pravarvāja teshām dharmā-
hitepsayā | Sāntanuś cha mahīm lebhe Vāhlīkaś cha mahārathāḥ |*

"Three sons were born to Pratīpa, viz. Devāpi, Sāntanu, and Vāhlīka the charioteer. Of these Devāpi, desiring the benefits of religious excellence, became an ascetic; whilst Sāntanu and Vāhlīka obtained (the rule of) the earth."

The Harivāṁśa gives a different story about the same Devāpi, verse 1819 :

*Pratīpo Bhīmasenāt tu Pratīpasya tu Sāntanuḥ | Devāpir Vāhlīkaś
chaiva trayah eva mahārathāḥ | 1822. Upādhyāyas tu devānām
Devāpir abhavad muniḥ | Chyavanasya kṛitāḥ putraḥ iṣṭaś chāśid ma-
hātmanāḥ |*

"Pratīpa sprang from Bhīmasena; and Sāntanu, Devāpi, and Vāhlīka were the three chariot-driving sons of Pratīpa. 1822. Devāpi became a muni, and preceptor of the gods, being the adopted son of Chyavana, by whom he was beloved."

The Vishṇu Purāṇa (iv. 20, 7 ff.) concurs with the preceding authorities in making Devāpi and Sāntanu to be sons of Pratīpa, and descendants of Kuru, and his son Jahnu. It repeats the legend given in the Nirukta of the country of Sāntanu being visited by a drought of twelve years duration, in consequence of his having assumed the royal authority while his elder brother lived. And although, as will be seen, the sequel of the story is widely different from that recorded by the

Nirukta, the earlier incidents in the two narratives are so similar, that it would appear to have been the intention of the Puranic writer to identify the Devāpi and Sāntanu whose history he relates with the persons of the same names, although of different parentage, mentioned in Yāskā's work. He may, however, possibly have transferred an older legend to more recent personages. The passage of the Vishṇu Purāṇa is as follows :

Rikshād Bhīmasenas tatas cha Dilipah | Dilipāt Pratipas tasyāpi Devāpi Sāntanu-Vāhlīka-sanjnās trayah putrāḥ bahūruḥ | Devāpir bāla-eva aranyaṁ vīreśa | Sāntanur aranīpatir abharat | ayām cha tasye ślokaḥ prithiryām gīyate “yaṁ yaṁ karābhyaṁ spṛisati jīrṇaṁ yauvanam eti saḥ | sāntīm chāpnoti yenāgryām karmanā tena Sāntanuh” | tasya Sāntanoh rāshṭre drādaśa varshāni dero na vavarsha tataścha aśesha-rāshṭra-vināśam arekshya asau rājā brāhmaṇān aprīchha “bhoḥ kasmād asmin rāshṭre devo na varshati | ko mama aparādhah” iti | te tam uchur “agrajasya te 'rhā iyam avanis trayā bhujyate pari vettā tram” | ity uktaḥ sa punas tān aprīchhat “kim mayā vidheyam” iti | tena tam uchur “yārad Devāpir na patanādibhir doshair abhibhūyate tāvat tasya arhaṁ rājyam | tad alam etena tasmai dīyatām” | iti ukte tasya mantri-pravareṇa Aśmasāriṇā tatra aranye tapasvino veda vāda-virodha-vaktārah prayojitāḥ | tair ati-riju-mater mahīpati-putrasvy buddhir veda-virodha-mārgānusāriṇy akriyata | rājā cha Sāntanur drija vachanotpanna-parivedana-śokas tān brāhmaṇān agrānikṛitya agraja-rājya pradānāya aranyaṁ jagāma | tad-āśramam upagatāś cha tam aranīpati putraṁ Devāpim upatasthuh | te brāhmaṇāḥ veda-vādānuriddhāni va chāṁsi “rājyam agrajena karttavyam” ity arthavanti tam uchuḥ | asā api veda-vāda-virodha-yukti-dūshitam aneka-prakāram tān āha | tatas t brāhmaṇāḥ Sāntanum uchur “āgachha bho rājann alam atra ati-nirbandhena | praśāntuḥ eva asāv anāvrishṭi-doshah | patito 'yam anādi kāla-mahita-veda-vachana-dūshanochchāraṇāt | patite cha agraje naiv pārīvettryaḥ bhavati” | ity uktaḥ Sāntanuh sva-puram āgatyā rājyaḥ akarot | veda-vāda-virodhi-vachanochchāraṇā-dūshite cha jyeshṭhe 'smi bhrātari tishṭhaty api Devāpāv akhila-sasya-nishpattaye vavarsha bhaga vān Parjanyah |

“From Riksha sprang Bhīmasena; from him Dilipa; from his Pratīpa, who again had three sons called Devāpi, Sāntanu, and Vāhlīka; Devāpi while yet a boy retired to the forest; and Sāntanu became

king. Regarding him this verse is current in the world : ‘Every decrepit man whom he touches with his hands becomes young. He is called Sāntanu from that work whereby he obtains supreme tranquility (*sānti*).’ The god did not rain on the country of this Sāntanu for twelve years. Beholding then the ruin of his entire realm, the king enquired of the Brāhmans : ‘Why does not the god rain on this country ; what is my offence ?’ The Brāhmans replied : ‘This earth, which is the right of thy elder brother, is now enjoyed by thee ; thou art a *parivettī* (one married before his elder brother).’⁶⁰ Receiving this reply, he again asked them : ‘What must I do ?’ They then answered : ‘So long as Devāpi does not succumb to declension from orthodoxy and other offences, the royal authority is his by right ; to him therefore let it be given without further question.’ When they had so said, the king’s principal minister Aśmasārin employed certain ascetics propounding doctrines contrary to the declarations of the Vedas, to proceed into the forest, by whom the understanding of the very simple-minded prince (Devāpi) was led to adopt a system at variance with those sacred books. King Sāntanu being distressed for his offence in consequence of what the Brāhmans had said to him, went, preceded by those Brāhmans, to the forest in order to deliver over the kingdom to his elder brother. Arriving at the hermitage, they came to prince Devāpi. The Brāhmans addressed to him statements founded on the declarations of the Veda, to the effect that the royal authority should be exercised by the elder brother. He, on his part, expressed to them many things that were vitiated by reasonings contrary to the tenor of the Veda. The Brāhmans then said to Sāntanu, ‘Come hither, o king : there is no occasion for any excessive hesitation in this affair : the offence which led to the drought is now removed. Your brother has fallen by uttering a contradiction of the words of the Veda which

⁶⁰ This is illustrated by Manu iii, 171 f. : *Dārāgnihotra-saṁyogañ kurute yo 'graje sthite | parivettā sa vijeyah parivittī tu pūrvajah |* 172. *Parivittīḥ parivettā yaśā cha parivid�ate | serve te narakaṁ yānti dātṛi-yūjaka-panchamāḥ |* “171. He who, while his elder brother is unwedded, marries a wife with the nuptial fires, is to be known as a *parivettī*, and his elder brother as a *parivitti*. 172. The *parivittī*, the *parivettī*, the female by whom the offence is committed, he who gives her away, and fifthly the officiating priest, all go to hell.” The Indian writers regard the relation of a king to his realm as analogous to that of a husband to his wife. The earth is the king’s bride.

Nirukta, the earlier incidents in the two narratives are so similar, that it would appear to have been the intention of the Puranic writer to identify the Devāpi and Sāntanu whose history he relates with the persons of the same names, although of different parentage, mentioned in Yāska's work. He may, however, possibly have transferred an older legend to more recent personages. The passage of the Vishṇu Purāṇa is as follows:

Rikshād Bhīmasenas tatas cha Dilipah | Dilipāt Pratipas tasyāpi Devāpi Sāntanu-Vāhlīka-sanjnās trayah putrāḥ babhūruḥ | Devāpir bālah eva aranyaṁ vireśa | Sāntanur aranīpatir abharat | ayām cha tasya ślokaḥ prithivyām giyate “yaṁ yaṁ karābhyaṁ spriśati jīrṇām yauvanam eti saḥ | śāntīm chāpnoti yenāgryām karmanā tena Sāntanuh” | tasya Sāntanoh rāshṭre drādaśa varshāni dero na vararsha | tataschā aśesha-rāshṭra-vināśam arekshya asau rājā brāhmaṇān aprichhad “bhoḥ kasmād asmin rāshṭre dero na varshati | ko mama aparādhah” iti | te tam ūchur “agrajasya te 'rhā iyam avanis trayā bhujyate pari-vettā tram” | ity uktaḥ sa punas tān aprichhat “kim mayā vidheyam” iti | tena tam ūchur “yārad Devāpir na putanādibhir doshair abhibhūyate tārat tasya arhaṁ rājyam | tad alam etena tasmai dīyatām” | ity ukte tasya mantri-pravareṇa Aśmasāriṇū tatra aranye tapasrino redavāda-virodha-vaktarāḥ prayojitāḥ | tair ati-riju-mater mahīpati-putrasya buddhir reda-virodha-mārgānusāriṇy akriyata | rājā cha Sāntanur drija-vachanotpanna-parivedana-śokas tān brāhmaṇān agrāṇīkritya agraja-rājya-pradānāya aranyaṁ jagāma | tad-āśramam upagatāś cha tam aranīpati-putraṁ Devāpim upastastuh | te brāhmaṇāḥ veda-vādānuriddhāni vachāṁsi “rājyam agrajena karttaryam” ity arthavanti tam ūchuḥ | asāv api reda-vāda-virodha-yukti-dūshitam aneka-prakāram tān āha | tatas te brāhmaṇāḥ Sāntanum ūchur “āgachha bho rājann alam atra ati-nir-bandhena | praśāntaḥ era asāv anārvishṭi-doshaḥ | patito 'yam anādi-kāla-mahita-veda-vachana-dūshanochchāraṇāt | patite cha agraje naira pārivettryan; bhavati” | ity uktaḥ Sāntanuh sva-puram āgatya rājyam akarot | veda-vāda-virodhi-vachanochchāraṇā-dūshite cha jyeshṭhe 'emin bhrātari tishṭhaty api Devāpāv akhila-sasya-nishpattaye vavarsha bhagavān Parjanyaḥ |

“From Riksha sprang Bhīmasena; from him Dilipa; from him Pratipā, who again had three sons called Devāpi, Sāntanu, and Vāhlīka. Devāpi while yet a boy retired to the forest; and Sāntanu became

king. Regarding him this verse is current in the world : 'Every decrepit man whom he touches with his hands becomes young. He is called Sāntanu from that work whereby he obtains supreme tranquility (*sānti*). ' The god did not rain on the country of this Sāntanu for twelve years. Beholding then the ruin of his entire realm, the king enquired of the Brāhmans : ' Why does not the god rain on this country ; what is my offence ? ' The Brāhmans replied : ' This earth, which is the right of thy elder brother, is now enjoyed by thee ; thou art a *parivettri* (one married before his elder brother).'¹⁰ Receiving this reply, he again asked them : ' What must I do ? ' They then answered : ' So long as Devāpi does not succumb to declension from orthodoxy and other offences, the royal authority is his by right ; to him therefore let it be given without further question.' When they had so said, the king's principal minister Aśmasārin employed certain ascetics propounding doctrines contrary to the declarations of the Vedas, to proceed into the forest, by whom the understanding of the very simple-minded prince (Devāpi) was led to adopt a system at variance with those sacred books. King Sāntanu being distressed for his offence in consequence of what the Brāhmans had said to him, went, preceded by those Brāhmans, to the forest in order to deliver over the kingdom to his elder brother. Arriving at the hermitage, they came to prince Devāpi. The Brāhmans addressed to him statements founded on the declarations of the Veda, to the effect that the royal authority should be exercised by the elder brother. He, on his part, expressed to them many things that were vitiated by reasonings contrary to the tenor of the Veda. The Brāhmans then said to Sāntanu, ' Come hither, o king : there is no occasion for any excessive hesitation in this affair : the offence which led to the drought is now removed. Your brother has fallen by uttering a contradiction of the words of the Veda which

¹⁰ This is illustrated by Manu iii, 171 f.: *Dārāgnihotra-sāmyogañ kurute yo'g sthite | parivetū sa vijneyah parivitti tu pūrvavajah |* 172. *Parivittiḥ parivettā yayā cha parividyate | sarve te narakañ gānti dātṛi-yājaka-panchamāḥ |* " 171. He who, while his elder brother is unwedded, marries a wife with the nuptial fires, is to be known as a *parivettri*, and his elder brother as a *parivitti*. 172. The *parivitti*, the *parivettri*, the female by whom the offence is committed, he who gives her away, and fifthly the officiating priest, all go to hell." The Indian writers regard the relation of a king to his realm as analogous to that of a husband to his wife. The earth is king's bride.

have been revered from time without beginning; and when the elder brother has fallen, the younger is no longer chargeable with the offence of *pārvettrya* (*i.e.* of marrying before his elder brother). When he had been so addressed, Sāntanu returned to his capital, and exercised the royal authority. And although his eldest brother Devāpi continued to be degraded by having uttered words opposed to the doctrines of the Veda, the god Parjanya rained in order to produce a harvest of all sorts of grain."

Can the compiler of the Purāṇa have deviated from the conclusion of this history as found in the Nirukta, and given it a new turn, in order to escape from the conclusion that a Rājanya could officiate as a purohita?

The same story is briefly told in the Bhāgavata Purāṇa, ix. 22, 14-17.

In the Udyogaparvan of the Mahābhārata, on the other hand, Devāpi's virtues and orthodoxy are extolled in the highest terms, and his exclusion from the throne is ascribed solely to his being a leper, v. 5054:

*Derāpis tu mahātejas ṛtag-doshī rāja-sattamah | dhārmikah satya-rādi
cha pituḥ śuśrūshane rataḥ | paura-jānapadānām cha sammataḥ sādhu-
satkṛitaḥ | sarveshām bāla-vriddhānām Devāpir hṛidayangamah | radān-
yah satyasandhaś cha sarva-bhūta-kite rataḥ | varttamānah pituḥ sāstre
brāhmaṇānām tathaiva cha | | tam brāhmaṇas cha vriddhāś cha
paura-jānapadaih saha | sarve nivārayāmāsur Devāper abhishechanam | sa
tach chhrutvā tu nṛipatir abhisheka-nivāraṇam | aśru-kanṭho 'bhavad rājā
paryāśochata chātmajam | evam vadānyo dharmajnah satyasandhaś cha so
'bhavat | priyah prajānām api sa ṛtag-doshena pradūshitaḥ | "hīnāngam
prithivipālam nābhinandanti devatāḥ" | iti kṛitvā nṛipa-śreshṭham pra-
tyashedhan dvijarshabhaḥ | | nivāritaṁ nṛipāṁ dṛiṣṭvā Devāpiḥ
saṁśrito vanam |*

"But the glorious Devāpi, a most excellent prince, righteous, veracious, and obedient to his father, was a leper. He was esteemed by the inhabitants both of town and country, honoured by the good, beloved by all, both young and old, eloquent, true to his engagements, devoted to the welfare of all creatures, and conformed to the commands of his father, and of the Brāhmans." [The king his father grew old and was making preparations for the investiture of his successor; but public opinion was opposed to the devolution of the royal authority on

a leper, however virtuous]. “The Brahmans and aged men, together with the dwellers both in town and country, all restrained him from the investiture of Devāpi. The king, learning their opposition, was choked with tears, and bewailed his son’s fate. Thus Devāpi was eloquent, acquainted with duty, true to his promise, and beloved by the people, but vitiated by leprosy. The Brāhmans forbade the king (to make Devāpi his successor), saying, ‘the gods do not approve a king who labours under any corporeal defect.’ Perceiving that the king (his father) was hindered (from carrying out his wishes) Devāpi retired to the forest.”

On the same subject, the Matsya Purāṇa, 49, v. 39 f., states as follows:

*Dilipasya Pratīpastu tasya putrāś trayāḥ smṛitāḥ | Devāpiḥ Sāntanuś
chaiva Bāhlīkāś chaiva te trayāḥ | Bāhlīkasya tu dāyādāḥ sapta Bāhlīs-
varāḥ nrīpāḥ | Devāpis tu apadhrastaḥ prajābhīr abharad munīḥ |
rishayaḥ uchhuḥ | prajābhīs tu kimarthaṁ vai apadhrasto jāneśvaraḥ |
ke doshāḥ rājaputraṣya prajābhīḥ samudāhritāḥ | Sūta urācha | kilāsiḍ
rājaputraḥ tu kushī taṁ nābhyaपुजयन् | ko’rthān vai atra (? vetti
atra) devānāṁ kshattram prati dvijottamāḥ |*

“The son of Dilipa was Pratīpa, of whom three sons are recorded, Devāpi, Sāntanu, and Bāhlīka. The sons of the last were the seven Bāhlīsvara kings. But the Muni Devāpi was rejected by the people. The rishis enquired: ‘why was that prince rejected by the people? what faults were alleged against him?’ Sūta replied: ‘the prince was leprous, and they paid him no respect. Who knows the designs of the gods towards the Kshatriya race?’ ”

No more is said of Devāpi in this passage.⁶¹ The Vishṇu Purāṇa has the following further curious particulars regarding him, iv. 24, 44 ff.:

*Devāpiḥ Pauravo rājā Maruś chekshvāku-vaṁśajāḥ | mahāyoga-balop-
etau Kalūpa-grāma-saṁśrayau | krite yuge ihaṅgatyā kshattra-prāvart-
takau hi tau | bhavishyato Manor vaṁśe vija-bhūtau vyavasthitau | etena
krāma-yogena Manu-putrair vasundharā | kṛita-tretādi-sanjnāni yugāni
trīṇī bhujyate ! Kalau tu vija-bhūtaś te kechit tishṭhanti bhūtale | yathaiva
Devāpi-Maru sāmpratāṁ samavasthitau |*

“King Devāpi of the race of Puru,⁶² and Maru of the family of

⁶¹ See Prof. Wilson’s note, 4to. ed. p. 458.

⁶² In the twentieth chapter, as we have seen, he is said to be of the race of Kuru.

Ikshvāku, filled with the power of intense contemplation (*mahāyoga*) are abiding in the village of Kalāpa, continuing to exist as seeds in the family of Manu; they shall come hither in the (next) Kṛita age, and re-establish the Kshattriya race. According to this order the earth is enjoyed by the sons of Manu throughout the three ages called Kṛita, Tretā, and Dvāpara. But during the Kali certain persons remain upon earth as seeds (of a future race), as Devāpi and Maru now exist."

According to the Bhāgavata Purāṇa, ix. 22, 17, it is the lunar race, which had perished in the Kali age, that Devāpi is to restore in the future Kṛita (*soma-raṁśe kalau nashṭe kṛitādau sthāpayishyati*).

I shall quote here from the 132nd section of the Matsya Purāṇa, entitled *Manvantara-varṇanam* (a description of the Manvantaras) some of the particulars about the rishis with which it concludes:

98. *Bṛiguḥ Kāśyāḥ Prachetāś cha Dadhīchō hy Atmarān api |*
 99. *Aurro 'tha Jamadagnīś cha Kṛipāḥ Sāradravatas tathā | Ārshtisheno
Yudhājīch cha Vītaharya-Surarchasau |* 100. *Vaiṇāḥ Prīthūr Dirodāso
Brahmāśro Gṛitsa-Saunakau | ekonarīṁśatir hy ete Bṛīgaro mantra-
krīttamāḥ |* 101. *Angirāḥ Vedhasaś chaira Bharadvājo Bhalandanaḥ |
Ritabādhas tato Gargaḥ Sitiḥ Sankritiḥ era cha |* 102. *Gurudhīraś cha
Māndhātā Ambariśhas tathaiva cha | Yuranāśrāḥ Puruḥ Kutsaḥ Pra-
dyumnaḥ Śrāvanasya cha |* 103. *Ajamīḍho 'tha Haryāśras Takṣhapāḥ
Karir eza cha | Pṛishadaśro Virūpaś cha Kanraś chaivāthā Mudgalāḥ |*
 104. *Utathyaś cha Sāradrāṁś cha tathā Vājaśravā iti | Apaśyo 'tha
Surittāś cha Tāmadēras tathaiva cha |* 105. *Ajito Bṛihadukthaś cha
rishir Dirghatamā api | Kakshīrāṁś cha trayastrīṁśat smṛītā hy Angiraso
varāḥ |* 106. *Ete mantra-kṛitāḥ sarve Kāśyapāṁś tu nibodhata | . . . |*
 111. *Viśrāmitrāś cha Gādheyo Devarājas tathā Balāḥ | tathā vidrūn
Madhucchhandūḥ Rishabhaś chāghamarshaṇāḥ |* 112. *Aśṭako Lohitaś
chaiva Bṛītakilaś cha tāv ubhau | Vedāśravāḥ Devarātāḥ Purāṇāśro
Dhananjayaḥ |* 113. *Mithilaś cha mahātejāḥ Sālankāyana era cha | tra-
yodaśaitे vījneyāḥ brahmishṭhāḥ Kauśikāḥ varāḥ | . . . |* 115. *Manur
Vaivasvataś chaiva Ido rājā Purūravāḥ | Kshattriyāṇāṁ varāḥ hy ete
vījneyāḥ mantra-vādināḥ |* 116. *Bhalandaś chaiva Vandyāś cha San-
kīrtiś* chaiva te trayāḥ | ete mantra-kṛito jneyāḥ Vaisyānām pravarāḥ
sada |* 117. *Ity eka-navaṭīḥ proktāḥ mantrāḥ yaśiḥ cha bahiḥ kṛitāḥ |*

* Various readings—*Bhalandakuśiḥ cha Vāśiḥ śa Sankālaśiḥ*.

*brāhmaṇāḥ kshattriyāḥ vaiśyāḥ ṛishiputrān nibodhata | 118. Rishikāṇām
sutūḥ hy ete rishi-putrāḥ śrutarshayāḥ |⁶⁴*

" 98. Bhṛigu, Kāsyā, Prachetas, Dadhīcha, Ātmavat, (99) Aurva, Jamadagni, Kṛipa, Sāradvata, Ārṣṭiṣheṇa, Yudhājit, Vitahavya, Suvarchas, (100) Vaina, Prithu, Divodāsa, Brahmasva, Grītsa, S'aunaka, these are the nineteen⁶⁵ Bhṛigus, composers of hymns. 101. Angiras, Vedhasa, Bharadvāja, Bhalandana,⁶⁶ Rītabādha, Garga, Siti, Sankṛiti, Gurudhira,⁶⁷ Māndhātṛi, Ambarīsha, Yuvaṇāśva, Purukutsa,⁶⁸ Pradyumna, Sravaṇasya,⁶⁹ Ajamīḍha, Haryasva, Takshapa, Kavi, Pṛishadaśva, Virūpa, Kanva, Mudgala, Utathya, S'aradvat, Vājaśravas, Apaśya, Suvitta, Vāmadeva, Ajita, Brīhaduktha, Dīrghatamas, Kakshīvat, are recorded as the thirty-three eminent Angirases. These were all composers of hymns. Now learn the Kāsyapas. . . . 111. Viśvāmitra, son of Gādhi, Devarāja, Bala, the wise Madhuchhandas, Rishabha, Aghamarshana, (112) Ashṭaka, Lohita, Bhṛitakila, Vedaśravas, Devarāta, Purāṇāśva, Dhananjaya, the glorious (113) Mithila, Sālankayana, these are to be known as the thirteen devout and eminent Kuśikas.⁷⁰ 115. Manu Vaivasvata, Ida, king Purūrvavas, these are to be known as the eminent utterers of hymns among the Kshattriyas. 116. Bhalanda, Vandya, and Sankīrtti,⁷¹ these are always to be known as the three eminent persons among the Vaiśyas who were composers of hymns. 117. Thus ninety-one⁷² persons have been declared, by whom hymns have been given forth, Brāhmans, Kshattriyas, and Vaiśyas. Learn the sons of the rishis. 118. These are the offspring of the ṛishikas, sons of rishis, secondary rishis (*śrutarshis*)."

The section ends here.

⁶⁴ I am indebted for an additional copy of this section of the Matsya Purāṇa (of which some account is given by Prof. Aufrecht in his Catalogue, p. 41), to the kindness of Mr. Griffith, Principal of Queen's College, Benares, who, at my request, has caused it to be collated with various other MSS. existing in Benares. I have not thought it necessary to exhibit all the various readings in the part I have quoted.

⁶⁵ The number of nineteen is only obtained by making Vaina and Prithu two persons.

⁶⁶ Instead of this word, one Benares MS. has Lakshmana.

⁶⁷ Two MSS. have Turavita. ⁶⁸ This word is divided into two in the MS.

⁶⁹ Two MSS. have, instead, Svaśravas and Tamasyavat.

⁷⁰ Unless some of the words I have taken as names are really epithets, fifteen persons are enumerated here.

⁷¹ Some MSS. have Bhalandaka, Vandha or Vāsas, and Sankāla or Sankīrṇa.

⁷² This is the total of several lists, some of which I have omitted.

It will be observed from a comparison of this extract with the details previously given, that some of the rājarshis, or rishis of royal blood, such as Ārṣṭiṣheṇa, Vītahavya, Pṛithu (the same as Pṛithī) are spoken of as belonging to the family of Bhṛigu, while others of the same class, such as Māndhāṭṛi, Ambariṣha, Yuvanāśva, Purukutsa, are reckoned among the Angirases. Viśvāmitra and his descendants are merely designated as Kuśikas without any specific allusion to their Rājanya descent; but Manu, Iḍa, and Purūravas, are distinctly recognized as being as once authors of hymns and Kshattriyas; and, what is more remarkable, three Vaiśyas are also declared to have been sacred poets. These traditions of an earlier age, though scanty in amount, are yet sufficient to show that in the Vedic times the capacity for poetical composition, and the prerogative of officiating at the service of the gods, were not regarded as entirely confined to men of priestly families.

Sect. III.—*Texts from the Atharva-veda illustrating the progress of Brāhmanical pretensions.*

I have already quoted (in pp. 21 and 22) three short passages from the Atharva-veda regarding the origin of the Brāhmaṇa and Kshattriya castes. I shall now bring forward some other texts from the same collection which show a much greater development of the pretensions of the priests to a sacred and inviolable character than we meet in any part of the Rig-veda, if the 109th hymn of the tenth book (cited above) be excepted.

I shall first adduce the 17th hymn of the fifth book, to which I have already alluded, as an expansion of R.V. x. 109.

Atharva-veda v. 17. (Verses 1–3 correspond with little variation to verses 1–3 of R.V. x. 109). 4. *Yām āhus “tūrakā eshā vikeśi” iti duchchhunāṁ grāmam avapadyamānām | sā brahma-jāyā vi dunoti rāsh-trām yatra prāpādi śāśāḥ ulkuśimān |* (verses 5 and 6 = verses 5 and 4 of R.V. x. 109). 7. *Ye garbhāḥ avapadyante jagad yach chāpalupyate | virāḥ ye tṛiḥyante mitho brahma-jāyā hinasti tān |* 8. *Uta yat patayo daśa striyāḥ pūrve abrāhmaṇāḥ | brahma ched hastam agrahit sa eva patir ekadāḥ |* 9. *Brāhmaṇāḥ eva patir na rājanyo na vaisyaḥ | tat sūryah prabruvann eti panchabhyo mānavebhyāḥ |* (Verses 10 and 11 = verses 6 and 7 of R.V. x. 109). 12. *Nāsyā jāyā batavāhi kalyāṇī talpam*

a śayo | yasmin rāshtre nirudhyate brahma-jāyā achittiyā | 13. Nā
 vikarnah pṛithuśirās tasmin veśmani jāyate | yasmīn ityādi | 14. Nāya
 kshattā nishka-grīvaḥ sūnānām eti agrataḥ | yasmīn ityādi | 15. Nāya
 ṫvetaḥ krishna-karṇo dhuri yukto mahīyate | yasmīn ityādi | 16. Nāya
 kehettre pushkaranī nāñdīkam jāyate visam | yasmīn ityādi | 17. Nāsmai
 pṛiśnīm vi duhanti ye 'syāḥ doham upāsate | yasmīn ityādi | 18. Nāya -
 dhenuḥ kalyāñī nānadvān sahate yugam | vijānir yatra brāhmaṇo rātriṁ 5.
 vasati pāpayā |

“ 4. That calamity which falls upon the village, of which they say, ‘this is a star with dishevelled hair,’ is in truth the brähmän’s wife, who ruins the kingdom; (and the same is the case) wherever (a country) is visited by a hare attended with meteors. 7. Whenever any miscarriages take place, or any moving things are destroyed, whenever men slay each other, it is the brähmän’s wife who kills them. 8. And when a woman has had ten former husbands not brähmäns, if a brähmän take her hand (*i.e.* marry her), it is he alone who is her husband. 9. It is a Brahman only that is a husband, and not a Rājanya or a Vaisya. That (truth) the Sun goes forward proclaiming to the five classes of men (*panchabhyo mānavebhyaḥ*), 12. His (the king’s) wife does not repose opulent (*śatavāhi*) and handsome upon her bed in that kingdom where a brähmän’s wife is foolishly shut up. 13. A son with large ears (*vikarnah*) and broad head is not born in the house in that kingdom, etc. 14. A charioteer with golden neckchain does not march before the king’s hosts⁷³ in that kingdom, etc. 15. A white horse with black ears does not make a show yoked to his (the king’s) chariot in that kingdom, etc. 16. There is no pond with blossoming lotuses⁷⁴ in his (the king’s) grounds in that kingdom where, etc. 17. His (the king’s) brindled cow is not milked by his milkmen in that kingdom, etc. 18. His (the king’s) milch cow does not thrive, nor does his ox endure the yoke, in that country where a Brähman passes the night wretchedly without his wife.”

This hymn appears to show that, however extravagant the pretensions of the Brâhmans were in other respects, they had, even at the comparatively late period when it was composed, but little regard to

⁷³ The word here in the original is *sūnānām*, with which it is difficult to make any sense. Should we not read *sonānām*?

76 Compare R.V. x. 107, 10.

the purity of the sacerdotal blood, as they not only intermarried with women of their own order, or even with women who had previously lived single, but were in the habit of forming unions with the widows of Rājanyas or Vaiśyas,⁷⁵ if they did not even take possession of the wives of such men while they were alive.⁷⁶ Even if we suppose these women to have belonged to priestly families, this would only show that it was no uncommon thing for females of that class to be married to Rājanyas or Vaiśyas—a fact which would, of course, imply that the caste system was either laxly observed, or only beginning to be introduced among the Indians of the earlier Vedic age. That, agreeably to ancient tradition, Brāhmans intermarried with Rājanya women at the period in question, is also distinctly shewn

⁷⁵ That the remarriage of women was customary among the Hindus of those days is also shewn by A.V. ix. 5, 27 f., quoted in my paper on Yama, Jour. R. A. S. for 1865, p. 299.

⁷⁶ This latter supposition derives a certain support from the emphasis with which the two verses in question (A. V. v. 17, 8, 9) assert that the Brāhmaṇa was the only true husband. Whence, it may be asked, the necessity for this strong and repeated asseveration, if the Rājanya and Vaiśya husbands were not still alive, and prepared to claim the restoration of their wives? The verses are, however, explicable without this supposition.

It is to be observed, however, that no mention is here made of Sūdras as a class with which Brāhmans intermarried. Sūdras were not Āryas, like the three upper classes. This distinction is recognised in the following verse of the A.V. xix. 62, 1: "Make me dear to gods, dear to princes, dear to every one who beholds me, both to Sūdra and to Ārya." (Unless we are to suppose that both here and in xix. 32, 8; *āryā*=a Vaiśya, and not *ārya*, is the word). In S'atapatha Brāhmaṇa, Kāya Śākhā (Adhvara Kūnda, i. 6), the same thing is clearly stated in these words (already partially quoted above, p. 176), for a copy of which I am indebted to Prof. Müller: *Tan na sarva eva prapadyeta na hi devāḥ sarvenaiva sangachhante | ārya eva brāhmaṇo vā kshattrīya vā vaiśyo vā te hi yajniyāḥ | no eva sarvenaiva samvudeta na hi devāḥ sarvenaiva samvadāt āryenaiva brāhmaṇena vā kshattriyena vā vaiśyena vā te hi yajniyāḥ | yady enam sūdrēna samvūdo vindet "ittham enam nichukṣhva" ity anyam brūyād esha dīkṣhitaryopachāraḥ.* "Every one cannot obtain this (for the gods do not associate with every man), but only an Ārya, a Brāhmaṇa, or a Kshattriya, or a Vaiśya, for these can sacrifice. Nor should one talk with everybody (for the gods do not talk with every body), but only with an Ārya, a Brāhmaṇa, or a Kshattriya, or a Vaiśya, for these can sacrifice. If any one have occasion to speak to a Sūdra, let him say to another person, 'Tell this man so and so.' This is the rule for an initiated man."

In the corresponding passage of the Mādhyandina Śākhā (p. 224 of Weber's edition) this passage is differently worded.

From Manu (ix. 149-157; x. 7 f.) it is clear that Brāhmans intermarried with Sūdra women, though the offspring of those marriages was degraded.

by the story of the rishi Chyavana and Sukanyā, daughter of king Saryāta, narrated in the Satapatha Brāhmaṇa, and quoted in my paper entitled "Contributions to a Knowledge of Vedic Mythology," No. ii., in the Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society for 1866, pp. 11 ff. See also the stories of the rishi Syāvāśva, who married the daughter of king Rathavīti, as told by the commentator on Rig-veda, v. 61, and given in Professor Wilson's translation, vol. iii. p. 344.

The next hymn, from the same work, sets forth with great liveliness and vigour the advantages accruing to princes from the employment of a domestic priest. *hū̄r thū̄la*

Atharva-veda, iii. 19, 1. *Saṁśitam me idam brahma saṁśitam vīryam balam | saṁśitam kshattram ajaram astu jishnur* (?) *jishnū* *yeshām asmi purohitāḥ |* 2. *Sam aham eshām rāshṭraṁ syāmi sam ojo vīryam balam | vīśchāmi śatrūnām bāhūn anena harishā aham |* 3. *Nīchaiḥ padyantam adhare bharantu ye naḥ sūrim magharānam pṛitanyān | kshināmi brahmaṇā 'mitrān unnayāmi srān aham |* 4. *Tīkshṇīyāṁsaḥ paraśor agnes tīkshṇatarāḥ uta | Indrasya rājrāt tīkshṇīyāṁsō yeshām asmi purohitāḥ |* 5. *Eshām aham āyudhā sañ syāmi eshām rāshṭraṁ suvīraṁ vardhayāmi | eshām kshattram ajaram astu jishnū eshām chittām visre arantu devāḥ |* 6. *Uddharshantām Maghāvan rājināni ud vīrānām jayatām etu ghoshaḥ | prithagghoshāḥ ululayaḥ ketumantaḥ udīratām | devāḥ Indra-jyeshṭhāḥ Maruto yantu senayā |* 7. *Preta jayata naraḥ ugrāḥ rāḥ santu bāharaḥ | tīkshṇesharo abala-dhanvāno hata ugrāyudhāḥ abalān ugra-bāharaḥ |* 8. *Arasṛishṭā parā patu śararye brahma-saṁśīte | jayāmitrān pra padyasva jahy eshām varān-varam mā 'mīshām mochi kaśchana |*

" 1. May this prayer of mine be successful; may the vigour and strength be complete, may the power be perfect, undecaying, and victorious of those of whom I am the priest (*purohita*). 2. I fortify their kingdom, and augment their energy, valour, and force. I break the arms of their enemies with this oblation. 3. May all those who fight against our wise and prosperous (prince) sink downward, and be prostrated. With my prayer I destroy his enemies and raise up his friends. 4. May those of whom I am the priest be sharper than an axe, sharper than fire, sharper than Indra's thunderbolt. 5. I strengthen their weapons; I prosper their kingdom rich in heroes. May their power be undecaying and victorious. May all the gods foster their designs.

6. May their valorous deeds, o Maghavat, burst forth ; may the noise of the conquering heroes arise ; may their distinct shouts, their clear yells, go up ; may the gods, the Maruts, with Indra as their chief, march forward with their host. 7. Go, conquer, ye warriors ; may your arms be impetuous. Ye with the sharp arrows, smite those whose bows are powerless ; ye whose weapons and arms are terrible (smite) the feeble. 8. When discharged, fly forth, o arrow, sped by prayer. Vanquish the foes, assail, slay all the choicest of them ; let not one escape."

The two following hymns from the same collection declare the guilt, the peril, and disastrous consequences of oppressing Brāhmans, and robbing them of their property. The threats and imprecations of haughty sacerdotal insolence could scarcely be expressed more energetically.

Atharva-veda, v. 18. 1. *Naitām te derāḥ adadus tubhyam̄ nrīpate attave | mā brāhmaṇasya rājanya gām jighatso anādyam |* 2. *Akshadruḍho rājanyo pāpāḥ ātma-parājīlaḥ | sa brāhmaṇasya gām adyād “adya jīvāni mā śvāḥ” |* 3. *Ārishiṭitā agha-vishā pridākūr īra charmanā | mā brāhmaṇasya rājanya ṛishṭā eshā gaur anādyā |* 4. *Nir vai kshattram̄ nayati hanti varcho agnir ārabdho vi dunoti sarram | yo brāhmaṇam̄ manyate annam eva sa vishasya pibati taimātasya |* 5. *Yaḥ enām hanti mr̄idum manyamāno dera-pīyur dhana-kāmo na chittāt | saṁ tasya Indro hridaysे agnim indhe ubhe enām dvīṣṭo nabhasī charantaṁ |* 6. *Na brāhmaṇo hiṁsitaryo agniḥ priyatano rīra | Somo hi asya dāyādaḥ Indro asyābhiśastipāḥ |* 7. *Satāpashṭhām ni girati tām na śaknoti niḥkhidam | annām yo brāhmaṇām malvāḥ svādu admīti manyate |* 8. *Jihvā jyā bhavati kulmalām vāñ nāḍikāḥ dantās tapasā 'bhidagdhāḥ | tebhīr brahmā vidhyati ātra-pīyūn hrid-balair dhanurbhīr dera-jūtaīḥ |* 9. *Tikshṇesharo brāhmaṇāḥ hetimanto yām asyanti śaravyām na sū mr̄ishā | anuhāya tapasā manyunā cha uta dūrād ava bhindanti enam |* 10. *Ye sahasram arājann āśān daśa-śatā uta | te brāhmaṇasya gām jagdhvā Vaitahavyāḥ parābhavan |* 11. *Gaur eva tān hanyamānā Vaitahavyān avātirat | ye Kesāprābandhāyāś charamājām apechiran |* 12. *Eka-śataṁ tāḥ janatāḥ yāḥ bhūmir vyadhūnuta | prajām hiṁsītvā brāhmaṇīm asam-bhavyam parābhavan |* 13. *Deva-pīyūś charati marītyeshu gara-gīrṇo bhavati asthi-bhūyān | yo brāhmaṇām deva-bandhūm hinasti na sa pitri-yānam apyoti lokam |* 14. *Agnir vai naḥ padavāyaḥ Somo dāyāda uohyato |*

*hantābhīśastā Indras tathā tad vedhaso riduh | 15. Ishur iva digdhā
nrīpate pridākūr iva gopate | sā brāhmaṇasya ishur ghorā tayā vidhyati
piyataḥ |*

“ 1. King, the gods have not given thee this (cow) to eat. Do not, o Rājanya (man of royal descent), seek to devour the Brāhmaṇ’s cow, which is not to be eaten. 2. The wretched Rājanya, unlucky in play, and self-destroyed, will eat the Brāhmaṇ’s cow, saying, ‘Let me live to-day, (if I can) not (live) to-morrow.’ 3. This cow, clothed with a skin, contains deadly poison, like a snake. Beware, Rājanya, of this Brāhmaṇ’s (cow); she is ill-flavoured, and must not be eaten. 4. She takes away his regal power, destroys his splendour, consumes him entire like a fire which has been kindled. The man who looks upon the Brāhmaṇ as mere food to be eaten up, drinks serpent’s poison. 5. Indra kindles a fire in the heart of that contemner of the gods who smites the Brāhmaṇ, esteeming him to be inoffensive, and foolishly covets his property. Heaven and earth abhor the man who (so) acts. 6. A Brāhmaṇ is not to be wronged, as fire (must not be touched) by a man who cherishes his own body. Soma is his (the Brāhmaṇ’s) kinsman, and Indri shields him from imprecations. 7. The wicked (?) man who thinks the priests’ food is sweet while he is eating it, swallows (the cow bristling with a hundred sharp points, but cannot digest her. 8. The priest’s tongue is a bow-string, his voice is a barb, and his windpipe is arrow-points smeared with fire. With these god-directed, and heart-subduing bows, the priest pierces the scorner of the gods. 9. Brāhmans bearing sharp arrows, armed with missiles, never miss their mark when they discharge a shaft. Shooting with fiery energy and with anger, they pierce (the enemy) from afar. 10. The descendants of Vitahavya, who ruled over a thousand men, and were ten hundred in number, were overwhelmed after they had eaten a Brāhmaṇ’s cow.”⁷⁷ 11. The cow herself, when she was slaughtered, destroyed them,—those men who cooked the last she-goat of Kesaraprābandhā. 12. Those hundred persons whom the earth shook off, after they had wronged the priestly race, were overwhelmed in an inconceivable manner. 13. He lives among mortals a hater of the gods; infected with poison he becomes reduced to a skeleton; he who wrongs a Brāhmaṇ the kins-

⁷⁷ I am not aware whether any traces of this story are discoverable in the Purāṇas or Mahābhārata. See the first verse of the hymn next to be quoted.

man of the deities, fails to attain to the heaven of the Forefathers. 14. Agni is called our leader; Soma our kinsman. Indra neutralizes imprecations (directed against us); this the wise understand. 15. Like a poisoned arrow, o king, like a serpent, o lord of cows,—such is the dreadful shaft of the Brâhman, with which he pierces his enemies."

Atharva-veda, v. 19, 1. *Ātimātram avardhanta nod ira diram aspriśan | Bhṛiguṁ himsitrā Śrinjayāḥ Vaitaharyāḥ parābhāraṇ |* 2. *Bṛihatsāmānam Āngirasaṁ ārpayan brāhmaṇaṁ janāḥ | petras teshāṁ ubhayādām avis tokāny ārayat |* 3. *Ye brāhmaṇam pratyashṭhirān ye rā 'smīn śuklam iṣhīre | asnas te madhye kulyāyāḥ keśān khādanta āsate |* 4. *Brahmagarī pachyamānā yārat sā 'bhi vijangahe | tejo rāshṭrasya nirhanti na rīro jāyate rishā |* 5. *Krūram asyāḥ ūśasanaṁ trishṭam piśitam asyate | kshīraṁ yad asyāḥ pīyate tad rai pitrišu kilbisham |* 6. *Ugro rājā manyamāno brāhmaṇaṁ yaj jighatsati | parā tat sicyate rāshṭram brāhmaṇo yatra jīyate |* 7. *Ashṭāpadī chaturakṣī chatuh-śrotrā chaturhanuh | dryāsyā drijihrā bhūtvā sā rāshṭram avadhūnute brahmajyasya |* 8. *Tad rai rāshṭram ūśravati nāvam bhinnām irodakam | brāhmaṇām yatra hiṁsanti tad rāshṭraṇ hanti duḥchhūnū |* 9. *Taṁ ṛikshāḥ apaścānti "chhāyām no mopa gāḥ" iti | yo brāhmaṇasya saddhanam abhi Nārada manyate |* 10. *Visham etad dera-kṛitaṁ rājā Varuno abrarīt | na brāhmaṇasya gām jagdhvā rāshṭre jāgāra kaśchana |* 11. *Navaira tāḥ naraicyo yāḥ bhūmir ryadhūnuta | prajāṁ himsitrā brāhmaṇīm asambhavyam parābhāraṇ |* 12. *Yām mrityānubadhnanti kūdyam padayopanīm | tad rai brahmajya te devāḥ upastaranam abruvan |* 13. *Aśrūni kripamāṇasya yāni jitasya vārītuh | taṁ rai brahmajya te devāḥ apām bhāgam adhārayan |* 14. *Yena mṛitaṁ snapayanti śmaśrūṇi yena undate | taṁ rai brahmajya te devāḥ apām bhāgam adhārayan |* 15. *Na varshām Maitrāvaruṇam brahmajyam abhi varshati | nāsmai samitiḥ kalpate na mitrām nayate rāśam |*

"1. The Śrinjayas, descendants of Vītahavya, waxed exceedingly; they almost touched the sky; but after they had injured Bhṛigu, they were overwhelmed. 2. When men pierced Brihatsāman, a Brâhman descended from Angiras, a ram with two rows of teeth swallowed their children. 3. Those who spit, or throw filth (?) upon a Brâhman, sit eating hair in the midst of a stream of blood. 4. So long as this Brâhman's cow is cut up (?) and cooked, she destroys the glory of the kingdom; no vigorous hero is born there. 5. It is cruel to

slaughter her; her ill-flavoured flesh is thrown away. When her milk is drunk, that is esteemed a sin among the Forefathers. 6. Whenever a king, fancying himself mighty, seeks to devour a Brâhman, that kingdom is broken up, in which a Brâhman is oppressed. Becoming eight-footed, four-eyed, four-eared, four-jawed, two-faced, two-tongued, she (the cow) shatters the kingdom of the oppressor of Brâhmans. 8. (Ruin) overflows that kingdom, as water swamps a leaky boat: calamity smites that country in which a priest is wronged. 9. Even trees, o Narada, repel, and refuse their shade to, the man who claims a right to the property of a Brâhman. This (property), as king Varuna hath said, has been turned into a poison by the gods. No one who has eaten a Brâhman's cow continues to watch (*i.e.* to rule) over a country. 11. Those nine nineties (of persons) whom the earth shook off, when they had wronged the priestly race, were overwhelmed in an inconceivable manner (see verse 12 of the preceding hymn). 12. The gods have declared that the cloth wherewith a dead man's feet are bound shall be thy pall, thou oppressor of priests. 13. The tears which flow from a persecuted man as he laments,--such is the portion of water which the gods have assigned to thee, thou oppressor of priests. 14. The gods have allotted to thee that portion of water wherewith men wash the dead, and moisten beards. 15. The rain of Mitra and Varuna does not descend on the oppressor of priests. For him the battle has never a successful issue; nor does he bring his friend into subjection."

The attention of the reader is directed to the intensity of contempt and abhorrence which is sought to be conveyed by the coarse imagery contained in verses 3, and 12-14, of this last hymn.

There is another section of the same Veda, xii. 5, in which curses similar to those in the last two hymns are fulminated against the oppressors of Brâhmans. The following are specimens:

Atharva-veda, xii. 5, 4. *Brahma padarâyam brâhmaño 'dhipatiḥ*
 5. *Tûm adâdânya brahma-gariñ jinato brâhmañân kshattriyasya*
 6. *Apa krâmati sünritâ vîryam punyâ lakshmîḥ* | 7. *Ojaścha tejas cha*
sahaś cha balaṁ cha vâk cha indriyâṁ cha śrîś cha dharmâś cha |
 8. *Brahma cha kshattrâṁ cha râshṭraṁ cha viśâś cha trishis̄ cha yaśâś cha*
varchâś cha dravînaṁ cha | 9. *Āyuś cha rûpaṁ cha nâma cha kirttiś cha*
prâgnâś cha apânaś oha chakshus̄ cha śrotraṁ cha | 10. *Payaś cha rasaś*

*cha annāñ cha annādyāñ cha ritāñ cha satyāñ cha iśhtāñ cha pūrttāñ
cha prajā cha paśasāñ cha | 11. Tāni sarvāñi apa krāmanti brahma-garīm
ādadānasya jinato brāhmañāñ kshattriyasya | 12. Sā eshā bhīmā brahma-
gavī agha-rishā | 13. Sarvāñy asyāñ ghorāñi sarve cha mritya-
raḥ | 14. Sarvāñy asyāñ krūrāñi sarre purusha-vadhāḥ | 15. Sā
brahma-jyāñ deva-pīyum brahmagavī ādiyamānā mrityoh padbiśe d
dyati |*

"4. Prayer (*brāhmāñ*) is the chief (thing); the Brāhman is the lord (*adhipati*). 5. From the Kshattriya who seizes the priest's cow, and oppresses the Brāhman, (6) there depart piety, valour, good fortune, (7) force, keenness, vigour, strength, speech, energy, prosperity, virtue, (8) prayer (*brāhmāñ*), royalty, kingdom, subjects, splendour, renown, lustre, wealth, (9) life, beauty, name, fame, inspiration and expiration, sight, hearing, (10) milk, sap, food, eating, righteousness, truth, oblation, sacrifice, offspring, and cattle;—(11) all these things depart from the Kshattriya who seizes the priest's cow. 12. Terrible is the Brāhman's cow, filled with deadly poison. . . . 13. In her reside all dreadful things, and all forms of death, (14) all cruel things, and all forms of homicide. 15. When seized, she binds in the fetters of death the oppressor of priests and despiser of the gods."

A great deal more follows to the same effect, which it would be tiresome to quote.

I subjoin some further texts, in which reference is made to *brāhmāns*.

In xix. 22, 21 (= xix. 23, 30) it is said :

*Brahma-jyeshṭhā sambhṛitā vīryāñi brahmāgre jyeshṭhāñ diram ātatāna |
bhūtānām brahmā prathamo ha jajne tenārhati brahmañā sparuddhitum
kaḥ |*

"Powers are collected, of which prayer (or sacred science, *brāhmāñ*) is the chief. Prayer, the chief, in the beginning stretched out the sky. The priest (*brāhmāñ*) was born the first of beings. Who, then, ought to vie with the *brāhmāñ*.

A superhuman power appears to be ascribed to the *brāhmāñ* in the following passages,—unless by *brāhmāñ* we are to understand Bṛihaspati :—

xix. 9, 12. *Brahmā Prajāpatir Dhātā lokāḥ vedāḥ sapta-rishayo
'gnayah | tair me kritāñ evastryayanam Indro me śarma yachhatu brahma
me śarma yachhatu |*

“ May a prosperous journey be granted to me by prayer, Prajāpati, Dhātri, the worlds, the Vedas, the seven rishis, the fires; may Indra grant me felicity, may the brāhmān grant me felicity.”

xix. 43, 8. *Yatra brahma-vido yānti dīkshayā tapasā saha | brahma mā tatra nayatu brahmā brahma dadhātu me | brahmane svāhā.*

“ May the brāhmān conduct me to the place whither the knowers of prayer (or of sacred science) go by initiation with austerity. May the brāhmān impart to me sacred science. *Svāhā* to the brāhmān.”

The wonderful powers of the Brahmachārin, or student of sacred science, are described in a hymn (A.V. xi. 5), parts of which are translated in my paper on the progress of the Vedic Religion, pp. 374 ff.

And yet with all this sacredness of his character the priest must be devoted to destruction, if, in the interest of an enemy, he is seeking by his ceremonies to effect the ruin of the worshipper.

v. 8, 5. *Yam amī puro dadhire brahmānam apabhūtaye | Indra sa me adhaspadām tam pratyasyāmi mrityare |*

“ May the brāhmān whom these men have placed in their front (as a *purohita*) for our injury, fall under my feet, o Indra; I hurl him away, to death (compare A.V. vii. 70, 1 ff.).

SECT. IV.—*Opinions of Professor R. Roth and Dr. M. Haug regarding the origin of caste among the Hindus.*

I shall in this section give some account of the speculations of Prof. R. Roth and Dr. M. Haug on the process by which they conceive the system of castes to have grown up among the Indians.

The remarks which I shall quote from Prof. Roth are partly drawn from his third “Dissertation on the Literature and History of the Veda,” p. 117, and partly from his paper on “Brahma and the Brāhmans,” in the first volume of the Journal of the German Oriental Society.⁷⁸ He says in the latter essay: “The religious development of India is attached through the course of three thousand years to the word *brāhma*. This conception might be taken as the standard for estimating the progress of thought directed to divine things, as at every step taken by the latter, it has gained a new form, while at the same time

⁷⁸ The reader who is unacquainted with German will find a fuller account of this article in the Benares Magazine for October 1851, pp. 823 ff.

it has always embraced in itself the highest spiritual acquisition of the nation. . . . The original signification of the word *brāhma*, as we easily discover it in the Vedic hymns, is that of prayer; not praise or thanksgiving, but that invocation which, with the force of the will directed to God, seeks to draw him to itself, and to receive satisfaction from him. . . . From this oldest sense and form of *brāhmā* (neuter) was formed the masculine noun *brahmā*, which was the designation of those who pronounced the prayers, or performed the sacred ceremonies; and in nearly all the passages of the Rig-veda in which it was thought that this word must refer to the Brahmanical caste, this more extended sense must be substituted for the other more limited one. . . . From this sense of the word *brahmā*, nothing was more natural than to convert this offerer of prayer into a particular description of sacrificial priest: so soon as the ritual began to be fixed, the functions which were before united in a single person, who both prayed to the gods and sacrificed to them, became separated, and a priesthood interposed itself between man and God.”⁷⁹

Then further on, after quoting R.V. iv. 50, 4 ff. (see above, p. 247), Prof. Roth continues: “In this manner here and in many places of the liturgical and legal books, the promise of every blessing is attached to the maintenance of a priest by the king. Inasmuch as he supports and honours the priest, the latter ensures to him the favour of the gods. So it was that the caste of the Brāhmans arose and attained to power and consideration: first, they were only the single domestic priests of the kings; then the dignity became hereditary in certain families; finally a union, occasioned by similarity of interests, of these families in one larger community was effected; and all this in reciprocal action with the progress made in other respects by theological doctrine and religious worship. Still the extension of the power which fell into the hands of this priestly caste would not be perfectly comprehensible

⁷⁹ In his third Dissertation on the Literature and History of the Veda, Prof. Roth remarks: “In the Vedic age, access to the gods by prayer and sacrifice was open to all classes of the community; and it was only the power of expressing devotion in a manner presumed to be acceptable to the deities, or a readiness in poetical diction, that distinguished any individual or family from the mass, and led to their being employed to conduct the worship of others. The name given to such persons was *purohita*, one ‘put forward;’ one through whose mediation the gods would receive the offering presented. But these priests had as yet no especial sanctity or exclusive prerogative which would render their employment imperative.”

from this explanation alone. The relation of spiritual superiority in which the priests came to stand to the kings was aided by other historical movements."

Professor Roth then proceeds: "When—at a period more recent than the majority of the hymns of the Rig-veda—the Vedic people, driven by some political shock, advanced from their abodes in the Punjab further and further to the south, drove the aborigines into the hills, and took possession of the broad tract of country lying between the Ganges, the Jumna, and the Vindhya range; the time had arrived when the distribution of power, the relation of king and priest, could become transformed in the most rapid and comprehensive manner. Principalities separated in such various ways, such a division into tribes as had existed in the Punjab, were no longer possible here, where nature had created a wide and continuous tract with scarcely any natural boundaries to dissever one part from another. Most of those petty princes who had descended from the north with their tribes must here of necessity disappear, their tribes become dissolved, and contests arise for the supreme dominion. This era is perhaps portrayed to us in the principal subject of the Mahābhārata, the contest between the descendants of Pāṇḍu and Kuru. In this stage of disturbance and complication, power naturally fell into the hands of those who did not directly possess any authority, the priestly races and their leaders, who had hitherto stood rather in the position of followers of the kings, but now rose to a higher rank. It may easily be supposed that they and their families, already honoured as the confidential followers of the princes, would frequently be able to strike a decisive stroke to which the king would owe his success. If we take further into account the intellectual and moral influence which this class possessed in virtue of the prerogative conceded to, or usurped by, them, and the religious feeling of the people, it is not difficult to comprehend how in such a period of transition powerful communities should arise among the domestic priests of petty kings and their families, should attain to the highest importance in every department of life, and should grow into a caste which, like the ecclesiastical order in the middle ages of Christianity, began to look upon secular authority as an effluence from the fulness of their power, to be conferred at their will; and how, on the other hand, the numerous royal families should

sink down into a nobility which possessed, indeed, the sole right to the kingly dignity, but at the same time, when elected by the people, required inauguration in order to their recognition by the priesthood, and were enjoined above all things to employ only Brāhmans as their counsellors."

In order to render the probability of this theory still more apparent, Professor Roth goes on to indicate the relations of the other castes to the Brāhmans. The position which the three superior classes occupied in the developed Brahmanical system was one of gradation, as they differed only in the extent of their religious and civil prerogatives, the Kshattriya being in some respects less favoured than the Brāhman, and the Vaiśya than the Kshattriya. With the Sūdras, on the other hand, the case was quite different. They were not admitted to sacrifice, to the study of the Vedas, or to investiture with the sacred cord. From this Professor Roth concludes that the three highest castes stood in a closer connection with each other, whether of descent, or of culture, than any of them did to the fourth. The Indian body politic, moreover, was complete without the Sūdras. The Brāhman and Kshattriya were the rulers, while the Vaiśyas formed the mass of the people. The fact of the latter not being originally a separate community is confirmed by the employment assigned to them, as well as by their name Vaiśya, derived from the word *Viś*, a word which in the Veda designates the general community, especially considered as the possessor of the pure Aryan worship and culture, in contradistinction to all barbarian races. Out of this community the priesthood arose in the manner above described, while the Kshattriyas were the nobility, descended in the main from the kings of the earlier ages. The fourth caste, the Sūdras, consisted, according to Prof. Roth, of a race subdued by the Brahmanical conquerors, whether that race may have been a branch of the Arian stock which immigrated at an earlier period into India, or an autochthonous Indian tribe.

In his tract on the origin of Brāhmanism, from which I have already quoted (see above, pp. 11 and 14), Dr. Haug thus states his views on this question : "It has been of late asserted that the original parts of the Vedas do not know the system of caste. But this conclusion was prematurely arrived at without sufficiently weighing the evidence. It is true the caste system is not to be found in such a developed state;

the duties enjoined to the several castes are not so clearly defined as in the Law Books and Purāṇas. But nevertheless the system is already known in the earlier parts of the Vedas, or rather presupposed. The barriers only were not so insurmountable as in later times." (p. 6). This view he supports by a reference to the Zend Avesta, in which he finds evidence of a division of the followers of Ahura Mazda into the three classes of Atharvas, Rathaesthas, and Vaśtrya fshuyans, which he regards as corresponding exactly to the Brāhmans, Kshattriyas, and Vaiśyas of India. The Atharvas, or priests, in particular formed a class or even a caste; they had secrets which they were prohibited from divulging; they were the spiritual guides of their nation, and none but the son of a priest could become a priest—a rule which the Parsis still maintain. From these facts, Dr. Haug deduces the conclusion that the nation of which both the Indo-Arians and the Perso-Arians originally formed a part had been divided into three classes even before the separation of the Indians from the Iranians; and he adds (p. 7): "From all we know, the real origin of caste appears to go back to a time anterior to the composition of the Vedic hymns, though its development into a regular system with insurmountable barriers can be referred only to the latest period of the Vedic times."

I shall furnish a short analysis of some other parts of Dr. Haug's interesting tract. He derives (p. 7) the word *brāhmaṇa* from *brāhmā* (neuter), which originally meant "a sacred song, prayer," as an effusion of devotional feeling. *Brāhmā* was the "sacred element" in the sacrifice, and signified "the soul of nature, the productive power." The Brahmanic sacrifices had production as their object, and embraced some rites which were intended to furnish the sacrificer with a new spiritual body wherewith he might ascend to heaven, and others calculated to provide him with cattle and offspring (p. 8). The symbol of this *brāhmā*, or productive power, which must always be present at the sacrifice, was a bunch of *kusa* grass, generally called *Veda* (a word alternating with *brāhmā*), which, at the sacrifice, was passed from priest to another, and given to the sacrificer and his wife. The corresponding symbol of twigs used by the Parsis was called in Zend *bṛ̥desma*, which Dr. Haug considers to have been originally the same as *brāhmā* (p. 9). As it was essential to the success of these sacrifices

that every portion of the complicated ceremonial should be accurately performed, and as mistakes could not be avoided, it became necessary to obviate by an atonement (*prāyaśchitti*) the mischief which would otherwise have ensued; and the priest appointed to guard against or expiate such mistakes, when committed by the other priests—the *hotri*, *adhvaryu*, and *udgātri*—was called, “from the most ancient times,” the *brāhmān* (masculine), ‘who was a functionary pre-eminently supplied with *brāhmā* (neuter) or sacred knowledge, and thereby connected “with the soul of nature, the cause of all growth, the last cause of all sacrificial rites” (p. 10). The office of *brāhmān* was not one to which mere birth gave a claim, but had to be attained by ability and study. The descendants of these *brāhmān* priests were the Brāhmans, and the speculations of the most eminent *brāhmān* priests on divine things, and especially on sacrificial rites, are contained in the works called *Brāhmaṇas* (p. 12). Dr. Haug considers that no such a class as that of the *brāhmān* priests existed at the early period when the ancestors of the Hindus separated from those of the Parsis in consequence of religious differences. The few rites preserved by the Parsis as relics of the remotest antiquity closely resemble those of the Brāhmans. Dr. Haug finds that in the Homa ritual of the former (corresponding to the Soma ceremony of the latter) only two priests, called *Zota* and *Raspi* or *Rathwi*, are required, whom he recognises as corresponding to the *Hotri* and *Adhvaryu* of the latter. So long as the rites were simple, no *brāhmān* priest was wanted; but when they became complicated and multiform, the necessity for such a functionary arose. And it was only then that the sons of the *brāhmāns*, i.e. the Brāhmans, could rise through the possession of sacred knowledge, derived from their fathers, to great power, and form themselves into a regular caste. The development of these ceremonies out of their primitive simplicity into the complexity and multiformity which they ultimately assumed must, Dr. Haug thinks, have been the work of many centuries. This transformation must have taken place in the region bordering on the Sarasvatī, where the expansion of the Brahmanical system, and the elevation of the Brāhmans to full spiritual supremacy, is to be sought, before the Indo-Arians advanced south-eastwards into Hindostan proper (p. 14). The ascendancy of the Brāhmans was not however attained without opposition on the part of the kings (p. 18). Dr. Haug concludes by relating the reception

of Viśvāmitra into the order of Brāhmans, and by giving some account of the rishis and the several classes into which they were divided.

As the question is generally stated by Dr. Haug in pages 6 and 12 ff., the difference between him and other European scholars is one of age and not of principle, for neither party admits any distinction of race or congenital diversity between the three superior castes or classes.

CHAPTER IV.

EARLY CONTESTS BETWEEN THE BRAHMANS AND KSHATTRIYAS.

I proceed to give some legendary illustrations of the struggle which no doubt occurred in the early ages of Hindu history between the Brāhmans and the Kshattriyas, after the former had begun to constitute a fraternity exercising the sacerdotal profession, but before the respective provinces of the two classes had been accurately defined by custom, and when the members of each were ready to encroach on the prerogatives claimed as their own exclusive birthright by the other.

SECT. I.—Manu's Summary of refractory and submissive monarchs.

I shall begin with the following passage, which we find in the Institutes of Manu, vii. 38 ff., regarding the impious resistance, as the lawgiver considered it, of certain monarchs to the legitimate claims of the priests, and the dutiful behaviour of others.

38. *Vṛiddhāṁś cha nityāṁ seveta ṛiprān veda-vidāḥ śuchīn | vṛiddha-*
sevī hi satataṁ rakshobhir api pūjyate | 39. Tebhyo 'dhigachhed vina-
yaṁ rinītātmā 'pi nityaśāḥ | rinītātmā hi nrīpatir na vinaśyati karchi-
chit | 40. Baharo 'vinayād nashṭāḥ rājānah sa-parichhadāḥ | vanasthāḥ
api rājyāni vinayāt pratipedire | 41. Veno vinashṭo 'vinayād Nahushaś
chaiva pārthirāḥ | Sudāḥ Paijaranaś⁸⁰ chaira Sumukho Nimir era cha |
42. Prithus tu vinayād rājyam prāptavān Manur era cha | Kureraś cha
dhanaisrāryam brāhmaṇyaṁ chaiva Gādhijāḥ |

“Let the king constantly reverence ancient Brāhmans skilled in the Vedas, and pure in conduct; for he who always respects the aged is honoured even by the Rākshāsa. 39. Let him, even though humble-

⁸⁰ In support of this reading, see M. Loiseleur Deslongchamps's and Sir G. C. Haughton's notes on the passage.

minded, be continually learning submissiveness from them : for a submissive monarch never perishes. 40. Through want of this character many kings have been destroyed with all their possessions ; whilst by humility even hermits have obtained kingdoms. 41. *Vena* perished through want of submissiveness, and king Nahusha, and Sūdas the son of Pijavana, and Sumukha, and Nimi. 42. But through submissiveness Pṛithu and Manu attained kingly power, Kuvera the lordship of wealth, and the son of Gādhi (*Viśvāmitra*) Brāhmaṇhood.”⁸¹

Vena is again referred to in *Manu ix.* 66 f. : *Ayām dvijair hi vidvadbhiḥ paśudharmo nigarhitah | manushyānām api prokto Vene rājyam prasāsati |* 67. *Sa mahīm akhilām bhunjan rājarshi-pravaraḥ purā | varnānām sankaram chakre kāmopahata-chetanah |*

“ This custom (of raising up seed to a deceased brother or kinsman by his widow) fit only for cattle, was declared to be (law) for men also, when *Vena* held sway. This eminent royal rishi, who in former times ruled over the whole earth, having his reason destroyed by lust, occasioned a confusion of castes.”

The legendary history of nearly all the kings thus stigmatized or celebrated can be traced in the *Purāṇas* and other parts of Indian literature. I shall supply such particulars of the refractory monarchs as I can find.

It will be observed that Manu is spoken of as an ordinary prince ; and that even Kuvera, the god of wealth, is said to have attained his dignity by the same species of merit as the other persons whom the writer eulogizes. I am not aware whether any legends exist to the same effect. Something of a contrary tendency is found with regard to the deity in question in the passage of the *Mahābhārata*, of which an extract is given above, in p. 140, note 249.

⁸¹ Kullūka remarks on this passage : *Gādhi-putro Viśvāmitras' cha kshattriyah saṁsa
tenaiva dehena brāhmaṇyam prāptavarām | rājya-lūbhāvasare brāhmaṇya-prāptir aprastutū
'pi vinayotkarshārtham uktū | idriso 'yām sāstrānushṭhāna-nishiddha-varjana-rūpa-
vinayodayena kshattriyo 'pi durlabham brāhmaṇyam lebhe |* “ *Viśvāmitra*, the son of Gādhi, being a Kshatriya, obtained Brāhmaṇhood in the same body (i.e. without being again born in another body). The attainment of Brāhmaṇhood by one who at the time held kingly authority, although an unusual occurrence, is mentioned to show the excellence of submissiveness. Through that quality, as exhibited in the observance of scriptural injunctions, and in abstinence from things forbidden, he, being a Kshatriya, obtained Brāhmaṇhood, so difficult to acquire.”

I have not met with any story of Sumukha's contest with the Brāhmans. Some MSS. read Suratha instead of Sumukha.

The name of Sudās, the son of Pijavana, occurs in several parts of the Rig-veda. I shall return to him in relating the contest between Vasishṭha and Viśvāmitra. I begin with the story of Vēṇa.

SECT. II.—*Legend of Vēṇa.*

According to the Vishṇu Purāṇa, i. 13, Vēṇa was the son of Anga, and the descendant in the ninth generation of the first Manu, Svāyambhuva; the line of ancestors from the latter downwards being as follows: Uttānapāda, Dhruva, Ślishti, Ripu, Chākshusha, the sixth Manu called Chākshusha, Uru, Anga (see Wilson's Vishṇu P. vol. i.). Vēṇa thus belongs to a mythical age preceding by an enormous interval that of the descendants of Manu Vaivasvata mentioned in the preceding chapter of this volume; five Manvantaras, or periods of 308,571 years each, having intervened in the present Kalpa between the close of the Svāyambhuva, and the beginning of the existing, or Vaivasvata, Manvantara.

Vishṇu Purāṇa, i. 13, 7 : *Parāśara uvācha | Sunīthā nāma yā kanyā Mṛityoh prathama-jā 'bhārat | Angasya bhāryyā sa dattā tasyām Venas tv aja�ata | 8. Sa mātāmaha-doshena tena Mṛityoh sutātmajah | nisargād ita Maitreya dushtaḥ eva vyajāyata | 9. Abhishikto yadā rājye sa Venah paramarshibhiḥ | ghoshayāmāsa sa tadā prithivīyām prithivīpatih | “na yashṭaryām na dātaryām hotavyām na kadāchana | bhokta yajnasya kas tv anyo hy ahañ yajna-patiḥ sadā | 10. Tatas tam riśhayah sarve sam-pūjya prithivīpatim | ūchuḥ sāmakalaṁ sañyām Maitreya samupasthitāḥ | riśhayah ūchuḥ | 11. “Bho bho rājan śriṇushva traṁ yad vadāmas tava prabho | rājya-dehopakāre yaḥ prajānām cha hitam param | 12. Dirgha-sattrēna deveśām sarra-yajneśvaraṁ Harim | pūjayiṣhyāmo bhadram te tatrāṁśas te bhavishyati | 13. Yajnena yajna-purusho Vishṇuh samprīṇito vibhuḥ | asmābhir bharataḥ kāmān sarvān eva pradāsyati | yajnair yajneśvaro yeshām rāshṭre sampūjyate Hariḥ | teshām sarcepsitāvaptim dadāti nripa bhūbhujām” | Venah uvācha | “mattaḥ ko 'bhyadhiko 'nyo 'sti kaś cārādhyo mamāparaḥ | ko 'yañ Harir iti khyāto yo vo yajneśvaro mataḥ | Brahmā Janārdano Rudraḥ Indro Vāyur Yamo Raviḥ |*

Hutabhu^g Varuno Dhātā Pūshā Bhūmir Niśakaraḥ | ete chānye cha ye devāḥ śāpānugraha-kāriṇaḥ | nripasya te śarīra-sthāḥ sarva-devamayo nripaḥ | etaj jnātvā mayā "jnaptam yad yathā kriyatām tathā | na dātavyam na hotavyam na yashṭavyam cha vo dvijāḥ | 14. Bharttuḥ śuśrūshaṇam dharmo yathā strīnām paro mataḥ | mamājnā-pālanaṁ dharmo bhavatām cha tathā dvijāḥ" | ṛishayaḥ ūchuḥ | "dehy anujnām mahārāja mā dharmo yātu sankshayam | havishām parināmo yañ yad etad akhilaṁ jagat | 15. Dharme cha sankshayam yāte kshīyate chākhilaṁ jagat" | Parāśaraḥ uvācha | iti vijnāpyamāno 'pi sa Venaḥ paramarshibhiḥ | yadā dadāti nānūjnām proktāḥ proktāḥ punah punaḥ | tatas te munayah sarve kopāmarsha-samanvitāḥ | "hanyataṁ hanyatām pāpaḥ" ity ūchus te parasparam | 16. "Yo yajna-purushāṁ devam anādi-nidhanam prabhūm | vinindaty adhamāchāro na sa yogyo bhuraḥ patiḥ" | ity uktrā mantra-pūtais te kuśair muni-gaṇaḥ nripam | nirjaghnur nihatam pūrram bhagaran-nindanādinā | tatas cha munayo renum dadrīsuḥ sarto vato dvija | "kim etad" iti chāsannam paprachhus te janaṁ tada | 17. Ākhyātaṁ cha janais teshām "chaurībhūtair arājake | rāshṭre tu lokair ārabdhām para-svādānam āturaiḥ | 18. Teshām udīrṇa-regnānām chaurāṇām muni-sattamāḥ | sumahān dṛiṣyate renuḥ para-vittāpahāriṇām" | tataḥ sammantrya te sarve munayas tasya bhūbhṛitaḥ | mama nthur ūrum putrārtham anapatyasya yatnataḥ | mathyataś cha samuttasthau tasyoroh purushaḥ kila | dagdha-sthūṇāpratikāśah khārvātāsyo 'tihrasvakaḥ | 19. Kiñ karomīti tān sarvān vīprān āha sa chāturaḥ | nishīdeti tam ūchus te nishādas tena so 'bharat | 20. Tatas tat-sambhavāḥ jātāḥ Vindhya-śaila-nivāsinaḥ | nishādāḥ muni-sārdūla pāpa-karmopalakṣhaṇāḥ | 21. Tena dvārena nishkrāntam tat pāpaṁ tasya bhūpateḥ | nishādās te tathā jātāḥ Vena-kalmasha-sambhavāḥ | 22. Tato 'syā dakshinām hastam mama nthus te tadā dvijāḥ | mathyamāne cha tatrābhūt Prithur Vainyaḥ pratāpavān | dipyamānaḥ sra-vapushā sākshād Agnirivejjalan | 23. Ādyam ājagarañ nāma khāt papāta tato dhanuḥ | śārāś cha dīryāḥ nabhasaḥ kavachaṁ cha papāta ha | tasmin jāte tu bhūtāni samprahṛishṭāni sarvaśaḥ | satputreṇa cha jātena Venō 'pi tridivāṁ yayau | pun-nāmno narakāt trātaḥ sa tena sumahātmanā |

"7. The maiden named Sunīthā, who was the first-born of Mrityu (Death)⁸² was given as wife to Anga; and of her Vena was born.

8. This son of Mrityu's daughter, infected with the taint of his ma-

⁸² See above, p. 124, and note 230.

ternal grandfather, was born corrupt, as if by nature. 9. When Vega was inaugurated as king by the eminent rishis, he caused this proclamation to be made on the earth: 'Men must not sacrifice, or give gifts, or present oblations. Who else but myself is the enjoyer of sacrifices? I am for ever the lord of offerings.' 10. Then all the rishis approaching the king with respectful salutations, said to him in a gentle and conciliatory tone: 11. 'Hear, o king, what we have to say: 12. We shall worship Hari, the monarch of the gods, and the lord of all sacrifices, with a Dirghasattra (prolonged sacrifice), from which the highest benefits will accrue to your kingdom, your person, and your subjects. May blessings rest upon you! You shall have a share in the ceremony. 13. Vishnu the lord, the sacrificial Male, being propitiated by us with this rite, will grant all the objects of your desire. Hari, the lord of sacrifices, bestows on those kings in whose country he is honoured with oblations, everything that they wish.' Vega replied: 'What other being is superior to me? who else but I should be adored? who is this person called Hari, whom you regard as the lord of sacrifice? Brahmā, Janardana, Rudra, Indra, Vāyu, Yama, Ravi (the Sun), Agni, Varuna, Dhātri, Pūshan, Earth, the Moon,—these and the other gods who curse and bless are all present in a king's person: for he is composed of all the gods.⁸³ Knowing this, ye must

⁸³ The orthodox doctrine, as stated by Manu, vii. 3 ff., coincides very nearly with Vena's estimate of himself, although the legislator does not deduce from it the same conclusions: 3. *Raksharthatmasya sarvaya rājyinam asrijat prabhuh* | 4. *Indrānilayamārkānām Agnei cha I'arunasya cha | Chandra-Vittesayos cha irāmātrāh nirhritya īśratih* | 5. *Yasmād eshām surendrāngām mātrābhya nirmito nrīpah | tasmād abhitihavaty esha sarva-bhūtāni tejasā* | 6. *Tupaty uditya-vach chaisha chakshūnishi ha manāmsi cha | na chainam bhūvi śaknoti kaschid apy abhivikshitum* | 7. *So gnir bharati Vāyus cha so 'rkah Somaḥ sa Dharmarātiḥ sa Kuverāḥ sa Varunāḥ sa Mahendrāḥ prabhāvatāḥ* | 8. *Balo 'pi nāvamantarye "manushyah" iti bhūmipah | nahatī devatā hy eshā nara-rūpena tishthati* | "3. The lord created the king for the preservation of this entire world, (4) extracting the eternal essential particles of Indra, Vāyu, Yama, Surya, Agni, Varuna, Chandra, and Kuvera. 5. Inasmuch as the king is formed of the particles of all these gods, he surpasses all beings in brilliancy. 6. Like the Sun, he distresses both men's eyes and minds; and no one on earth can ever gaze upon him. 7. He is Agni, Vāyu, Surya, Soma, Yama, Kuvera, Varuna, and Indra, in majesty. 8. Even when a child a king is not to be despised under the idea that he is a mere man; for he is a great deity in human form."

In another passage, ix. 303, this is qualified by saying that the king should imitate the functions of the different gods: *Indrasyārkasya Vāyoścha Yamasya Varunasya cha | Chandrasyāgnesh Prithiviyāścha tjo vṛttān nrīpas' shareḥ* | This expanded in the next verses.

act in conformity with my commands. Brāhmans, ye must neither give gifts, nor present oblations nor sacrifices. 14. As obedience to their husbands is esteemed the highest duty of women, so is the observance of my orders incumbent upon you.' The rishis answered: 'Give permission, great king: let not religion perish: this whole world is but a modified form of oblations. 15. When religion perishes the whole world is destroyed with it.' When Vena, although thus admonished and repeatedly addressed by the eminent rishis, did not give his permission, then all the munis, filled with wrath and indignation, cried out to one another, 'Slay, slay the sinner. 16. This man of degraded life, who blasphemes the sacrificial Male, the god, the lord without beginning or end, is not fit to be lord of the earth.' So saying the munis smote with blades of kuśa grass consecrated by texts this king who had been already smitten by his blasphemy of the divine Being and his other offences. The munis afterwards beheld dust all round, and asked the people who were standing near what that was. 17. They were informed: 'In this country which has no king, the people, being distressed, have become robbers, and have begun to seize the property of others. 18. It is from these robbers rushing impetuously, and plundering other men's goods, that this great dust is seen? Then all the munis, consulting together, rubbed with force the thigh of the king, who was childless, in order to produce a son. From his thigh when rubbed there was produced a man like a charred log, with flat face, and extremely short. 19. 'What shall I do?' cried the man, in distress, to the Brāhmans. They said to him, 'Sit down' (*nishida*); and from this he became a Nishāda. 20. From him sprang the Nishādas dwelling in the Vindhya mountains, distinguished by their wicked deeds. 21. By this means the sin of the king departed out of him; and so were the Nishādas produced, the offspring of the wickedness of Vena. 22. The Brāhmans then rubbed his right hand; and from it, when rubbed, sprang the majestic Prithu, Vena's son, resplendent in body, glowing like the manifested Agni. 23. Then the primeval bow called Ājagava fell from the sky, with celestial arrows, and a coat of mail. At Prithu's birth all creatures rejoiced. And through the birth of this virtuous son, Vena, delivered from the hell called Put⁶⁴ by this eminent person, ascended to heaven."

⁶⁴ This alludes to the fanciful derivation of *puttra*, "son," from *put* + *tra*.

The Harivamśa (sect. 5) relates the same story thus, with little variation from the Vishnu Purāna:

Vaiśampāyanah urācha | Āśid dharmasya goptā vai pārvam Atri-samāḥ
 prabhuh | Atri-vāṁśa-samutpannas tv Ango nāma prajāpatih | tasya
 putro 'bharad Veno nātyarthāṁ dharma-kovidaḥ | jāto Mṛityu-sutāyāṁ
 eai Sunīthāyāṁ prajāpatih | sa mātāmaha-dosheṇa tena kālātmajātmajah |
 sra-dharmān pṛishṭhataḥ kṛitrā kāmāl lobheshv arattata | maryādāṁ
 sthāpayāmāsa dharmāpetāṁ sa pārthivah | veda-dharmān atikramya so
 'dharma-nirato' bharat | niḥ-srādhyāya-rashaṭkārūṣ tasmin rājani śūsatī |
 prārarttan na papuh somām hutaṁ yajneshu deratāḥ | "na yashṭavyām
 na hotaryām" iti tasya prajāpateḥ | āśit pratijnā krūreyaṁ rināse
 samupasthite | aham ijyaś cha yashṭā cha yajnaś cheti kurūdraha |
 "mayi yajnāḥ vidhātaryāḥ mayi hotaryam" ity api | tam atikrānta-
 maryādam ādadānam asāmpratam | ūchur maharshayaḥ sarve Marīchi-
 pramukhāḥ tadā | "vayām dīkshām prarekshyāmāḥ saṁvatsara-ganān
 bahūn | adharmaṁ kuru mā Vena naisha dharmāḥ sanātanaḥ | anraye
 'treḥ prasūtas trām prajāpatir asāmśayam | 'prajāś cha pālayishye
 'ham' iti te samayah kṛitaḥ" | tāṁs tathā brurūtaḥ sarrān maharshīn
 abravīt tadā | Venah prahasya durbuddhīr imam artham anartha-vit |
 Venah urācha | "srashṭā dharmasya kaś chānyah śrotaryaṁ kasya rā
 mayā | śruti-tiṛya-tapah-satyair mayā rā kaḥ samo bhuri | prabharam
 sarva-bhūtānām dharmāṇām cha viśeshataḥ | sammūḍhāḥ na vidur nūnam
 bharanto mām achetasah | ichhan daheyam pṛithivīm plāvayeyām jadais
 tathā | dyām bhūrām chaiva rundheyām nātra kāryā vichāraṇā" | yadā
 na śakyate mohād avalepāch cha pārthivah | anunetum tadā Venas tataḥ
 kruddhāḥ maharshayaḥ | nigrihya tam mahātmāno visphurantam mahā-
 balam | tato 'sya saryam ūrum te mananthur jāta-manyavaḥ | tasmiṁs tu
 mathyamāne vai rājnaḥ ūrau vijajnīrām | krasvo 'timātraḥ purushāḥ
 kṛiṣṇāś chāpi babbhūva ha | ea bhītaḥ prāñjalir bhūtrā sthitavān Jana-
 mejaya | tam Atrir vīhalām drīshṭvā nishidety abravīt tadā | nishāda-
 vāṁśa-kartā 'sau babbhūva vadatām vara | dhīrarām asrijach chāpi Vena-
 kalmasha-sambhavān | ye chānye Vindhya-nilayās Tukhārās Tumburās
 tathā | adharma-ruchayas tāta viddhi tān Vena-sambhavān | tataḥ punar
 mahātmānah pāṇīm Venasya dakshinām | arāṇīm iva saṁrabdhāḥ manan-
 thur jāta-manyavaḥ | Pṛithus tasmāt samuttasthau karāj jvalana-sanni-
 bhāḥ | dīpyamanāḥ eva-vapusḥā sākshād Agnir iva jvalan |

"There was formerly a Prajāpati (lord of creatures), a protector of

righteousness, called Anga, of the race of Atri, and resembling him in power. His son was the Prajāpati Vena, who was but indifferently skilled in duty, and was born of Sunīthā, the daughter of Mrityu. This son of the daughter of Kāla (Death), owing to the taint derived from his maternal grandfather, threw his duties behind his back, and lived in covetousness under the influence of desire. This king established an irreligious system of conduct : transgressing the ordinances of the Veda, he was devoted to lawlessness. In his reign men lived without study of the sacred books and without the *vashatkara*, and the gods had no Soma-libations to drink at sacrifices. 'No sacrifice or oblation shall be offered,'—such was the ruthless determination of that Prajāpati, as the time of his destruction approached. 'I,' he declared, 'am the object, and the performer of sacrifice, and the sacrifice itself: it is to me that sacrifice should be presented, and oblations offered.' This transgressor of the rules of duty, who arrogated to himself what was not his due, was then addressed by all the great rishis, headed by Marichi: 'We are about to consecrate ourselves for a ceremony which shall last for many years— practise not unrighteousness, o Vena: this is not the eternal rule of duty. Thou art in very deed a Prajāpati of Atri's race, and thou hast engaged to protect thy subjects.' The foolish Vena, ignorant of what was right, laughingly answered those great rishis who had so addressed him: 'Who but myself is the ordainer of duty? or whom ought I to obey? Who on earth equals me in sacred knowledge, in prowess, in austere fervour, in truth? Ye who are deluded and senseless know not that I am the source of all beings and duties. Hesitate not to believe that I, if I willed, could burn up the earth, or deluge it with water, or close up heaven and earth.' When owing to his delusion and arrogance Vena could not be governed, then the mighty rishis becoming incensed, seized the vigorous and struggling king, and rubbed his left thigh. From this thigh, so rubbed, was produced a black man, very short in stature, who, being alarmed, stood with joined hands. Seeing that he was agitated, Atri said to him 'Sit down' (*nishida*). He became the founder of the race of the Nishādas, and also progenitor of the Dhīvaras (fishermen), who sprang from the corruption of Vena. So too were produced from him the other inhabitants of the Vindhya range, the Tukhāras, and Tumburas, who are prone to lawlessness. Then the mighty sages, excited and incensed, again rubbed

the right hand of Vena, as men do the *arani* wood, and from it arose Pṛithu, resplendent in body, glowing like the manifested Agni."

Although the Harivānśa declares Vena to be a descendant of Atri, yet as the Prajāpati Atri is said in a previous section to have adopted Uttānapāda, Vena's ancestor, for his son (Hariv. sect. 2, verse 60, *Uttānapādaṁ jagrāha putram Atriḥ prajāpatiḥ*) there is no contradiction between the genealogy given here and in the Vishṇu Purāna.

The story of Vena is told in the same way, but more briefly, in the Mahābhārata, Sāntip. sect. 59. After narrating the birth of Pṛithu, the writer proceeds, verse 2221 :

Tatas tu prāñjalir Vainyo maharshīm tān urācha ha | “susūkshmaṁ me samutpannā buddhir dharmārtha-darśinī | anayā kim mayā kāryyām tad me tattrena śāṁsata | yad mām bharanto rakshyanti kāryam artha-samanritam | tad aham rai karishyāmi nātra kāryā richāraṇā” | tam īchus tatra devās te te chaira paramarshayaḥ | “niyato yattra dharmo rai tram aśankah samāchara | priyāpriye parityajya samaḥ sarveshu jan-tushu | kāma-krodhau cha lobhaṁ cha mānaṁ chotriyja dūrataḥ | yaś cha dharmāt parichale loke kaśchana mānaraḥ | nigrāhyās te sra-bāhubhyām śāśvad dharmam arekhatā | pratijñām chādhirohasva manasā karmanā girā | ‘pūlayishyāmy aham bhaumam brahma’ ity eva chāsakrit | . . . adanḍyāḥ me dvijāś cheti pratijñāni ke vibho | lokaṁ cha sankurāt kṛitsnam trātāsmīti parantapa” | Vainyas tatas tān urācha devān ṛishi-purogamān | “brāhmaṇāḥ me mahābhāgāḥ namasyāḥ purusharshabhbāḥ” | “evam astv” iti Vainyas tu tair ukto brahmavādibhiḥ | purodhāś chābhavarat tasya Śukro brahmamayo nidhiḥ | mantriṇo Bālakhilyāś cha Sūrasvatyo gaṇas tathā | maharshir bhagavān Gargas tasya sāṁvatsaro ’bharat |

"The son of Vena (Pṛithu) then, with joined hands, addressed the great rishis : 'A very slender understanding for perceiving the principles of duty has been given to me by nature : tell me truly how I must employ it. Doubt not that I shall perform whatever you shall declare to me as my duty, and its object.' Then those gods and great rishis said to him : 'Whatever duty is enjoined perform it without hesitation, disregarding what thou mayest like or dislike, looking on all creatures with an equal eye, putting far from thee lust, anger, cupidity, and pride. Restrain by the strength of thine arm all those men who swerve from righteousness, having a constant regard to duty. And in thought, act, and word take upon thyself, and continually renew, the

engagement to protect the terrestrial Brāhmān (*Veda*, or Brāhmans?) . . . And promise that thou wilt exempt the Brāhmans from punishment, and preserve society from the confusion of castes.' The son of Vena then replied to the gods, headed by the rishis: 'The great Brāhmans, the chief of men, shall be reverenced by me.' 'So be it,' rejoined those declarers of the *Veda*. Sukra, the depository of divine knowledge, became his purohita; the Bālakhilyas and Sārasvatyas his ministers; and the venerable Garga, the great rishi, his astrologer."

The character and conduct of Prīthu, as pourtrayed in the last passage presents a strong, and when regarded from a Brahmanical point of view, an edifying, contrast to the contempt of priestly authority and disregard of Vedic observances which his predecessor had shewn.

In legends like that of Vena we see, I think, a reflection of the questions which were agitating the religious world of India at the period when the Purāṇas in which they appear were compiled, viz., those which were then at issue between the adherents of the *Veda*, and the various classes of their opponents, Baudha, Jaina, Chārvāka, etc. These stories were no doubt written with a purpose. They were intended to deter the monarchs contemporary with the authors from tampering with those heresies which had gained, or were gaining, circulation and popularity, by the example of the punishment which, it was pretended, had overtaken the princes who had dared to deviate from orthodoxy in earlier times. Compare the account given of the rise of heretical doctrines in the *Vishnu Purāṇa* (pp. 209 ff. vol. iii. of Dr. Hall's edition of Professor Wilson's translation), which the writer no doubt intended to have something more than a merely historical interest.

The legend of Vena is told at greater length, but with no material variation in substance, in the Bhāgavata Purāṇa, iv. sections 13-15. See also Professor Wilson's note in his *Vishnu Purāṇa*, vol. i. in loco.

In ascribing to Vena an irreligious character and a contempt for the priests, the Purāṇas contradict a verse in the Rig-veda x. 93, 14, in which (unless we suppose a different individual to be there meant) Vena is celebrated along with Duḥśīma, Prithavāna, and Rāma for his conspicuous liborality to the author of the hymn (*pra tad Duḥśīmo Prithavāno Vene pra Rāme vocham asure maghavatsu | ye yuktvadya pancha sata asmayu patha viśrāvī eshūm*). The two other passages,

viii. 9, 10, and x. 148, 5, in which he is alluded to as the father of Prithu have been quoted above, p. 268.

I observe that a Vena, called Bhārgava (or a descendant of Bṛigu), is mentioned in the list of traditional authors of hymns, given at the end of Professor Aufrecht's Rig-veda, vol. ii., as the rishi of R.V. ix. 85, and x. 123.

SECT. III.—*Legend of Purūravas.*

Purūravas has been already alluded to (in pp. 158, 221, 226, 268, and 279 f.) as the son of Iḍa (or Iḍā), and the grandson of Manu Vaivasvata; as the author of the triple division of the sacred fire; and as a royal rishi. We have also seen (p. 172) that in Rig-veda i. 31, 4, he is referred to as *sukṛite*, a “beneficent,” or “pious,” prince. Rig-veda x. 95 is considered to contain a dialogue between him and the Apsaras Urvaśi (see above, p. 226). In verse 7 of that hymn the gods are alluded to as having strengthened Purūravas for a great conflict for the slaughter of the Dasyus (*mahe yat trā Purūravo rāṇaya arāddhayan dasyu-hatyāya derāḥ*); and in the 18th verse he is thus addressed by his patronymic: *Iti trā devāḥ īme āhur Aīla yathā īm etad bharasi mrityubandhuḥ | prajā te devān harishā yajāti svarge u tram api mādayāse |* “Thus say these gods to thee, o son of Ila, that thou art indeed nothing more than a kinsman of death: (yet) let thy offspring worship the gods with an oblation, and thou also shalt rejoice in heaven.”

It thus appears that in the Vedic hymns and elsewhere Purūravas is regarded as a pious prince, and Manu does not include him in his list of those who resisted the Brāhmans. But the M. Bh., Ādiparvan 3143 speaks of him as follows:

Purūravarās tato vidrān Ilāyāñ samapadyata | sā rai tasyābhavad mātā pitā chaireti nah śrutam | trayodaśa samudrasya dvīpān aśnan Purūravāḥ | amānushair vṛitāḥ sarvair mānushāḥ san mahāyāsāḥ | vīpraiḥ sa vīgrahāñ chakre vīryyonmattāḥ Purūravāḥ | jahāra cha sa vīprāñām ratnāny utkrośatām api | Sanatkumāras tam rājan Brahma-lokād upetya ha | anudarśām tataś chakre pratyagrihñād na chāpy asau | tato maharshibhiḥ kruddhaiḥ sadyaiḥ śapto vyanaśyata | lobhānvito bala-madād nashṭa-sanjno narādhipaḥ | sa hi gandharva-loka-sthān Urvaśyā sahitu virāṭ | anināya kriyārthe 'gnīn yathāvad vihitāṁs tridhā |

"Subsequently the wise Purūravas was born of Ilā, who, as we have heard, was both his father and his mother. Ruling over thirteen islands of the ocean, and surrounded by beings who were all superhuman, himself a man of great renown, Purūravas, intoxicated by his prowess, engaged in a conflict with the Brāhmans, and robbed them of their jewels, although they loudly remonstrated. Sanatkumāra came from Brahmā's heaven, and addressed to him an admonition, which, however, he did not regard. Being then straightway cursed by the incensed rishis, he perished, this covetous monarch, who, through pride of power, had lost his understanding. This glorious being (*virāj*), accompanied by Urvaśī, brought down for the performance of sacred rites the fires which existed in the heaven of the Gandharvas, properly distributed into three." (See Wilson's *Vishṇu Purāṇa*, 4to. ed. pp. 350, and 394 ff. with note p. 397.)

I cite from the *Harivaṁśa* another passage regarding Purūravas, although no distinct mention is made in it of his contest with the Brāhmans:

Harivaṁśa 8811. *Pitā Budhasyottama-vīrya-karmā Purūravarāḥ yaya
suto nṛi-derāḥ | prānāgnir idyo 'gnīm ajjanad yo nashṭam śamī-garbhā-
bhavam bhavatmā | tathairā paśchāch chakamo mahātmā purorraśīm ap-
sarāśām cariṣṭhām | pītāḥ purā yo 'mrīta-sarva-deho muni-pravīrair
vara-gātri-ghoraiḥ | nṛipāḥ kuśagraiḥ punar era yaś cha dhīmān kṛita
'gnir divi pūjyate cha.*

"He (the Moon) was the father of Budha (Mercury), whose son was Purūravas, a god among men, of distinguished heroic deeds, the vital fire, worthy of adoration, the generator, who begot the lost fire which sprang from the heart of the śamī-wood, the great personage, who, placed to the west, loved Urvaśī, the paragon of Apsarases, who was placed to the east. This king with his entire immortal body was formerly swallowed up with the points of Kuśa grass by the munis terrible with their resplendent forms; but was again made wise, and is worshipped in heaven as fire."

SECT. IV.—Story of Nahusha.

The legend of Nahusha,⁸⁵ grandson of Purūravas (see above, p. 226),

⁸⁵ The name of Nahush occurs in the Rig-veda as that of the progenitor of a race.

the second prince described by Manu as having come into hostile collision with the Brāhmans is narrated with more or less detail in different parts of the Mahābhārata, as well as in the Purāṇas. The following passage is from the former work, Ādip. 3151 :

*Āyusho Nahushaḥ putro dhīmān satya-parākramāḥ | rājyaṁ śasāsa
sumahad dharmena prīthirīpate | pīlīn devān ṛishīn vīprān gandharvo-
raga-rākshasān | Nahushaḥ pālayāmāsa brahma kshattram atho ṛiṣāḥ |
sa hatrā dasyu-sanghātān ṛishīn karam adūpayat | paśurach chaire tān
prīshthe rāhāyāmāsa vīryyarān | kārayāmāsa chendratvam abhūbhūya
diraukasāḥ | tejasā tapasā chaire cikramenaujasā tathā |*

" Nahusha the son of Āyus, wise, and of genuine prowess, ruled with justice a mighty empire. He protected the pitris, gods, rishis, wise men, gandharvas, serpents (*uraga*), and rākshasas, as well as Brāhmans, Kshattriyas, and Vaiśyas. This energetic prince, after slaying the hosts of the Dasyus, compelled the rishis to pay tribute, and made them carry him like beasts upon their backs. After subduing the celestials he conquered for himself the rank of Indra, through his vigour, austere fervour, valour and fire."

The story is thus introduced in another part of the same work, the Vanaparvan, section 180. Yudhishṭhira found his brother Bhīmasena seized by a serpent in a forest (see above, p. 133). This serpent, it appears, was no other than king Nahusha, who on being questioned thus relates his own history , 12460 :

*Nahusho nāma rājā 'ham āsam pūrvas tāvānagha | prathitāḥ panchamāḥ
Somād Āyoḥ putro narādhīpa | kratubhis tapasā chaiva srādhyāyena
damena cha | trailokyaisvaryam avyagram prāpto 'hañ vīkramena cha |
tad aiśvaryaṁ samāśādyā darpo mām agamat tadā | sahasrañ hi drijā-
tīnām uvāha śivikām mama | aiśvaryya-mada-matto 'ham aramanya tato
drijān | imām Agastyena daśām ānītaḥ prīthirīpate | ahañ hi
divi divyena vimānena charan purā | abhimānenā mattaḥ san kanchid
nānyam achintayam | brahmaṛshi-deva-gandharva-yaksha-rākshasa-pa-
nagāḥ | karān mama prayachhanti sarve trailokya-vāsināḥ | chakshushā
yam prapaśyāmi prāṇinam prīthirīpate | tasya tejo harāmy āsu tad hi
drishṭer balam mama | maharshīnām sahasrañ hi uvāha śivikām mama |*

See above, p. 165, note 7, and pp. 179 f. Nahusha Mānava is the traditional rishi of Rig-veda ix. 101, verses 7-9, and Yayāti Nāhusha of verses 4-6 of the same hymn. See list of rishis in Professor Aufrecht's Rig-veda ii. 464 ff.

*sa mām apanayo rājan bhrāṁśayāmāsa vai śriyah | tatra hy Agastyaḥ
pādena vahan sprishṭo mayā muniḥ | Agastyena tato 'smi ukto dhvānsa
sarpeti vai rushā | tatas tasmod vimānāgryār prachyutaś chyuta-laksha-
nah | prapatan bubudhe "tmānaṁ vyālibhūtam adhomukham | ayācham
tam ahaṁ vipraṁ "śāpasyānto bhaved" iti | "pramādāt sampramūḍha-
ya bhagavan kshantum arhasi" | tataḥ sa mām uvāchedam prapatalām
kṛipānvitah | "Yudhishṭhīro dharma-rājaḥ śāpāt trām mochayishyati" |
.... ity uktrā "jagaraṁ deham muktvā na Nahusho nṛipaḥ | divyām
vapuh samāsthāya gatas tridivam eva cha |*

"I was a king called Nahusha, more ancient than thou, known as the son of Āyus, and fifth in descent from Soma. By my sacrifices, austere fervour, sacred study, self-restraint, and valour, I acquired the undisturbed sovereignty of the three worlds. When I had attained that dominion, pride took possession of my soul: a thousand Brāhmans bore my vehicle. Becoming intoxicated by the conceit of my lordly power, and contemning the Brāhmans, I was reduced to this condition by Agastya." The serpent then promises to let Bhimasena go, if Yudhishṭhīra will answer certain questions (above referred to in p. 133 ff.). Yudhishṭhīra afterwards enquires how delusion had happened to take possession of so wise a person as their conversation shewed Nahusha to be. The latter replies that he had been perverted by the pride of power, and proceeds: "Formerly, as I moved through the sky on a celestial car, intoxicated with self-conceit, I regarded no one but myself. All the inhabitants of the three worlds, brāhmanical rishis, gods, gandharvas, yakshas, rākshasas, pannagas, paid me tribute. Such was the power of my gaze that on what creature soever I fixed my eyes, I straightway robbed him of his energy. A thousand of the great sages bore my vehicle. That misconduct it was, o king, which hurled me from my high estate. For I then touched with my foot the muni Agastya who was carrying me. Agastya in his wrath cried out to me 'Fall, thou serpent.' Hurled therefore from that magnificent car, and fallen from my prosperity, as I descended headlong, I felt that I had become a serpent. I entreated the Brāhmaṇ (Agastya), 'Let there be a termination of the curse: thou, o reverend rishi, shouldest forgive one who has been deluded through his inconsideration.' He then compassionately replied to me as I fell, 'Yudhishṭhīra, the king of righteousness, will free thee from the curse.'" And at the close of the

conversation between Yudhishṭhira and the serpent, we are told that "King Nahusha, throwing off his huge reptile form, became clothed in a celestial body, and ascended to heaven."

The same story is related in greater detail in the Udyogaparvan, sections 10–16, as follows :

After his slaughter of the demon Vrittra, Indra became alarmed at the idea of having taken the life of a Brāhmaṇa (for Vṛittra was regarded as such), and hid himself in the waters. In consequence of the disappearance of the king of the gods, all affairs, celestial as well as terrestrial, fell into confusion. The rishis and gods then applied to Nahusha to be their king. After at first excusing himself on the plea of want of power, Nahusha at length, in compliance with their solicitations, accepted the high function. Up to the period of his elevation he had led a virtuous life, but he now became addicted to amusement and sensual pleasure ; and even aspired to the possession of Indrāṇī, Indra's wife, whom he had happened to see. The queen resorted to the Angiras Vṛihaspati, the preceptor of the gods, who engaged to protect her. Nahusha was greatly incensed on hearing of this interference ; but the gods endeavoured to pacify him, and pointed out the immorality of appropriating another person's wife. Nahusha, however, would listen to no remonstrance, and insisted that in his adulterous designs he was no worse than Indra himself : 373. *Ahalyā dharshītā pūrvam rishi-patnī yaśasvinī | jīvato bharttur Indrena sa rāḥ kiṁ na nirāritaḥ |* 374. *Bahūni cha nriśaṁsāni kritānindrena rai purā | rai-dharmyāny upadāś chaira sa rāḥ kiṁ na nirāritaḥ |* “373. The renowned Ahalyā, a rishi's wife, was formerly corrupted by Indra in her husband's lifetime (see p. 121 f.): Why was he not prevented by you ? 374. And many barbarous acts, and unrighteous deeds, and frauds, were perpetrated of old by Indra: Why was he not prevented by you ?” The gods, urged by Nahusha, then went to bring Indrāṇī ; but Vṛihaspati would not give her up. At his recommendation, however, she solicited Nahusha for some delay, till she should ascertain what had become of her husband. This request was granted. The gods next applied to Vishṇu on behalf of Indra ; and Vishṇu promised that if Indra would sacrifice to him, he should be purged from his guilt, and recover his dominion, while Nahusha would be destroyed. Indra sacrificed accordingly ; and the result is thus told : 419. *Vibhajya brahma-hatyām tu vriksheshu*

cha nadishu cha | parvateshu prithivyāṁ cha strīshu chaiva Yudhish-
thira | sa vibhajya cha bhūteshu visrijya cha sureśvarah | vijraro
dhuta-pāpmā cha Vāsavo 'bhavad ātmavān | “Having divided the guilt
of brahmanicide among trees, rivers, mountains, the earth, women,
and the elements, Vāsava (Indra), lord of the gods, became freed from
suffering and sin, and self-governed.” Nahusha was by this means
shaken from his place. But (unless this is said by way of prolepsis,
or there is some confusion in the narrative) he must have speedily
regained his position, as we are told that Indra was again ruined, and
became invisible. Indrāṇī now went in search of her husband; and by
the help of Upaśruti (the goddess of night and revealer of secrets) dis-
covered him existing in a very subtle form in the stem of a lotus-
growing in a lake situated in a continent within an ocean north of the
Himālaya. She made known to him the wicked intentions of Nahusha,
and entreated him to exert his power, rescue her from danger, and
resume his dominion. Indra declined any immediate interposition on
the plea of Nahusha’s superior strength; but suggested to his wife
a device by which the usurper might be hurled from his position. She
was recommended to say to Nahusha that “if he would visit her on a
celestial vehicle borne by rishis, she would with pleasure submit herself
to him” (449. *Rishi-yānenā diryena mām upaihi jagatpate | evāṁ tara-*
rāse pṛitā bharishyāmīti tam rada). The queen of the gods accordingly
went to Nahusha, by whom she was graciously received, and made this
proposal: 457. *Iehhāmy aham athāpūrvam vāhanām te surādhipa | yad*
na Vishṇor na Rudrasya nāsurāñām na rākshasām | vahantu tvām mahā-
bhāgāḥ rishayaḥ sangatāḥ vibho | sarve śivikayā rājann etad hi mama
rochate | “I desire for thee, king of the gods, a vehicle hitherto un-
known, such as neither Vishṇu, nor Rudra, nor the asuras, nor the rak-
shases employ. Let the eminent rishis, all united, bear thee, lord, in a
car: this idea pleases me.” Nahusha receives favourably this appeal
to his vanity, and in the course of his reply thus gives utterance to his
self-congratulation: 463. *Nā hy alpa-vīryo bharati yo vāhānā kurute mu-*
nīn | ahaṁ tapasvī balavān bhūta-bharya-bhavat-prabhuḥ | mayi kruddhe
jagad na syād mayi sarvam pratishṭhitam | tasmāt te vāchanām
devi karishyāmī na saṁśayah | saptarshayo mām vakshyanti sarve brah-
marshayas tathā | paśya māhātmyam asmākām riddhiṁ cha varavarṇī |
. . . . 468. *Vimāne yojayitrā sa rishīn niyamam āsthitān | abrahmaṇyo*

balopeto matto mada-balena cha | kāma-ṛittah sa dushkātmā vāhayūmāsa
tān rishin | “He is a personage of no mean prowess who makes the
 munis his bearers. I am a servid devotee of great might, lord of the
 past, the future, and the present. If I were angry the world would
 no longer stand; on me everything depends. . . . Wherefore, o
 goddess, I shall, without doubt, carry out what you propose. The
 seven rishis, and all the brāhmaṇa-rishis, shall carry me. Behold,
 beautiful goddess, my majesty and my prosperity.” The narrative
 goes on: “Accordingly this wicked being, irreligious, violent, intox-
 icated by the force of conceit, and arbitrary in his conduct, attached to
 his car the rishis, who submitted to his commands, and compelled them
 to bear him.” Indrāṇī then again resorts to Vṛihaspati, who assures
 her that vengeance will soon overtake Nahusha for his presumption;
 and promises that he will himself perform a sacrifice with a view to
 the destruction of the oppressor, and the discovery of Indra’s lurking
 place. Agni is then sent to discover and bring Indra to Vṛihaspati;
 and the latter, on Indra’s arrival, informs him of all that had occurred
 during his absence. While Indra, with Kuvera, Yama, Soma, and
 Varuṇa, was devising means for the destruction of Nahusha, the sage
 Agastya came up, congratulated Indra on the fall of his rival, and pro-
 ceeded to relate how it had occurred: 527. *Sramārttāścha rahantas*
tam Nahusham pāpakāriṇam | derarshayo mahābhāgas tathā brahmā-
shayo’ malūḥ | paprachhur Nahusham devam sañśayaṇ jayatām vara |
ye ime brāhmaṇāḥ proktāḥ mantrāḥ rai prokṣhane garām | elo pramāṇam
bharataḥ utāho neti Vāsava | Nahusho neti tān āha tamasā mūḍha-che-
tanaḥ | rishayah ūchuh | adharme sampravrittas tvām dharmāna na prati-
padyase | pramāṇam etad asmākam pūrvam proktam maharshibhiḥ |
Agastyaḥ urācha | Tato viradamānah sa munibhiḥ saha Vāsava | atha
nām asprisad mūrdhni pādenādharma-yojitaḥ | tenābhūd hata-tejāś cha
niḥśrīkaś cha mahīpatiḥ | tatas tām sahasā vignam arocham bhaya-pīdi-
tam | “yasmāt pūrvaiḥ kritam brahma brahmashibhir anushūlitam |
aduṣṭām dūshayasi rai yach cha mūrdhny asprisāḥ padā | yach chāpi
tvam rishin mūḍha brahma-kalpān durāsadān | vāhān kritrā vāhayasi
tena svargād hata-prabhāḥ | dhvāmsa pūpa paribhrashṭaḥ kshīṇa-puṇyo
mahītalam | daśa-varsha-sahasrāṇi sarpā-riṇa-dharo mahān | vichari-
shyasi pūrṇeshu punaḥ svargam avāpsyasi” | evam bhrashṭo durūtmā sa
dava-rājyād arindama | dishyā varddhāmahe śakra hato brāhmaṇa-ka-

तकः । त्रिपितृपम् प्रपद्यस्वा पाहि लोकान् सचिपते । जेतेन्द्रियो जितामित्रह श्टुयमानो महरशिभिः । “Wearied with carrying the sinner Nahusha, the eminent divine-rishis, and the spotless brâhman-rishis, asked that divine personage Nahusha [to solve] a difficulty : ‘Dost thou, o Vâsava, most excellent of conquerors, regard as authoritative or not those Brâhmaṇa texts which are recited at the immolation of kine?’ ‘No,’ replied Nahusha, whose understanding was enveloped in darkness. The rishis rejoined : ‘Engaged in unrighteousness, thou attainest not unto righteousness : these texts, which were formerly uttered by great rishis, are regarded by us as authoritative.’ Then (proceeds Agastya) disputing with the munis, Nahusha, impelled by unrighteousness, touched me on the head with his foot. In consequence of this the king’s glory was smitten and his prosperity departed. When he had instantly become agitated and oppressed with fear, I said to him, ‘Since thou, o fool, contemnest that sacred text, always held in honour, which has been composed by former sages, and employed by brâhman-rishis, and hast touched my head with thy foot, and employest the Brahmâ-like and irresistible rishis as bearers to carry thee,—therefore, shorn of thy lustre, and all thy merit exhausted, sink down, sinner, degraded from heaven to earth. For ten thousand years thou shalt crawl in the form of a huge serpent. When that period is completed, thou shalt again ascend to heaven.’ So fell that wicked wretch from the sovereignty of the gods. Happily, o Indra, we shall now prosper, for the enemy of the Brâhmans has been smitten. Take possession of the three worlds, and protect their inhabitants, o husband of Sachî (Indrânî), subduing thy senses, overcoming thine enemies, and celebrated by the great rishis.”⁸⁶

Indra, as we have seen above, was noted for his dissolute character. The epithet “subduing thy senses,” assigned to him in the last sentence by Agastya, is at variance with this indifferent reputation. Is it to be regarded as a picce of flattery, or as a delicate hint that the god would do well to practise a purer morality in future?

This legend appears, like some others, to have been a favourite with the compilers of the Mahâbhârata; for we find it once more related, though with some variety of detail, (which may justify its repetition in

⁸⁶ Further on, in verse 556, Nahusha is called “the depraved, the hater of brahman, the sinful-minded (*durâchâras च नहुशो ब्रह्मा-द्विष पूपचेताः*).

a condensed form), in the *Anuśāsanaparvan*, verses 4715-4810. We are there told that Nahusha, in recompense for his good deeds, was exalted to heaven; where he continued to perform all divine and human ceremonies, and to worship the gods as before. At length he became puffed up with pride at the idea that he was Indra, and all his good works in consequence were neutralized. For a great length of time he compelled the rishis to carry him about. At last it came to Agastya's turn to perform the servile office. Bhṛigu then came and said to Agastya, 'Why do we submit to the insults of this wicked king of the gods?' Agastya answered that none of the rishis had ventured to curse Nahusha, because he had obtained the power of subduing to his service everyone upon whom he fixed his eyes; and that he had *amṛita* (nectar) for his beverage. However, Agastya said he was prepared to do anything that Bhṛigu might suggest. Bhṛigu said he had been sent by Brahmā to take vengeance on Nahusha, who was that day about to attach Agastya to his ear, and would spurn him with his foot; and that he himself (Bhṛigu), "incensed at this insult, would by a curse condemn the transgressor and hater of Brāhmans to become a serpent" (*cyutkrānta-dharmaṁ tam ahāṁ dharshanāmarshito bhṛiṣam | ahiṁ bha-*
rasveti rushā śapsye pāpaṁ dvija-druham). All this accordingly happened as follows :

Athāgastyam rishi-śreshṭham vāhanāyājuhāra ha | drutaṁ Sarasvatī-
kūlāt smayann ira mahābalah | tato Bhṛigur mahātejāḥ Maitrāvarunim
abrari | "nimilayasva nayane jaṭāṁ yāvad viśāmi te" | sthāṇubhūtasya
tasyātha jaṭāṁ prāviśad achyutaḥ | Bhṛiguḥ sa sumahātejāḥ pātanāya
nriपर्या cha | tataḥ sa deva-rāṭ prāptas tam rishiṁ vāhanāya rai | tato
'gastyāḥ surapatiṁ rākyam āha viśampate | "yojayasreti mām kshipram
kaṁ cha deśāṁ rahāmi te | yattra rakshyasi tatra tvāṁ nayishyāmi surā-
dhipa" | ity ukto Nahushas tena yojayāmāsa tam munim | Bhṛigus tasya
jaṭāntaḥ-stho babbūra hṛishito bhṛiṣam | na chāpi darśanām tasya chakāra
sa Bhṛigus tadā | vara-dāna-prabhāra-jno Nahushasya mahātmanah | na
chukopu tadā 'gastyo yukto 'pi Nahushena rai | taṁ tu rāja pratodena
chodayāmāsa Bhārata | na chukopu sa dharmātmā tataḥ pādena deva-rūṭ |
Agastyasya tadā kruddho vāmenābhyanach chhiraḥ | tasmin śirasy abhi-
hato sa jaṭāntargato Bhṛiguḥ | śāśāpa balavat kruddho Nahusham pāpa-
chetasam | "yasmāt padā 'hanaḥ krodhāt śirastmam mahāmunim | tasmād
āśu mahām gachha sarpo bhūtvā sudurmatae" | ity uktaḥ sa tada tena

sarpo bhūtrā papāta ha | adṛishṭenātha Bhṛiguṇā bhūtale Bharatarsha-bha | Bhṛiguṇ hi yadi so 'drakshyad Nahushaḥ prithivīpate | sa na śakto 'bhavishyad rai pātane tasya tejasā |

"The mighty Nahusha, as it were smiling, straightway summoned the eminent rishi Agastya from the banks of the Sarasvatī to carry him. The glorious Bhṛigu then said to Maitrāvaruni (Agastya), 'Close thy eyes whilst I enter into the knot of thy hair.' With the view of overthrowing the king, Bhṛigu then entered into the hair of Agastya who stood motionless as a stock. Nahusha then came to be carried by Agastya, who desired to be attached to the vehicle and agreed to carry the king of the gods whithersoever he pleased. Nahusha in consequence attached him. Bhṛigu, who was lodged in the knot of Agastya's hair, was greatly delighted, but did not venture to look at Nahusha, as he knew the potency of the boon which had been accorded to him (of subduing to his will everyone on whom he fixed his eyes). Agastya did not lose his temper when attached to the vehicle, and even when urged by a goad the holy man remained unmoved. The king of the gods, incensed, next struck the rishi's head with his left foot, when Bhṛigu, invisible within the knot of hair, became enraged, and violently cursed the wicked Nahusha: 'Since, fool, thou hast in thine anger smitten this great muni on the head with thy foot, therefore become a serpent, and fall down swiftly to the earth.' Being thus addressed, Nahusha became a serpent, and fell to the earth, through the agency of Bhṛigu, who remained invisible. For if he had been seen by Nahusha, the saint would have been unable, in consequence of the power possessed by the oppressor, to hurl him to the ground."

Bhṛigu, on Nahusha's solicitation, and the intercession of Agastya, placed a period to the effects of the curse, which, as in the other version of the legend, Yudhishṭhira was to be the instrument of terminating.

From several phrases which I have quoted from the version of this legend given in the Udyogaparvan, as well as the tenor of the whole, it appears to be the intention of the writers to hold up the case of Nahusha as an example of the nemesis awaiting not merely any gross display of presumption, but all resistance to the pretensions of the priesthood, and contempt of their persons or authority.

SECT. V.—Story of Nimi.

Nimi (one of Ikshvāku's sons) is another of the princes who are stigmatized by Manu, in the passage above quoted, for their want of deference to the Brāhmans. The Vishṇu P. (Wilson, 4to. ed. p. 388) relates the story as follows: Nimi had requested the Brāhmaṇ-rishi Vaśishṭha to officiate at a sacrifice, which was to last a thousand years. Vaśishṭha in reply pleaded a pre-engagement to Indra for five hundred years, but promised to return at the end of that period. The king made no remark, and Vaśishṭha went away, supposing that he had assented to this arrangement. On his return, however, the priest discovered that Nimi had retained Gāutama (who was, equally with Vaśishṭha, a Brāhmaṇ-rishi) and others to perform the sacrifice; and being incensed at the neglect to give him notice of what was intended, he cursed the king, who was then asleep, to lose his corporeal form. When Nimi awoke and learnt that he had been cursed without any previous warning, he retorted, by uttering a similar curse on Vaśishṭha, and then died. "In consequence of this curse" (proceeds the Vishṇu Purāṇa, iv. 5, 6) "the vigour of Vaśishṭha entered into the vigour of Mitra and Varuna. Vaśishṭha, however, received from them another body when their seed had fallen from them at the sight of Urvaśi" (*tach-chhāpāch cha Mitrā-rarunayos tejasि Vaśishṭha-tejāḥ pravishṭam | Urvaśi-darśanād udbhūta-tiryya-prapātayoh sakāśād Vaśishṭho deham aparañ lehhe*).⁷ Nimi's body was embalmed. At the close of the sacrifice which he had begun, the gods were willing, on the intercession of the priests, to restore him to life, but he declined the offer; and was placed by the deities, according to his desire, in the eyes of all living creatures. It is in consequence of this that they are always opening and shutting (*nimisha* means "the twinkling of the eye").

The story is similarly related in the Bhāgavata Purāṇa, ix. 13, 1–13. A portion of the passage is as follows:

3. *Nimiś chalam idāñ vidvān sattram ārabhatātmavān | ritvīghbir aparaīś tāvad nūgamad yāvatā guruḥ | śishya-vyatikramañ vīkṣya nirarttya gurur āgataḥ | aśapat "patatād deho Nimeḥ pāṇḍita-māninah" | Nimiḥ pratidadau śāpām guruve 'dharma-varttiṇe | "tavāpi patatād deho*

⁷ This story will be further illustrated in the next section.

lobhād dharmam ajānatāḥ" | *ity utsasarjja svāñ dehañ Nimir adhyātma-kovidāḥ* | *Mitrā-varunayor jajne Urvaśyām prapitāmahāḥ* |

"Nimi, who was self-controlled, knowing the world to be fleet-ing, commenced the sacrifice with other priests until his own spiritual instructor should come back. The latter, on his return, discovering the transgression of his disciple, cursed him thus: 'Let the body of Nimi, who fancies himself learned, fall from him.' Nimi retorted the curse on his preceptor, who was acting unrighteously: 'Let thy body also fall from thee, since thou, through coveteousness, art ignorant of duty.' Having so spoken, Nimi, who knew the supreme spirit, abandoned his body: and the patriarch (Vaśishṭha) was born of Urvaśī to Mitra and Varuṇa."⁸⁸

The offence of Nimi, as declared in these passages, is not that of contemning the sacerdotal order in general, or of usurping their functions; but merely of presuming to consult his own convenience by proceeding to celebrate a sacrifice with the assistance of another Brāhmaṇa (for Gautama also was a man of priestly descent) when his own spiritual preceptor was otherwise engaged, without giving the latter any notice of his intention. The Bhāgavata, as we have seen, awards blame impartially to both parties, and relates (as does also the Vishṇu Purāṇa) that the king's curse took effect on the Brāhmaṇa, as well as the Brāhmaṇa's on the king.

SECT. VI.—*Vasishṭha*

One of the most remarkable and renowned of the struggles between Brāhmans and Kshattriyas which occur in the legendary history of India is that which is said to have taken place between Vasishṭha and Viśvāmitra. I propose to furnish full details of this conflict with its fabulous accompaniments from the Rāmāyaṇa, which dwells upon it at considerable length, as well as from the Mahābhārata, where it is repeatedly

⁸⁸ On the last verso the commentator Śridhara has the following note: *Urvasī-darsanāt skannāñ retas tābhyañ kumbhe nishiktam | tasmat̄ prapitāmaho Vaśishṭho jajne | tathā cha śrutiḥ "kumbhe retah sisichituh samānam" iti |* "Seed fell from them at the sight of Urvaśī and was shed into a jar: from it the patriarch, Vasishṭha, was born. And so says the śruti" (R.V. vii. 38, 13, which will be quoted in the next section).

introduced; but before doing so, I shall quote the passages of the Rig-veda which appear to throw a faint light on the real history of the two rivals. It is clear from what has been said in the Introduction to this volume, pp. 1-6, as well as from the remarks I have made in pp. 161 f., that the Vedic hymns, being far more ancient than the Epic and Puranic compilations, must be more trustworthy guides to a knowledge of the remotest Indian antiquity. While the Epic poems and Puranas no doubt embody numerous ancient traditions, yet these have been freely altered according to the caprice or dogmatic views of later writers, and have received many purely fictitious additions. The Vedic hymns, on the contrary, have been preserved unchanged from a very remote period, and exhibit a faithful reflection of the social, religious, and ecclesiastical condition of the age in which they were composed, and of the feelings which were awakened by contemporary occurrences. As yet there was no conscious perversion or colouring of facts for dogmatic or sectarian purposes; and much of the information which we derive from these naïve compositions is the more trustworthy that it is deduced from hints and allusions, and from the comparison of isolated particulars, and not from direct and connected statements or descriptions. It is here therefore, if anywhere, that we may look for some light on the real relations between Vasishtha and Viśvāmitra. After quoting the hymns regarding these two personages, I shall adduce from the Brähmanas, or other later works, any particulars regarding their birth and history which I have discovered. The conflict between Vasishtha and Viśvāmitra has been already discussed at length in the third of Dr. Rudolf Roth's "Dissertations on the literature and history of the Veda,"⁶⁹ where the most important parts of the hymns bearing upon the subject are translated. The first hymn which I shall adduce is intended for the glorification of Vasishtha and his family. The latter part relates the birth of the sage, while the earlier verses refer to his connection with king Sudās. Much of this hymn is very obscure.

R.V. vii. 33, 1. *Svityancho mā dakshinatas-kapardāḥ dhiyāñjinvāso abhi hi pramanduḥ | uttishṭhan voce pari barhisho nrīn na me dūrād avitave Vasishṭhāḥ | 2. Dūrād Indram anayann ā sutena tiro vaisantam ati pāntam ugram | Pāśadyunnasya Vāyatasya somāt sutād Indro avirūpita Vasishṭhāḥ | 3. Eva in nu kaṁ sindhum ebbis tatāra eva in nu kam*

Bhedam ebbhir jaghāna | eva in nu kañ dāśarājne Sudāsam prāvad Indro brahmaṇā vo Vasishṭhāḥ | 4. Jushṭi naro brahmaṇā vah pitriṇām aksham aryayaṁ na kila rishātha | yat śakvarīshu bṛihatā ravena Indre śush-mam adadhāta Vasishṭhāḥ | 5. Ud dyām iva it tṛishṇajo nāthitāso adi-dhayur dāśarājne r̄itāsaḥ | Vasishṭhasya etwataḥ Indro aśrod uruṁ Tritsubhyo akriṇod u lokam | 6. Dandā iva goajanāsaḥ āsan parichhin-nāḥ Bharatāḥ arbhākāsaḥ | abharach cha pura-etā Vasishṭhāḥ ad it Tritsūnāṁ riśo aprathanta | 7. Trayāḥ kriṇvanti bhuvaneshu retas tisrah prajāḥ ḥryāḥ jyotir-agrāḥ | trayo gharmāsaḥ ushasaṁ sachante sarrān it tān anu ridur Vasishṭhāḥ | 8. Sūryasya iva vakshatho jyotir eshām samudrasya iva mahimā gabhīraḥ | vātasya iva prajavo na anyena stomo Vasishṭhāḥ anu etare rāḥ | 9. Te in niṇyām hṛidayasya praketaḥ sa-hasra-ralśam abhi sām charanti | yamena tatam paridhiṁ rayanto apsarasāḥ upa sedur Vasishṭhāḥ | 10. Vidyuto jyotiḥ pari sām jihānam Mitrā-varuṇā yad apaśyatām trā | tat te janma uta ekaṁ Vasishṭha Agastyo yat trā riśaḥ ājabhāra | 11. Uta asi Maitrāraruṇo Vasishṭha Urraśyāḥ brahman ma-naso 'dhi jātaḥ | drapsaṁ skannam brahmaṇā dairyena riśre derāḥ push-kare trā 'dadanta | 12. Sa praketaḥ ubhayasya pravideṇ sahasra-dānaḥ uta rā sadānaḥ | yamena tatam paridhiṁ rayishyann apsarasāḥ pari jajne Vasishṭhāḥ | 13. Sattre ha jātāv ishitā namobhiḥ kumbhe, retaḥ sishichatuḥ samānam | tato ha Mānaḥ ud iyāya madhyāt tato jātam riśhim āhur Vasishṭham |

" 1. The white-robed (priests) with hair-knots on the right, stimulating to devotion, have filled me with delight. Rising from the sacrificial grass, I call to the men, 'Let not the Vasishṭhas (stand too) far off to succour [or gladden] me.⁹⁰ 2. By their libation they brought Indra hither from afar across the Vaiṣanta away from the powerful draught.⁹¹ Indra preferred the Vasishṭhas to the soma offered by Pāśadyumna,⁹² the son of Vayata. 3. So too with them he crossed the river; so too with them he slew Bheda; so too in the battle of the ten kings⁹³ Indra delivered Sudās through your prayer, o Vasishṭhas."

⁹⁰ Sūyana thinks that Vasishṭha is the speaker, and refers here to his own sons. Professor Roth (under the word *av*) regards Indra as the speaker. May it not be Sudās?

⁹¹ This is the interpretation of this clause suggested by Professor Aufrecht, who thinks Vaiṣanta is probably the name of a river.

⁹² According to Sūyana, another king who was sacrificing at the same time as Sudās.

⁹³ See verses 6-8 of R.V. vii. 83, to be next quoted.

4. Through gratification caused by the prayer of your fathers, o men, ye do not obstruct the undecaying axle(?), since at (the recitation of the) *Sākvarī* verses⁹⁴ with a loud voice ye have infused energy into Indra, o Vasishthas. 5. Distressed, when surrounded in the fight of the ten kings, they looked up, like thirsty men, to the sky. Indra heard Vasishtha when he uttered praise, and opened up a wide space for the *Tritsus*.⁹⁵ 6. Like staves for driving cattle, the contemptible Bharatas were lopped all round. Vasishtha marched in front, and then the tribes of the *Tritsus* were deployed. 7. Three deities create a fertilizing fluid in the worlds. Three are the noble creatures, whom light precedes. Three fires attend the dawn.⁹⁶ All these the Vasishthas know. 8. Their lustre is like the full radiance of the sun; their greatness is like the depth of the ocean; like the swiftness of the wind, your hymn, o Vasishthas, can be followed by no one else. 9. By the intuitions of their heart they seek out the mystery with a thousand branches. Weaving the envelopment stretched out by Yama, the Vasishthas sat down by the Apsaras. 10. When Mitra and Varuna saw thee quitting the flame of the lightning, that was thy birth; and thou hadst one (other birth), o Vasishtha, when Agastya brought thee to the people. 11. And thou art also a son of Mitra and Varuna, o Vasishtha, born, o priest, from the soul of Urvaśi. All the gods placed thee—a drop which fell through divine contemplation—in the vessel. 12. He, the intelligent, knowing both (worlds?), with a thousand gifts, or with gifts—he who was to weave the envelopment stretched out by Yama—he, Vasishtha, was born of the Apsarus. 13. They, two (Mitra and Varuna?), born at the sacrifice, and impelled by adorations, dropped into the jar the same amount of seed. From the

⁹⁴ See R.V. x. 71, 11, above, p. 256.

⁹⁵ This is evidently the name of the tribe which the Vasishthas favoured, and to which they themselves must have belonged. See vii. 83, 4. The Bharatas in the next verse appear to be the hostile tribe.

⁹⁶ In explanation of this Sāyaṇa quotes a passage from the Sūtyāyana Brahmana, as follows: "Trayah kriṇanti bhuvaneshu retah" ity *Agnih prithiryāṁ retah kriṇoti Vāyur antarikṣhe Ādityo divi | tisrah projaḥ ūryyāḥ jyotir-agrāḥ*" iti *Vasavo Rudrāḥ Ādityāḥ tūsaṁ jyotiḥ yad aśvā Ādityāḥ | trayo gharṇāsaḥ ushasām suhantaḥ*" ity *Agnir Ushasām sachate Vāyur Ushasām sachate Ādityāḥ Ushasām sachate | (1)* "Agni produces a fertilizing fluid on the earth, Vāyu in the air, the Sun in the sky. (2) The 'three noble creatures' are the Vasus, Rudras, and Adityas. The Sun is their light. (3) Agni, Vāyu, and the Sun each attend the Dawn."

midst of that arose Māna (Agastya?); and from that they say that the rishi Vasishṭha sprang.”⁹⁷

There is another hymn (R.V. vii. 18) which relates to the connection between Vasishṭha and Sudās (verses 4, 5, 21–25) and the conflict between the latter and the Tritsus with their enemies (verses 6–18); but as it is long and obscure I shall content myself with quoting a few verses.⁹⁸

R.V. vii. 18, 4. *Dhenuñ na trā suyarase dudhukshann upa brahmāni
sasrije Vasishṭhal | tvām id me gopatiñ viśvah āha ā naḥ Indraḥ sumatiñ
gantu achha | 5. Arṇāñsi chit paprathānā Sudāse Indro gādhāni*

⁹⁷ Whatever may be the sense of verses 11 and 13, the Nirukta states plainly enough v. 13; *Tasyāñ darśanād Mitrā-v. runayoh retas chaskanda | tad-abhivādīny eshū rig bhavati |* “On seeing her (Urvasi) the seed of Mitra and Varuna fell from them. To this the following verse (R.V. vii. 33, 11) refers.” And Sāyaṇa on the same verse quotes a passage from the Brihaddevatā: *Taylor aditynyoh sattre drishṭvā : psarasam Urvasīm | retas chaskanda tat kumbhe nyapatañ vīsatīvara | tenaica tu muhūrttena vīryavantau taposvinau | Agastyaś cha Vasishṭhas cha tatrarsih sambahū-
vatuh | bahudhā patitañ retaḥ kalasē cha jale sthale | sthale Vasishṭhas tu muniḥ sambab-
hūvārshi-sattamaḥ | kumbhe tv Agastyah sambhūto jale matsyo mahādyutih | udīyāya
tato 'gastyo samyā-mātroc mahātupāḥ | mīnena sammito yasmūt tasmād Mānyāḥ
ihochyati | yadvā kumbhād rishir jātāh kumbhenāpi hi mīyate | kumbhāt ity abhidhā-
nānī cha parīmāṇasya lakṣhyate | tato 'psu grihyamāṇāsu Vasishṭhal pushkare sthi-
tuḥ | sarvataḥ pushkare tañ hi vīśe derāḥ adhārāyan |* “When these two Adityas (Mitra and Varuna) beheld the Apsaras Urvasi at a sacrifice their seed fell from them into the sacrificial jar called *vīsatīvara*. At that very moment the two energetic and austere rishis Agastya and Vasishṭha were produced there. The seed fell on many places, into the jar, into water, and on the ground. The muni Vasishṭha, most excellent of rishis, was produced on the ground; while Agastya was born in the jar, a fish of great lustre. The austere Agastya sprang thence of the size of a *samyā* (*i.e.* the pin of a yoke; see Wilson, *s.v.*, and Professor Roth, *s.v. māna*). Since he was measured by a certain standard (*māna*) he is called the ‘measurable’ (*mānya*). Or, the rishi, having sprung from a jar (*kumbha*), is also measured by a jar, as the word *kumbha* is also designated as the name of a measure. Then when the waters were taken, Vasishṭha remained in the vessel (*pushkara*); for all the gods held him in it on all sides.” In his Illustrations of the Nirukta, p. 64, Prof. Roth speaks of the verses of the hymn which relate to Vasishṭha’s origin as being a more modern addition to an older composition, and as describing the miraculous birth of the sage in the taste and style of the Epic mythology. Professor Max Müller (Oxford Essays for 1856, pp. 61 f.) says that Vasishṭha is a name of the Sun; and that the ancient poet is also “called the son of Mitra and Varuna, night and day, an expression which has a meaning only in regard to Vasishṭha, the sun; and as the sun is frequently called the offspring of the dawn, Vasishṭha, the poet, is said to owe his birth to Urvasi” (whom Müller identifies with Ushas). For M. Langlois’s view of the passage, see his French version of the R.V. vol. iii. pp. 79 f. and his note, p. 234.

⁹⁸ See Roth’s Litt. u. Gesch. des Weda, pp. 87 ff. where it is translated into German.

akrinot supārū | 21. Pra ye gṛihād anamadus tvāyā Parāśarāḥ Satyātūr Vasishṭhaḥ | na te bhojasya sakhyam mrishanta adha sūribhyah sudinā vi uchhān | 22. Dre naptur Devavataḥ śate gor dvā rathā vadhumantā Sudāsaḥ | arhann Agne Paijavanasya dānam hotera sadma pari emi rebhan | 23. Chatvāro mā Paijavanasya dānāḥ smad-dishṭayaḥ kriṣanino nireke | rījrāśo mā prithivishṭhāḥ Sudāsas tokāñ tokāya śrārāse vahanti | 24. Yasya śravo rodasi antar urū śīrshne śīrshne vibabhāja vibhaktā | sapta id Indram na srarato gṛīṇanti ni Yudhyāmadhim asiśād abhīkṣe | īmāñ naro Marutāḥ saśchatānu Diro-dāsāñ na pitaram Sudāsaḥ | avishṭana Paijavanasya ketāñ dūnāśāñ kshattram ajarañ duroyu |

"4. Seeking to milk thee (Indra), like a cow in a rich meadow, Vasishtha sent forth his prayers to thee; for every one tells me that thou art a lord of cows; may Indra come to our hymn. 5. However the waters swelled, Indra made them shallow and fordable to Sudās. 21. Parāśara,⁹⁹ Satyātu, and Vasishtha, devoted to thee, who from indifference have left their home, have not forgotten the friendship of thee the bountiful;—therefore let prosperous days dawn for these sages. 22. Earning two hundred cows and two chariots with mares, the gift of Sudās the son of Pijavana, and grandson of Devavat,¹⁰⁰ I walk round the house, o Agni, uttering praises, like a hotṛi priest. 23. The four brown steeds, bestowed by Sudās the son of Pijavana, vigorous, decked with pearls, standing on the ground, carry me on securely to renown from generation to generation. 24. That donor, whose fame pervades both worlds, has distributed gifts to every person. They praise him as the seven rivers¹⁰¹ praise Indra; he has slain Yudhyāmadhi in battle. 25. Befriend him (Sudās), ye heroic Maruts, as

⁹⁹ *Parāśara* is said in Nir. vi. 30, which refers to this passage, to have been a son of Vasishtha born in his old age (*Parāśarāḥ parūśīrnasya Vasishṭhasya sthavirasya jajne*); or he was a son of Sakti and grandson of Vasishtha (Roth *s.v.*)

¹⁰⁰ *Devavat* is said by Sūyana to be a proper name. He may be the same as Divodāsa in verse 25. Or Divodāsa may be the father, and Pijavana and Devavat among the forefathers of Sudās. In the Vishṇu Purāṇa Sarvakāma is said to have been the father and Rituparna the grandfather of Sudāsa, Wilson's V.P. 4to. ed. p. 380. At p 454 f. a Sudāsa is mentioned who was son of Chyavana, grandson of Mitrayu and great-grandson of Divodāsa.

¹⁰¹ Professor Roth (Litt. u. Gesch. des Weda, p. 100) compares R.V. i. 102, 2, *asya śravo nadyāḥ sapta bibhrati*, "the seven rivers exalt his (Indra's) renown." These rivers are, as Roth explains, the streams freed by Indra from Vṛittra's power.

ye did Divodāsa the (fore)father of Sudās; fulfil the desire of the son of Pijavana (by granting him) imperishable, undecaying power, worthy of reverence (?).”

Although the Vasishthas are not named in the next hymn, it must refer to the same persons and circumstances as are alluded to in the first portion of R.V. vii. 33, quoted above.

R.V. vii. 83, 1. *Yuvāñ narā paśyamānāsaḥ āpyam prāchā gavyantaḥ pṛithu-parśavo yayuḥ | dāsā cha vṛitṛā hatam āryāñi cha Sudāsam Indrā-varuṇā 'vasū'vatam |* 2. *Yatra naraḥ samayante kṛita-dhvajo yasminn ājā bharati kinchana priyam | yatra bhayante bhurānā svardriśas tatra naḥ Indrā-varuṇā 'dhi rochatam |* 3. *Sam bhūmyāḥ antāḥ dhicasirāḥ adrikshata Indrā-varuṇā dīri ghoshaḥ āruhat | asthur janānām upa mām arātayo arrāg arāsā harana-śrutū āgatam |* 4. *Indrā-varuṇā vadhanābhīr aprati Bhedāñ vanvantā pra Sudāsam āratam | brahmāñi eshāñ śrinutañ havīmani satyā Trītsūnām abhavat purohitīḥ |* 5. *Indrā-varuṇāv abhi ā tapanti mā aghāni aryo vanushām arātayaḥ | yuvāñ hi vasraḥ ubhayasya rājatho adha sma no aratam pārye dīri |* 6. *Yuvāñ hante ubhayāsaḥ ājishu Indram cha vasro Varuṇām cha sātaye | yatra rājabhir daśabhir nibādhitam pra Sudāsam āvatañ Trītsubhiḥ saha |* 7. *Daśa rājānah samitāḥ ayajyarah Sudāsam Indrā-varuṇā na yuyudhuh | satyā nrinām adma-sadām upastutir devāḥ eshām abhavan devāhūtishu |* 8. *Dāśarājne paryattāya viśrataḥ Sudāse Indra-varuṇāv aśikshatam | svityancho yatra namasā kaparddino dhiyā dhivanto asapanta Trītsavah |*

“ Looking to you, o heroes, to your friendship, the men with broad axes advanced to fight. Slay our Dūsa and our Arya enemies, and deliver Sudās by your succour, o Indra and Varuṇa. 2. In the battle where men clash with elevated banners, where something which we desire¹⁰² is to be found, where all beings and creatures tremble, there, o Indra and Varuṇa, take our part. 3. The ends of the earth were seen to be darkened, o Indra and Varuṇa, a shout ascended to the sky; the foes of my warriors came close up to me; come hither with your help, ye hearers of our invocations. 4. Indra and Varuṇa, unequalled with your weapons, ye have slain Bheda, and delivered Sudās; ye heard the prayers of these men in their invocation; the priestly agency

¹⁰² Sāyana divides the *kinchana* of the Pada-text into *kincha na*, which gives the sense “ where nothing is desired, but everything is difficult.”

of the Tr̄itsus¹⁰³ was efficacious. 5. O Indra and Varuṇa, the injurious acts of the enemy, the hostilities of the murderous, afflict me on every side. Ye are lords of the resources of both worlds: protect us therefore (where ye live) in the remotest heavens. 6. Both parties¹⁰⁴ invoke you, both Indra and Varuṇa, in the battles, in order that ye may bestow riches. (They did so in the fight) in which ye delivered Sudās—when harassed by the ten kings—together with the Tr̄itsus. 7. The ten kings, who were no sacrificers, united, did not vanquish Sudās, o Indra and Varuṇa. The praises of the men who officiated at the sacrifice were effectual; the gods were present at their invocations. 8. Ye, o Indra and Varuṇa, granted succour to Sudās, hemmed in on every side in the battle of the ten kings,¹⁰⁵ where the white-robed Tr̄itsus,¹⁰⁶ with hair-knots, reverentially praying, adored you with a hymn."

From these hymns it appears that Vasishṭha, or a Vasishṭha and his family were the priests of king Sudās (vii. 18, 4 f., 21 ff.; vii. 33, 3 f.); that, in their own opinion, these priests were the objects of Indra's preference (vii. 33, 2), and had by the efficacy of their intercessions been the instruments of the victory gained by Sudās over his enemies in the battle of the ten kings. It seems also to result from some of the verses (vii. 33, 6; vii. 83, 4, 6; and vii. 33, 1, compared with vii. 83, 8) that both the king and the priests belonged to the tribe of the Tr̄itsus.¹⁰⁷ Professor Roth remarks that in none of the hymns which

¹⁰³ Compare verses 7 and 8. Sāyana, however, translates the clause differently: "The act of the Tr̄itsus for whom I sacrificed, and who put me forward as their priest, was effectual: my priestly function on their behalf was successful" (*Tr̄itsūnām etat-sanjnānām mama yūjyānām purohātir mama purodhānam satyā satya-phalam abhārat | teshu yad mama paurohityām tat saphalām jātam |*)

¹⁰⁴ According to Sāyana the two parties were Sudās and the Tr̄itsus his allies (*ubhaya-vidhāḥ Sudāḥ-sanjno rājā tat-sahāya-bhūtāś Tr̄itsavaś cha eraū dvi-prakārūḥ janūḥ*). It might have been supposed that one of the parties meant was the hostile kings; but they are said in the next verse to be *ayajyārah*, "persons who did not sacrifice to the gods."

¹⁰⁵ *Dāśarājne*. This word is explained by Sāyana in his note on vii. 33, 3, *dāśabhiḥ rājabhiḥ saha yuddhe praeſtitte*, "battle having been joined with ten kings." In the verse before us he says "the lengthening of the first syllable is a Vedic peculiarity, and that the case-ending is altered, and that the word merely means 'by the ten kings'" (*dāśa-iabdaśo chhāndaso dirghaḥ | vibhakti-vyatayayaḥ | dāśabhiḥ rājabhiḥ . . . pariveshītāya*).

¹⁰⁶ Here Sāyana says the Tr̄itsus are "the priests so called who were *Vasiṣṭha*'s disciples" (*Tr̄itsavaś Vasishṭha-īshyāḥ etat-sanjnāḥ riśvijāḥ*).

¹⁰⁷ See Roth, Litt. u. Gesch. des Woda, p. 120.

he quotes is any allusion made to the Vasishthas being members of any particular caste; but that their connection with Sudās is ascribed to their knowledge of the gods, and their unequalled power of invocation (vii. 33, 7 f.)

In the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa, viii. 21, we have another testimony to the connection of Vasishtha with Sudās, as he is there stated to have “consecrated Sudās son of Pijavana by a great inauguration similar to Indra’s ;¹⁰⁸ in consequence of which Sudās went round the earth in every direction conquering, and performed an aśvamedha sacrifice” (*etena ha vai aindrena mahābhishhekena Vasishthah Sudāsam Paijaranam abhishishecha | tasmād u Sudāḥ Paijaranah samantaḥ survataḥ prithivīṁ jayan pariyāya aśvēna cha medhyena ījे*).

The following passages refer to Vasishtha having received a revelation from the god Varuṇa, or to his being the object of that god’s special favour :

vii. 87, 4. *Uvācha me Varuno medhirāya triḥ sapta nāma aghnyā bībhartti | vidrān padasya guhyā na rochad yugāya vīprah upāraya śikshan |*

“Varuṇa has declared to me¹⁰⁹ who am intelligent, ‘The Cow¹¹⁰ possesses thrice seven names. The wise god, though he knows them, has not revealed the mysteries of (her) place, which he desires to grant to a future generation.’”

R.V. vii. 88, 3. *Ā yad ruhāra Varunaś cha nāvam pra yat samudram īrayāva madhyam | adhi yad apām snubhiś charāra pra pra īnkhe īnhayārahai śubhe kam |* 4. *Vasishthām ha Varuno nāri ā adhād rishīm charāra svapāḥ mahobhiḥ | stotāraṁ vīprah sudinatre ahnām yād nu dyāvas tatanañ yād ushasaḥ |* 5. *Kva tyāni nau sakhyā babbūruḥ sachāvahे yad*

¹⁰⁸ Colebrooke’s Misc. Essays, i. 40.

¹⁰⁹ Vasishtha is not named in this hymn, but he is its traditional author.

¹¹⁰ Sūyāna says that either (1) Vūch is here meant under the figure of a cow having the names of 21 metres, the Gūyatṛī, etc., attached to her breast, throat, and head, or (2) that Vūch in the form of the Veda holds the names of 21 sacrifices; but that (3) another authority says the earth is meant, which (in the Nighantu, i. 1) has 21 names, *go*, *gmā*, *jnā*, etc. (*Vāg atra gaur uchyate | sā cha urasi kanṭhe īrasi cha baddhāni gūyatry-ādīni sapta chhandasām nāmāni bibhartti | yadvā vedātmikā vāg ekaviṁśati-sāṁsthānām yañnānām nāmāni bibhartti | dhārayati | aparaḥ āha “gauḥ prithivī | tasyāś cha ‘gaur gmā jnā’ iti paṭhitāny ekaviṁśati-nāmāni” iti*). I have, in translating the second clause of the verse, followed for the most part a rendering suggested by Professor Aufrecht.

*avrikam purā chit | brihantam mānam Varuṇa svadhāraḥ sahasra-drāraṁ
jagama grihaṁ te | 6. Yaḥ āpir nityo Varuṇa priyāḥ san trām āgāmī
krinavat sakhā te | mā te enasvanto yakṣin bhujema yandhi sma vīraḥ
stutave varūtham |*

"When Varuṇa and I embark on the boat, when we propel it into the midst of the ocean, when we advance over the surface of the waters, may we rock upon the undulating element till we become brilliant. 4. Varuṇa took Vasishṭha into the boat; by his mighty acts working skilfully he (Varuṇa) has made him a rishi; the wise (god has made) him an utterer of praises in an auspicious time, that his days and dawns may be prolonged."¹¹¹ 5. Where are (now) our friendships, the tranquility which we enjoyed of old? We have come, o self-sustaining Varuṇa, to thy vast abode, to thy house with a thousand gates. 6. Whatever friend of thine, being a kinsman constant and beloved, may commit offences against thee;—may we not, though sinful, suffer (punishment), o adorable being; do thou, o wise god, grant us protection."

R.V. vii. 86 is a sort of penitential hymn in which Vasishṭha refers to the anger of Varuṇa against his old friend (verse 4) and entreats forgiveness of his offences. This hymn, which appears to be an earnest and genuine effusion of natural feeling, is translated in Professor Müller's Anc. Sansk. Lit. p. 540.

The passage which follows is part of a long hymn, consisting chiefly of imprecations directed against Rākshases and Yātudhānas, and said in the Brihaddevatā (as quoted by Sāyana in his introductory remarks) to have "been 'seen' by the rishi (Vasishṭha) when he was overwhelmed with grief and anger for the loss of his hundred sons who had been slain by the sons of Sudās" (*rishiḥ dadarśa raksho-ghnam puttra-śoka-pariplutāḥ | hate puttra-śate kruddhah Saudāsair duḥkhitas tadā*). I shall cite only the verses in which Vasishṭha repels the imputation (by whomsoever it may have been made) that he was a demon (Rakshas or Yātudhana).

R.V. vii. 104, 12. *Surijñānaṁ ohikitushe janāya sach cha asach cha
vachasi paspridhāte | taylor yat satyaṁ yatarad riṣiyas tad it Somo arati
hanti asat | 13. Na vai u Somo vṛijināṁ hinoti na kshattriyam mithuyā*

¹¹¹ Professor Aufrecht renders the last clause, "As long as days and dawns shall continue."

*dhārayantam | hanti raksho hanti asad vadantam ubhāv Indrasya prasitau
śayāte | 14. Yadi vā aham anrita-devah āsa moghaṁ vā devān apि ūhe
Agne | kim asmabhyām Jātavedo hrīñshe droghavāchas te nirritihām
sachantām | 15. Adya muriya yadi yātudhāno asmi yadi vā āyus tatapa
pūrushasya | adha sa vīrair daśabhir vi yuyāḥ yo mā moghaṁ “Yātu-
dhāna” ity āha | 16. Yo mā ayātum “yātudhāna” ity āha yo vā
rakshāḥ “śuchir asmi” ity āha | Indras tañ hantu mahatā radhena vi-
vasya jantor adhamas padishṭa |*

“The intelligent man is well able to discriminate (when) true and false words contend together. Soma favours that one of them which is true and right, and annihilates falsehood. 13. Soma does not prosper the wicked, nor the man who wields power unjustly. He slays the Rakshas; he slays the liar: they both lie (bound) in the fetters of Indra. 14. If I were either a follower of false gods, or if I erroneously conceived of the gods, o Agni:—Why, o Jātavedas, art thou incensed against us? Let injurious speakers fall into thy destruction. 15. May I die this very day, if I be a Yātudhāna, or if I have destroyed any man's life. May he be severed from his ten sons who falsely says to me, ‘o Yātudhāna.’ 16. He who says to me, who am no Yātu, ‘o Yātudhāna,’ or who (being himself) a Rakshas, says, ‘I am pure,—may Indra smite him with his great weapon; may he sink down the lowest of all creatures.

In elucidation of this passage Sāyana quotes the following lines:

*Hatrā putra-śatam pūrraṇ Vasiṣṭhasya mahātmanah | Vasiṣṭham
“rākshaso ‘si tvam” Vasiṣṭhañ rūpam āsthitaḥ | “aham Vasiṣṭhaḥ”
ity evaṁ jighāṁsuḥ rākshaso ‘bravīt | atrottarāḥ rico dṛiṣṭāḥ Vasiṣ-
theneti naḥ śrutam |*

“Having slain the hundred sons of the great Vasiṣṭha, a murderous Rākshasa, assuming the form of that rishi, formerly said to him, ‘Thou art a Rākshasa, and I am Vasiṣṭha.’ In allusion to this the latter verses were seen by Vasiṣṭha, as we have heard.”

We may, however, safely dismiss this explanation resting on fabulous grounds.

The verses may, as Professor Max Müller supposes,¹¹² have arisen out

¹¹² “Vasiṣṭha himself, the very type of the Arian Brahman, when in feud with Viśvāmitra, is called not only an enemy, but a ‘Yātudhāna,’ and other names which in common parlance are only bestowed on barbarian savages and evil spirits. We

of Vasishṭha's contest with Viśvāmitra, and it may have been the latter personage who brought these charges of heresy, and of murderous and demoniacal character against his rival.¹¹³

Allusion is made both in the Taittirīya Sanhitā and in the Kaushītakī Brāhmaṇa to the slaughter of a son of Vasishṭha by the sons or descendants of Sudās. The former work states, Ashṭaka vii. (p. 47 of the India Office MS. No. 1702):

Vasishṭho hataputro 'kāmayata "rindeya prajām abhi Saudāsān bhareyam" iti | sa etam ekasmānnapanchāśam apaśyat tam āharat tenāyajata | tato rai so 'rindata prajām abhi Saudāsān abharat |

"Vasishṭha, when his son had been slain, desired, 'May I obtain offspring; may I overcome the Saudāsas.' He beheld this *ekasmānnapanchāśa* (?), he took it, and sacrificed with it. In consequence he obtained offspring, and overcame the Saudāsas." *दुर्जि ... गोलं*

The passage of the Kaushītakī Brāhmaṇa, 4th adhyāya, as quoted by Professor Weber (Ind. St. ii. 299) is very similar:

Vasishṭho 'kāmayata hata-putrah "prajāyeya prajāyā paśubhir abhi Saudāsān bhareyam" iti | sa etām yajna-kratūm apaśyad Vasishṭha-yajnam tena iṣṭrā abhi Saudāsān abharat |

"Vasishṭha, when his son had been slain, desired, 'May I be fruitful in offspring and cattle, and overcome the Saudāsas.' He beheld this form of offering, the Vasishṭha-sacrifice; and having performed it, he overcame the Saudāsas."

In his introduction to Rig-veda, vii. 32, Sūyaṇa has the following notice from the Anukramanikā :

"Saudāsair agnau prakshipyamāṇah Saktir antyam pragātham ālebhe so 'rdharche ukte 'dhyata | tam putroktaṁ Vasishṭhaḥ samāpayata" iti Sātyāyanakam | "Vasishṭhasya era hata-putrasya īrsham" iti Tāndakam |

"The Sātyayana Brāhmaṇa says that 'Sakti (son of Vasishṭha), when being thrown into the fire by the Saudāsas, received (by inspiration) the concluding pragātha of the hymn. He was burnt after he had spoken half a rich; and Vasishṭha completed what his son was

have still the very hymn in which Vasishṭha deprecates such charges with powerful indignation." Prof. Müller then quotes verses 14–16 of the hymn before us ("Last Results of the Turanian Researches," in Bunsen's "Outlines of the Philosophy of Univ. History," i. 344.

¹¹³ See my article "On the relations of the priests to the other classes of Indian society in the Vedic age," in the Journal Roy. As. Soc. for 1866, pp. 295 ff.

uttering. The Tāṇḍaka says that ‘it was Vasishṭha himself who spoke the whole when his son was slain.’”

The words supposed to have been spoken by Sakti, viz. “O Indra, grant to us strength as a father to his sons” (*Indra kratūm naḥ ā bhara pitā putrebhyo yathā*) do not seem to be appropriate to the situation in which he is said to have been placed; and nothing in the hymn appears to allude to any circumstances of the kind imagined in the two Brāhmaṇas.

Manu says of Vasishṭha (viii. 110): *Maharshibhiś cha devaiś cha kāryyārthaṁ śapathāḥ kṛtāḥ | Vasishṭhaś chāpi śapathaṁ śepe Paiyavane nripe |* “Great rishis and gods too have taken oaths for particular objects. Vasishṭha also swore an oath to king Paiyavana.” The occasion on which this was done is stated by the Commentator Kulluka : *Vasishṭho ’py anena puttra-śatam bhakshitam iti Viśvāmitreṇa ākrushṭo svā-pariśuddhaye Piyavanāpatye Sudāmnī rājani śapathaṁ chakāra |* “Vasishṭha being angrily accused by Viśvāmitra of having eaten (his) hundred sons, took an oath before king Sudāman (Sudās, no doubt, is meant) the son of Paiyavana in order to clear himself.” This seems to refer to the same story which is alluded to in the passage quoted by the Commentator on Rig-veda vii. 104, 12.

In the Rāmāyaṇa, i. 55, 5 f., a hundred sons of Viśvāmitra are said to have been burnt up by the blast of Vasishṭha’s mouth when they rushed upon him armed with various weapons (*Viśvāmitra-sutānān tu śatān nānā-vidhāyudham | abhyadhārat susankruddhaṁ Vasishṭham japatān varam | hunkarenaiva tān sarrān nirdadāha mahān ṛishiḥ*).

Vasishṭha is also mentioned in Rig-veda, i. 112, 9, as having received succour from the Aśvins (—*Vasishṭham yābhīr ajarāv ajinvatam*).

Vasishṭha, or the Vasishṭhas, are also referred to by name in the following verses of the seventh Mandala of the Rig-veda: 7, 7; 9, 6; 12, 3; 23, 1, 6; 26, 5; 37, 4; 39, 7; 42, 6; 59, 3; 70, 6; 73, 3; 76, 6, 7; 77, 6; 80, 1; 90, 7; 95, 6; 96, 1, 3; but as no information is derivable from these texts, except that the persons alluded to were the authors or reciters of the hymns, it is needless to quote them.¹¹⁴

¹¹⁴ Another verse of a hymn in which the author is not referred to (vii. 72, 2) is as follows: *Ā no devebhir upa yātam arvāk sajoshashā nāsatyā rathena | yuvor hi naḥ sakhyā pitryāṇī samāno bandhur uta tasya vittam |* “Come near to us, Aśvina, on the same car with the gods: for we have ancestral friendships with you, a common relation; do ye recognize it.” Although this has probably no mythological

In the Atharva-veda, iv. 29, 3 and 5, Vasishtha and Viśvāmitra are mentioned among other personages, Angiras, Agasti, Jamadagni, Atri, Kaśyapa, Bharadvāja, Gavishthira, and Kutsa, as being succoured by Mitra and Varuṇa (. . . . yāvā Angirasam aratho yār Agastim Mitrā-Va-
runā Jamadagnim Atrim | yau Kaśyapam aratho yau Vasishtham
yau Bharadvājam aratho yau Garishthirām Viśrāmitram Varuṇa Mitra
& Kutsam). And in the same Veda, xviii. 3, 15 f., they are invoked as deliverers: Viśrāmitro 'yam Jamadagnir Atrir arantu nah Kaśyapo Vā-
maderah | Viśrāmitra Jamadagne Vasishtha Bharadvāja Gotama Vā-
madera . . . | “15. May this Viśvāmitra, may Jamadagni, Atri, Kaśyapa,
Vāmadeva preserve us. 16. O Viśvāmitra, o Jamadagni, o Vasishtha, o
Bharadvāja, o Gotama, o Vāsmadeva.” The second passage at least
must be a good deal more recent than the most of the hymns of the
Rig-veda.

Sudās is mentioned in other parts of the Rig-veda without any reference either to Vasishtha or to Viśvāmitra. In some cases his name is coupled with that of other kings or sages, which appears to shew that in some of these passages at least a person, and not a mere epithet, “the liberal man,” is denoted by the word Sudās.

R.V. i. 47, 6. (The traditional rishi is Praskaṇva.) *Sudāse dasrū rasu
bibhratā rathe priksho vahatam Āśvinā | rayīm samudrād uta rā diras-*
pari asme dhattam puru-spriham |

“O impetuous Āśvins, possessing wealth in your car, bring sustenance to Sudās. Send to us from the (aerial) ocean, or the sky, the riches which are much coveted.”

Sāyaṇa says the person here meant is “king Sudās, son of Pijavāna” (*Sudāse . . . rājne Pijarana-putrāya*).

i. 63, 7. (The rishi is Nodhas, of the family of Gotama.) *Traṁ ha
tyad Indra sapta yudhyan puro eajrin Purukutsāya darduh | barhir na*
yat Sudāse vrīlhā targ anho rājan tarirah Pūrare kah |

“Thou didst then, o thundering Indra, war against, and shatter, the seven cities for Purukutsa, when thou, o king, didst without effort hurl reference, Sāyaṇa explains it as follows: *Vivasvān Varuṇaś cha ubhāv api Kaśyapīd
Aditer jātāu | Vivasvān Āśvinor janako Varuṇo Vasishtharya ity evam samāna-ban-*
dhutvam | “Vivasvāt and Varuṇa were both sons of Kaśyapa and Aditi. Vivasvāt was the father of the Āśvins and Varuṇa of Vasishtha; such is the affinity.” Sāyaṇa then quotes the Brihaddevatā to prove the descent of the Āśvins from Vivasvāt. Compare II.V. x. 17, 1, 2, and Nirukta, xii. 10, 11.

away distress from Sudās like a bunch of grass, and bestow wealth on Pūru.¹¹⁵

i. 112, 19. (The rishi is Kutsa.) *yābhīr Sudāse īhathuh sude-ryāñ tābhīr u shu ītibhir Aśvinā gatam |*

“Come, o Aśvins, with those succours whereby ye brought glorious power to Sudās” [‘son of Pijavana’—Sāyana].¹¹⁶

The further texts which follow are all from the seventh Mandala, of, which the rishis, with scarcely any exception, are said to be Vasishṭha and his descendants:

vii. 19, 3. *Trañ dhrishno dhrishatā vitaharyam prāro viśvābhīr ītibhiḥ Sudāsam | pra Paurukutsim Trasadasyum ārah kshettrasātā vrittrahat-yeshu Pūrum |*

“Thou, o fierce Indra, hast impetuously protected Sudās, who offered oblations, with every kind of succour. Thou hast preserved Trasadasyu—the son of Purukutsa, and Pūru in his conquest of land and in his slaughter of enemies.”

vii. 20, 2. *Hantā Vṛittram Indrah śusuvānah prāvid nu vīro jari-tāram uti | karttā Sudāse aha rai u lokañ dātā rasu muhur u dāśushe bhūt |*

“Indra growing in force slays Vṛitra; the hero protects him who praises him; he makes room for Sudās [or the liberal sacrificer—*kal-yāna-dānāya yajamānāya*. Sāyana]; he gives riches repeatedly to his worshipper.”

vii. 25, 3. *Satañ te śiprinn ītayah Sudāse sahasrañ saṁsāh uta rātir astu | jahi vadhar vanusho martyasya asme dyumnam adhi ratnam cha dhehi |*

“Let a hundred succours come to Sudās, a thousand desirable (gifts) and prosperity. Destroy the weapon of the murderous. Confer renown and wealth on us.”

(Sāyana takes *sudās* here and in all the following citations to signify a “liberal man.”)

¹¹⁵ Professor Roth renders this passage differently in his Litt. u. Gesch. des Weda, p. 132; as does also Prof. Benfey, Orient und Occident, i. p. 590.

¹¹⁶ In R.V. i. 185, 9, we find the word *sudās* in the comparative degree *sudāstarā*, where it must have the sense of “very liberal”: *bhūri chid aryah sudāstarāya |* “(give the wealth) of my enemy, though it be abundant to (me who am) most liberal.” In v. 53, 2, the term *sudās* appears to be an adjective: *ā etān ratheśhu tasthuhāḥ kah śūrāva kathā yayuḥ | kasmāi sasruḥ sudāse anu āpayaḥ ilabhir vṛishṭayāḥ saha |* “Who has heard them (the Maruts) mounted on their cars, how they have gone? To what liberal man have they resorted as friends, (in the form of) showers with

vii. 32. 10. *Nakih Sudāso ratham pari āsa na riramat | Indro yasy avitā yasya Maruto gamat sa gomati vrāje |*

"No one can oppose or stop the chariot of Sudās. He whom Indra, whom the Maruts, protect, walks in a pasture filled with cattle."

vii. 53, 3 : *Uto hi vañ ratnadheyāni santi purūni dyāvā - prithivī Sudāse |*

"And ye, o Heaven and Earth, have many gifts of wealth for Sudās [or the liberal man]."

vii. 60, 8. *Yad gopārad Aditiḥ śarma bhadram Mitro yachhanti Varuṇāḥ Sudāse | tasminn ā tokam tanayaṁ dadhānāḥ mā karma derahelanaṁ turāsaḥ | 9. . . . pari dveshobhir Aryamā vrinaktu uruñ Sudāse vrishanau u lokam |*

"Since Aditi, Mitra, and Varuṇa afford secure protection to Sudās (or the liberal man), bestowing on him offspring;—may we not, o mighty deities, commit any offence against the gods. 9. . . . May Aryaman rid us of our enemies. (Grant) ye vigorous gods, a wide space to Sudās."

There is another passage, vii. 64, 3 (*brarad yathā naḥ ād ariḥ Sudāse*), to which I find it difficult to assign the proper sense.

Vasishṭha is referred to in the following passages of the Brāhmaṇas :

Kāthaka 37, 17.¹¹⁷ *Rishayo vai Indram pratyakshaṁ na apaśyām̄ tañ Vasishṭhāḥ era pratyasham apaśyat | so 'bibhed "itarebhyo mā rishi-bhyāḥ pravakshyati" iti¹¹⁸ | so 'bravīd "brāhmaṇāṁ te rakshyāmī yathā trat-purohitāḥ prajāḥ prajanishyante | atha mā itarebhyāḥ rishibhyo mā pravochāḥ" iti | tasmai etān stoma-bhāgān abravīt tato Vasishṭha-purohitāḥ prajāḥ prajāyanta |*

"The rishis did not behold Indra face to face; it was only Vasishṭha who so beheld him. He (Indra) was afraid lest Vasishṭha should reveal him to the other rishis; and said to him, 'I shall declare to thee a Brāhmaṇa in order that men may be born who shall take thee for their purohita. Do not reveal me to the other rishis.' Accordingly he declared to

¹¹⁷ Quoted by Professor Weber, *Indische Studien*, iii. 478.

¹¹⁸ The words from *so 'bibhet* down to *iti* are omitted in the Taitt. Sanhitā, iii. 5, 2, 2, where this passage is also found. Weber refers in Ind. St. ii. to another part of the Kāthaka, ii. 9, where Vasishṭha is alluded to as having "seen" a text beginning with the word *purovāta* during a time of drought ("Purovāta" *iti vishṭy-apeta būta-grāme Vasishṭha dadars'a).*

him these parts of the hymn. In consequence men were born who took Vasishtha for their purohita."

Professor Weber refers in the same place to a passage of the Satapatha Brähmana relating to the former superiority of Vasishtha's family in sacred knowledge and priestly functions :

xii. 6, 1, 38. *Vasishtha ha virājam vidānchakāra tām ha Indro 'bhida-dhyau | sa ha uvācha "rīshe virājam ha rai rettha tām me brūhi" iti | sa ha uvācha "kim mama tataḥ syād" iti | "sarvasya cha te yajnasya prāyaśchittim brūyām rūpām cha trā darśayeya" iti | sa ha uvācha "yad nu me sarvasya yajnasya prāyaśchittim brūyāḥ kim u sa syād yañ trañ rūpām darśayethāḥ" iti | jīva-srarga era asmāl lokāt preyād" iti | tato ha etām rishir Indrāya virājam uvācha "iyām rai virād" iti | tasmād yo 'syai bhūyishthaṁ labhate sa eva śreshtho bharati | atha ha etām Indraḥ rishaye prāyaśchittim uvācha agnihotrād agre ā mahataḥ ukthāt | tāḥ ha sma etāḥ purā ryāhritiḥ Vasishthāḥ era viduḥ | tasmād ha sma purā Vasishthāḥ era brahmā bharati |*

"Vasishtha was acquainted with the Virāj (a particular Vedic metre). Indra desired it; and said, 'O rishi, thou knowest the Virāj : declare it to me.' Vasishtha asked : 'What (advantage) will result to me from doing so?' (Indra replied) 'I shall both explain to thee the forms for rectifying anything amiss (*prāyaśchitti*)¹¹⁰ in the entire sacrifice, and show thee its form.' Vasishtha further enquired, 'If thou declarest to me the remedial rites for the entire sacrifice, what shall he become to whom thou wilt show the form?' (Indra answered) 'He shall ascend from this world to the heaven of life.' The rishi then declared this Virāj to Indra, saying, 'this is the Virāj.' Wherefore it is he who obtains the most of this (Virāj) that becomes the most eminent. Then Indra explained to the rishi this remedial formula, from the *agnihotra* to the great *uktha*. Formerly the Vasishthas alone knew these sacred syllables (*ryāhriti*). Hence in former times a Vasishtha only was a (priest of the kind called) *brāhmān*."

Professor Weber quotes also the following from the Kāthaka 32, 2. *Yām abrahmaṇāḥ prāśnāti sā skannā īhutis tasyā vai Vasishthāḥ era prāyaśchittām vidānchakāra |* "The oblation of which a person not a brähman partakes is vitiated. Vasishtha alone knew the remedial rite for such a case."

¹¹⁰ See above, p. 294.

In the Shaḍviṁśa Brāhmaṇa of the Sāma-veda, quoted by the same writer (Ibid. i. 39, and described p. 37, as possessing a distinctly formed Brahmanical character indicating a not very early date), we have the following passage :

i. 5. *Indro ha Viśvāmitrāya uktham urācha Vasishṭhāya brahma rāg
uktham ity eva Viśvāmitrāya mano brahma Vasishṭhāya | tad rai etad
Vasishṭham brahma | api ha erañridhaṁ vā Vasishṭham vā brahmānaṁ
kurvīta |*

" Indra declared the *uktha* (hymn) to Viśvāmitra, and the *brāhmān* (devotion) to Vasishṭha. The *uktha* is expression (*rāk*) ; that (he made known) to Viśvāmitra ; and the *brāhmān* is the soul ; that (he made known) to Vasishṭha. Hence this *brāhmān* (devotional power) belongs to the Vasishṭhas. Moreover, let either a person of this description, or a man of the family of Vasishṭha, be appointed a *brāhmān*-priest."

Here the superiority of Vasishṭha over Viśvāmitra is clearly asserted.¹²⁰

Vasishṭha is mentioned in the Mahābhārata, Santip. verses 11221 ff., as having communicated divine knowledge to king Janaka, and as referring (see verses 11232, 11347, 11409, 11418, 11461, etc.) to the Sāṅkhya and Yoga systems. The sage is thus characterized :

11221. *Vasishṭham śreshṭham āśinam rishinām bhāskara-dyutim | pa-
prachha Janako rājā jnānaṁ naiśreyasam param | param adhyātma-
kuśalam adhātma-gati-niśhayam | Maitravaruṇīm āśinam abhivādyā
kritānjalih |*

" King Janaka with joined hands saluted Vasishṭha the son of Mitra and Varuṇa, the highest and most excellent of rishis, resplendent as the sun, who was acquainted with the Supreme Spirit, who had ascertained the means of attaining to the Supreme Spirit ; and asked him after that highest knowledge which leads to final beatitude."

The doctrine which the saint imparts to the king he professes to have derived from the eternal Hiranyagarbha, i.e. Brahmā (*avāptam etad hi mayā sanātanād Hiranyagarbhad gadato narādhipa*).

I have already in former parts of this volume quoted passages from Manu, the Vishṇu Purāṇa, and the Mahābhārata, regarding the creation

¹²⁰ Professor Weber mentions (Ind. St. i. 53) that in the commentary of Rāma-kṛiṣṇa on the Pāraskara Gṛihya Sūtras allusion is made to the "Chhandogas who follow the Sūtras of the Vasishṭha family" *Vasishṭha-sūtrānuḥāriṇas' chhandoğāḥ*).

of Vasishtha. The first-named work (see above, p. 36) makes him one of ten Maharsis created by Manu Svāyambhuva in the first (or Svāyambhuva) Manvantara. The Vishṇu Purāṇa (p. 65) declares him to have been one of nine mind-born sons or Brahmās created by Brahmā in the Manvantara just mentioned. The same Purāṇa, however, iii. 1, 14, makes him also one of the seven rishis of the existing or Vaivasvata Manvantara, of which the son of Vivasvat, Śraddhadeva,¹²¹ is the Manu (*Vivasvataḥ suto vipra Śrāddhadevo mahādyutih | Manuḥ saṁvarttate dhīmān saṁprataṁ saptame'ntare Vasishthah Kūśyapo 'thātrir Jamadagniḥ sa-Gautamah | Viśvāmitra-Bharadvājau saptā saptarshayo 'bhavan*). The Mahābhārata (see p. 122) varies in its accounts, as in one place it does not include Vasishtha among Brahmā's six mind-born sons, whilst in a second passage it adds him to the number which is there raised to seven,¹²² and in a third text describes him as one of twenty-one Prajāpatis.

According to the Vishṇu Purāṇa, i. 10, 10, "Vasishtha had by his wife Ūrjjā" (one of the daughters of Daksha, and an allegorical personage, see V. P. i. 7, 18), seven sons called Rajas, Gātra, Ūrddhvabāhu, Savana, Anagha, Sutapas, and Sukra, who were all spotless rishis" (*Ūrjjayām cha Vasishthasya saptajāyanta rai sutāḥ | Rajo-Gātrordhhrabāhuścha Savanāś chānaghās tathā | Sutapāḥ Sukrah ily ete sarve saptarshayo 'malāḥ*). This must be understood as referring to the Svāyambhuva Manvantara. The Commentator says these sons were the seven rishis in the third Manvantara (*saptarshayas trītyamanvantare*). In the description of that period the V. P. merely says, without naming them (iii. 1, 9) that "the seven sons of Vasishtha were the seven rishis" (*Vasishtha-tanayās tatra saptā saptarshayo 'bhāraṇ*).¹²³ The Bhāgavata Purāṇa (iv. 1, 40 f.) gives the names of Vasishtha's sons differently; and also specifies Suktṛi and others as the offspring of a different marriage. (Compare Professor Wilson's notes on these passages of the Vishṇu Purāṇa.)

¹²¹ See above p. 209, note 66, and pp. 188 ff.

¹²² In another verse also (Ādip. 6638, which will be quoted below in a future section) he is said to be a mind-born son of Brahmā.

¹²³ Ūrja, who in the Vishṇu P. iii. 1, 6, is stated to be one of the rishis of the second or Svārochisha Manvantara, is said in the Vāyu P. to be a son of Vasishtha. See Professor Wilson's note (vol. iii. p. 3) on Vishṇu P. iii. 1, 6. The Vāyu P. also declares that one of the rishis in each of the fourth and fifth Manvantaras was a son of Vasishtha. (See Prof. Wilson's notes (vol. iii. pp. 8 and 11) on Vishṇu P. iii. 1.)

In Manu, ix. 22 f., it is said that "a wife acquires the qualities of the husband with whom she is duly united, as a river does when blended with the ocean. 23. Akshamālā, though of the lowest origin, became honourable through her union with Vasishṭha, as did also Sārangī through her marriage with Mandapāla" (*Yūdrīg-guṇena bhartṛā stri sañyujyate yathāvidhi | tūdrīg-guṇā sā bharati samudrenera nimnagā |* 23. *Akshamālā Vasishṭhenā sañyuktā 'dhama-yoni-jā | Sārangī Mandūpalena jagāmūbhyaḥ rāṇiyatām*).

Vasishṭha's wife receives the same name (*Vasishṭhas chākshamālayā*) in a verse of the Mahābhārata (Udyogaparvan, v. 3970);¹²⁴ but in two other passages of the same work, which will be adduced further on, she is called Arundhatī.¹²⁵

According to the Vishṇu Purāṇa (ii. 10, 8) Vasishṭha is one of the superintendents who in the month of Āshāḍha abide in the Sun's chariot, the others being Varuṇa, Rambhā, Sahajanyā, Huhu, Budha, and Rathachitra (*Vasishṭho Varuṇo Rambhā Sahajanyā Huhur Budhah | Rathachitras tathā S'ukre casanty Āśadha-sanjnīte*); whilst in the month of Phalguna (ibid. v. 16) the rival sage Viśvāmitra exercises the same function along with Vishṇu, Aśvatara, Rambhā, Sūryavarchas, Satyajit, and the Rākshasa Yajnāpetā (*śrūyatām chāpare sūrye phālgune nivasanti ye | Vishṇur Aśrataro Rambhā Sūryavarchāś cha Satyajit | Viśvāmitras tathā raksho Yajnāpeto mahātmanah*).

At the commencement of the Vāyu Purāṇa Vaśishṭha is characterized as being the most excellent of the rishis (*rishīnām cha varishṭhāya Vasishṭhāya mahātmane*).

It is stated in the Vishṇu Purāṇa, iii. 3, 9, that the Vedas have been already divided twenty-eight times in the course of the present or Vaivasvata Manvantara; and that this division has always taken place in the Dvāpara age of each system of four yugas. In the first Dvāpara Brahmā Svayambhū himself divided them; in the sixth Mṛityu (Death, or Yama); whilst in the eighth Dvāpara it was Vasishṭha who was the Vyāsa or divider (*Aśtāvīṁśatikṛitvo vai vedāḥ vyastāḥ maharshibhiḥ | Vaivasvate 'ntare tasmin dvāpareshu punaḥ punaḥ | 10. Dvāpare prathame vyastāḥ svayaṁ vedāḥ Svayambhuvā | 11. . . . Mṛityuḥ shashṭhe smṛitaḥ prabhuḥ | Vasishṭhas chāshṭamas smṛitaḥ*).

¹²⁴ Two lines below Haimavati is mentioned as the wife of Viśvāmitra (*Haimavatyā cha Kauśikāḥ*).

¹²⁵ In the St. Petersburg Lexicon *akshamālā* is taken for an epithet of Arundhatī.

was, as we have seen above, the family-priest of son of Ikshvāku, who was the son of Manu Vaivasvata, and the first prince of the solar race of kings; and in a passage of the Mahābhārata, Ādip. (6643 f.), which will be quoted in a future section, he is stated to have been the purohita of all the kings of that family. He is accordingly mentioned in Vishṇu Purāṇa, iv. 3, 18, as the religious teacher of Sagara, the thirty-seventh in descent from Ikshvāku (*tat-kula-guruñ Vasishṭham śaranāñ jagmuḥ*); and as conducting a sacrifice for Saudāsa or Mitrasaha, a descendant in the fiftieth generation of the same prince (Vishṇu P. iv. 4, 25, *Kālena gachhatā sa Saudāso yajnam ayajat | parinishṭhita-yajne cha āchāryye Vasishṭhe nishkrānte ityādi*).

Vasishṭha is also spoken of in the Rāmāyaṇa, ii. 110, 1 (see above, p. 115), and elsewhere (ii. 111, 1, etc.), as the priest of Rāma, who appears from the Vishṇu Purāṇa, (iv. 4, 40, and the preceding narrative), to have been a descendant of Ikshvāku in the sixty-first generation.¹²⁸

Vasishṭha, according to all these accounts, must have been possessed of a vitality altogether superhuman; for it does not appear that any of the accounts to which I have referred intend under the name of Vasishṭha to denote merely a person belonging to the family so called, but to represent the founder of the family himself as taking part in the transactions of many successive ages.

It is clear that Vasishṭha, although, as we shall see, he is frequently designated in post-vedic writings as a Brāhmaṇa, was, according to some other authorities I have quoted, not really such in any proper sense of the word, as in the accounts which are there given of his birth he is declared to have been either a mind-born son of Brahmā, or the son of Mitra, Varuṇa, and the Apsaras Urvaśī, or to have had some other supernatural origin.

SECT. VII.—*Viśvāmitra.*

Viśvāmitra is stated in the Anukramaṇikā, as quoted by Sāyaṇa at the commencement of the third Maṇḍala of the Rig-veda, to be the rishi, or “seer,” of that book of the collection: *Asya maṇḍala-drashṭu*

¹²⁸ Rūma's genealogy is also given in the Rāmāyaṇa, i. 70, and ii. 110, 6 ff., where, however, he is said to be only the thirty-third or thirty-fourth from Ikshvāku.

Viśvāmitraḥ rishiḥ | “The rishi of this (the first hymn) was Viśvāmitra, the ‘seer’ of the Maṇḍala.” This, however, is to be understood with some exceptions, as other persons, almost exclusively his descendants, are said to be the rishis of some of the hymns.

I shall quote such passages as refer, or are traditionally declared to refer, to Viśvāmitra or his family.

In reference to the thirty-third hymn the Nirukta states as follows :

ii. 24. *Tatra itihāsam āchakshate | Viśvāmitraḥ rishiḥ Sudāsaḥ Pajavanasya purohito babbūrā | sa vittām grihiṇī Vipāṭ-chhutudryoḥ sambhedam āyayau | anuyayur itare | sa Viśvāmitro nadīs tushṭāra “gādhāḥ bharata” iti |*

“They there relate a story. The rishi Viśvāmitra was the purohita of Sudās, the son of Pijavana. (Here the etymologies of the names Viśvāmitra, Sudās, and Pijavana are given.) Taking his property, he came to the confluence of the Vipāś and Sutudri (Sutlej); others followed. Viśvāmitra lauded the rivers (praying them to) become fordable.”

Sāyaṇa expands the legend a little as follows :

Purā kila Viśvāmitrah Pajavanasya Sudāso rajnah purohito babbūra | sa cha paurohityena labdha-dhanah sarram dhanam ādāya Vipāṭ-chhutudryoḥ sambhedam āyayau | anuyayur itare | athottitirshur Viśvāmitro ‘gādhā-jale te nadyau dṛishṭrā uttaranārtham ādyābhīs tisribhis tushṭāra |

“Formerly Viśvāmitra was the purohita of king Sudās, the son of Pijavana. He, having obtained wealth by means of his office as purohita, took the whole of it, and came to the confluence of the Vipāś and the Sutudri. Others followed. Being then desirous to cross, but perceiving that the waters of the rivers were not fordable, Viśvāmitra, with the view of getting across lauded them with the first three verses of the hymn.”

The hymn makes no allusion whatever to Sudās, but mentions the son of Kuśika (Viśvāmitra) and the Bharatas. It is not devoid of poetical beauty, and is as follows :

R.V. iii. 33, 1 (= Nirukta, ix. 39). *Pra parvatānām uṣatī upasthād asve iva rishite hāsamāne | gāvēva śubhre mātarā riḥāne Vipāṭ Chhutudri payasā javēti | 2. Indreshile prasavam bhikshamāne achha samudramān rathyā iva yāthāḥ | samārāne ūrmibhiḥ pinvamāne anyā vām anyām api sti śubhre | 3. Achha sindhum mātritamām ayāsam Vipāśam ūrvīm*

*subhagām agamma | vatsam iva mātarā saṁrihāne samānaṁ yonim anu
sancharanti | 4. Enā vayam payasā pinramānā anu yoniṁ deva-kritān
charantīḥ | na varttave prasavah sarga-taktaḥ kiṁyur vipro nadyo joharīti |
5 (= Nirukta, ii. 25). Ramadhvam me rachase somyāya ritavarīr upa
muhūrttam evaiḥ | pra sindhum achha brihatī manishā avasyur ahve
Kuśikasya sūnuḥ | 6 (= Nir. ii. 26). Indro asmān aradat vajra-bālur
apāhan Vṛittram paridhiṁ nadīnām | dero 'nayat Saritā supāni tasya
vayam prasare yāmaḥ ūrvīḥ | 7. Pravāchyām śaśradhā vīryām tad
Indrasya karma yad Ahiṁ viriśchat | vi vajreṇa parishado jaghāna
āyann āpo ayanam ichhamānāḥ | 8. Etad vacho jaritar mā 'pi mṛishṭāḥ
āyat te ghoshān uttarā yugāni | ukthesu kāro prati no jushasva mā no
ni kaḥ purushatra namas te | 9. O su svasārah kārace śrīnotā yayau yo
dūrād anasā rathena | ni su namadhrām bharata supārā adhoakshāḥ
sindhavaḥ srotyābhīḥ | 10 (= Nir. ii. 27). Ā te kūro śrīnavāma vachāṁsi
yayātha durād anasā rathena | ni te naṁsai pīpyānā iva yoshaḥ maryāya
iva kanyā śaśvachai te | 11. Yad anga trā Bharatāḥ santareyur garyan
grāmaḥ ishitāḥ Indra-jūtaḥ | arshād aha prasavah sarga-taktaḥ ā vo
vrīne sumatiṁ yajniyānām | 12. Atārishur Bharatāḥ garyavah sam
abhakta vīprah sumatiṁ nadīnām | pra pinradhrām ishayantīḥ surādhāḥ
ā vakshānāḥ priṇadhraṁ yāta śibham |*

" 1. (Viśvāmitra speaks): Hastening eagerly from the heart of the mountains, contending like two mares let loose, like two bright mother-cows licking¹²⁷ (each her calf), the Vipāś and Sutudrī rush onward with their waters. 2. Impelled by Indra, seeking a rapid course, ye move towards the ocean, as if mounted on a car. Running together, as ye do, swelling with your waves, the one of you joins the other, ye bright streams. 3. I have come to the most motherly stream; we have arrived at the broad and beautiful Vipāś; proceeding, both of them, like two mother(-cows) licking each her calf, to a common receptacle. 4. (The rivers reply): Here swelling with our waters we move forward to the receptacle fashioned by the gods (the ocean); our headlong course cannot be arrested. What does the sage desire that he invokes the rivers? 5. (Viśvāmitra says): Stay your course for a moment, ye pure streams, (yielding) to my pleasant words.¹²⁸ With a powerful prayer, I, the son

¹²⁷ Prof. Roth (Illustr. of Nirukta, p. 133) refers to vii. 2. 5 (*pūrvī śiśum na mātarā rihāne*) as a parallel passage.

¹²⁸ Prof. Roth (Litt. u. Gesch. des Weda, p. 103) renders: "Listen joyfully for a

of Kuśika,¹²⁹ desiring succour, invoke the river. 6. (The rivers answer): Indra, the wielder of the thunderbolt, has hollowed out our channels; he has smitten Ahi who hemmed in the streams. Savitri the skilful-handed has led us hither; by his impulse we flow on in our breadth. 7. For ever to be celebrated is the heroic deed of Indra, that he has split Vṛittra in sunder. He smote the obstructions with his thunderbolt; and the waters desiring an outlet went on their way. 8. Do not, o utterer of praises, forget this word, which future ages will re-echo to thee. In hymns, o bard, show us thy devotion; do not humble us before men; reverence be paid to thee. 9. (Viśvāmitra says): Listen, o sisters, to the bard who has come to you from afar with waggon and chariot. Sink down; become fordable; reach not up to our chariot-axles with your streams. 10. (The rivers answer): We shall listen to thy words, o bard; thou hast come from far with waggon and chariot. I will bow down to thee like a woman with full breast¹³⁰ (suckling her child); as a maid to a man will I throw myself open to thee. 11. (Viśvāmitra says): When the Bharatas¹³¹ that war-loving tribe, sent forward, impelled by Indra, have crossed thee, then thy headlong current shall hold on its course. I seek the favour of you the adorable. 12. The war-loving Bharatas have crossed; the Sage has obtained the favour of the rivers. Swell on impetuous, and fertilizing; fill your channels; roll rapidly."

The next quotation is from the fifty-third hymn of the same third Mandala, verses 6 ff.:

6. *Apāḥ somam astam Indra pra yāhi kalyāñir jāyā suranaṁ grihe*

moment to my amiable speech, ye streams rich in water; stay your progress;" and adds in a note: "I do not connect the particle *upa* with *ramadhvam*, as the Nirukta and Sāyana do; the fact that *upa* stands in another Pāda (quarter of the verse) requires a different explanation. The most of those interpretations of the Commentator which destroy the sense have their ultimate ground in the circumstance that he combines the words of different divisions of the verse; and any one may easily convince himself that every Pāda has commonly a separate sense, and is far more independent of the others than is the case in the śloka of later times." In his Lexicon Roth renders *ritavāri* in this passage by "regular," "equably flowing."

¹²⁹ "Kusīka was a king" (*Kusīko rājā babbūva*. Nir. ii. 25). Sāyana calls him a royal rishi.

¹³⁰ This is the sense assigned by Prof. Roth, s.v. *pī* to *pīpyānā*. Sāyana, following Yāska, ii. 27, gives the sense "suckling her child." Prof. Aufrecht considers that the word means "pregnant." In the next clause *sāivachai* is rendered in the manner suggested by Prof. A., who compares R.V. x. 18, 11, 12.

¹³¹ "The men of the family of Bharata, my people" (*Bharata-kula-jāḥ madiyūḥ serve.*" Sāyana).

te | yatra rathasya brihato nidhānam vimochanam vājino dakshināvat |
7. Ime bhujāḥ angiraso virūpāḥ divas putrāśo asurasya virāḥ | Viśvā-
mitrāya dadato maghāni sahasra-sāve pratirante āyuh | 8. Rūpāṁ rūpam
maghavā bobhavītī māyāḥ kṛinānās tanvam pari svām | trir yad divāḥ
pari muhūrttam āgāt svair mantrair anṛitupāḥ ṛtāvā | 9. Mahān riśhir
deva-jāḥ deva-jāto astabhnāt sindhum arṇavaṁ nrīchakshāḥ | Viśvāmitro
yad avahat Sudāsam apriyayata Kuśikebhir Indrah | 10. Haṁsāḥ iva
kṛinūtha ślokam adribhir madanto gīrbhir adhvare sute sachā | devebhir
viprāḥ riśhayo nrīchakshaso vi pibadhvām Kuśikāḥ somyam madhu |
11. Upa preta Kuśikāś chetayadhvam aśvaṁ rāye pra munchata Su-
dāsaḥ | rājā vṛittraṁ janghanat prāg apāg udag atha yajāte vare ā
pṛithivyāḥ | 12. Yaḥ ime rodasī ubhe aham Indram atushṭaram | Viśvā-
mitrasya rakshati brahma idam Bharataṁ janam | 13. Viśvāmitrāḥ
arāsata brahma Indrāya vajriṇe | karad in naḥ surādhasaḥ | 14 (=Nir.
vi. 32). Kim te kurvanti Kikāteshu gāvo nāśiraṁ duhre na tapanti ghar-
nam | ā no bhara Pramagandasya vedo Naichāśakham maghavan randhaya
naḥ | 15. Sasarparīr amatim bādhmānā brihad mimāya Jamadagni-
dattā | ā Sūryasya duhitā tatāna śravo dereshu om̄ritam ajuryam | 16.
Sasarparīr abharat tūyam ebhyo adhi śravaḥ panchajanyāśu kṛiṣṭishu |
sā pakshyā navyam āyur dadhānā yām me palasti-jamadagnayo daduḥ |
. 21. Indra utibhir bahulābhīr no adya yāchchhreshṭhābhīr ma-
ghavan śūra jīnva | yo no dreshṭi adharaḥ sas padishṭa yam u dvishmas
tam u prāṇo jahātu | 22. paraśūn chid vi tapati śimbalaṁ chid vi vri-
chatī | ukhā chid Indra yeshantī prayastā phenam asyati. 23. Na sāya-
kasya chikite janāśo lodhaṁ nayanti paśu manyamānāḥ | nāvājinaṁ
vājīnāḥ hāsayanti na gardabham puro aśvān nayanti | 24. Ime Indra
Bharatasya putrāḥ apapitvāṁ chikitur na prapitvam | hinvantī aśvam
arānaṁ na nityaṁ jyāvājam pari nayanti ājau |

“ 6. Thou hast drunk soma; depart, Indra, to thy abode: thou hast a handsome wife and pleasure in thy house. In whatever place thy great chariot rests, it is proper that the steed should be unyoked. 7. These bountiful Virūpas of the race of Angiras,¹³² heroic sons of the divine

¹³² Sūyāna says that the liberal men are the Kshattriyas, sons of Sudās, that *virūpāḥ* means their different priests of the race of Angiras, Medhūtīhi, and others, and that the sons of the sky are the Maruts, the sons of Rudra (*Ime yāgaṁ kurvānāḥ bhujāḥ Saudāsāḥ kshattriyāḥ teshāṁ yājakāḥ virūpāḥ nānārūpāḥ Medhātīhi-prabhṛitayo 'ngirasaḥ cha divo 'surasya devebhyo 'pi balavato Rudrasya putrāśo . . . Marutāḥ*). The Virūpas are connected with Angiras in R.V. x. 62, 5; and a Virūpa is mentioned in i. 45, 3; and viii. 64, 6.

Dyaus (sky), bestowing wealth upon Viśvāmitra at the sacrifice with a thousand libations, prolong their lives. 8. The opulent god (Indra) constantly assumes various forms, exhibiting with his body illusive appearances; since he came from the sky thrice in a moment, drinking (soma) according to his own will, at other than the stated seasons, and yet observing the ceremonial. 9.¹³³ The great rishi, god-born, god-im-pelled, leader of men, stayed the watery current; when Viśvāmitra conducted Sudās, Indra was propitiated through the Kuśikas. 10. Like swans, ye make a sound with the (soma-crushing) stones, exulting with your hymns when the libation is poured forth; ye Kuśikas, sage rishis, leaders of men, drink the honied soma with the gods.¹³⁴ 11. Approach, ye Kuśikas, be alert; let loose the horse of Sudās to (conquer) riches; let the king smite strongly his enemy in the east, the west, and the north; and then let him sacrifice on the most excellent (spot) of the earth.¹³⁵ 12. I Viśvāmitra have caused both heaven and earth to sing the praises of Indra;¹³⁶ and my prayer protects the race of Bharata. 13. The Viśvāmitras have offered up prayer to Indra the thunderer. May he render us prosperous! 14. What are thy cows doing among the Kīkaṭas,¹³⁷ who neither draw from them the milk (which is to be mixed with soma), nor heat the sacrificial kettle. Bring to us the wealth of Pramaganda; subdue to us to the son of Nīchāsākha. 15. Moving swiftly, removing poverty, brought by the Jamadagnis, she has mightily uttered her voice: this daughter of the sun has conveyed (our) renown, eternal and undecaying, (even) to the gods. 16. Moving swiftly she has speedily brought down (our) renown from them to the five races of men; this winged¹³⁸ goddess whom the aged Jamadagnis brought to us, has conferred on us new life.” Omitting verses

¹³³ Verses 9–13 are translated by Prof. Roth, Litt. u. Gesch. des Weda, p. 106 f.

¹³⁴ Comp. M. Rh. Ādip. v. 6695. *Apibach cha tataḥ somam Indi ena saha Kausikah* | “And then the Kausika drank soma with Indra.”

¹³⁵ Compare R.V. iii. 23, 4, which will be quoted below.

¹³⁶ Compare R.V. iv. 17, 1.

¹³⁷ *Kīkaṭāḥ nāma deśo 'nāryya-nivāsaḥ* | “Kīkaṭa is a country inhabited by people who are not Āryas.” See the second vol. of this work, p. 362, and Journ. Royal As. Soc. for 1866, p. 340.

¹³⁸ *Pakṣyū*. This word is rendered by Sāyaṇa “the daughter of the sun who causes the light and dark periods of the moon, etc.” (*Pakṣasya pakṣhādi-nirvāha-kasya Sūryasya duhitā*). Prof. Roth s.v. thinks the word may mean “she who changes according to the (light and dark) fortnights.”

17-20 we have the following: “21. Prosper us to-day, o opulent Indra, by numerous and most excellent succours. May he who hates us fall down low; and may breath abandon him whom we hate.” This is succeeded by three obscure verses, of which a translation will be attempted further on.

Sāyāna prefaces verses 15 and 16 by a quotation from Śaḍguru-śishya's Commentary on the Anukramaṇikā, which is given with an addition in Weber's Indische Studien i. 119 f. as follows: *Sasarparī-dv-riche prāhur itihāsam purāvidaḥ*, *Saudāsa-nṛipater yajne Vasiṣṭhāt-maja-Saktinā* | *Viśvāmitrasyābhībhūtam balaṁ vāk cha samantataḥ* | *Vasiṣṭhenābhībhūtaḥ sa hy avāśidach cha Gādhi-jaḥ* | *tasmai Brāhmaṇi tu Sauriṇi vā nāmnā vāchaṁ Sasarparīm* | *Sūrya-reśmana āhṛitya dadur rai Jamadagnayāḥ* | *Kuśikānāṁ tataḥ sā rāñ manāk chintām athānudat* | *upapreteti Kuśikān Viśvāmitro 'nvachodayat* | *labdhvā vāchaṁ cha hrishṭātmā Jamadagnin apūjayat* | “*Sasarparī*” iti drābhyāṁ rigbhyāṁ Vācham stuvam svayam | “Regarding the two verses beginning “*Sasarparīḥ*” those acquainted with antiquity tell a story. At a sacrifice of king Saudāsa¹³⁹ the power and speech of Viśvāmitra were completely vanquished by Sakti, son of Vasiṣṭha; and the son of Gādhi (Viśvāmitra) being so overcome, became dejected. The Jamadagnis drew from the abode of the Sun a Voice called “*Sasarparī*,” the daughter of Brahmā, or of the Sun, and gave her to him. Then that voice somewhat dispelled the disquiet of the Jamadagnis [or, according to the reading of this line given by Sāyāna (*Kuśikānāṁ matih sā rāg amatiṁ tām apānudat*) “that Voice, being intelligence, dispelled the unintelligence of the Kuśikas.”]. Viśvāmitra then incited the Kuśikas with the words, *upapreta* ‘approach’ (see verse 11). And being gladdened by receiving the Voice, he paid homage to the Jamadagnis, praising them with the two verses beginning ‘*Sasarparīḥ*’.

In regard to the verses 21-24 Sāyāna has the following remarks: *Indra utibhir ity adyāś chatasro Vasiṣṭha-dveshinyaḥ* | *purā khalu Viśvāmitra-śishyaḥ Sudāḥ nāma rājarshir āśit* | *sa cha kenacit kāranena Vasiṣṭha-dveshyo 'bhūt* | *Viśvāmitras tu śishyasya rakshārtham ābhīr rigbhir Vasiṣṭham āśapat* | *imāḥ abhiśapa-rūpāḥ* | *tāḥ rīcho Vasiṣṭhāḥ na śrinvanti* | “The four verses beginning ‘o Indra, with succours’ express hatred to Vasiṣṭha. There was formerly a royal rishi called

¹³⁹ The Brihaddevatā, which has some lines nearly to the same effect as these I have quoted (see Ind. Stud. i. 119), gives Sudās instead of Saudāsa.

Sudāś, a disciple of Viśvāmitra; who for some reason had incurred the ill-will of Vasishṭha. For his disciple's protection Viśvāmitra cursed Vasishṭha in these verses. They thus consist of curses, and the Vasishṭhas do not listen to them."

In reference to the same passage the Brīhaddevatā iv. 23 f., as quoted in Indische Studien, i. 120, has the following lines : *Parāś chatasro yās tatra Vasishṭha-dreshinīr viduh | Viśvāmitrena tāḥ proktāḥ abhiśūpūḥ iti smṛitāḥ | dresha-dreshas tu tāḥ proktāḥ vidyāch chairābhichārikāḥ | Vasishṭhas tu na śīnṛanti tad āchāryaka-sammataṁ | kīrttanāch chhara-vanād vā 'pi mahān doshāḥ prajāyate | śatadhā bhidyate mūrdhā kīrtti-tēna śutenā vā | teshām bālāḥ pramīyante tasmāt tās tu na kīrttayet |* "The other four verses of that hymn, which are regarded as expressing hatred to Vasishṭha, were uttered by Viśvāmitra, and are traditionally reported to contain imprecations. They are said to express hatred in return for (?) hatred, and should also be considered as incantations. The descendants of Vasishṭha do not listen to them, as this is the will of their preceptor. Great guilt is incurred by repeating or hearing them. The heads of those who do so are split into a hundred fragments; and their children die. Wherefore let no one recite them."

Durga, the commentator on the Nirukta,¹⁴⁰ in accordance with this injunction and warning, says in reference to verse 23 : *Yasmin nigame esha śabdah (lodhāḥ) sā Vasishṭha-dreshinī rik | ahaṁ cha Kāpishṭhalo Vāsishṭhah | atas tām na nirbravīmī |* "The text in which this word (*lodha*) occurs is a verse expressing hatred of Vasishṭha. But I am a Kāpishṭhala of the family of Vasishṭha; and therefore do not interpret it."

The following text also may have reference to the personal history of Viśvāmitra : R.V. iii. 43, 4. *Ā cha tvām etā vrishanā vahāto harī sakhyā sudhurā svangā | dhānāvad Indrah savanām jushānah sakhā sakhyūḥ śīnārad vandanānī |* 5. *Kuvid mā gopām karase janasya kuvid rājānam maghavann rījishin | kuvid mā rishim papivānsaṁ sutasya kuvid me rasvo amṛitasya śikshāḥ |* "4. May these two vigorous brown steeds, friendly, well-yoked, stout-limbed, convey thee hither. May Indra gratified by our libation mingled with grain, hear (like) a friend, the praises of a friend. 5. Wilt thou make me a ruler of the people ? wilt

¹⁴⁰ As quoted both by Prof. Roth, Litt. u. Gesch. des Weda, p. 108, note, and by Prof. Müller, Pref. to Rig-veda, vol. ii. p. lvi.

thou make me a king, o impetuous lord of riches? wilt thou make me a rishi a drinker of soma? wilt thou endow me with imperishable wealth?"

The next passage refers to Devaśravas and Devavāta, of the race of Bharata, who are called in the Anukramanikā, quoted by Sāyaṇa, "sons of Bharata" (*Bharatasya putrau*); but one of whom at least is elsewhere, as we shall see, said to be a son of Viśvāmitra: R.V. iii. 23, 2. *Amanthishṭām Bhāratā revad Agnim Devaśravāḥ Devavātāḥ sudaksham | Agne vi paśya brihatā 'bhi rāyā ishām no netā bhavatād anu dyūn |* 3. *Daśa kshipaḥ pūrvyaṁ sīm ajījanan sujātam mātṛishu priyam | Agniṁ stuhi Daivarātām Devaśravo yo janānām asud vaśi |* 4. *Ni tvā dadhe vare ā prihīvyāḥ ilāyās pade sudinatre ahnām | Drishadratyām mānushe Āpayāyām Sarasvatyām rerad Agne didīhi |* "2. The two Bhāratas Devaśravas and Devavāta have brilliantly created by friction the powerful Agni. Look upon us, o Agni, manifesting thyself with much wealth; be a bringer of nourishment to us every day. 3. The ten fingers (of Devavāta) have generated the ancient god, happily born and dear to his mothers. Praise, o Devaśravas, Agni, the offspring of Devavāta, who has become the lord of men. 4. I placed (or he placed) thee on the most excellent spot of earth on the place of worship,¹⁴ at an auspicious time. Shine, o Agni, brilliantly on the (banks of the) Driśadvatī, on (a site) auspicious for men, on (the banks of) the Āpayā, of the Sarasvatī."

Viśvāmitra is mentioned along with Jamadagni in the fourth verse of the 167th hymn of the tenth Maṇḍala, which is ascribed to these two sages as its authors: *Prasuto bhaksham akaram charāv api stomām che-nam prathamāḥ sūrir un mriye | sute sātena yadi āgamaṁ vām prati Viśvāmitra-Jamadagnī dame |* "Impelled, I have quaffed this draught of soma when the oblation of boiled rice was presented; and I, the first bard, prepare this hymn, whilst I have come to you, o Viśvāmitra and Jamadagni in the house, with that which has been offered as a libation."

The family of the Viśvāmitras has, as we have seen, been already mentioned in R.V. iii. 53, 13. They are also named in the following passages:

iii. 1, 21. *Janman janman nihito Jātavedāḥ Viśvāmitre bhīr idhyate ajasrah |*

¹⁴ Compare R.V. iii. 29, 3, 4.

"The undecaying Jātavedas (Agni) placed (on the hearth) is in every generation kindled by the Viśvāmitras."

iii. 18, 4. *Uch chhochishā sahasas putraḥ stuto brihad vayaḥ śaśamā-neshu dhehi | rovad Agne Viśvāmitreshu śāṁ yor marmrijma te tanvam bhūri kṛitrah |*

"Son of strength, when lauded, do thou with thy upward flame inspire vigorous life into thy worshippers; (grant) o Agni, brilliant good fortune and prosperity to the Viśvāmitras; many a time have we given lustre to thy body."

x. 89, 17. *Eva te vayam Indra bhūnjatīnāṁ ridyāma sumatiñām navā-nām | ridyāma rastor arasā grīñanto Viśrāmitrāḥ uta te Indra nūnam |*

"Thus may we obtain from thee new favours to delight us: and may we, Viśvāmitras, who praise thee, now obtain riches through thy help, o Indra."

This hymn is ascribed in the Anukramanī to Renu, the son or descendant of Viśvāmitra; and the 18th verse is identical with the 22nd of the 30th hymn of the third Maṇḍala, which is said to be Viśvāmitra's production.

In a verse already quoted (R.V. iii. 33, 11) Viśvāmitra is spoken of as the son of Kuśika; at least the Nirukta regards that passage as referring to him; and the Kuśikas, who no doubt belonged to the same family as Viśvāmitra, are mentioned in another hymn which I have cited (iii. 53, 9, 10). They are also alluded to in the following texts:

R.V. iii. 26, 1. *Vaiśvānaram manasā 'gnīñ nichāyya harishmanto anu-shatyāñ svarvidam | sudānuñ devañ rathirāñ vasūyavo gīrbhiḥ ranvāñ Kuśikāś harāmahe | 3. Aśvo na krandan janibhiḥ sam idhyate Vaiśvānarāḥ Kuśikebhīr yuge yuge | sa no Agniḥ suvīryāñ svāsvyāñ du-dhātu ratnam amriteshu jāgṛivīḥ |*

"We, the Kuśikas, presenting oblations, and desiring riches, revering in our souls, as is meet,¹⁴² the divine Agni Vaiśvānara, the heavenly, the bountiful, the charioteer, the pleasant, invoke him with hymns. 3. Vaiśvanara, who (crackles) like a neighing horse, is kindled by the Kuśikas with the mothers (*i.e.* their fingers) in every age. May

¹⁴² This is the sense of *anushatyam* according to Prof. Aufrecht. Sāyana makes it one of the epithets of Agni "he who is true to his promise in granting rewards according to works" (*satyenānugataṁ karmānurūpa-phala-pradāne satya-pratijñam*).

this Agni, who is ever alive among the immortals, bestow on us wealth, with vigour and with horses."

iii. 29, 15. *Amitrāyudho Marutām iva prayāḥ prathamajāḥ brahmaṇo viśvam id viduh | dyumnavad brahma Kuśikāsāḥ ā īrire ekaḥ eko dame Agniṁ sam īdhire |*

"Combating their enemies like the hosts of the Maruts, (the sages) the first-born of prayer¹⁴³ know everything; the Kuśikas have sent forth an enthusiastic prayer; they have kindled Agni, each in his own house."

iii. 30, 20. *Imaṁ kūmam mandaya gobhir aśvaiś chandrāvatā rādhasā paprathāś cha | svaryavo matibhis tubhyam vīprāḥ Indrāya vāhāḥ Kuśikāś akraṇ |*

"Gratify this (our) desire with kine and horses; and prosper us with brilliant wealth. The wise Kuśikas, desiring heaven, have with their minds composed for thee a hymn."

iii. 42, 9. *Tvāṁ sutasya pītaye pratnam Indra harāmahe | Kuśikāś arasyarāḥ |*

"We, the Kuśikas, desiring succour, summon thee the ancient Indra to drink the soma libation."

It will be seen from these passages that the Viśvāmitras and the Kuśikas assert themselves to have been ancient worshippers of Agni, and to be the composers of hymns, and the possessors of all divine knowledge.

In the eleventh verse of the tenth hymn of the first Maṇḍala of the R.V., of which the traditional author is Madhucchandas of the family of Viśvāmitra, the epithet *Kauśika* is applied to Indra: *Ā tu nah Indra Kauśika mandasānah sutam piba | nāryam āyuḥ pra sutira kridhi sahasra-sām rishim |* "Come, Indra, Kauśika, drink our oblation with delight. Grant me new and prolonged life; make the rishi the possessor of a thousand boons."

Sāyaṇa explains the epithet in question as follows: *Kauśika Kuśikasya putra . . . yadyapi Viśvāmitro Kuśikasya putras tathāpi tad-rūpena Indrasya eva utpannatvāt Kuśika-putratvam aviruddham | ayāṁ 'nukramanīkāyāṁ uktāḥ |* "Kuśikas tv Aishirathir Indra-

¹⁴³ Compare with this the epithet of *devajāḥ*, "god-born," applied in iii. 53, 9 (above p. 342); and the claim of knowledge made for the Vāishṭhas in vii. 33, 7 (above p. 320).

tulyam putram ichhan brahmacharyam chachāra | tasya Indrah eva Gāthī putro jajne" iti | "Kauśika means the son of Kuśika . . . Although Viśvāmitra was the son of Kuśika, yet, as it was Indra who was born in his form, there is nothing to hinder Indra being the son of Kuśika. This story is thus told in the Anukramanīkā : 'Kuśika, the son of Ishiratha desiring a son like Indra, lived in the state of a Brahmachārin. It was Indra who was born to him as his son Gāthin.' " To this the Anukramanī (as quoted by Prof. Müller, Rig-veda, vol. ii. pref. p. xl.) adds the words: *Gāthino Viśvāmitrāḥ | sa tritīyam mandalam apaśyat |* "The son of Gāthin was Viśvāmitra, who saw the third Mandala." In quoting this passage Professor Müller remarks: "According to Shad-guruśishya this preamble was meant to vindicate the Rishitva of the family of Viśvāmitra :¹⁴⁴ *Saty aparāde srayam rishitvam anubharato Viśvāmitra-gotrasya tirakshayā itihāsaṁ āha*" | "Wishing to declare the rishihood of the family of Viśvāmitra which was controverted, although they were themselves aware of it, he tells a story."

Professor Roth in his Lexicon (*s.v. Kauśika*) thinks that this term as originally applied to Indra meant merely that the god "belonged, was devoted to," the Kuśikas; and Professor Benfey, in a note to his translation of R.V. i. 10, 11,¹⁴⁵ remarks that "by this family-name Indra is designated as the sole or principal god of this tribe."

¹⁴⁴ Prof. Müller states that "Śāyana passes over what Kātyāyana (the author of the Anukramanī) says about the race of Viśvāmitra;" and adds "This (the fact of the preamble being 'meant to vindicate the Rishitva of the family of Viśvāmitra') was probably the reason why Śāyana left it out." It is true that Śāyana does not quote the words of the Anukramanī in his introductory remarks to the third Mandala; but as we have seen he had previously adduced the greater part of them in his note on i. 10, 11.

¹⁴⁵ Orient und Occident, vol. i. p. 18, note 50. We have seen above, p. 345, that in R.V. iii. 23, 3, another god, Agni, is called *Daivavāta*, after the rishi Devavāta, by whom he had been kindled. Compare also the expression *Daivodāsa Agnih* in R.V. viii. 92, 2, which Śāyana explains as = *Divodāsena āhūyamāno 'gnih*, "Agni invoked by Divodāsa;" while Prof. Roth *s.v.* understands it to mean "Agni who stands in relation to Divodāsa." In R.V. vi. 16, 19, Agni is called *Divodāsasya satpatih*, "the good lord of Divodāsa." Agni is also called *Bhārata* in R.V. ii. 7, 1, 5; iv. 25, 4; vi. 16, 19. On the first text (ii. 7, 1) Śāyana says *Rharatāḥ ritvijah | teshāṁ sambandhī Bhārataḥ*, "Bharatas are priests. Bhārata is he who is connected with them." On ii. 7, 5 he explains the word by *ritvijum putra-sthānīya*, "Thou who art in the place of a son to the priests." On the second text (iv. 25, 4) *tasmā Agnir Bhārataḥ s'arma yañat*, "may Agni Bhārata give him protection") Śāyana takes Bhārata to mean "the bearer of the oblation" (*havisho bhārtū*); but also refers to the S.P.Br. i. 4, 2, 2, where it is said, "or Agni is called 'Bhārata,' because, becoming breath, he sustains all creatures"

According to the Vishṇu Purāṇa (pp. 398–400, Wilson, 4to. ed.) Viśvāmitra was the twelfth in descent from Purūravas, the persons intermediate being (1) Amāvasu, (2) Bhīma, (3) Kānchana, (4) Suhotra, (5) Jahnu, (6) Sumantu, (7) Ajaka, (8) Valākāśva, (9) Kuśa, (10) Kuśāmba, and (11) Gādhi. The birth of Viśvāmitra's father is thus described, V.P. iv. 7, 4 : *Teshāṁ Kuśāmbah “śakra-tulyo me putro bhaved” iti tapaś chachāra | taṁ cha ugra-tapasam aralokya “mā bhavatv anyo ‘smat-tulya-vīryyah” ity ātmanā era asya Indraḥ putratvam aga-ehhat | Gādhīr nāma sa Kauśiko’bharat |* “Kuśāmba (one of Kuśa's four sons) practised austere fervour with the view of obtaining a son equal to Indra. Perceiving him to be very ardent in his austere fervour, Indra, fearing lest another person should be born his own equal in vigour, became himself the son of Kuśāmba, with the name of Gādhi the Kauśika.” Regarding the birth of Viśvāmitra himself, the Vishṇu Purāṇa relates the following story : Gādhi's daughter Satyavatī had been given in marriage to an old Brāhmaṇ called Rīchika, of the family of Bhrigu. In order that his wife might bear a son with the qualities of a Brāhmaṇ, Rīchika had prepared for her a dish of charu (rice, barley, and pulse, with butter and milk) for her to eat; and a similar mess for her mother, calculated to make her conceive a son with the character of a warrior. Satyavatī's mother, however, persuaded her to exchange messes. She was blamed by her husband on her return home for what she had done. I quote the words of the original :

V.P. iv. 7, 14. “*Ati pāpe kim idam akāryyam bhavatyā kṛitam | atiraudraṁ te rapur ālakshyate | nūnaṁ trayā tvañ-mātri-satkrītaś charur upayuktah (? upabhuktah) | na yuktam etat |* 15. *Mayā hi tattva charau sakalā eva śauryya-vīryya-bala-sampad īropitā tradiye charāv apy akhila-śānti-jnāna-titikshādikā brāhmaṇa-sampat | etach cha rīpa-*

(*esha u vai imāḥ prajāḥ prīṇo bhūtvā bibhartti tasmād vā iva āha “Bhārata” iti*). Another explanation had previously been given that the word *Bhārata* means “he who bears oblations to the gods.” On the third text (vi. 16, 19) Sāyaṇa interprets the term in the same way. Roth, s.v., thinks it may mean “warlike.” In R.V. vii. 8, 4, (V.S. 12, 34) we find the words *pra pra ayan Agniś Bharatasya śrīṇve*, “this Agni (the son ?) of Bharata has been greatly renowned.” Sāyaṇa makes *bharatasya = yajamānasya*, “the worshipper,” and *pra pra śrīṇve = prathito bhavati*, “is renowned.” The Comm. on the Vāj. S. translates “Agni hears the invocation of the worshipper” (*śrīṇve śrīṇute āhvānam*). The S. P. Br. vi. 8, 1, 14, quotes the verse, and explains *Bharata* as meaning “Projūpati, the supporter of the universe” (*Prūjāpatir vasi Bharataḥ sa hi idam sarvam bibharti*).

rītaṁ kurvatyāś tara aliraudrāstra-dhārana-mārana-nishtha-kshattriyāchāraḥ puttro bharishyaty asyāś cha upaśama-ruchir brāhmaṇāchāraḥ | ity ākarnya era sā tasya pādau jagrāha pranipatya cha enam āha “bhagavan mayā etad ajnānād anushṝhitam | prasādām me kuru | mā evāñridah putro bharatu | kāmam evāñridhaḥ pautro bharatu” | ity ukto munir apy āha “evam astv” iti | 16. *Anantaram cha sā Jamadagnim ajījanat tan-mātā cha Viśvāmitram janayāmāsa | Satyavatī cha Kauśikī nāma nady abharat | Jamadagnir Ikshvāku-raṁśodbhavarasya Renos tanayān Renukām upayeme tasyān cha aśeṣa-kshattravaṁśa-hantaram Paraśurāma-sanjnam bhagavataḥ sakala-loka-guror Nārāyaṇasya aṁśān Jamadagnir ajījanat | Viśvāmitra-putras tu Bhārgarāḥ era Sunaḥṣepo nāma derair dattāḥ | tatas cha Devarāta-nāmā bhavat | tatas cha anye Madhucchanda-Jayakṛita-Devadera-Aṣṭaka-Kachhapa-Hārītakākhyāḥ Viśvāmitra-putrāḥ babbūruḥ | 17. Teshām cha bahūni Kauśika-gotrāṇi rishyantareshu rairāhyāni bharanti |*

“‘Sinful woman, what improper deed is this that thou hast done? I behold thy body of a very terrible appearance. Thou hast certainly eaten the charu prepared for thy mother. This was wrong. For into that charu I had infused all the endowments of heroism, vigour, and force, whilst into thine I had introduced all those qualities of quietude, knowledge, and patience which constitute the perfection of a Brāhmaṇa. Since thou hast acted in contravention of my design a son shall be born to thee who shall live the dreadful, martial, and murderous life of a Kshattriya; and thy mother’s offspring shall exhibit the peaceful disposition and conduct of a Brāhmaṇa.’ As soon as she had heard this, Satyavatī fell down and seized her husband’s feet, and said, ‘My lord, I have acted from ignorance; show kindness to me; let me not have a son of the sort thou hast described; if thou pleasest, let me have a grandson of that description.’ Hearing this the muni replied, ‘Be it so.’ Subsequently she bore Jamadagni, and her mother gave birth to Viśvāmitra. Satyavatī became the river called Kauśikī. Jamadagni wedded Renukā, the daughter of Renu, of the family of Ikshvāku; and on her he begot a son called Paraśurāma, the slayer of the entire race of Kshattriyas, who was a portion of the divine Nārāyaṇa, the lord of the universe.¹⁴⁶ To Viśvāmitra a son called Sunaśṣepa, of the race of

¹⁴⁶ According to the Bhāgavata Purāṇa, i. 3, 20, Paraśurāma was the sixteenth incarnation of Vishṇu: *Avatāre shoḍashame paśyan brahma-druho nṛipān | trissaptap-*

Bṛigu, was given by the gods, who in consequence received the name of Devarāta ("god-given"). And then other sons, Madhuchhandas, Jayakṛita, Devadeva, Aśṭaka, Kachhapa, Hāritaka, etc., were born to Viśvāmitra. From them sprang many families of Kauśikas, which intermarried with those of other rishis."

The Harivaṁśa, verses 1425 ff., gives a similar account, but makes Kuśika, not Kuśāmba, the grandfather of Viśvāmitra :

Kuśa-putrāḥ babhūrur hi chatvāro deva-varchasah | Kuśikāḥ Kuśanābhaś cha Kuśāmbo Mūrtimān tathā | Pahlavaiḥ saha sañcīddho rājā vana-charais tadā | Kuśikas tu tapas tepe putram Indra-samaṁ vibhuḥ | labheyam iti taṁ S'akras trāśād abhyetya jajnivān | pūrṇe varsha-sahasre vai taṁ tu S'akro hy apaśyata | aty ugra-tapasaṁ dṛiṣṭrū sahasrākṣaḥ purandaraḥ | samarthāḥ putra-janane sram evāṁśam arāsayat | putratre kalpayāmāsa sa derendraḥ surottamaḥ | sa Gādhīr abharad rājā Maghavān Kuśikāḥ svayam | Paurukutsy abharad bhāryyā Gādhīs tasyām ajāyata |

"Kuśa had four sons, equal in lustre to the gods, Kuśika, Kuśanābha, Kuśāmba, and Mūrtimat. Growing up among the Pahlavas, who dwelt in the woods, the glorious king Kuśika practised austere fervour, with the view of obtaining a son equal to Indra ; and Indra from apprehension came and was born. When a thousand years had elapsed Sakra (Indra) beheld him. Perceiving the intensity of his austere fervour, the thousand-eyed, city-destroying, god of gods, highest of the deities, powerful to procreate offspring, introduced a portion of himself, and caused it to take the form of a son ; and thus Maghavat himself became Gādhi, the son of Kuśika. Paurukutsī was the wife (of the latter), and of her Gādhi was born."

The Harivaṁśa then relates a story similar to that just extracted from the Vishṇu Purāṇa regarding the births of Jamadagni and Viśvāmitra, and then proceeds, verse 1456 :

Aurvasyavam Richikasya Satyavatyām mahāyaśāḥ | Jamadagnis tapo-viryāj jajne brahma-vidām varāḥ | madhyamaś cha S'unaśśephaḥ S'unāḥ puchhaḥ kanishṭhakah | Viśvāmitraṁ tu dāyādam Gādhiḥ Kuśika-nan-danāḥ | janayāmāsa putraṁ tu tapo-vidyā-śamātmakam | prāpya brah-

kritvāḥ kupito niḥkshattrām akarod mahīm | "In his sixteenth incarnation, perceiving that kings were oppressors of Brähmans, he, inconsed, made the earth destitute of Kshattriyas one and twenty times."

*marshi-samatāṁ yo' yam saptarshitāṁ gataḥ | Viśvāmitras tu dharmatmā
 nāmnā Viśvarathah smṛitāḥ | jajne Bhṛigu-prasādena Kauśikād vāñśa-
 varddhanāḥ | Viśvāmitrasya cha sutāḥ Devarātādayaḥ smṛitāḥ | vikhyatās
 trishu lokeshu teshāṁ nāmāni vai śrīṇu | Devaśravāḥ Katiś chaiva yasmāt
 Kātyāyanāḥ smṛitāḥ | Sālāratyāṁ Hiranyāksho Renujajne 'tha Renu-
 mān | Sāṅkṛiti Gālaraś chaiva Mudgalāś cheti viśrutāḥ | Madhuchhando
 Jayaś chaiva Devalāś cha tathā 'ṣṭakāḥ | Kachhapa Hāritaś chaiva Viśvā-
 mitrasya te sutāḥ | teshāṁ khyatāni gotrāṇi Kauśikānām mahātmanām |
 Pāṇino Babhravāś chaiva Dhyānajapyaś tathaiśa cha | Parthivāḥ Deva-
 rātāś cha Sālankāyana-Vāskalāḥ | Lohitāḥ Yāmadūtāś cha tathā Kāri-
 shayaḥ smṛitāḥ | Sauśrutāḥ Kauśikāḥ rājaṁs tathā 'nye Saindhavāya-
 nāḥ | Deralāḥ Renaraś chaiva Yājanavalkyāghamarshanāḥ | Audumbarāḥ
 hy Abhishnatās Tārakāyāṇa-chunchulāḥ | Sālāratyāḥ Hiranyākshāḥ
 Sāṅkrityāḥ Gālavaś tathā | Nārāyanir Naraś chānyo Viśvāmitrasya
 dhimataḥ | rishy-antara-vivāhyāś cha Kauśikāḥ baharāḥ smṛitāḥ | Pau-
 ravasya mahārāja brahmarsheḥ Kauśikasya cha | sambandho 'py asya
 caṁśe 'smīn brahma-kshattrasya viśrutāḥ |*

“Thus was the renowned Jamadagni, the most excellent of those possessed of sacred knowledge, born by the power of austere fervour to Richika, the son of Urva, by Satyavatī. Their second son was Sunaś-śepa¹⁴⁷ and the youngest Sunalipuchha. And Gādhi, son of Kuśika, begot as his son and inheritor Viśvāmitra, distinguished for austere fervour, science, and quietude; who attained an equality with Brahman-rishis, and became one of the seven rishis. The righteous Viśvāmitra, who was known by name as Viśvaratha,¹⁴⁸ was by the favour of a Bhṛigu born to the son of Kuśika, an augmenter (of the glory) of his race. The sons of Viśvāmitra are related to have been Devarāta and the rest, renowned in the three worlds. Hear their names: Devaśravas, Kati (from whom the Kātyāyanas had their name); Hiranyāksha, born of Sālāvatī, and Renumat of Renu; Sāṅkṛiti, Gālava, Mudgala, Madhucchanda, Jaya, Devala, Ashṭaka, Kachhapa, Hārita — these were the

¹⁴⁷ The Aitareya Brāhmaṇa, as we shall shortly see, makes ‘Sunāśepa’ a son of Ajigartta. The Mahābhārata Anusāsanap. verse 186, coincides with the Harivāṁśa.

¹⁴⁸ In another passage of the Harivāṁśa (verses 1764 ff.), which repeats the particulars given in this passage, it appears to be differently stated, verse 1766, that besides a daughter Satyavatī, and his son Viśvāmitra, Gādhi had three other sons Viśvaratha, Viśvakṛit, and Viśvajit (*Viśvāmitras tu Gūḍheyo rājā Viśvarathas tadā Viśvakṛid Viśvajich chaiva tathā Satyavatī nrīpa*).

sons of Viśvāmitra. From them the families of the great Kauśikas are said to have sprung: the Pāṇins, Babhrus, Dhānajapyas, Pārthivas, Devarātas, Sālankāyanas, Vāskalas, Lohitas, Yāmadūtas, Kārīshis, Sau-śrutas, Kauśikas, Saindhavāyanas, Devalas, Reṇus, Yājnavalkyas, Agha-marshaṇas, Audumbaras, Abhishnātas, Tārakayanas, Chunchulas, Sālā-vatyas, Hiranyākshas, Sāṅkṛityas, and Gālavas.¹⁴⁹ Nārāyaṇi and Nara were also (descendants) of the wise Viśvāmitra. Many Kauśikas are recorded who intermarried with the families of other rishis. In this race of the Paurava and Kauśika Brahman-rishi, there is well known to have been a connection of the Brāhmans and Kshattriyas. Sunaś-sēpha, who was a descendant of Bhṛigu, and obtained the position of a Kauśika, is recorded to have been the eldest of Viśvāmitra's sons."

It will be observed that in this passage, Devaśravas is given as one of Viśvāmitra's sons. A Devaśravas, as we have already seen, is mentioned in R.V. iii. 23, 2, as a Bhārata, along with Devavāta. Here however in the Harivamśa we have no Devavāta, but a Devarāta, who is identified with Sunaś-sēpha. This, as we shall find, is also the case in the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa.

In the genealogy given in both of the preceding passages, from the Vishṇu Purāṇa, and the 27th chapter of the Harivamśa respectively, Viśvāmitra is declared to be the descendant of Amāvasu the third son of Purūravas. In the 32nd chapter of the Harivamśa, however, we find a different account. Viśvāmitra's lineage is there traced up to a Jahnu, as in the former case; but Jahnu is no longer represented as a descendant of Amāvasu, the third son of Purūravas; but (as appears from the preceding narrative) of Āyus, the eldest son of that prince, and of Puru, the great-grandson of Āyus. Professor Wilson (Vishṇu Purāṇa, 4to. ed. p. 451, note 23) is of opinion that this confusion originated in the recurrence of the name of Suhotra in different genealogical lists, and in the ascription to one king of this name of descendants who were

¹⁴⁹ Professor Wilson (V.P. 4to. ed. p. 405, note) gives these names, and remarks that the authorities add "an infinity of others, multiplied by intermarriages with other tribes, and who, according to the Vāyu, were originally of the regal caste like Viśvāmitra; but like him obtained Brahmanhood through devotion. Now these gotras, or some of them at least, no doubt existed, partaking more of the character of schools of doctrine, but in which teachers and scholars were very likely to have become of one family by intermarrying; and the whole, as well as their original founder, imply the interference of the Kshattriya caste with the Brahmanical monopoly of religious instruction and composition."

really sprung from another. It is not, however, clear that the genealogy of Viśvāmitra given in the Vishṇu Purāṇa is the right one. For in the Rig-veda, as we have seen, he is connected with the Bharatas, and in the passage about to be quoted from the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa, he is called a Bharata and his sons Kuśikas; and Bharata is said both in the Vishṇu Purāṇa (Wilson's V.P. 4to. ed. p. 449) and in the Harivāṁśa (sect. 32, v. 1723, and preceding narrative) to be a descendant of Āyu and of Puru. Accordingly we have seen that the Harivāṁśa styles Viśvāmitra at once a Paurava and a Kauśika.

A similar genealogy to that in the 32nd section of the Harivāṁśa is given in the Mahābhārata, Anuśāsanaparvan, verses 201 ff., where it is said that in the line of Bharata there was a king called Ajamīḍha who was also a priest (*Bharatasyānvaye chairājamīḍho nāma pārthirāḥ ! babbūra Bharata-śreshṭha yajrā dharma-bhṛtāṁ varāḥ*), from whom Viśvāmitra was descended through (1) Jahnu, (2) Sindhudvīpa, (3) Balākaśva, (4) Kuśika, (5) Gādhi.

One of the names applied to Viśvāmitra and his race, as I have just noticed, is Bharata.¹⁵⁰ The last of the four verses at the close of the 53rd hymn of the third Mandala of the Rig-veda, which are supposed to contain a malediction directed by Viśvāmitra against Vaśishṭha (see above) is as follows : iii. 53, 24. *Ime Indra Bharatasya putrāḥ apapitrāñ chikitur na prapitram* | “These sons of Bharata, o Indra, desire to avoid (the Vasishṭhas), not to approach them.” These words are thus explained by Sāyaṇa : *Bharatasya putrāḥ Bharata-vaṁśyāḥ ime Viśvāmitrāḥ apapi-tram apagamanañ Vasishṭhebhyāś chikitur na prapitram* | [Va]śishṭaiḥ saha teshāñ sangatir nāsti | brāhmaṇāḥ eva ity arthaḥ | “These sons of Bharata, persons of his race, know departure from, and not approach to, the Vasishṭhas. They do not associate with the Vasishṭhas. This means they are Brāhmans.”

The persons who accompanied Viśvāmitra when he wished to cross the Vipāś and the Sutudri are, as we have seen above, called Bhārātas; and Devaśravas and Devavāta are designated in R.V. iii. 23, 2, as Bhārātas. On the other hand in one of the hymns ascribed to Vasishṭha (R.V. vii. 33, 6) the Bhārātas are alluded to as a tribe hostile to the Tṝtsus, the race to which Vasishṭha belonged.

¹⁵⁰ See Roth's Lexicon, s.v. *Bharata*, (7) “the name of a hero, the forefather of a tribe. His sons are called Viśvāmitras and the members of his family Bharatas.”

In the legend of Sunaśśepa, told in the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa, vii. 13–18,¹⁶¹ Viśvāmitra is alluded to as being the hotṛi-priest of king Hariśchandra, and as belonging to the tribe of the Bharatas. He is also addressed as *rājaputra*, and his sons are called Kuśikas. The outlines of the story are as follows: King Hariśchandra of the family of Ikshvāku having no son, promised to Varuṇa, by the advice of Nārada, that if a son should be born to him he would sacrifice him to that god. A son was accordingly born to the king, who received the name of Rohita; but Hariśchandra, though called upon by Varuṇa, put off from time to time, on various pleas, the fulfilment of his promise. When the father at length consented, the youth himself refused to be sacrificed and went into the forest. After passing six years there he met a poor Brāhmaṇ rishi called Ajīgartta who had three sons, the second of whom, Sunaśśepa, he sold for a hundred cows to Rohita, who brought the young Brāhmaṇ to be sacrificed instead of himself. Varuṇa accepted the vicarious victim, and arrangements were made accordingly, “Viśvāmitra being the hotṛi-priest, Jamadagni the adhvaryu, Vasishṭha the brāhmāṇ, and Ayāsyā the udgātri (*tasya ha Viśvāmitro hotā āśi Jamadagnir adhvaryur Vasishṭho brahmā Ayāsyah udgātū*).” The sacrifice was not, however, completed, although the father received a hundred more cows for binding his son to the sacrificial post, and a third hundred for agreeing to slaughter him. By reciting verses in honour of different deities in succession Sunaśśepa was delivered; and at the request of the priests took part in the ceremonial of the day. I shall quote the remainder of the story at length:

17. *Atha ha Sunahśepo Viśvāmitrasyāṅkam āśasūda | sa ha urācha Ajīgarttaḥ Sauyarasir “rishe punar me puttraṁ dehi” iti | “Na” iti ha urācha Viśvāmitro “devāḥ rai iman mahyam arāsata” iti | sa ha Devarāto Vaiśvāmitrah āsa | tasya ete Kāpileya-Bābhrawāḥ | sa ha urācha Ajīgarttaḥ Sauyavasis “trām vehi vihvayāvahai” iti | sa ha urācha Ajīgarttaḥ Sauyavasis “Āngiraso janmanā ‘sy Ajīgarttiḥ śrūtaḥ kavīḥ | rishe paitāmahāt tantor mā ‘pagāḥ punar ehi nām” iti | sa*

¹⁶¹ This legend is translated into German by Prof. Roth in Weber's Ind. Stud. i. 457 ff., into English by Prof. Wilson, Journ. Roy. As. Soc. vol. xiii. for 1851, pp. 96 ff., by Dr. Haug in his Ait. Brāhmaṇa, vol. ii. 460 ff., by Prof. Müller in his Anc. Sansk. Lit. pp. 408 ff., and into Latin by Dr. Streiter in his “Diss. de Sunahśepo.”

ha urācha Sunahśepaḥ “ adarśus trā śāsa-hastaṁ na yach chhūdreshv
 alapsata | gavāṁ trīṇi śatāni tvaṁ arinīthāḥ mad Angirāḥ ” iti | sa
 ha urācha Ajīgarttaḥ Sauyavasis “ tad rai mā tāta tapati pāpaṁ karma
 mayā kṛitam | tad ahaṁ nīhnave tubhyam pratiyantu śatā garām ” iti |
 sa ha urācha Sunahśepaḥ “ yaḥ sakṛit pāpakaṁ kuryāt kuryād enat tato
 ‘param | nāpāgāḥ śaudrānyāyād asandheyaṁ trayā kṛitam ” iti | “ asan-
 dheyam ” iti ha Viśvāmitraḥ upapapāda | sa ha urācha Viśvāmitraḥ
 “ Bhīmaḥ era Sauyarasiḥ śāsena viśiśāsishuḥ | asthād maitasya putro
 bhūr mamairopehi putratām ” iti | sa ha urācha Sunahśepaḥ “ sa rai
 yathā no jnāpāyā rājaputra tathā rāda | yathaivāṅgirasaḥ sann upeyāṁ
 tava putratām ” iti | sa ha urācha Viśvāmitra “ Jyeshṭho me tvam putrā-
 nām syās tava śreshthā prajā syāt | upeyāḥ daivam me dāyām tena rai
 tropamantraye ” iti | sa ha urācha Sunahśepaḥ “ sanjnānāneshu vai brū-
 yāt sauhārdyāya me śriyai | yathā ‘ham Bharata-riśhabha upeyāṁ tava
 putratām ” iti | atha ha Viśvāmitraḥ putrān āmantrayāmāsa “ Madhu-
 ohhandāḥ śrīnotana Rishabho Reñur Ashtakāḥ | ye ke cha bhrātarāḥ
 sthana asmai jyaishṭhyāya kalpadhram ” iti | 18. Tasya ha Viśvāmi-
 trasya eka-śatam putrāḥ āsuḥ panchāśad era jyāyāṁso Madhucchandasāḥ
 panchāśat kanīyāṁsaḥ | tad ye jyāyāṁso na te kuśalam menire | tān
 anuryājahāra “ antān rāḥ prajā bhakshishṭa ” iti | te ete ‘ndhrāḥ Puṇ-
 drāḥ S’abarāḥ Pulindāḥ Mūtiibāḥ ity udantyāḥ bahavo bhavanti | Vaiś-
 vāmitrāḥ Dasyūnām bhūyishṭhāḥ | sa ha urācha Madhucchandāḥ panchā-
 śatā sardham “ yad naḥ pitā sanjānīte tasmiṁs tishṭhāmahe vayam | puras
 tvā sarve kurmahe trām anvancho vayaṁ smasi ” iti | atha ha Viśvāmitraḥ
 pratītaḥ putrāṁs tushṭāva “ te vai putrāḥ paśumanto vīrvavanto bharishya-
 tha | ye mānam me ‘nugṛihñanto vīrvavantam akartta mā | pura-etrā vīra-
 vanto Devarātena Gāthināḥ | sarve rādhyāḥ esha putrāḥ esha rāḥ sad-
 vivāchanam | esha rāḥ Kuśikāḥ vīro Devarātas tam anvita | yushmāṁs
 dāyam me upetā vīdyāṁ yām u cha vidmasi | te samyancho Vaiśvāmitrāḥ
 sarve sākāṁ sarātayāḥ | Devarātāya tasthire dhṛityai śraishṭhyāya Gā-
 thināḥ | adhīyata Devarāto rikthayor ubhyayor riśiḥ | Jahnūnāṁ chā-
 dhipatyē dāive vede cha Gāthinām |

“ Sunaśepa came to the side of Viśvāmitra. Ajīgartta, the son of Suyavasa, said, ‘Rishi, give me back my son.’ ‘No,’ said Viśvāmitra, ‘the gods have given him to me’ (*devāḥ arāsata*); hence he became Devarāta the son of Viśvāmitra. The Kāpileyas and Bāhhravas are his descendants. Ajīgartta said to Viśvāmitra, ‘Come; let us both call

(him) to us.'¹⁵² He (again) said (to his son), 'Thou art an Āngirasa, the son of Ajīgartta, reputed a sage; do not, o rishi, depart from the line of thy ancestors; come back to me.' Sunaśṣepa replied, 'They have seen thee with the sacrificial knife in thy hand—a thing which men have not found even among the Sūdras; thou didst prefer three hundred cows to me, o Angiras.' Ajīgartta rejoined, 'That sinful deed which I have done distresses me, my son; I abjure it to thee. Let the [three] hundreds of cows revert (to him who gave them).'¹⁵³ Sunaśṣepa answered, 'He who once does a sinful deed, will add to it another; thou hast not freed thyself from that iniquity, fit only for a Sūdra. Thou hast done what cannot be rectified.' 'What cannot be rectified,' interposed Viśvāmitra; who continued, 'Terrible was the son of Su-yavasa as he stood about to immolate (thee) with the knife: continue not to be his son; become mine.' Sunaśṣepa replied, 'Speak, o king's son (*rājaputra*), whatever thou hast to explain to us, in order that I, though an Āngirasa, may become thy son.' Viśvāmitra rejoined, 'Thou shalt be the eldest of my sons, and thy offspring shall be the most eminent. Thou shalt receive my divine inheritance; with this (invitation) I address thee.' Sunaśṣepa answered, 'If (thy sons) agree, then for my welfare enjoin on them to be friendly, that so, o chief of the Bharatas, I may enter on thy sonship.' Viśvāmitra then addressed his sons, 'Do ye, Madhuchandas, Rishabha, Reṇu, Ashtaka, and all ye who are brothers, listen to me, and concede to him the seniority.' 18. Now Viśvāmitra had a hundred sons, fifty of whom were older than Madhuchandas and fifty younger. Then those who were older did not approve (their father's proposal). Against them he pronounced (this

¹⁵² I follow here the tenor of the interpretation (which is that of the Commentator on the *Sāṅkhūyāṇa Brāhmaṇa*) given by Prof. Weber in his review of Dr. Haug's Aitareya Brāhmaṇa, in Indische Studien, ix. 316. Prof. Weber remarks that in the Brāhmaṇas the root *ha + vi* is employed to denote the opposing invitations of two persons who are seeking to bring over a third person to their own side; in proof of which he quotes Taitt. S. 6, 1, 6, 6, and S. P. Br. 3, 2, 4, 4, and 22. Profs. Roth, Wilson, and Müller, as well as Dr. Haug, understand the words to be addressed to Sunaśṣepa by his father, and to signify "we, too (I and thy mother), call, or will call (thee to return to us)." But it does not appear that Sunaśṣepa's mother was present. And it is to be observed that the next words uttered by Ajīgartta, which are addressed to Sunaśṣepa, are preceded by the usual formula *sa ha uvāča Ajīgarttaḥ Sauyavasiḥ*, "Ajīgartta the son of S. said," which perhaps would not have been the case if both sentences had been addressed to the same person.

¹⁵³ Here too I follow Weber, Ind. St. ix. p. 317.

doom), 'Let your progeny possess the furthest ends (of the country).' These are the numerous border-tribes, the Andhras, Pundras, Sabaras, Pulindas, Mütibas. Most of the Dasyus are sprung from Viśvāmitra.¹⁵⁴ Madhuchhandas with the (other) fifty said, 'Whatever our father determines, by that we abide. We all place thee in our front, and follow after thee.' Then Viśvāmitra was pleased, and said to his sons, 'Ye, my children who, shewing deference to me, have conferred upon me a (new) son, shall abound in cattle and in sons. Ye, my sons, the offspring of Gāthin, who possess in Devarāta a man who shall go before you, are all destined to be prosperous; he is your wise instructor. This Devarāta, o Kuśikas, is your chief; follow him. He will receive you as my inheritance, and obtain all the knowledge which we possess.' All these sons of Viśvāmitra, descendants of Gāthin, submitted together in harmony and with good will to Devarāta's control and superiority. The rishi Devarāta was invested with both possessions, with the lordly authority of the Jahnus, and with the divine Veda of the Gāthins."¹⁵⁵

On this legend Professor Müller (Anc. Sansk. Lit. pp. 415 f.) remarks, amongst other things, as follows: "So revolting, indeed, is the descrip-

¹⁵⁴ See Weber, Ind. St. ix. p. 317 f., and Roth in his Lexicon, s.vv. *anta* and *udantya*.

¹⁵⁵ This legend is perhaps alluded to in the Kūṭhaka Brähmana, 19, 11, quoted by Prof. Weber, Ind. St. iii. 478: *S'unas'epo vai etām Ajigarttir Varuna-grihīto'pasyat | tayā sa vai Varuna-pūsād amuchyata |* "S'unas'epa the son of Ajigartta, when seized by Varuna, saw this (verse); and by it he was released from the bonds of Varuna." Manu also mentions the story, x. 105: *Ajigarttaḥ sutān hantum upāsarpad bubhuksitah | na chālipyata pūpena khut-pratīkāram īcharan |* "Ajigartta, when famished, approached to slay his son; and (by so doing) was not contaminated by sin, as he was seeking the means of escape from hunger." On this Kullūka annotates: *Rishir Ajigarttākhyo bubhuksitah san putrañ S'unas'epha-nāmānañ svayañ vikrītavān yajne go-śata-tābhāya yajna-yūpe baddhvā viśayitā bhūtvā hantum prachakrame | na cha khut-pratīkārtham tatā kurvan pūpena liptah | etach cha Bahvṛichā brāhmaṇe S'unas'epha-khyāneshu vyaktam uktam |* "A rishi called Ajigartta, having, when famished, himself sold his son called S'unas'epha, in order to obtain a hundred cows at a sacrifice, bound him to the sacrificial stake, and in the capacity of immolator was about to slay him. By doing so, as a means of escape from hunger, he did not incur sin. This is distinctly recorded in the Bahvṛicha (Aitareya) Brähmana in the legend of S'unas'epa." The speakers in the Brähmana, however, do not take by any means so lenient a view of Ajigartta's conduct as Manu. (See Müller's Anc. Sansk. Lit. p. 415.) The compiler of the latter work lived in an age when it was perhaps thought that a rishi could do no wrong. The Bhāgavata Purāṇa, ix. sect. 7, and sect. 16, verses 30-37 follows the Ait. Br. in the version it gives of the story; but, as we shall see in a subsequent section, the Rāmāyaṇa relates some of the circumstances quite differently.

tion given of Ajigartta's behaviour in the Brāhmaṇa, that we should rather recognize in him a specimen of the un-Āryan population of India. Such a supposition, however, would be in contradiction with several of the most essential points of the legend, particularly in what regards the adoption of Sunahśepha by Viśvāmitra. Viśvāmitra, though arrived at the dignity of a Brāhmaṇa, clearly considers the adoption of Sunahśepha Devarāṭa, of the famous Brahmanic family of the Āngirāsas, as an advantage for himself and his descendants; and the Devarāṭas are indeed mentioned as a famous branch of the Viśvāmitras (V.P. p. 405, 23). Sunahśepha is made his eldest son, and the leader of his brothers, evidently as the defender and voucher of their Brahmaṇhood, which must have been then of very recent date, because Viśvāmitra himself is still addressed by Sunahśepha as *Rāja-putra* and *Bharata-rishabha*.¹⁵⁶ It must, however, be recollectcd that the story, as told in the Brāhmaṇa, can scarcely be regarded as historical, and that it is not unreasonable to suppose that the incidents related, even if founded on fact, may have been coloured by the Brahmanical prepossessions of the narrator. But if so, the legend can give us no true idea of the light in which Viśvāmitra's exercise of priestly functions was looked upon either by himself or by his contemporaries.

In Indische Studien, ii. 112–123, this story forms the subject of an interesting dissertation by Professor Roth, who arrives at the following conclusions:

“(i.) The oldest legend about Sunahśepa (alluded to in R.V. i. 24, 11–13,¹⁵⁶ and R.V. v. 2, 7) knows only of his miraculous deliverance by divine help from the peril of death.

“(ii.) This story becomes expanded in the sequel into a narrative of Sunahśepa's threatened slaughter as a sacrificial victim, and of his deliverance through Viśvāmitra.

“(iii.) This immolation-legend becomes severed into two essentially distinct versions, the oldest forms of which are respectively represented by the stories in the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa, and the Rāmāyana.

“(iv.) The latter becomes eventually the predominant one; but its proper central-point is no longer the deliverance from immolation, but

¹⁵⁶ Compare also Rosen's remarks on the hymns ascribed to Sunahśepa; Rig-veda Sanhita, Annotationes, p. lv. He thinks they contain nothing which would lead to the belief that they have any connection with the legend in the Rāmāyana and Ait. Br.

the incorporation of Sunahṣepa, or (with a change of persons) of Richika, into the family of the Kuśikas. It thus becomes in the end a family-legend of the race of Viśvāmitra.

"There is thus no historical, perhaps not even a genealogical, result to be gained here. On the other hand the story obtains an important place in the circle of those narratives in which the sacerdotal literature expressed its views regarding the character and agency of Viśvāmitra."

In a passage of the Mahābhārata, Ādip. verses 3694 ff.,¹⁵⁷ where the descendants of Pūru are recorded, we find among them Bharata the son of Dushyanta (verse 3709) from whom (1) Bhumanyu, (2) Suhotra, (3) Ajamīḍha, and (4) Jahnu are said to have sprung in succession (verses 3712–3722); and the last-named king and his brothers Vrajana and Rūpin are said to have been the ancestors of the Kuśikas (verse 3723: *anrayāḥ Kuśikāḥ rājan Jahnor amita-tejasaḥ | Vrājana-Rūpiṇoḥ*), who were therefore, according to this passage also, descended from Bharata (see above, p. 354). The Mahābhārata then goes on to relate that during the reign of Samvaranya, son of Jahnu's eldest brother Riksha, the country over which he ruled was desolated by various calamities (verses 3725 f.). The narrative proceeds, verse 3727:

*Abhyagnan Bhāratāṁś chaira sapatnānām balāni cha | chālayan
rasudhān̄ chemām balena chaturanginā | abhyayāt taṁ cha Pāñchālyo
vijitya tarasā mahīm | akshauhiṇibhir daśabhiḥ sa enām samare 'jayat |
tataḥ sa-dāraḥ sāmātyah sa-putraḥ sa-suhṛijanah | rājā Saṁvaraṇas
tasmāt palāyata mahābhayāt | 3730. Sindhor nadasya mahato nikunje
nyarasat tadā | nadi-rishaya-paryante parvatasya samipataḥ | tattrā-
vasan bahūn kālān Bhāratāḥ durgam aśritāḥ | teshān̄ niratasatāṁ tatra
sahasram parivatsarān | athābhyaṅgachhad Bhāratān Vaśiṣṭho bhagavān
rishiḥ | tam āgatam prayatnena pratyudgamyābhivādyā cha | arghyam
abhyaṅharaṇāṁ tasmai te sarve Bhāratās tadā | nivedya sarvam rishaye
satkārena suvarchchase | tam āsane chopavishṭāṁ rājā vavre svayaṁ tadā |
“purohito bhavān no 'stu rājyāq prayatemahi” | 3735. “Om” ity
evaṁ Vaśiṣṭho 'pi Bhāratān pratyapadyata | athābhyaṅsinchat sāmrājye
sarva-kshattrasya Pauravam | vishāṇa-bhūtaṁ sarvasyām prithivyām iti
naḥ śrutam | Bharatādhyushitam pūrvām so 'dhyatishṭhat purottamam |
punar balibhṛitaś chaiva chakre sarva-mahīkshitāḥ |*

¹⁵⁷ Referred to by Roth, Litt. u. Gesch. des Weda, pp. 142 ff., and Wilson, Rig-veda, iii. p. 86.

"3727. And the hosts of their enemies also smote the Bhāratas. Shaking the earth with an army of four kinds of forces, the Pāñchālya chief assailed him, having rapidly conquered the earth, and vanquished him with ten complete hosts. Then king Samvarāṇa with his wives, ministers, sons, and friends, fled from that great cause of alarm; (3730) and dwelt in the thickets of the great river Sindhu (Indus), in the country bordering on the stream, and near a mountain. There the Bhāratas abode for a long time, taking refuge in a fortress. As they were dwelling there, for a thousand years, the venerable rishi Vasishṭha came to them. Going out to meet him on his arrival, and making obeisance, the Bhāratas all presented him with the *arghya* offering, shewing every honour to the glorious rishi. When he was seated the king himself solicited him, 'Be thou our priest; let us strive to regain my kingdom.' 3735. Vasishṭha consented to attach himself to the Bhāratas, and, as we have heard, invested the descendant of Pūru with the sovereignty of the entire Kshattriya race, to be a horn (to have mastery) over the whole earth. He occupied the splendid city formerly inhabited by Bhārata, and made all kings again tributary to himself."

It is remarkable that in this passage the Bhāratas, who, as we have seen, are elsewhere represented as being so closely connected with Viśvāmitra, and are in one text of the Rig-veda (vii. 33, 6) alluded to as the enemies of Vasishṭha's friends, should be here declared to have adopted the latter rishi as their priest. The account, however, need not be received as historical, or even based on any ancient tradition; and the part referring to Vasishṭha in particular may have been invented for the glorification of that rishi, or for the honour of the Bhāratas.

The 11th and 12th khandas of the second adhyāya of the Sarvasāra Upanishad (as we learn from Professor Weber's analysis in Ind. St. i. 390) relate that Viśvāmitra was instructed on the identity of breath (*prāṇa*) with Indra, by the god himself, who had been celebrated by the sage on the occasion of a sacrifice, at which he officiated as hotri-priest, in a thousand Brihati verses, and was in consequence favourably disposed towards him.

It is abundantly clear, from the details supplied in this section, that Viśvāmitra, who was a rājanya of the Bhārata and Kuśika families (Ait. Br. vii. 17 and 18), is represented by ancient Indian tradition as

the author of numerous Vedic hymns, as the domestic priest (*purohita*) of king Sudās (Nir. ii. 24), and as officiating as a hotṛi at a sacrifice of king Hariśchandra (Ait. Br. vii. 16). The Rāmāyaṇa also, as we shall see in a future section, connects him with Triśanku, the father of Hariśchandra, and makes him also contemporary with Ambarīsha; and in the first book of the same poem he is said to have visited king Daśaratha, the father of Rāma (Bālakanda, i. 20, 1 ff.). As these kings were separated from each other by very long intervals, Triśanku being a descendant of Ikshvāku in the 28th, Ambarīsha in the 44th,¹⁵⁸ Sudās in the 49th, and Daśaratha in the 60th generation (see Wilson's *Vishṇu Purāṇa*, vol. iii. pp. 284, 303, 304, 313), it is manifest that the authors of these legends either intentionally or through oversight represented Viśvāmitra, like Vasishṭha (see above), as a personage of miraculous longevity; and on either supposition a great deal that is related of him must be purely fabulous. All the authorities describe him as the son of Gāthīn or Gādhi, the Anukramanī, the *Vishṇu Purāṇa*, and the *Harivāṁśa* declaring also that Gāthīn was an incarnation of Indra, and thus asserting Viśvāmitra to be of divine descent. It is not clear whether this fable is referred to in R.V. iii. 53, 9, where Viśvāmitra is styled *derā-jāḥ*, "born of a god," or whether this verse may not have led to the invention of the story. In either case the verse can scarcely have emanated from the rishi himself; but it is more likely to be the production of one of his descendants.¹⁵⁹

¹⁵⁸ According to the Rāmāyaṇa, i. 70, 41; ii. 110, 32, Ambarīsha was only 28th from Ikshvāku. Compare Prof. Wilson's note on these genealogies, V.P. iii. 313 ff.

¹⁵⁹ The word *devajāḥ*, which, following Roth, *s.v.*, I have translated "god-born," is taken by Sāyana as = *dyotamāndnāṁ tejasāṁ janayitā*, "generator of shining lights," and appears to be regarded by him as referring to the creation of constellations by Viśvāmitra, mentioned in the Rāmāyaṇa, i. 60, 21. Prof. Wilson renders the phrase by "generator of the gods;" and remarks that "the compound is not *devajā*, 'god-born,' nor was Viśvāmitra of divine parentage" (R.V. iii. p. 85, note 4). This last remark overlooks the fact above alluded to of his father Gūdhi being represented as an incarnation of Indra, and the circumstance that Prof. Wilson himself (following Sāyana) had shortly before translated the words *prathama-jāḥ brahmaṇah* in R.V. iii. 29, 15, as applied to the Kusikas, by "the first-born of Brahmā," although from the accent *brahma* here must be neuter, and the phrase seems to mean, as I have rendered above, "the first-born of prayer." The word *jā* is given in the Nighaṇṭu as one of the synonyms of *apātya*, "offspring;" and in R.V. i. 164, 15, where it is coupled with *rishayaḥ*, the compound *devajāḥ* is explained by Sāyana as "born of the god," *i.e.* the sun, and by Prof. Wilson as "born of the gods." See

This verse (R.V. iii. 53, 9) which claims a superhuman origin for Viśvāmitra, and the following verses 11–13 of the same hymn, which assert the efficacy of his prayers, form a sort of parallel to the contents of R.V. vii. 33, where the supernatural birth of Vasishṭha (vv. 10 ff.), the potency of his intercession (vv. 2–5), and the sacred knowledge of his descendants (vv. 7 and 8), are celebrated.

As the hymns of Viśvāmitra and his descendants occupy so prominent a place in the Rig-veda Sanhitā, and as he is the alleged author of the text reputed the holiest in the entire Veda (iii. 62, 10), the *Gāyatrī par excellence*, there is no reason to doubt that, although he was a *rājanya*, he was unreservedly acknowledged by his contemporaries to be both a rishi and a priest. Nothing less than the uniform recognition and employment of the hymns handed down under his name as the productions of a genuine “seer,” could have sufficed to gain for them a place in the sacred canon.¹⁶⁰ It is true we possess little authentic information regarding the process by which the hymns of different families were admitted to this honour; but at least there is no tradition, so far as I am aware, that those of Viśvāmitra and his family were ever treated as *antilegomena*. And if we find that later works consider it necessary to represent his priestly character as a purely exceptional one, explicable only on the ground of supernatural merit acquired by ardent devotion, we must recollect that the course of ages had brought about a most material change in Indian society, that the sacerdotal function had at length become confined to the members of an exclusive caste, and that the exercise of such an office in ancient times by persons of the regal or mercantile classes had ceased to be intelligible, except upon the supposition of such extraordinary sanctity as was alleged in the case of Viśvāmitra.

It is worthy of remark that although the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa (see above) declares that Sunaśṣepa, as belonging to a priestly family, was called on to exercise the sacerdotal office immediately after his release, yet the anterior possession of divine knowledge is also ascribed to Viśvāmitra and the Gāthins, and that Sunaśṣepa is represented as suo-
also R.V. ix. 93, 1 = S.V. i. 538. (Compare Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society, for 1866, p. 387 ff.)

¹⁶⁰ That many at least of these compositions were really the work of Viśvāmitra, or his descendants, is proved, as we have seen, by the fact that their names are mentioned in them.

ceeding to this sacred lore, as well as to the regal dignity of the race on which he became engrafted.

The fact of Viśvāmitra having been both a rishi and an officiating priest, is thus, as we have seen, and if ancient tradition is to be believed, undoubted. In fact, if we look to the number of Vedic hymns ascribed to him and to his family, to the long devotion to sacerdotal functions which this fact implies, and to the apparent improbability that a person who had himself stood in the position of a king should afterwards have become a professional priest, we may find it difficult to believe that although (as he certainly was) a scion of a royal stock, he had ever himself exercised regal functions. Professor Roth remarks (Litt. u. Gesch. p. 125) that there is nothing either in the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa, or in the hymns of the Rig-veda to shew that he had ever been a king.¹⁶¹ But on the other hand, as the same writer observes (p. 126), and as we shall hereafter see, there are numerous passages in the later authorities in which the fact of his being a king is distinctly, but perhaps untruly, recorded.

It is so well known, that I need scarcely adduce any proof of the fact, that in later ages Rājanyas and Vaiśyas, though entitled to sacrifice and to study the Vedas, were no longer considered to have any right to officiate as priests on behalf of others. I may, however, cite a few texts on this subject. Manu says, i. 88 :

*Adhyāpanam adhyayanaṁ yājanaṁ yājanaṁ tathā | dānam prati-
grahām chaiva Brāhmaṇānām akalpayat | 89. Prajānām rakṣaṇān
dānam ijjā' dhyayanam eva cha | vishayeshv aprasaktiṁ cha kshattri-
yasya samāsataḥ | 90. Paśūnām rakṣaṇām dānam ijjā' dhyayanam evi-
cha | vanikpathām kusīdaṁ cha Vaiśyasya kṛishim eva cha | 91. Eka-
eva tu Sūdrasya prabhuḥ karma samādiśat | eteshām eva varṇānām śūśrū-
shām anasūyayā | 88. He (Brahmā) ordained teaching, study, sacrificing
officiating for others at sacrifices, and the giving and receiving of gift:
to be the functions of Brāhmans. 89. Protection of the people, the
giving of gifts, sacrifice, study, and non-addiction to objects of sense, h
assigned as the duties of the Kshatriya. 90. The tending of cattle,
giving of gifts, sacrifice, study, commerce, the taking of usury, and agr
culture he appointed to be the occupations of the Vaiśya. 91. But t̄l*

¹⁶¹ May not R.V. iii. 43, 5 (quoted above), however, be understood to point something of this kind ?

THE BRAHMANS AND KSHATRIYAS.

lord assigned only one duty to the Sūdra, that of serving these other three classes without grudging.”

Similarly it is said in the second of the Yajna-paribhāshā Sūtras, translated by Professor M. Müller (at the end of the ninth volume of the Journal of the German Oriental Society, p. xlvi.), “that sacrifice is proper to the three classes, the Brāhmaṇ, Rājanya, and also the Vaiśya.”¹⁶² Prof. Müller also refers to Kātyāyana’s Srauta Sūtras, of which i. 1, 5 and 6 are as follows:

5. *Angahināśrotriya - shanda - śudra - varjam* | 6. *Brāhmaṇa-rājanya-vaiśyānān śruteḥ* | “Men,¹⁶³ with the exception of those whose members

¹⁶² Prof. Müller does not give the original text.

¹⁶³ In one of these Sutras of Kātyāyana (i. 1, 4) and its commentary a curious question (one of those which the Indian authors often think it necessary to raise and to settle, in order that their treatment of a subject may be complete and exhaustive) is argued, viz. whether the lower animals and the gods have any share in the practice of Vedic observances; or whether it is confined to men. The conclusion is that the gods cannot practise these rites, as they are themselves the objects of them, and as they have already obtained heaven and the other objects of desire with a view to which they are practised (*tatra devānān devatāntarābhāvād anadhikārah* | *na hy ātmānam uddisiya tyāgah sambhavati* | *kinchā cha prīpta-svargādi-kāmāḥ* | *na cha teshām kinchid avāptavyam asti yad-arthaḥ karmāṇi kurvate* |). As regards the right of the lower animals to sacrifice, although the point is decided against them on the ground of their only “looking to what is near at hand, and not to the rewards of a future world” (*te hy āsannam eva chetayante na pāralaukikam phalam*); still it is considered necessary seriously to obviate a presumption in their favour that they seek to enjoy pleasure and avoid pain, and even appear to indicate their desire for the happiness of another world by seeming to observe some of the Vedic prescriptions: “*Nanu uktaṁ śunas’ chaturdasyūm upavāsa-darśanāt syenasya cha ashṭāmyām upavāsa-darśanāch cha te ‘pi pāralaukikām jānanti*” iti | *tat katham aragamyate “te dharmaṁ upavasanti”* iti | *ye hi veda-smṛiti-purāṇādikum paṭhanti te eva jānanti yad “anena karmāṇā idam phalam amutra prāpsyate”* iti | *na cha ete vedādikam paṭhanti nāpy anyebhyāḥ īgamayaanti* | *tena sāstrārtham avidvāṁsaḥ phalam āmushnikam akāmayantāḥ kathām tat-sādhanām karma kuryāt* | *tasmat na dharmārtham upavasanti* iti | *kimarthaḥ tarhi eteshām upavāsaḥ* | *uchyate* | *rogād aruchir eshām* | *tarhi niyatākāle kathām rogaḥ* | *uchyate* | *niyata-kālāḥ api rogaḥ bhavanti yathā tritīyaka-chāturthihādi-jvarūḥ* | *adhanās cha ete* | “But do not some say that ‘from a dog having been noticed to fast on the fourteenth day of the month, and a hawk on the eighth, they also have a knowledge of matters connected with a future life?’ But how is it known that these dogs and hawks fast from religious motives? For it is only those who read the Vedas, Sārritis, Purāṇas, etc., who are aware that by means of such and such observances, such and such rewards will be obtained in another world. But these animals neither read the sacred books for themselves, nor ascertain their contents from others. How then, ignorant as they are of the contents of the scriptures, and devoid of any desire for future rewards, can they perform those rites which are the means of attaining them? It is therefore to be concluded that they do not fast from religious motives. But why, then, do they fast? We reply, because from sickness they have a disinclu-

are defective, those who have not read the Veda, eunuchs, and Sūdras have a right to sacrifice. 6. It is Brāhmans, Rājanyas, and Vaiśyas (only who) according to the Veda (possess this privilege).¹⁶⁴

ation for food. But how do they happen to be sick on certain fixed days? We answer there are also certain diseases which occur on fixed days, as tertian and quartan agues. Another reason why the lower animals cannot sacrifice is that they are destitute of wealth (and so unable to provide the necessary materials)."

¹⁶⁴ "And yet," Prof. Müller remarks (*ibid.*), "concessions were made (to other and lower classes) at an early period. One of the best known cases is that of the Rathakāra. Then the Nishādasthapati, though a Nishāda chief and not belonging to the three highest classes was admitted to great sacrifices, *e.g.* to the gāvedhukacharu." The S'atap. Br. i. 1, 4, 12, has the following words: *Tāni vai etāni chatvāri vāchāḥ "ehi" iti brāhmaṇasya "āgahi" "ādrava" vaiśyasya cha rājanyabandhoḥ cha "ādhāva" iti sūdrasya |* "[In the formula, *ha*riṣkṛid *ehi*, 'come, o oblation-maker,' referred to in the previous paragraph, and its modifications] these four (different) words are employed to express 'come:' *ehi*, 'come,' in the case of a Brāhmaṇ; *āgahi*, 'come hither,' in the case of a Vaiśya; *ādrava*, 'hasten hither,' in the case of a Rājanya-bandhu, and *ādhāva*, 'run hither,' in the case of a Sūdra." On this Prof. Weber remarks, in a note on his translation of the first adhyāya of the first book of the S'. P. Br. (*Journ. Germ. Cr. Soc.* iv. p. 301): "The entire passage is of great importance, as it shews (in opposition to what Roth says in the first vol. of this Journal p. 83) that the Sūdras were then admitted to the holy sacrifices of the Arians, and understood their speech, even if they did not speak it. The latter point cannot certainly be assumed as a necessary consequence, but it is highly probable; and I consequently incline to the view of those who regard the Sūdras as an Arian tribe which immigrated into India before the others." See above, p. 141, note 251, and Ind. Stud. ii. 194, note, where Prof. Weber refers to the Mahābhārata, S'āntip. verse 2304 ff. which are as follows: *Svāhākāra-vuṣṭaṭkārau mantraḥ sūdre na vidyate | tasnāch chhūdraḥ pākayajnair yajetāvratavān svayam | pūrṇapātramayīm āhūl pākayajnasya dakshinām | sūdrah Paijavano nūma sahasrāṇīm sataīm dudau | Aindrāgnyenā vidhānenā dakshinām iti nah śrutam |* "The svāhākāra, and the vuṣṭaṭkāra, and the mantras do not belong to a Sūdra. Wherefore let a man of this class sacrifice with pākayajnas, being incapacitated for (Vedic) rites (*śrauta-eratopāya-hīnaḥ* Comm.). They say that the gift (*dakshinā*) proper for a pākayajna consists of a full dish (*pūrṇapātramayī*). A Sūdra called Paijavana gave as a present a hundred thousand (of these pūrṇapātras) after the Aindrāgnya rule." Here, says Prof. Weber, "the remarkable tradition is recorded that Paijavana, *i.e.* Sudās, who was so famous for his sacrifices, and who is celebrated in the Rig-veda as the patron of Viśvāmitra and enemy of Vasishṭha, was a Sūdra." In the Bhāgavata Purāṇa, vii. 11, 24, the duties of a Sūdra are described to be "submissiveness, purity, honest service to his master, sacrifice without mantras, abstinence from theft, truth, and the protection of cows and Brāhmans" (*sūdrasya sannatīḥ śeucchām sevā svūminy amāyayā | amantrayajno hy ateiyām saffyām go-vipra-rakhaṇam |*). The Commentator defines *amantrayajnaḥ* thus: *nampūrṇeṇaiva pancha-yajñānushṭhānam*, "the practice of the five sacrifices with observance," and quotes Yujnavalkya. See also Wilson's Vishnu Purāṇa, vol. iii. p. 87, and notes; Müller's *Anc. Sansk. Lit.* p. 203; the same author's *Essay*, at the end of the ninth vol. of the *Journ. Germ. Or. Soc.* p. lxxiii.; and Bohtlingk and Roth's *Lexicon*. *to. sōkauvinā*.

According to the Ait. Br. vii. 19, "the Brāhmaṇ alone of the four castes has the right of consuming things offered in sacrifice" (*etāḥ vai prajāḥ hutādo yad brāhmaṇāḥ | atha etāḥ ahutādo yad rājanyo vaiśyaḥ śūdraḥ*). And yet, as Prof. Müller observes, it is said in the Sātap. Br. v. 5, 4, 9 : *Chatvāro vai varnāḥ brāhmaṇo rājanyo vaiśyaḥ śūdraḥ na ha eteshāṁ ekaśchana bhavati yaḥ somaṁ vamati | sa yad ha eteshāṁ ekaśchit syāt syād ha eva prāyaśchittiḥ |* "There are four classes, the Brāhmaṇ, Rājanya, Vaiśya, and Śūdra. There is no one of these who ~~never~~ commits (*i.e.*, I suppose, dislikes) the soma. If anyone of them however should do so, let there be an atonement."

Professor Weber, by whom also these words are quoted (Ind. St. x. 12), remarks that "they leave open the possibility of Rājanas, Vaiśyas, and even Śūdras partaking of the soma, the only consequence being that they must as an expiation perform the Sāutrāmanī rite."

In the twenty-first of the Yajna-paribhāṣā Sūtras, translated by Müller, p. xlvi., it is declared that the priestly dignity belongs to the Brāhmaṇs; and it is laid down by the Indian authorities that even when the sacrifice is of a kind intended exclusively for Kshattriyas, the priest must still be a Brāhmaṇ and not a Kshattriya, the reason being that men of the former class only can eat the remains of the sacrifice (see Kātyāyana's Sr. Sūtras, i. 2, 8): *Brāhmaṇāḥ ritrijo bhaksha-pratishedhāḥ tarayoh*, "the Brāhmaṇs only are priests, because the other two castes are forbidden to eat (the remains of the sacrifice)". See also Weber, Ind. St. x. pp. 17 and 31, and the passages of the Ait. Br. viii. 24 and 27, referred to in pages 30 and 31 : 24. *Na ha vai apurohitasya rājno devāḥ annam adanti | tasmād rājā 'yakshamāṇo brāhmaṇam puro dadhīta |* "The gods do not eat the food offered by a king who has no purohita. Wherefore (even) when not about to sacrifice, the king should put forward a Brāhmaṇ (as his domestic priest)." 27. *Yo ha vai trīṇi purohītāṁs trīṇi purodhātṛīṇi reda sa brāhmaṇāḥ purohītāḥ | sa vadeta purodhāyai | Agnir vāva purohītāḥ prithīrī purodhātā vāyur vāra purohīto 'ntariksham purodhātā ādityo vāva purohīto dyauḥ purodhātā | esha ha vai purohīto yaḥ evāṁ veda atha sa tirohīto yaḥ evāṁ na veda | tasya rājā mitrāṁ bhavati dvishantam apabādhate | yasyaivāṁ vidvān brāhmaṇo rāshṭra-gopāḥ purohītāḥ | kshattrēṇa kshattrāṁ jayati balena balam asनुते | yasyaivāṁ vidvān brāhmaṇo rāshṭra-gopāḥ purohītāḥ | tasmai*

rāshṭra-gopāḥ purohitāḥ | “The Brāhmaṇa who knows the three purohitas, and their three appointers, is a (proper) purohita, and should be nominated to this office. Agni is one purohita, and the earth appoints him; Vāyu another, and the air appoints him; the Sun is a third, and the sky appoints him. He who knows this is a (proper) purohita; and he who does not know this is to be rejected. (Another) king becomes the friend of the prince who has a Brāhmaṇa possessing such knowledge for his purohita and the protector of his realm; and he vanquishes his enemy. He who has a Brāhmaṇa possessing etc. (as above) conquers (another’s) regal power by (his own) regal power, and acquires another’s force by (his own) force. With him who has a Brāhmaṇa etc. (as above) the people are openly united and in harmony.”

I add another passage from the same Brāhmaṇa, which might also have been properly introduced in an earlier chapter of this work (chapt. i. sect. iii.) as it relates to the creation of the four castes:

Ait. Br. vii. 19. *Prajāpatir yajnam asrijata* | *yajnaṁ śrīṣṭam anu brahma-kshattre asrijyetām* | *brahma-kshattre anu drayyaḥ prajāḥ asrijyanta hutādaś cha ahutādaś cha brahma eva anu hutāduḥ kshattram anv ahutādaḥ* | *etāḥ vai prajāḥ hutādo yad brāhmaṇāḥ* | *atha etōḥ ahutādo yad rājanya vaiśyaḥ śūdraḥ* | *tābhyo yajnaḥ udakrāmat* | *tam brahma-kshattre anraitāṁ yāny eva brahmaṇāḥ āyudhāni tair brahma anrait yāni kshattrasya taṁ (? tāḥ) kshattram* | *etāni vai brahmaṇāḥ āyudhāni yad yajnāyudhāni* | *atha etāni kshattrasya āyudhāni yad asra-rathaḥ karachaḥ išu-dhanva* | *taṁ kshattram ananrāpya nyarattata* | *āyudhebhyo ha sma asya vijamānah parāṇ eva eti* | *atha enam brahma anrait* | *tam īpnot* | *tam īptvā parastād nirudhya atishṭhat* | *sa īptaḥ parastād niruddhas tishṭhan jnātvā svāny āyudhāni brahma upāvarttata* | *tasmād ha apy etarhi yajno brahmaṇy eva brāhmaṇeshu pratishṭhitāḥ* | *atha enat kshattram anvāgachhat tad abravīd “upa mā asmin yajne hrayasva” iti* | *tat “tathā” ity abravit “tad vai nidhāya svāny āyudhāni brahmaṇāḥ eva āyudhair brahmaṇo rūpena brahma bhūtvā yajnam upāvarttata* | *“tathā” iti tat kshattrāṇi nidhāya svāny āyudhāni brahmaṇāḥ eva āyudhair brahmaṇo rūpena brahma bhūtvā yajnam upāvarttata* | *tasmād ha apy etarhi kshattrīgo yajamāno nidhāya eva svāny āyudhāni brahmaṇāḥ eva āyudhair brahmaṇo rūpena brahma bhūtvā yajnam upāvarttata* |

“Prajāpati created sacrifice. After sacrifice, Brāhmāṇ (sacred know-

ledge) and Kshättra (regal power)¹⁶⁵ were created. After these, two kinds of creatures were formed, viz. those who eat, and those who do not eat, oblations. After Brähmän came the eaters of oblations, and after Kshättra those who do not eat them. These are the eaters of oblations, viz. the Brähmans. Those who do not eat them are the Rājanya, the Vaiśya, and the Sūdra. From these creatures sacrifice departed. Brähmän and Kshättra followed it, Brähmän with the implements proper to itself, and Kshättra with those which are proper to itself. The implements of Brähmän are the same as those of sacrifice,¹⁶⁶ while those of Kshättra are a horse-chariot,¹⁶⁷ armour, and a bow and arrows. Kshättra turned back, not having found the sacrifice; which turns aside afraid of the implements of Kshättra. Brähmän followed after it, and reached it; and having done so, stood beyond, and intercepting it. Being thus found and intercepted, sacrifice, standing still and recognizing its own implements, approached to Brähmän. Wherefore now also sacrifice depends upon Brähmän, upon the Brähmans. Kshättra then followed Brähmän, and said, 'invite me¹⁶⁷ (too to participate) in this sacrifice.' Brähmän replied, 'so be it: then laying aside thy own implements, approach the sacrifice with the implements of Brähmän,¹⁶⁸ in the form of Brähmän, and having become Brähmän.'¹⁶⁹

¹⁶⁵ The two principles or functions represented by the Brähmans and Kshattriyas respectively.

¹⁶⁶ See Weber, Indische Studien, ix. p. 318.

¹⁶⁷ See Weber, in the same page as last quoted.

¹⁶⁸ This idea may be further illustrated by a reference to several passages adduced by Professor Weber, Ind. St. x. 17, who remarks: "Hence every Rājanya and Vaiśya becomes through the consecration for sacrifice (*dīkṣhā*) a Brähman during its continuance, and is to be addressed as such in the formula employed," and cites S. P. Br. iii. 2, 1, 39 f., part of which has been already quoted above, in p. 136, note; and also Ait. Br. vii. 23: *Sa ha dīkṣhamāṇaḥ eva brāhmaṇatām abhyupaiti* | "He a king, when consecrated, enters into the condition of a Brähman." See the rest of the section and sections 24, 25, and 31 in Dr. Haug's translation. The S.P.Br. xiii. 4, 1, 3, says, in opposition to the opinion of some, that an *asvamedha*, which is a sacrifice proper to Rājanyas, should be begun in summer, which is their season: *tad vai vasante eva abhyūrabheta* | *vasanto vai brāhmaṇasya rituḥ* | *yāḥ u vai kāś cha yajate brāhmaṇibhūya iva eva yajate* | "Let him commence in spring, which is the Brähman's season. Whosoever sacrifices does so after having as it were become a Brähman." So too Kātyuyana says in his S'rāuta Sūtras vii. 4, 12: "*Brāhmaṇa*" *ity eva vaiśya-rājanya-yayor apि* | "The word Brähmana is to be addressed to a Vaiśya and a Rājanya also." On which the Commentator annotates: *Vaiśya-rājanya-yayor apि yajne "dīkṣhito 'yam brāhmaṇah"* *ity eva vaktavyam* | *na "dīkṣhito 'yam kshattriyo vaiśyo vā"* *iti* | "The formula 'This Brähman has been consecrated' is to be used at the sacrifice of a Vaiśya

Kshättra rejoined, ‘Be it so,’ and, laying aside its own implements, approached the sacrifice with those of Brähmän, in the form of Brähmän, and having become Brähmän. Wherefore now also a Kshattriya when sacrificing, laying aside his own implements, approaches the sacrifice with those of Brähmän, in the form of Brähmän, and having become Brähmän.”

The Mahābhārata, Sāntip. verses 2280 f. distinctly defines the duty of a Kshattriya in reference to sacrifice and sacred study : *Kshattriya-
syāpi yo dharmas tam te rakshyāmi Bhārata | dadyād rājan na yācheta |
yajeta na cha yājayet | nādhyāpayed adhīyīta prajās cha paripālayet |* “I will tell thee also the duties of a Kshattriya. Let him give, and not ask (gifts); let him sacrifice, but not officiate for others at sacrifices; let him not teach, but study; and let him protect the people.”

It is clear that these passages which restrict the right of officiating ministerially at sacrifices to the members of the Brahmanical order,¹⁶⁹ represent a very different state of opinion and practice from that which prevailed in the earlier Vedic age, when Viśvāmitra, a Rājanya, and his relatives, were highly esteemed as the authors of sacred poetry, and were considered as perfectly authorized to exercise sacerdotal functions.

The result of the conflict between the opposing interests represented by Vasishṭha and Viśvāmitra respectively, is thus described by Professor and a Rājanya also; and not the words ‘this Rājanya, or this Vais'ya, has been consecrated.’”

¹⁶⁹ It appears from Arrian that the Greeks were correctly informed of this prerogative of the Brāhmans. He says, Indica, ch. xi. : Καὶ ὅστις δὲ ιδίᾳ θέει, ἔξηγητής ἀντὶ τῆς θυσίης τῶν τις σοφιστῶν τούτων γίνεται, ὡς ὅνκι ἀν οὐλως κεχαρισμένα τοῖς θεοῖς θύσαντας. “And whosoever sacrifices in private has one of these sophists” (so the highest of the classes, here said to be seven in number, is designated) “as director of the ceremony, since sacrifice could not otherwise be offered acceptably to the gods.” Arrian makes another assertion (*ibid.* xii.) which, if applied to the time when he wrote (in the second Christian century), is not equally correct. After observing that the several classes were not allowed to intermarry, nor to practice two professions, nor to pass from one class into another, he adds: Μόνον σφίσιν αείται σοφιστὴν ἐκ παντὸς γένεος γενέσθαι· διει ὁ μαλθακὰ τοῖς σοφιστῆσιν έισι τὰ πρῆγματα, ἀλλὰ πάντων ταλαιπωρότατα. “Only it is permitted to a person of any class among them to become a sophist; for the life of that class is not luxurious, but the most toilsome of all.” However indubitably true the first part of this sentence may have been in the age of Viśvāmitra, it cannot be correctly predicated of the age of Arrian, or even of the period when India was invaded by Alexander the Great. The mistake may have arisen from confounding the Buddhists with the Brāhmans, or from supposing that all the Brahmanical Indians, who adopted an ascetic life, were regarded as “sophists.”

Roth at the close of his work on the literature and history of the Veda, which has been so often quoted, p. 141 : "Vasishtha, in whom the future position of the Brahmans is principally foreshadowed, occupies also a far higher place in the recollections of the succeeding centuries than his martial rival; and the latter succumbs in the conflict out of which the holy race of Brahmarshi was to emerge. Vasishtha is the sacerdotal hero of the new order of things. In Viśvāmitra the ancient condition of military shepherd-life in the Punjab is thrown back for ever into the distance. This is the general historical signification of the contest between the two Vedic families, of which the literature of all the succeeding periods has preserved the recollection."

SECT. VIIa—Do the details in the last two sections enable us to decide in what relation Vasishtha and Viśvāmitra stood to each other as priests of Sudās?

It appears from the data supplied in the two preceding sections that both Vasishtha and Viśvāmitra are represented as priests of a king called Sudās. This is shewn, as regards the former rishi (see pp. 319 ff., above), by R.V. vii. 18, 4, 5, and 21–25; and vii. 33, 1–6, where he is said to have interceded with Indra for Sudās, who, as appears from verse 25 of the second of these hymns, was the son of Pijavana. A similar relation is shewn by R.V. iii. 53, 9–13 to have subsisted between Viśvāmitra and Sudās (see above, p. 342); and although Sudās is not in that passage identified with the king who was Vasishtha's patron, by the addition of his patronymic, we are told in the Nirukta, ii. 24, that he was the same person, the son of Pijavana. There is therefore no doubt that, according to ancient tradition, the two rishis were both priests of the same prince. It further appears that the Bharatas, with whom, as we have seen, Viśvāmitra was connected, are in R.V. vii. 33, 6 referred to as in hostility with Sudās and his priest. Are we then to conclude that the one set of facts excludes the other—that the two rishis could not both have been the family-priests of Sudās?

There is no reason to arrive at such an inference. Vasishtha and Viśvāmitra could not, indeed, have been the domestic priests of Sudās ^{but} at one and the same period. But they may have been so at different ^{times}

times ; and the one may have supplanted the other. It is, however, very difficult to derive from the imperfect materials supplied in the passages to which I have referred any clear conception of the shape and course which the contest between these two rivals took, or to fix the periods at which they respectively enjoyed their patron's favour. Prof. Roth thinks¹⁷⁰ that some light is thrown on this obscure subject by the different parts of the 53rd hymn of the third mandala of the Rig-veda. This composition, as it stands, contains, as he considers, fragments of hymns by Viśvāmitra or his descendants, of different dates ; and the verses (9-13), in which that rishi represents himself and the Kauśikas¹⁷¹, as being the priests of Sudās, are, in his opinion, earlier than the concluding verses (21-24),¹⁷¹ which consist of imprecations directed against Vasishṭha. These last verses, he remarks, contain an expression of wounded pride, and threaten vengeance against an enemy who had come into possession of some power or dignity which Viśvāmitra himself had previously enjoyed. And as we find from one of his hymns (the 53rd) that he and his adherents had at one time led Sudās to victory, and enjoyed a corresponding consideration ;—while from Vasishṭha's hymns it is clear that he and his family had also been elevated in consequence of similar claims to a like position ;—it would seem to result that Viśvāmitra had cursed Vasishṭha for this very reason that he had been supplanted by him. The former with his Kuśikas had through the growing influence of his rival been driven away by Sudās to the Bharatas the enemies of that prince and of the Tritsus ; and then

¹⁷⁰ See Litt. und Gesch. des Weda, pp. 121 ff.

¹⁷¹ I have (above, p. 343) characterized these verses as obscure and have left them untranslated. The portions of the following version which are printed in italics are doubtful : verse 22. " He (or, it) vexes (*turns the edge of*) even an axe; and breaks even a *sword*. A *seething* cauldron, even, o Indra, when *over-heated*, casts out foam. 23. O men, no notice is taken of the arrow. They lead away the *intelligent* (*lodha*) looking upon him as a beast. Men do not, however, pit a *hack* to run against a racer; they do not lead an ass before horses. 24. These sons of Bharata, o Indra, desire separation, not vicinity. They constantly urge the horse *as if to a distance*; they carry about the *bow* in the battle." The reader may consult Prof. Wilson's translation R.V. vol. iii. p. 89 f., as well as Roth's Litt. u. Gesch. des Weda, p. 109 f. In his Illustrations of the Nirukta, p. 42, Roth conjectures that both *lodha* and *pai'u*, in verse 23, may denote animals of different natures, and that the clause may mean something to the same effect as "they look on the wolf as if it were a hare." In his Lexicon, s.v. *pai'u*, he takes that word to denote a head of cattle (ein Stück Vieh) as a term of contempt. He takes *jyāvāja*, in verse 24, to mean " having the impulsive force (?) (*Schnell-Kraft*) of a bow-string."

vowed vengeance against their enemies. Roth remarks that if this conjecture appears too bold, which he does not allow, there is no alternative but to regard verses 9–11 of R.V. iii. 53, as interpolated, and to hold that Viśvāmitra had always been allied with the Bharatas. But, as he urges, in a period such as that which the hymns of the Veda represent to us—a time of feud and foray among the small neighbouring tribes, when the power of the leaders of families and petty chiefs was unlimited, when we observe that the ten kings were allied against Sudās—in a period of subdivided dominion like this it would be far more surprising to find a family so favoured by the gods as that of Viśvāmitra or Vasishṭha in continued and undisturbed possession of influence over any one of these chieftains, than to see mutual aggression, hostility, and vindictiveness, prevailing even among families and clans united to one another by community of language and manners. It is further evident from later tradition, as Roth remarks, that Vasishṭha and his family had not always been the objects of Sudās's favour; but had, on the contrary, been at some time or other sufferers from his enmity or that of his house; and in proof of this he refers to the passage which has been cited above (p. 328) from Sāyana's note on R.V. vii. 32, and the Sātyāyana and Tāṇḍya Brāhmaṇas, as there quoted; and also to the 176th adhyāya of the Ādiparvan of the Mahābhārata, verses 6696 ff., which will be adduced in a future section.

According to Roth's view (p. 124) the alienation between Sudās and Vasishṭha fomented by Viśvāmitra was only of temporary duration, and we must, therefore, understand that according to his view, the former rishi and his family remained eventually victors in the contest for influence between themselves and their rivals.

Professor Weber, in a note appended to an article by Dr. A. Kuhn in page 120 of the first volume of his *Indische Studien*, expresses a different opinion. "The testimonies," he says, "adduced by Roth, pp. 122 ff., according to which Sudās appears in the Epic age as hostile to Brahmanical interests, stand in opposition to his assertion that Vasishṭha's family finally banished Viśvāmitra and the Kuśikas from the court of that prince. The enmity between the latter and Vasishṭha, the prototype of Brahmanhood, is thus by no means of temporary duration (Roth, p. 124), but the very contrary." The passages cited by Roth, which Weber here claims as supporting his

own view, are Manu, vii. 41 (see above, p. 296), the Anukramanī with the Sātyāyana and Tāndya Brāhmaṇas quoted in p. 328, and the 126th and following sections of the Ādip. of the M. Bh. which will be adduced hereafter. To these may be added the text from the Kaushitakī Brāhmaṇa, cited in p. 328. If Sudās became ultimately reconciled to Vasishṭha, and re-instated him and his relatives in their position of court priests, to the exclusion of the rival family of Viśvāmitra, it seems hard to understand, according to Professor Weber's argument, how that prince's name should have been handed down by tradition as one of the most prominent examples of impiety displayed in resistance to Brahmanical pretensions. It is, however, to be observed that, except in the text of Manu, it is the descendants of Sudās, and not the king himself, who are charged with the outrages committed against Vasishṭha's family; and that in the passage of the M. Bh. above referred to (Ādip. vv. 7669 ff.) the son of Sudās is represented as becoming ultimately reconciled to Vasishṭha.¹⁷² And if the passages, which have been cited above from the Rig-veda (pp. 330 f.) in allusion to Sudās's deliverance by the gods, refer to a real person, and to the

¹⁷² It is also worthy of remark that the Anusūsanap. of the M. Bh. contains a conversation between Vasishṭha and Saudāsa (the son, or one of the descendants of, Sudās) about the pre-eminent purity and excellence of cows, verse 3732 : *Etasmīn eva kūle tu Vaśiṣṭham rishi-sattamam | Ikshvāku-vamsajo rājā Saudāso vudatām vurah | saceva-loka-charām siddham brahma-korām sanātanam | purohitam abhiprashṭum abhivādyopachakrame | Saudāsa uvācha | trailekoye bhagaran kimsrit paritrām kathayate 'ngha | yat kīrttayan sadū marītyah prāpnuyāt punyam uttamam |* "At this time the eloquent king Saudāsa, sprung from the race of Ikshvāku, proceeded, after salutation, to make an enquiry of his family-priest Vasishṭha, the eternal saint, the most excellent of rishis, who was able to traverse all the world, and was a treasure of sacred knowledge : 'What, o venerable and sinless man, is declared to be the purest thing in the three worlds, by constantly celebrating which one may acquire the highest merit ?'" Vasishṭha in reply expatiates at great length on the merit resulting from bestowing cows, and ascribes to these animals some wonderful properties, as that they are the "support of all beings" (*pratishṭhā bhūtānām*, verse 3736), "the present and the future" (*gōvō bhūtām cha bhavyām cha*, 3737), and describes the cow as "pervading the universe, mother of the past and future" (*yayā survam idāñ tyāptam jagat uthāvara-jangamam | tām dhenūm śirasā vande bhūta-bharyanya mātarām*, 3799). The sequel is thus told in verse 3801 : *Varam idam iti bhūmido (bhūmipo?) eichintya pravaram risher vachanām tato mahātmā | vyasrijata niyatātmavān dvijebhyo subahu cha go-dhanam ūptavāns lokūn |* "The great, self-subduing king, considering that these words of the rishi were most excellent, lavished on the Brāhmans very great wealth in the shape of cows, and obtained the worlds."—So here we find the son of Saudāsa extolled as a saint.

same individual with whom we are at present concerned, they are difficult to reconcile with these traditions in the Brāhmaṇas, Mahābhārata, and Purāṇas; inasmuch as they are not said to be the productions of Viśvāmitra or his descendants, and as they necessarily imply that Sudās was a pious prince who worshipped the popular deities in the way prescribed by the rishis by whom he was commemorated, since the latter would not otherwise have celebrated him in their hymns as a conspicuous object of divine favour. Tradition, too, as we have seen (p. 268) represents Sudās to have been the author of a Vedic hymn. The verses of the 104th hymn of the seventh book which I have quoted (above, p. 327) do not appear to contribute any further aid towards the solution of the question under consideration. Assuming that they contain a curse aimed at Viśvāmitra we have no means of ascertaining when they were uttered; whether the charge preferred against Vasishṭha preceeded or followed the ascendancy of his rival.

We seem, therefore, to possess no sufficient data for settling the question of the relations in which Vasishṭha and Viśvāmitra respectively stood to king Sudās, further than that they both appear, from the hymns of the Rig-veda, to have been, at one period or another, his family priests; but which of the two was the first, and which the last, to enjoy the king's favour, must, according to all appearance, remain a mystery.

SECT. VIII.—*Story of Triśanku.*

I shall now proceed to adduce the different legends in the Purāṇas, the Rāmāyaṇa, and the Mahābhārata, in which Vaśishṭha and Viśvāmitra are represented as coming into conflict.

In the third chapter of the fourth book of the Vishṇu Purāṇa (Wilson, vol. iii. pp. 284 ff.) we find a story about a king Satyavrata, called also Triśanku, the 26th in descent from Ikshvāku, who had become degraded to the condition of a Chandāla, about whom it is briefly related, iv. 3, 13 : *Drāḍaśa-vṛshkhyāṁ anārvishṭyāṁ Viśvāmitra - kalatrāpatya - poshanār-thūṁ chandāla - pratigraha - parihaṇāya cha Jāhnavi - tīra - nyagrodhe mṛiga-māṇsam anudinam babandha | 14. Paritujñena cha Viśvāmitrenā sa-śarīraḥ svargam aropitaḥ |* “During a twelve years' drought he daily suspended deer's flesh for the support of Viśvāmitra's wife and children

on a nyagrodha-tree on the banks of the Ganges, intending by this means to spare them the (humiliation of) receiving a gift from a Chandāla; and was in consequence raised bodily to heaven by Viśvāmitra, who was gratified (with his conduct).¹⁷³"

This story is told at greater length in the Harivāṁśa (sections 12 and 13) where Vasishṭha also is introduced. I have already (p. 337) remarked on the super-human longevity ascribed to this sage, who is represented as contemporary both with Ikshvāku, and with his descendants down to the sixty-first generation. But Indian mythology, with its boundless resources in supernatural machinery, and in the doctrine of transmigration, can reconcile all discrepancies, and explain away all anachronisms, making any sage re-appear at any juncture when his presence may be required, another and yet the same.

The Harivāṁśa states that Satyavrata (Trisanku) had been expelled from his home by his father for the offence of carrying off the young wife of one of the citizens under the influence of a criminal passion (verse 718. *Yena bhāryyā hṛitā pūrram kṛitodrāhā parasya rai* | 720. *Jahāra kāmāt kanyām sa kasyachit purarāśināḥ*); and that Vasishṭha did not interfere to prevent his banishment. His father retired to the woods to live as a hermit. In consequence of the wickedness which had been committed, Indra did not rain for a period of twelve years. At that time Viśvāmitra had left his wife and children and gone to practice austerities on the sea-shore. His wife, driven to extremity by want, was on the point of selling her second son for a hundred cows, in order to support the others; but this arrangement was stopped by the intervention of Satyavrata, who liberated the son when bound,¹⁷⁴ and

¹⁷³ In the Mahābh. Sāntip. verses 5330 ff. (referred to by Weber, Ind. St. i. 475, note) there is a story of Viśvāmitra determining to eat dog's flesh in a period of famine between the end of the Tretā-age and the beginning of the Dvāpara; and holding a conversation on this subject with a Chandāla. The circumstance is referred to in Manu, x. 108: *Kehudhārttaś chāttum abhyāgad Viśvāmitraḥ īva-jāghānīm | chan-dāla-hastād udūya dharmādhharma-vichakṣhanāḥ* | "And Viśvāmitra, who knew right and wrong, resolved to eat a dog's thigh, taking it from the hand of a Chandāla."

¹⁷⁴ See in Ind. Stud. ii. 121 ff. Professor Roth's remarks on the peculiar relation in which he regards this story as standing to that of S'unaśepa, as given in the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa. The various incidents in the one present in many respects a curious parallel to those of the other, which he considers can hardly be accidental; and he thinks this version of the legend of Trisanku may have arisen out of a transformation and distortion of that of S'unaśepa.

[✓] maintained the family by providing them with the flesh of wild animals: and according to his father's injunction, consecrated himself for the performance of a silent penance for twelve years (verse 732). *Upāṁśa - vratam āsthāya dīkshām dvādaśa - vārshikīm | pitur niyogād avahat tasmin vana-gate nripe*). The story proceeds thus :

Verse 733. *Ayodhyām chaiva rāshṭraṁ cha tathāvāntakṣipuram munih | yājyopādhyāya-sambandhād Vaśishṭhah paryarakṣata | Satyavrataḥ tu balyād vai bhāvino 'rthasya vā balāt | Vaśishṭhe 'bhyadhiकम manyūm dhārayāmāsa nityadā | 735. Pitrā hi tam tadā rājyāt tyajyamānām svam ātmajam | na vārayāmāsa munir Vaśishṭhah kāraṇena ha | pāṇi-grahana-mantrānām nishkṛhā syāt saptame pade | na cha Satyavrataḥ tas-mād dhīritavān saptame pade | jūnan dharmān Vaśishṭhas tu na mām trālīti Bhārata | Satyavrataḥ tadā roshañ Vaśishṭhe manasā 'karot | guṇa-buddhyā tu bhagavān Vaśishṭhah kṛitavāṁs tadā | na cha Satyavrataḥ tasya tam upāṁśum abudhyata | 740. Tena tv idānīṁ vahatā dīkshām tām durrāhām bhuvi | "kulasya nishkṛitis tāta kṛitā sā vai bhaved" iti | na tam Vaśishṭho bhagavān pitrā tyaktaṁ nyavārayat | abhishekshyāmy aham putram asyety evam matir muneḥ | sa tu dvādaśa-vanashāṇī tām dīkshām udvahan balī | avidyamāne māṁse tu Vaśishṭhasya mahātmanah | sarva-kāma-dugdhām dogdhrīm dadarśa sa nripātmajah | tām vai krodhaś cha mohāch cha śramāch chaiva kshudhārditah | daśa-dharma-gato rājā jaghāna Janamejaya | 745. Tach cha māṁsam svayaṁ chaiva Viśvāmitrasya chātmajān | bhojayāmāsa tach ehrutvā Vaśishṭho 'py asya chukrudhe | 750. Viśvāmitras tu dārānām āgato bharane kṛite | sa tu tasmai varam prādād munih prītas Triśankave | chhandyamāno varenātha varāñ varve nripātmajah | saśarīro vraje stargam ity evaṁ yāchito varāḥ | anārrishṭi-bhaye tasmin gate dvādaśa-vārshike | pitrye 'bhishichya rājye tu yājyāmāsa tam munih | mishatām devatānān cha Vaśishṭhasya cha Kauśikāḥ | saśarīraṁ taḍā tam tu divam āropayat prabhuḥ |*

733. " Meanwhile Vaśishṭha, from the relation subsisting between the king (Satyavrata's father) and himself, as disciple¹⁷⁵ and spiritual preceptor, governed the city of Ayodhyā, the country, and the interior apartments of the royal palace. But Satyavrata, whether through folly or the force of destiny, cherished constantly an increased indignation-against Vaśishṭha, who for a (proper) reason had not interposed to pre-

¹⁷⁵ Literally "the person in whose behalf sacrifice was to be performed."

vent his exclusion from the royal power by his father. ‘The formulas of the marriage ceremonial are only binding,’ said Satyavrata, ‘when the seventh step has been taken,¹⁷⁶ and this had not been done when I seized the damsel: still Vaśishṭha, who knows the precepts of the law, does not come to my aid.’ Thus Satyavrata was incensed in his mind against Vaśishṭha, who, however, had acted from a sense of what was right. Nor did Satyavrata understand (the propriety of) that silent penance imposed upon him by his father. 740. When he had supported this arduous rite, (he supposed that) he had redeemed his family position. The venerable muni Vaśishṭha did not, however, (as has been said) prevent his father from setting him aside, but resolved to install his son as king. When the powerful prince Satyavrata had endured the penance for twelve years, he beheld, when he was without flesh to eat, the milch cow of Vaśishṭha which yielded all objects of desire; and under the influence of anger, delusion, and exhaustion, distressed by hunger, and failing in the ten duties [the opposites of which are then enumerated] he slew her (745) and both partook of her flesh himself, and gave it to Viśvāmitra’s sons to eat. Vaśishṭha hearing of this, became incensed against him,” and imposed on him the name of Triśanku as he had committed three sins (verses 747-749). “750. On his return home, Viśvāmitra was gratified by the support which his wife had received, and offered Triśanku the choice of a boon. When this proposal was made, Triśanku chose the boon of ascending bodily to heaven. All apprehension from the twelve years’ drought being now at an end, the muni (Viśvāmitra) installed Triśanku in his father’s kingdom, and offered sacrifice on his behalf. The mighty Kauśika then, in spite of the resistance of the gods and of Vaśishṭha, exalted the king alive to heaven.”

The legend of Triśanku is also related, though differently, in the Bälakāṇḍa of the Rāmāyaṇa; but as it is there introduced as a portion of the history of Viśvāmitra’s various contests with Vaśishṭha recorded in the 51st to 65th sections of that book, I shall reserve it till I take up that narrative.

¹⁷⁶ “The next ceremony is the bride’s stepping seven steps. It is the most material of all the nuptial rites; for the marriage is complete and irrevocable so soon as she has taken the seventh step, and no sooner.” Colebrooke’s Misc. Ess. i. 218, where further details will be found.

SECT. IX.—*Legend of Hariśchandra.*

The son of Triśanku, the subject of the preceding story, was Hariśchandra, whose name is mentioned in the Vishṇu P., but without any allusion to the events of his life. According to the Mārkandeya Purāṇa,¹⁷⁷ however, he gave up his whole country, and sold his wife and son, and finally himself, in satisfaction of Viśvāmitra's demands for money. The following is a summary of the story as there told, book i. sections 7–9. We may perhaps regard it as having in part a polemical import, and as intended to represent Viśvāmitra, the Kshattriya rival of the Brāhmans, in the most unfavourable colours. The sufferings of Hariśchandra, his wife, and son, are very pathetically depicted, and the effect of the various incidents is heightened with great artistic skill. The story, in fact, appears to me one of the most touching to be found in Indian literature. Hariśchandra, the Purāṇa tells us, was a royal rishi (*rājarshi*) who lived in the Tretā age, and was renowned for his virtues, and the universal prosperity, moral and physical, which prevailed during his reign. On one occasion, when hunting, the king heard a sound of female lamentation which proceeded, it appears, from the Sciences who were becoming mastered by the austere-fervid sage Viśvāmitra, in a way they had never been before by anyone else; and were consequently crying out in alarm at his superiority. In fulfilment of his duty as a Kshattriya to defend the weak, and inspired by the god Ganeśa, who had entered into him, Hariśchandra exclaimed (i. 7, 12) “‘What sinner is this who is binding fire in the hem of his garment, while I, his lord, am present, resplendent with force and fiery vigour?’ He shall today enter on his long sleep, pierced in all his limbs by arrows, which, by their discharge from my bow, illuminate all the quarters of the firmament” (12. *Ko' yam badhnāti vastrānte pāvakam pāpa-kṛin narah | balosha-tejasā dīpte mayi patyāv upasthite |* 13. *So 'dyā mat-kūrmukā-kshepa - vidipita - digantaraih | śarair vibhinna - sarvāṅgo dīrghanidrām pravekshyati |*). Viśvāmitra was provoked by this address. In consequence of his wrath the Sciences instantly perished, and Hariśchandra, trembling like the leaf of an aśvattha tree, submissively represented that

¹⁷⁷ The same story is told in the Padma Purāṇa also. See Wilson's V.P. vol. iii. p. 287, and note. The glory of Hariśchandra is described in the M.Bh. Sabhap. verses 489 ff.

he had merely done his duty as a king, which he defined as consisting in the bestowal of gifts on eminent Brāhmans and other persons of slender means, the protection of the timid, and war against enemies. Viśvāmitra hereupon demands a gift as a Brāhmaṇ intent upon receiving one. The king offers him whatever he may ask : Gold, his own son, wife, body, life, kingdom, good fortune (*hiranyaṁ vā suvarnaṁ vā putraḥ patnī kaleraram | prāṇāḥ rājyam puraṇ lakshmīr yad abhipretam ātmānah |*). The saint first requires the present for the Rājasūya sacrifice. On this being promised, and still more offered, he asks for the empire of the whole earth, including everything but Hariśchandra himself, his wife and son, and his virtue which follows its possessor wherever he goes¹⁷⁸ (i. 7, 28. *Vinā bhāryyāñ cha putrañ cha śarīrañ cha tavañagha |* 29. *Dharmañ cha sarva - dharma - jna yo yāntam anugachhati*). Hariśchandra joyfully agrees. Viśvāmitra then requires him to strip off all his ornaments, to clothe himself in the bark of trees, and to quit the kingdom with his wife Saivyā and his son. When he is departing the sage stops him and demands payment of his yet unpaid sacrificial fee. The king replies that he has only the persons of his wife, his son, and himself left. Viśvāmitra insists that he must nevertheless pay ; and that “unfulfilled promises of gifts to Brāhmans bring destruction” (i. 7. 35. *Viśeshato brāhmaṇānāñ hanty adattam pratiśrutam*). The unfortunate prince, after being threatened with a curse, engages to make the payment in a month ; and commences his journey with a wife unused to such fatigues, amid the universal lamentations of his subjects. While he lingers, listening to their affectionate remonstrances against his desertion of his kingdom, Viśvāmitra comes up, and being

¹⁷⁸ Compare Manu's very striking verses, viii. 17, and iv. 239 ff., which may be freely rendered as follows :

“ Our virtue is the only friend that follows us in death ;
 All other ties and friendships end with our departing breath.
 Nor father, mother, wife, nor son beside us then can stay,
 Nor kinsfolk :—virtue is the one companion of our way.
 Alone each creature sees the light, alone the world he leaves ;
 Alone of actions, wrong or right, the recompence receives.
 Like log or clod, beneath the sod their lifeless kinsman laid,
 His friends turn round and quit the ground ; but virtue tends the dead.
 Be then a hoard of virtue stored, to help in day of doom ;
 By virtue led, we cross the dread, immeasurable gloom.”

incensed at the delay and the king's apparent hesitation, strikes the queen with his staff, as she is dragged on by her husband. All this Hariśchandra endures with patience, uttering no complaint. Then the five Viśvedevas, merciful gods, exclaimed, “‘To what worlds shall this sinner Viśvāmitra go, who has thrust down this most excellent of sacri-ficers from the royal dignity? Whose faith shall now sanctify the soma-juice poured out with recitation of texts at the great sacrifice, that we may drink it, and become exhilarated?’” (i. 7, 62. *Atha viśte tada devāḥ pancha prāhuḥ kṛipālavah | Viśvāmitraḥ supāpo 'yām lokān kān samavāpsyati |* 63. *Yenāyām yajvanām śreshṭhāḥ sva-rājyād arāropitāḥ | kasya vā śraddhayā pūtañ sutañ somam mahādhvare | pītvā rayam prayāsyāmo mudam mantra-purassaram |*). Viśvāmitra heard what they said, and by a curse doomed them to become men; he relented, however, so far as to exempt them from having offspring, and from other family ties and human weaknesses, and promised that they should eventually be restored to their pristine position as gods. They in consequence became partially incarnate as the five Pāṇḍus, the sons of Draupadī. Resuming the story of Hariśchandra, the writer tells us that he then proceeded with his wife and little son to Benares, imagining that this divine city, as the special property of Siva, could not be possessed by any mortal. Here he found the relentless Viśvāmitra waiting for him, and ready to press his demand for the payment of his sacrificial gift, even before the expiration of the full period of grace. In this extremity Suivyā the queen suggests with a sobbing voice that her husband should sell her. On hearing this proposal Hariśchandra swoons, then recovers, utters lamentations, and swoons again, and his wife, seeing his sad condition, swoons also. While they are in a state of unconsciousness, their famished child exclaims in distress, “O father, father, give me bread; O mother, mother, give me food: hunger overpowers me; and my tongue is parched” (i. 8, 35. *Tāta tāta dadasvānam ambāmba bhojanām dada | kshud me balavatī jātā jihvāgram śushyate tathā*). At this moment Viśvāmitra returns, and after recalling Hariśchandra to consciousness by sprinkling water over him, again urges payment of the present. The king again swoons, and is again restored. The sage threatens to curse him if his engagement is not fulfilled by sunset. Being now pressed by his wife, the king agrees to sell her, adding, however, “If my voice can utter such a wicked word, I do

what the most inhuman wretches cannot perpetrate" (i. 8, 48 f. *Nriśāmsair api yat kartum na śakyaṁ tat karomy aham | yadi me śakyate vāñi raktum īdrik sudurrachāḥ*). He then goes into the city, and in self-accusing language offers his queen for sale as a slave. A rich old Brāhmaṇa offers to buy her at a price corresponding to her value, to do his household work. Hariśchandra's heart was torn, and he could make no reply. The Brāhmaṇa paid down the money, and was dragging away the queen by the hair of her head, when her little son Rohitāśva, seeing his mother about to be taken away from him, began to cry, and laid hold of her skirts. The mother then exclaims: i. 8, 59, " *Munchāryya muncha mām tārad yārat pāsyāmy ahaṁ śiśum | durlabhaṁ darśanām tāta punar asya bharishyati |* 60. *Pāsyaihi vatsa mām evam mātaram dāsyatām gatām | mām mā sprākshīḥ rāja-putra aspriṣyā 'haṁ tavādhunā*" | 61. *Tataḥ sa bālāḥ sahasā ḍrīshṭvā kṛishṭām tu mātaram | samabhyaḍhārad ambeti rudan sāsrāvilekshanah |* 62. *Tam āgataṁ ḍvijāḥ kretā bālam abhyāhanat padā | radaṁs tathāpi so 'mbeti nairāmunchata mātaram |* 63. *Rājapatny uvācha | "prasādaṁ kuru me nātha krīñiṣhremaṁ cha bālakam | kṛitā 'pi nāham bharato rinainaṁ kāryya-sādhikā |* 64. *Ittham mamālpa-bhāgyāyāḥ prasāda-sumukho bhara | mām saṁyojaya bālena ratsenera payasrinīm"* | 65. *Brāhmaṇaḥ uvācha | "grīhyatām vittam etat te dīyatām bālako mama"* | "Let me go, let me go, venerable sir, till I look upon my son. I shall hardly ever behold him again. Come, my darling, see thy mother now become a slave. Touch me not, young prince; I may no longer be handled by thee." Seeing his mother dragged away, the child ran after her, his eyes dimmed with tears, and crying 'mother.' The Brāhmaṇa purchaser kicked him when he came up; but he would not let his mother go, and continued crying 'mother, mother.' The queen then said to the Brāhmaṇa, 'Be so kind, my master, as to buy also this child, as without him I shall prove to thee but a useless purchase. 64. Be thus merciful to me in my wretchedness; unite me with my son, like a cow to her calf.'¹⁷⁹ The Brāhmaṇa agrees: 'Take this money and give me the boy.'" When his wife and son were being carried away, Hariśchandra broke out into lamentations: i. 8, 68. *Yāṁ na vāyur na chādityo nendur na cha pri-thag-janāḥ | ḍrīshṭavantaḥ purā patnīm seyāṁ dāśitvam āgatā |* 69. *Sūrya-vāṁśa-prasāto 'yāṁ sukuṁāra-karānguliḥ | samprāpto vikrayam*

¹⁷⁹ The whole of this reads like a scene from "Uncle Tom's Cabin."

balo dhiñ mām astu sudurmatim | ““She, my spouse, whom neither air, nor sun, nor moon, nor stranger had beheld, is now gone into slavery. This my son, a scion of the solar race, with his delicate hands and fingers, has been sold. Woe to me, wicked wretch that I am.”” After the Brāhmaṇ had gone out of sight with his purchases, Viśvāmitra again appeared and renewed his demands; and when the afflicted Hariśchandra offered him the small sum he had obtained by the sale of his wife and son, he angrily replied, i. 8, 74 : *Kshattrabandho mame-mām trañ sadṛiṣṭīm yajna-dakshinām | manyase yadi tat kshipram paśya tram me balam param |* 75. *Tapaso 'ttra sutaptasya brāhmaṇasyāmalasya cha | mat-prabhārasya chograsya śuddhasyādhyayanasya cha |* ““If, miserable Kshattriya, thou thinkest this a sacrificial gift befitting my deserts, thou shalt soon behold the transcendent power of my ardent austere-fervour, of my spotless Brāhmaṇhood, of my terrible majesty, and of my holy study.”” Hariśchandra promises an additional gift, and Viśvāmitra allows him the remaining quarter of the day for its liquidation. On the terrified and afflicted prince offering himself for sale, in order to gain the means of meeting this cruel demand, Dharma (Righteousness) appears in the form of a hideous and offensive Chandāla, and agrees to buy him at his own price, large or small. Hariśchandra declines such a degrading servitude, and declares that he would rather be consumed by the fire of his persecutor's curse than submit to such a fate. Viśvāmitra however again comes on the scene, asks why he does not accept the large sum offered by the Chandāla; and, when he pleads in excuse his descent from the solar race, threatens to fulminate a curse against him if he does not accept that method of meeting his liability. Hariśchandra implores that he may be spared this extreme of degradation, and offers to become Viśvāmitra's slave in payment of the residue of his debt; whereupon the sage rejoins, “If thou art my slave, then I sell thee as such to the Chandāla for a hundred millions of money” (i. 8, 95. *Yadi preshyo mama bhavān chandālāya tato mayā | dāsa-bhāvam anuprāpto datto vittārbudena vai |*). The Chandāla, delighted, pays down the money, and carries off Hariśchandra, bound, beaten, confused, and afflicted, to his own place of abode. Morning, noon, and evening the unfortunate prince repeats these words: i. 8, 99. *Bāla dīna-mukhi dṛishṭvā bālañ dīna-mukham puraḥ | mām emaraty asukhāvishṭā “mochayishyati nau nripaḥ |* 100. *Upātta-vitto*

vīprāya dattrā vittam ato 'dhikam' | na sā mām mṛiga-śāvākshī vetti
 pūpataram kritam | 101. Rājya-nūśah suhṛit-tyāgo bhāryyā-tanaya-vik-
 rayah | prāptā chāndālatā cheyam aho duṣkha-paramparā | "My tender
 wife, dejected, looking upon my dejected boy, calls me to mind while
 she says, 'The king will ransom us (100) after he has gained money,
 and paid the Brāhmaṇa a larger sum than he gave for us.' But my
 fawn-eyed spouse is ignorant that I have become yet more wretched
 than before. 101. Loss of my kingdom, abandonment of friends, sale
 of my wife and son, and this fall into the condition of a Chāndāla,—
 what a succession of miseries!" Hariśchandra is sent by the Chāndāla
 to steal grave-clothes in a cemetery (which is described at tedious length,
 with all its horrors and repulsive features), and is told that he will
 receive two-sixths of the value for his hire; three-sixths going to his
 master, and one-sixth to the king. In this horrid spot, and in this
 degrading occupation, he spent, in great misery, twelve months, which
 seemed to him like a hundred years (i. 8, 127. Evañ dvādaśa-māsas tu
 nītāḥ śata-samopamāḥ). He then falls asleep and has a series of dreams
 suggested by the life he had been leading (śmaśānābhya-asa-yogena, verse
 129). After he awoke, his wife came to the cemetery to perform the
 obsequies of their son, who had died from the bite of a serpent (verses
 171 ff.). At first the husband and wife did not recognize each other,
 from the change in appearance which had been wrought upon them
 both by their miseries. Hariśchandra, however, soon discovers from
 the tenor of her lamentations that it is his wife, and falls into a swoon;
 as the queen does also when she recognizes her husband. When con-
 sciousness returns, they both break out into lamentations, the father
 bewailing in a touching strain the loss of his son, and the wife the de-
 gradation of the king. She then falls on his neck, embraces him, and
 asks "whether all this is a dream, or a reality, as she is utterly be-
 wildered;" and adds, that "if it be a reality, then righteousness is un-
 availing to those who practise it" (verse 210. Rājan svapno 'tha tathyañ
 vā yad etad manyate bhavān | tat kathyatām mahābhāga mano vai muh-
 yate mama | 211. Yady etad evañ dharmajna nāsti dharme sahāyatā |).
 After hesitating to devote himself to death on his son's funeral pyre
 without receiving his master's leave, (as such an act of insubordination
 might send him to hell) (verses 215 ff.), Hariśchandra resolves to do so,
 braving all the consequences, and consoling himself with the hopeful

anticipation : verse 224. *Yadi dattām yadi hutām guravo yadi tōshitāḥ | paratra sangamo bhuyāt puttrena saha cha traya |* “If I have given gifts, and offered sacrifices, and gratified my religious teachers, then may I be reunited with my son and with thee (my wife) in another world.”¹⁸⁰ The queen determines to die in the same manner. When Hariśchandra, after placing his son’s body on the funeral pile, is meditating on the lord Hari Nārāyaṇa Kṛiṣṇa, the supreme spirit, all the gods arrive, headed by Dharma (Righteousness), and accompanied by Viśvāmitra.¹⁸¹ Dharma entreats the king to desist from his rash in-

¹⁸⁰ In the following verses of the Atharva-veda a hope is expressed that families may be re-united in the next world : vi. 120, 3. *Yattra suhārddah suhṛido madanti vihāya rogañ tanvah svāyāḥ | aslonāḥ angair ahrutāḥ svarge tatra paśyema pitaraū cha putrān |* “In heaven, where our friends, and intimates live in blessedness, having left behind them the infirmities of their bodies, free from lameness or distortion of limb,—may we behold our parents and our children.” ix. 5, 27. *Yā pūrvam patīn vittvā athānyāñ vindate 'param | panchaudanañ cha tāv ajañ dadāto na vi yoshataḥ |* 28. *Samānaloko bhavati punarbhuvā 'paraḥ patih | yo 'jam panchaudanañ dakshinā-jyotišaṁ dadāti |* “When a woman has had one husband before, and takes another, if they present the aja panchaudana offering they shall not be separated. 28. A second husband dwells in the same (future) world with his re-wedded wife, if he offers the aja panchaudana, illuminated by presents.” xii. 3, 17. *Svargañ lokam abhi no nayāsi sañ jāyayā saha putraih syāma |* “Mayest thou conduct us to heaven ; may we be with our wives and children.” xviii. 3, 23. *Svān gachhatu te mano adha pitṛīn upadrava |* “May thy soul go to its own (its kindred) and hasten to the fathers.” From the texts cited by Mr. Colebrooke “on the duties of a faithful Hindu widow,” (Misc. Ess. 115 ff.) it appears that the widow who becomes a satī (*i.e.* burns herself with her husband’s corpse, or, in certain cases, afterwards) has the promise of rejoining her lord in another life, and enjoying celestial felicity in his society. In order to ensure such a result in all cases it was necessary either that both husband and wife should have by their lives merited equal rewards in another existence, or that the heroism of the wife, in sacrificing herself on her husband’s funeral-pile should have the vicarious effect of expiating his offences, and raising him to the same heavenly region with herself. And it is indeed the doctrine of the authorities cited by Mr. Colebrooke that the self-immolation of the wife had this atoning effect. But in other cases where the different members of a family had by their actions during life merited different kinds of retribution, they might, according to the doctrine of the transmigration of souls current in later ages, be re-born in the shape of different animals, and so rendered incapable of any mutual communication after death. In regard to the absence of any traces of the tenet of metempsychosis from the earliest Indian writings, see Professor Weber’s remarks in the Journ. of the Germ. Or. Soc. ix. 327 ff. and the abstract of them given in Journ. Roy. As. Soc. for 1865, pp. 365 ff.

¹⁸¹ An attempt is here made, verses 234 f., to give the etymology of Viśvāmitra : *Viśva-trayena yo mitram karttūm na s'akītāḥ purā | Viśvāmitras tu te māttrīm iṣhṭām oħāharttūm ichhati |* “That Viśvāmitra, whom the three Viśvas formerly could not induce to be their friend, wishes to offer thee his friendship, and whatsoever thou desirest.”

tention ; and Indra announces to him that he, his wife, and son have conquered heaven by their good works. Ambrosia, the antidote of death, and flowers, are rained by the god from the sky ; and the king's son is restored to life and the bloom of youth. The king, adorned with celestial clothing and garlands, and the queen, embrace their son. Harischandra, however, declares that he cannot go to heaven till he has received his master the Chandāla's permission, and has paid him a ransom. Dharma then reveals to the king that it was he himself who had miraculously assumed the form of a Chandāla. The king next objects that he cannot depart unless his faithful subjects, who are sharers in his merits, are allowed to accompany him to heaven, at least for one day. This request is granted by Indra ; and after Visvāmitra has inaugurated Rohitāśva the king's son to be his successor, Hariśchandra, his friends and followers, all ascend in company to heaven. Even after this great consummation, however, Vaśiṣṭha, the family-priest of Harischandra, hearing, at the end of a twelve years' abode in the waters of the Ganges, an account of all that has occurred, becomes vehemently incensed at the humiliation inflicted on the excellent monarch, whose virtues and devotion to the gods and Brāhmans he celebrates, declares that his indignation had not been so greatly roused even when his own hundred sons had been slain by Viśvāmitra, and in the following words dooms the latter to be transformed into a crane : i. 9, 9.

Tasmād durātmā brahma-driṭ prājnānām araropitaḥ | mach-chhūpopahato mūḍhaḥ sa rakatram avāpsyati | “ Wherefore that wicked man, enemy of the Brāhmans, smitten by my curse, shall be expelled from the society of intelligent beings, and losing his understanding shall be transformed into a Vaka. ” Visvāmitra reciprocates the curse, and changes Vasishtha into a bird of the species called Āṛi. In their new shapes the two have a furious fight,¹⁸² the Āṛi being of the portentous height of two thousand yojanas (= 18000 miles), and the Vaka of 3090 yojanas. They first assail each other with their wings ; then the Vaka smites his antagonist in the same manner, while the Āṛi strikes with his talons. Falling mountains, overturned by the blasts of wind raised by

¹⁸² On the subject of this fight the Bhūgavata Purāna has the following verse : ix. 7, 6. *Triśankavo Hariśchandro Viśvāmitra-Vasiṣṭhayoḥ | yan-sūmittam abhūd yuddham pakṣipor bahu-vārshikam |* “ The son of Triśanku was Hariśchandra, on whose account Viśvāmitra and Vasiṣṭha in the form of birds had a battle of many

flapping of their wings, shake the whole earth, the waters of the ocean overflow, the earth itself, thrown off its perpendicular, slopes downwards towards Pātāla, the lower regions. Many creatures perish by these various convulsions. Attracted by the dire disorder, Brahmā arrives, attended by all the gods, on the spot, and commands the combatants to desist from their fray. They were too fiercely infuriated to regard this injunction : but Brahmā put an end to the conflict by restoring them to their natural forms, and counselling them to be reconciled : i. 9, 28. *Na chāpi Kuśika-śreshṭhas tasya rājno 'parādhyate | svarga-prāptikaro brahmann upakāra-pade sthitāḥ |* 29. *Tapo-vighnasya kartārau kāma-krodha-raśām gatau | parityajata bhadram no brahma hi prachuram balam |* ‘The son of Kuśika has not inflicted any wrong on Hariśchandra : inasmuch as he has caused the king’s elevation to heaven he stands in the position of a benefactor. 29. Since ye have yielded to the influence of desire and anger ye have obstructed your austere fervour ; leave off, bless you ; the Brahmanical power is transcendent.’ The sages were accordingly pacified, and embraced each other.”

This interesting legend may be held to have had a double object, viz. first to portray in lively colours the heroic fortitude and sense of duty exhibited by Hariśchandra and his wife in enduring the long series of severe trials to which they were subjected ; and secondly, to represent Viśvāmitra in an unamiable light, as an oppressive assertor of those sacerdotal prerogatives, which he had conquered for himself by his austerities,¹⁸³ to place him in striking contrast with the genuine Brähman Vaśishṭha who expresses strong indignation at the harsh procedure of his rival, and to recall the memory of those conflicts between

years duration.” On this the Commentator remarks : *Viśvāmitro rājasūya-dakshinā-chhalena Hariśchandrasya sarva-svam apahṛitya yātayāmāsa | tach chhrutvā kupto Vaśishṭho 'pi Viśvāmitram “tvam āṛī bhava” iti sasāpa | so 'pi “tvam vako bhava” iti Vaśishṭham sasāpa | tayos' cha yuddham abhūd iti prasiddam |* “Viśvāmitra under pretence of taking a present for a rajasūya sacrifice, stripped Hariśchandra of all his property, and afflicted him. Vaśishṭha hearing of this, became incensed, and by an imprecation turned him into an Āṛī. Viśvāmitra retorted the curse and changed Vaśishṭha into a Vāka. And then a battle took place between them, as is well known.” Here it will be seen that the Commentator changes the birds into which the rishis were transformed, making Viśvāmitra the Āṛī and Vaśishṭha the Vāka.

¹⁸³ It is true that the Brähman rishi Durvāsas also is represented as a very irascible personage. See vol. iv. of this work, pp. 165, 169, 208, 407 ; and Weber’s Ind. St. iii. 398.

the Brāhmans and Kshattriyas, which were exemplified in the persons of these two sages, of whom the one is said to have been made the “lord of Brāhmans” (*Vaśishṭham iśaṁ vīprāṇām*, M.Bh. Sāntip. v. 4499), and the other is declared in the story before us to have been the “enemy of the priests.”

SECT. X.—Contest of Vaśishṭha and Viśvāmitra according to the Mahābhārata.

In the Ādiparvan of the Mahābhārata, verses 6638 ff., we find another legend, in the Brahmanical interest, regarding the same two great personages, which begins with a panegyric on Vaśishṭha, at the expense of the rival rishi :

6638. *Brahmano mānasah putro Vaśishṭho 'rundhatī-patiḥ | tāpasā nirjitaū śāśvad ajeyāv amaroir api | kāma-krodhāv ubhau yasya charanau saṁvavāhatuh | yas tu nochchhedanaṁ chakre Kuśikānām udāra-dhīḥ | Viśvāmitrāparādhena dhārayan manyum uttamam |* 6640. *Putra-vyasanasantaptaḥ saktimān apy asakta-vat | Viśvāmitra-vināśūya na chakre karma dārunam | mṛitāñś cha punar āharttum yaḥ sa putrān Yama-kshayāt | kṛitāntāṁ nātīchakrāma velām iva mahodadhiḥ | yam prāpya vijitātmānam mahātmānaṁ narādhīpāḥ | Ikshvākavo mahīpālāḥ lebhire prihivīm imām | purohitam imam prāpya Vaśishṭham rishi-sattamam | ijire kratubhiḥ chaiva nṛipās te Kuru-nandanaḥ | sa hi tān yūjayāmāsa sarvān nṛipati-sattamān | brahmaṛishih Pāṇḍava-śreshṭha Vṛihaspatir ivāmarān |* 6645. *Tasmād dharma-pradhānātmā veda-dharma-vid ipsitaḥ | brāhmaṇo gunavān kaśchit purodhāḥ paridriṣyatām | kshattriyenābhijātena prihivīm jetum ichhatā | pūrvam purohitaḥ kāryyaḥ pārtha rājyābhisisiddhaye | mahīm jīgīshatā rājnā brahma kāryam purassaram | . . . 6666. Kshattriyō 'ham bhavān vīpras tapaḥ-svādhyāya-sādhanaḥ | brāhmaṇeshu kuto vīryayam praśānteshu dhrītātmasu | arbudena garāṁ yas tvāṁ na dadāsi ma-neṣitam | sva-dharmaām na prahāsyāmi neshyāmi cha balena gām | . . . 6679. "Sthiyatām" iti tach chhrutvā Vaśishṭhasya payasvinī | ūrdhvāñchita-śiro-grīvā prababhu raudra-darśanā | 6680. Krodha-raktekshanā sā gaur hambhā-rava-ghana-svanā | Viśvāmitrasya tat sainyāṁ vyadrāvayata sarvaśaḥ | kaścagra-danḍābhīhatā kālyamānā tatastataḥ | krodha-raktekshanā krodham bhūya eva samādadhe | aditya iva mudhyāhne krodha-dipta-vapur babhu | angāra-varsham munchantī muhur bāladhito*

*mahat | asrijat Pahlavān puchhāt prasravād Drāviḍān Sakān | yoni-
deśāch cha Yavanān śakritāḥ Sācarān bahūn | 6691. Dṛiṣṭvā tad
mahad āścharyam brahma-tejo-bhavam tadaḥ | Viśvāmitraḥ kshattrā-bhāvād
nirvinno vākyam abravīt | “dhig balaṁ kshattriya-balām brahma-tejo-
balām balām viniśchitya tāpaḥ eva param balaṁ” | sa rājyaṁ
sphitam utsṛijya tām cha dīptām nṛīpa-śriyam | bhogāṁś cha prishṭhataḥ
krītvā tapasy eva mano dadhe | sa gatvā tapasā siddhim lokān vishṭabhyā
tejasā | 6695. Tatāpa sarvān dīptaujāḥ brāhmaṇatvam avāptavān | api-
bach cha tataḥ somam Indreṇa saha Kausikāḥ |*

6638. “Vaśiṣṭha,” a Gandharva informs Arjuna, “was the mind-born son of Brahmā and husband of Arundhatī.¹⁸⁴ By his austere fervour, lust and anger, invincible even by the immortals, were constantly vanquished and embraced his feet. Restraining his indignation at the wrong done by Viśvāmitra, he magnanimously abstained from exterminating the Kuśikas.¹⁸⁵ 6640. Distressed by the loss of his sons, he acted, although powerful, like one who was powerless, and took no

¹⁸⁴ Arundhatī is again mentioned as the wife of Vaśiṣṭha, in the following lines of the M. Bh. Ādip. 7351 f. addressed to Draupadi: *Yathendrāṇī Harihaye Svāhā chaiva Vibhāvasau | Rohinī cha yathā Some Damayantī yathā Nale | yathā Vaisravane Bhadrā Vaśiṣṭhe chāpy Arundhatī | yathā Nārāyaṇe Lakshmiś tathā tvaṁ bhava bharttrishu |* “What Indrāṇī is to Indra, Svāhā to the Sun, Rohinī to the Moon, Damayantī to Nala, Bhadrā to Kuvera, Arundhatī to Vaśiṣṭha, and Lakshmi to Nārāyaṇa, that be thou to thy husbands.” She is again noticed in verses 8455 ff. : *Suvratā chāpi kālāṇī sarva-bhūteshu visrūta | Arundhatī mahātmānaṁ Vaśiṣṭham paryasankata | visuddha-bhāvam atyantaṁ sadā priya-hite ratam | saptarshi-madhyagañ virām avamene cha tam munim | apadhyānena vā tena dūmāruṇa-sama-prabhā | lakshyā’lakshyā nābhīrūpā nimittam iva paśyati |* “The faithful and beautiful Arundhatī, renowned among all creatures, was suspicious about the great Vaśiṣṭha, whose nature was eminently pure, who was devoted to the welfare of those he loved, who was one of the seven rishis, and heroic; and she despised the muni. In consequence of these evil surmises, becomimg of the dusky colour of smoke, both to be seen and not to be seen, devoid of beauty, she looks like a (bad) omen.” This version of the last line is suggested by Prof. Aufrecht. The Commentator explains it thus: “*Nimittam*” *bharttur lakshmaṇām “iwa paśyati” kapaṭena | atah eva “nābhīrūpā prachhannaveshā | tena hetunā “lakshyā’lakshyā cha” |* “She regards as it were’ i.e. by guile ‘the omen’ afforded by her husband’s (bodily) marks, hence she assumed a disguise, and was ‘both to be seen and not to be seen.’”

¹⁸⁵ As regards the magnanimous character here assigned to Vaśiṣṭha, I quote a passage from the Vishṇu Purāṇa, i. 9, 16 ff., where the irascible Durvāsas (to whom I lately referred, and who is said, in verse 2, to be a partial incarnation of Śiva, *Sankarasyāñśāḥ*), addressing Indra, who, he conceived, had insulted him, thus speaks of that sage’s amiable temper, as contrasted with his own fierce and revengeful disposition: 15. *Nāham kṛipālu-hṛidayo na cha mām bhujate kshamā | anye te man-*

dreadful measures for the destruction of Viśvāmitra. To recover those sons from the abode of Yama, he would not overstep fate, as the ocean respects its shores. Having gained this great self-mastering personage, the kings of Ikshvāku's race acquired (the dominion of) this earth. Obtaining this most excellent of rishis for their family-priest, they offered sacrifices. This Brāhmaṇa-rishi officiated as priest for all those monarchs, as Vṛihaspati does for the gods. 6645. Wherefore let some desirable, virtuous Brāhmaṇa, with whom righteousness is the chief thing, and skilled in Vedic observances, be selected for this office. Let a well-born Kshattriya, who wishes to subdue the earth, first of all appoint a family-priest in order that he may augment his dominion. Let a king, who desires to conquer the earth, give precedence to the Brahmanical power." The Gandharva then, at Arjuna's request, goes on (verses 6650 ff.) to relate the "ancient story of Vaśiṣṭha" (*rāśiṣṭham ākhyānam purānam*) and to describe the cause of enmity between that rishi and Viśvāmitra. It happened that the latter, who was son of Gādhi, king of Kānyakubja (Kanouj), and grandson of Kuśika, when out hunting, came to the hermitage of Vaśiṣṭha, where he was received with all honour, entertained together with his attendants with delicious food and drink, and presented with precious jewels and dresses obtained by the sage from his wonder-working cow, the fulfiller of all his desires. The cupidity of Viśvāmitra is aroused by the sight of this beautiful animal (all of whose fine points are enumerated in the legend), and he offers Vaśiṣṭha a hundred million cows, or his kingdom, in exchange for her. Vaśiṣṭha, however, replies that he is unable to part with her even in return for the kingdom. Viśvāmitra then tells him that he will enforce the law of the stronger: 6665. "I am a Kshattriya, thou art a Brāhmaṇa, whose functions are austere fervour, and sacred study. How can there be any vigour in Brāhmans who are calm and self-restrained? Since thou doest not give up to me, in exchange for a

ayaḥ S'akra Durvāsasam avehi mām | Gautamādibhir anyais trañ garvam ūpādito mudhā | akṣanti-sūra-sarvasvām Durvāsasam avehi mām | 17. Vaśiṣṭhādyair dayā-sūraīḥ stotram kurvadbhir uchchakaiḥ | garvām gato 'xi yenaivam mām athādyāvamanyase | 15. "I am not tender-hearted: patience lodges not in me. Those munis are different: know me to be Durvāsas. 16. In vain hast thou been rendered proud by Gautama and others: know me to be Durvāsas, whose nature and whose entire substance is irascibility. 17. Thou hast become proud through the loud praises of Vaśiṣṭha and other merciful saints, since thou thus contemnest me to-day."

hundred million of cows, that which I desire, I shall not abandon my own class-characteristic; I will carry away the cow by force." Vaśishṭha, confident, no doubt, of his own superior power, tells him to do as he proposes without loss of time. Viśvāmitra accordingly seizes the wonder-working cow; but she will not move from the hermitage, though beaten with whip and stick, and pushed hither and thither. Witnessing this, Vaśishṭha asks her what he, a patient Brāhmaṇ, can do? She demands of him why he overlooks the violence to which she is subjected. Vaśishṭha replies: "Force is the strength of Kshattriyas, patience that of Brāhmans. As patience possesses me, go, if thou pleasest" (6676. *Kshattriyāñām balāñ tejo brāhmañāñām kshamā balam | kshamā mām bhajate yasmāt gamyatāñ yadi rochate*). The cow enquires if he means to abandon her; as, unless he forsakes her, she can never be carried off by force. She is assured by Vaśishṭha that he does not forsake her, and that she should remain if she could. "Hearing these words of her master, the cow tosses her head aloft, assumes a terrific aspect, (6680) her eyes become red with rage, she utters a deep bellowing sound, and puts to flight the entire army of Viśvāmitra. Being (again) beaten with whip and stick, and pushed hither and thither, she becomes more incensed, her eyes are red with anger, her whole body, kindled by her indignation, glows like the noonday sun, she discharges showers of firebrands from her tail, creates Pahlavas from the same member, Drāviḍas and Sakas, Yavanas, Sūbaras," Kāñchis, Sārabhas, Paunḍras, Kirātas, Sinhalas, Vaśus, and other tribes of armed warriors from her sweat, urine, excrement, etc., who assail Viśvāmitra's army, and put it to a complete rout. 6692. "Beholding this great miracle, the product of Brahmanical might, Viśvāmitra was humbled at (the impotence of) a Kshattriya's nature, and exclaimed, 'Shame on a Kshattriya's force; it is the force of a Brāhmaṇ's might that is force indeed.' Examining what was and was not force, and (ascertaining) that austere fervour is the supreme force, he abandoned his prosperous kingdom and all its brilliant regal splendour; and casting all enjoyments behind its back, he devoted himself to austerity. Having by this means attained perfection, and Brāhmaṇhood, he arrested the worlds by his fiery vigour, and disturbed them all by the blaze of his glory; and at length the Kauñika drank soma with Indra."

¹⁸⁶ See above, p. 342, and note 134.

The same legend is repeated in the Salyaparvan, verses 2295 ff. :

*Tathā cha Kauśikas tāta tapo-nityo jitendriyāḥ | tapusā vai sutaptena
brāhmaṇatvam avāptavān | Gādhir nāma mahān āśit kshattriyāḥ prathito
bhūvi | tasya puttro 'bhavad rājan Viśvāmitraḥ pratāparān | sa rājā
Kauśikas tāta mahāyogy abhavat kīla | sa puttram abhishichyātha Viśvā-
mitram mahātapaḥ | deha-nyāśo manaś chakre tam ūchuḥ prānatāḥ pra-
jāḥ | “na gantaryam mahāprājna trāhi chāsmān mahābhayāt” | evam
uktāḥ pratyurācha tato Gādhiḥ prajās tataḥ | “viśvasya jagato goptā
bhavishyati suto mama” | 2300. Ity uktvā tu tato Gādhir Viśvāmitram
niveśya cha | jagāma tridivān rājan Viśvāmitro 'bhavad nrīpaḥ | na sa
śaknoti prithivīn yatnāvān api rakshitum | tataḥ śuśrāva rūjā sa rāksha-
sebhyo mahābhayam | nirayau nagarāch chāpi chatur-anga-balāni itaḥ |
sa yātvā dūram adhvānam Vaśiṣṭhāśramam abhyagāt | tasya te sainikāḥ
rājāṁs chakrus tattrālayān bahūn | tatas tu bhagavān vipro Vaśiṣṭho
Brahmaṇaḥ sutāḥ | dadṛiṣe 'tha tataḥ sarram bhajyamānam mahārānam |
tasya kruddho mahārāja Vaśiṣṭho muni-sattamaḥ | 2305. “Srijasva Sa-
varān ghorān” iti svām gām urācha ha | tathoktā sā 'śrijad dhenuḥ pu-
rushān ghora-darśanān | te cha tad balam āśādyā babhanjuḥ sarrato
diśam | tach chhṛutvā vīdrutān sainyañ Viśvāmitras tu Gādhijāḥ | tapaḥ
param manyamānas tapasy eva mano dadhe | so 'smiūs tīrtha-vare rūjan
Sarasvatyāḥ samāhitāḥ | niyamaiś chopavusaīś cha karshayan deham āt-
maṇaḥ | jalāhāro vāyubhakṣaḥ parṇāhāraś cha so 'bhavat | tathā sthan-
dila-śāyi cha ye chānye niyamāḥ prithak | asaṅkṛit tasya devās tu vrata-
vighnam prachakrire | 2310. Na chāsyā niyamād buddhir apayāti mahāt-
maṇaḥ | tataḥ pareṇa yatnena taptvā bahu-vidhām tapaḥ | lejasā bhūskā-
rākāro Gādhijāḥ samapadyata | tapasā tu tathā yuktān Viśvāmitram
Pitāmahāḥ | amanyata mahātejāḥ vara-do varam asya tat | sa tu vavre
varaṁ rājan “syām aham brāhmaṇas tv” iti | tatheti chābravīd Brahmū
sarra-loka-pitāmahāḥ | sa labdhvā tapasogrena brāhmaṇatvam mahāyaśāḥ |
vichachāra mahīm kṛitsnām kṛitakāmaḥ suropamaḥ |*

“2295. So too the Kauśika, constant in austerities, and subduing his senses, acquired Brāhmaṇhood by the severity of his exercises. There was a great Kshattriya named Gādhi, renowned in the world, whose son was the powerful Viśvāmitra. This Kauśika prince (Gādhi) was greatly addicted to contemplation (*mahāyogi*) : and after having installed his son as king, he resolved to abandon his corporeal existence. His subjects, however, submissively said to him, ‘Do not go, o great sage, but deliver

us from our great alarm.' He replied, 'My son shall become the protector of the whole world.' 2300. Having accordingly installed Viśvāmitra, Gādhi went to heaven, and his son became king. Viśvāmitra, however, though energetic, was unable to protect the earth. He then heard that there was great cause of apprehension from the Rākshasas, and issued forth from the city, with an army consisting of four kinds of forces. Having performed a long journey, he arrived at the hermitage of Vaśishṭha. There his soldiers constructed many dwellings. In consequence the divine Brāhmaṇa Vaśishṭha, son of Brahmā, beheld the whole forest being cut up; and becoming enraged, he said to his cow, (2305) 'Create terrible Savaras.' The cow, so addressed, created men of dreadful aspect, who broke and scattered in all directions the army of Viśvāmitra. Hearing of this rout of his army, the son of Gādhi devoted himself to austerities, which he regarded as the highest (resource). In this sacred spot on the Sarasvatī he macerated his body with acts of self-restraint and fastings, absorbed in contemplation, and living on water, air, and leaves, sleeping on the sacrificial ground, and practising all the other rites. Several times the gods threw impediments in his way; (2310) but his attention was never distracted from his observances. Having thus with strenuous effort undergone manifold austerities, the son of Gādhi became luminous as the sun; and Brahmā regarded his achievements as most eminent. The boon which Viśvāmitra chose was to become a Brāhmaṇa; and Brahmā replied, 'So be it.' Having attained Brāhmaṇhood, the object of his desire, by his severe austerities, the renowned sage traversed the whole earth, like a god."

We have already seen how the power of austere fervour (*tapas*) is exemplified in the legend of Nahusha (above, pp. 308 ff.). In regard to the sense of this word *tapas*, and the potency of the exercise which it denotes, I may refer to my articles in the Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society for 1865, p. 348 f., and for 1864, p. 63, as well as to the fourth volume of this work, pp. 20 ff. and 288; and to pp. 23 and 28 of the present volume. In further illustration of the same subject I quote the following panegyric upon *tapas* from Manu, xi. 234 ff. where, however, the word cannot have the same sense in all the verses:

*Tapo-mūlam idāṁ sarvaṁ daiva-mānushakam sukham | tapo-madhyam
budhaiḥ proktāṁ tapo'ntāṁ veda-darsibhiḥ | 235. Brāhmaṇasya tapo jñā-
naṁ tapaḥ kshattrasya rakṣayam | vaiśyasya tu tapo vārttā tapaḥ sūdra-*

sya sevanam | 236. *Rishayah sañyatātmānah phala-mūlānilāśandah* | *tapasairāva prapaśyanti trailokyaṁ sa-charācharam* | 237. *Aushadhanī agado vidyā dairī cha vividhā sthitih* | *tapasaira prasiddhyanti tapas teshāṁ hi sādhanam* | 238. *Yad dustaraṁ yad durāpaṁ yad durgām yach cha dush-karam* | *sarvāṁ tu tapasā sādhyāṁ tapo hi duratikramam* | 239. *Mahāpātakinaś chaiva śeshāś chākaryya-kāriṇah* | *tapasaiva sutaptena muchyante kīlcishat tataḥ* | 240. *Kīṭāś chāhi-patangāś cha paśavaś cha vayāṁsi cha* | *sthārarāṇi cha bhūtāni dirāṁ yānti tapo-balāt* | 241. *Yat kinchid enah kurvanti mano-vāñ-mūrtibhir janāḥ* | *tat sarvāṁ nirdahanty ūśu tapasaiva tapodhanāḥ* | 242. *Tapasaira viśuddhasya brāhmaṇasya divaukasah* | *ijyāś cha pratigṛihṇanti kāmān sañvarddhayanti cha* | 243. *Prajāpatir idāṁ śāstraṁ tapasairāśrīyat prabhuḥ* | *tathāivā vedān rishayas tapasā pratipedire* | 244. *Ity etat tapaso devāḥ mahābhāgyam prachak-shate* | *sarvasyāsyā prapaśyantas tapasah punyam uttamam* |

“234. All the enjoyment, whether of gods or men, has its root, its centre, and its end in *tapas*; so it is declared by the wise who have studied the *Veda*. 235. Knowledge is a Brāhmaṇa’s *tapas*; protection that of a Kshattriya; traffic that of Vaiśya; and service that of a Sūdra. 236. It is by *tapas* that rishis of subdued souls, subsisting on fruits, roots, and air obtain a vision of the three worlds with all things moving and stationary. 237. Medicines, health, science, and the various divine conditions are attained by *tapas* alone as their instrument of acquisition. 238. Whatever is hard to be traversed, or obtained, or reached, or effected, is all to be accomplished through *tapas*, of which the potency is irresistible. 239. Both those who are guilty of the great sins, and all other transgressors, are freed from sin by fervid *tapas*. 240. Worms, serpents, insects, beasts, birds, and beings without motion attain to heaven through the force of *tapas*. 241. Whatever sin men commit by thought, word, or bodily acts, by *tapas* they speedily consume it all, when they become rich in devotion. 242. The gods both accept the sacrifices and augment the enjoyments of the Brāhmaṇa who has been purified by *tapas*. 243. It was by *tapas* that Prajāpati the lord created this scripture; and through it that the rishis obtained the *Vedas*. 244. Such is the great dignity which the gods ascribe to *tapas*, beholding its transcendent merit.”

I return for a moment to the story of Vasishṭha and his cow.

Lassen remarks (Ind. Alt. 2nd ed. i. 631, note) that Atharvan is given

in the Lexicons as a name of Vasishṭha (see Wilson's Dictionary, s.v.). Weber (Ind. St. i. 289) quotes from Mallinātha's Commentary on the Kirātārjunīya the following words : *Atharvanas tu mantroddhāro Vaśishṭhenā kṛitaḥ ity āgamaḥ* | “There is a passage of scripture to the effect that the mantras of the Atharvan were selected by Vasishṭha.” In Böhtlingk and Roth's Lexicon, s.v. Atharvan, it is noticed that the eleventh hymn of the fifth book of the Atharva-veda contains a conversation between Atharvan and Varuṇa about the possession of a wonderful cow bestowed by the latter on the former ; and it is remarked that this circumstance may explain the subsequent identification of Atharvan with Vasishṭha. Prof. Roth, however (Diss. on the A.V., Tübingen, 1865, p. 9), thinks the two sages are distinct. The cow is spoken of in A.V. vii. 104, as the “brindled cow given by Varuṇa to Atharvan which never lacked a calf” (*priśniṁ dhenuṁ Varunena dattām Atharvane nitya-vatsām*). The following is the curious hymn referred to :

A.V. v. 11, 1. *Katham mahe asurāya abravir iha katham pitre haraye tvesha-nṛinraḥ* | *priśniṁ Varuṇa dakshinām dadārān punarmaghavatram*¹⁸⁷ *manasā 'chikitsih* | 2. *Na kāmena punarmagho bhavāmi saṁ chakshe kam priśnim etām upāje* | *kena nu tvam Atharvan kāryena kena jātena asi jāta-vedāḥ* | 3. *Satyam ahaṁ gabhīrah kāryena satyaṁ jātena asmi jāta-vedāḥ* | *na me dāso na āryyo mahitvā vrataṁ mīmāya yaś ahaṁ dhariṣye* | 4. *Na trād anyaḥ karitaro na medhayā dhīrataro Varuṇa eva-dhāvan* | *trañ tā viśvā bhūvanāni vetttha sa chid nu traj jano māyi bibhāya* | 5. *Tvañ hi anga Varuṇa svadhāvan viśvā vetttha jūnimā suprāṇite* | *kiṁ rajasah enā paro anyad asti enā kim pareṇa avaraṁ amūra* | 6. *Ekaṁ rajasah enā paro anyad asti enā parah ekena durṇaśaṁ ohiḥ arvāk* | *tat te vidvān Varuṇa pra bravīmi adhvārachasah paṇayo bha-vantu* | *nīchair dūsah upa sarpantu bhūmim* | 7. *Trañ hi anga Varuṇa bravīshi punarmaghesu avadyāni bhūri* | *mo shu paṇīr abhi etārato bhūr mā tvā vochann arādhāsaṁ janāsaḥ* | 8. *Mā mā vochann arādhāsaṁ janāsaḥ punas te priśniṁ jarītar dadāmi* | *stotram me viśvam ā yāhi śachibhir antar viśvāsu mānushīshu vikshu* | 9. *Ā te stotrāṇi udyatāni yantu antar viśvāsu mānushīshu vikshu* | *dehi nu me yaś me ādatto asi yuṇyo me sapta-padaḥ sakha 'si* | 10. *Samāno bandhur Varuṇa samā jā vedāhaṁ tad yaś nāv eshā samā jā* | *dadāmi tad yat te ādatto asmi yuṣyas*

¹⁸⁷ This is the reading proposed by Professor Aufrecht instead of *punarmagha tvam*, which is found in Roth and Whitney's edition of the A.V.

*te sampa-padaḥ sakha' smi | 11. Devo devāya grinate vayodāḥ vipro viprāya
stuvate sumedhāḥ | ajījano hi Varuna svadhāvann Atharvāṇam pitaraṁ
deva-bandhum | tasmai u rādhāḥ kṛinuhi supraśastaṁ sakha no asi para-
maś cha bandhuḥ |*

1. (Atharvan speaks) "How hast thou, who art mighty in energy, declared before the great deity, how before the shining father (that the cow was mine) ?¹⁸⁸ Having bestowed a brindled cow (on me) as a sacrificial gift, thou hast resolved in thy mind to take her back. 2. (Varuna replies) It is not through desire that I revoke the gift; I drive hither this brindled cow that I may contemplate her. But by what wisdom, o Atharvan, in virtue of what nature, doest thou know the nature of beings? 3. (Atharvan answers) In truth I am profound in wisdom; in truth by my nature I know the nature of beings. Neither Dāsa nor Āryya can hinder the design which I shall undertake. 4. There is none other wiser or sager in understanding than thou, o self-dependent Varuna. Thou knowest all creatures; even the man of deep devices is afraid of thee. 5. Thou, o self-dependent Varuṇa, o wise director, knowest all creatures. What other thing is beyond this atmosphere? and what is nearer than that remotest thing, o thou unerring? 6. (Varuna replies) There is one thing beyond this atmosphere; and on this side of that one there is that which is near though inaccessible. Knowing that thing I declare it to thee. Let the glory of the niggards be cast down; let the Dāsas sink downward into the earth. 7. (Atharvan rejoins) Thou, o Varuṇa, sayest many evil things of those who revoke their gifts. Be not thou numbered among so many niggards; let not men call thee illiberal. 8. (Varuna replies) Let not men call me illiberal; I restore to thee, o worshipper, the brindled cow. Attend with all thy powers at every hymn in my honour among all the tribes of men. 9. (Atharvan answers) Let hymns ascend to thee among all the tribes of men. Give me that which thou hast taken from me; thou art to me an intimate friend of seven-fold value. 10. We two have a common bond, o Varuṇa, a common descent. I know what this common descent of ours is. (Varuna answers) I give thee that which I

¹⁸⁸ Professor Aufrecht thinks that *Dyauṣ*, 'the Heaven,' is denoted by *māke asurāya*, and that *pitre haraye*, if the correct reading, can only mean the Sun, the word *kari* being several times applied to that great luminary. I am otherwise indebted to Prof. A. for the correct sense of this line, and for other suggestions.

have taken from thee. I am thy intimate friend of seven-fold value, who, myself a god, confer life on thee a god [or priest, *devāya*] who praisest me, an intelligent sage on thee a sage. (The poet says) Thou, o self-dependent Varuṇa, hast begotten our father Atharvan, a kinsman of the gods. Grant to him most excellent wealth; thou art our friend and most eminent kinsman."

SECT. XI.—*The same, and other legends, according to the Rāmāyana.*

The story told in the preceding section is related at greater length in chapters 51–65¹⁸⁹ of the Bālakāṇḍa, or first book, of the Rāmāyana, of which I shall furnish an outline, noting any important variations from, or additions to, the account in the Mahābhārata, and at the same time giving an abstract of the other legends which are interwoven with the narrative. There was formerly, we are told, a king called Kuśa, son of Prajāpati, who had a son called Kuśanābha, who was father of Gādhi, the father of Viśvāmitra. The latter ruled the earth for many thousand years. On one occasion, when he was making a circuit of the earth, he came to Vaśishṭha's hermitage, the pleasant abode of many saints, sages, and holy devotees (chapter 51, verses 11–29), where, after at first declining, he allowed himself to be hospitably entertained with his followers by the son of Brahmā (ch. 52). Viśvāmitra (ch. 53), however, coveting the wondrous cow, which had supplied all the dainties of the feast, first of all asked that she should be given to him in exchange for a hundred thousand common cows, adding that "she was a gem, that gems were the property of the king, and that, therefore, the cow was his by right" (53, 9. *Ratnañ hi bhagavann etad ratna-hārī cha pārthivāḥ* | 10. *Tasmād me śabalāñ dehi ma-maishā dharmato dvija*). On this price being refused, the king advances immensely in his offers, but all without effect. He then proceeds (ch. 54)—very ungratefully and tyrannically, it must be allowed—to have the cow removed by force, but she breaks away from his attendants, and rushes back to her master, complaining that he was deserting her. He replies that he was not deserting her, but that the king was

¹⁸⁹ These are the sections of Schlegel's and the Bombay editions, which correspond to sections 52–67 of Gorresio's edition.

much more powerful than he. She answers, 54, 14 : *Na balam kshat-triyasyāhur brāhmaṇāḥ balavattarāḥ | brahma brahma-balāṁ diryāṁ kshat-trāch cha balavattaram | aprameyam balāṁ tubhyaṁ na trayā balavattarāḥ | Viśvāmitro mahācīryo tejas tara dūrādām | niyunkshva mām mahātejas tvam brahma-bala-sambhritām | tasya darpam balam yatnāṁ nāśayāmi durātmanāḥ |* "Men do not ascribe strength to a Kshatriya : the Brāhmans are stronger. The strength of Brāhmans is divine, and superior to that of Kshatriyas. 15. Thy strength is immeasurable. Viśvāmitra, though of great vigour, is not more powerful than thou. Thy energy is invincible. Commission me, who have been acquired by thy Brahmanical power, and I will destroy the pride, and force, and attempt of this wicked prince."¹⁹⁰ She accordingly by her bellowing creates hundreds of Pahlavas, who destroy the entire host (*nāśayanti balaṁ sāram*, verse 19) of Viśvāmitra, but are slain by him in their turn. Sākas and Yavanas, of great power and valour, and well armed, were then produced, who consumed the king's soldiers,¹⁹¹ but were routed by him. The cow then (ch. 55) calls into existence by her bellowing, and from different parts of her body, other warriors of various tribes, who again destroyed Viśvāmitra's entire army, foot soldiers, elephants, horses, chariots, and all. A hundred of the monarch's sons, armed with various weapons, then rushed in great fury on Vaśishṭha, but were all reduced to ashes in a moment by the blast of that sage's mouth.¹⁹² Viśvāmitra, being thus utterly vanquished and humbled, appointed one of his sons to be regent, and travelled to the Himālaya, where he betook himself to austerities, and thereby obtained a vision of Mahādeva, who at his desire revealed to him the science of arms in all its branches, and gave him celestial weapons with which, elated and full of pride, he consumed the hermitage of Vaśishṭha, and put its inhabitants to flight. Vaśishṭha then threatens Viśvāmitra and

¹⁹⁰ Compare Manu, xi. 32 : *Sva-vīryād rāja-vīryāch cha sva-vīryam balavattaram | tasmāt svenaiva vīryena nigrihñīyād arīn dvījāḥ |* "Of the two, his own, and a king's might, let a Brāhman know that his own is superior. By his own might alone, therefore, let him restrain his enemies."

¹⁹¹ We had been before told that they had been killed, so that this looks like a slaying of the slain, as no resuscitation of the army is alluded to.

¹⁹² On this the Commentator remarks that "though these princes were Kshatriyas, they were not actual kings, and had acted tyrannically ; so that a very slight expiation was required for killing them" (*kshattriyave 'pi prithivī-patiūbhāvāt tad-badha alpa-prāyaśchittam ātatāyitvāch oha |*).

uplifts his Brahmanical mace. Viśvāmitra, too, raises his fiery weapon and calls out to his adversary to stand. Vaśishṭha bids him to show his strength, and boasts that he will soon humble his pride. He asks : (56, 4) *Kva cha te kshattriya-balam kva cha brahma-balam mahat | paśya brahma-balaṁ divyam mama kshattriya-pūṁśana | tasyāstram Gādhiputrasya ghoram āgneyam udyatam | brahma-danḍena tach chhāntam agnor vegah ivāmbhasā |* “‘ What comparison is there between a Kshattriya’s might, and the great might of a Brāhmaṇa ? Behold, thou contemptible Kshattriya, my divine Brahmanical power.’ The dreadful fiery weapon uplifted by the son of Gādhi was then quenched by the rod of the Brāhmaṇa, as fire is by water.” Many and various other celestial missiles, as the nooses of Brahmā, Kāla (Time), and Varuna, the discus of Vishnu, and the trident of Siva, were hurled by Viśvāmitra at his antagonist, but the son of Brahmā swallowed them up in his all-devouring mace. Finally, to the intense consternation of all the gods, the warrior shot off the terrific weapon of Brāhmaṇa (*brāhmāstra*) ; but this was equally ineffectual against the Brahmanical sage. Vaśishṭha had now assumed a direful appearance : (56, 18) *Roma-kūpeshu sarveshu Vaśishṭhasya mahatmanah | marīchyah iva nishpetur agner dhūmākulārchiḥash | prājvalad brahma-danḍas cha Vaśishṭhasya karodyataḥ | vidhūmaḥ iva kālagnir Yama-danḍaḥ ivāparah |* “Jets of fire mingled with smoke darted from the pores of his body ; (19) the Brahmanical mace blazed in his hand like a smokeless¹⁹³ mundane conflagration, or a second sceptre of Yāma.” Being appeased, however, by the munis, who proclaimed his superiority to his rival, the sage stayed his vengeance ; and Viśvāmitra exclaimed with a groan : (56, 23) *Dhig balam kshattriya-balam brahma-tejo-balam balam | ekena brahma-danḍena sarvāstrāṇi hatāni me |* “‘ Shame on a Kshattriya’s strength : the strength of a Brāhmaṇa’s might alone is strength : by the single Brahmanical mace all my weapons have been destroyed.’” No alternative now remains to the humiliated monarch, but either to acquiesce in this helpless inferiority, or to work out his own elevation to the Brahmanical order. He embraces the latter alternative : (56, 24) *Tad etat prasamīkshyāham prasannendriya-mānasah | tapo mahat samāsthāsyे yad vai brahmatra-kāranam |* “Having pondered well this defeat, I shall betake myself, with composed senses and mind,

¹⁹³ The Bombay edition has *vidhūmaḥ*. Schlegel’s and Gorresio’s editions have *sādhūmaḥ*, “ enveloped in smoke.”

to strenuous austere fervour, which shall exalt me to the rank of a Brāhmaṇa." Intensely vexed and mortified, groaning and full of hatred against his enemy, he travelled with his queen to the south, and carried his resolution into effect; (ch. 57) and we are first of all told that three sons Havishyanda, Madhusyanda, and Dṛiḍhanetra were born to him. At the end of a thousand years Brahmā appeared, and announced that he had conquered the heaven of royal sages (*rājārshis*); and, in consequence of his austere fervour, he was recognised as having attained that rank. Viśvāmitra, however, was ashamed, grieved, and incensed at the offer of so very inadequate a reward, and exclaimed: " 'I have practised intense austerity, and the gods and ṛishis regard me only as a rājarshi!'¹²⁴ Austerities, it appears, are altogether fruitless'" (57, 5. *Jitāḥ rājarshi-lokās te tapasā Kuśikātmaja | 6. Anena tapasā traṁ hi rājarshir iti vidmahe | 7. Viśvāmitro 'pi tach ohrrutvā hriyā kinchid avāñ-mukhaḥ | duḥkhena mahatā "vishṭaḥ samanyur idam abravīt | tapaś cha sumahat taptaṁ rājarshir iti mām viduḥ | devāḥ sarshi-guṇāḥ sarve nāsti manye tapah-phalam |).* Notwithstanding

¹²⁴ The Vishnu Purāna, iii. 6, 21, says: "There are three kinds of ṛishis: Brāhmaṇarshis, after them Dēvarshis, and after them Rājarshis" (*jneyāḥ brahmaṇarshayāḥ pūrvāñ tebhyaḥ devarshayāḥ punah | rājarshayāḥ punas tebhyaḥ ṛishi-prakritiyas trayuḥ |*). Bühtlingk and Roth, *s.v.* *ṛishi*, mention also (on the authority of the vocabulary called Trikāndāśeṣa) the words *māharshi* (great rishi), *pārāmarshi* (most eminent rishi), *śrutarshi* (secondary rishi), and *kāṇḍarshi*, who is explained *s.v.* to be a teacher of a particular portion (*kāṇḍa*) of the Veda. *Devarshis* are explained by Professor Wilson (V.P. iii. p. 68, paraphrasing the text of the Vishnu Purāna), to be "sages who are demi-gods also;" *Brāhmaṇarshis* to be "sages who are sons of Brahmā or Brahmins;" and *Rājarshis* to be "princes who have adopted a life of devotion." In a note he adds: "A similar enumeration is given in the Vūyū, with some additions: Rishi is derived from *rish*, 'to go to,' or 'approach;' the Brahmaṇarshis, it is said, are descendants of the five patriarchs, who were the founders of races or gotras of Brahmins, or Kāsyapa, Vaśiṣṭha, Angiras, Atri, and Bhrigu; the Devarshis are Nara and Nārāyaṇa, the sons of Dharmā; the Bālakhilyas, who sprang from Kratu; Kardama, the son of Pulāha; Kuvēra, the son of Pulastya; Achala, the son of Pratyūsha; Nārada and Parvata, the sons of Kāsyapa. Rājarshis are Iksvāku and other princes. The Brahmaṇarshis dwell in the sphere of Brahmā; the Devarshis in the region of the gods; and the Rājarshis in the heaven of Indra." Brahmaṇarshis are evidently *ṛishis* who were priests; and Rājarshis, *ṛishis* of kingly extraction. If so, a Devarshi, having a divine character, should be something higher than either. Professor Roth, following apparently the Trikāndāśeṣa, defines them as "ṛishis dwelling among the gods." I am not aware how far back this classification of *ṛishis* goes in Indian literature. Roth, *s.vv.* *ṛishi*, *brahmaṇarshi* and *devarshi* does not give any references to these words as occurring in the Brāhmaṇas; and they are not found in the hymns of the R.V. where, however, the "seven *ṛishis*" are mentioned. Regarding *rājarshis* see pp. 266 ff. above.

this disappointment, he had ascended one grade, and forthwith recommenced his work of mortification.

At this point of time his austerities were interrupted by the following occurrences: King Trisanku, one of Ikshvāku's descendants, had conceived the design of celebrating a sacrifice by virtue of which he should ascend bodily to heaven. As Vaishīṣṭha, on being summoned, declared that the thing was impossible (*aśakyam*), Trisanku travelled to the south, where the sage's hundred sons were engaged in austerities, and applied to them to do what their father had declined. Though he addressed them with the greatest reverence and humility, and added that "the Ikshvākus regarded their family-priests as their highest resource in difficulties, and that, after their father, he himself looked to them as his tutelary deities" (57, 22. *Ikshvākūñāṁ hi sarveshāṁ purodhāḥ paramā gatiḥ | tasmād anantaram sarve bhavanto daivatam mama*), he received from the haughty priests the following rebuke for his presumption: (58, 2) *Pratyākhyāto 'si durbuddhe guruṇā satyavādinā | tañ kathañ samatikramya śākhāntaram upeyitān |* 3. *Ikshvākūñāṁ hi sarveshāṁ purodhāḥ paramā gatiḥ | na chātikramitūṁ śākyāñ vachanañ satyavādināḥ |* 4. "Aśakyam" iti chorācha Vaishīṣṭho bhagavān rishiḥ | tañ vayañ vai samāharttum kratum śaktāḥ kathaṁ tara | 5. *Bāliśas trañ nara-śreshṭha gamyatām sva-puram punaḥ | yājane bhagavān śaktas trailokyasyāpi pārthiva | avamānañ kathaṁ kartum tasya śakshyāmahe vayam |* "Fool, thou hast been refused by thy truth-speaking preceptor. How is it that, disregarding his authority, thou hast resorted to another school (*śākhā*)?"¹⁹⁵ 3. The family-priest is the highest oracle of all the Ikshvākus; and the command of that veracious personage cannot be transgressed. 4. Vaishīṣṭha, the divine rishi, has declared that 'the thing cannot be,' and how can we undertake thy sacrifice? 5. Thou art foolish, king; return to thy capital. The divine (Vaishīṣṭha) is competent to

¹⁹⁵ It does not appear how Trisanku, in asking the aid of Vaishīṣṭha's sons after applying in vain to their father, could be charged with resorting to another *sākhā* (school), in the ordinary sense of that word: as it is not conceivable that the sons should have been of another Śākhā from the father, whose cause they espouse with so much warmth. The Commentator in the Bombay edition explains the word *sākhāntaram* as = *yājanādinā rakshakāntaram*, "one who by sacrificing for thee, etc., will be another protector." Gorresio's Gauda text, which may often be used as a commentary on the older one, has the following paraphrase of the words in question, ch. 60, 3: *Mūlam utsṛjya kasmāt trañ sākhāś icchasi ūmbitum |* "Why, forsaking the root, dost thou desire to hang upon the branches."

act as priest of the three worlds; how can we shew him disrespect?" Triśanku then gave them to understand, that as his preceptor and "his preceptor's sons had declined compliance with his requests, he should think of some other expedient." In consequence of his venturing to express this presumptuous intention, they condemned him by their imprecation to become a Chanḍila (58, 7. "Pratyākhyāto bhagavatā guru-putrais tathairā cha | anyām gatim gamishyāmi srasti ro 'stu tapodhanāḥ" | rishi-putrās tu tach ohrutvā rākyān ghorābhisaṁhitam | śepuh parama-sankruddhāś "chāndālatraṁ gamishyasi" |). As this curse soon took effect, and the unhappy king's form was changed into that of a degraded outcast, he resorted to Viśvāmitra (who, as we have seen, was also dwelling at this period in the south), enlarging on his own virtues and piety, and bewailing his fate. Viśvāmitra commiserated his condition (ch. 59), and promised to sacrifice on his behalf, and exalt him to heaven in the same Chanḍila-form to which he had been condemned by his preceptors' curse. "Heaven is now as good as in thy possession, since thou hast resorted to the son of Kuśika" (59, 4. Guru-sāpa-kṛitām rūpām yad idām trayi varttate | anena saha rūpēṇa saśārīro gamishyasi | hasta-prāptam aham manye svargām tara narādhipa | yas traṁ Kauśikam āgamyā śaranyaḥ śaranaṁ gataḥ |). He then directed that preparations should be made for the sacrifice, and that all the rishis, including the family of Vaśishṭha, should be invited to the ceremony. The disciples of Viśvāmitra, who had conveyed his message, reported the result on their return in these words: (59, 11) Srutvā te vachanāṁ sarve samāyānti dvijātayah | sarva-deśeshu chāgachhan varjayitvā Mahodayam | Vāśishṭham tach chhatām sarvām krodha-paryākulāksharam | yad uvācha vacho ghorām śriṇu tvam muni-pungava | "kshattriyo yājako yasya chanḍālasya viśeshataḥ | kathaṁ sadasi bhuktāro havis tasya surarshayāḥ | brāhmaṇāḥ vā mahātmāno bhuktvā chanḍala-bhojanam | kathaṁ svargām gamishyanti Viśvāmitrena pālitāḥ" | etad vachana-naishṭhuryyam uchuḥ sañrakta-lochanāḥ | Vāśishṭhāḥ muni-sārdūla sarve saha-mahodayāḥ | "Having heard your message, all the Brāhmans are assembling in all the countries, and have arrived, excepting Mahodaya (Vaśishṭha?). Hear what dreadful words those hundred Vaśishṭhas, their voices quivering with rage, have uttered: 'How can the gods and rishis¹⁹⁶ con-

¹⁹⁶ The rishis as priests (*ritvik*) would be entitled to eat the remains of the sacrifice, according to the Commentator.

sume the oblation at the sacrifice of that man, especially if he be a Chāṇḍāla, for whom a Kshattriya is officiating-priest? How can illustrious Brāhmans ascend to heaven, after eating the food of a Chāṇḍāla, and being entertained by Viśvāmitra?" These ruthless words all the Vaśishṭhas, together with Mahodaya, uttered, their eyes inflamed with anger." Viśvāmitra, who was greatly incensed on receiving this message, by a curse doomed the sons of Vaśishṭha to be reduced to ashes, and reborn as degraded outcasts (*mṛitapāḥ*) for seven hundred births, and Mahodaya to become a Nishāda. Knowing that this curse had taken effect (ch. 60), Viśvāmitra then, after eulogizing Triśanku, proposed to the assembled rishis that the sacrifice should be celebrated. To this they assented, being actuated by fear of the terrible sage's wrath. Viśvāmitra himself officiated at the sacrifice as *yajāka*; ¹⁹⁷ and the other rishis as priests (*ritvijāḥ*) (with other functions) performed all the ceremonies. Viśvāmitra next invited the gods to partake of the oblations: (60, 11) *Nābhya-gaman yadā tatra bhāgārthaṁ sarva-devatāḥ | tataḥ kopa-samāvishṭo Viśrāmitro mahāmuniḥ | sruvam uāyanya sakrodhas Triśankum idam abravīt |* "paśya me tapaso vīryām svārjitaḥasya nareśvara | esha tvām svāśarīrena nayāmi svargam ojasā | duslprc̄yañ svāśarīrena svargaṁ gachchha nareśvara | svārjitaṁ kinchid apy asti mayā hi tapasā phalam |" When, however, the deities did not come to receive their portions, Viśvāmitra became full of wrath, and raising aloft the sacrificial ladle, thus addressed Triśanku: 'Behold, o monarch, the power of austere fervour acquired by my own efforts. I myself, by my own energy, will conduct thee to heaven. Ascend to that celestial region which is so arduous to attain in an earthly body. I have surely earned some reward of my austerity.'" Triśanku ascended instantly to heaven in the sight of the munis. Indra, however, ordered him to be gone, as a person who, having incurred the curse of his spiritual preceptors, was unfit for the abode of the celestials;—and to fall down headlong to earth (60, 17. *Triśanku gachha bhūyas trañ nāsi svarga-kṛitālayaḥ | guru-śāpa-hato mūḍha pata bhūnim avāk-śirāḥ |*). He accordingly began to descend, invoking loudly, as he fell, the help of his spiritual patron. Viśvāmitra, greatly incensed, called out to him to stop: (60, 20) *Tato brahma-tapo-yogāt Prajāpatir ivāparah | sasarjā dakshīne bhāge saptarshīn aparān punaḥ | dakshinām diśam āsthāya*

¹⁹⁷ This means as *adhvaryu* according to the Commentator.

rishi-madhye mahāyaśāḥ | nakshattra-mälām aparām asrijat kroḍha-
mūrchhitāḥ | anyam Indram karishyāmi loko vā syād anindrakah | daiva-
tāny api sa kroḍhāt srashṭuṁ samupachakrame ¹⁹⁸ “Then by the power
of his divine knowledge and austere fervour he created, like another
Prajāpati, other Seven Rishis (a constellation so called) in the southern
part of the sky. Having proceeded to this quarter of the heavens, the
renowned sage, in the midst of the rishis, formed another garland of
stars, being overcome with fury. Exclaiming, ‘I will create another
Indra, or the world shall have no Indra at all,’ he began, in his rage,
to call gods also into being.” The rishis, gods (Suras), and Asuras now
became seriously alarmed and said to Viśvāmitra, in a conciliatory tone,
that Triśanku, “as he had been cursed by his preceptors, should not be
admitted bodily into heaven, until he had undergone some lustration”
(60, 24. *Ayaṁ rājā mahābhāga guru-śāpa-parikshataḥ | saśariro divāñ*
yātuṁ nārhaty akrīta-pāvanah |). ¹⁹⁹ The sage replied that he had given
a promise to Triśanku, and appealed to the gods to permit his protégé
to remain bodily in heaven, and the newly created stars to retain their
places in perpetuity. The gods agreed that “these numerous stars
should remain, but beyond the sun’s path, and that Triśanku, like an
immortal, with his head downwards, should shine among them, and be
followed by them,” adding “that his object would be thus attained, and
his renown secured, and he would be like a dweller in heaven” (60,
29. *Evaṁ bhavatu bhadram te tishṭhantv etāni sarvaśāḥ | gagane tāny*
anekāni vaiśvānara-pathād vahīḥ | nakshattrāṇi muni-śreshṭha teshu
jyottishshu jāvalan | avāk-sīrūṣ Triśankuś cha tishthatv amara-sanni-
bhāḥ | anuyāsyanti chaitāni jyotiṁshli nrīpa-sattamam | kṛitārthaṁ kirt-
timantaṁ cha svarga-loka-gataṁ yathā |). Thus was this great dispute
adjusted by a compromise, which Viśvāmitra accepted.

This story of Triśanku, it will have been observed, differs materially
from the one quoted above (p. 375 ff.) from the Harivamśa; but brings
out more distinctly the character of the conflict between Vaishṭha and
Viśvāmitra.

When all the gods and rishis had departed at the conclusion of the

¹⁹⁸ I follow Schlegel’s text, which differs verbally, though not in substance, both
from the Bombay edition and from Gorresio’s.

¹⁹⁹ The last compound word *akritapāvanaḥ*, “without lustration,” is given by
Schlegel and Gorresio. The Bombay edition has instead of it *eva tapodhana*, “o sage
rich in austerity.”

sacrifice, Viśvāmitra said to his attendant devotees : (61, 2) *Mahān vighnah pravṛitto 'yam dakshīgām āsthito diśam | diśam anyām prapatsyāmas tatra tapsyāmahe tapah |* “This has been a great interruption [to our austerities] which has occurred in the southern region : we must proceed in another direction to continue our penances.” He accordingly went to a forest in the west, and began his austerities anew. Here the narrative is again interrupted by the introduction of another story, that of king Ambārīsha, king of Ayodhyā, who was, according to the Rāmāyaṇa, the twenty-eighth in descent from Ikshvāku, and the twenty-second from Triśanku. (Compare the genealogy in the Rāmāyaṇa, i. 70, and ii. 110, 6 ff., with that in Wilson’s Vishṇu Purāṇa, vol. iii. pp. 260 ff. 280, 284 ff. and 303 ; which is different.) Viśvāmitra is nevertheless represented as flourishing contemporaneously with both of these princes. The story relates that Ambarīsha was engaged in performing a sacrifice, when Indra carried away the victim. The priest said that this ill-omened event had occurred owing to the king’s bad administration ; and would call for a great expiation, unless a human victim could be produced (61, 8. *Prāyaśchittam mahad hy etad naraṁ vā purusharshabha | ānayasva pūṣuṇ śighraṁ yārat karma pravarttate |*). After a long search the royal-rishi (Ambarīsha) came upon the Brāhmaṇa-rishi Richīka, a descendant of Bhrigu, and asked him to sell one of his sons for a victim, at the price of a hundred thousand cows. Richīka answered that he would not sell his eldest son ; and his wife added that she would not sell the youngest : “eldest sons,” she observed, “being generally the favourites of their fathers, and youngest sons of their mothers” (61, 18. *Prāyena hi naraśreshṭha jyeshṭhāḥ pitṛishu vallabhāḥ | mātṛinām cha kanīyāṁśas tasmād rakṣhe kanīyāsam |*). The second son, Sunaśsepa, then said that in that case he regarded himself as the one who was to be sold, and desired the king to remove him. The hundred thousand cows, with ten millions of gold-pieces and heaps of jewels, were paid down, and Sunaśsepa carried away. As they were passing through Pushkara (ch. 62) Sunaśsepa beheld his maternal uncle Viśvāmitra (see Rāmāyaṇa, i. 34, 7,²⁰⁰ and p. 352 above) who was engaged in austerities there with other rishis, threw himself into his arms,

²⁰⁰ *Pūrvajā bhaginī chāpi mama Rāghava suvratā | nāmnā Satyavatī nāma Richīka pratipāditā |* “And I have a religious sister older than myself called Satyavatī, who was given in marriage to Richīka.”

and implored his assistance, urging his orphan, friendless, and helpless state, as claims on the sage's benevolence (62, 4. *Na me 'sti mātā na pitā jnātayo bāndhavāḥ kutaḥ | trātum arhasi mām saumya dharmena muni-pungara | 7. Na me nātho hy anāthasya bhara bharyena che-tasā |*). Viśvāmitra soothed him; and pressed his own sons to offer themselves as victims in the room of Sunaścepa. This proposition met with no favour from Madhushyanda²⁰¹ and the other sons of the royal hermit, who answered with haughtiness and derision: (62, 14) *Kathām ālma-sutān hitvā trāyase 'nya-sutān vibho | akāryyam ita paśyāmaḥ sra-māṇīsam ita bhojane |* "How is it that thou sacrificest thine own sons, and seekest to rescue those of others? We look upon this as wrong, and like the eating of one's own flesh."²⁰² The sage was exceedingly wroth at this disregard of his injunction, and doomed his sons to be born in the most degraded classes, like Vaśishṭha's sons, and to eat dog's flesh,²⁰³ for a thousand years. He then said to Sunaścepa: (62, 19) *Paritrapāśair ābaddho rakta-mālyānulepanah | Vaishṇaraṁ yūpam āśudyā rāg-bhir Agniṁ udāhara | ime cha gāthe dve dirye gāyethāḥ muni-putraka | Ambarīshasya yajne 'smiṁsataḥ siddhim arāpsyasi |* "When thou art bound with hallowed cords, decked with a red garland, and anointed with unguents, and fastened to the sacrificial post of Vishṇu, then address thyself to Agni, and sing these two divine verses (*gāthās*), at the sacrifice of Ambarīsha; then shalt thou attain the fulfilment [of thy desire]." Being furnished with the two *gāthās*, Sunaścepa proposed at once to king Ambarīsha that they should set out for their destination. When bound at the stake to be immolated, dressed in a red garment, "he celebrated the two gods, Indra and his younger brother (Vishṇu), with the excellent verses. The Thousand-eyed (Indra) was pleased with the secret hymn, and bestowed long life on Sunaścepa"²⁰⁴ (62, 25. *Sa baddho vāgbhir agryābhir abhitushṭāra vai surau | Indram Indrānujaṁ chaiva yathārad muni-putrakah | tasmai prītah sahasrāksho*

²⁰¹ The word is written thus in Schlegel's and Gorresio's editions. The Bombay edition reads *Madhuchhanda*.

²⁰² Schlegel and Gorresio read *svamāṇīsam*, "one's own flesh," which seems much more appropriate than *eva-māṇīsam*, "dog's flesh," the reading of the Bombay edition.

²⁰³ Gorresio's edition alone reads *eva-māṇīsam-vrittayāḥ*, "subsisting on your own flesh," and makes this to be allusion to what the sons had just said and a punishment for their impertinence (64, 16. *Yasmāt eva-māṇīsam uddishṭām yushmūbhīr avamunya*

*rahasya-stuti-toshitah | dirgham ayus tadda prādāch Chhunāśephāya Vāsavah |).*²⁰⁴ King Ambarīsha also received great benefits from this sacrifice. Viśvāmitra meanwhile proceeded with his austerities, which he prolonged for a thousand years.

At the end of this time (ch. 63) the gods came to allot his reward; and Brahmā announced that he had attained the rank of a rishi, thus apparently advancing an additional step. Dissatisfied, as it would seem, with this, the sage commenced his task of penance anew. After a length of time he beheld the nymph (Apsaras) Menākā, who had come to bathe in the lake of Pushkara. She flashed on his view, unequalled in her radiant beauty, like lightning in a cloud (63, 5. *Rūpenāprati-māñ tattrā vidyutāñ jalade yathā*). He was smitten by her charms, invited her to be his companion in his hermitage, and for ten years remained a slave to her witchery, to the great prejudice of his austerities.²⁰⁵ At length he became ashamed of this ignoble subjection, and full of indignation at what he believed to be a device of the gods to disturb his devotion; and, dismissing the nymph with gentle accents, he departed for the northern mountains, where he practised severe austerities for a thousand years on the banks of the Kauśikī river. The gods became alarmed at the progress he was making, and decided that he should be dignified with the appellation of great rishi (*māhārshi*); and Brahmā, giving effect to the general opinion of the deities, announced that he had conferred that rank upon him. Joining his hands and bowing his head, Viśvāmitra replied that he should consider himself to have indeed completely subdued his senses, if the incomparable title of Brāhmaṇ-rishi were conferred upon him (63, 31. *Brahmarshi-śabdam atulañ svārjitaiḥ karmabhiḥ śubhaiḥ | yadi me bhagavān āha tato 'hañ vijitendriyah |*). Brahmā informed him in answer, that he had not yet acquired the power of perfectly controlling his senses; but should make further efforts with that view. The sage then began to put himself through a yet more rigorous course of austerities, standing with his arms erect, without support, feeding on air, in summer exposed to five fires (*i.e.* one on each of four sides, and the sun overhead), in the rainy season remaining unsheltered from the wet, and in

²⁰⁴ I have alluded above, p. 358, note, to the differences which exist between this legend of S'unaśeṣa and the older one in the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa.

²⁰⁵ Compare Mr. Leckie's History of Rationalism, vol. i. p. 86.

winter lying on a watery couch night and day. This he continued for a thousand years. At last Indra and the other deities became greatly distressed at the idea of the merit he was storing up, and the power which he was thereby acquiring; and the chief of the celestials desired (ch. 64) the nymph Rāmbhā to go and bewitch him by her blandishments. She expressed great reluctance to expose herself to the wrath of the formidable muni, but obeyed the repeated injunction of Indra, who promised that he and Kandarpa (the god of love) should stand by her, and assumed her most attractive aspect with the view of overcoming the sage's impassibility. He, however, suspected this design, and becoming greatly incensed, he doomed the nymph by a curse to be turned into stone and to continue in that state for a thousand years.²⁰⁶ The curse took effect, and Kandarpa and Indra slunk away. In this way, though he resisted the allurements of sensual love,²⁰⁷ he lost the whole fruit of his austerities by yielding to anger; and had to begin his work over again. He resolved to check his irascibility, to remain silent, not even to breathe for hundreds of years; to dry up his body; and to fast and stop his breath till he had obtained the coveted character of a Brāhmaṇa. He then (ch. 65) left the Himālāya and travelled to the east, where he underwent a dreadful exercise, unequalled in the whole history of austerities, maintaining silence, according to a vow, for a thousand years. At the end of this time he had attained to perfection, and although thwarted by many obstacles, he remained unmoved by anger. On the expiration of this course of austerity, he prepared some food to eat; which Indra, coming in the form of a Brāhmaṇa, begged that he would give him. Viśvāmitra did so, and though he had none left for himself, and was obliged to remain fasting, he said nothing to the Brāhmaṇa, on account of his vow of silence.

65, 8. *Tasyānuchchhvasamānasya mūrdhni dhūmo vyajāyata |*
 9. *Trailokyāṁ yena sambhrāntam ātāpitam ivābhavat | 11. "Ba-*
hubhiḥ kāraṇair deva Viśvāmitro mahāmuniḥ | lobhitāḥ krodhitāś chaiva
tapasā chābhivardhate | 12. Na dīyate yadi tv asya manasā yad
ibhīpsitam | 13. Vināśayati trailokyāṁ tapasā sa-charācharam | vyākulāś

²⁰⁶ On this the Commentator remarks that this incident shews that anger is more difficult to conquer than even lust (*etena kānūḍ api krodro durjeyah iti sūchitam*).

²⁰⁷ The Commentator, however, suggests that the sudden sight of Rāmbhā may at first have excited in him some feelings of this kind (*āpūtato Rāmbhā-darśana-pravrittyā kāmenāpi tapaḥ-kehayaḥ*).

cha diśāḥ sarvāḥ na cha kinchit prakāśate | 14. Sugaraḥ kshubhitāḥ sarve
 viśiryante cha parvatāḥ | prakampate cha vasudhā vāyur vātiha sankulāḥ |
 15. Brahman na pratijānīmo nāstiko jāyate janah | 16. Buddhiṁ
 na kurute yāvad nāśe deva mahāmuniḥ | 17. Tāvat prasādyo bhagavān
 agnirūpo mahāyutih” | 19. Brahmarshe svāgataṁ te ’stu tapasā
 smāḥ sutośitāḥ | 20. Brāhmaṇyaṁ tapasogrena prāptavān asi Kauśika |
 dīrgham āyuś che te brahman dadāmi sa-marud-ganah | 21. . . . svasti
 prāpnūhi bhadraṁ te gachha saumya yathāsukham | . . . 22. . . . brāh-
 manyaṁ yadi me prāptāṁ dīrgham āyus tathaiva cha | 23. Oṁkāro ’tha
 vashatkāro vedāś cha varayantu mām | kshattra-veda-vidāṁ śreshṭho brah-
 ma-veda-vidām api | 24. Brahma-putro Vaśiṣṭhaḥ mām evāṁ vadatu deva-
 tāḥ | 25. Tataḥ prasādito devair Vaśiṣṭhaḥ japatāṁ varah | sakha-
 yaṁ chakāra brahmashir “evam astv” iti chābravīt | 26. “Brahmar-
 shitraṁ na sandehāḥ sarvam sampadyate tara” | 27. Viśvāmitro
 ’pi dharmātmā labdhvā brāhmaṇyam uttamam | pūjayāmāsa brahmashir
 Vaśiṣṭhañ japatāṁ raram | “As he continued to suspend his breath,
 smoke issued from his head, to the great consternation and distress of
 the three worlds.” The gods, rishis, etc., then addressed Brahmā: “The
 great muni Viśvāmitra has been allured and provoked in various ways,
 but still advances in his sanctity. If his wish is not conceded, he will
 destroy the three worlds by the force of his austerity. All the regions
 of the universe are confounded, no light anywhere shines; all the oceans
 are tossed, and the mountains crumble, the earth quakes, and the wind
 blows confusedly. 15. We cannot, o Brahmā, guarantee that mankind
 shall not become atheistic. 16. Before the great and glorious sage
 of fiery form resolves to destroy (everything) let him be propitiated.”
 The gods, headed by Brahmā, then addressed Viśvāmitra: ““Hail
 Brāhmaṇ rishi, we are gratified by thy austerities; o Kauśika, thou hast,
 through their intensity, attained to Brāhmaṇhood. I, o Brāhmaṇ, as-
 sociated with the Maruts, confer on thee long life. May every blessing
 attend thee; depart wherever thou wilt.” The sage, delighted, made
 his obeisance to the gods, and said: ‘If I have obtained Brāhmaṇhood,
 and long life, then let the mystic monosyllable (*oṁkāra*) and the sacri-
 ficial formula (*vāshatkāra*) and the Vedas recognise me in that capacity.
 And let Vaśiṣṭha, the son of Brahmā, the most eminent of those who
 are skilled in the Kshattra-veda, and the Brāhma-veda (the knowledge
 of the Kshatriya and the Brahmanical disciplines), address me simi-

early.' . . . Accordingly Vaśishṭha, being propitiated by the gods, became reconciled to Viśvāmitra, and recognised his claim to all the prerogatives of a Brāhmaṇa rishi. . . . Viśvāmitra, too, having attained the Brahmanical rank, paid all honour to Vaśishṭha." Such was the grand result achieved by Viśvāmitra, at the cost of many thousand years of intense mortification of the body, and discipline of the soul. During the course of the struggle he had manifested, as the story tells us, a power little, if at all, inferior to that of Indra, the king of the gods; and as in a former legend we have seen King Nahusha actually occupying the throne of that deity, we cannot doubt that—according to the recognised principles of Indian mythology—Viśvāmitra had only to recommence his career of self-mortification in order to raise himself yet higher than he had yet risen, to the rank of a devarshi, or divine rishi (if this be, indeed, a superior grade to that of brahmarsi), or to any other elevation he might desire. But, as far as the account in the Rāmāyaṇa informs us, he was content with his success. He stood on a footing of perfect equality with his rival Vaśishṭha, and became indifferent to further honours. In fact, it was not necessary for the purpose of the inventors of the legend to carry him any higher. They only wished to account for his exercising the prerogatives of a Brāhmaṇa; and this had been already accomplished to their satisfaction.

In the story of Sakuntalā, however, as narrated in the Mahābhārata, Ādi-parvan, sixty-ninth and following sections, we are informed that, to the great alarm of Indra, Viśvāmitra renewed his austerities, even long after he had attained the position of a Brāhmaṇa, verse 2914 : *Tu-p-yamānah kīla purā Viśvāmitro mahat tapah | subhriśāñ tāpayāmūsa Sakrañ sura-ganeśvaraṁ | tapasā dīpta-vīryyo'yañ sthānād māñ chyā-rayed iti |* "Formerly Viśvāmitra, who was practising intense austerity, occasioned great distress to Sakra (Indra), the lord of the deities, lest by the fiery energy so acquired by the saint he himself should be cast down from his place." Indra accordingly resorted to the usual device of sending one of the Apsarases, Menakā, to seduce the sage by the display of her charms, and the exercise of all her allurements, "by beauty, youth, sweetness, gestures, smiles, and words" (verse 2920, *Rupa-yauvana-mādhuryya-cheshṭita-smita-bhāshitaiḥ*), into the indulgence of sensual love; and thus put an end to his efforts after increased sanctity. Menakā urges the dangers of the mission arising from the great power

and irascibility of the sage, of whom, she remarked, even Indra himself was afraid, as a reason for excusing her from undertaking it; and refers to some incidents in Viśvāmitra's history, verse 2923: *Mahābhāgañ Vaśishṭhañ yaḥ putrair iṣṭair vyayojayat | kshattra-jātaś cha yaḥ pūrvam abhavad brāhmaṇo balāt | śaucharthañ yo nadīm chakre durgamām bahubhir jalaiḥ | yām tām puṇyatamām loke Kauśikīti vidur janāḥ |* 2925. *Babhāra yatrāya purā kāle durge mahātmanāḥ | dārān Matango dharmātmā rājarshir vyādhataṁ gataḥ | atīta-kāle durbhikshe abhyetya punar īśramam | munih Pāreti nadyāḥ vai nāma chakre tadā prabhūḥ | Matangam yājyānchakre yatra pṛita-manāḥ svayam | tvām cha somam bhayād yasya gataḥ pātuṁ sureśvara | chakārānyām cha lokām vai krud-dho nakshattra-sampadā | pratiśravana-pūrrāṇi nakshattrāṇi chakāra yaḥ | guru-śāpa-hatasyāpi Triśankoh śaraṇām dadau |* “2923. He deprived the great Vaśishṭha of his beloved sons; and though born a Kshatriya, he formerly became a Brāhmaṇ by force. For the purpose of purification he rendered the holy river, known in the world as the Kauśikī, unfordable from the mass of water. 2925. His wife was once maintained there in a time of distress by the righteous rājarshi Matanga, who had become a huntsman; and when the famine was past, the muni returned to his hermitage, gave to the river the name of Pārā, and being gratified, sacrificed for Matanga on its banks; and then thou thyself, Indra, from fear of him wentest to drink his soma. He created, too, when incensed, another world, with a garland of stars, formed agreeably to his promise, and gave his protection to Triśanku, even when smitten by his preceptor's curse.” Menakā, however, ends by saying that she cannot decline the commission which has been imposed upon her; but begs that she may receive such succours as may ensure her success. She accordingly shows herself in the neighbourhood of Viśvāmitra's hermitage. The saint yields to the influence of love, invites her to become his companion, and as a result of their intercourse Sakuntalā is born. The Apsaras then returns to Indra's paradise.

SECT. XII.—Other accounts, from the Mahābhārata, of the way in which Viśvāmitra became a Brāhmaṇ.

In the Udyogaparvan of the Mahābhārata, sections 105–118, a story is told regarding Viśvāmitra and his pupil Gālava, in which a different

account is given of the manner in which Viśvāmitra attained the rank of a Brāhmaṇa; viz. by the gift of Dharmo, or Righteousness, appearing in the form of his rival. M. Bh. Udyogap. 3721: *Viśrāmitraṁ tapasyantam Dharmo jijnāsayā purā | abhyāgachhat evayam bhūtvā Vaśishṭho bhagatān rishiḥ | 3728. Atha varsha-śata pūrṇe Dharmah punar upāgamat | Vaśishṭham reśam āsthāya Kauśikam bhojanepsayā | sa drishṭvā śirasā bhaktāṁ dhriyamānam maharshinā | tishṭhatā vāyubhakṣheṇa Viśrāmitreṇa dhīmatā | pratigṛihya tato Dharmas tathairoshṇam tathā naram | bhuktrā “prito ‘smi tīprarshe” tam uktrā sa munir gataḥ | kshattrā-bhārād apagato brāhmaṇatram upāgataḥ | Dharmarya vachanāt prito Viśrāmitras tathā ‘bharat |* “Dharma, assuming the personality of the sage Vaśishṭha, once came to prove Viśvāmitra, when he was living a life of austerity;” and after consuming some food, given him by other devotees, desired Viśvāmitra, who brought him some freshly cooked *charu*, quite hot, to stand still for the present. Viśvāmitra accordingly stood still, nourished only by *air*, with the boiled rice on his head. “The same personage, Dharma, in the same disguise, reappeared after a hundred years, desiring food, and consumed the rice (still quite hot and fresh), which he saw supported upon the hermit’s head, while he himself remained motionless, feeding on air. Dharma then said to him, ‘I am pleased with thee, o Brāhmaṇa rishi;’ and went away. Viśvāmitra, having become thus transformed from a Kshatriya into a Brāhmaṇa by the word of Dharma, was delighted.”

In the Anuśasanaparvan of the Mahābhārata, we have another reference to the story of Viśvāmitra. King Yudhishṭhira enquires of Bhīṣma (verse 181) how, if Brāhmaṇhood is so difficult to be attained by men of the other three castes, it happened that the great Kshatriya acquired that dignity. The prince then recapitulates the chief exploits of Viśvāmitra: 183. *Tena hy amita-viryena Vaśishṭhasya mahātmanah | hatam putra-śataṁ sadyas tapasā ‘pi pitāmaha | yātu dhānāś cha bahavo rākshasāś tigma-tejasāḥ | manyunā “vishṭa-dehena srishṭāḥ kālāntakopamāḥ |* 185. *Mahān Kuśika-vaṁśāś cha brahmaṇa-śata-sankulāḥ | sthāpito nara-loke ‘smīn vidvān brāhmaṇa-saṁyutāḥ | Richikasyātmajaś chaiva Sunahāśpho mahātapaḥ | vimokshito mahāsattrāt paśutām apy upāgataḥ | Hariśchandra-kratau devāṁs toshayitvā “īma-tejasā | putratām anusamprāpto Viśvāmitrasya dhīmataḥ | nābhivādayato jyeshṭham Devarātām narā-*

dhīpa | puttrāḥ panchāśad evāpi śaptāḥ śvapachatāṁ gatāḥ | Triśankur
 bandhubhir muktaḥ Aikshvākuḥ priti-pūrvakam | avāk-śirāḥ divāṁ nīto
 dakshiṇām āśrito diśam | . . . tato vighnakarī chaiva Panchachūḍā su-
 sammatā | Rambhā nāmāpsarāḥ śūpād yasya śailatvam āgatā | tathaivā-
 sya bhayād baddhvā Vaśishṭhaḥ salile purā | ātmānam majjayan śrīmān
 viśpāśaḥ punar utthitāḥ | “For he destroyed Vaśishṭha’s hundred sons
 by the power of austere-fervour; when possessed by anger, he created
 many demons, fierce and destructive as death; he (185) established
 the great and wise family of the Kuśikas, which was full of Brāhmans
 and hundreds of Brāhmaṇ rishis; he delivered Sunāśsepha, son of
 Richika, who was on the point of being slaughtered as a victim, and
 who became his son, after he had, at Hariśchandra’s sacrifice, through
 his own power, propitiated the gods; he cursed his fifty sons who
 would not do homage to Devarāta, (adopted as) the eldest, so that they
 became outcastes; through affection he elevated Triśanku, when for-
 saken by his relations, to heaven, where he remained fixed with his
 head downwards in the southern heavens; (191) . . . he changed the
 troublesome nymph Rambhā, known as Panchachūḍā, by his curse into
 a form of stone; he occasioned Vaśishṭha through fear to bind and throw
 himself into the river, though he emerged thence unbound;” and per-
 formed other deeds calculated to excite astonishment. Yudhishṭhira
 ends by enquiring, “how this Kshattriya became a Brāhmaṇ without
 transmigrating into another body” (197. *Dehūntaram anāśādyā kathaṁ*
sa brāhmaṇo ’bhārat |). In answer to this question, Bhishma (verses
 200 ff.) deduces the descent of Viśvāmitra from Ajamīḍha, of the race
 of Bharata, who was a pious priest, or sacrificer (*yajrā dharma-bhṛtūn*
varaḥ), the father of Jahnu, who again was the progenitor of Kuśika,
 the father of Gādhi; and narrates the same legend of the birth of Viś-
 vāmitra, which has been already extracted from the *Vishṇu Purāṇa* (see
 above, pp. 349 f.). The conclusion of the story as here given is, that the
 wife of Richika bore Jamadagni, while “the wife of Gādhi, by the grace
 of the rishi, gave birth to Viśvāmitra, who was a Brāhmaṇ rishi, and an
 utterer of the Veda; who, though a Kshattriya, attained to Brāhmaṇ-
 hood, and became afterwards also the founder of a Brāhmaṇ race” (246.
Viśvāmitraṁ chājanayad Gādhi-bhāryyā yaśasvinī | risheḥ prasādād rā-
jendra brahmārshim brahmavādinam | tato brāhmaṇatāṁ yāto Viśvāmitro
mahātapaḥ | kshattriyāḥ eo ’py athā tathā brahma-vāṁśasya kārakaḥ |).

of which the members are detailed,²⁰⁸ including the great rishi Kapila. In regard to the mode in which Viśvāmitra was transformed from a Kshattriya into a Brāhmaṇa, we are only told that he belonged to the former class, and that “Richika infused into him this exalted Brāhmaṇhood” (259. *Tathairā kshattriyo rājan Viśrāmitro mahālapūḥ | Richikenāhitam brahma param etad Yudhishthira |*).

This version of the story is different from all those preceding ones which enter into any detail, as it makes no mention of Viśvāmitra having extorted the Brahmanical rank from the gods by force of his austerities; and ascribes his transformation to a virtue communicated by the sage Richika.

I have above (p. 296 f.) quoted a passage from Manu on the subject of submissive and refractory monarchs, in which reference is made to Viśvāmitra's elevation to the Brahmanical order. Nothing is there said of his conflict with Vasiṣṭha, or of his arduous penances, endured with the view of conquering for himself an equality with his rival. On the contrary, it is to his submissiveness, *i.e.* to his dutiful recognition of the superiority of the Brāhmans, that his admission into their class is ascribed. Kullūka, indeed, explains the word submissiveness (*rināya*) to mean virtue in general; but the contrast which is drawn between Pṛithu, Manu, and Viśvāmitra, on the one hand, and Vena, Nahusha, Sudāś, and Nimi, the resisters of Brahmanical prerogatives (as all the legends declare them to have been), on the other, makes it tolerably evident that the merit which Manu means to ascribe to Viśvāmitra is that of implicit submission to the spiritual authority of the Brāhmans.

Sect. XIII.—*Legend of Saudāsa.*

In the reign of Mitrasaha, also called Saudāsa, and Kalmūshapāda, the son of Sudāśa, and the descendant of Trisāṅku in the twenty-second generation (see p. 337, above), we still find Vasiṣṭha figuring in the legend, as the priest of that monarch, and causing him, by an imprecation, to become a cannibal, because he had, under the influence of a delusion, offered the priest human flesh to eat. I shall not extract the

²⁰⁸ The names in this list differ considerably from those given above, p. 352, from the

version of the story given in the *Vishṇu Purāṇa* in detail (Wilson, V.P. vol. iii. pp. 304 ff.), as it does not in any way illustrate the rivalry of Vasishṭha and Viśvāmitra.

The Mahābhārata gives the following variation of the history (Ādi-parvan, sect. 176): “Kalmāshapāda was a king of the race of Ikshvāku. Viśvāmitra wished to be employed by him as his officiating priest; but the king preferred Vaśishṭha” (verse 6699. *Akāmayat taṁ yājyārthe Viśvāmitraḥ pratāpavān | sa tu rājā mahātmānañ Vaśishṭham rishi-sattamam |*). It happened, however, that the king went out to hunt, and after having killed a large quantity of game, he became very much fatigued, as well as hungry and thirsty. Meeting Saktri, the eldest of Vasishṭha’s hundred sons, on the road, he ordered him to get out of his way. The priest civilly replied (verse 6703): *Mama panthāḥ mahārāja dharmāḥ esha sanātanāḥ | rājnā sarreshu dharmeshu deyah panthāḥ dviyātaye |* “The path is mine, o king; this is the immemorial law; in all observances the king must cede the way to the Brāhmaṇ.” Neither party would yield, and the dispute waxing warmer, the king struck the muni with his whip. The muni, resorting to the usual expedient of offended sages, by a curse doomed the king to become a man-eater. “It happened that at that time enmity existed between Viśvāmitra and Vaśishṭha on account of their respective claims to be priest to Kalmāshapāda” (verse 6710. *Tato yājya-nimittān tu Viśvāmitra-Vaśishṭhayoḥ | rairam āśit tadā taṁ tu Viśvāmitro ‘nrapadyata |*). Viśvāmitra had followed the king; and approached while he was disputing with Saktri. Perceiving, however, the son of his rival Vaśishṭha, Viśvāmitra made himself invisible, and passed them, watching his opportunity. The king began to implore Saktri’s clemency: but Viśvāmitra wishing to prevent their reconciliation, commanded a Rākshasa (a man-devouring demon) to enter into the king. Owing to the conjoint influence of the Brāhmaṇ-rishi’s curse, and Viśvāmitra’s command, the demon obeyed the injunction. Perceiving that his object was gained, Viśvāmitra left things to take their course, and absented himself from the country. The king having happened to meet a hungry Brāhmaṇ, and sent him, by the hand of his cook (who could procure nothing else), some human flesh to eat, was cursed by him also to the same effect as by Saktri. The curse, being now augmented in force, took effect, and Saktri himself was the first victim, being eaten up by the king. The same fate

befell all the other sons of Vaśishṭha at the instigation of Viśvāmitra : 6736. *Saktrīm tañ tu mṛitam̄ dṛishṭrā Viśvāmitraḥ punaḥ punaḥ | Vaśishṭhasyairu putreshu tad rakṣaḥ sandideśa ha | sa tān Saktry-avarān putrān Vaśishṭhasya mahātmanāḥ | bhakshayāmāsa sankruddhaḥ siṁhaḥ kshudramṛigān ira | Vaśishṭho ghātitān śrutrā Viśvāmitreṇā tān sutān | dhārayāmāsa tañ śokam mahādrir ira medinīm | chakre chātma-vināśaya budhiṁ sa muni-sattamaḥ | na tv era Kauśikochhedam mene matimatān varāḥ |* 6740. *Sa Meru-kūṭadā ātmānam mumocha bhagavān ṛishiḥ | gires tasya śilāyām tu tūla-rūśūv irāpatat | na mamāra cha pūtena sa yadū tena Pāṇḍara | tadā 'gnim iddham bhagavān saṁvireśa mahārane | tañ tadā susamiddho'pi na dadāha hutāśanāḥ | dīpyamāno'py amitra-ghnaśito 'gnir abharat tataḥ | sa samudram abhiprekṣhya śokāriṣhṭo mahāmuṇih | baddhvā kanṭha śilām gurūm nippapāta tadā 'mbhasi | sa samudror-mi-regena sthale nyasto mahāmuniḥ | jagāma sa tataḥ khinnāḥ punar evāśramam prati |* 6745. *Tato dṛishṭrā "śrama-padaṁ rahitaṁ taiḥ sutair muniḥ | nirjagāma suduḥkhārttaḥ punar apy āśramāt tataḥ | so 'paśyat saritam pūrṇām prāṛit-kāle naṛāmbhasā | ṛṣikṣān bahuridhān pārtha harantīm tīra-jān bahūn | atha chintām samāpede punaḥ kaurara-nandana | "ambhasy asyām nimajjeyam" iti duḥkha-samanvitāḥ | tataḥ pāśais tadā "tmānam gādham baddhvā mahāmuniḥ | tasyāḥ jale mahānadyāḥ nimamajja suduḥkhītāḥ | atha chhittvā nadī pāśām tasyāri-bala-sūdana | sthala-sthām tam riṣhim kṛitvā vipāśām samarāśrijat |* 6750. *Uttatāra tataḥ pāśair vimuktaḥ sa mahān ṛishiḥ | Vipāśeti cha nāmāsyāḥ nadīś chakre mahān ṛishiḥ | 6752. Dṛishṭrā sa punar evaṛshir nadīm haimaratalīm tadā | chandragrāharatalīm bhīmām tasyāḥ srotasy apātayat | sā tam agni-samām vīpram anuchintya sarid varā | śatadhā vidrutā yas-māch śatadrur iti viśrutā | 6774. Saudāso'ham mahābhāga yājyas te muni-sattama | asmin kālo yad iṣṭhaṁ te brūhi kiṁ karavāṇi te | Vaśishṭha uvācha | vṛittam etad yathā-kālaṁ gachha rājyam praśādhi vai | brāhmaṇāṁs tu manushyendra mā'vamaṇīstāḥ kadāchana | rājā uvācha | nāvamaṇsyē mahābhāga kadāchid brāhmaṇarshabhbān | trān-nideśe sthitāḥ samyak pūjayishyāmy ahaṁ dvijān | Ikshvākuṇām cha yenāham anṛināḥ syām dvijottama | tat trattaḥ prāptum ichchāmi sarva-veda-vidām vara | apatyam īpsitam mahyaṁ dātum arhasi saltama | "Perceiving Saktri to be dead, Viśvāmitra again and again incited the Rākshasa against the sons of Vaśishṭha; and accordingly the furious demon devoured those of his sons who were younger than Saktri, as a lion eats up the small*

beasts of the forest.²⁰⁹ On hearing of the destruction of his sons by Viśvāmitra, Vaśishṭha supported his affliction, as the great mountain sustains the earth. He meditated his own destruction, but never thought of exterminating the Kauśikas. 6740. This divine sage hurled himself from the summit of Meru, but fell upon the rocks as if on a heap of cotton. Escaping alive from his fall, he entered a glowing fire in the forest; but the fire, though fiercely blazing, not only failed to burn him, but seemed perfectly cool. He next threw himself into the sea with a heavy stone attached to his neck; but was cast up by the waves on the dry land. He then went home to his hermitage; (6745) but seeing it empty and desolate, he was again overcome by grief and went out; and seeing the river Vipāśa which was swollen by the recent rains, and sweeping along many trees torn from its banks, he conceived the design of drowning himself into its waters: he accordingly tied himself firmly with cords, and threw himself in; but the river severing his bonds, deposited him unbound (*vipāśa*) on dry land; whence the name of the stream, as imposed by the sage.²¹⁰ 6752. He afterwards saw and threw himself into the dreadful Satadru (Sutlej), which was full of alligators, etc., and derived its name from rushing away in a hundred directions on seeing the Brāhmaṇ brilliant as fire. In consequence of this he was once more stranded; and seeing he could not kill himself, he went back to his hermitage. After roaming about over many mountains and countries, he was followed home by his daughter-in-law Adriśyāntī, Sūkṛti's widow, from whose womb he heard a sound of the recitation of the Vedas, as she was pregnant with a child, which, when born, received the name of Parāśara, verse 6794. Learning from her that there was

²⁰⁹ See above (pp. 327 ff.), the passages quoted from the Brāhmaṇas, about the slaughter of Vasishṭha's sons. In the Panchavimśa Br. (cited by Prof. Weber, Ind. St. i. 32) Vasishṭha is spoken of as *puttra-hataḥ*.

²¹⁰ The Nirukta, ix. 26, after giving other etymologies of the word *Vipāśa*, adds a verse: *Pāśāḥ asyāṁ vyapāśyanta Vasishṭhasya mumūrshataḥ | tasmād Vipāḍ uchyate pūrvam āśid Urunjirā |* “In it the bonds of Vasishṭha were loosed, when he was on the point of death: hence it is called *Vipāśa*. It formerly bore the name of *Urunjirā*.” It does not appear whether or not this verse is older than the Mahābhārata. On this text of the Nirukta, Durga (as quoted by Prof. Müller, Rig-veda, ii. Pref. p. liv.) annotates: *Vanishṭhaḥ kila nimamajja asyāṁ mumūrshuh puttra-maraṇa-śokārttah pāśair ātmānam baddhvā | tasya kila te pāśāḥ asyāṁ vyapāśyanta vyanuchyanta uda-kena |* “Vasishṭha plunged into it, after binding himself with bonds, wishing to die when grieved at the death of his sons. In it (the river) his bonds were loosed by the water.”

thus a hope of his line being continued, he abstained from further attempts on his own life. King Kalmāshapāda, however, whom they encountered in the forest, was about to devour them both, when Vaśishṭha stopped him by a blast from his mouth; and sprinkling him with water consecrated by a holy text, he delivered him from the curse by which he had been affected for twelve years. The king then addressed Vaśishṭha thus: “‘Most excellent sage, I am Saudāsa, whose priest thou art: what can I do that would be pleasing to thee?’” Vaśishṭha answered: ‘This which has happened has been owing to the force of destiny: go, and rule thy kingdom; but, o monarch, never contemn the Brāhmans.’ The king replied: ‘Never shall I despise the most excellent Brāhmans; but submitting to thy commands I shall pay them all honour. And I must obtain from thee the means of discharging my debt to the Ikshvākus. Thou must give me the offspring which I desire.’” Vaśishṭha promised to comply with his request. They then returned to Ayodhyā. And Vaśishṭha having been solicited by the king to beget an heir to the throne²¹¹ (verse 6787. *Rājnas tasyājnayā devī Vaśishṭham upachakrame | maharshiḥ sañvidām kritvā sambabhūra tayā saha | deryā divyena vidhinā Vaśishṭho bhagavān rishiḥ*), the queen became pregnant by him, and brought forth a son at the end of twelve years. This extraordinary proceeding, so contrary to all the recognized rules of morality, is afterwards (verses 6888–6912) explained to have been necessitated by the curse of a Brāhmaṇī, whose husband Kalmāshapāda had devoured when in the forest, and who had doomed him to die if he should attempt to become a father, and had foretold that Vaśishṭha should be the instrument of propagating his race (verse 6906: *Patnīm ritāv anuprāpya sadyas tyakshyasi jīvitam | yasya charsher Vaśishṭhasya tvayā putrāḥ vināśitāḥ | tena sangamya te bhāryyā tanayām janayishyati*).²¹²

²¹¹ The same story is told in the Vishṇu Pur. iv., 4, 38 (Wilson, vol. 3, p. 310).

²¹² This incident is alluded to in the Ādip., section 122. It is there stated that in the olden time women were subject to no restraint, and incurred no blame for abandoning their husbands and cohabiting with anyone they pleased (verse 4719. *Anārvitāḥ kila purā striyāḥ āsan varānane | kāma-chāra-vihāriṇyāḥ svatantrāḥ chāru-hāsini | tāsāṁ vyecharamāṇānāṁ kaumārāt subhage patīn | nādharma 'bhūd varārohe sa hi dharmāḥ purā 'bhavat, compare verse 4729*). A stop was, however, put to this practice by Uddālaka Śvetaketu, whose indignation was on one occasion aroused by a Brāhmaṇa taking his mother by the hand, and inviting her to go away with him, although his father, in whose presence this occurred, informed him that

The Mahābhārata has a further legend, regarding Viśvāmitra's jealousy of Vaśishṭha, which again exhibits the former in a very odious light, and as destitute of the moral dispositions befitting a saint, while Vaśishṭha is represented as manifesting a noble spirit of disinterestedness and generosity.

Salyap. 2360. *Viśvāmitrasya vīprarsher Vaśishṭhasya cha Bhārataḥ bhṛiṣāṁ vairam abhūd rājāṁs tapaḥ-sparddhā-kṛitam mahat | āśramo vai Vaśishṭhasya sthāṇu-tirthe 'bhavad mahān | pūrvataḥ pārśvataś chāśid Viśvāmitrasya dhīmataḥ |* 2366. *Viśvāmitra-Vaśishṭhau tāv ahany ahani Bhārata | sparddhāṁ tapaḥ-kṛitāṁ tīrāṁ chakratus tau tapo-dhanau | tatrāpy adhika-santapto Viśvāmitro mahāmuniḥ | drish-tvā tejo Vaśishṭhasya chintām ati jagāma ha | tasya buddhir iyaṁ hy āśid dharma-nityasya Bhārata | iyaṁ Sarasvatī tūrṇam mat-samīpaṁ tapo-dhanam | ānayishyati vegena Vaśishṭhaṁ japatāṁ varam | ihāga-tām dvija-śreshṭhañ hanishyāmi nū sāṁśayaḥ |* 2370. *Eraṁ niśchitya bhagavān Viśvāmitro mahāmuniḥ | sasmāra saritaṁ śreshṭhāṁ kroda-ha-sāṁrakta-lochanaḥ | sā dhyātā muninā tena vyākulatvāṁ jagāma ha | jajne chainam mahāvīryyam mahākopaṁ cha bhāvinī | tataḥ enāṁ repa-mānā vivarnā prānjalis tadā | upatasthe muni-varaṁ Viśvāmitraṁ Sar-asvatī | hata-vīrā yathā nārī sū 'bhavad duḥkhita bhṛiṣam | brūhi kiṁ karavarāṇīti provācha muni-sattamam | tām uvācha muniḥ kruddho “Vaśi-shṭhañ śīghram ānaya | yāvad enāṁ nihāmy adya” tach chhrutrā vyathitā nadī |* 2375. *Prānjaliṁ tu tataḥ kṛitvā pūṇḍarīka-nibhekshanā |*

there was no reason for his displeasure, as the custom was one which had prevailed from time immemorial (verse 4726. *S'vetaketoh kīla purā samaksham mātaram pituḥ | jagrāḥa brāhmaṇaḥ pānau “gachhāvā” iti chābravīt | rishi-putras tataḥ kopāṁ chakrārmaṁsha-choditaḥ | mātarāṁ tām tathā drishṭvā niyamānām balād iva | krud-dhām tām tu pitā drishṭvā S'vetaketum uvācha ha | “mā tātā kopāṁ kārshīs tvam esha dharmāḥ sanātanāḥ | ”*). But S'vetaketu could not tolerate the practice, and introduced the existing rule (verse 4730. *Rishi-puttro 'tha tām dharmāṁ S'vetaketur na chakshame | chakrā chaiva maryādām imān strī-pūṁsayor bhūvi |*). A wife and a husband indulging in promiscuous intercourse were therefore thenceforward guilty of sin. But a wife, when appointed by her husband to raise up seed to him (by having intercourse with another man), is in like manner guilty if she refuse (4734. *Patyā niyuktā yā chava patnī puttrārtham eva cha | na karishyati tasyāś cha bhavishyati tad eva hi | iti tena purā bhīru maryādā śīhāpita balāt |*). Pūṇḍu, the speaker, then proceeds to give an instance of the latter procedure in the case of Madayanti, the wife of Saudūsa, who, by her husband's command, visited Vaśishṭha for the purpose in question (4736. *Saudāsona cha rambhoru niyuktā puttra-janmani | Madayanti jagāmarshīm Vaśishṭham iti nah śrutam |*). Compare what is said above, p. 224, of Angiras, and in pp. 232 and 233 of Dirgatamas or Dīrghatapas; and see p. 423, below.

prākampata bhṛiśam bhītā vāyunevāhatā latā | . . . 2377. Sā tasya vachanām śrutvā jnātēā pāpa-chikīrshitam | *Vaśishṭhasya prabhāvāṁ cha jānanty apratimam bhūvi | sā 'dhigamy Vaśishṭhaṁ cha imam artham achodayat | yad uktā saritāṁ śreshṭhā Viśvāmitreṇa dhīmatā | ubhayoḥ śāpayor bhītā vepamānā punaḥ punaḥ | . . . 2380.* Tāṁ kṛiṣāṁ cha vivarṇāṁ cha drīshṭvā chintā-samanvitāṁ | urācha rājan dharmātmā *Vaśishṭho dvipadāṁ varah | Vaśishṭhaḥ uvācha | “pāhy ātmānaṁ sarich-chhreshe raha māṁ śighra-gāmini | Viśvāmitraḥ śaped hi tvāṁ mā kṛithās tvāṁ vichāraṇāṁ” | tasya tad vachanām śrutvā kṛipā-śīlasya sā sarit | chintayāmāsa Kauravya kiṁ kṛitvā sukṛitam bhavet | tasyāś chintā samutpannā “Vaśishṭho mayy atīva hi | kṛitavān hi dayām nityam tasya kāryyaṁ hitam mayā” | atha kūle svake rājan japantam rishi-sattamam | juhvānaṁ Kauśikam prekṣhya sarasvaty abhyachintayat | 2385. “*Idam antaram*” ity era tataḥ sā saritāṁ varā | kūlāpahāram akarot svena vegena sā sarit | tena kūlāpahārena *Maitrāvaruṇiḥ auhyata | ūhyamānaḥ sa tushṭāra tada rājan Sarasvatīm | Pitāmahasya sarasāḥ pravṛittī 'si Sarasvatī | ryāptāñ chedaṁ jagat sarvāṁ tavaivambhobhir uttamaiḥ |* tram evākāśa-gādevi megheśhūtrijase payaḥ | *sarrāś chāpas tram eteti tratto rayam adhīmahi | pushṭir dyutis tathā kīrttiḥ siddhir buddhir umā tathā |* tram era vāṇī svāhā tvāṁ tarayattam idaṁ jagat | 2390. *Tram era sarva-bhūteshu* *casasīha chaturvidhā | 2392.* Tam āñītaṁ Sarasvatyā drīshṭrā kopa-samanvitāḥ | *athānveshat praharaṇāṁ Vaśishṭhānta-karaṁ tada |* tam tu kruddham abhiprekṣya brahma-badhyā-bhayād nadī | *apovāha Vaśishṭham tu prāchīṁ diśam atandritū | ubhayoḥ kurvatī rākyāṁ rāchayitvā cha Gādhijam tato 'pavāhitāṁ drīshṭrā Vaśishṭham rishi-sattamam | 2395.* Abravīd duḥkha-sankruddho *Viśvāmitro* hy amarsha-naḥ | “*yasmād māṁ tvāṁ sarich-chhreshṭhe rāchayitcā* *yunargatā |* *sonītaṁ rāha kalyāṇī raksho'-gra-maṇī-sammataṁ” | tataḥ Sarasvatī* *śaptā Viśvāmitreṇa dhīmatā |* *avahach chhoniitonmiśraṁ toyāṁ saṁvat-sāraṁ tada | 2401.* Athājagmus tato rājan rākshasās tatra Bhārata | *tatra te* *sonītaṁ sarve* *pivantaḥ sukham* *āsate | 2402.* Nrityantaś cha hasantaś cha yathā svarga-jītas tathā | 2407. *tāṁ drīshṭvā rākshasān rājan munayaḥ* *saṁśita-vratāḥ |* *paritrāṇa* Sarasvatyāḥ paraṁ yatnam prachakriro |*

“2360. There existed a great enmity, arising from rivalry in their austerities, between Viśvāmitra and the Brāhmaṇa rishi Vaśishṭha. Vaśishṭha had an extensive hermitage in Sthāṇutīrtha, to the east of

which was Viśvāmitra's 2366. These two great ascetics were every day exhibiting intense emulation in regard to their respective austerities. But Viśvāmitra, beholding the might of Vaśishṭha, was the most chagrined ; and fell into deep thought. The idea of this sage, constant in duty (!), was the following : 'This river Sarasvatī will speedily bring to me on her current the austere Vaśishṭha, the most eminent of all mutterers of prayers. When that most excellent Brāhmaṇa has come, I shall most assuredly kill him.' 2370. Having thus determined, the divine sage Viśvāmitra, his eyes reddened by anger, called to mind the chief of rivers. She being thus the subject of his thoughts, became very anxious, as she knew him to be very powerful and very irascible. Then trembling, pallid, and with joined hands, the Sarasvatī stood before the chief of munis. Like a woman whose husband has been slain, she was greatly distressed ; and said to him, 'What shall I do ?' The incensed muni replied, 'Bring Vaśishṭha hither speedily, that I may slay him.' 2375. The lotus-eyed goddess, joining her hands, trembled in great fear, like a creeping plant agitated by the wind." Viśvāmitra, however, although he saw her condition, repeated his command. 2377. "The Sarasvatī, who knew how sinful was his design, and that the might of Vaśishṭha was unequalled, went trembling, and in great dread of being cursed by both the sages, to Vaśishṭha, and told him what his rival had said. 2380. Vaśishṭha seeing her emaciated, pale, and anxious, spoke thus : 'Deliver thyself, o chief of rivers ; carry me unhesitatingly to Viśvāmitra, lest he curse thee.' Hearing these words of the merciful sage, the Sarasvatī considered how she could act most wisely. She reflected, 'Vaśishṭha has always shown me great kindness; I must seek his welfare.' Then observing the Kauśika sage [so in the text, but does not the sense require Vaśishṭha?] praying and sacrificing on her brink, she regarded (2385) that as a good opportunity, and swept away the bank by the force of her current. In this way the son of Mitra and Varuna (Vaśishṭha)²¹³ was carried down ; and while he was being borne along, he thus celebrated the river : 'Thou, o Sarasvatī, issuest from the lake of Brahmā, and pervadest the whole world with thy excellent streams. Residing in the sky, thou dischargest water into the clouds. Thou alone art all waters. By thee we study.' [Here the river Sarasvatī is identified with Saras-

²¹³ See above, pp. 316 and 320 *i.*

vati the goddess of speech.]²¹⁴ ‘Thou art nourishment, radiance, fame, perfection, intellect, light. Thou art speech; thou art Svāhā; this world is subject to thee. 2390. Thou, in fourfold form, dwellest in all creatures.’ 2392. Beholding Vaśishṭha brought near by the Sarasvatī, Viśvāmitra searched for a weapon with which to make an end of him. Perceiving his anger, and dreading lest Brahmanicide should ensue, the river promptly carried away Vaśishṭha in an easterly direction; thus fulfilling the commands of both sages, but eluding Viśvāmitra. Seeing Vaśishṭha so carried away, (2395) Viśvāmitra, impatient, and enraged by vexation, said to her: ‘Since thou, o chief of rivers, hast eluded me, and hast receded, roll in waves of blood acceptable to the chief of demons,’ [which are fabled to gloat on blood]. “The Sarasvatī, being thus cursed, flowed for a year in a stream mingled with blood. . . . 2401. Rākshasas came to the place of pilgrimage, where Vaśishṭha had been swept away, and revelled in drinking to satiety the bloody stream in security, dancing and laughing, as if they had conquered heaven.” Some rishis who arrived at the spot some time after were horrified to see the blood-stained water, and the Rākshasas quaffing it, and (2407) “made the most strenuous efforts to rescue the Sarasvatī.” After learning from her the cause of the pollution of her waters, they propitiated Mahādeva by the most various austerities, and thus obtained the restoration of the river to her pristine purity (2413 ff.).

We have another reference to the connection of the families of Sudās and Vaśishṭha in the legend of Paraśurāma,²¹⁵ the destroyer of the Kshattriyas, in the 49th section of the Sāntiparvan of the Mahābhārata. Sarvakarman, a descendant of Sudās, is there mentioned as one of those

²¹⁴ See the remarks on Sarasvatī in my “Contributions to a knowledge of the Vedic Theogony and Mythology No. II.,” in the Journ. R. A. S., for 1866 pp. 18 ff.

²¹⁵ Parashurāma was the son of Jamadagnī, regarding whose birth, as well as that of Viśvāmitra and the incarnation of Indra in the person of his father Gūdhi, the same legend as has been already given above, p. 349 ff., is repeated at the commencement of the story referred to in the text. In discoursing with his wife Satyavatī about the exchange of her own and her mother’s messes, R̄ichikā tells her, verse 1741: *Brahmabhūtam hi sakalam pitus tava kulam bhavet* | “All the family of thy father (Gūdhi) shall be Brahmanical;” and Vāsudeva, the narrator of the legend, says, verse 1745: *Viśvāmitram cha dāyādaṁ Gūdhih Kusikanandanaḥ* | *yam prāpa brahma-sammitāṁ viśvair brahmagunair yutam* | “And Gūdhi begot a son, Viśvāmitra, whom he obtained equal to a Brāhmaṇa, and possessed of all Brahmanical qualities.”

Kshattriyas who had been preserved from the general massacre by Parāśara, grandson of Vaśishṭha : verse 1792. *Tathā 'nukampamānena yajvanā 'mita-tejasā | Parāśarena dāyādaḥ Saudāsasyābhīrakshitaḥ | sarva-karmāṇi kurute śūdra-vat tasya vai dvijāḥ | Sarvakarmety abhi-khyātaḥ sa mām rakshatu pārthivāḥ |* “Sarvakarman, the son of Saudāsa, was preserved by the tender-hearted priest Parāśara, who performed, though a Brāhmaṇa, all menial offices for him, like a Śūdra ; whence the prince’s name ;—may this king protect me (the earth).” The same book of the Mahābhārata, when recording a number of good deeds done to Brāhmaṇas, has also the following allusion to Mitrasaha and Vaśishṭha : verse 8604. *Rājā Mitrasahāś chāpi Vaśishṭhāya mahātmane | Damayantīm priyām dattvā tayā saha divāṁ gataḥ |* “King Mitrasaha, having bestowed his dear Damayanti on Vaśishṭha, ascended to heaven along with her.”²¹⁶

The same passage has two further allusions to Vaśishṭha, which, though unconnected with our present subject, may be introduced here. In verse 8591 it is said : *Rantidevaś cha Sāṅkṛityo Vaśishthāya mahātmane | apah pradāya śitoshnāḥ nāka-prishṭhe mahīyate |* “Rantideva, son of Sankṛiti, who gave Vaśishṭha tepid water, is exalted to the heavenly regions.” (See the Bhāg. Pur. ix. 21, 2–18, where the various acts of self-sacrifice practised by this prince are celebrated.) It is said of Vaśishṭha in verse 8601 : *Avarshati cha Parjanye sarva-bhūtāni bhūta-krit | Vaśishṭho jīvayāmāsa prajāpatir ivāparah |* “When Parjanya failed to send rain, the creative Vaśishṭha, like Brahmā, gave life to all beings.”

Vaśishṭha, in short, is continually reappearing in the Mahābhārata. I will here adduce but one other passage. In the Sāntiparvan, verses 10,118 ff., it is said : *Tasya Vṛittrārdditasyātha mohāḥ āśīch chhatakratoh | rathantarena taṁ tatra Vaśishṭhah samabodhayat | Vaśishṭhah urācha | deva-śreshṭho 'si devendra daityasura-nibarhana | traikalya-bala-*

²¹⁶ This appears to refer to the story told above, p. 418 ff., of Kalmūshapāda (who was the same as Mitrasaha), allowing Vaśishṭha to be the agent in propagating the royal race ; for both there (v. 6910) and in the Vishṇu Pur. (Wilson, vol. iii., pp. 308 and 310), the name of the queen is said to have been Madayanti, which is probably the right reading here also, the first two letters only having been transposed. If so, however, it is to be observed that a quite different turn is given to the story here, where it is represented as a meritorious act on the king’s part, and as a favour to Vaśishṭha, that the queen was given up to him ; whilst, according to the other account, the king’s sole object in what he did was to get progeny.

*sam̄yuktaḥ karmāch chhakra nishidasi | esha Brahmā cha Viṣṇuś cha
 Sīvaś chaiva jagat-patiḥ | Somaś cha bhagavān devaḥ sarve cha paramar-
 shayaḥ | mā kārshīḥ kaśmalaṁ Śakra kaścid evetaro yathā | āryyāṁ
 yuddhe matīṁ kṛitvā jahi śatrūn surādhipa |* “By reciting the Rathantāra, Vaśishṭha encouraged Indra, when he had become bewildered and distressed in his conflict with Vrittra, saying to him, ‘Thou art the chief of the gods, o slayer of the Daityas and Asuras, possessing all the strength of the three worlds: wherefore, Indra, dost thou despise? There are here present Brahmā, Viṣṇu, Sīva, the divine Soma, and all the chief rishis. Faint not, o Indra, like an ordinary being. Assume a heroic spirit for the fight, and slay thine enemies, etc.’” Strength was thus infused into Indra.

In a later work, the Rāja Taranginī, Book IV. verses 619–655 (pp. 188 ff. and note, pp. 521 and 522, of Troyer’s edition, vol. i. and vol. ii. 189, 469, note), a curious echo of these old legends is found still reverberating. A story is there told of a king Jayāpiḍa who oppressed his people, and persecuted the Brāhmans, and was eventually destroyed by them in a miraculous manner. He is compared to Saudāsa in verse 625: *Sa Saudāsaḥ ivāneka - loka - prāṇāpahārakṛit | astutya - kṛitya - sauhi-
 tyaāṁ svapne 'pi na samāyayau |* “Like Saudāsa, depriving many persons of their lives, he was not satiated with wicked deeds even in his dreams.” One of the Brāhmans stood up on behalf of the rest to remonstrate: *Āha sma “Viśvāmitro vā Vaśishṭho vā taponidhiḥ | tvam
 Agastyo 'thavā kiñ stha” iti darpena tam nripaḥ | bharān yatra
 Hariśchandras Triśankur Nahusho 'pi vā | Viśvāmitra-mukhebhyo 'ham
 tattraiko bhavitūṁ kshamaḥ | vihasyovācha tam rājā “Viśvāmitrādi-
 kopataḥ | Hariśchandrāyo nashṭas tvayi kruddhe tu kim bhavet” |
 pānīnā tūdayann ūrvīñ tataḥ kruddho 'bhyaḍhād dvijaḥ | “mayi kruddho
 kshāñād eva brahma-dāñdaḥ pated na kim” | tach chhrutvā vihasan rājā
 kopād brāhmaṇam abravīt | “patatu brahma-dāndo 'sau kim adyāpi
 vilambate” | nanv ayam patito jālmety atha vīpreṇa bhāṣhite | rājnāḥ
 kanaka-dāndo 'nge vitāna-ekhalito 'patat | “The king haughtily asked him: ‘Art thou Viśvāmitra, or Vaśishṭha, so rich in devotion? or Agastya? or what art thou?’ The Brāhman answered, swelling with indignation: ‘Just as thou art a Hariśchandra, a Triśanku, or a Nahusha, so too have I power to be a Viśvāmitra, or one of those other rishis.’ The king answered with a smile of contempt: ‘Hariśchandra’ ,*

and the rest perished by the wrath of Viśvāmitra and the other sages : but what will come of thy wrath ?' The Brāhmaṇ angirly replied, smiting the ground with his hand, ' When I am incensed, shall not the Brahmanical bolt instantly descend ?' The king retorted with an angry laugh : ' Let it descend ; why does it not come down at once ?' ' Has it not fallen, tyrant ?' said the Brāhmaṇ ; and he had no sooner spoken, than a golden beam fell from the canopy and smote the king," so that he became tortured by worms, and shortly after died ; and went, as the story concludes, to hell.

Professor Lassen, who quotes the stories regarding Vaśishṭha and Viśvāmitra (Ind. Alt. 2nd ed. i. 718 f.), makes the following remarks on their import :

"The legend of the struggle between Vaśishṭha and Viśvāmitra embraces two distinct points : one is the contest between the priests and warriors for the highest rank ; the other is the temporary alienation of the Ikshvākus from their family priests. Vaśishṭha is represented as the exemplar of such a priest ; and the story of Kalmāshapāda is related for the express purpose of showing by an example that the Ikshvākus, after they had retained him, were victorious, and fulfilled perfectly the duties of sacrifice (see above, p. 390) : in his capacity of priest he continues to live on, and is the representative of his whole race. We may conclude from the legend that his descendants had acquired the position of family priests to the Ikshvākus, though neither he himself nor his son Sūkri belonged to their number. Triśanku is the first prince who forsook them, and had recourse to Viśvāmitra. His successor Ambaṛisha received support from that personage, as well as from Richīka, one of the Bhṛigus ;—a family whose connection with the Kuśikas appears also in the story of Paraśurāma. The hostility between the Ikshvākus and the family of Vaśishṭha continued down to Kalmāshapāda. Viśvāmitra is represented as having intentionally fostered the alienation ; while Vaśishṭha is described as forbearing (though he had the power) to annihilate his rival.

"The conflict between the two rivals with its motives and machinery is described in the forms peculiar to the fully developed epos. To this style of poetry is to be referred the wonder-working cow, which supplies all objects of desire. There is no ground for believing in any actual war with weapons between the contending parties, or in

any participation of degraded Kshattriyas, or aboriginal tribes, in the contest; for all these things are mere poetical creations. Besides, the proper victory of Vasishtha was not gained by arms, but by his rod.²¹⁷ The legend represents the superiority of the Brāhmans as complete,²¹⁸ since Viśvāmitra is forced to acknowledge the insufficiency of a warrior's power; and acquires his position as a Brāhmaṇ by purely Brahmanical methods.

"From Viśvāmitra are derived many of the sacerdotal families, which bear the common name of Kauśika, and to which many rishis famous in tradition belong. As there were also kings in this family, we have here an example of the fact that one of the old Vedic races became divided, and in later times belonged to both of the two higher castes. It appears impossible that any of the aboriginal tribes should have been among the descendants of Viśvāmitra's sons, as the legend represents; and the meaning of this account may therefore be that some of his sons and their descendants accepted the position of priests among these tribes, and are in consequence described as accursed."²¹⁹

SECT. XIV.—*Story from the Satapatha Brāhmaṇa about king Janaka becoming a Brāhmaṇ.*

The Satapatha Brāhmaṇa has the following account of a discussion between Janaka, king of Videha, and some Brāhmans:²²⁰

xi. 6, 2, 1. *Janako ha vai Vaideho brāhmaṇair dhārayat̄bhir samā-jagāma Svetaketunā Ārunyena Somaśushmeṇa Sātyayajnind Yajnavalk-yena | tān ha uvācha "kathaṁ katham agnihotram juhutha" iti | 2. Sa ha uvācha Svetaketur Ārunyeyo "gharmāv era samrāḍ aham ajasrau yaśasā visyandamanāv anyo 'nyasmin juhomi" iti | "kathaṁ tad" iti | ādityo vai gharmas tam sāyam agnau juhomi agnir vai gharmas tam pratar āditye juhomi" iti | "kim sa bhavati yah evaṁ juhoti" | "ajas-raḥ eva śriyā yaśasā bhavaty etayoḥ cha devatayoḥ sāyujyam salokataṁ jayati" iti | 3. Atha ha uvācha Somaśushmaḥ Sātyayajniḥ "tejaḥ eva samrāḍ aham tejasjuhomi" iti | "kathaṁ tad" iti | "Ādityo vai tejas tam sāyam agnau juhomi | agnir vai tejas tam pratar āditye juhomi"*

²¹⁷ See also Prof. Müller's Anc. Sansk. Lit., pp. 80 f., 383 f., 408, 413 ff., 485 f.

²¹⁸ This passage is referred to and translated by Prof. Müller, Anc. Sansk. Lit. pp. 421 ff.

iti | “*kim sa bhavati yaḥ evāṁ juhoti*” iti | “*tejasvī yaśasvy annādo
bhavaty etayoś chaiva devatayoḥ sāyujyam̄ salokatām̄ jayati*” iti | 4.
Atha ha uvācha Yājnavalkyaḥ “*yad aham agnim uddharāmy agnihotram
eva tad udyachchāmi* | *ādityam̄ vai astām̄ yantam sarve devāḥ anuyanti* | *te
me etam agnim uddhṛitaṁ dṛishṭvā upāvarttante atha aham pātrāṇī nir-
nijya upavāpya agnihotriṁ dohayitvā paśyan paśyatās tarpayāmi*” iti |
traṁ nedishṭhaṁ yājnavalkya agnihotrasya amīmāṁseishṭhāḥ | *dhenu-
śataṁ dadāmi*” iti *ha uvācha* “*na tv eva enayos tvam utkrāntiṁ na
gatiṁ na pratishṭhām na triptiṁ na punarārvittiṁ na lokaṁ pratyu-
thāyinam*” | *ity uktrā ratham āsthāya pradhāvayān chakrā* | 5.
Te ha uchur “*ati vai no 'yam rājanyabandhur avādīd hanta enam
brahmodyam āhvajāmahai*” iti | *sa ha uvācha Yājnavalkyo* “*brāh-
maṇāḥ vai vayaṁ smo rājanyabandhur asau yady amūm vayaṁ jayema
kam ajaishma iti brūyāma* atha yady asāv asmān jayed brāhmaṇān
rājanyabandhur ajaishīd iti no brūyuh | *mā idam ādṛiḍhvam*” iti |
tad ha asya jajnuḥ | *atha ha Yājnavalkyo ratham āsthāya pradhā-
vayānchakrā tañ ha anvājagāma* | *sa ha uvācha* “*agnihotraṁ Yājna-
valkya veditum*” iti | “*agnihotraṁ samrāḍ*” iti | 6. “*Te vai ete āhuti
hute utkrāmatas te antariksham āviśatas te antariksham eva āhavanīyaṁ
kurvāte vāyuṁ samidham marīchīr eva śukrām āhutim̄ te antariksham̄
tarpayatas te tataḥ utkrāmataḥ*” | 7. *Te diram āviśatas te diram eva āha-
vanīyaṁ kurvāte ādityam̄ samidhaṁ chandramasam eva śukrām āhutim̄ te
diram̄ tarpayatas te tataḥ āvarttele* | 8. *Te imām āviśatas te imām eva
āhavanīyaṁ kurvāte agniṁ samidham oshadhir eva śukrām āhutim̄ te
imām tarpayatas te tataḥ utkrāmataḥ* | 9. *Te purusham āviśatas tasya
mukham eva āhavanīyaṁ kurvāte jihvāṁ samidham annam eva śukrām
īhutim̄ te purushāṁ tarpayataḥ* | *sa yaḥ evāṁ vidvān aśnāty agnihotram
eva asya hutam bhavati* | *te tataḥ utkrāmataḥ* | 10. *Te striyam āviśatas
tasyāḥ upastham eva āhavanīyaṁ kurvāte dhārakāṁ samidham (dhārakā
ha vai nāma eshā* | *etayā ha vai Prajāpatiḥ prajāḥ dhārayānchakrā*)
retāḥ eva śukrām āhutim̄ te striyāṁ tarpayataḥ | *sa yaḥ evāṁ vidvān
mithunam upaity agnihotram eva asya hutam bhavati* *yas tataḥ putro
jāyate sa lokāḥ pratyuttthayi* | *etad agnihotraṁ Yājnavalkya na atāḥ
param asti*” iti *ha uvācha* | *taṃmai Yājnavalkyo varām dadau* | *sa ha
uvācha* “*kāmapraśnah eva me tvayi Yājnavalkya asad*” iti | *tato brahma
Janakah āsa* |

“Janaka of Videha met with some travelling Brāhmans, Svetaketu

Aruneya, Somaśushma Sātyayajni, and Yājnavalkya, and said to them, 'How do ye respectively offer the agnihotra oblation?' 2. Svetaketu replied, 'I, o monarch, in sacrificing, throw the one of the two eternal heats which pervade the world with their splendour into the other.' 'How is that done,' asked the king. (S. replied), 'Āditya (the sun) is one heat; in the evening I throw him into Agni (Fire). Agni is the other heat; in the morning I throw him into Āditya.' 'What' (enquired the king) 'does he become who thus sacrifices?' 'He acquires' (replied S.) 'perpetual prosperity and renown; conquers for himself an union with these two deities, and dwells in the same region as they.' 3. Then Somaśushma answered, 'I, o monarch, in sacrificing, throw light into light.' 'How is that done,' asked the king. 'The Sun' (answered S.) 'is light; in the evening I throw him into Fire: and Fire is light; in the morning I throw him into the Sun.' 'What' (enquired the king) 'does he become who thus sacrifices?' 'He becomes' (rejoined S.) 'luminous, and renowned, an eater of food, and conquers for himself an union with these two deities, and dwells in the same region as they.' 4. Then Yājnavalkya said, 'When I take up the fire I lift the agnihotra. All the gods follow the Sun when he sets; and when they see me take up the Fire, they come back to me. Then, after washing and putting down the vessels, and having the Agnihotra Cow milked, beholding them as they behold me, I satisfy them (with sacrificial food).' The king answered, 'Thou hast approached very close to a solution of the Agnihotra, o Yājnavalkya; I give thee a hundred milch-cows: but thou hast not discovered the ascent of these two (oblations), nor the course, nor the resting-place, nor the satisfaction, nor the return, nor the world where they reappear(?)'. Having so spoken, Janaka mounted his car and drove away.

5. The Brāhmans then said amongst themselves, 'This Rājanya has surpassed us in speaking; come, let us invite him to a theological discussion.' Yājnavalkya, however, interposed, 'We are Brāhmans, and he a Rājanya; if we overcome him, we shall ask ourselves, whom have we overcome? but if he overcome us, men will say to us, a Rājanya has overcome Brāhmans. Do not follow this course.' They assented to his advice. Then Yājnavalkya mounted his car, and drove after the king; and came up to him. Janaka asked, 'is it to learn the agnihotra (that thou hast come), Yājnavalkya?' 'The agnihotra, o

monarch,' said Y. 6. The king rejoined, 'These two oblations, when offered, ascend ; they enter the air, they make the air their āhavaniya fire, the wind their fuel, the rays their bright oblation, they satisfy the air, and thence ascend. 7. They enter the sky, they make the sky their āhavaniya fire, the sun their fuel, the moon their bright oblation; they satisfy the sky, they return thence. 8. They enter this earth, they make this earth their āhavaniya fire, Agni their fuel, the plants their bright oblation ; they satisfy the earth, they ascend thence. They enter man, they make his mouth their āhavaniya fire, his tongue their fuel, food their bright oblation ; they satisfy man. (He who, thus knowing, eats, truly offers the agnihotra). 9. They ascend from him, they enter into woman [the details which follow are better left untranslated], they satisfy her. The man who, thus knowing, approaches his wife, truly offers the agnihotra. The son who is then born is the world of re-appearance. This is the agnihotra, o Yājnavalkya ; there is nothing beyond this.' Y. offered the king the choice of a boon. He replied, 'Let me enquire of thee whatever I desire, o Yājnavalkya.' Henceforward Janaka was a Brāhmān."²¹⁹

By Brāhmān in the last sentence we have, I presume, to understand a Brāhmaṇa. Even if it were taken to dignify a priest of the kind called Brāhmān, the conclusion would be the same; as at the time when the Satapatha Brāhmaṇa was written, none but Brahmans could officiate as priests.²²⁰

Janaka's name occurs frequently in the Mahābhārata. In the Vana-parvan of that poem (8089) he is called a rājarshi. In the Sānti-parvan, verse 6640, it is said : *Atrāpy udāharantimam itihāsam purātanam | gitām Videha-rājena Janakena praśāmyatā | "anantaṁ vata me vittam yasya me nāsti kinchana | Mithilāyām pradīptāyām na me dāhyati kinchana"* | "They here relate an ancient story,—the words recited by Janaka the tranquil-minded king of Videha :

• Though worldly pelf I own no more,
Of wealth I have a boundless store :
While Mithilā the flames devour,
My goods can all defy their power."

²¹⁹ The Commentator explains *brahmā* by *brahmishṭhaḥ*, "Most full of divine knowledge."

²²⁰ Prof. Müller remarks in his article on Caste (Chips from a German Workshop, ii. 338) : "That king Janaka of Videha possessed superior knowledge is acknowledged by one of the most learned among the Brahmans, by Yājnavalkya himself; and in the Satapatha Brāhmaṇa, which is believed to have been the work of Yājnavalkya,

The same sentiment is ascribed to the same royal rishi in verse 7891 : *Api cha bhavati Maithilena gītām nagaram upāhitam agnindā 'bhivikshya | "na khalu mama hi dāhyato 'ttra kinchit" svayam idam āha sma bhūmi-pālah |* “And these words were repeated by the king of Mithilā when he beheld the city enveloped in fire, ‘nothing of mine is burnt here ;’ —so said the king himself.”

Another “ancient story” of Janaka is related in verses 7882–7983 of the same book. It is there stated that this king was constantly engaged in thinking on matters connected with a future life ; and that he had a hundred religious teachers to instruct him on different points of duty (verse 7884). He was, however, visited by the rishi Panchasikha²²¹ (verses 7886, 7888), a pupil of Āsuri (verse 7890), who so confounded the king’s hundred instructors by his reasoning, that they were abandoned by their pupil, who followed this new teacher (7898). *Upetya śatam āchāryān mohayāmāsa hetubhiḥ |* 7899. *Janakas tr abhisāmraktah Kāpileyānudarśanāt | utsrijya śatam āchāryyān prishṭhato 'nujagāmatam.*) Panchasikha appears also, at verse 11839, as his instructor. At verse 10699 Janaka is again brought forward as receiving religious information from Parāśara ; in verses 11545–11836 as being taught by the rishi Yajnavalkya the principles of the Yoga and Sāṅkhya philosophies ; and in verses 11854–12043 as holding a conversation with a travelling female mendicant (*bhikshuki*), named Sulabhā, who sought to prove him, and to whom he declares himself to be a pupil of Panchasikha (here said to belong to the family of Parāśara, verse 11875), and an adept in the systems just mentioned ; and from whom, in answer to some reproaches he had addressed to her regarding her procedure, he learns that she belongs to the Rājanya class, like himself, of the family of the rājarshi Pradhāna, that she had obtained no suitable husband, and wandered about, following an ascetic life, and seeking final emancipation (verses 12033 ff.).

A further story in illustration of Janaka’s indifference to worldly objects is told in the Āśvamedhikaparvan, verses 887 ff.

²²¹ See Prof. Wilson’s Sāṅkhya-kārikā, p. 190; and Dr. Hall’s Preface to his edition of the Sāṅkhya-pravachana-bhāṣhya, pp. 9 ff.

SECT. XV.—Other instances in which Brāhmans are said to have been instructed in divine knowledge by Kshattriyas.

Two other cases in which Brāhmans are recorded to have received instruction from Kshattriyas are thus stated by Professor Müller:²²²

“For a Kshattriya to teach the law was a crime (*sva-dharmātikrama*), and it is only by a most artificial line of argument that the dogmatic philosophers of the Mīmāṃsā school tried to explain this away. The Brāhmans seem to have forgotten that, according to their own Upani-shads, Ajātaśatru, the king of Kāśi, possessed more knowledge than Gārgya, the son of Balāka, who was renowned as a reader of the Veda, and that Gārgya desired to become his pupil, though it was not right, as the king himself remarked, that a Kshatriya should initiate a Brāhma-n. They must have forgotten that Pravāhana Jaivali, king of the Panchālas, silenced Śvetaketu Āruneya and his father, and then communicated to them doctrines which Kshattriyas only, but no Brāhmans, had ever known before.” I subjoin two separate versions of each of these stories. The first is that of Ajātaśatru :

Kaushitakī Brāhmaṇa Upanishad, iv. 1. *Atha ha rai Gārgyo Bälakir anūchānāḥ saṃspashṭāḥ āśa | so'vasad Uśinareshu savasan Matsyeshu Kuru-panchāleshu Kāśi - videheshv iti | sa ha Ajātaśatrūṁ Kāśyam ārrajya uvācha “brahma te bravāṇi” iti | tam ha uvācha Ajātaśatrūḥ “sahasraṁ dadmah” iti “etasyāṁ vāchi | ‘Janako Janakaḥ’ iti rai u janāḥ dhāvanti” iti | 19. Tataḥ u ha Bälakīś tūshṇīṁ āśa | tam ha uvācha Ajātaśatrur “etārad nu Bälake” iti | “etārad” iti ha urācha Bälakīḥ” | tam ha urācha Ajātaśatrur “mṛishā vai khalu mā saṃvādayishṭāḥ “brahma te bravāṇi” iti | yo rai Bälake eteshām puru-shānāṁ karttā yasya vai tat karma sa rai reditaryaḥ” iti | tataḥ u ha Bälakīḥ samit-pāṇīḥ pratichakrame “upāyāni” iti | tam ha uvācha Ajātaśatrūḥ “pratiloma-rūpam eva tad manye yat kshattriyo brāhmaṇam upanayeta chi vy eva tvā jnapayishyāmi” iti | tam ha pāṇāv abhipadya pravaravrāja |*

“Now Gārgya Bälaki was renowned as a man well read in the Veda. He dwelt among the Uśinaras, Matsyas, Kurus, Panchālas, Kāśis, and Videhas, travelling from place to place. He came to

²²² Chips from a German Workshop, vol. ii. p. 338.

Ajātaśatru, the Kāṣya, and said, ‘Let me declare to thee divine knowledge.’ Ajātaśatru said, ‘We bestow on thee a thousand (cows) for this word.’ Men run to us crying, ‘Janaka, Janaka.’” The learned man accordingly addresses Ajātaśatru in a series of statements regarding the object of his own worship, but is silenced by the king’s display of superior knowledge on every topic.²²³ The story ends thus: 19. “Then the son of Balāka remained silent. Ajātaśatru said to him, ‘Dost (thou know only) so much, o Bālāki?’ ‘Only so much,’ he answered. The king rejoined, ‘Thou hast vainly proposed to me, let me teach thee divine knowledge.’ He, son of Balāka, who is the maker of these souls, whose work that is,—he is the object of knowledge.’ Then the son of Balāka approached the king with fuel in his hand, and said, ‘Let me attend thee (as thy pupil).’ The king replied, ‘I regard it as an inversion of the proper rule that a Kshatriya should initiate a Brāhmaṇa. (But) come, I will instruct thee. Then, having taken him by the hand, he departed.”

Satapatha Brāhmaṇa, xiv. 5, 1, 1 (= Bṛihadāraṇyaka Upanishad, ii. 1, 1, p. 334 of Cal. edit.). *Driptabālākir ha anūchāno Gārgyāḥ āsa | sa ha uvācha Ajātaśatrūm Kāṣyam “brahma te bravāñi” iti | sa urācha Ajātaśatrūḥ “sahasram etasyāñ vāchi dadmaḥ ‘Janako Janakāḥ’ iti rasi anāḥ dhāranti” iti | 12. Sa ha tūshṇīm āsa Gārgyāḥ | 13. Sa ha uvācha Ajātaśatrur “etārad nu” iti | “etārad hi” iti | “na etāratā viditañ bharati” iti | sa ha uvācha Gārgyāḥ “upa tvā ayāni” iti | 14. Sa ha uvācha Ajātaśatrūḥ “pratilomañ vai tad yad brāhmaṇāḥ kshattriyam upeyād ‘brahma me vakshyati’ iti | vy eva tvā jnāpayishyāmi” iti | tam pānāv ādāya uttasthau |*

“Driptabālāki Gārgyā was well read in the Veda. He said to Ajātaśatru, the Kāṣya, ‘Let me declare to thee divine knowledge.’ Ajātaśatra replied, ‘We give thee a thousand (cows) for this word.²²³ Men run to me calling out, ‘Janaka, Janaka.’ At the end of their conversation we are told: 12. “Gārgya remained silent. 13. Then Ajātaśatru asked him, ‘(Dost thou know) so much only? ’ ‘Only so much,’ he replied. ‘But this,’ rejoined Ajātaśatru, ‘does not comprehend the whole of knowledge.’ Then said Gārgya, ‘Let me come to thee (as thy disciple).’ Ajātasatru answered, ‘This is an inversion of the proper rule, that a Brāhmaṇa should attend a Kshatriya with the view

²²³ See Prof. Cowell’s Translation of the Bhāṣāṇī h. d. nn. 147 ff.

of being instructed in divine knowledge. (But) I will teach thee.' He took him by the hand, and rose."

The second story is that of Pravāhaṇa Jaivali:

Satapatha Brāhmaṇa, xiv. 9, 1, 1 (= Brīhadāraṇyaka Upanishad, vi. 2, 1, p. 1030 of Cal. edit.). *Svetaketur ha vai Āruneyaḥ Panchālānām parishadam ājagāma | sa ājagāma Pravāhaṇāṁ Jaivalim parichārayamānam | tam udīkṣhya abhyuvāda "kumāra" iti | sa "bhoḥ" iti pratiśūṣrāva | "anuśishṭo nv asi pitrā" | "om" iti ha uvācha |* 2. "Vettha yathā imāḥ prajāḥ prayatyo vīpratipadyante" iti | "na" iti ha uvācha | "vettha yāthā imāṁ lokam punar āpadyante" iti | "na" iti ha eva uvācha | "vettha yāthā 'sau lokaḥ evam bahubhiḥ punaḥ punaḥ pratayadbhir na sampūryyate" iti | "na" iti ha eva uvācha | 3. "Vettha yatītlyāṁ āhutyāṁ hutayāṁ āpaḥ purusha-rūcho bhūtrū samutthāya radanti" iti | "na" iti ha eva uvācha | "vettha u devayānasya vā pathaḥ pratipadam pitriyānasya vā yat kṛitvā devayānāṁ vā panthānam pratipadyate pitriyānāṁ vā | 4. *Api hi naḥ ṛisher vachaḥ śrutam* (R.V. x. 88, 15 = Vāj. S. 19, 47) 'dve śrīśi aśriṇavam pitriyānām ahaṁ devānām uta martyānām | tābhyaṁ idāṁ riśram ejat sameti yad antarā pitaram mātarānām cha' iti | "na aham ataḥ ekāchana veda" iti ha uvācha | 5. *Atha ha enāṁ vasatyā upamantryānchakre | anādṛitya vasatiṁ kumāraḥ pradrāvā | su ājagāma pitaram | taṁ ha urācha "iti vāra kila no bhavān purā 'nuśishṭān avochāḥ"*²²⁴ iti | "kathaṁ sumedhaḥ" iti | "pancha mā praśnān rājanyabandhur aprākshīt tato na ekanāchana veda" iti ha uvācha | "katame te" iti | "ime" iti ha pratikāny udājahāra | 6. *Sa ha uvācha | "tathā nas traṁ tūta jānīthāḥ yāthā yad ahaṁ kincha veda sarvam ahaṁ tat tubhyam avocham | prehi tu tattra pratītya brahmacharyāṁ valsyāvā"* iti | *bhavān era gachhatv*" iti | 7. *Sa ājagāma Gautamo yatra Pravāhaṇasya Jaivaler āśa | tasmai āsanam āhāryya²²⁵ udakam āhārayānchakāra | atha ha asmai arghān²²⁶ chākara |* 8. *Sa ha uvācha "varam bhavate Gautamāya dadmaḥ" iti | sa ha uvācha "pratijnāto me esha varāḥ | yām tu kumārasya ante vāchan abhāshathās tām me brūhi"* iti | 9. *Sa ha uvācha "daiveshu vai Gautama tad vareshu | mānushānām brūhi"* iti | 10. *Sa ha uvācha "vijnāyate ha asti hiranyasya apāttām go-aśvānām dāśnām pravarānām paridhānānām | mā no bhavān bahor anuntasya*

²²⁴ The text of the Brīhadāraṇyaka Up. reads *avochat*.

²²⁵ The Brīh. Ār. reads *āhārya*.

²²⁶ The Brīh. Ār. reads *arghyam*.

aparyantasya abhy aradānyo bhād ॥ *iti | sa vai Gautama tirthena
icchāsai* ॥ *iti | upayīnam aham bhārataṁ* ॥ *rāchī ha omā era
pūrre upayanti* ॥ 11. *Sa ha upayana-kṛtta²²⁷ urācha* ॥ *tathā na
trañ Gautama mā 'parādhās tara cha pitāmahāḥ yathā* ॥ *iyām ridyā
itāḥ pūraṇāḥ na kaśmīrīchana brāhmaṇe urāsa* ॥ *tathā te ahaṁ tubhyāṁ
rakṣyāmi* ॥ *ko hi trā eram brārāntam arhati pratyākhyātum* ॥ *iti |*

Svetaketu Āruneya came to the assembly of the Panchālas. He came to Pravāhana Jaivali, who was receiving service from his attendants. Seeing Svetaketu, the king said, 'o youth.' 'Sire,' he answered. (King) 'Hast thou been instructed by thy father?' (Svetaketu) 'I have.' 2. (K.) 'Dost thou know how these creatures, when departing, proceed in different directions?' (S.) 'No.' (K.) 'Dost thou know how they return to this world?' (S.) 'No.' (K.) 'Dost thou know how it is that the other world is not filled with those numerous beings who are thus constantly departing?' (S.) 'No.' 3. (K.) 'Dost thou know after the offering of what oblation the waters, acquiring human voices, rise and speak?' (S.) 'No.' (K.) 'Dost thou know the means of attaining the path which leads to the gods, or that which leads to the Pitris; by what act the one or the other is gained?' 4. And we have heard the words of the rishi: (R.V. x. 88, 15 = Vaj. S. 19, 47) "I have heard of two paths for mortals, one to the pitris, another to the gods. By these proceeds every moving thing that exists between the father and the mother (*i.e.* between Dyaus and Prithivi, heaven and earth)." 'I know none of all these things,' answered Svetaketu. 5. The king then invited him to stay. The youth, however, did not accept this invitation, but hastened away, and came to his father, to whom he said, 'Thou didst formerly declare me to be instructed.' 'How now (my) intelligent (son)?' asked his father. 'The Rājanya,' replied the son, 'asked me five questions, of which I know not even one.' 'What were the questions?' 'They were these,' and he told him the initial words of each of them. 6. The father then said, 'Be assured, my son, that I told thee all that I myself know. But come, let us proceed thither, and become (his) pupils. 'Do thou thyself go,' rejoined the son. 7. Gantama accordingly arrived (at the abode) of Pravāhana Jaivali, who caused a seat to be brought, and water and the madhuparka mess to be

²²⁷ The text of the Brīh. Ār. Up. reads *kīrttyā urāsa*.

presented : 8. and said, 'We offer thee a boon, Gautama.' Gautama replied, 'Thou hast promised me this boon : explain to me the questions which thou hast proposed to the youth.' 9. The king replied, 'That is one of the divine boons ; ask one of those that are human.' 10. Gautama rejoined, 'Thou knowest that I have received gold, cows, horses, female slaves, attendants, raiment ; be not illiberal towards us in respect to that which is immense, infinite, boundless.' 'This, o' Gautama,' said the king, 'thou rightly desirest.' 'I approach thee (as thy) disciple,' answered Gautama. 'The men of old used to approach (their teachers) with words (merely). He (accordingly) attended him by merely intimating his intention to do so.'²²⁸ 'Do not,' then said the king, 'attach any blame to me, as your ancestors (did not). This knowledge has never heretofore dwelt in any Brâhman ; but I shall declare it to thee. For who should refuse thee when thou so speakest ?'"

Chhândogya Upanishad, v. 3, 1. Sretaketur ha Āruneyah Panchälânām, jāmitim eyāya | tam ha Pravâhano Jaivalir uvâcha "kumâra anu trâ 'śishat pitâ" iti | "anu hi bhagavâh" iti | 2. "Vettha yad ito 'dhi prajâh prayanti" iti | "na bhagavâh" iti | "vettha yathâ punar âvarttante" iti | "na bhagavâh" iti | "vettha pathor dera-yânasya pitri-yânasya cha ryâvarttane" iti | "na bhagavâh" iti | 3. "Vettha yathâ 'sau loko na sampûryyate" | "na bhagavâh" iti | "vettha yathâ panchamîâm âhutâv âpaḥ purusha-rachaso bharanti" iti | "naiva bhagavâh" iti | 4. "Atha nu kim anuśishṭo 'vochathâḥ | yo hi imâni na vidyât kathaṁ so 'nuśishṭo bravîta" iti | sa ha âyastâḥ pitur arddham eyâya | tam ha uvâcha "anunuśishya râva kila mā bhagavân abravîd 'anu trâ 'śisham'" iti | 5. "Pancha mā râjanyabandhuḥ praśnân aprâkshit teshâṁ na ekanchana âsakaṁ vivaktum" iti | sa ha uvâcha "yathâ mā traṁ tadâ etân avado yathâ 'ham eshâṁ na ekanchana veda yady aham imâñ arêdishyaṁ kathaṁ te na avakshyam" iti | 6. Sa ha Gautamo râjno 'rddham eyâya | tasmai ha prâptâya arhâṁ chakâra | sa ha prâtaḥ sabhâgaḥ udeyâya | tam ha uvâcha "mânushasya bhagavan Gautama vit-tusya varâṁ vrinîthâḥ" iti | sa ha uvâcha "tava eva râjan mânushâṁ rittam | yûm eva kumârasya ante vâcham abhâshathâs tam eva me brûhi" iti | 7. Sa ha krikkhri babhûva | tam ha "chirâṁ vasa" ity âjnâpayân-

²²⁸ Or, "by merely intimating, not performing, the respectful mode of approach by touching his feet," according to the Commentator.

chakāra | tam ha urācha "yathā mā team Gautama arado yathā iyañ na prāk trallab purā brāhmaṇūn gachhati tasmād u sarcehu lokešu kshattrasya era praśāsanam abhūd" iti | tasmāi ha učūcha |

"1. Svetaketu Āruneya came to the assembly of the Panchālas. Pravāhana Jaivali asked him, 'Young man, has thy father instructed thee?' 'He has, sire,' replied Svetaketu. 2. 'Dost thou know,' asked the king, 'whither living creatures proceed when they go hence?' (S.) 'No, sire.' (King) 'Dost thou know how they return?' (S.) 'No, sire.' (K.) 'Dost thou know the divergences of the two paths whereof one leads to the gods, and the other to the pitris?' (S.) 'No, sire.' 3. (K.) 'Dost thou know how it is that the other world is not filled?' (S.) 'No, sire.' (K.) 'Dost thou know how at the fifth oblation the waters acquire human voices?' (S.) 'I do not, sire.' 4. (K.) 'And hast thou then said "I have been instructed?" for how can he who does not know these things allege that he has been so?' The young man, mortified, went to his father, and said, 'Thou didst tell me, I have instructed thee, when thou hadst not done so. 5. That Rājanya proposed to me five questions, of which I could not solve even one.' The father replied, 'As thou didst then say to me regarding these five questions, I know not one of them,—(so I ask thee whether) if I had known them, I would not have told them to thee?' 6. Gautama went to the king, who received him with honour. In the morning, having received his share (of attention), he presented himself before the king, who said to him, 'Ask, o reverend Gautama, a present of human riches.' He replied, 'To thee, o king, belongs wealth of that description. Declare to me the questions which thou proposedst to the youth.' 7. The king was perplexed and desired him to make a long stay: and said to him, 'As thou hast declared to me, o Gautama, that this knowledge has not formerly reached the Brāhmans (who lived) before thee, it has therefore been among all peoples a discipline inculcated by the Kshattriya class alone.' He then declared it to him.

SECT. XVI.—Story of King Viśvantara and the Syāparna Brāhmans.

Aitareya Brāhmaṇa, vii. 27. *Viśvantaro ha Saushadmanah Syāparnān parichakṣhaṇo viśyāparnām yajnam ājahre | tad ha anubudhya Syāparnās tañ yajnam ājagmuḥ | te ha tad-antarvedy āśānchabhrīs | tān ha drishyā*

uvācha “pāpasya vai imē karmanāḥ karttāraḥ āste apūtāyai vācho vadiṭāro yach chhyāparnāḥ imān utthāpayata imē me ‘ntarvedim āsi-shata” iti | “tathā” iti tān utthāpayānchakruḥ | te ha utthāpyamānāḥ ruruvire “ye tebhyo Bhūtavīrebhyaḥ Asitamṛigāḥ Kaśyapānām somapītham abhijigyuḥ Pārikshitasya Janamejayasya vikāsyape yajne tais te tattra viravantāḥ asuḥ | kaḥ svit so ‘smāka asti vīro yaḥ imān somapītham abhijeshyati” iti | “ayam aham asmi vo vīraḥ” iti ha uvācha Rāmo Mārgareyaḥ | Rāmo ha āsa Mārgaveyo ‘nūchānāḥ Syāparṇīyah | teshām ha uttiṣṭhatām uvācha “api nu rājann itthaṁvidām reder utthāpayanti” iti | “yas traṁ kathaṁ rettha brahmabandho” iti | 28. “Yattra Indram deratāḥ paryavṛinjan Viśvarūpaṁ Trāśṭram abhyamaṁsta Vṛittram aṣṭrīta yatīn sālārīkēdhyāḥ prādād Arurmaghān avadhīd Brīhaspateḥ pratyaradhiḍ” iti | “tattra Indrah somapīthena vyārdhyata | Indrasya anu vyāriddhiṁ kshattram somapīthena vyārdhyata | api Indrah somapīthē ‘bharat Trashtur āmushya somam | tad vyāriddham era adyāpi kshattrām somapīthena | sa yas tam bhakshām vidyād yaḥ kshattrasya somapīthena vyāriddhasya yena kshattrām samṛidhyate kathaṁ taṁ reder utthāpayanii” iti | “rettha brāhmaṇa traṁ tam bhaksham” | “veda hi” iti | “taṁ rai no brāhmaṇa brūhi” iti | “tasmai rai te rājann” iti ha uvācha | 29. Trayāṇām bhakshāṇām ekam āharishyanti somaṁ rā dadhi rā apo rā | sa yadi somam brāhmaṇānām sa bhakshāḥ | brāhmaṇāṁs tena bhakshena jīnvishyasi | brāhmaṇa-kalpas te prajāyām ājanishyate ādāyi āpāyi āva-sāyi yathā-kāma-prayāpyaḥ | yadā vai kshattriyāya pāpam bhavati brāhmaṇa-kalpo ‘sya prajāyām ājāyate iśvaro ha asmād dviṭīyo rā trīṭīyo rā brāhmaṇatām abhyupaitoḥ sa brahmabandhavena jījyūshataḥ | atha yadi dadhi vaiśyānām sa bhakshāḥ | vaiśyāṁs tena bhakshena jīnvishyasi | vaiśya-kalpas te prajāyām ājanishyate ‘nyasya bali-kṛid anyasya ādyo yathā-kāma-jyeṣaḥ | yadā rai kshattriyāya pāpam bhavati vaiśya-kalpo ‘sya prajāyām ājāyate iśvaro ha asmād dviṭīyo rā trīṭīyo rā vaiśyatām abhyupaitoḥ sa vaiśyatayā jījyūshitaḥ | atha yady apah śūdrāṇām sa bhakshāḥ | śūdrāṁs tena bhakshena jīnvishyasi | śūdra-kalpas te prajāyām ājanishyate ‘nyasya preshyāḥ kāmotthāpyo yathākāma-vadhyāḥ | yadā vai kshattriyāya pāpam bhavati śūdra-kalpo ‘sya prajāyām ājāyate | iśvaro ha asmād dviṭīyo rā trīṭīyo rā śūdratām abhyupaitoḥ | sa śūdra-tayā jījyūshitaḥ | 30. Ele vai te trayo bhakshāḥ rājann” iti ha uvācha “yeshām āśām na iyāt kshattriyo yajamānaḥ atha asya esha swo ‘ kshāḥ” ityādi |

"Viśvantara, the son of Sushadman, setting aside the Syāparṇas, was performing a sacrifice without their aid. Hearing of this the Syāparṇas came to the ceremony, and sat down within the sacrificial enclosure. Observing them, the king said, 'Remove these Syāparṇas, doers of evil deeds, and speakers of impure language,'²²⁹ who have sat down within my sacrificial enclosure.' Saying, 'So be it,' they removed them. When they were being removed, they exclaimed, 'The Kaśyapas found champions in the Asitamṛigas who conquered for them from the Bhūtaviras the soma-draught at the sacrifice which Janamejaya, the son of Parikshit, was performing without their (the Kaśyapas') aid. Who is the champion who will conquer for us this soma-draught?' 'I am your champion,' cried Rāma Mārgaveya. This Rāma was a learned man, belonging to the Syāparṇa race. When the Syāparṇas were moving away, he said, 'Do they, o king, remove from the sacrificial enclosure a man who possesses such knowledge [as I]?' 'How dost thou possess it, Brāhmaṇ?' asked the king. 28. (Rāma answered) "When the deities rejected Indra, who had killed Tvāshṭra,²³⁰ prostrated Vṛittra, given over the Yatis to the wolves, slain the Arurmaghas, and contradicted Brihaspati, then he (Indra) forfeited the soma-draught. In consequence of his forfeiture, the Kshāttra (Kshattriya) class lost it

²²⁹ Prof. Weber (Ind. St. i., 215) thinks the words "doers of evil deeds" appear to refer to some variety of ceremonial peculiar to the S'yāparṇas, and the words "speakers of impure language" to a difference in their dialect; and he is inclined to derive the patronymic of Rāma, Mārgavēya, from the impure caste of Mārgavas mentioned in Manu, x. 34; by which supposition, he thinks, a ground would be discovered for the reproaches which Viśvantara addresses to the S'yāparṇa family. In reference to the story of Janamejaya, alluded to in this passage, Weber remarks (Ind. Stud. i. 204): "The same work (the Aitareya Brahmana, vii., 27) makes mention of a dispute which this king had with the sacerdotal family of the Bhūtaviras, a branch of the Kaśyapas; and which was adjusted by the intervention of the Asitamṛigas, who belonged to the same race." A S'yāparṇa is alluded to in S' P. Br. x., 4, 1, 10 (quoted by Prof. Weber, Ind. St. i., 215): *Etad ha sma vai tad vidvān S'yāparṇah Sāyakāyanah āha "yad vai me idāñ karma samūpsyata mama eva prajā Salvānām rājāno 'bhavishyan mama brāhmaṇūḥ mama vaisyāḥ | yat tu me etīrat karmanāḥ samūpi tena me ubhayathā Salvān prajā 'tirekshyate" iti |* "Knowing this Sāyakāyan, the S'yāparṇa, said, 'If this my rite had been completed, my offspring would have become the kings of the Salvās, mine their Brāhmans, mine their Vaisyas. But as (only) so much of the rite has been completed, my offspring shall, in both respects, excel the Salvās.'" See also Ind. St. x. 18.

²³⁰ See Dr. Haug's note, p. 487, where he states why he cannot follow Sāyana in rendering *abhyamañsta* by "killed." Prof. Weber (Ind. St. ix. 326) defends Sāyana's interpretation.

also. (But Indra recovered a share in the soma-draught, having stolen Tvaṣṭṛi's soma.) Hence at present also the Kshattriyas are excluded from the soma-draught. Why do they remove from the sacrificial enclosure a man who knows that (other) draught which (properly belongs) to the Kshattriyas who are excluded from the soma-draught, and by which they are rendered prosperous ?' 'Dost thou, o Brāhmaṇ, know that draught?' asked the king. 'I know it,' answered Rāma. ' Declare it then to us,' rejoined the prince. ' I declare it to thee, o king, said the other. 29. 'Of the three draughts they shall bring one, either soma, or curds, or water. If he (the priest, bring) the soma, that is the draught of the Brāhmaṇs, and with it thou shalt satisfy the Brāhmaṇs. One like a Brāhmaṇ shall be born in thy line, a receiver of gifts, a drinker (of soma), a seeker of food,²³¹ a rover at will.' Whenever the offence (of drinking the Brāhmaṇ's draught)²³² is chargeable to a Kshattriya, one like a Brāhmaṇ is born in his line, who in the second or third generation from him has the power of becoming a Brāhmaṇ, and likes to live as a Brāhmaṇ. Next, if (the priest bring) curds, that is the Vaiśya's draught; with it thou shalt satisfy the Vaiśyas. One like a Vaiśya shall be born in thy line, one who is tributary to another, who is to be used (*lit. eaten*) by another, and who may be oppressed at will. Whenever the offence (of consuming the Vaiśya's portion) is chargeable to a Kshattriya, one like a Vaiśya is born in his line, who in the second or third generation from him has the power of becoming a Vaiśya, and is desirous of living as a Vaiśya. Next, if (the priest bring) water, that is the Sūdra's draught; with it thou shalt satisfy the Sūdras. One like a Sūdra shall be born in thy line, the servant of another, who may be expelled and slain at pleasure. When the offence (of drinking the Sūdra's draught) is chargeable against a Kshattriya, one like a Sūdra is born in his line, who in the second or third generation from him has the power of becoming a Sūdra, and desires to live like a Sūdra. 30. 'These, o king, are the three draughts, which the Kshattriya when sacrificing should not desire. His own proper draught is as follows: Let him squeeze the descending branches .

²³¹ Prof. Weber (Ind. Stud. ix. 326) would prefer to translate āvāsayī (überall-) wohnend, "dwelling everywhere."

²³² Dr. Haug translates "when there is any fault on the Kshattriya (who, when sacrificing, eats the Brāhmaṇa portion)," etc. See the beginning of par. 30 below.

of the nyagrodha (Indian fig) tree, with the fruits of the udumbara, the aśvattha, and the plaksha trees, and drink these juices. This is his own proper draught.

The continuation may be read in Dr. Haug's translation, pp. 486 ff. After the priest has given the king a deal of further information the result is told in par. 34, as follows :

*Tam eram etam bhaksham prorācha Rāmo Mārgareyo Viśvantarāya
Saushadmanāya | tasmin ha urācha prokta "sahasram u ha brāhmaṇa
tubhyāṁ dadmaḥ | saśyāparnāḥ u me yajnah" iti |*

"This draught did Rāma Mārgaveya declare to Viśvantara the son of Sushadman. When it had been declared the king said, 'Brāhmaṇ, we give thee a thousand (cows): and my sacrifice (shall be performed) with (the aid of the) Sāyāparṇas.' "

SECT. XVII.—*Story of Matanga who tried in vain to raise himself to the position of a Brāhmaṇ.*

The legend of Matanga, which is narrated in the Anuśāsana-parvan of the Mahābhārata, verses 1872 ff., is introduced by a question which Yudhishṭhira addresses to Bhīṣma, verse 1867 : *Kshattriyo yadi vā
vaiśyaḥ śūdra vā rājasaṭṭama | brāhmaṇyam prāpnuyād yena tad me
vyākhyātum arhasi | tapasā vā sumahatā karmānā vā śruteṇa vā |
brāhmaṇyām atha ched ichhet tad me brūhi samāsataḥ | Bhīṣmaḥ urācha* | 1870. *Brāhmaṇyām tāta dushprāpyaḥ varnaiḥ kshattrādibhis tribhīḥ |
paraṁ hi sarra-bhūtānām etad Yudhishṭhira | bahvis tu sām-
saran yonīr jāyamānaḥ punaḥ punaḥ | paryāye tāta kasmiṁścid brā-
mano nāma jāyate |* "Explain to me the means—whether it be intense austere-fervour, or ceremonies, or Vedic learning—whereby a Kshattriya, a Vaiśya, or a Śūdra, if he desire it, can attain to the state of a Brāhmaṇ. Bhīṣma replies (1870), The state of a Brāhmaṇ is hard to be acquired by men of the other three classes, the Kshattriyas, etc.; for this Brāhmaṇhood is the highest rank among all living creatures. It is only after passing through numerous wombs, and being born again and again, that such a man, in some revolution of being, becomes a Brāhmaṇ." Bhīṣma proceeds to illustrate this principle by the case of Matanga, who was apparently the son of a Brāhmaṇ, was distinguished for his good qualities, and was esteemed to be himself of the same class as his

father (verse 1873 : *dvi-jāteḥ kasyachit tāta tulya-varnah sutas tv abhūt | Matango nāma nāmnā vai sarvaiḥ samudito guṇaiḥ |*) He was, however, discovered to be of spurious birth in the following manner: He happened to be sent somewhere by his father to perform sacrifice, and was travelling in a car drawn by asses. On his way he repeatedly pierced on its nose with the goad the colt which was conveying him along with its mother. Feeling for the wound thus inflicted on her offspring, the she-ass said: “ Be not distressed, my son, it is a Chandāla who is on the car. There is nothing dreadful in a Brāhmaṇ; he is declared to be kindly, a teacher who instructs all creatures: how then can he smite any one? This man of wicked disposition shows no pity to a tender colt, and thereby indicates his origin; for it is birth which determines the character” (verse 1876. *Uvācha mā śuchāḥ puttra chandūlas tv adhitish-thati | brāhmaṇe dūrūnaṁ nāsti maitro brāhmaṇa uchyate | āchāryaḥ sarra-bhūtānāṁ sāstā kim praharishyati | ayaṁ tu pāpa-prakṛitir bāle na kurute dayām | sva-yonim mānayaty esha bhāvo bhāvaṁ niyachhati |*). Overhearing this colloquy, Matanga instantly got down from the car and besought the she-ass, whom he honoured with the epithet of “ most intelligent,” to tell him how she knew him to be a Chandāla and how his mother had been corrupted. The she-ass informs him that his mother when intoxicated had received the embraces of a low-born barber, and that he was the offspring of this connection and consequently no Brāhmaṇ (verse 1882. *Brāhmaṇyāṁ vrishalena tram mat-tāyāṁ nāpitena ha | jātas tram asi chandālo brāhmaṇyāṁ tena te 'naśat |*). On receiving this unwelcome revelation, Matanga returned home, and being questioned by his reputed father about the cause of his speedy reappearance, he told him what he had heard; and expressed his determination to enter on a course of austerities. He does so accordingly with such effect that he alarms the gods, and receives the offer of a boon from Indra. He asks for Brāhmaṇhood; but Indra tells him that he must perish if he continues to make that request, as the high position he seeks cannot be obtained by one born as a Chandāla (verse 1895). Matanga, however, continues his exercises for a hundred years, when Indra repeats his former determination, and supports it by reasons, explaining (1901 ff.) that a Chandāla can only become a Sūdra in a thousand births, a Sūdra a Vaiśya after a period thirty times as long, a Vaiśya a Rājanya after a period sixty times the length, a

janya a Brâhman after a period of sixty times the duration, and so on, a Brâhman only becoming a Kânđapriştha, a Kânđapriştha a Japa, a Japa a Srotiya, after immense intervals. Indra therefore advises Matanga to choose some other boon. But the devotee is still dissatisfied with the god's decision, and renews his austerities for a thousand years. At the end of that period he receives still the same answer, and the same advice. But though distressed he did not yet despair; but proceeded to balance himself on his great toe; which, although reduced to skin and bone, he succeeded in doing for a hundred years without falling. At length, when he was on the point of tumbling, Indra ran up and supported him; but continued inexorably to refuse his request; and though further importuned, would only consent to give him the power of moving about like a bird, and changing his shape at will, and of being honoured and renowned (verses 1934 ff.).

The assertion here made of the impossibility of a Kshattriya becoming a Brâhman until he has passed through a long series of births is of course in flagrant contradiction with the stories of Viśvâmitra, Vîtahavya, and others.

Matanga (or a Matanga) is mentioned in a passage already quoted in p. 411 as a râjarshi who supported Viśvâmitra's family and for whom that sage sacrificed. He is also named in the Sabhâ-parvan, verse 340, as sitting in Yama's assembly along with Agastya, Kâla, and Mṛityu, etc., etc.; in the Vana-parvan, 8079, as a great rishi (*maharshi*); and in the Sânti-parvan, 10875, as one of certain sages who had acquired their position by austerities (see above, p. 132). His disciples, he himself, and his forest are mentioned in the Râmâyana, iii. 73, 23, 29, 30.

SECT. XVIII.—*Legend of the Brâhman Paraśurâma, the exterminator of the Kshattriyas.*

As Paraśurâma belonged to the race of the Bhîrigus, it may be advisable to premise some particulars regarding that family.

In his Lexicon, *s.v.*, Professor Roth tells us that the Bhîrigus were a class of mythical beings, who, according to the Nirukta, xi. 19, belonged to the middle or aerial class of gods ("mâdhyamiko deva-ganah" *iti Niruktlâb*). They were the discoverers of fire and brought it to men,

(R.V. x. 46, 2, etc.)²³³ He adds, however, that this race has also a connection with history, as one of the chief Brahmanical families bears this name, and allusions are made to this fact even in the hymns of the Rig-veda (vii. 18, 6; viii. 3, 9, 16; viii. 6, 18; viii. 91, 4). Bhṛigu is also, as Prof. Roth observes, the name of a rishi representing a family, who is mentioned in Atharva-veda, v. 19, 1, as suffering injury at the hands of the Śrinjayas (see above, p. 286). As regards his birth, it is said in the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa, iii. 34, that first the Sun, and then Bhṛigu arose out of the seed which had issued from Prajāpati,²³⁴ that Bhṛigu was adopted by Varuṇa, and was consequently called Vārunī, etc. (*Tasya yad retasaḥ prathamam udādīpyata tad asāv ādityo 'bhavat | yad drītiyam āśit tad Bhṛigur abharat | tam Varuno nyagṛihniita | tasmāt sa Bhṛigur Vārunīḥ*). He is accordingly called by this name in the S. P. Br. xi. 6, 1, 1, where he is said to have conceived himself to be superior in knowledge to his father Varuṇa (*Bhṛigur ha rai Vārunīr Varunam pitaram vid�ayā 'timene*); and also in the Taittiriya Upaniṣad (Bibl. Ind. p. 123 : *Bhṛigur vai Vārunīr Varuṇām pitaram upasasūra*).²³⁵ The preceding story of Bhṛigu's birth is developed and modified in the Anuśāsana-parvam of the Mahābhārata, verse 4104 ff. : *Vaśishṭhaḥ uvācha | api chedam purā Rāma śrutam me Brahma-darśanam | Pitāmahasya yad ṛittam Brahmanāḥ paramātmanāḥ | derasya mahatas tāta Vārunīm bibhratas tanum | aiśvaryye vārune Rāma Rudrasyeśasya vai prabhoḥ |* “Vaśishṭha said, 4104: I have also heard, o Rāma (i.e. Paraśurāma), of this vision of Brahmā, of that which occurred regarding Pitāmaha, Brahma, the supreme spirit, the great god (i.e. Mahādeva), Rudra, Iśa, the lord, assuming the body of Varuṇa, and invested with the dominion of Varuṇa.” After this singular description of Mahādeva as identified with Brahmā, Brahma the supreme spirit, and Varuṇa, the speaker goes on to tell us that the munis, the gods headed by Agni, the embodied portions of the sacrifice, and the Vedas, etc., assembled on the occasion referred to, and then proceeds, verse 4112 : *Esha Brahmā Śivo Rudro Varuno 'gnih Prajāpatih | kirttyate bhagavān devaḥ sarva-bhūta-patiḥ śivāḥ | tasya yajnah*

²³³ See my article on “Manu, the progenitor of the Āryyan Indians” in Journ. R. A. S. for 1863, p. 415 f.; and above, pp. 168 and 170.

²³⁴ The commencement of the story, of which this is part of the sequel, is given above, p. 107 f.

²³⁵ See Ind. Stud. ii. 231, and Journ. of the German Or. Soc. ix. 240.

Paśupates tapah kratava era cha | dīkshā dipta-vratā devī diśas cha sa-
digīśvarāḥ | dera-patnyaś cha kanyāś cha devānām chaire mātarāḥ |
ājagmuḥ sahitās tatra tadā Bhṛigu-kulodvaha | 4115. Yajnam Paśu-
pateḥ prītāḥ Varunasya mahātmanāḥ | Srayambhuras tu tūḥ dṛishṭrā
retāḥ samapataḥ bhuri | tasya śukrasya visyandāt pāṁśūn sangṛihya
bhūmitāḥ | prāsyat Pūshā karābhyaṁ rai tasminn era hutāśane | tatas
tasmin sampraritte sattre jvalita-pāvake | Brahmano juhrtatas tatra
prādurbhāro babhūra ha | skanna-mātraṁ cha tach chhukram śrureṇa
parigṛihya saḥ | ājya-rad mantrataś chāpi so 'juhod Bhṛigu-nandana |
tatas tu janayāmāsa bhūta-grāmañ cha vīryyārān | 4121. S'ukre
hute 'gnau tasmiṁs tu prāduraśaṁs trayāḥ prabho | purushāḥ rapushā
yuktāḥ svāḥ svāḥ prasara-jair-guṇaiḥ | "bhṛig" ity eva Bhṛiguḥ pūr-
ram angārebhyo 'ngirā 'bhavat | angāra-saṁśrayāch chaivo Kavir ity
aparo 'bhavat | saha jvālābhīr utpanno Bhṛigus tasmodā Bhṛiguḥ smṛitāḥ |
. . . . 4140. "Varunaś cheśvara dero labhatām kāmam ipsitam" | nisar-
gād Brahmanāś chāpi Varuno yādasāmpatiḥ | jagrāha vai Bhṛigum pūr-
ram apatyāñ sūrya-varchasam | Īśvara 'ngirasaṁ chāgner apatyārtham
akalpayat | Pitāmahas tv apatyāñ rai Kavīñ jagrāha tatra-rit | tadā
sa Vārunāḥ khyāto Bhṛiguḥ prasara-karma-krit | Agneyas tv Angirāḥ
śrīmān Kavir Brāhma mahāyāśāḥ | Bhārgavāngirasau loke loka-san-
tāna-lakṣhaṇau | ete hi prasarāḥ sarve prajānām patayas trayāḥ |
sarvam santānam eteshām idam ity upadhāraya | Bhrigos tu putrāḥ
saptāsan sarve tulyāḥ Bhṛigor guṇaiḥ | Chyavano Vajrasīrshaś cha
S'uchir Aurvas tathaiva cha | S'ukro Varenyaś cha Vibhuḥ Savanaś
cheti sapta te | Bhārgavāḥ Vārunāḥ sarve yeshām raṁśo bharān api |
"4112. This adorable and gracious god, lord of all creatures, is known
as Brahmā, Siva, Rudra, Varuna, Agni, Prajāpati. This Paśupati (had)
a sacrifice.²⁶⁶ Austere-fervour, Oblations, Consecration, (Dīkshā) that
goddess with brilliant rites, the Points of the compass, their regents,
the wives, daughters and mothers of the gods came all together with
joy (4115) to this sacrifice of Paśupati the great Varuṇa. When Sva-
yambhū (Brahmā) saw these goddesses his seed fell to the ground.
Pūshan in consequence collected the particles of dust which were thus
moistened, and threw them into the fire. When the sacrifice with its
blazing fires had begun, there was seen an apparition of Brahmā offering
an oblation. Collecting with the sacrificial ladle that which had fallen,

²⁶⁶ Such seems to be the construction of this line.

he cast it, like butter, with sacred texts, into the fire. And thence the powerful god generated all beings. . . . 4121. When the seed had been cast into the fire, there arose three men endowed with bodies, and with their own respective qualities derived from their generation. Bhṛigu sprang first from *bhrīk* (the blazing of the fire), Angiras from the cinders, and Kavi²³⁷ from a heap of cinders. Bhṛigu was so named because he was produced together with flames." The god, called Mahādeva, Varuṇa, and Pavana, claimed these three men as his own, and the fruit of his sacrifice (verse 4133 f.). Agni and Brahmā also claimed them (4135 f.). The other gods, however, entreated Brahmā to accede to the wishes of Agni and Varuṇa: "4140. 'And let Varuṇa, the lord, the god, also receive the object of his desire.' By the gift of Brahmā, Varuṇa, lord of sea-monsters, first received for his offspring Bhṛigu brilliant as the sun. And Iśvara (Mahādeva) appointed Angiras to be Agni's son. And Pitāmaha, who knows the reality of things took Kavi as his offspring. Then Bhṛigu, the progenitor of creatures, was named the son of Varuṇa, Angiras the son of Agni, and the glorious Kavi the son of Brahmā. The Bhārgava and the Āngirasa are distinguished in the world as the propagators of mankind. For all these three lords of creatures were propagators. Know the whole of this world to be their offspring. Bhṛigu had seven sons, all equal to their father in good qualities, Chyavana, Vajrasīrsha, Suchi, Aurva, Sukra, Vareṇya, Vibhu, and Savana. These were all Bhārgavas, and Vārunas, to whose race you (Paraśurāma) yourself also belong."

In another passage of the M. Bh. Ādip. 869, it is similarly said. *Bhṛigur maharshir bhagavān Brahmanā vai Satyambhuvā | Varuṇasya kratau jātah pāvakād iti naḥ śrutam |* "We have heard that the great and venerable rishi Bhṛigu was produced by Brahmā from fire at the sacrifice of Varuṇa."

The Nirukta, iii. 17, has the following etymology of Bhṛigu: *Archishi Bhṛiguḥ sambabhūva | Bhṛigur bhrīyamāno na dehe |* "Bhṛigu was produced in the flame; though roasted, he was not consumed."

The Taitt. Br. I. 8, 2, 5, has a different account: *Indrasya sushuvā-nasya tredhā indryam vīryam parōpatat | Bhṛigus tritīyam abhavat*

²³⁷ In the M. Bh. Ādip. v. 2606, Kavi is said to be Bhṛigu's son (*Bhṛigoh putra Kavir videvān S'ukrahī*). On the other hand he, or another person of the same name is said in the Anusasana-p. 4150, to be, along with Kavi, a son of Kavi.

"While Indra was continuing to pour out Soma, his manly vigour fell in three portions. The third became Bhṛigu." *इति त्रितीये विगुरं त्रिभागं पूर्णं देवं अप्यनुभवते इति*

Bhṛigu is declared in the Vishṇu P. (see above, p. 65) to have been one of the nine Brahmās, mental sons of Brahmā. The Bhāg. P. iii. 12, 23, says he sprang from the skin of the creator (*Bhrigus trachi*). The M. Bh. Ādip. 2605, on the contrary declares: *Brahmano hridayam bhittā nissrito bhagarān Bhṛiguḥ* | "The venerable Bhṛigu, having split Brahmā's heart, issued forth" (Weber, Ind. St. ii. 231). So, too, the Vāyu P. i. 9, 100: *Bhrigus tu hridayāj jajne rishih Salilajanmanah* | "Bhṛigu was produced from the heart of the Water-born (Brahmā);" and adds, verse 103: *Ity ete mānasāḥ putrāḥ rīneyāḥ Brahmanāḥ sutāḥ* | *Bhrigr-ādayas tu ye sriśṭāḥ navaite brahma-rūdināḥ* | 104. *Gri-hamedhināḥ purāṇas dharmas taiḥ prāk prarāttitāḥ* | "These were the mind-born sons of Brahmā. Bhṛigu, and the others, nine in all, who were created, were declarers of sacred knowledge and ancient householders; by them was duty of old established." Manu mentions Bhṛigu (i. 35, see above, p. 36) as one of his own ten sons. He also speaks of him (i. 59, 60, above, p. 38) as commissioned by himself (Manu) to promulgate his code. In Manu, v. 1. however, the sage is said to have sprung from fire (*idam uchur mahātmānam anala-prabharam Bhrigum*). As, however, he had been previously declared to be one of Manu's ten sons, and is so called also in the third verse of book v. and the second of book vii., where he is styled *Mānavo Bhṛiguḥ*, Kullūka thinks it necessary to explain this other alleged descent from fire by saying that that had been the sage's origin in a previous mundane era (*Kalpa*): *Yadyapi prathamādhyāye daśa-prajāpati-madhye "Bhṛigum Nāradam eva cha" iti Bhrigu-sriśṭir api Manutāḥ eva uktā tathāpi kalpa-bhedenā agni-prabhavatvam uchyate | tathā cha śrutiḥ "tasya yad retasāḥ prathamaṁ dedipyate tad asāv ādityo 'bhavat | yad dvitiyam āśid Bhrigur"* iti | atāḥ eva bhrashṭād retasāḥ utpannatvād Bhriguḥ | "Though the creation of Bhṛigu, as one of the ten Prajāpatis, is declared, in the 35th verse of the first book, to have proceeded from Manu, still he is here said to have been produced from fire, from the difference in the manner of his birth in the different Kalpas. And so the Veda says (in the passage quoted above from the Ait. Br.). Hence he is called Bhṛigu, because he sprang from the seed which fell (*bhrashṭāt*).²²⁸

²²⁸ See Prof. Wilson's note, Vishṇu Purāṇa, vol. i. p. 100 ff., in the course of

Professor Roth (Lit. and History of the Veda, p. 135) says : "The Bhṛigus are one of the most important Vedic families, to which Jamadagni, Chyavana, Aurva, Apnavāna, and other rishis are assigned. Many conjectures might be formed in connection with the part which these several Bhṛigus play in the later legends; but it seems to me unsafe to draw any conclusions till we are in possession of the intermediate links, and especially till we have learnt more precisely from the Vedic hymns themselves the relations of these families to each other. Nevertheless I will remark that Sunahścepha, the adopted son of Viśvāmitra, is, according to the Purāṇas, a Bhṛigu; and consequently the Bhṛigus appear in intimate connection with the enemy of Vasishṭha; and further, that Sagara, who was reared by the Bhṛigu Aurva, is restrained by Vasishṭha in his war of extermination against the Sakas and other barbarous tribes. His enemies, when hard pressed, had resorted to Vasishṭha as an intercessor." (See above, p. 337, and Wilson's Vishnu Purāṇa, vol. iii. p. 291.)

The story of Paraśurāma and the Kshattriyas is briefly mentioned in the second section of the Ādiparvan of the Mahābhārata (verses 272-280), where the events referred to are said to have occurred in the interval between the Tretā and Dvāpara ages (*Tretā-drāparayoh sandhau Rāmāḥ śastra-bhṛitāṁ varāḥ | asakṛit pārthivāṁ kshattrāṁ jaghānāmarsha-choditāḥ | sa sarvāṁ kshattram utsādyā sva-vīryyenānala-dyutih |*). The history is more fully told in other parts of the Mahābhārata. In the 178th-180th sections of the Ādiparvan there is a legend in which no mention is made of Paraśurāma, or the slaughter of the Kshattriyas; but in which we have the following particulars : Parāśara was son of Śaktri, and grandson of Vaśishṭha, as we have seen above, p. 417. When he heard of the way in which his father had met his death, he determined to execute a general slaughter of all creatures (v. 6800);²³⁹ but his grandfather restrained him by narrating the history of the

which he says, "The Vāyu has also another account of their (the Prajāpatis) origin, and states them to have sprung from the fires of a sacrifice offered by Brahmā; an allegorical mode of expressing their probable original—considering them to be in some degree real persons—from the Brahmanical ritual, of which they were the first institutors and observers."

²³⁹ Reference is made in the commencement of the Vishnu Purāṇa to the same circumstance (Wilson's Vishnu Purāṇa, vol. i. pp. 7 ff.) Parāśara is the narrator of the Vishnu Purāṇa (ibid. p. 11).

Bṛigus and Kshattriyas, as follows: There was a king named Kṛitavīryya, by whose liberality the Bṛigus, learned in the Vedas, who officiated as his priests, had been greatly enriched with corn and money (verse 6802. *Yājyo veda-vidāṁ loke Bṛigūñām pārthirarsha-bhāḥ | sa tān agra-bhujas tāta dhānyena cha dhanena cha | somānte tar-payāmāsa vipulena viśāmpate*!). After he had gone to heaven, his descendants were in want of money, and came to beg for a supply from the Bṛigus, of whose wealth they were aware. Some of the latter hid their money under ground, others bestowed it on Brāhmans, being afraid of the Kshattriyas, while others again gave these last what they wanted. It happened, however, that a Kshattriya, while digging the ground, discovered some money buried in the house of a Bṛigu. The Kshattriyas then assembled and saw this treasure, and, being incensed, slew in consequence all the Bṛigus, whom they regarded with contempt, down to the children in the womb (verse 6809. *Aramanya tataḥ krodhād Bṛigūñs tān śaranāgatān | nijaghnuḥ parameshvāsāḥ sarvāñś tān niśitaiḥ śaraiḥ | ā-garbhād avakrīntantaś cheruḥ sarvāṁ vasundharām*!). The widows, however, fled to the Himālāya mountains. One of them concealed her unborn child in her thigh. The Kshattriyas, hearing of its existence from a Brāhmaṇī informant, sought to kill it; but it issued forth from its mother's thigh with lustre, and blinded the persecutors. After wandering about bewildered among the mountains for a time, they humbly supplicated the mother of the child for the restoration of their sight; but she referred them to her wonderful infant Aurva into whom the whole Veda, with its six Vedāngas, had entered (verse 6823. *Shad-angaś chākhilo vedāḥ imāṁ garbhastham eva ha | viveśa Bṛigu-vāṁśasya bhuyaḥ priya-chikirshayā*!), as the person who (in retaliation of the slaughter of his relatives) had robbed them of their eyesight, and who alone could restore it. They accordingly had recourse to him, and their eyesight was restored. Aurva, however, meditated the destruction of all living creatures, in revenge for the slaughter of the Bṛigus, and entered on a course of austerities which alarmed both gods, asuras, and men; but his progenitors (Pitris) themselves appeared, and sought to turn him from his purpose by saying that they had no desire to be revenged on the Kshattriyas: 6834. *Nā-niśair hi tadā tāta Bṛigubhir bhāvitāmbhiḥ | badho hy upekṣhitāḥ sarvaiḥ kshattriyāñām vihiṁsatām | āyushā vīprakrishṇena yadā nah*

kheda āviśat | tadā 'smābhīr badhas tāta kshattriyair īpsitah svayam |
 nikhātaṁ yach cha vai vittam̄ kenachid Bhṛigu-veśmani | vairāyaiva tadā
 nyastam̄ kshattriyān kopayishnubhiḥ | kiṁ hi vittena naḥ kāryyaṁ eva-
 gepsūnām̄ dvijottama | 6841. Mā badhīḥ kshattriyām̄ tāta na-
 lokān sapta putraka | dūshayantaṁ tapas-tejaḥ krodham utpatitam̄ jahi |
 “6834. It was not from weakness that the devout Bhṛigus overlooked
 the massacre perpetrated by the murderous Kshatriyas. When we
 became distressed by old age, we ourselves desired to be slaughtered by
 them. The money which was buried by some one in a Bhṛigu’s house
 was placed there for the purpose of exciting hatred, by those who
 wished to provoke the Kshatriyas. For what had we, who were
 desiring heaven, to do with money?” They add that they hit upon
 this device because they did not wish to be guilty of suicide, and con-
 cluded by calling upon Aurva to restrain his wrath; and abstain from
 the sin he was meditating, verse 6841 : “Destroy not the Kshatriyas,
 o son, nor the seven worlds. Suppress thy kindled anger which nullifies
 the power of austere-fervour.” Aurva, however, replies that he cannot
 allow his threat to remain unexecuted. His anger, unless wreaked
 upon some other object, will, he says, consume himself. And he argues
 on grounds of justice, expediency, and duty, against the clemency which
 his progenitors recommend. He is, however, persuaded by the Pitrīs
 to throw the fire of his anger into the sea, where they say it will find
 exercise in assailing the watery element, and in this way his threat
 will be fulfilled. “It accordingly became the great Hayaśiras, known
 to those who are acquainted with the Veda, which vomits forth that
 fire and drinks up the waters” (*Mahā Hayaśiro bhūtvā yat tad vedā-
 vido viduḥ | tam agnim udgirad vaktrāt pībāty āpo mahodadhau*). It is
 worthy of remark that in a legend, one object of which, at least, would
 seem to be to hold up to abhorrence the impiety of the Kshatriyas in
 oppressing the Brāhmans, we should thus find a palliation of the con-
 duct of the oppressors, coming from the other world. But here the
 principle of the nothingness of mundane existence asserts itself; and
 the final superiority of the Brāhmans is vindicated, while their magnan-
 imity is exemplified.

The next version of this legend, which I shall quote, is that given
 in the 115th–117th sections of the Vanaparvan. Arjuna, son of Kṛiṭa-
 virya, and king of the Haihāyas, had, we are told, a thousand arms.
 m

He obtained from Dattātreya an aerial car of gold, the march of which was irresistible. He thus trod down gods, Yākshas, rishis, and oppressed all creatures (10137. *Avyāhata-gatiś chaiva rathas tasya mahāt-manaḥ | rathena tena tu tadā vara-dānena vīryyavān | mamaradda devān yakshāmāś cha rishiṁś chaiva samantataḥ | bhūtāmāś chaiva sa sarvān tu pīḍayāmāsa sarvataḥ*). The gods and rishis applied to Vishṇu, and he along with Indra, who had been insulted by Arjuna, devised the means of destroying the latter. At this time, the story goes on, there lived a king of Kānyakubja, called Gādhī, who had a daughter named Satyavatī. The marriage of this princess to the rishi Rīchikā, and the birth of Jamadagni, are then told in nearly the same way as above narrated in page 350. Jamadagni and Satyavatī had five sons, the youngest of whom was the redoubtable Paraśurāma. By his father's command he kills his mother (who, by the indulgence of impure desire, had fallen from her previous sanctity), after the four elder sons had refused this matricidal office, and had in consequence been deprived of reason by their father's curse. At Paraśurama's desire, however, his mother is restored by his father to life, and his brothers to reason; and he himself is absolved from all the guilt of murder; and obtains the boon of invincibility and long life from his father. His history now begins to be connected with that of king Arjuna (or Kārtavīrya). The latter had come to Jamadagni's hermitage, and had been respectfully received by his wife; but he had requited this honour by carrying away by force the calf of the sage's sacrificial cow, and breaking down his lofty trees. On being informed of this violence, Paraśurāma was filled with indignation, attacked Arjuna, cut off his thousand arms, and slew him. Arjuna's sons, in return, slew the peaceful sage Jamadagni, in the absence of Paraśurāma. The narrative thus proceeds :

10201. *Dadāha pitaraṁ chāgnau Rāmaḥ para-puranjayah | pratijajne
badhaṁ chāpi sarva-kshattrasya Bhārata | sa kruddho 'tibalaḥ sankhyo
śastram adāya vīryyavān | jaghnivān Kārtavīryyasya sutān eko 'ntak-
opamaḥ | Teshām chānugatāḥ ye cha kshattriyāḥ kshattriyarshabha |
tāmś cha sarvān avāmṛidhnād Rāmaḥ praharataṁ varāḥ | trissapta-
krīvoḥ prithivīm krītvā niḥkshattriyām prabhūḥ | samantapanchako
pancha chakāra raudhūrān hradān | 10205. Sa teshu tarpayāmāsa Bhṛi-
gūn Bhṛigu-kulodvahaḥ | sākshād dadarta charchikām sa oha Rāmaṁ*

*nyavedayat | tato yajnena mahatā Jāmadagnyāḥ pratāparāṇ | tarpayā-
mūsa devendram ritvīgbhyāḥ pradadau mahīm | vedīm chāpy adadād hai-
mīm Kaśyapāya mahātmāne | daśa-vyāmāyatām kṛitrā navotsedhām
viśāmpate | tām Kaśyapasyānumater brāhmaṇāḥ khaṇḍaśas tadā | vyā-
bhajaṁs te tadā rājan prakhyātāḥ Khāṇḍavāyanāḥ | sa pradāya mahīm
tasmai Kaśyapāya mahātmāne | asmin mahendre śailendre rasaty amita-
vikramāḥ | evāṁ vairam abhūt tasya kshattriyair loka-vāsibhiḥ | prithivī
chāpi vijita Rāmenāmita-tejasā |*

“Rāma, after performing, on his return, his father’s funeral obsequies, vowed to destroy the whole Kshattriya race; and executed his threat by killing first Arjuna’s sons and their followers. Twenty-one times did he sweep away all the Kshattriyas from the earth, and formed five lakes of blood in Samantapanchaka; (10,205) in which he satiated the manes of the Bhṛigus, and beheld face to face (his grandfather) Richīka, who addressed himself to Rāma. The latter gratified Indra by offering to him a grand sacrifice, and gave the earth to the officiating priests. He bestowed also a golden altar, ten fathoms long and nine high, on the mighty Kaśyapa. This, by his permission, the Brāhmans divided among themselves, deriving thence the name of Khāṇḍavāyanas. Having given away the earth to Kaśyapa, Paraśurāma himself dwells on the mountain Mahendra. Thus did enmity arise between him and the Kshattriyas, and thus was the earth conquered by Rāma of boundless might.”

The means by which the Kshattriya race was restored are described in the following passage from the Ādiparvan, verses 2459 ff.:

*Trissapta-kritrāḥ prithivīn kṛitrā niḥkshattriyām purā | Jāmad-
agnyas tapas tepe Mahendre parvatottame | 2460. Tadā niḥkshattriye
loke Bhārgavena kṛite sati | brāhmaṇān kshattriyāḥ rājan sutārthinyo
’bhichakramuḥ | tābhiḥ saha samāpetur brāhmaṇāḥ śamsita-vratāḥ | ritāv
ritau nara-vyāghra na kāmād nānṛitau tathā | tebhyaś cha lebhire garb-
hamū kshattriyās tāḥ sahasraśāḥ | tataḥ sushuvire rājan kshattriyān
viryyavattarān | kumāraṁś cha kumāris cha punaḥ kshattrābhivid-
dhyaye | evāṁ tad brāhmaṇaiḥ kshattram kshattriyāsu tapasvibhiḥ |
jūtaṁ vriddhām cha dharmena sudīrghenāyushānvitam | chatvāro ’pi itato
varṇāḥ babhūvur brāhmaṇottarāḥ |*

“2459. Having one and twenty times swept away all the Kshattriyas from the earth, the son of Jamadagni engaged in austerities on

Mahendra the most excellent of mountains. 2460. After he had cleared the world of Kshattriyas, their widows came to the Brāhmans, praying for offspring. The religious Brāhmans, free from any impulse of lust, cohabited at the proper seasons with these women, who in consequence became pregnant, and brought forth valiant Kshattriya boys and girls, to continue the Kshattriya stock. Thus was the Kshattriya race virtuously begotten by Brāhmans on Kshattriya women, and became multiplied and long-lived. Thence there arose four castes inferior to the Brāhmans."

This restoration of the Kshattriyas and their rule is said to have been followed by a state of great virtue, happiness, and prosperity. As one exemplification of the religious perfection which prevailed, it is said that "the Brāhmans did not sell their sacred lore, nor recite the Vedas in the vicinity of Sūdras" (verse 2474. *Na cha vikriṇate brahma brāhmaṇāḥ cha tadda nripa | na cha sūdra-samābhyaśe vedān uchchāra-yanty uta |*).

Another version of this legend is given in the Sāntiparvan, section 49. The birth of Jamadagni as the son of Richika and Satyavatī is related very much as in the Vishṇu Purāṇa (see above, p. 349 f.); but Richika tells his wife that the whole of her father's race shall become Brāhmanical (verse 1741. *Brahma-bhūtaṁ ki sakalam pitus tara kulam bhavet*); and of Viśvāmitra, the son of Gādhi, we are told that he "had the character of a Brāhman, and was possessed of all Brahmanical qualities" (1745. *Viśvāmitraṁ cha dāyādaṁ Gādhiḥ Kuśika-nandanaḥ | yam prāpa brahma-samitāṁ viśvair brahma-gunair yutam |*). Jamadagni was father of the dreadful Paraśurāma, "who became perfect in science, thoroughly versed in archery, and the slayer of the Kshattriyas, himself violent as flaming fire. By propitiating Mahādeva he obtained, among other weapons, the irresistible axe (*paraśu*)" (1747. *Sarva-vidyānta-gaṁ śreshṭhaṁ dhanur-vedasya pāragam | Rāmaṁ kshattriya-hantūram pradiptam iva pāvakam | toshayitvā Mahādevam parvate Gandhamādane | astrāṇi varayāmāsa paraśum chātitejasam |*), from which his name is derived. Arjuna, son of Kṛitavīrya, king of the Haihayas, is here also represented as having a thousand arms, but in opposition to the previous account he is described as a "*ज्ञा. वृ.*" and religious monarch, who at an *āvamedha* (horse-sacrifice) beset *८* the Brāhmans the earth with its seven continents and mountains, which he had conquered by his

arms and weapons" (verse 1751. *Chakravartti mahātejā viprāñām āśvamedhike | dadau sa prithivīm sarvām sapta-dvīpām sa-parvatām | eva-bāhv-astra-balena-jau jitvā parama-dharma-vit |*). He had, however, at the solicitation of Agni permitted that voracious deity to consume his towns, villages, forests, etc.; and as the hermitage of Āpava (Vaśishṭha) had been destroyed in the conflagration, Arjuna was doomed by the sage's curse to have his arms cut off by Paraśurāma. The story proceeds:

Verse 1769. *Arjunas tu mahātejā balī nityām śamātmekah | brahmaṇyās cha śaranyās dātā śuras cha Bhārata |* 1760. *Nāchintayat tada śāpaṁ tena dattam mahātmanā | tasya putrās tu balinah śāpenāsur pitur badhe | nimittād avaliptah vai nrīśaṁsūś chaiva sarvadā | Jamaradagni-dhvnuṁ te vatsam ānīnyur Bharatarshabha | ajnātaṁ Kārttaviryenā Hāihayendrena dhīmatā | tannimittam abhūd yuddham Jāmadagner mahātmanah | tato 'rjunasya bāhuṁs tān chhittvā Rāmo rushā 'nvitah |* 1766. *Tataḥ pitṛi-badhāmarshād Rāmah parama-manyumān | niḥkshattriyām pratiśrutya mahīm śastram agrihnata | tataḥ sa Bhṛiguśārdūlah Kārttaviryasya vīryavān | vikramya vijaghānāśu putrān pautrānīś cha sarvaśah | sa Hāihaya-sahasrāṇi hatvā parama-manyumān | chakāra Bhārgavo rājan mahīm śonita-kardamām | sa tathā "śu mahātejāḥ kṛitvā niḥkshattriyām mahīm |* 1770. *Kripayā parayā "vishṭo vanam eva jagāma ha | tato varsha-sahasreshu samatīteshu keshuchit | kshepam sam-prāptarāṁs tattra prakṛityā kopanah prabhuh | Viśvāmitrasya pautras tu Raibhya-puttro mahātapah | Parāvasur mahārāja kṣiptūha (kṣiptvā "ha?) jana-saṁsadi | "ye te Yāyāti-patane yajne santiḥ samāgatāḥ | Pratarddana-prabhṛitayo Rāma kiṁ kshattriyāḥ na te | mithyā-pratijno Rāma tvāṁ katthase jana-saṁsadi | bhayāt kshattriya-vīrānām parvataṁ samupāśritaḥ | sā punah kshattriya-śataih prithivī sarvatas trītā"* | 1775. *Parāvasor vachaḥ śrutvā śastrān jagrāha Bhārgavaḥ | tato ye Kshattriyāḥ rājan śataśas tena varjītāḥ | te vivṛiddhāḥ mahāvīryāḥ prithivī-patayo 'bhavan | sa punas tān jaghānāśu bālān api narādhīpa | garbhāt̄hais tu mahī vyāptā punar evābhavat tadā | jātam jātaṁ sa garbhām tu punar eva jaghāna ha | arakṣaṁs tu sutān kāñśchit tadā kshattriya-yoshitāḥ | triṣsapta-kritvāḥ prithivīm kṛitvā niḥkshattriyām prabhuh | dakṣhiṇām aśvamedhānte Kaśyapāyādadat tadā | sa kshattriyānām śeshārthaṁ kareṇoddiśya Kaśyapaḥ |* 1780. *Sruk-pragrahavatā rājāme tato vākyam athābravīt | "gachha tīraṁ samudrasya dakṣhiṇāya mahāmuno | na te mad-vishaye Rāma vastavyam iha karhīchit"* | tataḥ

*Sūrpārakaṁ deśam sāgaras tasya nirmame | sahasā Jāmadagnyasya eo
 'parānta-mahītalam | Kaśyapaḥ tām mahārāja pratigṛihya vasundharām |
 kṛitvā brāhmaṇa-sāṁsthām vai pravishṭaḥ sumahāvanam | tataḥ śudrāś
 cha vaiśyāś cha yathā - svaira - prachāriṇaḥ | avarttanta dvijāgryāñūm
 dāreshu Bharatarshabha | arājake jīva-loke durbalāḥ balavattaraiḥ |*

1785. *Pīḍyante na hi vitteshu prabhutvām kasyachit tadā | tataḥ kālena
 prithivī pīḍyamānā durātmabhiḥ | viparyayena tenāśu praviveśa rasāta-
 lam | arakṣyamāṇā vidhivat kshattriyair dharmā-rakshibhiḥ | tām
 drīshṭrā dravatāṁ tattva santrāsūt sa mahāmanāḥ | ūrunā dhārayāmāsa
 Kaśyapaḥ pīḍhivīṁ tataḥ | dhṛitā tenorūṇa yena tenorvīti mahī smṛitā |
 rakṣaṇārthaṁ samuddiśya yayāche pīḍhivī tadā | prasādyā Kaśyapaṁ
 devī varayāmāsa bhūmipam | pīḍhivī uvācha | 1790. “ Santi brahman
 mayā guptāḥ strīshu kshattriya-pungarāḥ | Haīhayānām kule jātās te
 saṁrakṣhantu mām mune | asti Paurava-dāyādo Vidūratha-sutāḥ prabho |
 rikṣhaiḥ saṁvardhito vipra rikṣharaty atha parrate | tathā 'nukampa-
 mānena yajvanā 'py amitaujasā | Parāśareṇa dāyādaḥ Saudāsasyā-
 bhirakṣhitaḥ ! sarva-karmāṇi kurute śūdra-vat tasya sa dvijaḥ | Sarva-
 karmely abhikkhyātāḥ sa mām rakshatu pārthivah | 1799. Ete
 kshattriya-dāyādās tattva tattva pariśritāḥ | dyokāra-hema-kārādi-jātiṁ
 nityām samāśritāḥ | 1800. Yadi mām abhirakṣhanti tadā sthāsyāmi
 niśchalā | eteshām pitaraś chaiva tathāira cha pitāmahāḥ | mad-arthaṁ
 nihatāḥ yuddhe Rāmenāklishṭa-karmanāḥ | teshām apachiliś chaiva mayā
 kāryyā mahāmune | na hy ahaṁ kāmaye nityam atikrāntena rakṣaṇām |
 varttāmānena varttēyām tat kṣhipraṁ saṁvidhīyatām” | tataḥ pīḍhivī
 nirdiṣṭāṁs tān samāṇīya Kaśyapaḥ | abhyashinchad mahipālūn kshat-
 triyān vīrya-sammatān |*

“ Being of a meek, pious, kind, and charitable turn of mind, the valiant Arjuna thought nothing of the curse; but his sons, who were of an arrogant and barbarous disposition, became the cause of its resulting in his death. Without their father's knowledge they took away Jamadagni's calf; and in consequence Paraśurāma attacked Arjuna and cut off his arms.” His sons retaliated by killing Jamadagni. 1766. Paraśurāma incensed at the slaughter of his father, having vowed in consequence to sweep away all Kshatriyas from the earth, seized his weapons; and slaying all the sons and grandsons of Arjuna, with thousands of the Haihayas, he turned the earth into a mass of ensanguined mud. 1770. Having thus cleared the earth of

Kshattriyas, he became penetrated by deep compassion and retired to the forest. After some thousands of years had elapsed, the hero, naturally irascible, was taunted by Parāvasu, the son of Raibhya and grandson of Viśvāmitra, in a public assembly in these words : ‘Are not these virtuous men, Pratardana and the others, who are assembled at the sacrifice in the city of Yayāti,—are they not Kshattriyas? Thou hast failed to execute thy threat, and vainly boastest in the assembly. Thou hast withdrawn to the mountain from fear of those valiant Kshattriyas, while the earth has again become overrun by hundreds of their race.’ Hearing these words, Rāma seized his weapons. The hundreds of Kshattriyas who had before been spared had now grown powerful kings. These, however, Paraśurāma now slew with their children, and all the numerous infants then unborn as they came into the world. Some, however, were preserved by their mothers. Having twenty-one times cleared the earth of Kshattriyas, Rāma gave her as a sacrificial fee to Kaśyapa at the conclusion of an aśvamedha. 1780. Making a signal with his hand, in which he held the sacrificial ladle, Kuśyapa, in order that the remaining Kshattriyas should be spared, said to Paraśurāma, ‘Go, great muni, to the shore of the southern ocean. Thou must not dwell in my territory.’ Sāgara (the ocean) created for him a country called Sūrpāraka on the remotest verge of the earth. Having received dominion over the earth, Kaśyapa made it an abode of Brāhmans, and himself withdrew to the forest. Sūdras and Vaiśyas then began to act lawlessly towards the wives of the Brāhmans ; and, in consequence of there being no government, the weak (1785) were oppressed by the strong, and no one was master of any property. The Earth, being distressed by the wicked, in consequence of that disorder, and unprotected according to rule by the Kshattriyas, the guardians of justice, descended to the lower regions. Perceiving her moving from place to place in terror, Kaśyapa upheld her with his thigh (*ūru*). From this circumstance she derives her name of *ūrvī*.²⁶⁰ The goddess Earth then propitiated Kaśyapa, and supplicated him for protection, and for a king. ‘I have,’ she said, ‘preserved among females many Kshattriyas who have been born in the race of the Haihayas; let them be my protectors. There is the heir of the Pauravas, the son of Vidūratha, who has been brought up by bears

²⁶⁰ *Urvī* really means “the broad,” signifying the same as *prithivī*.

on the mountain Rikshavat: let him protect me. So, too, the heir of Saudāsa has been preserved by the tender-hearted and glorious priest, Parāśara, who has performed, though a Brāhmaṇa, all menial offices (*sarvakarmāṇi*) for him, like a Sūdra;— whence the prince's name Sarvakarman." After enumerating other kings who had been rescued, the Earth proceeds: "All these Kshattriyas' descendants have been preserved in different places, abiding continually among the classes of dyokāras and goldsmiths. If they protect me, I shall continue unshaken. Their fathers and grandfathers were slain on my account by Rāma, energetic in action. It is incumbent on me to avenge their cause. For I do not desire to be always protected by an extraordinary person [such as Kaśyapa]; but I will be content with an ordinary ruler. Let this be speedily fulfilled.' Kaśyapa then sent for these Kshattriyas who had been pointed out by the Earth, and installed them in the kingly office."

This reference to the bestowal of the Earth upon Kaśyapa is founded on an older story which occurs both in the Aitareya and the Satapatha Brāhmaṇas. The passage in the first-named work is as follows, viii. 21. *Etena ha vai Aindrena mahābhishhekena Kaśyapo Viśvakarmāṇam Bhauvanaṁ abhishishecha | tasmād u Viśvākarmā Bhauvanaḥ samantaṁ sarvataḥ prīthivīṁ jayan pariyāya aśrena cha medhyena īje | bhūmir ha jagāv ity udāharanti "na mā martyaḥ kaśchana dātum arhati Viśvakarman Bhauvana mām didāsitha | nimankshye 'ham salilasya madhye moghas te esha Kaśyapāyāsa sangaraḥ" iti |* "With this great inauguration like that of Indra did Kaśyapa consecrate Viśvakarman Bhauvana, who in consequence went round the Earth in all directions, conquering it; and offered an aśvamedha sacrifice. They relate that the Earth then recited this verse:

"Me may no mortal give away ; but thou, oh king, dost so essay ;
Deep will I plunge beneath the main ; thy pledge to Kaśyapa is vain."

The Satapatha Brāhmaṇa, xiii. 7, 1. 15, says: *Taṁ ha Kaśyapo yā-jayāñchakara | tad api bhūmih slokaṁ jagau "na mā martyaḥ kaśchana dātum arhati Viśvakarman Bhauvana mandaḥ āsitha | upamankshyati syā salilasya madhye mṛishaisha te sangaraḥ Kaśyapāya" iti |* "Kaśyapa officiated for him at this sacrifice. Wherefore also the Earth recited this verse: 'No mortal may give me away. Viśvakarman, son of

Bhauvana, thou wast foolish (in offering to do so). She will sink into the midst of the waters. Thy promise to Kaśyapa is vain." " ²⁴¹

The story is also related in the Bhāgavata Purāṇa in a similar way. I note the chief points and variations. When Gādhi's daughter was demanded in marriage by the rishi Richika, the king considered that the suitor was not a fit husband for a daughter of his noble race; and said, "Give me a thousand horses white as the moon, each with one black ear, as a marriage gift for the maiden; for we are Kuśikas" (ix. 15, 5. *Varam visadriśam matvā Gādhir Bhārgavam abravīt | 6. Ekataḥ śyāma-karṇā-nām hayānām chandra-varchasām | sahasraṁ dīyatām śulkaṁ kanyāyāḥ Kuśikāḥ vayam |*). The youngest offspring of their union was, we are told, "Paraśurāma, who is declared to have been a portion of Vāsudeva (Vishṇu in the form of Krishna),²⁴² and who exterminated the Haihaya race. Thrice seven times he swept away from this earth all the Kshattriyas, that depraved and impious race, full of passion and darkness, with which she was burthened. He destroyed them, though the offence which they had committed was but insignificant (v. 14. *Yam āhur Vāsudevāñśān Haihayānām kulāntakam | trissaptakṛitro yaḥ imām chakra niḥkshattriyām malīm | dushtaṁ kshattram bhuvo bhāram abrahmanyam anīnaśat | rajas-tamo-vṛitam ahan phalguny api kṛite 'mhasi |*). King Arjuna, who had been endowed with miraculous powers, took Rāvana prisoner, then released him, and afterwards carried away by force Jamadagni's cow and calf. Paraśurāma, in revenge, after a terrible battle, and the defeat of the king's army, cut off Arjuna's arms and head, and recovered the cow and calf. When his father was informed of the king's death, he said to Paraśurāma: "Rāma, Rāma, thou hast committed sin, in that thou hast causelessly slain the lord of men, who is composed of all the deities."²⁴³ It is by longsuffering that we, the Brāhmans, have acquired respect; the same means whereby the deity, the instructor of all worlds, attained the highest rank of godhead. By

²⁴¹ It will be observed that there are some varieties of reading in the verse, as given in the two Brāhmaṇas. *Manda āśitha* in the S. P. Br. looks like a corruption of the *mām didūśitha* of the Aitareya. The story of Arjuna, Parasurāma, and the Kshattriyas is briefly told again in the Āśvamedhika-parvan, but without any new circumstances of particular interest.

²⁴² See above, p. 350, and note 146. None of the passages I have quoted from the Mahābhārata allude to Parasurāma being an incarnation of Vishṇu.

²⁴³ Compare the passages quoted above in p. 300 from the Vishṇu Purāṇa, and from Manu.

patience the fortune of Brahmā shines like the splendour of the Sun. Hari, the lord, is speedily pleased with those who are patient. The murder of a king who has been formally inaugurated is worse than that of a Brāhmaṇa. Go and expiate thy sin by visiting holy places, with thy mind intent upon Achyuta (Vishṇu)" (ix. 15, 38. *Rāma Rāma mahābhāga bhavān pāpam akārashit²⁴ | abadhīd nara-devaṁ yat sarva-devamayaṁ vṛithā | vayaṁ hi brāhmaṇāś tāta kshamayā 'rhanatāṁ gataḥ | yayā loka-gurur devaḥ pārameshthyam ayāt padam | kshamayā rochate lakshmīr Brāhmaṇī saurī yathā prabhā | kshamīnām āśu bhagavāṁs tush-yale Harir iṣvaraḥ | rājno mūrdhābhishiktasya budho brahma-badhad guruh | tirtha-saṁsevayā chāñho jahy angāchyuta-chetanaḥ |*). On his return from this pilgrimage Rāma was desired by his father to kill his mother (on grounds similar to those stated in the account quoted above, p. 450, from the Mahābhārata), as well as his brothers, and executed the order; but at his intercession they were all restored to life. During his absence in the forest, his father Jamadagni was slain, and his head cut off, notwithstanding the entreaties of his wife, by the sons of Arjuna, in revenge for the loss of their own father. Paraśurāma, hearing his mother's outcries, hastened back to the hermitage, and laying hold of his axe, proceeded to avenge this outrage: ix. 16, 17. *Gatvā Māhiṣmatīn Rāmo brahma-ghna-vihata-śriyam | teshāṁ sa śir-shabhiḥ rājan madhye chakre mahāgirim |* 18. *Tad-raktena nadīnī ghorāṁ abrahmanyā-bhayāvahāṁ | hetum kṛitvā pitri-badhaṁ kshattrē mangala-kārini | 20. Pituḥ kāyena sandhāya śiraḥ adāya barhishi | sarva-devamayaṁ devam ātmānam ayajad makhaiḥ |* 21. *Dadau prāchiṁ diśāṁ hotre brahmaṇe dakshinānī diśam | adhvaryave pratīchiṁ vai udgātre uttarānī diśam |* 22. *Anyebhyo 'vāntara-diśaḥ Kaśyapāya cha madhya-taḥ | āryāvarttam upadraṣṭre sadasyebhyas tataḥ param |* 23. *Tataś chāvabhrītha-snāna-vidhūtāśeṣha-kilvishaḥ | Sarasvatyām brahma-nadyānī reje vyabhraḥ ivāṁśumān | 26. Āste 'dyāpi Mahendrādrau nyasta-dandāḥ prasāntadhiḥ | upagiyamāna-charitaḥ siddha-gandharva-chāra-naiḥ |* 27. *Evam Bhṛigushu viśvātmā bhagavān Harir iṣvaraḥ | avatirya param bhāraṁ bhuvo 'han bahuśo nripān |* "17. He went to the city of Māhiṣmatī, which had been robbed of its glory by those Brāhmaṇ-slayers, and raised in the midst of it a great mountain composed of their heads. With their blood he formed a dreadful river, which struck

²⁴ So in the Bombay edition. Burnouf's text has the usual form *akurshit*.

fear into the impious ; justifying his action against the oppressive Kshattriyas by their murder of his father. 20. He then united his father's head to his body, laying it on the sacred grass ; and offered a sacrifice to the divine Spirit, who is formed of all the deities. On this occasion he gave the eastern region of the earth to the hotri priest, the south to the brahman, the west to the adhvaryu, and the north to the udgatri. To others he gave the intermediate regions (south-east, south-west, etc.), to Kaśyapa the central ; on the upadraṣṭri he bestowed Āryāvartta, and on the Sadasyas what was beyond. Having then cleansed all his impurity by the avabhrītha ablution in the Sarasvatī, the river of Brahmā, he shone like the sun unobscured by clouds. . . . 26. Having laid aside his weapons, he sits to this day in tranquillity of mind on the mountain Mahendra, whilst his exploits are celebrated by the Siddhas, Gandharvas, and Chāranas. Thus did the universal Spirit, the divine lord, Hari, become incarnate in the Bhṛigus, and destroy numerous kings who were a burden to the earth." It is singular that sin requiring expiation should be, as it is in this narrative, imputed to Paraśurāma, while he is at the same time declared to have been a portion of Vishnu, the supreme Spirit.

The story of Paraśurāma is also told in the Dronaparvan of the Mahābhārata, verses 2427 ff., after those of many other kings and warriors, to illustrate the truth that death must sooner or later overtake even the most pious and distinguished personages. The earlier incidents are briefly narrated ; but some of the details, as the slaughter of the Kshattriyas, are dwelt on at greater length than in the other accounts. Some of the victims of the hero's vengeance are described as "haters of Brāhmans" (*brahma-dvisham*, verse 2431). The Kshattriyas who were slain are described as of various provinces, viz. Kāśmīras, Daradas, Kuntis, Kshudrakas, Mālavas, Angas, Vangas, Kalingas, Videhas, Tāmrāliptakas, Rakshavāhas, Vithotras, Trigaratas, Mārttikāvatas, Sivis, and other Rājanyas (*Sivin anyāṁś cha rājanyān*, verse 2437). At verse 2443 the narrative proceeds : *Nirdasyum prithivīṁ kṛtvā śishteshṭa-jana-sankulām | Kaśyapāya dadau Rāmo haya-medhe mahāmakhe | trisapta-vārān prithivīṁ kṛtvā niḥkshattriyām prabhuḥ | iṣhvā kratu-śatair viro brāhmaṇebhyo hy amanyata | sapta-dvīpām vasumatim Mārīcho 'grihnata dvijāḥ | Rāmam provācha "nirgachha vasudhūto mamājnayā | sa Kaśyapasya*

*vachanāt protsārya saritūmpatim | ishupālair yudhāñ śreshṭhaḥ kurvan
brāhmaṇa-sāsanam | adhyārasad giri- śreshṭham Mahendram parvato-
ttamam |* “2443. Having freed the earth from Dasyus (or robbers), and filled her with respectable and desirable inhabitants, he gave her to Kaśyapa at an aśvamedha. Having twenty-one times cleared the earth of Kshattriyas, and offered hundreds of sacrifices, he destined the earth for the Brāhmans. The Brāhman, the son of Marīchi (*i.e.* Kaśyapa), received the earth, and then said to Rāma, ‘Depart out of her by my command.’ Having repelled the ocean by his arrows, and established the rule of the Brāhmans, Rāma dwelt on the mountain Mahendra.”

The Anuśāsanaparvan of the same poem has another “ancient story” about Paraśurāma, which, like the preceding passage from the Bhāgavata Purāṇa, advertises to the pollution incurred by that warrior from his numerous deeds of blood. It begins as follows: verse 3960. *Jāmadagnyena Rāmena tīvra-roshānivita vai | trissapta-krīvaḥ prīhiतi krītū
niḥkshattriyā purā | tato jitvā mahīm kṛtsnām Rāmo rājiva-lochanāḥ |* 3965. *ājahāra kratuṁ vīro brahma-kshattrēṇa pūjītam | vāji-medham mahārāja
sarva-kāma-samanvitam | pāvanaṁ sarva-bhūtānām tejo-dyuti-vivarḍdhā-
nam | vīpāpmā sa cha tejasvī tena kratu-phalena cha | naivātmano 'tha
laghutām Jāmadagnyo 'dhyagachchata | sa tu kratu-vareṇeshetvā mahātmā
dakshināratā |* 3965. *Paprachhāgama - sampannān rishīn devānś cha
Bhārgavaḥ |* “*pāvanaṁ yat param nrīnām ugre karmanī varttatām |* tad uchyatām mahābhāgāḥ” iti jāta-ghriṇo 'bravit | ity uktāḥ veda-*sāstra-jnās tam uchus te maharshayah |* “Rāma vīprāḥ satkriyantām
veda-prāmāṇya-darśanāt | bhūyaścha vīprarshi-ganāḥ prashṭavyāḥ pāra-
nam prati | te yad brūyur mahāprājnās tach chaiva samudāchara | “3960. Rāma, son of Jamadagni, having thrice seven times cleared the world of Kshattriyas, and conquered the whole earth, performed the horse-sacrifice, venerated by Brāhmans and Kshattriyas, which confers all objects of desire, which cleanses all creatures, and augments power and lustre; and became thereby sinless and glorious. He did not, however, feel relieved in his mind, but after offering the most excellent of sacrifices, at which presents were bestowed, he (3965) enquired of the rishis skilled in the scriptures, and of the gods, what was that which most perfectly cleansed those men who had committed deeds of violence; for he felt compunction for what he had done. The rishis skilled in the Vedas and Sāstras replied, ‘Let the Brāhmans be

the objects of your liberality, as the authority of the Vedas requires; let the Brāhmaṇ-rishis be further consulted in regard to the means of lustration; and do whatever these wise men may enjoin.''" Paraśurāma accordingly consulted Vaśishṭha, Agastya, and Kaśyapa. They replied that a sinner was cleansed by bestowing cows, land, and other property, and especially gold, the purifying power of which was very great. "Those who bestow it, bestow the gods," a proposition which is thus compendiously proved: "for Agni comprehends all the gods; and gold is of the essence of Agni" (verse 3987. *Devatās te prayachhanti ye suvarṇam dadaty atha | Agnir hi devatāḥ sarvāḥ suvarṇam cha tadātmakam*). In regard to the origin of this precious metal, Vasishṭha tells a very long story, which he had heard Prajāpati relate, how it was born by the goddess Gangā to Agni, by whom she had been impregnated, and was thus the son of that god. "Thus was gold born the offspring of Jātavedas (Agni). That which is produced in Jambūnada is the best, and a fit ornament even for the gods. It is called the chief of gems and of ornaments, the most pure of all pure things, the most auspicious of all auspicious objects; and one with the divine Agni, the lord Prajāpati" (verse 4099. *Evaṁ suvarṇam utpannam apalyām Jātavedasah | tatra Jāmbūnadam śreshṭham devānām api bhūshanam |* 4001. *Ratnānām uttamān ratnam bhūshanānām tathottamām | pavitraṁ cha pavitrānām mangalānām cha mangalam | yat surarṇām sa bhagavān Agnir iśāḥ prajāpatih |*). It must be highly consolatory for those who are disposed to be liberal to the Brāhmaṇ, to be assured that the gold which they bestow has such a high mystical, as well as current, exchangeable value. "Paraśurāma," the story concludes, "after being thus addressed by Vaśishṭha, gave gold to the Brāhmans, and was freed from sin" (verse 4183. *Ity uktah sa Vaśishṭhenā Jāmadagnyah pratāpavān | dadau suvarṇam viprebhyo vyamuṣhyata cha kilvishāt*).

It is interesting to remark how the different distinctive principles of Indian religion and sentiment severally assert themselves in turn, and thus, occasionally, come into conflict with each other, as in the story of Paraśurāma. The primary object of this legend is no doubt to illustrate the vengeance which inevitably overtakes all those who violate the sacredness of the Brāhmaṇical prerogative, and the meritorious character of those who act as its defenders. No sooner, however, is this end ac-

complished, and the impious foes of the priesthood swept away again and again from the face of the earth, than a revulsion of feeling takes place, and the higher principles of the sacredness of life, and of the blessedness of mercy, come forward to claim recognition; and a deep sense of the pollution of bloodshed calls aloud for atonement. In the Bhāgavata, as we have seen, Jamadagni imputes it as a crime to the avenger of the Brāhmans that he had slain a king; and even goes the length of declaring that in doing so he had incurred greater guilt than if he had murdered a Brāhman.

In the same book of the Mahābhārata, verses 7163 ff., an extravagant description is given of the prerogatives and powers of the Brāhmans; and Arjuna is again brought forward, in verses 7187 ff., as at first scouting their pretensions, but as ultimately conceding their unapproachable superiority: “The magnificent and mighty Kārttavīrya (Arjuna), possessing a thousand arms, was lord of this whole world, living in Māhishmatī. This Haihaya of unquestioned valour ruled over the whole sea-girt earth, with its oceans and continents” (verse 7187. *Sahasra-bhuja-bhṛit śrīmān Kārttavīryo 'bhavat prabhuḥ | asya lokasya sarvasya Māhishmatyām mahābalah | sa tu ratnā-karavatīm sadvipām sāgarāmbarām | śāśva prithivīm sarvām Haihayah satya-vikramah*). He obtained boons from the muni Dattātreya, a thousand arms whenever he should go into battle, power to make the conquest of the whole earth, a disposition to rule it with justice, and the promise of instruction from the virtuous in the event of his going astray. 7196. *Tataḥ sa ratham āsthāya jvalanārka-samadyutim | abravīd vīryyasammohāt “ko nv asti sadriśo mama | dhairyye vīryye yaśah-śauryye vikramenaujasā 'pi vā” | tad-rākyāntे 'ntarīkṣhe vai vāg uvāchāśarīrīṇī | “na tvam mūḍha vijānīshe brāhmaṇām kshattriyād varam | sahitō brāhmaṇeneha kshattriyah śūsti rai prajāḥ” | Arjuna uvācha | kuryām bhūtāni tushṭo 'ham kruddho nāśām tathā naye | karmaṇā manasā vāchā na matto 'sti varo dvīyah | 7200. Pūrvo brahmottaro vādo dvīlyah kshattriyottarāḥ | tvayoktau hetuyuktātau viśeshas tatra dṛīsyate | brāhmaṇāḥ saṁśritāḥ kshattrām na kshattram brāhmaṇāśritam | śrītāḥ brahmopadhāḥ viprāḥ khādanti kshattriyān bhuvi | kshattriyeshu dṛīto dharmāḥ prajānām paripālanam | kshattrād vṛittir brāhmaṇānām taiḥ katham brāhmaṇo varah | sarva-bhūgradhānāṁ tān bhaiksha-vṛittin ahaṁ sadā | ātma-sambhāvitān viprān*

ethāpayāmy ātmano vaśe | kathitaṁ hy anayā satyam gāyatrīyā kanyayā
 divi | vijeshyāmy avaśān sarvān brāhmaṇāṁś charma-rāsasah | 7205. Na
 cha mām chāvayed rāshṭrāt trishu lokeśu kaśchana | devo vā mānusho
 vā 'pi tasmāj jyeshṭho dvijād aham | atha brahmottaram lokām karishye
 kshattriyottaram | na hi me sañyuge kaśchit soḍhum utsahate balam |
 Arjunasya vachah śrutvā vitrastā 'bhūd niśācharī | athainam antariksha-
 sthas tato Vāyur abhāshata | "tyajainaṁ kalusham bhāvam brāhmaṇe-
 bhyo namaskuru | eteshām kurvataḥ pāpaṁ rāshṭra-kshobho bhavishyati |
 atha vā tvām mahipāla śamayishyanti vai dvijāḥ | nirasishyanti te rāsh-
 trād hatotsāham mahābalāḥ" | 7210. Taṁ rājā "kas tram" ity āha
 tatas tam prāha Mārutāḥ | "Vāyur vai dera-dūto 'smi hitām tvām pra-
 bravīmy aham" | Arjunaḥ uvācha | "aho trayā 'dyā vipreshu bhakti-
 rāgāḥ pradarśitaḥ | yādriśam prithiri-bhūtaṁ tādriśam brūhi vai
 dvijam | vāyor vā sadriśam kinchid brūhi tram bvāhmanottamam | apāṁ
 vai sadriśo cañnih sūryyasya nabhaso 'pi vā | "Then ascending his
 chariot glorious as the resplendent sun, he exclaimed in the intoxication
 of his prowess, 'Who is like me in fortitude, courage, fame, heroism,
 energy, and vigour?' At the end of this speech a bodiless voice in the
 sky addressed him: 'Thou knowest not, o fool, that a Brāhmaṇ that
 the Kshattriya rules his subjects.' Arjuna answers: 'If I am pleased,
 I can create, or, if displeased, annihilate, living beings; and no Brāhmaṇ
 is superior to me in act, thought, or word. The first proposition
 is that the Brāhmans are superior; the second that the Kshattriyas are
 superior; both of these thou hast stated with their grounds, but there
 is a difference between them (in point of force). The Brāhmans are
 dependant on the Kshattriyas, and not the Kshattriyas on the
 Brāhmans; and the Kshattriyas are eaten up by the Brāhmans,
 who wait upon them, and only make the Vedas a pretence. Justice,
 the protection of the people, has its seat in the Kshattriyas. From
 them the Brāhmans derive their livelihood: how then can the
 latter be superior? I always keep in subjection to myself those
 Brāhmans, the chief of all beings, who subsist on alms, and who
 have a high opinion of themselves. For truth was spoken by
 that female the Gāyatrī in the sky. I shall subdue all those
 unruly Brāhmans clad in hides. 7200. No one in the three worlds,
 god or man, can hurl me from my royal authority; wherefore I am

superior to any Brāhmaṇa. Now shall I turn the world in which Brāhmaṇas have the upper hand into a place where Kshattriyas shall have the upper hand : for no one dares to encounter my force in battle.' Hearing this speech of Arjuna, the female roving in the night became alarmed. Then Vāyu, hovering in the air, said to Arjuna : 'Abandon this sinful disposition, and do obeisance to the Brāhmaṇas. If thou shalt do them wrong, thy kingdom shall be convulsed. They will subdue thee : those powerful men will humble thee, and expel thee from thy country.' The king asks him, 'Who art thou?' Vāyu replies, 'I am Vāyu, the messenger of the gods, and tell thee what is for thy benefit.' Arjuna rejoins, 'Oh, thou displayest to-day a great warmth of devotion to the Brāhmaṇas. But say that a Brāhmaṇan is like (any other) earth-born creature. Or say that this most excellent Brāhmaṇan is something like the wind. But fire is like the waters, or the sun, or the sky.'²⁴⁵ Vāyu, however, goes on to answer this spirited banter by adducing various instances in which the superiority or terrible power of the Brāhmaṇas had been manifested : 7124. *Tyaktvā mahitram bhūmis tu sparddhayā'nga-nripasya ha | nāśam jagāma tūm vipro ryashṭambhayata Kāsyapah |* "The earth, being offended with king Āṅga, had abandoned her form and become destroyed : but the Brāhmaṇan Kaśyapa supported her." This is afterwards told more at length, verse 7232 : *Imām bhūmiñ dvijātibhyo ditsur vai dakshinām purā | Āngō nāma nripo rājañs tatas chintām mahī yayau | "dhārañīm sarva-bhūtānām ayam prāpya varo nripaḥ | katham ichhati mām dātuñ dvijebhyo Brahmanah sutām | sā 'hañ tyaktvā gamishyāmi bhūmitram Brahmanah padam | ayañ sa-rāshṭro nripatir mā bhūd"* iti tato 'gamat | 7235. *Tatas tūm Kaśyapo drishṭvā vrajanām prithivīñ tadā | praviveśa mahīñ sadyo muktrā "tmānañ samāhitāḥ | riddhū sū sarato jajne triñauśadhi-samanvitā |* 7238. *Athāgamyā mahārāja na-maskṛitya cha Kaśyapam | prithivī Kaśyapī jajne sutā tasya mahātmānah | esha rājann idriśo vai brāhmaṇah Kaśyapo'bharat | anyam prabṛūhi vā tvañ cha Kaśyapāt kshattriyāñ varam |* "King Āṅga wished to bestow this earth on the Brāhmaṇas as a sacrificial fee. The earth then reflected, 'How does this excellent king, after having obtained me, the daughter of Brahmā, and the supporter of all creatures, desire to give

²⁴⁵ The drift of the last line is not very clear, unless it be a reply by anticipation to line 225, which will be found a little further on.

me to the Brāhmans? I shall abandon my earthly form, and depart to the world of Brahmā. Let this king be without any realm.' Accordingly she departed. 7235. Beholding her going away, Kaśyapa, sunk in contemplation, entered into her, leaving his own body. She then became replenished, and covered with grass and plants, etc., etc. . . . 7238. She afterwards came and did obeisance to Kaśyapa, and became his daughter. Such was the Brāhmaṇ Kaśyapa: Declare, on your part, any Kshattriya who has been superior to him."

Further illustrations of the tremendous power of the Brāhmans are the following :

7215. *Apibat tejasā hy āpaḥ svayam evāngirāḥ purā | sa tāḥ pīban
kṣīram iva nātṛipyata mahāmanāḥ | apūrayad mahaughena mahīm sar-
vāṁ cha pārthiva | tasminn ahaṁ cha kruddhe vai jagat tyaktvā tato
gataḥ | vyatishṭham agnihotre cha chiram Angiraso bhayāt | atha śaptaś
cha bhagavān Gautamena Purandaraḥ | Ahalyām kāmayāno vai dhar-
mārthaṁ cha na hiṁsitāḥ | yathā samudro nrīpate pūrṇo mrishṭaś cha
vāriṇāḥ | brāhmaṇair abhiśaptaḥ san babhūva lavaṇodakaḥ | 7223.
Dandakānām mahad rājyam brāhmaṇena vināśitam | Tālajangham mahā-
kshattram Aurvenaikena nāśitam | 7225. Agniṁ tvāṁ yajase nit-
yaṁ kasmād brāhmaṇam Arjuna | sa hi sarvasya lokasya havya-vāt kiṁ
na vetsi tam | 7241. Bhadrā Somasya duhitā rūpena paramā
matā | yasyās tulyam patiṁ Somaḥ Utathyām samapaśyata | sā cha
tīvraṁ tapaś tepe mahābhūgā yaśasvinī | Utathyārthe tu chārvāṅgi
param niyamam āsthitaḥ | tataḥ āhūya sotathyaṁ dadāv Atrir yaśas-
vinīm | bhāryyyārthe sa tu jagrāha vidhivad bhūri-dakṣiṇāḥ | tām to
akāmayata śrīmān Varuṇāḥ pūrvam eva ha | sa chāgamya vanaprasthaṁ
Yamunāyām jahāra tām | 7245. Jaleśvaras tu hṛitvā tām anayat sva-
puram prati | paramādbhuta-sankāśam shat-sahasra-śataṁ hradam | na
hi ramyatarām kinchit tasmād anyat purottamam | prāsādair apsarobhiś
cha divyaiḥ kāmais cha śobhitam | tatra devas tayā sārddhaṁ reme rājan
jaleśvaraḥ | athākhyātam Utathyāya tataḥ patny-avamardanam | tach
ohhrutvā Nāradāt sarvam Utathyo Nāradām tadā | provācha "gachha
brūhi tvāṁ Varuṇam parushāṁ vachaḥ | madvākyād munoha me bhāry-
yām kasmāt tām hṛitavān asi | lokapālo 'si lokānām na lokasya vilum-
pakaḥ | Somena dattā me bhāryyā tvayā chāpahṛitā 'dyā vai" |
7251. Iti śrutiṁ vachas tasya tatas tām Varuno 'bravīt | "mamaisha
supriya bhīrur nainām utsrashṭum utsahe" | ity ukto Varuṇonātha Nā-*

*radaḥ prāpya vai munim | Utathyam abravīd vākyam nātihiṣṭha-manāḥ
iva | “gale grihitvā kṣipto ‘smi Varunena mahāmune | na prayachhati
te bhāryyām yat te kāryyaṁ kurushva tat” | Nāradasya rachaḥ śrutvā
kruddhaḥ prājalad Āngirāḥ | 7255. Apibat tejasā vāri vishtabhyā sa
mahālapāḥ | pīyamāne tu sarrasmiṁs toyē vai salileśvaraḥ | suhṛidbhīḥ
kshobhyamāṇo vai nairāmunchata tām tadā | tataḥ kruddho ‘bravīd bhū-
nim Utathyo brāhmaṇottamāḥ | darśayasva chhalam bhadre shaṭ-sahasra-
śataṁ hradam | tatas tad iṛinām jātām samudraś chārasarpitāḥ | tasmād
deśān nadīn chaира provāchāsau dvijottamāḥ | “adriṣyā gachha bhīru
traṁ Sarasvatī marūn prati | apuṇyaḥ esha bharatu deśas tyaktas twayā
śubhe” | tasmin saṁśōshite deśe Bhadrām ādāya vāripaḥ | 7260. Adadāt
śaranaṁ gatvā bhāryyām Āngirasāya vai | pratigṛihya tu tām bhāryyām
Utathyāḥ sumanā ‘bharat | mumocha cha jagad duḥkhād Varuṇām chaира
Haihaya | 7262. Mamaishā tapasā prāptā krośatas te jalādhipa |
7263. . . . esha rājann iḍriśo vai Utathyo brāhmaṇottamāḥ | bravīmy
aham brūhi vā tvarūm Utathyāt kshattriyam varam |*

“Āngiras, too, himself formerly drank up the waters by his own might. Drinking them up like milk he was not satisfied: and filled the whole earth with a great flood. When he was thus wroth, I abandoned the world and departed, and dwelt for a long time in the agnihotra. The divine Purandara (Indra), who had a passion for Ahalyā, was cursed by (her husband) Gautama; but, from motives of religion, he was not injured.²⁴⁶ The sea, which is filled and purified by water, being cursed by the Brāhmans, became salt.” 7223. The great king-

²⁴⁶ See above pp. 121 and 310; and also pp. 107–113. In this same Anusūsana Parva, verses 2262 ff., there is found another story (told to illustrate the frailty of the female sex) of Indra being enamoured of Ruchi, the wife of the rishi Devasarman, and of the method which that sage's disciple, Vipula, (to whose care his preceptor's wife had been entrusted during her husband's absence,) devised to preserve his charge from being corrupted by the licentious immortal who was in the habit of assuming manifold Protean disguises in order to carry out his unworthy designs, and to save the female from being “licked up by the king of the gods, as a mischievous dog licks up the butter deposited at the sacrifice” (*Yathā Ruchiṁ nāvalihed deveṇdro Bhṛigu-sattama | kṛatūv upahite nyastaṁ havīḥ śveva durātmavān*), a respectful comparison, truly, to be applied to the chief of the Indian pantheon! The plan which Vipula adopted to save the virtue of his master's wife against her will was to take possession of her body with his own spirit, and to restrain her movements by the force of Yoga, and compel her to say the contrary of what she desired. The story ends by his re-entering his own body, reproaching Indra with his disgraceful behaviour, and compelling him to retire abashed.

dom of the Dandakas was overthrown by a Brāhmaṇ; and the great Kshattriya family of the Tālajanghas was destroyed by Aurva alone. 7225. And why dost thou, o Arjuna, worship Agni (who is) a Brāhmaṇ? for knowest thou not that he bears the oblations of the whole world?" The story of Utathya, of the race of Angiras, is afterwards told: "7241. Bhadrā was the daughter of Soma, and considered to be a person of great beauty. Soma regarded Utathya as a fitting husband for her. She practised severe austerities in order to gain him. Atri (the father of Soma, according to the Vishṇu Purāṇa, Wilson, 1st ed. p. 392) then sent for Utathya, and gave her to him, and he married her in due form, presenting large gifts. 7245. The god Varuna, however, who had formerly been enamoured of her, came and carried her off from the abode of the hermit, who was living on the banks of the Yamunā, and took her to his own city, to a very wonderful lake of six hundred thousand (yojanas). No city was more delightful than that, adorned as it was by palaces and apsarases, and rich in celestial objects of enjoyment. There the god enjoyed her society. His wife's dishonour being made known to Utathya by Nārada, he requested the latter to go and deliver a severe message to Varuna: 'I command thee to let my wife go, who was given to me by Soma; wherefore hast thou carried her away? Thou art a guardian of the world, not a robber.' 7251. Varuna answered, 'She is my beloved; I cannot bear to give her up.' Nārada, in no very gratified humour, reported this answer to Utathya, and said, 'Varuna took me by the throat, and cast me out. He will not give up thy wife. Take whatever measures thou esteemest proper.' Utathya was greatly incensed (7255), and stopped up and drank all the sea. Still Varuna, though urged by his friends, would not give up the female. Utathya then desired the earth to try some other stratagem; and the lake above described was turned into a salt wilderness, and the ocean swept away. The saint then addressed himself to the countries and to the river: 'Sarasvatī, disappear into the deserts; and let this land, deserted by thee, become impure.' After the country had become dried up, Varuna submitted himself to Utathya, and brought back Bhadrā. The sage was pleased to get his wife, and released both the world and Varuna from their sufferings. He said to the latter (7262) 'This, my wife, was gained by my austerities in spite of thy remonstrances.' 7263. 'Such, o king, I say, was

the Brâhman Utathya; tell me of any Kshattriya superior to him.''"

A story is next told (verses 7265 ff.) of the gods being conquered by the Asuras or Dânavas, deprived of all oblations, and stripped of their dignity, and of their coming to earth, where they saw the sage Agastya, and applied to him for protection. The succour they implored was granted to them by the sage, who scorched the Dânavas, expelled them from heaven and earth, and made them fly to the south. Thus were the gods reinstated in their dominion.

We have then, verses 7280-7290, the following legend of Vaśishṭha: The Ādityas were performing a sacrifice, bearing Vaśishṭha in their remembrance, when they were attacked by the Dânavas, called Khalins, who came in tens of thousands to slay them:

Verse 7284. *Tatas tair arditâḥ devûḥ śaraṇâṁ Vâśavâṁ yayuḥ | sa cha tair vyathitâḥ Sakro Vaśishṭhaṁ śaraṇâṁ yayau | tato 'bhayaṁ dadau tebhyo Vaśishṭho bhagavân rishiḥ | tadā tân duḥkhitân jnâtrâ ḥnriśâṁsyâ-paro muniḥ | ayatnenâdahat sarvân Khalinâḥ svena tejasâ |* 7289. *Evaṁ sendrâḥ Vaśishṭhenâ rakshitâs tridivaukasâḥ | Brahma-datta-varâś chaiva hatâḥ daityâḥ mahâtmanâ | etat karma Vaśishṭhasya kathitâṁ hi mayâ 'nagha | bravîmy aham brûhi vâ tvam Vaśishṭhât kshattriyâṁ varam |*

"The gods being distressed by them, resorted to Indra; and he too, being harassed by them, went to Vaśishṭha for help. This reverend and benevolent sage gave them all his protection; and being aware of their distress, without any exertion, burnt up all the Dânavas 7289. Thus were the gods, including Indra, preserved by Vaśishṭha, and the Daityas, even although they had obtained a boon from Brûhmâ, were slain. Such was the exploit of Vaśishṭha: can you tell me of any Kshattriya who was superior to him?"

A further tale is told of the prowess of the sage Atri, who interposed to deliver the gods and restore light to the celestial luminaries:

Verse 7292. *Ghore tamasy ayudhyanta sahitâḥ deva-dânavâḥ | avidhyata śarais tattra Svarbhânuḥ Soma-bhâskarau | atha te tamasâ grastâḥ vihan-nyante sma dânavaiḥ | devâḥ nripati-sârdula sahaiva Balibhis taddâ | asurair bâdhyamânâs te kshîṇa-prâñuḥ divaukasâḥ | apnîyanta tapasyan-tam Atriṁ vîprâṁ tapodhanam |* 7297. *Tô'bruvâṁs "chandramâḥ bhava | timira-ghnaś cha savitâ dasyu-hantâ cha no bhava" | evam uktas taddâ'irir vâi tamo-nud abhavat śâśî | apaśyat saumya-bhâvâch cha soma-*

vat-priya-darśanaḥ | dṛishṭvā nātiprabhaṁ somaṁ tathā sūryaṁ cha pār-thiva | prakūśam akarod Atris tapasā svena sañyuge | 7300. Jagad vitimiraṁ chāpi prakūśam akarot tadā | vyajayat śatru-samghāṁś cha devānāṁ svena tejasā | 7303. Dvijenāgni-dvitīyena japatā charma-vāsasā | phala-bhakshena rājarshe paśya karmāttrinā kritam | 7304. . . . brūhi vā tvam Atritāḥ kshattriyāṁ varam |

"The gods and Dānavas fought together in dreadful darkness; when Svarbhānu pierced with his arrows the sun and moon. Enveloped in gloom the gods were slaughtered by the Dānavas, together with the Balis. Being thus slain and exhausted, the celestials beheld the Brāhmaṇ Atri employed in austerities;" and invoked his aid in their extremity. He asked what he should do. They reply, verse 2297: "‘Become the moon, and the gloom-dispelling sun, the slayer of the Dasyus.’ Atri then became the gloom-dispelling moon, and in his character as such looked beautiful as Soma. Perceiving the sun and moon to be shorn of their brightness, Atri threw light upon the conflict, (7300) freed the world from darkness, by the power of his austere-fervour, and vanquished the enemies of the gods. 7303. Behold the deed done by Atri, the Brāhmaṇ, attended by Agni, the mutterer of prayers, clad in a skin, and living upon fruits. 7304. ‘Tell me of any Kshatriya superior to Atri.’”

This story is founded on some verses of the Rig-veda, v. 40, 5:

Yat tvā sūryya Svarbhānus tamasā'vidhyad āsurah | akshetra-vidyathā mudgho bhuvanāni adidhayuh | 6. Svarbhānor adha yad Indra māyāḥ avo divo varttamānāḥ avāhan | gūlhaṁ sūryyaṁ tamasā'pavratena turīyena brahmaṇā'vindat Atriḥ | 8. Grāvno brahmā yujūjānah saparyyan kīrinā devān namasopāśikshan | Atriḥ sūryasya divi chakshur ādhāt Svarbhānor apa māyāḥ aghukshat | 9. Yām vai sūryyaṁ Svarbhānus tamasā'vidhyad āsurah | Atrayas tam anv avindan nahi anye aśaknuvan |

"When Svarbhānu of the Asura race pierced thee, o Sun, with darkness, all worlds appeared like a man who is bewildered in a region which he does not know. 6. When, Indra, thou didst sweep away the magical arts of Svarbhānu, which were operating beneath the sky, Atri discovered by the fourth text the Sun, which had been hidden by the hostile darkness. 8. Applying the (soma-crushing) stones, performing worship, serving the gods with reverence and praise, the priest Atri placed the eye of the Sun in the sky, and dispelled the illusions of

Svarbhānu. 9. The Atris discovered the Sun which Svarbhānu had pierced with darkness. No others could."

We have next a curious legend about the sage Chyavana, of the race of Bhṛigu:

7306. *Aśvinoḥ pratisaṁśrutyā Chyavanaḥ Pākaśasānam | provācha sahitō devaiḥ “ somapāv Aśvinau kuru ” | Indraḥ uvācha | “asmābhir ninditāv etau bharetūn somapau katham | devair na sammitāv etau tasmād mairam vadasva naḥ | Aśvibhyām saha nechhāmaḥ somam pātum mahā-vrata | yad anyad rakshyase rīpra tat karishyāma te vachāḥ ” | Chyavanaḥ uvācha | “ pibetām Aśrinau somam bharadbhiḥ sahitāv ubhau | ubhāv etāv api surau sūryya-putrāv sureśrara | 7310. Kriyatām mad-racho devāḥ yathā vai samudāhritām | etad vaḥ kurvatām śreyo bhared naitad akurvatām ” | Indraḥ uvācha | “ Aśvibhyām saha somaṁ vai na pāsyāmi dvijottama | pibantv anye yathākāmañ nāham pātum ihotsahe ” | Chyavanaḥ uvācha | “ na chet karishyasi rāho mayoktam bala-sūdana | mayā pramathitāḥ sadyaḥ somam pāsyasi vai makhe ” | tataḥ karma samārab-dhaṁ hitāya sahasā ‘śvinoḥ | Chyavanena tato mantrair abhibhūtāḥ surā ‘bhavan | tat tu karma samārabdhāṁ drishṭrendraḥ krodha-mūrchlitaḥ | udyamya rīpulaṁ śailaṁ Chyavānaṁ samupādravarat | 7315. Tathā rājrena bhagavān amarshākula-lochanāḥ | tam āpatantaṁ drishṭraira Chyavānaś tapasā ‘nrītaḥ | adbhīḥ siktvā ‘stambhayat tañ sa-rājraṁ saha-parratam | athendrasya mahāghorāṁ so ‘srijat śatrum eva hi | Mayaṁ nāmāhuti-mayaṁ ryāditāsyam mahāmuniḥ | 7319. Jihvā-mūlāsthitās tasya sarve devāḥ sa-rāsarāḥ | timer āsyam anupraptaḥ yathā matsyāḥ mahār-nare | te samantrya tato dera Mudasyāsa samīpagāḥ | abrūraṇ sahitāḥ Sakram pranamāsmai dvijātaye | Aśvibhyām saha somaṁ cha pibāma vigata-jvarāḥ | tataḥ sa pranataḥ Śukraś chakāra Chyavānasya tat | Chyavanaḥ kṛitavān etāv Aśvinau soma-pāyināu | tataḥ pratyūharat karma Madaṁ cha ryabhajad muniḥ ;*

"Having given a promise to that effect, Chyavana applied, along with the other gods, to Indra, to allow the Aśvins to partake in the soma juice. Indra answered, 'How can they become drinkers of the soma, seeing they are reviled by us, and are not on an equality with the gods? We do not wish to drink soma in their company; but we shall accede to your wishes in any other respect.' Chyavana repeats his request, and urges that the Aśvins also are gods, and the offspring of the Sun. 7310. He adds that it will be well for the gods if they accede to this

demand, and ill if they do not. Indra rejoins that the other gods may drink with the Aśvins if they please, but he cannot bring himself to do it. Chyavana retorts that if he does not, he shall be chastised by the sage, and made to drink soma (with them) at the sacrifice. A ceremony was then instantly begun by Chyavana for the benefit of the Aśvins; and the gods were vanquished by sacred texts. Indra, seeing this rite commenced, became incensed, uplifted a vast mountain (7315), and rushed with his thunderbolt, and with angry eyes, on Chyavana. The sage, however, sprinkling him with water, arrested him with his mountain and thunderbolt. Chyavana then created a fearful open-mouthed monster, called Mada, formed of the substance of the oblation," who is further described as having teeth and grinders of portentous length, and jaws, one of which enclosed the earth and the other the sky: and the gods, including Indra, are said (7319), "to have been at the root of his tongue [ready to be devoured] like fishes in the mouth of a sea monster. Finding themselves in his predicament, the gods took counsel and said to Indra, 'Make salutation to Chyavana, and let us drink soma along with the Aśvins, and so escape from our sufferings.' Indra then, making obeisance, granted the demand of Chyavana, who was thus the cause of the Aśvins becoming drinkers of the soma. He then performed the ceremony, and clove Mada to pieces."

Does this legend mean that this rishi of the Bhṛigu family was the first to introduce the Aśvins within the circle of the Aryan worship?

Compare the passages from the Satapatha Brāhmaṇa iv. 1, 5, 1 ff., and from the Vanaparvan of the M. Bh. verses 10316 ff. quoted in my "Contributions to a knowledge of the Vedic theogony and mythology," No. II., in the Journ. R. A. S., for 1866, pp 11 ff.; Ind. St. i. 188, and the Aśvamedhika-parvan of the M. Bh., verses 249 ff., there referred to. The Aśvins are, in different passages of the Rig-veda, as iii. 58, 7, 9; viii. 8, 5; viii. 35, 7-10, invited to drink the soma-juice.

Vāyu relates to Arjuna yet one more instance of the irresistible power of the Brāhmans:

7327. *Madasyāsyam anuprāptāḥ yadā sendrāḥ divaukasāḥ | tadaiva Chyavaneneha hṛitā teshāṁ vasundharā | ubhau lokau hṛitau matvā te devāḥ duḥkhitāḥ bhriṣam | śokarttāś cha mahātmāno Brahmānañ śaranāñ yayuḥ | devāḥ uchuh | Madasya-vyatisiktānām asmākām loka-pūjita | Chyavanena hṛitā bhūmiḥ Kapais chaiva divam prabho | Brahmā utācha |*

7330. *Gachhadhvāñ śarānañ viprāñ ḍśu sendrāḥ divaukasah | prasādyā tān ubhau lokāv avāpsyatha yathā purā | te yayuh śarānañ viprāñ uchus te “kān jayāmahe” | ity uktas te dvijān prāhur “jayateha Kapān” iti | “bhūgatān hi vijetāro vayam” ity abruvan “dvijāḥ” | tataḥ karma sa-mārabdhām brāhmaṇaiḥ Kapa-nāśanam | tat śrutvā preshito dūto brāhmaṇebhyo Dhanī Kapaiḥ | bhū-gatān brāhmaṇān āha Dhanī Kapa-vacho yathā | “bhavadbhiḥ sadṛiṣāḥ sarve Kapāḥ kim iha varitata | sarve veda-vidaḥ prājnāḥ sarve cha kratu-yājinaḥ | 7335. Sarve satyavrataś chaiva sarve tulyāḥ maharshibhiḥ | śrīś chaiva ramataiteshu dhārayanti śriyāñ cha te | 7339. Etais chānyaiś cha bahubhir gunair yuktaṁ kathaṁ Kapān | 7340. Vijeshyatha nivarttadhvāñ nivrittānāñ śubhaṁ hi vaḥ” | Brāhmaṇāḥ uchuh | Kapān rayaṁ vijeshyāmo ye devās te vayāñ smṛitāḥ | tasmād badhyāḥ Kapā 'smākam Dhanin yāhi yathāgatam | Dhanī gatrā Kapān āha “na no viprāḥ priyankarāḥ | gṛihītvā 'strāny atho viprān Kapāḥ sarve samādravan | samudagra-dhvajān dṛishṭvā Kapān sarve dvijātayah | vyasrījan jvalitān agnīn Kapānām prāṇa-nāśanān | brahma-śrīṣṭāḥ haryabhujaḥ Kapān hatvā sanātanāḥ | nabhasīva yathā 'bhrāṇi vyarājanta narādhipa | Itavā vai dānavān devāḥ sarve sambhūya saṁ-yuge | tenābhya jānan hi tadā brāhmaṇair nihatān Kapān | athāgamya mahātejāḥ Nārado 'kathayad vibho | yathā hatāḥ mahābhāgais tejasā brāhmaṇaiḥ Kapāḥ | Nā adasya vachaḥ śrutvā pṛītāḥ sarve divaukasah | praśāśaṁsuḥ dvijāṁś chāpi brāhmaṇāṁś cha yaśasvināḥ |*

“When the gods, including Indra, were enclosed within the mouth of Mada, the earth was taken from them by Chyavana. The gods then considering that they had lost both worlds, in their distress resorted to Brahmā, and said, ‘Since we have been swallowed up in the mouth of Mada, the earth has been taken from us by Chyavana, and the heaven by the Kapas.’ Brahmā answered, ‘Go speedily, ye gods, with Indra, to the Brāhmans for help. After propitiating them ye shall regain both worlds.’ They did so, and the Brāhmans, after ascertaining that the gods would themselves deal with those of their enemies who were on earth, began a ceremony for the destruction of the Kapas. The Kapas upon this sent a messenger to the Brāhmans, to say that they themselves were all, like them, skilled in the Vedas, learned, and offerers of sacrifice, all pure in their observances, and all resembling great rishis, etc., etc. How then should the Brāhmans be able to conquer them? It would be more for their interest to desist from the attempt. The Brāhmans,

however, would not be persuaded; and when, in consequence, the Kapas assailed them, they hurled forth fires by which the Kapas were destroyed. The gods themselves conquered the Dānavas, and learning from Nārada what the illustrious Brāhmans had effected, they sang their praises.”²⁴⁷

Hearing of all these testimonies to the terrible might of the Brāhmans, Arjuna at length gives in, saying :

7350. *Jīvāmy aham brāhmaṇārthaṁ sarvathā satatam prabho | brahmaṇyo brāhmaṇebhyas cha prāṇamāmi cha nityaśaḥ | Dattāttreya-prasādāch cha mayā prāptam idam balam | loke cha paramā kīrttir dharmas cha charito mahān | aho brāhmaṇa-karmāṇi mayā Māruta tattvataḥ | tvayā proktāni kārtṣṇyena śrutāni prayatena cha | Vāyur uvācha | brāhmaṇān kshattra-dharmena pālayasvendriyāṇi cha | Bhṛigubhyas te bhayaṁ ghorāṁ tat tu kālād bharishyati |*

“ I live altogether and always for the sake of the Brāhmans. I am devoted to the Brāhmans, and do obeisance to them continually. And it is through the favour of Dattāttreya (a Brāhmaṇ) that I have obtained all this power and high renown, and that I have practised righteousness. Thou hast declared to me truly all the acts of the Brāhmans, and I have listened intently.” Vāyu then says to him : “ Protect the Brāhmans, fulfilling a Kshattriya’s function ; and restrain your senses. A dreadful cause of apprehension impends over you from the Bhṛigus, but it will only take effect after some time.” This last remark may have been introduced to bring this story into harmony with the other legend about the destruction of Arjuna and the Kshattriyas.

The narrative, which has just been quoted, is, as I have already stated, preceded by a panegyric of some length pronounced by Bhishma on the Brāhmans (verses 7163-7184), of which the following are specimens :

7163. *Brāhmaṇānām paribhavaḥ sādayed api devatāḥ |* 7164. *Te hi lokān imān sarvān dhārayanti maniṣināḥ |* 7175. *Chandana mala-panke cha bhojane bhojane samāḥ | vāso yeshāṁ dukūlaṁ cha śāna-kshaumājināni cha |* 7177. *Adaivāṁ daivataṁ kuryur daivataṁ vā 'py adaivatam | lokān anyān srije yus te lokapālaṁs cha kopitāḥ |* 7179. *Devānām api ye devāḥ kāraṇāṁ kāraṇasya cha |* 7181. *Avidvān brāhmaṇo devaḥ . . . | vidvān bhūyas tato devaḥ pūrṇa-sāgara-sannibhāḥ |*

“ The prowess of the Brāhmans can destroy even the gods. 7164.

²⁴⁷ This translation is a good deal condensed.

Those wise beings uphold all these worlds. 7175. To them it is indifferent whether they are perfumed with sandal wood or deformed with mire, whether they eat or fast, whether they are clad in silk, or in sackcloth or skins. 7177. They can turn what is not divine into what is divine, and the converse; and can in their anger create other worlds with their guardians. 7179. They are the gods of the gods; and the cause of the cause. 7181. An ignorant Brāhmaṇa is a god, whilst a learned Brāhmaṇa is yet more a god, like the full ocean." (Compare the similar eulogies in p. 130, above.)

In the *Anuśāsanaparvan*, sections 52 ff., we have the story of Parashurāma, in connection with that of Viśvāmitra, yet once more handled. Yudhishṭhīra says he is very curious to know something more about these two personages :

2718. *Katham esha samutpanno Rāmaḥ satya-parākramāḥ | katham brahmaṛshi-vāṁśo 'yāṁ kshattrā-dharmā vyajāyata | tad asya sambhavaṁ rājan nikhilenānukīrttaya | Kauśikāch cha kathaṁ rāmśūt kshattrād vai brāhmaṇo 'bhavat | aho prabhāvah sumahān āśid vai sumahātmanah | Rāmasya cha nara-ryāghra Viśvāmitrasya chaiva hi | katham putirān atikramya teshāṁ naprīshv athābhavat | esha doshaḥ sutān hitvā tat tvāṁ ryākhyātum arhasi |*

"How was this valiant Rāma, descended from the family of a Brāhmaṇa-rishi, born with the qualities of a Kshatriya? Tell me the whole story: and how did a Brāhmaṇa spring from the Kshatriya race of Kuśika? Great was the might of Rāma, and of Viśvāmitra. How did it happen that, passing over the sons [of Richika and Kuśika], this defect showed itself in their grandsons?"

Then there follows a long dialogue related by Bhīshma as having taken place between king Kuśika and the sage Chyavana. The latter, it seems, "foreseeing that this disgrace was about to befall his race [from connection with the Kuśikas], and entertaining, in consequence, after he had weighed all the good and evil, and the strength and weakness (on either side), the desire of burning up that whole family" (verse 2723. *Etaṁ dosham purā drīshṭvā Bhārgavaś Chyavanas tada | āgāminam mahābuddhiḥ eva-vāṁśe muni-sattamāḥ | niśchitya manasū sarvāṁ guna-dosham balābalam | dagdu-kāmaḥ kulaṁ sarvāṁ Kuśikānāṁ tapodhanaḥ |*), came to Kuśika. Chyavana is welcomed and treated with great attention, and receives from Kuśika the offer of all his king-

dom, etc. The saint, however, does not requite this honour with corresponding kindness, but makes the king and his wife perform many menial offices, rub his feet, attend while he sleeps, bring him food, and draw him in a chariot, while he lacerates their backs with a goad. All this is submitted to so patiently, that the sage is propitiated, addresses them in kindly tones, and touches their wounded bodies with his godlike hands. After creating a magical golden palace, with all the accompaniments of pleasure (2826 ff.), in order to give them a conception of heaven, (2892 ff.) the sage offers to bestow any boon the king may choose; and to solve any of his doubts. Kuśika asks the reason of the sage's unaccountable procedure. Chyavana answers that he had heard from Brahmā that there would be "a confusion of families in consequence of the hostility of Brāhmans and Kshattriyas, and that a grandson of great glory and heroism would be born to Kuśika" (verse 2878. *Brahma-kshattra-virodhena bharitā kula-sankaraḥ | pautras te bhavitā rājāns tejo-vīryya-samanvitāḥ |*); that he had intended in consequence to burn up the race of the Kuśikas, but that the king had come so well out of the severe ordeal to which he had been subjected, that the sage had become thoroughly pacified, and would grant the boon which Kuśika desired :

2897. *Bhavishyat esha te kāmas Kauśikāt Kauśiko dvijah | tritīyam purushāṁ tubhyam brāhmaṇatvaṁ gamishyati | vaṁśas te pārthiva-śreshtha Bhṛigūnām eva tejasā | pautras te bhavitā vīpras tapasvī pāvana-dyutih | yah sa-deva-manushyānām bhayam utpādayishyati |*

"This thy desire shall be fulfilled ; from a Kauśika a Kauśika Brāhmaṇ shall arise : in the third generation thy race shall attain to Brāhmaṇhood by the might of the Bhṛigus. Thy son's son shall become a Brāhmaṇ, a devotee, splendid as fire, who shall alarm both gods and men." Kuśika being anxious to know how all this was to be brought to pass, Chyavana informs him :

2995. *Bhṛigūnām kshattriyāḥ yājyāḥ nityam etaj janādhipa | te cha bhedaṁ gamishyanti daiva-yuktena hetunā | kshattriyāś cha Bhṛigūn sarvān badhishyanti narādhipa | āgarbhād anukrintanto daiva-danda nipliditāḥ | tataḥ utpatsyate 'smākāṁ kula-gotra-vivardhanāḥ | Urvo nāma mahātejā jvalanārka-sama-dyutih | sa trailokya-vināśaya kopāgnīṁ janayishyati | mahīṁ sa-parvata-vanāṁ yah karishyati bhasmasūt | kanchit bālāṁ tu vahnīṁ cha sa eva śamayishyati | samudre vadavā-vaktre prak-*

shipya muni-sattamaḥ | 2910. *Putraṁ tasya mahārāja Richikam Bhri-*
gu-nandanam | *sākshāt kṛitsno dhanur-vedaḥ samupasthāsyate 'nagha* |
kshattriyānām abhvāya daiva-yuktena hetunā | *sa tu tam pratigṛihyaiva*
putraṁ sankramayishyati | *Jamadagnau mahābhāge tapasā bhāvitāt-*
mani | *sa chāpi Bṛigu-śārdūlas taṁ vedaṁ dhārayishyati* | *kulāt tu tava*
dharmātman kanyāṁ so 'dhigamishyati | *ubdhāvanārtham bhavato vaṁ-*
śasya Bharatarshabha | *Gādher duhitaram prāpya pautrīṁ tava mahā-*
tapāḥ | *brāhmaṇāṁ kshattra-dharmānām putram utpādayishyati* | 2915.
Kshattriyāṁ vīpra-karmānām Vṛīhaspatim ivaujasā | *Viśvāmitrāṁ tava*
kule Gādheḥ putraṁ sudhārmikam | *tapasā mahatā yuktam pradāsyati*
mahādyute | *striyau tu kāraṇāṁ tattrā parivartte bharishyataḥ* | *Pitā-*
maha-niyogād rai nānyathailad bharishyati | *trītiye purushe tubhyam*
brāhmaṇatram upaishyati | *bharitā traṁ cha sambandhī Bṛigūnām bhā-*
vitātmanāṁ | 2923. *Etat te kathitaṁ sarvam aseshena mayā*
nṛipa | *Bṛigūnaṁ Kuśikānāṁ cha abhisambandha-kāraṇam* | *yathoktam*
rishiṇā chāpi tadā tad abhavat nṛipa | *janma Rāmasya cha muner*
Viśvāmitrasya chaiva hi |

"The Bṛigus have always been the priests of the Kshatriyas; but these will become hostile to each other for a fated reason. The Kshatriyas shall slay all the Bṛigus, even to children in the womb, being oppressed by a divine nemesis. Then shall arise the glorious Ěrva,²⁴⁸ like the sun in splendour, who shall augment the glory of our race. He shall create a fire of wrath for the destruction of the three worlds, which shall reduce the earth with its mountains and forests to ashes. After a time he will extinguish the fire, throwing it into the ocean into the mouth of Vaḍavā (the submarine fire). Into his son Richika shall

²⁴⁸ Ěrva is here said (verse 2907) to belong to the race of Chyavana, but whether as a near or remote descendant is not stated. In verse 2910 Richika is said to be the son of Ěrva. In the Ādi-parvan, verses 2610 ff., the matter is somewhat differently stated: *Ārushi tu Manoh kanyā tasya patnī yaśasvinī* | *Aurvas tasyāṁ samabhavad*
ūrum bhittvā mahāyāsūḥ | *mahātejāḥ mahāvīryyo bālah eva gunair yutāḥ* | *Richikas*
tasya putras tu Jamadagnis tato 'bhavat | "Ārushi, the daughter of Manu, was the wife of the sage (Chyavana); of her was the illustrious Aurva born, having split his mother's thigh. He was great in glory and might, and from his childhood endowed with eminent qualities. Richika was his son, and Richika's was Jamadagni." Here Aurva is said to derive his name from having divided his mother's thigh (*ūru*); and no allusion is made to Ěrva, though the same person appears to be meant. In the passage of the Anuśāsana-parvan, however, we have an Ěrva, the father of Richika, whose patronymic will thus be Aurva; as it is, in fact, in the Vishnu Purāṇa, as quoted above in p. 352.

enter the entire embodied Dhanur-veda (science of archery), for the destined destruction of the Kshattriyas. This science he shall transmit to his great son Jamadagni, whose mind shall be spiritualized by devotion, and who shall possess that Veda. He (Richika) shall obtain [for his wife] a maiden of thy family, to prolong thy race. This great devotee, wedding thy grand-daughter, the daughter of Gādhi, shall beget a Brāhmaṇ (*i.e.* Paraśurāma), fulfilling the functions of a Kshattriya; (2915) and shall bestow on thy family a Kshattriya who shall perform the functions of a Brāhmaṇ, Viśvāmitra, the son of Gādhi, an austere devotee, and glorious as Vṛīhaspati. The two wives shall be the cause of this interchange of characters. According to the decree of Brahmā all this shall so happen. Brāhmaṇhood shall come to thee in the third generation, and thou shalt become connected with the spiritual-minded Bhṛigus." 2923. "Thus (concludes Bhishma) have I told thee at length the cause of the connection between the Bhṛigus and the Kuśikas. All this was accordingly fulfilled in the births of Paraśurāma and Viśvāmitra."

Is this legend intended to account for a real fact? Was Paraśurāma of a sacerdotal tribe, and yet by profession a warrior, just as Viśvāmitra was conversely of royal extraction, and yet a priest by profession?

According to the Vishṇu Purāna, iv. 11, 3 (Wilson, 4to. ed. pp. 416, 417), Arjuna was of the race of Yadu, and the ninth in descent from Haihaya, the great-grandson of that prince. It is there said of him :

Kṛitaviryyād Arjunaḥ sapta-dvipapatil bāhu-sahasrī jajne yo 'sau bhagavud-añśam Atri-kula-prasūtāñ Dattāttreyākhyam ārādhya bāhu-sahasram adharma-sevā - nivāranañ dharmena prithivijayañ dharmataś chānupālanam arātibhyo 'parājayam akhila - jagat - prakhyāta - purushāch cha mrityum ity etān varān abhilashitavān lebhe cha | tena iyam aśeshadvipavatī prithivī samyak paripālitā | daśa-yajna-sahasrāny asāv ayajat | tasya cha śloko 'dyāpi gīyate "na nūnañ kārttaviryyasya gatiñ yāsyanti pārthivāḥ | yajnair dānair tapobhir vā praśrayena damena cha" | anashṭadravyatā tasya rājye 'bhavat | 4. Evam panchāśiti-sahasrāny abdān avyāhatārogya-śri-bala-parākramo rājyam akarot | Māhishmatyām dig-vijayā-bhyāgato Narmadā-jalāvagāhana-krīḍā-nipāna-madākulena ayatnenaiwa tena aśesha-deva-dailya-gandharveśa-jayodbhūta-madāvalepo 'pi Rāvanāḥ paśur iva baddhaḥ svanagaraikānte sthāpitāḥ | 5. Yaḥ panchāśiti-varsha-sahasropalakṣaṇa-kālāvasāne bhagavan-nārāyanāñśena Paraśurāmeṇa

"From Kṛitavīrya sprang Arjuna, who was lord of the seven dvīpas [circular and concentric continents of which the earth is composed], and had a thousand arms. Having worshipped a portion of the divine Being, called Dattāttreya, sprung from the race of Atri, he sought and obtained these boons, viz. a thousand arms, the power of restraining wrong by justice, the conquest of the earth, and the disposition to rule it righteously, invincibility by enemies, and death at the hands of a man renowned over the whole world. By him this earth, with all its dvīpas, was perfectly governed. He offered ten thousand sacrifices. To this day this verse is repeated respecting him : 'No other king shall ever equal Kārtavīrya in regard to sacrifices, liberality, austerities, courtesy, and self-restraint.' In his reign no property was ever lost. 4. Thus he ruled for eighty-five thousand years with unbroken health, prosperity, strength, and valour. When he was excited by sporting in the Narmadā and by drinking wine, he had no difficulty in binding like a beast Rāvāna, who had arrived in Māhishmatī in his career of conquest, and who was filled with arrogance, arising from the pride of victory over all the gods, daityas, and gandharva chiefs, and imprisoning him in a secret place in his capital. At the end of his reign of eighty five thousand years Arjuna was destroyed, by Paraśurāma, who was a portion of the divine Nārāyana."

The Bhāgavata Purāṇa, ix. 23, 20-27, assigns to him the same descent, and relates of him nearly the same particulars. Verse 23 says : *Arjunah Kṛitavīryyasya sapta-dvīpeśvaro 'bhavat | Dattāttreyād Harer amśāt prāpta-yoga-mahāgunah |* "Arjuna was the son of Kṛitavīrya, and ruler of the seven dvīpas. He obtained the great attribute of *Yoga* (supernatural powers arising from devotion) from Dattāttreya, who was a portion of Hari," etc.

The legend of Paraśurāma, as related, is of course fabulous. Not to speak of the miraculous powers which are ascribed to this hero, and the incredible number of the extirpations which he is said to have executed, we cannot even suppose it probable that the Brāhmans should in general have been sufficiently powerful and warlike to overcome the Kshatriyas by force of arms. But the legend may have had some small foundation in fact. Before the provinces of the sacerdotal and military classes were accurately defined, there may have been cases in which ambitious men of the former successfully

aspired to kingly dominion, just as scions of royal races became distinguished as priests and sages. But even without this assumption, the existence of such legends is sufficiently explained by the position which the Brāhmans eventually occupied. With the view of maintaining their own ascendancy over the minds of the chiefs on whose good will they were dependent, and of securing for themselves honour and profit, they would have an interest in working upon the superstitious feelings of their contemporaries by fabricating stories of supernatural punishments inflicted by their own forefathers on their royal oppressors, as well as by painting in lively colours the prosperity of those princes who were submissive to the spiritual order.

CHAPTER V.

RELATION OF THE BRAHMANICAL INDIANS TO THE NEIGHBOURING TRIBES, ACCORDING TO MANU AND THE PURANAS.

I now propose to enquire what account the Indian writers give of the origin of those tribes which were not comprehended in their own polity, but with which, as dwelling within, or adjacent to, the boundaries of Hindustan, their countrymen were, in ancient times, brought into continual and familiar contact.

It appears to have been the opinion of Manu, the great authority in all matters regarding the Hindu religion and institutions in their full development, that there was no original race of men except the four castes of Brāhmans, Kshattriyas, Vaiśyas, and Sūdras; and that all other nations were derived from these. His own words (x. 4) are these: *Brāhmaṇah kshattriyo vaiśyas trayo varṇāḥ dvijātayah | chaturthaḥ ekajātis tu sūdro nāsti tu panchamah |* “Three castes, the Brāhmaṇ, the Kshattriya, and the Vaiśya, are twice-born; the fourth, the Sūdra, is once-born; and there is no fifth.” On the last clause of this verse Kullūka Bhaṭṭa annotates thus: *Panchamah punar varṇo nāsti sankīrṇa-jātiñām tv aśvatara-vad mātā-pitri-jāti-vyatirikta-jāty-antaravād na varṇatvam | ayaṁ cha jāty-antaropadeśah śāstre saṁvyavaharanārthaḥ |* “There is no fifth caste; for caste cannot be predicated of the mixed tribes, from the fact that, like mules, they belong to another species, distinct from that of their father and mother. And this reference, which is made in the Sāstras to castes other than the four, is merely for the sake of convenience and conformity to common usage.”

Accordingly, in the following description which Manu gives in the same chapter of the rise of the inferior castes, they are all, even the

very lowest, such as Nishādas and Chandālas, derived from the mixture of the four so-called original castes. Thus, in verse 8 : *Brāhmaṇād vaiśya-kanyāyām ambashṭha nāma jāyate | nishādaḥ śudra-kanyāyām yaḥ parāśava uchyate |* “From a Brāhmaṇa father and a Vaiśya mother springs an Ambashṭha: from a Brāhmaṇa father and a Śūdra mother is born a Nishāda, called also Parāśava.”¹ Again, in verse 12 . *Śudrād āyo-gavaḥ kshattā chāndālaś chādhamo nrinām | vaiśya - rājanya - vīprāsu jāyante varṇa-sankarāḥ |* “From a Śūdra, by women of the Vaiśya, Kshattriya, and Brāhmaṇa castes are born those mixed classes, the Āyo-gava, the Kshattri, and the Chandāla, lowest of men.” Again, in verse 20 : *Dvijātayaḥ savarnāsu janayanty arratāṁs tu yān | tān sāvitri-paribhrashtān vrātyāḥ iti vinirdiśet |* “Persons whom the twice-born beget on women of their own classes, but who omit the prescribed rites, and have abandoned the gāyatrī, are to be designated as Vrātyas.”² In the next three verses the inferior tribes, which spring from the Brāhmaṇa Vrātya, the Kshattriya Vrātya, and the Vaiśya Vrātya respectively, are enumerated.

In verses 43 and 44 it is stated : *Sānakāis tu kriyā-lopād imāḥ*

¹ It does not appear how the account of the origin of the Nishāda race from king Venā, given above in pp. 301 and 303, can be reconciled with this theory of Manu; unless recourse be had to the explanation that that story relates to the Svāyambhuva Manvantara. But Manu's narrative seems to refer to the same period. See above, p. 39. If the Vedic expressions *panchajanāḥ* and the other corresponding phrases signifying “the five tribes” be rightly interpreted of the “four castes, and the Nishādas,” we might understand this as intimating that the Nishādas had at one time been regarded as a distinct race. But the phrase is variously understood by the old Vedic commentators; as has been shewn above, p. 177.

² Manu says, ii. 38 f. : *Ā-shodasād brāhmaṇasya rāvīkī nātivarttate | ā-dvāvīṁśat kshattrabhandhor ā-chaturvīṁśater viśāḥ | atāḥ ūrdhām trayo'py eṣe yathā-kālām asaṁskritāḥ | sāvitri-patitāḥ vrātyāḥ bhavanti āryya-nigarhitāḥ |* “The gāyatrī should not, in the case of a Brāhmaṇa, be deferred beyond the sixteenth year; nor in the case of a Kshattriya beyond the twenty-second; nor in that of a Vaiśya beyond the twenty-fourth. After these periods youths of the three classes, who have not been invested, become fallen from the gāyatrī, Vrātyas, contemned by respectable men (Āryas).” In the following verse of the Mahābhārata, Anusūsanaparvan, line 2621, a different origin is ascribed to the Vrātyas: *Chāndālo vrātya-vaidyau cha brāhmaṇyām kshattriyāsu cha | vais'yāyām chaiva śūdrasya lakṣhyante⁶ pasadās trayāḥ |* “The three outcaste classes are the Chāndāla, the Vrātya, and the Vaidya, begotten by a Śūdra on females of the Brāhmaṇa, Kshattriya, and Vaiśya castes respectively.” A Vrātya, therefore, according to this account, is the son of a Śūdra man and a Kshattriya woman. On the Vrātyas, see Weber's Indische Studien, i. 33, 52, 138, 139, 445, 446, etc.

kshattriya-jātayah | vṛishalatvam gatāḥ loke brāhmaṇadarśanena cha | Paundrakāś chodra-dravidāḥ Kāmbojāḥ Yavanāḥ S'akāḥ | Pāradāḥ Pahlavāś Chināḥ Kirātāḥ Daradāḥ Khaśāḥ | “The following tribes of Kshattriyas have gradually sunk into the state of Vṛishalas (outcasts), from the extinction of sacred rites, and from having no communication with Brāhmans; viz. Paundrakas, Oḍras, Dravidas, Kāmbojas, Yavanas, Sakas, Pāradas, Pahlavas, Chīnas, Kirātas, Daradas, and Khaśas.”

The same thing is affirmed in the Mahābhārata, Anuśāsanaparvan, verses 2103 f.: *S'akāḥ Yavana-kāmbojās tās tāḥ kshattriya-jātayah | vṛishalatvam parigatāḥ brāhmaṇānām adarśanāt | Dravidāś cha Kalindāś cha Pulindāś chāpy Uśinarāḥ | Kolisarpāḥ Māhishakās tās tāḥ kshattriya-jātayah ityādi |* “These tribes of Kshattriyas, viz. S'akas, Yavanas, Kāmbojas, Drāviḍas, Kalindas, Pulindas, Uśinaras, Kolisarpas, and Māhishakas, have become Vṛishalas from seeing no Brāhmans.” This is repeated in verses 2158–9, where the following additional tribes are named: Mekalas, Lāṭas, Konvaśiras, Saundikas, Darvas, Chauras, Sīvaras, Barbaras, and Kirātas, and the cause of degradation is, as in verse 2103, restricted to the absence of Brāhmans. (Then follow the lines (2160 ff.) in glorification of the Brāhmans, already quoted in p. 130.)

The Yavanas are said in the Mahābhārata, Ādiparvan, section 85, verse 3533, “to be descended from Turvasu, the Vaibhojas from Druhyu, and the Mlechha tribes from Anu” (*Yados tu Yādarāḥ jātāś Turvasor Yavanāḥ smṛitāḥ | Druhyoḥ sutās tu Vaibhojāḥ Anos iu mlechha-jātayah |*). Is it meant by this that the Yavanas are not to be reckoned among the Mlechhas? Their descent from Turvasu is not however, necessarily in conflict with the assertion of the authorities above quoted, that they are degraded Kshattriyas.

I shall not attempt to determine who the Yavanas, and other tribes mentioned in the text, were.

The verse which succeeds that last quoted from Manu is the following: 45. *Mukha-bāhūru-paj-jānām yāḥ loke jātayo vahīḥ | mlechha-vāchaś chāryya-vāchah sarve te dasyavaḥ smṛitaḥ |* “Those tribes which are outside of the classes produced from the mouth, arms, thighs, and feet, [of Brahmā, i.e. Brāhmans, Kshattriyas, Vaiśyas, and Sūdras,] whether they speak the language of the Mlechhas or of the Āryas, are called Dasyus.” The interpretation to be given to this verse turns

upon the sense which we assign to “outside” (*vāhiḥ*). Does it mean that the Dasyus were of a stock originally distinct from that of the four primeval castes, and therefore altogether separate from those tribes which sprang from the intermixture of those four castes, or which, by the neglect of sacred rites, apostatized from their communion? Or does it merely mean that the Dasyus became eventually excluded from the fellowship of the four castes? If the latter sense be adopted, then Dasyu will be little else than a general term embracing all the tribes enumerated in verses 43 and 44. The commentator Kullūka understands the word in the latter sense. His words are : *Brāhmaṇa-kshattriya-vaiśya-śūdrāṇāṁ kriyā-lopādinā yāḥ jātayo vāhyāḥ jātāḥ mlechha-bhāshā-yuktāḥ āryya-bhāshopetāḥ rā te dasyavāḥ sarve smṛitāḥ* | “All the tribes, which by loss of sacred rites, and so forth, have become outcasts from the pale of the four castes, Brāhmans, Kshattriyas, Vaiśyas, and Sūdras; whether they speak the language of the Mlechhas or of the Āryas, are called Dasyus.” His view is confirmed by a short passage in the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa, quoted above (p. 358), where Viśvāmitra, speaking to his sons, says : “Let your descendants possess the furthest ends (of the country),” and the author of the Brāhmaṇa adds : “These are the numerous border-tribes, the Andhras, Pundras, Sabaras, Pulindas, Mūtibas. Most of the Dasyus are sprung from Viśvāmitra.” Here the writer of this ancient Brāhmaṇa connects together certain tribes named either in Manu, or in the Mahābhārata, as degraded Kshattriyas, with the appellation Dasyu, thus intimating that the latter was a general name embracing all the former. This view is further confirmed by the following lines of the Mahābhārata, book ii. verses 1031–2 : *Daradān saha Kāmbojair ajayat Pākaśāsanīḥ prāgut-tarāṁ diśāṁ ye cha vasanty āśritya Dasyavāḥ* | “The son of Indra conquered the Daradas with the Kāmbojas, and the Dasyus who dwell in the north-east region;” and still more by the annexed verses from the Dronaparvan, of the same epic poem, 4747 : *Kāmbojanāṁ sahasraiścha Sakānāṁ cha viśāmpate | S'avarāṇāṁ Kirātānāṁ Varvaraṇāṁ tathaiva cha | agamya-rūpām prithivīm māṁsa-śonita-karḍdamām | kṛitavāṁs tatra S'aineyāḥ kshapayaṁs tāvakam balam | Dasyūnāṁ sa-śirastrāṇaiḥ śrobbhir lūna-mūrddhajaiḥ | dīrgha-kūrchaḥ mahī kīrnā vivarhair andajair iva |* “Saineya, destroying thy host, converted the beautiful earth into a mass of mud with the flesh and blood of thousands of Kāmbojas,

Sakas, Sabaras, Kirātas, and Varvaras. The ground was covered with the shorn and hairless but long-bearded heads of the Dasyus, and their helmets, as if with birds bereft of their plumes." Here the word Dasyu is evidently a general term for the tribes named just before. Some of these same tribes had previously been called Mlechhas in verses 4716, 4723, and 4745. See also *Sabhāp.* 1198 f.

There is a passage in the *Sāntiparvan*, section 65, lines 2429 ff., which is worth quoting, as it shows that the Brāhmans of that age regarded the Dasyus as owing allegiance to Brahmanical institutions. King Māndhātṛi had performed a sacrifice in the hope of obtaining a vision of Vishṇu; who accordingly appeared to him in the form of Indra (verse 2399). The following is a part of their conversation. Māndhātṛi asks :

2429. *Yavanāḥ Kirātāḥ Gāndhārāś Chīnāḥ Savara-varvarāḥ | Śakāś Tushārāḥ Kankāś cha Pahlavāś chāndhra-madralākāḥ |* 2430. *Pauṇḍrāḥ Pulindāḥ Ramaṭāḥ Kāmbojāś chaiva sarvaśāḥ | brahma-kshattra-prasūtāś cha vaiśyāḥ śudrāś cha mānarāḥ | kathaṁ dharmāṁś charishyanti sarve vishaya-vāsināḥ | mad-ridhaiś cha kathaṁ sthāpyāḥ sarve vai dasyu-jivināḥ | etad ichhāmy ahaṁ śrotum bhagavaṁś tad bravīhi me |* tram bāndhu-bhūto hy asmākaṁ kshattriyāñāṁ sureśvara | *Indraḥ uvācha |* mātā-pitror hi śuśrūshā karttavyā sarva-dasyubhiḥ | āchāryya-guru-śuśrūshā tathaiवाशrama-vāsināṁ | bhūmipānāṁ cha śuśrūshā karttavyā sarva-dasyubhiḥ | *veda-dharma-kriyāś chaiva teshāṁ dharmo vidhīyate |* 2435. *Pitṛi-yajnāś tathā kūpāḥ prapāś cha śayanāni cha | dūnāni cha yathā-kālaṁ devijebhyo visṛijet sadā | ahīṁsā satyam akrodho vṛitti-dāyānupālanam | bharanām puttra-dārānāṁ śaucham adroha eva cha | dakshinā sarva-yajnānāṁ dātavyā bhūtim ichhatā | pākayajnāḥ mahārhāś cha dātavyāḥ sarva-dasyubhiḥ | etāny evamprakārāṇī vihitāni purā 'nagha | sarvalokasya karmāṇī karttavyāñīha pārthiva |* Mandhātā uvācha | dṛiṣyante mānushe loke sarva-varṇeshu *Dasyavaḥ |* lingāntare varttamānāḥ ūśrameshu chatursho api | *Indraḥ uvācha |* 2440. *Vinashṭāyām danda-nityām rāja-dharne nirākrite | sampramuhyanti bhūtāni rāja-daurātmyato 'nagha | asankhyātāḥ bhavishyanti bhikshavo linginas tathā | aśramāñāṁ vikalpāś cha nirṛitte'smin kṛite yuge | aśrinvantāḥ purāñānāṁ dharmānām paramāḥ gatiḥ | utpatham pratipateyante kāma-manyu-samṛitāḥ |*

"The Yavanas, Kirātas, Gāndhāras, Chīnas, Savaras, Varvaras, Sakas, Tushāras, Kankas, Pahlavas, Andhras, Madras, Pauṇḍras, Pu-

lindas, Ramaṭhas, Kāmbojas, men sprung from Brāhmans, and from Kshattriyas, persons of the Vaiśya and Sūdra castes—how shall all these people of different countries practise duty, and what rules shall kings like me prescribe for those who are living as Dasyus? Instruct me on these points; for thou art the friend of our Kshattriya race.' Indra answers: 'All the Dasyus should obey their parents, their spiritual directors, persons practising the rules of the four orders, and kings. It is also their duty to perform the ceremonics ordained in the Vedas. They should sacrifice to the Pitrīs, construct wells, buildings for the distribution of water, and resting places for travellers, and should on proper occasions bestow gifts on the Brāhmans. They should practise innocence, veracity, meekness, purity, and inoffensiveness; should maintain their wives and families; and make a just division of their property. Gifts should be distributed at all sacrifices by those who desire to prosper. All the Dasyus should offer costly pāka oblations. Such duties as these, which have been ordained of old, ought to be observed by all people.' Māndhāṭṛi observes: 'In this world of men, Dasyus are to be seen in all castes, living, under other garbs, even among men of the four orders (*āśramas*).' Indra replies: 'When criminal justice has perished, and the duties of government are disregarded, mankind become bewildered through the wickedness of their kings. When this Krita age has come to a close, innumerable mendicants and hypocrites shall arise, and the four orders become disorganized. Disregarding the excellent paths of ancient duty, and impelled by passion and by anger, men shall fall into wickedness,' etc. In these last lines it is implied that the Brahmanical polity of castes and orders was fully developed in the Kṛita [or golden] age. This idea, however, is opposed to the representations which we find in some though not in all other passages. See above, the various texts adduced in the first chapter.

In the Vishṇu Purāṇa, Bhāratavarsha (India) is said to "have its eastern border occupied by the Kirātas; and the western by the Yavanas; while the middle is inhabited by Kshattriyas, Vaiśyas, and Sūdras, engaged in their several fixed occupations of sacrifice, war, trade, etc." (Vishṇu Purāṇa, ii. 3, 7. *Purve Kiratāḥ yasyāntे paśchimo Yavanāḥ sthitāḥ | brāhmaṇāḥ kshattriyāḥ vaiśyāḥ madhye śūdrāś cha bhāgaśāḥ | ijjā-yuddha-vanijyādyair varttayanto ryavasthithāḥ |*).

Manu's account of the origin of the Yavanas, Sakas, Kāmbojas, etc., corresponds with the tenor of the following story, which we find in the fourth book of the Vishnu Purāṇa, sect. 3. Bāhu, the seventh king in descent from Hariśchandra (see above, p. 379) was overcome by the Haihāyas and Tālajanghas,³ and compelled to fly with his queens to the forests, where he died. After his death one of his wives gave birth to a son, who received the name of Sagara. When he had grown up, the youth learnt from his mother all that had befallen his father.

Para. 18. *Tataḥ pitṛi-rājya-haraṇāmarshito Haihaya-Tālajanghādi-badhāya pratijnām akarot prāyaśaścha Haihayān jaghāna | Śaka-Yavaṇa-Kāmboja-Pārada-Pahlavāḥ hanyamānās tat-kula-guruṁ Vaśishṭham śaraṇām yayuḥ |* 19. *Atha etān Vaśishtho jīvan-mṛitakān kṛitvā Sagaram āha “vatsa vatsa alam ebbir ati-jīvan-mṛitakair anusritaiḥ |* 20. *Ete cha mayā eva tvat-pratijnā-paripālanāya nija-dharma-dvija-sanga-parityāgām kāritūḥ” |* 21. *Sa “tathā” iti tad guru-vachanam abhinandya teshām veshānyatram akārayat | Yavanān apamundita-śiraśo 'rddha-mundān Śakān pralamba-keśān Pāradān Pahlavānās cha śmaśru-dharān nīḥ-svādhyāya-vāshaṭkārān etān anyāṁś cha kshattriyān chakāra | te cha nija-dharma-parityāgād brāhmaṇaś parityaktāḥ mlechhatām yayuḥ |*

“Being vexed at the loss of his paternal kingdom, he vowed to exterminate the Haihāyas and other enemies who had conquered it. Accordingly he destroyed nearly all the Haihāyas. When the Śakas, Yavanas, Kāmbojas, Pāradas, and Pahlavas were about to undergo a similar fate, they had recourse to Vaśishṭha, the king's family-priest, who interposed in their behalf in these words addressed to Sagara, representing them as virtually dead : ‘You have done enough, my son, in the way of pursuing these men, who are as good as dead. In order that your vow might be fulfilled, I have compelled them to abandon the duties of their caste, and all association with the twice-born.’ Agreeing to his spiritual guide's proposal, Sagara compelled these tribes to alter their costume. He made the Yavanas shave their heads, the Śakas shave half their heads, the Pāradas wear long hair, and the Pahlavas beards. These and other Kshatriyas he deprived of the

³ See Wilson's Vishnu Purāṇa, 4to. edit., p. 416 and 418 note. In the note to p. 418 the Āvāntyas are mentioned, on the authority of the Vāyu Purāṇa, as being a branch of the Haihāyas. In Manu, x. 21, the Āvāntyas are said to be descended from Brāhmaṇa Vṛūtyas.

study of the Vedas, and the vashatkara.) In consequence of their abandonment of their proper duties, and of their desertion by the Brāhmans, they became Mlechhas."

This story is also related in the *Harivamśa*, from which I extract the concluding part of the narrative :

773. *Aurvas tu jātakarmādi tasya kṛitvā mahātmanah | adhyāpya veden akhilān tato 'stram pratyapūdayat | āgneyaṁ tu mahābāhur amarair api dussaham | sa tenastra-balena jau balena cha samanvitah | Haihayān nijaghānāsu kruddho Rudraḥ paśūn iva | ājahāra cha lokeshu kīrtim kīrttimatām varah | tataḥ Śakān sa-yavanān Kāmbojān Pāradāns tathā | Pahlavām̄s chaiva niśshēhān karttum vyavasitaḥ kila | te badhyamānāḥ virena Sagarena mahātmanā | Vaśishṭham̄ ūrāṇām gatvā pranipetur maniṣinām | Vaśishṭhas tv atha tān dṛishṭvā samayena mahādyutih | Sagaram vārayāmāsa teshām dattvā 'bhyam tadā | Sagaraḥ svām pratijnām cha guror vākyam̄ niśamya cha | dharmam̄ jaghāna teshām vai veśānyatavām chakāra ha | arddhaṁ Śakānām śiraso mundayitvā vyasarjayat | Yavanānām śirah̄ sarvān Kāmbojānām tathaiva cha | Pāradāḥ mukta-keśūścha Pahlavāḥ śmaśru-dhārinah | nissvādhyāya -vashaṭkārāḥ kṛitās tena mahātmanā | Śakāḥ Yavaṇa-kāmbojāḥ Pāradāḥ Pahlavās tathā | Koli-sarpāḥ sa-Mahishāḥ Dārvās Cholāḥ sa-Keralāḥ | sarve te kshattriyās tāpā teshām dharma nirākṛitaḥ | Vaśishṭha-vachanād rājan Sagareṇa mahātmanā |*

"Aurva having performed Sagara's natal and other rites, and taught him all the Vedas, then provided him with a fiery missile, such as even the gods could not withstand. By the power of this weapon, and accompanied by an army, Sagara, incensed, speedily slew the Haihayas, as Rudra slaughters beasts; and acquired great renown throughout the world. He then set himself to exterminate the Śakas, Yavanas, Kāmbojas, Pāradas, and Pahlavas. But they, when on the point of being slaughtered by Sagara, had recourse to the sage Vasiṣṭha, and fell down before him. Vasiṣṭha beholding them, by a sign restrained Sagara, giving them assurance of protection. Sagara, after considering his own vow, and listening to what his teacher had to say, destroyed their caste (*dharma*), and made them change their costumes. He released the Śakas, after causing the half of their heads to be shaven;—and the Yavanas and Kāmbojas, after having had their heads entirely shaved. The Pāradas were made to wear

long hair, and the Pahlavas to wear beards. They were all excluded from the study of the Vedas, and from the vashaṭkāra. The Sakas, Yavanas, Kāmbojas, Pāradas, Pahlavas, Kolisarpas, Mahishas, Dārvas, Cholas, and Keralas had all been Kshattriyas; but were deprived of their social and religious position by the great Sagara, according to the advice of Vaśishṭha." Other tribes are mentioned in the following line who seem to have undergone the same treatment.

It would appear from this legend, as well as from the quotations which preceded it, that the Epic and Puranic writers believed all the surrounding tribes to belong to the same original stock with themselves; though they, at the same time, erroneously imagined that these tribes had fallen away from the Brahmanical institutions; thus assigning to their own polity an antiquity to which it could in reality lay no claim. Any further explanations on these points, however, must be sought in the second volume of this work.

In the passages quoted above, pp. 391, 393, and 398 from the Mahābhārata and Rāmāyaṇa, it is stated that Sakas, Yavanas, Pahlavas, etc., were created by Vaśishṭha's wonder-working cow, in order to repel the aggression of Viśvāmitra. It does not, however, appear that it is the object of that legend to represent this miraculous creation as the origin of those tribes. The narrators, if they had any distinct meaning, may not have intended anything more than that the cow called into existence large armies, of the same stock with particular tribes previously existing.

It is not very easy to say whether it is only the inhabitants of Bhāratavarsha (viz. that portion of Jambudvīpa which answers to India) whom the Puranic writers intend to represent as deriving their origin from the four primeval Indian castes. Perhaps the writers themselves had no very clear ideas. At all events the conditions of life are different in the two cases. The accounts which these writers give us of the other divisions of Jambudvīpa, and of the other Dvīpas, or continents, of which they imagined the earth to be composed, and their respective inhabitants, will be considered in the next chapter.

CHAPTER VI.

PURANIC ACCOUNTS OF THE PARTS OF THE EARTH EXTERIOR TO BHĀRATAVARSHA, OR INDIA.

It will clearly appear from the contents of the present chapter that the authors or compilers of the Purāṇas in reality knew nothing of any part of the world except that immediately around them. Whenever they wander away beyond their own neighbourhood, they at once lose themselves in a misty region of fiction, and give the most unbridled scope to their fantastic imaginations.

The following is the account given in the Vishṇu Purāṇa regarding the divisions of the earth, and their inhabitants. Priyavrata, son of Śvāyambhuva, or the first Manu (see above, pp. 65 and 72) who is separated from the present time by an enormous interval (see pp. 43 ff. and 298, above), "distributed the seven dvīpas,¹ of which the earth is composed, among seven of his sons" (ii. 1, 7. *Priyavrato dadau teshāṁ saptānām muni-sattama | vibhajya sapta dvīpāni Maitreya sumahāt-manām*).

The Bhāgavata Purāṇa gives us the following account, v. 1. 30. *Tad anabhinandan sama-javena rathena jyotirmayena rajañīm api dināñ kari-shyāmi iti saptakritvas taranīm anuparyyakrāmad dvitiyah iva patangah | [evañ kurvānam Priyavrattam āgatya Chaturānanas "tavādhikāro 'yañ na bhavati" iti nivārayāmāsa]* (The words in brackets are not in the Bombay edition, but are taken from Burnouf's.) 31. *Ye vai u ha tad-ratha-charana-nemi-krita-parikhātās te sapta sindhavah asan yataḥ eva kritāḥ sapta bhavo dvipāḥ |²* "Priyavrata, being dissatisfied that only

¹ The original division of the earth into seven continents is assigned to Nārāyaṇa in the form of Brahmā ; see above, pp. 61 and 76.

² In this passage we find the particles *vai*, *u*, *ha*, occurring all together as they do in the Vedic hymns and Brūhmaṇas. This circumstance might seem to suggest the

half the earth was illuminated at one time by the solar rays, "followed the sun seven times round the earth in his own flaming car of equal velocity, like another celestial orb, resolved to turn night into day. [Brahmā, however, came and stopped him, saying this was not his province.] The ruts which were formed by the motion of his chariot wheels were the seven oceans. In this way the seven continents of the earth were made."

The same circumstance is alluded to at the commencement of the 16th section of the same book, where the king says to the rishi: verse 2. *Tatprāpi Priyavrata-ratha-charana-parikhātāḥ saptaabhīḥ sapta sindhavāḥ upakṛiptāḥ | yataḥ etasyāḥ sapta-dvīpa-riśeṣha-vikalpas trayā bhagavān khalu sūchitāḥ |* "The seven oceans were formed by the seven ruts of the wheels of Priyavrata's chariot; hence, as you have indicated, the earth has become divided into seven different continents."

It is clear that this account given by the Bhāgavata Purāṇa of the manner in which the seven oceans and continents were formed does not agree with the description in the Vishnu Purāṇa as quoted above (p. 51).

These seven continents are called "Jāmbū dvīpa, Plaksha dvīpa, Sāl-possibility of the passage, or its substance, being derived from some of the Brähmanas (to which, as we have seen, p. 155 note, the compiler of this Purāṇa was in the habit of resorting for his materials); but the style has otherwise nothing of an archaic caste, and I am not aware that the dvīpas are mentioned in any of the Brähmanas. It is also remarkable that the words *sapta sindhavaḥ* are here used for "seven oceans." This phrase occurs several times in the Vedas. For instance, it is to be found in the Vājasanēyi Sanhitā (of the Yajur-veda), 38, 26, *yōvatī dyāvā-prithivī yūvach cha sapta sindhavo vitasthīre |* "As wide as are the earth and sky, and as far as the seven oceans extend." The commentator Mahidharu understands the latter in the Puranic sense, as the oceans of milk, etc. (*sapta sindhavaḥ sapta samudrāḥ kshirādyūḥ*). The hemistich I have quoted from the Vāj. Sanhitā occurs somewhat modified, and in a different connexion, in the Atharva-veda, iv. 6, 2. The same phrase, *sapta sindhavaḥ*, is to be found also in several places in the first Book of the Rig-veda. (See Benfey's Glossary to Sāma-veda, sub voce *suptan*.) In Rig-veda i. 32, 12, it is said to Indra *avāśrīyah sarttave sapta sindhūn |* "Thou hast let loose the seven rivers to flow." Sūyāna understands this of the Ganges and other rivers, seven in number, mentioned in the Rig Veda, x. 75, 5: *imam me Gange Yamune Sarasvatī S'utudri stomaṁ sachatā Parushṇya |* "Receive this my hymn with favour, o Gāngū, Yamunā, Sarasvatī, S'utudrī, with the Parushṇī, etc.;" but in this distich ten rivers in all are mentioned. (See Wilson's note to Rig-veda, i. 32, 12, vol. i. p. 88, of his translation). See also hymns 34, 8; 35, 8; 71, 7; and 102, 2, of the first, and 58, 12, and 85, 1, of the eighth Books of the Rig-veda. The "seven rivers" of the Veda are, according to Professor Müller (Chips from a German Workshop, vol. i. 63), "the Indus, the five rivers of the Punjab and the Sarasvatī."

17. Seven-seipped continents, created secret by
nali dvīpa, Kuśadvīpa, Kraunchadvīpa, Sāka dvīpa, and Pushkara dvīpa.
They are surrounded severally by seven great seas, of salt water, sugar-
cane juice, wine, clarified butter, curds, milk, and fresh water" (V.P. ii. 2,
Jambū-plakshāhvayau dvīpau Sālmaliś ohāparo dvīja | *Kusah Kraun-*
has tathā Sākah Pushkaraś chaiva saptamahā | 5. Ete dvīpāḥ samudrais
u sapta saptabhir ārvitāḥ | *lavanekshu-surā-sarpir-dadhi-dugdha-jalaīh*
amam |). Jambu dvīpa is in the centre of all these continents (Wilson,
vol. ii. p. 110). It fell to the lot of Agnīdhra, son of Priyavrata, who
again divided it among his nine sons (Wilson, ii. 101). In the centre
of Jambu dvīpa is the golden mountain Meru, 84,000 yojanas high, and
crowned by the great city of Brahmā (ibid. p. 118). There are in this
continent six cross-ranges of boundary-mountains, those of Himavat
= Himādri, or Himālaya), Hemakūṭa, and Nishadha lying south of
Meru; and those of Nila, Śveta, and Śringin, situated to the north-
ward. Of these, Nishadha and Nila are the nearest to Meru, while
Himavat and Śringin are at the south and north extremities. The
nine Varshas or divisions of Jambu dvīpa, separated by these and other
ranges, are Bhārata (India), south of the Himavat mountains, and the
southernmost of all; then (2) Kimpurusha, (3) Harivarsha, (4) Ilāvṛita,
(5) Ramyaka, (6) Hiranmaya, and (7) Uttara Kuru, each to the north
of the last; while (8) Bhadrūṣya and (9) Ketumāla lie respectively to
the east and west of Ilāvṛita, the central region. Bhārata Varsha, and
Uttara Kuru, as well as Bhadrūṣya and Ketumāla,³ are situated on the
exterior of the mountain ranges. (Wilson, ii. pp. 114-116, and 123.)
The eight Varshas to the north of Bhārata Varsha (or India) are thus
described:

V.P. ii. 1, 11. Yāni Kimpurushādīni varshāny ashtau mahāmunes |
eshām svabhāviki siddhiḥ sukha-prāyā hy ayatnataḥ | 12. Viparyyayo

³ The Mahābhūrata tells us, Bhishmaparvan, verses 227-8, in regard to the Varsha
of Ketumāla : *ayur dasa sahasrāni varshānām tatra Bhārata | suvarna-varṇāś cha*
nārāḥ striyas chāpsarasopamāḥ | anāmoyāḥ vīta-śokāḥ nityam mudita-mānasāḥ |
āyante mānavāḥ tatra nishṭapta-kanaka-prabhāḥ | "The people there live ten
thousand years. The men are of the colour of gold, and the women fair as celestial
ymphs. Men are born there of the colour of burnished gold, live free from sickness
and sorrow, and enjoy perpetual happiness." The men by the side of the mountain
Sandhamādana, west of Meru, are said (v. 231) "to be black, of great strength and
igour, while the women are of the colour of blue lotuses, and very beautiful" (*tatra*
rishṇāḥ nārāḥ rājāṁ tejo-yuktāḥ mahābalāḥ | striyāḥ chotpala-varṇābhāḥ *agni-*
unpriu-deśiṣṇāḥ).

*na tatprasti jarā-mṛityu-bhayañ na cha | dharmādharmau na teshv āstāñ
nottamādhama-madhyamāḥ | na teshv asti yugārastha kshettreshv ashṭasū
sarvadā |*

"In the eight Varshas, called Kimpurusha and the rest (*i.e.* in all except Bhārata Varsha) the inhabitants enjoy a natural perfection attended with complete happiness obtained without exertion. There is there no vicissitude, nor decrepitude, nor death, nor fear; no distinction of virtue and vice, none of the inequalities denoted by the words best, worst, and intermediate, nor any change resulting from the succession of the four yugas." And again :

ii. 2, 35. *Yāni Kimpurushādyāni varshāny ashṭau mahāmune | na teshu śoko nāyāso nodvega-kshud-bhayādikam | sushṭāḥ prajāḥ nirātankāḥ sarva-duḥkha-vivarjītāḥ | 36. Daśa-dvādaśa-varshānāñ sahasrāṇi sthirā-yushāḥ | na teshu varshate devo bhaumyāny ambhāñsi teshu vai | 37. Kṛita-tretādikā naiva teshu sthāneshu kalpanā |*

"In those eight Varshas there is neither grief, nor weariness, nor anxiety, nor hunger, nor fear. The people live in perfect health, free from every suffering, for ten or twelve thousand years. Indra does not rain on those Varshas, for they have abundance of springs. There is there no division of time into the Kṛita, Tretā, and other ages."

The Uttara Kurus, it should be remarked, may have been a real people, as they are mentioned in the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa, viii. 14 :⁴

Atha enam udīchyāñ dīśi viśve devāḥ shaḍbhīś chaiva panchaviṁśair ahobhir abhyashinchann etena cha trichena etena cha yajushā etābhīś cha vyāhṛitibhir vairājyāya | tasmād etasyām udīchyāñ dīśi ye ke cha parena Himavantañ janapadāḥ "Uttara-Kuravaḥ Uttara-Madrāḥ" iti vairājyāya eva te 'bhishichyante

"Then in the northern region during six days on which the Panchaviṁśa stoma was recited, the Viśve-devas inaugurated him (Indra) for glorious dominion with these three ṛik-verses, this yajush-verse, and these mystic monosyllables. Wherefore the several nations who dwell in this northern quarter, beyond the Himavat, the Uttara Kurus and the Uttara Madras, are consecrated to glorious dominion (*vairājya*), and people term them the glorious (*virāj*)."
See Colebrooke's Misc. Essays, i. 38-43; Dr. Haug's translation of the Ait. Brāhmaṇa; and Prof. Weber's review of this translation in Ind. Studien, ix. pp. 341 f.

⁴ Quoted by Weber in Ind. St. i. 218.

In another passage of the same work,⁶ however, the Uttara Kurus are treated as belonging to the domain of mythology :

Ait. Br. viii. 23. *Etañ ha vai aindram mahābhishekam Vāsishṭhaḥ Sātyahavyo'tyarātaye Jānāntapaye provācha | tasmād u Atyarātir Jānāntapir arājā san vīdayayā samantañ sarvataḥ pṛithivīm jayan pariṣyāya | sa ha uvācha Vāsishṭhaḥ Sātyahavyaḥ “ajaishīr vai sumantañ sarvataḥ pṛithivīm mahad mā gamaya” iti | sa ha uvācha Atyarātir Jānāntapir “yadā brāhmaṇa uttara-kurūn jayeyām trām u ha eva pṛithiryai rājā syāḥ senāpatir eva te ‘haṁ syām’” iti | sa ha uvācha Vāsishṭhaḥ Sātyahavyo “dera-kshetrañ vai tad na rai tad marttyo jetum arhaty adruksho me ā ‘taḥ idañ dade’” iti | tato ha Atyarāti Jānāntapim ātta-vīryyam niśśukram amitra-tapanah Sushminah Saivyo rājā jaghāna | tasmād evañ-vidushe brāhmaṇāya evañ-chakrushe kshattriyo na druhyed na id rāshṭrād arapadyeyad (?) na id vāma-prāṇo jahad itih*

“Sātyahavya of the family of Vasishtha declared this great inauguration similar to Indra’s to Atyarāti, son of Janāntapa; and in consequence Atyarāti, though not a king, by his knowledge, went round the earth on every side to its ends, reducing it to subjection. Sātyahavya then said to him, ‘Thou hast subdued the earth in all directions to its limits; exalt me now to greatness.’ Atyarāti replied, ‘When, o Brāhmaṇ, I conquer the Uttara Kurus, thou shalt be king of the earth, and I will be only thy general.’ Sātyahavya rejoined, ‘That is the realm of the gods; no mortal may make the conquest of it: Thou hast wronged me; therefore I take all this away from thee.’ In consequence Sushmina, king of the Sīvis, vexer of his foes, slew Atyarāti son of Janāntapa who had been bereft of his valour and energy. Wherefore let no Kshatriya wrong a Brāhmaṇ who possesses such knowledge and has so acted, lest he should be expelled from his kingdom, be short-lived, and perish.”

The Uttara Kurus are also mentioned in the description of the northern region in the Kishkindhā Kāṇḍa of the Rāmāyaṇa, 43, 38, *Uttarāḥ Kuravas tatra krita-punya-pratiśrāyah* | “There are the Uttara Kurus, the abodes of those who have performed works of merit.” In v. 57 it is said: *na kathanchana gantavyām kurūnām uttareṇa vah | anyeshām api bhūtānām nānukrāmati rai gatih* | “You must not go to the north of the Kurus: other beings also may not proceed further.”

⁶ See Colebrooke’s Essays, i. 43; Dr. Haug’s translation; and Ind. Stud. ix. 346.

In the same way when Arjuna, in his career of conquest, arrives at the country of the Uttara Kurus in Harivarsha, he is thus addressed by the guards at the gate of the city, M. Bh. Sabhāparvan, 1045 :

*Pārtha nedāṁ trayā śakyam purāṁ jetuṁ kathanchana | upāvarttāsva
kalyāṇa paryāptam idam Achyuta | idam purāṁ yaḥ pravīśed dhruvaṁ
na sa bhaved naraḥ | . . . na chāttra kinchij jetaryam Arjunāttra pra-
drīṣyate | Uttarāḥ Kuraro hy ete nāttra yuddham pravarttate | pravishṭo
'pi hi Kaunteya neha drakshyasi kinchana | na hi mānusha-dehena śakyam
attrābhīrīkshitum |*

“Thou canst not, son of Prīthā, subdue this city. Refrain, fortunate man, for it is completely secure. He who shall enter this city must be certainly more than man. . . . Nor is there anything to be seen here which thou canst conquer. Here are the Uttara Kurus, whom no one attempts to assail. And even if thou shouldst enter, thou couldst behold nothing. For no one can perceive anything here with human senses.”⁶

In the Anuśāsanaparvan, line 2841, Kuśika says, on seeing a magic palace formed by Chyavana (see above, p. 475):

*Aho saha śarīrena prāpto 'smi paramāṁ gatim | Uttarān vā Kurūn
punyān atharā 'py Amarāvatī |*

“I have attained, even in my embodied condition, to the heavenly state; or to the holy Northern Kurus, or to Amarāvatī [the city of Indra] !”

“The country to the north of the ocean, and to the south of the Himādri (or snowy range), is Bhārata Varsha, where the descendants of Bharata dwell” (V.P. ii. 3, 1. *Uttaram yad samudrasya Himādres
śhaiva dakshinam | varsham tad Bhārataṁ nāma Bhāratī yatra santatiḥ*). It is divided into nine parts (*bhedāḥ*), Indradvīpa, Kaścrumat, Tāmra-*vṝṇa*, Gābhāstimāt, Nāgadvīpa, Saumya, Gāndharva, Vāruṇa; and “this ninth dvīpa,” which is not named, is said to be “surrounded by the ocean” *ayaṁ tu navamas teshāṁ dvīpāḥ sāgara-saṁvritāḥ*), and to be a thousand yojanas long from north to south. “On the east side of it are the Kirātas, on the west the Yavanas, and in the centre are the Brāhmans, Kshattriyas, Vaiśyas, and Sūdras, following their respective occupations of sacrifice, arms, trade, etc.” (The text of this passage, V.P. ii. 3, 7, has been already quoted in p. 485).

⁶ See the second vol. of this work, pp. 332-337, and vol. iv., p. 376.

The Vishṇu Purāṇa contains a very short list of the tribes inhabiting Bhārata Varsha. (See Wilson, vol. ii. pp. 132 f.) It specifies, as the principal, only the Kurus, Pāñchālas, the people of Kāmarūpa, the Punḍras, Kalingas, Magadhas, Saurāshṭras, Sūras, Bhīras, Arbudas, Kārūshas, Mālavas, Sauvīras, Saindhavas, Hūṇas, Sālvas, Sākalas, Madras, Rāmas, Ambashṭhas, and Pāraśikas.⁷ These tribes seem to be all confined to India and its vicinity.

The praises of Bhārata Varsha are celebrated as follows :

V.P. ii. 3, 11. *Chatvāri Bhāratae varshe yugāny attra mahāmune | kritaṁ tretā dvāparaś cha kaliś chānyatra na kvachit |* 12. *Tapas tapyanti yatayo juhrate chāttra yajvināḥ | dānāni chāttra dīyante paralokārtham ādarāt | purushair yajna-purusho Jambu-dvīpe sadejyate | yajnair yajna-mayo Vishṇur anya-dvīpeshu chānyathā |* 13. *Attrāpi Bhārataṁ śreshṭhaṁ Jambo-dvīpe mahāmune | yato hi karma-bhūr eshā ato'nyāḥ bhoga-bhūma-yāḥ | attra janma-sahasrānāṁ sahasrair api sattamam | kadachil labhate jantur mānushyam punya-sanchayam | gāyanti devāḥ kila gitakāni “dhan-yāś tu ye Bhārata-bhūmi-bhāgē | svargāpavargasya dahe tu bhūte bha-vanti bhūyāḥ purushāḥ suratvāt |* 14. *Karmāny asankalpita-tat-phalāni sannyasya Vishṇau paramātmā-rāupe | avāpya tām karma-mahēm anante tasmin layām ye tv amalāḥ prayānti |* 15. *Jānīma naitat kva rayaṁ vilīne svarga-prade karmani deha-bandham | prāpsyāma dhanyāḥ khalu te manushyāḥ ye Bhāratae nendriya-viprahīnāḥ” |*

In Bhārata Vārsha, and nowhere else, do the four Yugas, Kṛita, Tretā, Dvāpara, and Kali exist. 12. Here devotees perform austerities, and priests sacrifice ; here gifts are bestowed, to testify honour, for the sake of the future world. In Jambudvīpa Vishṇu, the sacrificial Man, whose essence is sacrifice, is continually worshipped by men with sacrifices ; and in other ways in the other dvīpas.⁸ 13. In this respect Bhārata is the most excellent division of Jambudvīpa ; for this is the land of works, while the others are places of enjoyment. Perhaps in a thousand thousand births, a living being obtains here that most excellent condition, humanity, the receptacle of virtue. The gods sing, ‘Happy are those beings, who, when the rewards of their merits have

⁷ The list in the Mahābhārata (Bhishmaparvah, 346 ff.) is much longer. See Wilson's Vishṇu Purāṇa, vol. ii. pp. 132 f., and 156 ff.

⁸ “In other ways,” i.e. in the form of Soma, Vāyu, Sūryya, etc.” (*Anyathā Soma-vāyu-sūryyādi-rūpah* |). Commentator.

been exhausted in heaven, are, after being gods, again born as men in Bhārata Varsha ; (14) who, when born in that land of works, resign to the supreme and eternal Vishṇu their works, without regard to their fruits, and attain by purity to absorption in him. 15. We know not where we shall next attain a corporeal condition, when the merit of our works shall have become exhausted; but happy are those men who exist in Bhārata Varsha with perfect senses.' "

To the same effect the Bhāgavata Purāṇa says, v. 17, 11 :

Tattpapi Bhāratam era varshaṁ karma-kshetram anyāny ashṭa-varshāṇi svarginām puṇya-śeshopabhoga-sthānāni bhaumāni svarga-padāni ryapadiṣanti | 12. Eshu purushāṇām ayuta-purushāyur-varshāṇām devakalpūnām nāgāyuta-prāṇānām rajra-saṁhanana-vayo-moda-pramudita-mahāsaurata-mithuna-ryacāyāpararga-varsha-dhṛitaika-garbha-kalatrāṇām tretā-yuga-samāḥ kālo varttate |

" Of these, Bhāratavarsha alone is the land of works: the other eight Varshas are places where the celestials enjoy the remaining rewards of their works; they are called terrestrial parades. 12. In them men pass an existence equal to that of the Tretā age, living for the space of ten thousand ordinary lives, on an equality with gods, having the vitality of ten thousand elephants, and possessed of wives who bear one child after a year's conception following upon sexual intercourse attended by all the gratification arising from adamantine bodies and from vigorous youth."

The commentator remarks on verse 11 : *Dirya-bhauma-bila-bhedāt trividhāḥ svargāḥ | tatra bhauma-svargasya padāni sthānāni ryapadiṣanti |* " Heaven is of three kinds, in the sky, on earth, and in the abyss. Here the other Varshas are called terrestrial heavens."

It is curious to remark that in the panegyric on Bhārata Varsha it is mentioned as one of the distinguishing advantages of that division of Jambudvīpa that sacrifice is performed there, though, a little further on, it is said to be practised in Sūlmali dvīpa also.

It would at first sight appear from the preceding passage (ii. 3, 11) of the Vishṇu Purāṇa (as well as from others which we shall encounter below), to be the intention of the writer to represent the inhabitants of Bhārata Varsha as a different race, or, at least as living under quite different conditions, from the inhabitants of the other dvīpas, and even of the other divisions (*varshas*) of Jambu dvīpa itself. From the use

of the word *mānushya* (humanity) here applied to the inhabitants of Bhārata Varsha, viewed in reference to the context, it would seem to be a natural inference that all the people exterior to it were beings of a different race. Yet in the descriptions of Kuśa dvīpa and Pushkara dvīpa (see below) the words *manujāḥ* and *mānavāḥ* “descendants of Manu,” or “men,” are applied to the dwellers in those continents. In the passage of the Jātimālā, moreover, translated by Mr. Colebrooke (Misc. Essays, ii. 179), we are told that “a chief of the twice-born tribe was brought by Vishṇu’s eagle from Sāka dvīpa; thus have Sāka dvīpa Brāhmans become known in Jambu dvīpa.” According to this verse, too, there should be an affinity of race between the people of these two dvīpas. It is also to be noted that the descendants of Priyavrata became kings of all the dvīpas, as well as of all the varshas of Jambu dvīpa (see above, pp. 489, 491). And in the passage quoted above, p. 478, from the Vishṇu Purāṇa, iv. 11, 3, it is said of Arjuna, son of Kṛitavīrya, that he was “lord of the seven dvīpas,” “that he ruled over the earth with all its dvīpas.”⁹ If, however, the kings were of the human race, it is natural to infer the same of the people.

But, in a subject of this sort, where the writers were following the suggestions of imagination only, it is to be expected that we should find inconsistencies.

Jambu dvīpa is surrounded by a sea of salt water (Wilson, V.P. ii 109); and that sea again is bounded on its outer side by the dvīpa or continent of Plaksha running all round it. (V.P. ii. 4, 1. *Kshāro-dena yathā dvīpo Jambu-sanjno 'bhiveshṭitaḥ | sañveshṭya kshāram udadhim Plaksha-dvīpas tathā sthitāḥ*). According to this scheme the several continents and seas form concentric circles, Jambu dvīpa being a circular island occupying the centre of the system.

Plaksha dvīpa is of twice the extent of Jambu dvīpa. The character and condition of its inhabitants are described as follows:

V. P. ii. 4, 5. *Na chaivāsti yugārasthā teshu sthāneshu saptasu | 6. Tretā-yuga-samāḥ kālaḥ sarvadaiva mahāmate | Plaksha-dvīpādīshu brahman Śākadvīpāntākeshu vai | 7. Pancha-varsha-sahasrāṇi janāḥ jīvanty anāmayaḥ | dharmāḥ panchasv athaiteshu varṇāśrama - vibhāga - jāḥ |*

⁹ Purūravas is said to have possessed thirteen islands (dvīpas) of the ocean (above p. 307).

*varṇas tattrāpi chatvāras tān nibodha gadāmi te | Aryyakāḥ Kuravaś
chāira Tīrāśāḥ Bhārīnaś cha ye | cipra-kshattriya-vaīsyāś te śūdrāś cha
muni-sattama |*

"In those seven provinces [which compose Plaksha dvīpa] the division of time into Yugas does not exist: but the character of existence is always that of the Treṭā age. In the [five] dvīpas, beginning with Plaksha and ending with Sāka, the people live 5000 years, free from sickness. In those five dvīpas duties arise from the divisions of castes and orders. There are there also four castes, Āryyakas, Kurus, Vivāśas, and Bhāvins, who are the Brāhmans, Kshattriyas, Vaiśyas, and Śūdras," and whose worship is thus described:

9. *Ijyate tatra bhagavāns tair varṇair Aryyakādibhiḥ | soma-rūpī jagat-srashṭā sarvāḥ sarveśvara Hariḥ |* "Hari who is All, and the lord of all, and the creator of the world, is adored in the form of Soma by these classes, the Āryyakas, etc."

The inhabitants of this dvīpa receive different names in the Bhāgavata Purāṇa, being there called (v. 20, 4) "Hansas, Patangas, Ūrdhvāyanas, and Satyāngas, four castes, who, purified from passion and darkness by the touch of the waters of these rivers, live a thousand years, resemble the gods in their appearance and in their manner of procreation, and worship with the triple Veda the divine Soul, the Sun, who is the gate of heaven, and who is co-essential with the Vedas" (*Yāsāṁ jalopasparśana-vidhūta-rajas-tamaso Haṁsa-patangordhvāyanasatyāṅga-sanjnāś chatvāra varṇāḥ sahasrāyusho vibudhopama-sandarśana-prajananāḥ svarga-dvāram trayyā vidyayā bhagavantām trayimayaṁ sūryam ātmānaṁ yajante*).

In regard to Plaksha and the other four following dvīpas, the Bhāgavata Purāṇa says, ibid. para. 6, that "their men are all alike in respect of natural perfection as shewn in length of life, senses, vigour, force, strength, intelligence, and courage" (*Plakshādīshu panchasu purushānām āyur intriyam ojaḥ saho balam buddhir vikramāḥ iti cha sarveshāṁ autpattiḥ siddhir avikeshena varttate |*).

Plaksha dvīpa is surrounded by a sea of sugar-cane juice of the same compass as itself. ii. 4, 9, *Plaksha - dvīpa - pramāṇena Plaksha - dvīpah samāvṛitaḥ | tathaivekshu-rasodena parivesānukārinā |* Round the outer margin of this sea, and twice as extensive, runs Sālmala dvīpa (verse 11. *Sālmalena samudro 'sau dvīpenekshu - rasodakaḥ | vistara-*

dvigunenātha sarvataḥ saṁvritah sthitah). It is divided into seven Varshas, or divisions. Of their inhabitants it is said :

V. P. ii. 4, 12. *Saptaitāni tu varshāṇi chāturvarṇya-yutāni cha | Sālmale ye tu varnāś cha vasanti te mahāmune | kapilāś chārunāḥ pītāḥ kṛishnāś chaiva prīthak prīthak | brāhmaṇāḥ kshattriyāḥ vaiśyāḥ śūdrāś chaiva yajanti te | bhagavantaṁ samastasya Viṣṇum ātmānam aryayam | Vāyubhūtam makha-śreshṭhair yajvino yajna-saṁsthitam | 13. Devānām attra sānnidhyam atīva sumanoharam |*

“ These seven Varshas have a system of four castes. The castes which dwell there are severally the Kapilas, Arunas, Pitas, and Kṛishnas (or the Tawny, the Purple, the Yellow, and the Black). These, the Brāhmans, Kshattriyas, Vaiśyas, and Śūdras, worship with excellent sacrifices Viṣṇu, the divine and imperishable Soul of all things, in the form of Vāyu, and abiding in sacrifice. Here the vicinity of the gods is very delightful to the soul.”

The Bhāgavata Purāṇa says of this dvīpa, v. 20, 11 : *Tad-varsha-purushāḥ Srutadhara-viryadhabra-vasundhara-reshundhara-sanjnāḥ bhagavantaṁ vedamayaṁ somam ātmānam redena yajante |* “ The men of the different divisions of this dvīpa, called Srutadharas, Viryadharas, Vasundharas, and Ishundharas, worship with the divine Soul Soma, who is co-essential with the Veda.”

This dvīpa is surrounded by a sea of wine of the same compass as itself (v. 13. *Esha dvīpah samudreṇa surodena samāvritah | vistārāch chhālmalasyaiva samena tu samantataḥ*). The exterior shore of this sea is encompassed by Kuśa dvīpa, which is twice as extensive as Sālmala dvīpa (v. 13. *Surodakah parirritah Kuśadvīpena sarvataḥ | Sālmalasya tu vistārād dvigunena samantataḥ*). The inhabitants of Kuśa dvīpa are thus described, V.P. ii 4, 14 :

Tasyāṁ vasanti manujāḥ saha Daiteya-dānavaiḥ | tathaiva deva-gandharva - yaksha - kimpurushādayaiḥ | varnāś tatatrāpi chatvāro nijānushthāna-tatparāḥ | Daminaḥ S'usmināḥ Snehāḥ Mandehāś cha mahāmune | brāhmaṇāḥ kshattriyāḥ vaiśyāḥ śūdrāś chānukramoditāḥ | 15. Yathokta-karma-karttritvāt svādhikāra-kshayāya te | tattra te tu Kuśa-dvīpe Brahma-rūpāṁ Janārddanam | yajantaḥ kshapayanty ugram adhikāram phala-pradam |

“ In this set of Varshas (of Kuśa dvīpa) dwell men with Daityas, Dānavas, Devas, Gandharvas, Yakshas, Kimpurushas, and other beings.

There, too, there are four castes, pursuing their proper observances, Damins, Sushmins, Snehas, and Mandchas, who in the order specified are Brāhmans, Kshattriyas, Vaiśyas, and Sūdras. In order to destroy their right [to reward] derived from the performance of these works, they worship Janārdana in the form of Brahma, and so neutralize this direful merit which brings rewards."

Of Kuśa dvīpa the Mahābhārata tells us, Bhishmaparvan, verses 455-7: *Eteshu dera-gandharvāḥ prajāścha jagatīśvaraḥ | viharante ramante cha na teshu mriyate janāḥ | na teshu dasyaraḥ santi mlechha-jātyo 'pi rā nṛipaḥ | gaura-prāyo janāḥ sarrah sukumāras cha pārthiraḥ |* "In these (Varshas of Kuśa dvīpa), gods, Gandharvas, and living creatures, amuse and enjoy themselves. No one dies there. There are no Dasyus or Mlechhas there. The people are fair, and of very delicate forms." The Bhāgavata Purāṇa, v. 20, 16, says, "The people of this dvīpa are called Kuśalas, Kovidas, Abhiyuktas, and Kulakas" (*Kuśa-dvīpaukasah Kuśala-kovidabhiyukta-kulaka-sanjnāḥ*).

Kuśa dvīpa is surrounded by a sea of clarified butter, of the same circumference as itself.

Around this sea runs Krauncha dvīpa which is twice as large as Kuśa dvīpa. The V. P. says, ii. 4, 19: *Sarveshv eteshu ramyeshu varsha-śaila-vareshu cha | nirasantī nirātankāḥ salā dera-ganaiḥ prajāḥ | Pushkarāḥ Pushkalāḥ Dhanyāś Tishmāś chāttra mahāmune | brāhmaṇāḥ kshattriyāḥ vaiśyāḥ śūdrāś chānukramoditāḥ |* "In all these pleasant division-mountains of this dvīpa the people dwell, free from fear, in the society of the gods. [These people are] the Pushkaras, Pushkalas, Dhanyas, and Tishmas, who, as enumerated in order, are the Brāhmans, Kshattriyas, Vaiśyas, and Sūdras." The inhabitants of this dvīpa are called in the Bhāgavata Purāṇa, v. 20, 22, ". . . . Purushas, Rishabhas, Dravinas, and Devakas" (*Purusharshabha-dravina-devaka-sanjnāḥ*). This dvīpa is encompassed by the sea of curds, which is of the same circumference as itself. The sea again, on its exterior edge, is surrounded by Sāka dvīpa,¹⁰ a continent twice the size of Krauncha dvīpa.

Of Sāka dvīpa it is said in the Vishṇu Purāṇa, ii. 4, 23 ff.:

Tattra punyāḥ janapadāś chāturvarṇya-samanvitāḥ | nadyaś chāttra mahāpunyāḥ sarva-pāpa-bhayāpahāḥ | tāḥ pibanti mudā yuktāḥ Jaladādishi ye sthitāḥ | varsheshu te janapadāḥ svargād abhyetya me-

¹⁰ In the M. Bh. (Bhishmap. v. 408 ff.) Sākadvīpa comes next after Jambudvīpa.

dinam | 24. Dharm-hānir na teshv asti na sangharshah parasparam | maryādā-vyutkramo nāpi teshu deśeshu saptasu | 25. Magāś cha Māgadhāś chaiva Mānasāḥ Mandagāś tathā | Magāḥ brāhmaṇa-bhūyishṭhāḥ Māgadhāḥ kshattriyāḥ tu te | Vaiśyāḥ tu Mānasāḥ jneyāḥ śūdrāḥ teshām tu Mandagāḥ | 26. Sākadvīpe tu tair Viṣhṇuḥ sūrya-rūpa-dharo mune | yathoktair ijjyate samyak karmabhir niyatātmabhiḥ |

"There there are holy countries, peopled by persons belonging to the four castes; and holy rivers which remove all sin and fear. . . . The people who dwell in these divisions, Jalada, etc. [of Sāka dvīpa], drink these rivers with pleasure, even when they have come to earth from Svarga. There is among them no defect of virtue; nor any mutual rivalry; nor any transgression of rectitude in those seven countries. [There dwell] Magas, Māgadhas, Mānasas, and Mandagas, of whom the first are principally Brāhmans; the second are Kshattriyas; the third are Vaiśyas, and the fourth are Śūdras. By them Viṣhṇu, in the form of the Sun, is worshipped with the prescribed ceremonies, and with intent minds." १३, २१, २५, २८, २९, ३०

Of this dvīpa the Mahābhārata tells us, Bhīṣmaparvan, verse 410, that the "people there are holy, and no one dies" (*tattra punyāḥ janapadāḥ na tattra mriyate naraḥ*). One of the mountains there is called Syāma (black), "whence men have got this black colour" (verse 420. *Tataḥ syāmatvam āpannāḥ janāḥ janapadeśvara*). Dhṛitarāshṭra then says to his informant Sanjaya that he has great doubts as to "how living creatures have become black." Sanjaya promises in the following lines, the sense of which is not very clear, to explain the mystery: 422. *Sarveshv eva mahārāja dvīpeshu Kuru-nandana | gaurah krishnaś cha pātango yato varṇāntare dvijāḥ | syāmo yasmāt pravritto vai tat te vakshyāmi Bhārata |* But as he proceeds no further, we lose the benefit of his solution of this interesting physiological problem. The Bhāgavata Purāṇa, v. 20, 28, gives the four classes of men in this dvīpa the names of Ritavratas, Satyavratas, Dānavratas, and Anuvratas (*tad-varsha-purushāḥ Ritavrata-Satyavrata-Dānavratānuvrata-nāmānah*).

This Sāka dvīpa is surrounded by the ocean of milk as by an armlet. This ocean again is encompassed on its outer side by Pushkara dvīpa, which is twice as extensive as Sāka dvīpa.

Of Pushkara dvīpa it is said, Viṣhṇu Purāṇa, ii. 4, 28 ff.:

Dasa-varsha-sahasrāṇi tattra jīvanti mānavāḥ | nirāmayāḥ viśokaścha

rāga-dresha-virarijitūḥ | adhamottamau na teshv āstāṁ na badhya-badha-kau drīja | nershya 'suyā bhayaṁ rosho dosho lobhādiko na cha |
 29. *Satyānrite na tatrāstāṁ drīpe Pushkara-sanjnīḥ | 30.*
Tulya-reśāś tu manujāḥ derais tattraika-rūpiṇāḥ | 31. Varṇāśramāchāra-hinam dharmācharaṇa-varjītam | trayi - vārttā - dāṇḍanīti - śuśrūshā-rahitām cha yat | 32. Varsha-drayaṁ tu maitreyā bhauma-svargo 'yam uttamāḥ | sarvasya suka-dah kālo jarā-rogādi-rarjītaḥ |

"In this dvīpa men live ten thousand years, free from sickness and sorrow, from affection and hatred. There is no distinction among them of highest and lowest, of killer and slain; there is no envy, nor ill-will, nor fear, nor anger, nor defect, nor covetousness, nor other fault; there is there neither truth nor falsehood. Men there are all of the same appearance, of one form with the gods. The two divisions of this dvīpa have no rules of caste or orders, nor any observances of duty; the three Vedas, the Purāṇas (or, trade), the rules of criminal law and service do not exist. This [dvīpa] is a most excellent terrestrial heaven; where time brings happiness to all, and is exempt from decay, sickness, and all other evils."¹¹

Of all the dvīpas together, the Mahābhārata says, Bhishmaparvan, verscs 468 ff. :

Evaṁ dvīpeshu sarveshu prajānāṁ Kuru-nandana | brahmacharyyaṇa satyena prajānāṁ hi damena cha | ārogyāyuhpramāṇābhyaṁ driguṇāṁ driguṇāṁ tataḥ | eko janapado rājan dvīpeshv eteshu Bhārata | uktūḥ

¹¹ In the same way as Pushkara, the remotest dvīpa, is here described to be the scene of the greatest perfection, we find Homer placing the Elysian plains on the furthest verge of the earth :

ἀλλὰ σ' ἐς Ἡλύσιον πεδίον καὶ πείρατα γαίης
 ἀθένατοι πέμψουσιν, θύτι ξανθὸς Ραδάμανθυς,
 τῆπερ δητότη Βιοτή πέλει ἀνθρώποισιν.
 οὐ νιφετές, οὔτ' ἄρ τε ιεράν πολὺς οὔτε ποτ' ὅμβρος,
 ἀλλ' αἰεὶ Ζεφύροιο λιγὺν πνεοντας ἀήτας
 'Οκεανὸς ἀνίστιν ἀναψύχειν ἀνθρώπους. Odyssey Δ. 563-568.

"Thee, favoured man, to earth's remotest end,
 The Elysian plain, the immortal gods shall send,—
 That realm which fair-haired Rhadamanthys sways,
 Where, free from toil, men pass their tranquil days.
 No tempests vex that land, no rain, nor snow;
 But ceaseless Zephyrs from the ocean blow,
 Which sweetly breathe and gently stir the air,
 And to the dwellers grateful coolness bear."

janapadāḥ yeshu karma chaikam pradrīsyate | iśvaro dandam udyamya svayam eva Prajāpatiḥ | dvīpānāṁ tu mahārāja rakshaṁs tishṭhati nityadā | sa rājā sa śivo rājan sa pītā prapitāmahaiḥ | gopāyati naraśreshṭha prajāḥ sa-jada-paṇḍitāḥ | bhojanāṁ chāttra Kauravya prajāḥ svayam upasthitam | siddham eva mahābāho tad hi bhunjanti nityadā |

“Thus in all these dvīpas each country doubly exceeds the former one in the abstinence, veracity, and self-restraint, in the health and the length of life of its inhabitants. In these dvīpas the people is one, and one sort of action is perceivable. Prajāpati, the lord, wielding his sceptre, himself governs these dvīpas. He, the king, the auspicious one (*śiva*), the father, along with the patriarchs, protects all creatures, ignorant as well as learned.” (So there are differences of intellectual condition in these dvīpas after all!) “All these people eat prepared food, which comes to them of itself.”

Pushkara is surrounded by a sea of fresh water equal to itself in compass. What is beyond is afterwards described :

V.P. ii. 4, 37. *Svādūdakasya parato dṛiṣyate loka-saṁsthitiḥ | drigunā, kānchanā bhūmiḥ sarva-jantu-vivarjīta |* 38. *Lokālokas tatuḥ śailo yoja-nāyuta-viṣṭritah | uchchhrāyenāpi tāvanti sahasrāny achalo hi sah | tatas tamah samāvṛitya tam śailaṁ sarvataḥ sthitam | tamaś chānda-kaṭāhend samantāt pariveshītītam |*

“On the other side of the sea is beheld a golden land of twice its extent, but without inhabitants. Beyond that is the Lokāloka mountain, which is ten thousand yojanas in breadth, and as many thousands in height. It is on all sides invested with darkness. This darkness is encompassed by the shell of the mundane egg.”¹²

In a following chapter, however, (the seventh) of this same book, the

¹² See Manu, i. verses 9 and 12, quoted above, p. 35. The thirteenth verse is as follows : *Tābhyaṁ sa śakalābhyaṁ cha divam bhūmiṁ cha nirmame | madhye vyoma diśas chāshṭāv apāṁ sthānaṁ cha sūsvatam |* “From these two halves of the shell he fashioned the heaven and the earth, and in the middle (he formed) the sky, and the eight quarters, and the eternal abode of the waters.” In regard to the darkness (*tamas*) with which the mountain Lokāloka is said to be enclosed, compare Manu iv. 242, where the spirits of the departed are said to pass by their righteousness through the darkness which is hard to be traversed (*dharmaṇa hi sahāyena tamas tarati dusṭaram*) ; and Atharva-veda, ix. 5, 1, “Crossing the darkness, in many directions immense, let the unborn ascend to the third heaven” (*tīrtvā tamāṁsi bahudhā mahānti ajo nākam ā kramatāñ triṭīyam*). See Journal Royal Asiatic Society for 1865, pp. 298, note 2, and p. 304.

shell of the mundane egg is said to be outside of the seven spheres of which this system is composed :

V.P. ii. 7, 19. *Etsa saptā mayā lokāḥ Maitreyā kathitāś tava | pātālāni cha saptaiva brahmāṇḍasyaisha vistaraḥ | etad anda-kaṭāhenā tiryak chorddhvam adhas tathā | kapitthasya yathā vijām sarvato vai samāvritam |*

"These seven spheres have been described by me ; and there are also seven Pātālas : this is the extent of Brahmā's egg. The whole is surrounded by the shell of the egg at the sides, above, and below, just as the seed of the wood-apple (is covered by the rind)."

This system, however, it appears, is but a very small part of the whole of the universe :

Ibid. verse 24. *Andānāṁ tu sahaśrānāṁ sahaśrāny ayutāni cha | idriśānāṁ tathā tattrā koṭi-koṭi-śatāni cha |*

"There are thousands and ten thousands of thousands of such mundane eggs ; nay hundreds of millions of millions."

Indian mythology, when striving after sublimity, and seeking to excite astonishment, often displays an extravagant and puerile facility in the fabrication of large numbers. But, in the sentence last quoted, its conjectures are substantially in unison with the discoveries of modern astronomy ; or rather, they are inadequate representations of the simple truth, as no figures can express the contents of infinite space.

APPENDIX.

Page 6, line 24.

Professor Wilson's analyses of the Agni, Brahma-vaivartta, Vishnu and Vāyu Purāṇas, were originally published, not in the "Gleanings in Science," but in the Journal of the Asiatic Society of Bengal, vol. i.; and are reprinted in the 3rd vol. of Wilson's Collected Works, edited by Dr. R. Rost.

Page 37, line 1.

"Abodes of gods." Böhtlingk and Roth in their Sanskrit Lexicon, s.v. *nikāya*, shew that in other passages, if not here also, the compound word *deva-nikāya* should be rendered "classes, or assemblages, of gods."

Page 50, line 25.

Compare the passage, quoted below, in the note on p. 115, from the Sāntiparvan of the M. Bh., verses 6130 ff.

Pages 90 ff.

The representations of the Kṛita yuga are not always consistent. In the Dronaparvan, verses 2023 ff. a story is told of King Akampana, who lived in that age, and who was yet so far from enjoying the tranquillity generally predicated of that happy time that he was overcome by his enemies in a battle, in which he lost his son, and suffered in consequence severe affliction.

Page 97, note 190.

It is similarly said in the Dronaparvan, verse 2395 : *Kshatād nas trāyate sarvān ity evam kshattriyo 'bhavat* | "He (Prithu) became a Kshatriya by delivering us all from injuries." See also Sāntiparvan, verse 1031.

Page 115, line 13.

The Sāntiparvan of the M. Bh., verses 6130 ff., gives a similar description of the original state of all things, and of the birth of Brahmā. Bhīshma is the speaker : *Salilaikārṇavaṁ tāta purā sarvam abhūd idam | nishprakampam anākāśam anirdeśya-mahītalam | tamasā vritam asparśam api gambhīra-darśanam | niśabdaṁ rā 'prameyaṁ cha tattrā jajne Pitā-mahāḥ | so 'srijad vātam agniṁ cha bhāskaram chāpi vīryavān | ākāśam asrījach chorddhram adho bhūmiṁ cha nairṛitim | nabhaḥ sa-chandra-tāraṁ cha nakshatratrāṇi grahāṁs tathā | saṁvatsarān ṛitūn māsān pak-shān atha larān kshanān | tataḥ śarīraṁ loka-sthān sthāpayitrā Pitā-mahāḥ | janayāmāsa bhagavān putrān uttama-tejasāḥ |* 6135. *Marīchim rishim Attrīṁ cha Pulastyam Pulahaṁ Kratum | Vaśishṭhāṅgirasaū chobhau Rudraṁ cha prabhūm iśvaram | Prachetasas tathā Dakshaḥ kanyāḥ shashṭim ajījanat | tāḥ rai brahmaṛshayāḥ sarvāḥ prajārtham prati-pedire | tābhyo viśvāni bhūtāni derāḥ pitṛi-gaṇās tatha | gandharvā-p-sarasāś chaiva rakshān̄si vividhāni cha |* 6149. *Jajne tāta jagat sarvāṁ tathā sthāvara-jangamam |* 6150. *Bhūta-sargam imaṁ kṛitvā sarva-loka-pitāmahāḥ | sāśvataṁ rēda-paṭhitāṁ dharmam prayuyuje tataḥ | tasmin dharme sthitāḥ derāḥ sahāchāryya-purohitāḥ | ādityāḥ rasavo rudrāḥ sa-sādhyāḥ marud-aśvināḥ |* “This entire universe was formerly one expanse of water, motionless, without æther, without any distinguishable earth, enveloped in darkness, imperceptible to touch, with an appearance of (vast) depth, silent, and measureless. There Pitāmaha (Brahmā) was born. That mighty god created wind, fire, and the sun, the æther¹ above, and under it the earth belonging to Nirṛiti, the sky, with the moon, stars, constellations, and planets, the years, seasons, months, half-months, and the minute sub-divisions of time. Having established the frame of the universe, the divine Pitāmaha begot sons of eminent splendour, (6135) Marīchi, the rishi Attri, Pulastyā, Pulaha, Kratu, Vaśishṭha, Angiras, and the mighty lord Rudra. Daksha, the son of Prachetas, also begot sixty daughters, all of whom were taken by the Brahmaṛshis² for the purpose of propagating offspring. From these females, all beings, gods, pitris, gandharvas, apsarases, and various kinds of rākshases, (6149) this

¹ And yet it is elsewhere said (Anuśūsanap. 2161, quoted above in p. 130) that the æther (*ākāśa*) cannot be created.

² Here this word must mean “rishis, sons of Brahmā.”

entire world, moving and stationary, was produced. 6150. Having formed this creation of living beings, the parent of all worlds established the eternal rule of duty as read in the Veda. To this rule of duty the gods, with their teachers and domestic priests, the Ādityas, Vasus, Rudras, Sādhyas, Maruts, and Aśvins conformed."

Another account of the creation is given in the same book of the M. Bh., verses 7518 ff., where it is ascribed to Vishṇu in the form of Govinda, or Keśava (Krishṇa), who is identified with the supreme and universal Purusha. Resting on the waters (7527) he created by his thought Sankarṣaṇa, the first-born of all beings. Then (7529) a lotus sprang from his (either Sankarṣaṇa's or Vishṇu's) navel, from which again (7530) Brahmā was produced. Brahmā afterwards created his seven mind-born sons, Marīchi, Attri, Angiras, Pulastyā, Pulaha, Kratu, and Daksha (7534).

Compare Bhīshmaparvan, verses 3017 ff.

Page 122, note 223.

Compare the passage quoted in the last note from the Sāntiparvan, verse 6135.

Page 128, line 20.

The Sāntiparvan, verses 7548 ff. ascribes the creation of the four castes to Krishṇa: *Tataḥ Krishṇo mahābhāgaḥ punar eva Yudhiṣṭhīra | brāhmaṇānāṁ śataṁ śreshṭham mukhād evāsrijat prabhuḥ | bāhubhyāṁ kshattriya-śataṁ vaiśyānāṁ ūrutāḥ śataṁ | padbhyaṁ sūdra-śataṁ chaiva Keśavo Bharatarshabha |* "Then again the great Krishṇa created a hundred Brāhmans, the most excellent (class), from his mouth, a hundred Kshattriyas from his arms, a hundred Vaiśyas from his thighs, and a hundred Sūdras from his feet."

Compare Bhīshmaparvan, verse 3029.

Page 128, note 238.

In another place also, verses 6208 f., the Anuśāsanaparvan ranks purohitas with Sūdras: *Sūdra-karma tu yaḥ kuryād avahāya svā-karma cha | sa vijneyo yathā sūdro na cha bhojyah kathanchana | chikitsakah kāndapriṣṭhah purādhyakṣah purohitah | sāṁvatsaro vrīthādhyāyi sarve te sūdra-sammitāḥ |* "He, who, abandoning his own work, does the work of a Sūdra, is to be regarded as a Sūdra, and not to be invited to a feast. A physician, a kāndapriṣṭha (see above, p. 442), a

city governor, a purohita, an astrologer, one who studies to no purpose. —all these are on a level with Sūdras."

Pages 144 ff.

See above, note on pp. 90 ff.

Page 150, line 4.

Compare Dronaparvan, verse 2397.

Page 220, line 14.

I am indebted to Professor Max Müller for pointing out to me two passages in Indian commentators in which Manu is spoken of as a Kshattriya. The first is from Madhusūdana Sarasvatī's Commentary on the Bhagavad-gītā, iv. 1. The words of the text are these : *Srī-Bhagavān urācha | imāṁ Virasvate yogam proktavān aham aryayam | Virasvān Manare prāha Manur Ikshvākare'bravīt | evam paramparā-prāptam imāṁ rājarshayo viduh | sa kāleneha mahatā yogo nashṭah parantapa | sa evāyam mayā te 'dya yogāḥ proktāḥ purātanaḥ | bhakto 'si me sakhā cheti rahasyam etad uttamam |* "The divine Being (Kṛishṇa) said: I declared to Vivasvat (the Sun) this imperishable Yoga-doctrine. Vivasvat told it to (his son) Manu; and Manu to (his son) Ikshvāku. Thus do royal rishis know it as handed down by tradition. Through lapse of time however it was lost. I have to day therefore revealed to thee (anew) this ancient system, this most excellent mystery; for thou art devoted to me and my friend."

On this Madhusūdana remarks : "*Vivasvate*" sarva-kshattriya-vāñśa-viśva-bhūtāya Ādityāya proktavān | "I declared it to Vivasvat" i.e. to Āditya (the Sun) who was the source of the whole Kshattriya race."

The second passage is from Someśvara's tīkā on Kumārila Bhaṭṭa's Mimānsa-vārttika. I must, however, first adduce a portion of the text of the latter work which forms the subject of Someśvara's annotation. For a copy of this passage, which is otherwise of interest, I am indebted to Professor Goldstücker, who has been kind enough to copy it for me.² The first extract refers to Jaimini's Sūtra, i. 3, 3; where the question under discussion is, in what circumstances authority can be assigned to

² See Professor Müller's Anc. Sansk. Lit. pp. 79 f. where this passage is partly extracted and translated. See also the same author's Chips from a German Workshop, vol. ii. pp. 338 ff.

the Smṛiti when the Sruti, or Veda, is silent. After some other remarks Kumārila proceeds : *Sākyādi-vachanāni tu katipaya-dama-dā-nādi vachana-varjjañ sarvāny eva samasta-chaturdaśa-vidyā-sthāna-virudhāni trayī-mārga-vyutthita-viruddhācharanaiś cha Buddhadidhiḥ pranītāni trāyi-bāhyebhyaś chaturtha-varṇa-niravasita-prāyebhyo vyāmūḍhebhyāḥ samarhitāni iti na veda-mūlatrena sambhāvyante | svadharma-tikramena cha yena kshattriyena satā pravaktritva-pratigrahau pratipannau sa dharmam ariplutam upadekshyati iti kaḥ samāśvāsaḥ | uktam cha “paraloka-viruddhāni kurvānañ dūratas tyajet | ātmānañ yo visamdhatte so ‘nyasmai syāt kathañ hitaḥ” iti | Buddhadēh punar ayam evātikramo’lankāra-buddhau sthito yena evam āha “kali-kalusha-kritāni yāni loke mayi nīpatantu | vimuchyatām tu lokah” iti | sa kīla loka-hitārtha-kshattriya-dharmam atikramya brāhmaṇa-vṛittim pravaktritvam pratipadya prati-shedhātikramāsamarthair brāhmaṇair ananūśiṣṭām dharmam bāhyajanān anuśāsad dharma-pīḍām apy ātmāno ’ngīkṛitya parānugrahaḥām kṛitavān ity evāñvidhais eva gunaiḥ stūyate | tad-anuśiṣṭānusāriṇāś cha sarve eva śruti-smṛiti-vihita-dharmātikramena ryavaharanto viruddhāchāratvena jnāyante | tena pratyakshayā śrūtyā virodhe grantha-kāriṇām grahitrācharitrinām grantha-prāmānya-bādhanam | na hy eshām pūrvoktena nyāyena śruti-pratibaddhānām sva-mūla-śrūty-anumāna-sāmarthyam asti | “But the precepts of Śākyā and others, with the exception of a few enjoining dispassion, liberality, etc., are all contrary to the fourteen classes of scientific treatises, and composed by Buddha and others whose practice was opposed to the law of the three Vedas, as well as calculated for men belonging mostly to the fourth caste who are excluded from the Vedas, debarred from pure observances, and deluded :—consequently, they cannot be presumed to be founded on the Veda. And what confidence can we have that one (*i.e.* Buddha) who being a Kshattriya,³ transgressed the obligations of his own order, and assumed the function of teaching and the right to receive presents, would inculcate a pure system of duty? For it has been said: ‘Let everyone avoid a man who practises acts destructive to future happiness. How can he who ruins himself be of any benefit to others?’ And yet this very transgression of Buddha and his followers is conceived as being a feather in his cap; since he spoke thus, ‘Let all the evils resulting from the sin of the Kali age fall upon me; and let the world be redeemed.’ Thus, abandoning the*

* Compare Colebrooke's Misc. Essays, i. 312.

duties of a Kshattriya, which are beneficial to the world, assuming the function of a teacher which belongs only to the Brâhmans, and instructing men who were out of the pale in duty which was not taught by the Brâhmans who could not transgress the prohibition (to give such instruction), he sought to do a kindness to others, while consenting to violate his own obligations; and for such merits as these he is praised! And all who follow his instructions, acting in contravention of the prescriptions of the Sruti and Smriti, are notorious for their erroneous practices. Hence from the opposition in which the authors of these books, as well as those who receive and act according to them, stand to manifest injunctions of the Veda, the authority of these works is destroyed.⁴ For since they are by the above reasoning opposed by the Veda, the inference that they rest upon independent Vedic authority of their own possesses no force."

The next passage is from Kumârila's Vârttika on Jaimini's Sûtra, i. 3, 7: *Vedenairâbhyanujnâtä yeshäm eva pravaktritâ | nityânâm abhidheyânâm manvantara-yugâdishi | teshâm riparivarteshu kurvatôñ dharma-samhitâh | vachanâni pramâñâni nânayeshäm iti niśchayah | tathâ cha Manorâchiâ sâmidhenyo bharanti ity asya vidher vâkyâ-seshe śrûyate "Manurâchiâ yai yat kinchid aradat tad bhesajam bhesajatâyai" iti prâyaśchittâdy-upadeśa-vachanam pâpa-vyâdher bhesajam |* "It is certain that the precepts of those persons only whose right to expound the eternal meanings of scripture in the different manvantaras and yugas has been recognized by the Veda, are to be regarded as authoritative, when in the revolutions (of those great mundane periods) they compose codes of law. Accordingly by way of complement to the Vedic passage containing the precept (*vidhi*) beginning 'there are these sâmidheni verses of Manu' it is declared, 'whatever Manu said is a healing remedy;' i.e. his prescriptions in regard to expiatory rites, etc., are remedies for the malady of sin."

⁴ The Nyâya-mâlû-vistara, i. 3, 4, quotes Kumârila as raising the question whether the practice of innocence, which Sûkya (Buddha) inculcated, was, or was not, a duty from its conformity to the Veda, and as solving it in the negative, since cow's milk put into a dogskin cannot be pure (*Sâkyoktâhiṁeanâñ dharmo na vâ dharmâñ śrutatvataḥ | na dharmo na hî pûtam syâd go-kshirañ īva-dritau dhritam*).

⁵ These words are quoted by Böhlung and Roth, s.v. *bhesajatâ*, as taken from the Panchavîñâ Brahmana, 23, 16, 7. A similar passage occurs in the Taitt. Sanh.

From Someśvara's elaborate comment on the former of these two passages I need only extract the following sentences : *Etid abhiyuktāvachanena dradhayati "uktam cha" | Manos tu kshattriyasyāpi pravakritvam "yad vai kinchid Manur aradat tad bheshajam" iti vedānujnātātvād aviruddham ity āśayaḥ |* "This he confirms by the words of a learned man which he introduces by the phrase 'for it has been said.' But although Manu was a Kshatriya, his assumption of the office of teacher was not opposed to the Veda, because it is sanctioned by the Vedic text 'whatever Manu said was a remedy : ' Such is the purport."

Page 254, line 12. ॥१॥

Yas tityāja sachī-ridam, etc. This verse is quoted in the Taittiriya Āranyaka (pp. 159 f. of Cal. edit.), which, however, reads *sakhi-vidam* instead of *sachi-vidam*. An explanation of the passage is there given by the Commentator.

Page 264, line 14.

Professor Weber considers (Indische Studien, i. 52) that "the yaudhāḥi and the arhantah were the forerunners of the Rājanyas and the Brāhmans." See the whole passage below in the note on p. 366.

Page 268, note 51.

Compare Āśvalāyana's Śrauta-Sūtras, i. 3, 3 and 4, and commentary (p. 22 of Cal. edit.). Prithī Vainya is, as I find from Bühtlingk and Roth's Lexicon, s.v., referred to also in the Atharva-veda, viii. 10, 24. The words are these : *Sā udakrāmat sā manushyān āgachhat | tām manushyāḥ upāhvayanta "irūvaty ehi" iti | tasyāḥ Manur Vaivasvato vatsaḥ āśit prithivī pātram | tām Prithī Vainyo 'dhok tām krishiṁ cha sasyaṁ cha adhok | te krishiṁ cha sasyaṁ cha manushyāḥ upajīrvanti ityādi |* "She (i.e. Virāj) ascended : she came to men. Men called her to them, saying, 'Come, Irāvati.' Manu Vaivasvata was her calf, and the earth her vessel. Prithī Vainya milked her; he milked from her agriculture and grain. Men subsist on agriculture and grain."

See Wilson's Vishṇu Purāṇa, vol. i. pp. 183 ff., where Prithu's (this is the Puranic form of the word) reign is described. It is there stated that this king, "taking the lord Manu Svāyambhuva for his calf, milked from the earth into his own hand all kinds of grain from a desire to benefit his subjects" (V.P. i. 13, 54. *Sa kalpayitvā vatsaṁ tu*

Manuñ Srāyambhuram prabhūm | sve pānau prithivī-nātho dudoha pri-thirīm Prithuh | 55. Sasya-jātāni sarvāñi prajānām hita-kāmyayā). See also the passage quoted from the Bhāgavata Purāṇa by the editor Dr. Hall in pp. 189 ff. The original germ of these accounts is evidently to be found in the passage of the Atharva-veda, from which the short text I have cited is taken.

Prīthu's reign is also described in the Dronaparvan, 2394 ff., and Sāntiparvan, 1030 ff.

Page 286, line 8 from the foot.

The Srinjayas are mentioned in the Satapatha Brāhmaṇa, xii. 9, 3, 1 ff. and 13 (see Weber's Indische Studien, i. 207), as opposing without effect the celebration of a sacrifice which was proposed to be offered for the restoration of Dushṭarītu Paunsāyana to his ancestral kingdom.

Page 345, line 24.

Professor Aufrecht has pointed out to me a short passage in the Taītiriya Sanhitā, iii. 1, 7, 2, in which Viśvāmitra and Jamadagni are mentioned together as contending with Vasishtha : *Viśvāmitra-Jamadagnī Vasishthena asparddhetām | sa etaj Jamadagnir viharyam apaśyat | tena cai sa Vasishthasya indriyām cīryyam avrīnkta | yad viharyām śasyate indriyam eva tad vīryyām yajamāno bhrātrīryasya vrīnkta | yasya bhūyāmso yajna-krataraḥ ity āhuḥ sa deratāḥ vrīnkta |* “Viśvāmitra and Jamadagni were contending with Vasishtha. Jamadagni beheld this vihavya text, and with it he destroyed the vigour and energy of Vasishtha. When the vihavya is recited, then the sacrificer destroys the vigour and energy of his enemy. He whose oblations and all attendant ceremonies are superior destroys the gods (of his opponent).”

Page 366, note 164.

In a notice of Lātyāyana's Sūtras, in Indische Studien, i. 50, Professor Weber observes : “At the same time I remark here that the presence of Sūdras at the ceremonies, although on the outside of the sacrificial ground, was permitted—a point which results from the fact that during the dīkṣā they were not to be addressed (iii. 3). Here and there a Sūdra appears as acting, although in a degraded position. Compare iv. 3, 5 : *āryo* (i.e. *vaiśyah*, according to the commentator Agnisvāmin) *antarvedi bahirvedi sūdraḥ | āryābhāve yaḥ kas*

cha āryyo varṇah (*brāhmaṇo vā kshattriyo vā*, Agnisvāmin). Thus their position, like that of the Nishādas, was not so wretched as it became afterwards. Toleration was still necessary; indeed the strict Brahmanical principle was not yet generally recognized among the nearest Arian races. This is shown by the following fact. Before entering on the Vrātya-stomas, Lātyāyana treats, viii. 5, of an imprecatory rite called Syena (the falcon), which is not taught in the Panchavimśa, but in the Shaḍvimśa (iv. 2). The tribes mentioned by Pāṇini, v. 3, 112 ff., are there described: *Vrātīnānāṁ⁶ yaudhānāṁ putrān anūchānān ritvijo vrīñīta śyenasya | “arhatām eva” iti Sāndilyah⁷ |* (“Let the learned sons of warriors, who live by the profession of Vrātas, be chosen as priests for the Syena. ‘The sons of arhats only’ [should be chosen] says Sāndilya”). “Whilst,” proceeds Prof. W., “in the beginning of the Sūtra nine things are required for a ḗtvij (priest), viz. that he should be (1) ārsheyah (ā dasamāt purushād arya arachhinnam ārshaṁ yasya, ‘able to trace his unbroken descent for ten generations in the family of a rishi’); (2) anūchānah (śishyebhyo vidyā-sampradānaṁ yah kṛitavān, ‘one who has imparted knowledge to pupils’); (3) sādhu-charanah (shaṭsu brāhmaṇa-karmasv avasthitāḥ praśasta-karmā, ‘one who has practised the six duties of a Brāhmaṇa, a man of approved conduct’); (4) vāgmī (eloquent); (5) anyūnāṅgah (without deficiency in his members); (6) anatirkṛtāṅgah (without superfluous members); (7) dvesatalī (equal in length above and below the navel); (8) anati-kṛishṇah; (9) anatiśvetah (na atibālo na ativriddhah, ‘neither too young nor too old’).—Lātyāyana here contents himself with putting forward one only of these requirements, the second (*i.e.* that the priest should be ‘learned’), as essential. The title Arhat for teacher, which was at a later period used exclusively by the Buddhists, is found in the Satapatha Brāhmaṇa, (iii. 4, 3, 6) and the Taittirīya Aranyaka,⁸ and

⁶ *Nānā-jātiyāḥ aniyata-vrittayah utsedha-jīvinah sanghāḥ vrātāḥ |* (Patanjali, quoted by Weber) “Vrātas are the various classes of people who have no fixed profession, and live by violence.” *Vrātena śarīrāyāsenā jīvati vrātīnah* (Comm. on Pāṇini, v. 2, 21) “He who lives by bodily labour is a vrātīna.” The word means “he who lives by the labour usual among Vrātas,” according to another comment cited by Weber.

⁷ *Arhatām eva varanam kartavyam iti Sāndilyah |* “Arhats only are to be chosen, says Sāndilya” (Agnisvāmin, quoted by Weber).

⁸ It also occurs in Ait. Br. i. 15 (see Bühlung and Roth, s.v.). To his translation of this passage Dr. Haug appends the following note: “The term is *arhat*, a word

is known in the *Gāga Brāhmaṇa* (Pāṇini, v. 1, 124). The Yaudhāḥ and Arhantāḥ are the forerunners of the Rājanyas and the Brāhmans.' According to Professor Weber, Ind. St. i. 207, note, a Sthapati "means, according to Kātyāyana's Srauta Sūtras, xxii. 11, 11, a Vaiśya, or any other person (according to Kātyāyana, i. 1, 12, he may even be a Nishāda) who has celebrated the Gosava sacrifice, after being chosen by his subjects to be their ruler."

Page 378, lines 1-3.

Compare *Dronaparvan*, verse 2149 : *nanv eshāñ niśchitā nishṭhā nishṭhā saptapadī smṛitā* |

Page 400, line 9 from bottom.

If further proof of this sense of *brahmarshi* be wanted, it may be found in the words *viprarshi* and *drijarshi*, which must be regarded as its synomyms, and which can only mean "Brāhmaṇ-rishi."

Page 423, line 12, and foot-note.

The same verse with some variations is repeated in the *Anuśāsanaparvan*, verse 6262 : *Rājā Mitrasahaś chaiva Vaśishṭhāya mahātmane | Madayantim priyām bhāryyām datrā cha tridivām gataḥ* | "And king Mitrasaha, having bestowed his dear wife Madayanti on the great Vaśishṭha, went to heaven." Here, it will be observed, the name Madayanti is correctly given.

Page 423, line 17.

This stanza is repeated in *Anuśāsanaparvan*, verse 6250, with the following variation in the second line : *arghyam pradāya vidhival lebhe lokān anuttamān* |

Page 436, line 5 from the foot.

I find that two other instances of Brāhmans receiving instruction from Rājanyas are alluded to by Professor Weber, Ind. Stud. x. 117.

well known, chiefly to the students of Buddhism. Sūyana explains it by "a great Brāhmaṇ, or a Brāhmaṇ (in general)." In reference to another part of the sentence in which this word occurs, Dr. Haug adds : "That cows were killed at the time of receiving a most distinguished guest is stated in the Smṛitis. But as Sāyana observes (which entirely agrees with opinions held now-a-days), this custom belongs to former yugas (periods of the world). Thence the word *goghna*, i.e. 'cowkiller,' means in the more ancient Sanskrit books 'a guest' (see the commentators on Pāṇini, 3, 4, 73) for the reception of a high guest was the death of the cow of the house."

The first is recorded in the Satapatha Brāhmaṇa, x. 6, 1, 2 ff. ; where it is stated that six Brāhmans, who were at issue with one another regarding Vaiśvānara (Agni), and were aware that king Aśvapati the Kaikeya was well informed on the subject, repaired to him for instruction and requested that he would treat them as his pupils. He first asked them ‘if they were not themselves learned in the Veda as well as the sons of learned men, and how they could in that case come to consult him’ (“*Yan nu bhagavanto ’nūchānāḥ anūchāna-putrāḥ | kim idam*” *iti*). They, however, persisted in their request, when he asked them severally what they considered Vaiśvānara to be, expressed his concurrence in their replies, though all different, as partial solutions of the question, and ended by giving them some further insight into the subject of their enquiry. The second instance is taken from the Chhāndogya Upanishad, i. 8, 1, which commences thus: *Trayo ha udgītho kuśalāḥ babhūraḥ Sīlakāḥ Sūlāvatyaś Chaikitāyano Dālbhyāḥ Pravāhaṇo Jaivalir iti | te ha učur “udgītha kathāṁ vadāma” iti | 2. “Tathā” iti ha samupariviśuḥ | sa ha Pravāhaṇo Jaivalir uvācha “bhagavantāv agre vadatām | brāhmaṇayor vadator vāchāṁ śroshyāmi” iti |* “Three men were skilled in the Udgītha, Silaka Salāvatya, Chaikitāyana Dālbhya, and Pravāhaṇa Jaivali. They said, ‘We are skilled in the Udgītha; come let us discuss it.’ (Saying) ‘so be it,’ they sat down. Pravāhaṇa Jaivali said, ‘Let your reverences speak first; I will listen to the discourse of Brāhmans discussing the question.’” Silaka Sūlāvatya then asked Chaikitāyana Dālbhya a series of questions; but was dissatisfied with his final reply. Being interrogated in his turn by Chaikitāyana, Silaka answered; but his answer was disapproved by Pravāhaṇa Jaivali, who finally proceeded to supply the proper solution.

In two other passages the same Upanishad, as quoted above in p. 195, and explained by the commentator, recognizes the fact of sacred science being possessed, and handed down, by Kshattriyas. See also the note on p. 220, above, p. 508. The doctrines held by Rājanyas are not, however, always treated with such respect. In the Satapatha Brāhmaṇa, viii. 1, 4, 10, an opinion in regard to breath (*prāṇa*) is attributed to Svarijit Nāgnajita, or Nagnajit the Gāndhāra, of which the writer contemp-tuously remarks that “he said this like a Rājanya” (*Yat sa tad uvācha rājanyabandhur īva tv eva tad uvācha*); and he then proceeds to refute it (see Weber's Indische Studien, i. 218). It appears that the Smṛti

recognizes the possibility of a Brāhmaṇa becoming in certain circumstances the pupil of a Rājanya or a Vaiśya. Thus Manu says, ii. 241 : *Abrāhmaṇād adhyayanam āpat-kāle vidhīyate | anuvrajyā cha śuśrūshā yāvad adhyayanañ guroḥ |* 242. *Nābrāhmaṇe gurau śishyo vāsam ātyantikām vaset | brāhmaṇe chānanūchāne kānkshan gatim anuttamām |* 241. “In a time of calamity it is permitted to receive instruction from one who is not a Brāhmaṇa; and to wait upon and obey such a teacher during the period of study. 242. But let not a pupil, who aims at the highest future destiny, reside for an excessive period with such a teacher who is not a Brāhmaṇa, or with a Brāhmaṇa who is not learned in the Veda.” Kullūka explains this to mean that when a Brāhmaṇa instructor cannot be had a Kshattriya may be resorted to, and in the absence of a Kshattriya, a Vaiśya.

Page 457, note 241.

When I wrote this note, I did not advert to the difficulty presented by the word *didāsithā*, which has at once the form of a desiderative verb, and of the second person of the perfect tense. Bühtlingk and Roth, *s.v. dā*, on a comparison of the two parallel passages, suppose that the present reading of the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa is corrupt as regards this word, which, as they quote it, is *didāsithā*. May not the correct reading be *dādāsithā* from the root *dās*?

Page 461, line 14.

The Taittirīya Brāhmaṇa, ii. 2, 4, 4 f., says of Prajāpati : *So 'surān asrijata | tad asya apriyam āsīt | 5. Tad durvarṇām hiranyam abhavat | tad durvarṇasya hiranyasya janma | . . . sa devān asrijata tad asya priyam āsīt | tat suvarṇasya hiranyasya janma |* “He created Asuras. That was displeasing to him. 5. That became the precious metal with the bad colour (silver). This was the origin of silver. . . . He created gods. That was pleasing to him. That became the precious metal with the good colour (gold). That was the origin of gold.”

INDEX OF PRINCIPAL NAMES AND MATTERS.

A

Abhimāna, 201
 Abhisnātas, 353
 Abhiyuktas, 500
 Achala, 400
 Achhāvāka, 155
 Adhipurusha, 111
 Adharmā, 124
 Adhvaryu, 41, 155, 251,
 263, 294, 459
 Aditi, 18, 26, 72, 116, 122,
 221
 Ādityas, 19 f., 26, 52, 117,
 126, 157, 270
 Adrisyanti, 417
 Agastya, or Agasti, 309 ff.,
 321, 330, 442, 461
 Aghamarshana, 279
 Aghamarshanas, 353
 Agni, 10, 16, 20 f., 33, 52,
 71, 75, 165, 177 f., 180,
 270
 — one of the triad of
 deities, 75
 Agnihṛī, 251
 Agnihṛī, 155
 Agnihṛī (king), 491
 Agnihotra, 21, 428
 Agni Purāṇa, 210
 Agnisvāmin, 512
 Agnivesya, 223
 Agnivesyāyana, 223
 Ahalyū, 235, 310, 466
 — the first woman, 121
 Ahankūra, 201
 Ahavaniya fire, 428
 Ahi, 250, 340
 Ahura Mazda, 293
 Aindra - bāhraspatya obla-
 tion, 22

Aitareya Brāhmaṇa, 5 quoted—

ii. 33,—180
 — 34,—166
 iii. 31,—177
 — 34,—443
 v. 14,—191
 vii. 15,—48
 — 17,—355
 — 19,—367 f.
 — 27,—436
 viii. 14,—492
 — 21,—325, 456
 — 23,—369, 493
 — 24, 27,—367
 — 33,—107

Ājagava, 301
 Ajaka, 349
 Ajamidha, 234, 267, 279,
 360, 413
 Ajatasatru, 431
 Ajigartta, 355 ff., 360
 Ajita, 279
 Akampaṇa, 505
 Ākāśa, 115, 130, 506
 Akriya, 232
 Akshanūlā, 336
 Akuli, 189
 Akūti, 65, 73
 Alarka, 232
 Amarāvati, 494
 Amāvasu, 349
 Ambarisha, 224, 266, 279,
 362, 405
 Ambushtha, 481, 495
 Ambhūmī, 23, 68, 79, 80
 Āmīsa, 27
 Anagha, 335
 Analū, 116
 Ananta, 207
 Anantū, 114
 Anavadyā, 116

Andhras, 358, 483 f.
 Anenas, 226
 Anga, 232, 298, 464
 Angas, 459
 Angiras, 36, 65, 116, 122 f.,
 151, 168, 172, 184, 224 f.,
 226, 279, 286, 330, 341,
 445, 466
 Angirases, 192, 194, 224
 Anila, 234
 Anu, 232, 482
 Anus, 179
 Anugraha-sarga, 58
 Anukramanikā, 228, 266,
 328, 348
 Anūpā, 116
 Anushtubh, 16
 Anuvratas, 500
 Apasya, 279
 Āpastamba, 2
 Āpava, 453
 Apayū, 345
 Apnavāna, 447
 Apratiratha, 234
 Asparases, 33, 37, 177, 320,
 419, etc.
 Āranyakas, 2, 6, 32
 Arhat, 511, 513
 Arishtanemi, 116, 125
 Arjuna, 449 ff., 497
 Arjuna (the Pāṇḍu), 494
 Arka, 241
 Arian, quoted, 370
 Ārṣṭishena, 272, 279
 Ārtavas, 18
 Arunas, 32, 449
 Arundhati, 336, 389
 Arurmaghas, 438
 Arushī, 124, 476
 Arvākerotas, 57, 61, 65,
 157

INDEX.

Ārya, 18
 Aryaman, 27, 158
 Āryyas, 174 ff., 396, 481
 — their language, 141,
 482
 Āryakas, 498
 Asat, 46
 Asitamrigas, 438
 Ashtaka, 279, 352, 357
 Asmasarīn, 275
 Asramas, 98
 Asurā, 116
 Asuras, 23, 24, 29, 33, 37,
 58, 79, 130, 139, 177,
 187, 228, 469, etc., etc.
 — their priests, 189 f.
 Āsuri, 430
 Āśvalāyanas's S'rauta
 Sūtras, 137, 511
 Āśvamedha (proper name),
 267
 Āśvatarā, 336
 Āśvins, 166, 470, etc.
 Atharvan (the sage), 162,
 169
 — his cow, 395
 Atharvas, 293
 Atharva-veda, 2
 quoted—
 iii. 19, 1—283
 — 24, 2—179
 iv. 6, 1—21
 — 6, 2—490
 — 14, 4—179
 — 29, 3, 5—330
 v. 8, 5—289
 — 11, 1—11, 395
 — 17, 1—18, 280
 — 18, 1—15, 284
 — 19, 1—15, 286
 vi. 120, 3—385
 — 123, 3 f.—137
 vii. 104, 395
 viii. 2, 21—46
 — 10, 24—217, 511
 — 108, 1—5—264
 ix. 5, 1—503
 — 5, 27—282, 385
 x. 8, 7—9
 xi. 10, 2—32
 xii. 1, 15—163
 — 3, 17—385
 — 5, 4—15, 287
 xiii. 3, 14—171
 — 4, 29—9
 xv. 8, 1—22
 — 9, 1—22

Atharva-veda *continued*—
 xviii. 3, 15—330
 — 3, 23—385
 — 3, 34—179
 xix. 6, 1 ff.—8, 9
 — 6, 6—10
 — 9, 12—288
 — 22, 21—288
 — 23, 30—288
 — 43, 8—289
 — 62, 1—282
 Ātibalā, 116
 Ātmavat, 279
 Atri, 36, 61, 116, 122 f.,
 171 f., 178, 225, 242,
 248, 267, 303, 330, 468
 Atyārati, 493
 Audumbaras, 353
 Aufrecht, Professor, his
 Catalogue of Bodleian
 Sanskrit MSS. referred
 to, 203
 — information or sug-
 gestions from him, 14,
 19, 20, 29, 93, 137, 163 f.,
 210, 247 f., 254 ff., 319,
 325 f., 340, 346, 389,
 395, 512
 Augha, 217
 Aupamanyava, 177
 Aurva, 279, 445, 447,
 448 f., 476
 Āvantyas, 486
 Avyakta, 41
 Ayūṣya, 355
 Ayodhyā, 115
 Āyu, 170, 171 f., 174, 180
 Āyus, 170
 Āyus (king), 226, 308, 353

B

Bābhṛavas, 356
 Babhrus, 353
 Badari, 199
 Bāhu, 486
 Bahuputra, 116
 Bahvavsa, 235
 Bala, 279
 Balā, 116
 Balāhaka, 207
 Balākūṣa, 353
 Bālakhilyas, 32, 305, 400
 Bāleya, 232
 Bali, 232
 Balis, 469

Banerjea, Rev. Prof., his
 Dialogues on Hindu
 Philosophy referred to,
 120
 — his edition of the
 Märkandeya Purāna re-
 ferred to, 223
 Banga, 232
 Barbaras, 482
 Baresma, 293
 Bauddhas, 305
 Benfey, Prof., his trans-
 lation of the Sāma-veda
 quoted, 164
 — his glossary to ditto,
 490
 — his translation of the
 Rig-veda quoted or re-
 ferred to, 167, 180, 247,
 331, 348
 Bhagavadgītā quoted, 508
 Bhadrā, 339, 467
 Bhadrās'va (a division of
 Jambudvīpa), 491
 Bhaga, 27
 Bhāgavata Purāna—
 i. 3, 15—213
 — 3, 20—350
 ii. 1, 37—156
 — 5, 34—155
 iii. 6, 29—156
 — 12, 20—108
 — 20, 25—157
 — 22, 2—156
 iv. 1, 40—335
 v. 1, 30—489
 — 16, 2—490
 — 17, 11—496
 — 20, 4, 6—498
 — 20, 11—499
 — 20, 16, 22—500
 — 20, 28—501
 vi. 6, 40—158
 vii. 11, 24—366
 viii. 5, 41—157
 — 24, 7—208
 ix. 2, 16—222
 — 2, 17—223
 — 2, 21—223
 — 2, 23 ff.—222
 — 6, 2—224
 — 7, —358
 — 7, 6—386
 — 18, 3—316
 — 14, 48—158
 — 15, 5—457
 — 16, 17—458
 — 16, 30—368

Bhāgavata Purāna continued—

ix, 17, 2,—227
— 17, 10,—232
— 20, 1,—234
— 21, 19,—237
— 21, 21,—235
— 21, 33,—235
— 22, 14,—275
x, 33, 27,—113

Bhalandana, and Bhalanda a Vaisya mantra-krit,
279

Bhayamāna, 266
Bharadvāja, 141, 279, 330
Bharata, 168, 234, 242,
354, 360, 413
Bhārata, 187, 348
Bharatas, 320, 338, 340,
354

Bhūratas, 344

Bhūratavarsha, 491, 494 ff.

Bhūrati, 112

Bharga, or Bhārga, 231

Bhārgabhbūmi, 231

Bhūrgava, 228

Bharmyaśva, 235

Bhūsi, 116

Bhūvins, 498

Bheda, 319, 323

Bhīma, 133, 142, 308, 349

Bhīmanāda, 207

Bhīmasena, 273

Bhīras, 495

Bhīshma, 127

Bhrigu, 36, 65, 67, 122,
139, 151, 168, 228 f.,
279, 286, 314, 443 ff.

Bhrigu Vūruni, 443

Bhrigubhbūmi, 231

Bhrigus, 169 f., 228, 442 ff.

Bhūritakila, 279

Bhumanyu, 360

Bhūrloka, 51, 209, 211

Bhūtakritas, 37, 42, 255

Bhūtanāmpati, 16

Bhūtapati, 108

Bhūtas, 59

Bhūtavīras, 438

Boar incarnation, 51 ff.,
54, 76

Böhtlingk and Roth's Lexicon referred to, 47, 108,
144, 178, 180, 184, 253,
340, 348, 395, 400, 442,
505, 511

Brahma Svovasyava, 30

Brahmachārin, 289

Brahmān (*masculine, a priest*), 155, 242 ff., 459

Brahmān (*masculine, the god*), 35, 36, 75, etc.

— his passion for his daughter, 107

Brahmān (*neuter, prayer*, 241)

Brahman (*neuter, the universal soul*), 20

Brahmāna, son of a Brāhmān, 252, 264

Brahmanāchhaṁsin, 155

Brahmanas (the theological works), 2, 4 f.

Brahmanaspati, 16

Brahmāni, 110

Brahmans, 7, and *passim*

— origin of the word, 252, 259, 264

— their intermarriage with women of other castes, 282, 481

— their prerogatives and powers, 128, 130, etc.

Brahmānya, 155

Brahmaputra, 252, 259,
264

Brahmarshi, or Brāhmaṇa rishi, 400, 407, 410

Brahmās, the nine, 65, 445

Brahmāśva, 279

Brahmaudana, 26, 27

Brahma-yuga, 152

Bréal, M. Michel, his Hercule et Cacus, 246

Bride's seven steps, 378,
514

Brihaddevatū, 321, 326,
344

Brihadishu, 234

Brihaduktha, 279

Brihaspati, 16, 22, 163,
167, 226, 270, 438

Brihat, 16

Brihat-sūman, 286

Buddha, 509

Buddhists, 513

Budha, 221, 226, 307, 336

Bunsen, Baron, his Philosophy of Universal History referred to, 8

Burnouf, M. Eugène, his Bhāgavata Purāna referred to, 8, 155, 211,
489, etc.

— his views about the Deluge, 215

O

Chākshusha, 298

Chākshusha Manvantara,
207, 213

Chanda, 207

Chandāla, 402, 481

Caste, mythical accounts of its origin, 7 ff.

— Variety and inconsistency of these accounts, 34, 66, 102, 159

Castes, their future abodes, 63, 98

— their respective colours, 140, 151, 153

— no natural distinction between, 140

— manner of their rise according to Prof. Roth, 289

— time of their rise according to Dr. Haug, 292

Chāturvarṇya, 135

Charshapnis, 158

Chauras, 482

Chārvākas, 305

Chandas, 4

Chhandogas, 334

Chhāndogya Brāhmaṇa, 5
— Upanishad, iii. 11,

4,—195, 514

— iv. 1, 4,—49

— v. 3, 1,—435

— viii. 15, 1,—195

Chīnas, 482, 484

Clīrini, a river, 199

Cholas, 488

Chunchulus, 353

Chyavana, 124, 273, 283,
445, 470, 474

Colbrooke's Miscellaneous Essays quoted or referred to, 8, 13 f., 25, 52, 325,
378, 385, 492, 497

Cowell's Professor E. B., translation of Kaushitaki Brāhmaṇa Upanishad, 10, 432

— Preface to, quoted, 32

Creation of man, mythical accounts of, 7 ff.

— their mutual inconsistency, 34, 65, 102

— how explained by Indian commentators, 66

Creations, similarity of successive, 60, 89

D

Dadhicha, 279
 Dadhyanch, 162, 169, 172
 Daityas, 41, 139, 499
 Daivavāta, 348
 Daivodasa, 348
 Daksha, 9, 65, 72, 116, 122, 124 ff., 153, 221, 335
 Dākshāyani, Aditi, 126
 Dama, 222
 Damayanti, 389
 Damayanti, see Madayanti
 Damins, 500
 Dānavas, 139, 144, 209, 468 f., 499
 Dānavratas, 501
 Danāyū, 123
 Dandakas, 467
 Danu, 116, 123
 Daradas, 459, 482
 Darvas, or Dārvās, 482, 488
 Dāsa, 174, 323, 396
 Dasahotri, 29
 Dasaratha, 362
 Dasārṇa, 222
 Dasyus, 174 ff., 358, 460, 469, 482, 500
 Dattatreyā, 450, 473, 478
 Day of Brahmā, 43, 48, 213
 — gods, 43
 Deities, triad of, produced from the three Gunas, 75
 Deluge, legend of, 183, 199, 203, 209, 211
 — was the tradition of it indigenous or not, 215
 — comparison of different Indian accounts of, 216
 Devadeva, 351
 Devakas, 500
 Devala, 352
 Devalas, 353
 Devāpi, 269
 Devarāja, 279
 Devarāta, 279, 351 f., 356, 413
 Devarātas, 353
 Devarshi, 400
 Devas, 79, 499
 Devasarman, 468
 Devasravas, 344, 352 f.
 Devavat, 322
 Devavāta, 344
 Dhūnajapyas, 353

Dhananjaya, 279
 Dhanur-veda, 477
 Dhanvantari, 226
 Dhanyas, 500
 Dharma, 20, 122, 124, 385, 400, 412
 Dhūrṣṭakas, 223
 Dhātpi, 18, 27, 124
 Dhī, 241
 Dhṛishṇu, 126
 Dhṛishta, 221, 223
 Dhṛitarāshṭri, 117
 Dhruva, 234, 298
 Dirghatamas, 226, 232, 247, 268, 279
 Dirghatapas, 233
 Dirghasattra, 300
 Dishtā, 222
 Diti, 116, 123
 Divodūsa, 229 f., 235, 268, 279, 322, 348
 Dogs, whether they fast from religious motives, 365
 Draupadi, 381, 389
 Dravida, 209
 Dravidas, or Drāvidas, 482
 Dravinas, 500
 Dṛidhantra, 400
 Dṛiptabälaki Gūrgya, 432
 Dṛishadvati, 344
 Drona, 207
 Druhyu, 232, 482
 Druhyus, 179
 Duḥśīma, 305
 Durga, commentator on the Nirukta, quoted, 344, 417
 Durgaha, 267
 Duritakshaya, 237
 Durvásas, 387, 389
 Dushyanta, 234, 360
 Dvāpara, 39, 43 ff., 119, 146, 149 f., 447
 Dvīpas, 51, 489 ff.
 Dwarf incarnation, 52, 54, 233
 Dyaus (the sky), *feminine*, 108
 — *masculine*, 163, 396, 434

E

Earth, the goddess, 51, 163
 Earth fashioned, 51 ff., 76
 — milked, 96

Egg, the mundane, 35, 74, 156, 503
 Ekadāśini, 69
 Ekavīṁśa, 16
 Elysian fields, 502
 Emūsha, 53

F

Families, hope of their reunion in a future life, 385
 Fathers, see Piṭris
 Fish incarnation, 50, 54, 111, 183, 199, 205, 209, 211
 Flood, see Deluge

G

Gabhastimat, 494
 Gabhira, 232
 Gādhi, 343, 349, and *passim*
 Gālava, 232, 352, 411
 Gālavas, 353
 Gandhamādana, 491
 Gāndhāras, 484
 Gāndharva, 494
 Gāndharvas, 33, 37, 59, 139, 144, 177, 250, 257, 499
 — their heaven, 63, 98, 307
 Gangā, 130, 199, 206, 461, 490
 Garga, 227, 236, 279, 305
 Gārgya Bāluki, 431
 Gārgyas, 236
 Gārhapatiya-fire, 186
 Gāthīn, 348, 358
 Gāthīns, 358, 363
 Gātṛa, 335
 Gautama, 121, 235, 316, 434, 466
 Gavishtīra, 330
 Gaya, 227
 Gayatrī, 16, 110, 114, 137
 Genesis, i. 2, — 52
 Gifts to priests, 259
 Gir, 241
 Gods, intercourse of men with, in early ages, 147
 — whether they can practise Vedio rites, 365
 Goldstücker, Professor, aid received from, 508

Gopatha Brähmana, 5
Gorresio, his edition of the Rāmūyana referred to, 397, 399, etc.
Gotama, 330
Grāvan, 155
Griffith, Principal, MS. obtained through him, 279
Gṛhya Sūtras, 5
Gṛitsa, 279
Gṛitsamada, 226
Gṛitsamati, 227
Gubernatis, Signor A. de, quoted, xii.
Gunas, 66, 75, 145
Gurudhīra, 279

H

Haihaya, 477
Haihayas, 449, 486
Haimavatī, 336
Hala, 121
Hall's, Dr. Fitzgerald, edition of Wilson's Vishnu Purāna, 24, 268, 512 and *passim*
— information given by, 155
— Preface to his edition of the Sāṅkhyā-prava-chana-bhāshya referred to, 430
Hansa, 158
Hansas, 498
Hanūmat, 143
Hari, 51, 62
Harita, 224
Hārita, 352
Hāritas, 225
Hāritaka, 351
Hariśchandra, 355, 379 ff., 413, 486
Harivāṁsa quoted—

292,—302
652,—223
659,—221
718,—376
773,—487
789,—230
1425,—351
1456,—351
1620,—227
1696,—231
1682,—233
1732,—227
1752,—231
1766,—352

Harivāṁsa continued—

1781,—236
1819,—273
8811,—307
11355,—154
11802,—153
11808,—152
Harivarsha, 491, 494
Harsha, 124
Haryasva, 279
Haug's, Dr. Martin, Aitareya Brähmaṇa quoted or referred to, 4, 5, 48, 107, 137, 177, 180, 192, 246, 250, 256, 263, 355, 369, 438 f., 492 f., 513
— Origin of Brähmanism quoted, 11, 14, 292
Haughton, Sir G. C., his note on Manu, vii. 41,— 296

Hayagrīva, 207, 212

Havishyanda, 400

Hayasiras, 449

Hema, 232

Hemakūta, 491

Himavat, or Himālaya, 130, 183, 200, 229, 311, 491

Hiranmaya, 491

Hiranyagarbha, 195, 220

Hiranyāksha, 352

Hiranyākshas, 353

Homer's Odyssey quoted, 502

Hostility to Vedic worship, 259

Hotri, 155, 251, 263, 271, 294, 459

Houses, origin of, 93

Hrisikēśa, 206

Huhu, 336

Human sacrifices, 11 f.

Hūṇas, 495

Hymns of the Rig-veda, 4, 318

— whether they allude to castes as already existing, 161 ff.

I

Ida, 268, 279, 306

Idā, daughter of Manu, 184 ff. see Ilā

Ikshvāku, 115, 126, 177, 195, 221, 224, 268, 327, 355, 362, 401, 405, 508

Ikshvākus, 401, 418
Ilā, 126, 221, 306, see Idā
Ilāvrita, 491
Indra, 3, 10, 18, 20, 33, 44, 163, 168, 171, 191, 438
Indra's heaven, 63, 98
— wife, 341
— his adulteries, 121, 310, 466
Indra-dvipa, 494
Indrāñi, 310, 389
Indu (Soma), 124
Instrumental cause, 51
Isaiah vi. 9, 10,—255
Īśāna, 20
Ishīratha, 348
Ishundharas, 499
Īśvara, 75, 221
Itihāsas, 3, 5, 215

J

Jābāli, 115

Jahnu, 273, 349, 353, 360, 413

Jahnus, 358

Jaimini's Sūtras, 508

Jainas, 305

Jamadagni, 279, 330, 345, 350, 355, 413, 422, 447, 450 ff.

Jamadagnis, 342

Jambudvīpa, 488, 490 ff.

Jambūnada, 461

Janaka, 130, 334, 426 ff.

Janaloka, 44, 51, 88, 95, 99

Janamejaya, 152, 438

Janant̄pa, 493

Janārdana, 206

Japa, 442

Jatāyus, 116

Jātimālā, 497

Jātukarṇya, 223

Jaya, 352

Jayakrita, 351

Jayāpiḍa, 424

Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society quoted, 3, 6, and *passim*

Jyotsnā, 59

K

Ka, 125

Kuchhapa, 351 f.

Kadrū, 123
 Kakshīvat, 268, 279
 Kāla, 62
 Kālā, 123
 Kālakū, 116
 Kalāpa, 277
 Kali, 39, 43 ff., 120, 146,
 150, 495
 Kalindas, 482
 Kalinga, 232
 Kalingas, 459, 495
 Kalmashapāda, 414, 423
 Kalpas, 43 f.
 Kāma, 112, 124
 Kāmarūpa, 495
 Kāmbojas, 482 f., 485 ff.
 Kānchana, 349
 Kānchis, 391
 Kāndaprishtha, 442, 507
 Kandarpa, 408
 Kāndarshi, 400
 Kānina, 223
 Kankas, 484
 Kānyakubja, 390
 Kanva, 166, 170, 172, 234,
 279
 Kanvāyana, 234
 Kapas, 472
 Kapi, 237
 Kapila, 227, 414
 Kapilā, 123
 Kapilas, 499
 Kapileyas, 356
 Kapishṭhala, 344
 Kardama, 116, 123, 400
 Kārīshis, 353
 Karmadevas, 46
 Kārtavīrya, 450, 478
 Kārūsha, 221 f.
 Kārūsha, 126
 Kārūshas, 495
 Kāśa, or Kāśaka, 226 f.
 Kas̄erumat, 494
 Kāśirāja, 226
 Kāśis, 431
 Kāśmiras, 459
 Kāśya, 227, 279
 Kāsyapa, 37, 54, 115 f.,
 123 f., 126, 195, 230,
 400, 451, 455 f., 459
 Kāsyapas, 438
 Kāthaka Brāhmaṇa quoted,
 140, 186, 189, 332 f.,
 358
 Kati, 352
 Kātyāyanas, 352
 Kātyāyanas' S'rāta Sū-
 tras, 19, 136, 365 ff.,
 369, 514

Kaumūra-sarga, 58
 Kausilitakī Brāhmaṇa
 quoted, 328
 — Upanishad, 10, 431
 Kaus'ika, 342, 349
 Kaus'ika (epithet of Indra),
 347
 Kausikas, 353, etc.
 Kaus'iki, 350, 411
 Kavi, 243, 279, 445
 Keralas, 488
 Kesarpārabandhū, 285
 Ketumāla, 491
 Ketus, 32
 Khalins, 468
 Khandapāni, 235
 Khāndavāyanas, 451
 Khas'as, 482
 Khyāti, 67
 Kikatas, 342
 Kilāta, 189
 Kimpurusha, 491 f.
 Kimpurushas, 499
 Kīnāśa, 97
 Kinnaras, 37
 Kins'uka, 229
 Kirātas, 391, 482, 484 f.
 Kolisarpas, 482, 488
 Konvāśiras, 482
 Kovidas, 500
 Kratu, 36, 65, 116, 122 f.,
 400
 Krauncha-dvīpa, 491, 500
 Kraunchī, 117
 Kripa, 279
 Krishna, 113
 Krishnas, 499
 Krishnī, 178
 Krita, 39, 43 ff., 88, 90 ff.,
 119, 144, 148 f., 158,
 492, 495, 505
 Kritamālu, 209, 212
 Kritavīrya, 449 ff., 478
 Kroḍha, 123
 Krodhavas'ū, 116
 Kshattravṛiddha, 226
 Kshattrī, 481
 Kshattriyas, 7, and *passim*
 — etymology of the
 word, 97, 504
 — how their race was
 restored, 452
 Kshemaka, 235
 Kshudrakas, 459
 Kuhn, Dr. A., quoted, 179
 Kulakas, 500
 Kullūka quoted, 36, 47,
 129, 279, 480, 483

Kumārila Bhaṭṭa referred
 to or quoted, 122, 509
 Kuntis, 459
 Kürma avatāra, see Tor-
 toise incarnation
 Kurus, 5, 260, 431, 495
 Kurus, 498
 Kusa, 227, 349, 351, 397
 Kusa-dvīpa, 491, 497, 499
 Kus'alaś, 500
 Kus'umāmba, 349, 351
 Kus'anābha, 351, 397
 Kus'ika, 338, 340, 346,
 400, 474
 Kusikas, 342 f., 346, 355,
 etc.
 Kusumāyudha (a name of
 Kāma), 112
 Kutsa, 330 f.
 Kuvera, 140, 279, 400

L

Lakshmi, 124
 Lalita-vistara, 32
 Langlois, M., translator of
 the Harivāṇīsa, 151
 — of the Rig-veda, 273,
 321
 Lassen's Indian Antiqui-
 ties quoted, 394, 425
 Lāṭas, 482
 Lātyāyanas' Sūtras, 512
 Lecky, Mr., his History of
 Rationalism, 407
 Les'a, 226
 Life of Brahmā, 49
 Linga Purāṇa quoted, 225
 Lohita, 279
 Lohitas, 353
 Loiseleur Deslongchamps,
 M., his note on Manu,
 vii. 41,—296
 Lokuloka mountain, 503
 Lunar race, 220, 225

M

Mada, 471 f.
 Madayanti, 419, 514
 Madhucchandas, or Ma-
 dhusyanda, 279, 347,
 351 f., 357, 400, 406
 Madhusūdana Sarasvatī,
 his Commentary on the
 Bhagavad Gītā quoted,
 508

Madras, 484, 495	Mahābhārata <i>continued</i> —	Mahābhārata <i>continued</i> —
Magadhas, 495	Bhīshma-parvan—	Anusūsana-parvan—
Māgadhas, 501	410,—501	2158,—482
Magas, 501	455,—500	2160,—130
Mahābhārata, 5 f.	468,—502	2262,—466
quoted—	Drona-parvan—	2718,—474
Ādi-parvan—	2149,—414	2841,—494
272,—447	2395,—505	3732,—374
869,—445	2443,—459	3960,—460
2253,—116	4747,—483	4104,—443
2459,—451	Sātya-parvan—	4527,—128
2517,—122	2295,—392	4579,—128
2550, 2574,—123	2281,—272	4745,—314
2606,—445	2360,—419	6208,—507
2610,—476	Sānti-parvan—	6262,—514
2620—2635,—117	774,—32	6250,—514
2914,—410	1741, 1792,—423, 452	6570,—132
3128,—124	2221,—304	7187,—462
3143,—306	2247,—97	As'vamedhika-parvan—
3151,—308	2280,—370	1038,—57
3533,—482	2304,—366	Mahābhaya, 124
3727,—360	2429,—484	Mahādeva, 75, 207
3750,—273	2674,—49, 149	— taught by Angiras,
4719,—418	2682 ff.,—49	226
6638,—388	2749,—127	Mahākalpa, 213
6695,—342	2819,—140	Maharioka, 156
6699,—415	3404, 3406,—150	Maharshi, 400
6802,—448	3408,—49	Mahat, 41, 75, 114
7351,—389	4499,—388	Mahāvirya, 237
8455,—389	4507,—209	Mahendra, 451
Sabhā-parvan—	5330,—376	Mahesvara, 74
489,—379	6130,—506	Mahīdhara, 490
1031,—483	6640,—429	Mashishas, or Māhishakas,
1045,—494	6930,—138	482, 488
Vana-parvan—	7523,—125	Mūhishmati, 462, 478
10137, 10201—450	7548,—507	Mahodaya, 402
11234,—143	7569,—122	Mahoragas, 139
11248,—40	7573,—125	Maitravaruna, 155, 244
12460,—308	7882,—430	Maitravaruni, 186
12469,—133	8550,—60	Maitrūyana, 230
12619,—147	8591, 8604,—423	Maitreya, 56, 58
12747,—196	10058,—151	Maitreyas, 230
12826,—48	10699,—430	Mūlavas, 459, 495
12952,—35	10118,—423	Malaya, 205
12962,—10	10861,—130	Mallinātha quoted, 395
12981,—145	11221,—334	Mamatū, 247
13090,—40	11545, 11854,—430	Māna (Agastya?), 321
13436,—129	12658,—215	Mānava-dharma-sūtra
14160,—178	12685,—122	(or Institutes of Manu)—
Udyoga-parvan—	13088,—145	Quotations from—
373,—310	13090,—40	i. 8 ff.—35
3721,—412	Anusūsana-parvan—	— 22, 25,—38
3970,—336	183,—412	— 30,—60
5054,—276	186,—352	— 31 ff.—35, 446
Bhīshma-parvan—	201,—354	— 58 ff.—38, 446
227,—491	1867,—440	— 66 f.—43
346,—495	1944,—229	— 69 ff.—47
389,—148	2103,—482	— 79 f., 86,—39

Mānava-dharma-sūtra
continued—
 i. 87, 98, 97, —40
 — 88 ff., —364
 — 100, —129
 ii. 29, —137
 — 38 f., —481
 — 170, —138
 — 225, —138
 — 241, —515
 iii. 171, —275
 iv. 239 ff., —380
 v. 1, 3, —446
 vii. 2, —446
 — 3 ff., —300
 — 38 ff., —296
 viii. 17, —380
 — 110, —329
 ix. 22, —336
 — 66 f., —297
 — 149 f., —282
 — 301 f., —49
 — 303, —300
 x. 4, —480
 — 7 ff., —282
 — 8, —481
 — 12, —481
 — 20, —481
 — 43 f., —481
 — 45, —482
 — 105, —358
 — 108, —377
 xi. 234 ff., —393
 — 32, —398
 xii. 39 ff., —40

Mānāvi, 186
 Mānāvi, 189
 Mānasas, 501
 Mandagas, 501
 Mandapāla, 336
 Mandehas, 500
 Māndhātri, 225, 268, 279, 484
 Mantra, 2, 4 f.
 Manu, progenitor of the Āryan Indians, 161 ff., 183 ff.
 — his bull, 188 ff.
 Manu, 119, 122, 297
 — Auttami, 38, 111
 — Chākshusha, 38, 298
 — Raivata, 38
 — Sañavarani, 217
 — Sāvarni, 217
 — Svārochisha, 38, 111
 — Svāyambhuva, 25, 38 f., 44, 65, 72, 106, 111, 114, 298, 489, 511

Manu Tūmasa, 38
 — Vaivasvata, 37 ff., 44, 111, 115, 126, 196, 213, 217, 221, 279, 298, 306, 508, 510
 — Vivavat, 217
 Manu (a female), 116
 Manu (= mind), 23
 Manu's Descent, 183, 217
 Manush (= Manu), 165 ff.
 Manvantara, 43 ff.
 Mārganapriyā, 116
 Marichi, 36 f., 65, 114 ff., 122 f., 126
 Mārkandeya, 48, 199, 207
 Mārkandeya Purāna quoted, 75, 81 ff., 221 ff., 379
 Mārttānda, 126
 Mārttikāvatas, 459
 Maru, 277
 Maruts, 20, 71
 — their heaven, 63, 98
 Marutta, 222
 Matanga, 411, 440
 Mūtarisvan, 128, 170, 256
 Mati, 241
 Mātrikā, 158
 Matsya-avatāra, see Fish-incarnation
 Matsyas, 431
 Matsya Purāna, 1, 12—203
 49, 39, —277
 132, 98, —278
 3, 32 ff., —108
 Matthew, Gospel of St. xiii. 14 f., —255
 Maudgalya, 235
 Medhatithi on Manu, 47
 Medhātithi, 234
 Medhyātithi, 170
 Mekalas, 482
 Men, Five races of, 163, 176
 — their original condition, 62, 117, 145, 147
 Menakā, 407, 410
 Meru, 417, 491
 Metempsychosis, 385
 Mimānsa-vārttika quoted, 508
 Mithilā, 279, 430
 Mitra, 27, 184, 186, 221, etc.
 Mitrasaha, 337, 414, 423, 514
 Mitrayu, 230, 322
 Mlechhas, 41 f., 141, 482, 484

Mṛikshipū, 271
 Mrityu, 20, 124, 299, 303
 Muchukunda, 140
 Mudgala, 236, 279, 362
 Mukhya-sarga, 57
 Müller's Professor Max, Ancient Sanskrit Literature quoted or referred to, 2, 4, 5, 8, 13, 48, 122, 181, 192, 263, 263, 326, 355, 358, 366, 426, 508
 — Art. in Journ. Germ. Or. Soc., 365
 — Art. in Journ. Roy. As. Soc., 115, 177
 — Art. in Oxford Essays, now reprinted in "Chips from a German Workshop," 226, 231
 — Chips from a German Workshop, 429, 431, 490
 — Preface to Rig-veda, 348, 417
 — Results of Turanian Researches, 327
 Mundaka Upanishad, i. 2, 1, quoted, 3, 39
 Muni (a female), 123
 Munis, 153
 Mūtibas, 358, 483

N

Nābhūga, 224, 268
 Nābhūga, 126, 224
 Nābhūgārīshtha, 126, 223
 Nābhānedīshtha, 221
 Nābhūganedīshtha, 192 ff., 221
 Nāgas, 37, 140
 Nagnajit Gündhāra, 515
 Nabush, 165, 179, 307
 Nahusha, 133, 226, 232, 297, 307 ff., 393, 410
 Naigeya sākhā of Sāma-Sanhitā, 14
 Naimittika-laya, 45, 209, 219
 Naubandhana, 200
 Nairītas, 124
 Namuchi, 175
 Nara, 36, 76, 353, 400
 Nārada, 36, 119, 126, 400
 Nārūyuna, 35, 50, 54, 76, 164, 400
 — assumes different colours in different yugas, 146

Närāyani, 353
 Narishyanta, 126, 221, 223
 Narmadā, 207, 478
 Neshṭri, 155, 251
 Nēve, M., Mythe des Rībhavas referred to, 161
 Ničasūkha, 342
 Nidāna-Sūtras, 136
 Niggards, 259
 Night of Brahmā, 43, 209
 Nila, a mountain, 491
 Nila, 235
 Nilakantha on M.Bh., 201
 Nimi, 297, 316, 337
 Niramitra, 235
 Niriti, 124
 Nirukta, 5
 — quoted or referred to, 3
 i. 8,—256
 — 20,—147
 ii. 10,—269
 — 24,—338
 — 25,—340
 iii. 4,—26
 — 7,—165
 — 8,—177
 — 17,—445
 iv. 19,—154
 v. 11,—253
 — 13,—321
 vi. 30,—322
 — 32,—342
 ix. 6,—253
 — 26,—417
 x. 44,—154
 xi. 19,—442
 — 23,— 9
 xii. 10 f.,
 — 34,—162
 xiii. 9,—252
 Nishūdas, 177, 481, 153 f.
 Nishūda, birth of, 301,
 303, 403, 481
 Nishāda-sthapati, 366
 Nishadha, 491
 Nitha, 241
 Nivid, 241
 Nodhas, 330
 Nrīga, 221
 Nyūya-mälū-vistara quoted,
 510

O

Odras, 482
 Oha-bruhman, 255

P

Pādma-kalpa, 44, 50
 Padma Purāna, 379
 Pahlavas, 351, 391, 398,
 482, 484, 486
 Paijavana, 366
 Paka-yajna, 187
 Pukshyū, 342
 Panchachūdū, 413
 Panchadas'a, 16
 Panchajanūh and other parallel terms, 176
 Panchālās or Pānchālās, 431, 434, 495
 Panchasikā, 430
 Panchavīmsa Brāhmaṇa, 5
 — quoted, 417
 Panchavīmsa stoma, 492
 Pāndus, 5, 127, 381
 Pāṇini, 3
 — referred to, 513
 Pūṇins, 353
 Pannagas, 144
 Para, 44
 Pāradus, 482, 486
 Paramarshi, 400
 Parameshtīn, 123
 Parārdha, 44
 Parāśara, 56, 58, 130, 322,
 417, 430, 447
 Parāśava, 481
 Pārasikas, 495
 Parasurāma, 350, 422, 442,
 447 ff., 474
 Parāvasu, 455
 Parikshit, 438
 Parivettī, 275
 Parivitti, 275
 Parjanya, 20, 270
 Parsis, 293
 Pārthivas, 353
 Paruchhepa, 172
 Parushṇi, 490
 Parvata, 400
 Pāsādhyumna, 319
 Passion, 51, see Rājās
 Paśupati, 108, 444
 Pātālus, 504
 Patangas, 498
 Pātnivata (Agni), 191
 Paundras, or Paundrakas,
 391, 482, 484
 Paurava, 353
 Paurukutī, 351
 Phena, 233
 Pijavana, 268, 297, 322,
 338

Pisūchas, 33, 37, 140
 Pitas, 499
 Pitrīs, 23, 37, 46, 58, 79,
 88, 434
 Plaksha-dvīpa, 490, 497
 Plants, origin of, 59, 90,
 95
 Plato quoted, 147
 Potrī, 155, 251, 263
 Prachetas, 36, 116, 125,
 279
 Prāchetasa, 125
 Prachetases, 72
 Pradhā, 123
 Pradhāna, 51, 74
 Pradyumna, 279
 Prajāpati, 16 ff., 23 f., 29 ff.,
 52 ff., 68 ff., 180, 184,
 444, and *passim*
 — born on a lotus-leaf,
 32
 — his exhaustion, 68
 — his heaven, 63, 98
 Prajāpati Parameshtīn, 19
 Prakāsa, 58
 Prākṛita-sarga, 58
 Prākṛiti, 74 f.
 Pralaya, 214, 217
 Pramaganda, 342
 Prānīsu, 221
 Pranava, 158
 Prasāstri, 251, 263
 Prasakaṇva, 330
 Praskanyas, 234
 Prastotrī, 41, 155
 Prasūti, 65
 Pratardana, 229, 268, 455
 Pratihartri, 41, 155
 Pratīpa, 273
 Pratiprasthātri, 136
 Pratisanchara, 44
 Pratisarga, 49
 Pratishthātri, 155
 Pratyūsha, 400
 Pravahana-Jaivali, 433, 515
 Prāyaschitti, 294
 Pretas, 141
 Priśhadāsva, 224, 279
 Priśhadhra, 126, 221
 Prīthū, 494
 Prīthavāna, 305
 Prīthī, or Prīthu, 268, 279,
 301, 304, 511
 Prīthivi, 434
 Prīthūdaka, 272
 Priyamedha, 172, 235, 268
 Priyavrata, 65, 72, 106,
 114, 489, 491, 497

Pulaha, 36, 65, 116, 122 f., 400
 Pulasta, 36, 65, 116, 122 f., 400
 Pulindas, 358, 482 ff.
 Pundra, 232
 Pundras, 358, 483, 495
 Purāṇas, 3, 5 f.
 Purāṇāsva, 279
 Purohitas, 41, 128, 507
 Pūru, 232, 277, 331, 360
 Pūrus, 179
 Purukutta, 266, 279, 331
 Purukutṣāṇi, 267
 Purumīlha, 267
 Purūravas, 126, 128, 158, 172, 221, 226, 279, 306, 349, 497
 Purusha, 9 ff., 25, 32, 34 ff., 75 f., 106, 155
 Purusha-sūkta, translated and discussed, 7 ff., 34, 155 f., 159, 161
 Purushas, 500
 Purushottama, 51
 Pūshan, 19 f., 33, 71, 270
 Pushkalas, 500
 Pushkara, 405
 Pushkara-dvīpa, 491, 501
 Pushkaras, 500
 Pushkarin, 237
 Pushpaka (Rāma's car), 120

R

Rabbasa, 232
 Raibhya, 455
 Rājanya, 10, 258, 264, etc.
 Rājarshi, 266, 400
 Rajas (the Guna) 41, 58, 62, 66, 75, 79, 89, 92, 141, 154
 Rajas (*masculine*) 335
 Rājastya sacrifice, 20, 225
 Rājatarangini quoted, 424
 Raji, 226
 Rakshasas, 59, 140, 144, etc.
 Rākshases, 33, 37, 59, 136, 177
 Rakshovāhas, 459
 Rāma, 5, 112, 115, 120, 305, 337
 Rāma Mārgaveya, 438

Rāmas, 495
 Rāmaṭhas, 485
 Rāmāyana, 5 f.
 — quoted—
 i. 37, 4,—405
 — 51–65,—397
 — 55, 5,—329
 — 70,—337
 — 70, 41,—362
 ii. 110, 1–7,—115
 — 110, 2,—36
 — 110, 3,—54
 — 110, 6,—337, 400
 — 111, 1,—337
 iii. 14, 5–15, 29–31,
 — 115
 iv. 43, 38,—493
 v. 82, 13,—59
 vii. (or Uttara-kūṇḍala)
 30, 19 ff., —120
 74, 8 ff., —117
 Rambhā, 226, 232
 Rambhā, 336, 408, 413
 Ramyaka, 491
 Rantibhāra and Rantināra,
 234
 Rantideva, 423
 Rasollāsa, 62
 Raspi, 292
 Rathachitra, 336
 Rathakūra, 336
 Rathaeṭhas, 293
 Rathantara, 16
 Rathavīti, 283
 Rathītīra, 224
 Rathīwi, 292
 Rati, 106, 114
 Rauhiṇīyana, 72
 Rāvana, 21, 478
 Re-marriage of Indian women in early times, 282
 Renu, 346, 350, 357
 Renukā, 350
 Renumat, 352
 Ribhukshans, 165
 Ribbus, 255
 Richīka, 349, 405, 413, 450, 453, 476
 Rig-veda, 2
 Texts of, translated¹—
 First Mandala—
 10, 1,—246
 10, 11,—347
 13, 4,—167

Rig-veda *continued*—

First Mandala—
 14, 11,—167
 15, 5,—253
 31, 4,—172
 32, 12,—490
 33, 9,—246
 36, 10,—167, 170
 — 19,—166, 167
 44, 11,—168
 45, 3,—341
 47, 6,—330
 58, 6,—170
 63, 7,—330
 65, 1,—170
 68, 4,—164
 76, 5,—166
 80, 1,—244
 — 16,—162
 83, 5,—169
 84, 7,—259
 92, 11,—45
 94, 6,—263
 96, 5,—243
 101, 4,—260
 — 5,—246
 102, 2,—322
 106, 5,—167
 108, 7,—246
 — 8,—179
 112, 1C,—171
 — 19,—331
 114, 2,—163
 117, 3,—178
 — 21,—171, 174
 122, 9,—260
 124, 2,—45
 125, 7,—260
 130, 5,—173
 — 8,—174
 139, 9,—172
 144, 4,—45
 158, 6,—46, 247
 162, 5–7, 11, 15, 16,
 163, 3,—12 [—12
 164, 15,—362
 — 34, 35,—244
 — 45,—252
 — 50,—11
 167, 7,—173
 175, 3,—174
 177, 5,—183
 182, 3,—260
 185, 9,—331

¹ A large number of texts are referred to in pp. 45, 163, 170, 171, 241, 243, 245, 259, 329, etc., but as they have not been translated they are not included in this inst.

Rig-veda continued—

Second Mandala—

1, 2, 3,—251
— 4 ff.—270
2, 10,—178
4, 2,—170
7, 1, 5,—348
12, 6,—244
19, 8,—243
20, 4,—243
— 6,—174
23, 1, 2,—242
— 4,—260
27, 1,—72
33, 1,—184
— 13,—163
36, 5,—253
39, 1,—247
43, 2,—252

Third Mandala—

1, 21,—345
3, 6,—165
5, 10,—170
18, 4,—346
23, 2—4,—345, 348
26, 1,—346
29, 15,—347, 362
30, 20,—347
32, 10,—244
33, 1—12,—339
34, 9,—176, 258
42, 9,—347
43, 4, 5,—344
— 5,—247
49, 1,—176
53, 6—16, 21, 24,—340,
354, 372
— 9,—362
— 12,—242
65, 19,—181

Fourth Mandala—

6, 11,—173
9, 3, 4,—252
16, 9,—242
25, 4,—348
— 6, 7,—260
26, 7,—175
37, 1,—165
42, 8, 9,—266
44, 6,—268
50, 7—9,—247
58, 2,—248

Fifth Mandala—

2, 12,—173
21, 1,—168
29, 3,—248
31, 4,—248
32, 11,—178

Rig-veda continued—

Fifth Mandala—

— 12,—248
37, 4,—247
40, 5 ff., 6,—242, 469
— 8,—248
45, 6,—166
53, 2,—331
54, 7, 14,—247

Sixth Mandala—

11, 4,—177
14, 2,—165
— 3,—174
16, 1,—167
— 9,—167
— 13, 14,—169
— 19,—349
21, 8,—243
— 11,—175
44, 11,—261
45, 7,—244
46, 7,—179
48, 8,—165
49, 13,—172
51, 5,—163
61, 12,—176, 178
70, 2,—167
75, 10,—252, 253
— 19,—242

Seventh Mandala—

2, 3,—168
— 5,—339
7, 5,—249
8, 4,—349
15, 2,—178
18, 4, 5, 21—24,—321
19, 3,—331
20, 2,—331
22, 9,—243
25, 3,—331

26, 1, 2,—241

28, 2,—243
32, 10,—332
— 26,—329

33, 1—13,—318

— 3,—242

— 11,—244

35, 7,—242

42, 1,—249

53, 3,—332

60, 8,—332

64, 3,—372

69, 2,—176

70, 2,—173

— 3,—184

— 5,—243

72, 2,—329

83, 1—8,—323

Rig-veda continued—

Seventh Mandala--

87, 4,—325
88, 3—6,—325
91, 1,—172
97, 1,—176
— 3,—242
100, 4,—172
103, 1, 7, 8,—253
104, 13,—258
— 12—16,—326

Eighth Mandala—

2, 21,—46
4, 20,—262
7, 20,—249
9, 10,—268
10, 2,—166
15, 5,—171
16, 7,—245
17, 2,—249
18, 22,—173
19, 21,—167
23, 13,—165
27, 7,—168
30, 3,—164
31, 1,—249
32, 16,—249
33, 19,—249
34, 8,—168
36, 7,—263
37, 7,—263
43, 13, 27,—168
45, 39,—249
50, 9,—264
52, 1,—163
— 7,—176, 178
53, 1,—261
— 7,—250
64, 6,—341
66, 5,—250
— 8,—253

Ninth Mandala—

81, 30,—250
85, 5,—250
— 6,—181
87, 5,—175
— 9,—250
91, 1,—172
92, 2,—348
65, 22, 23,—177
66, 20,—178
86, 28,—181
92, 5,—175
96, 6,—250
— 11,—166
112, 1, 3,—250
113, 6,—251

Rig-veda continued—
 Tenth Mandala—
 14, 1,—217
 16, 6,—253
 17, 1, 2,—217
 21, 5,—169
 26, 5,—167
 28, 11,—251
 33, 4,—262
 45, 6,—178
 46, 2, 9,—170
 49, 7,—175
 52, 2,—252
 53, 4,—177
 54, 3,—181
 60, 4,—177
 61, 7,—242
 62, 5,—341
 — 7,—193
 63, 7,—166
 68, 3, 4, 5,—72
 — 8, 11,—217
 69, 3,—166
 71 and 72,—13
 71, 1-11,—254
 — 11,—245
 72, 2,—46
 — 4, 5,—72
 — 5,—9
 73, 7,—175
 75, 5,—490
 77, 1,—245
 80, 6,—165
 81 and 82,—13
 81, 2, 3,—181
 82, 3,—163, 181
 85, 3, 16, 34,—245
 — 29,—251
 — 39, 40,—257
 88, 19,—256
 89, 16,—243
 — 17,—346
 90, 1,—32
 — 1-16,—9
 91, 9,—173
 92, 10,—169
 95, 7,—306
 97, 1,—46
 97, 17, 19, 22,—256
 98, 1-12,—270
 99, 7,—173
 100, 5,—164
 105, 8,—241, 242
 107, 8,—245
 109, 1-7,—256
 — 4,—244
 117, 7,—246
 121,—13

Rig-veda continued—
 Tenth Mandala—
 125, 5,—246
 129,—13
 — 4,—32
 141, 3,—251
 148, 5,—268
 161, 4,—13
 167, 4,—345
 Rijṛāśva, 266
 Riksha, 235, 274, 360
 Rikshavat, 456
 Rīpu, 298
 Rishabha, 279, 357
 Rishalbas, 500
 Rishi, 243
 Rishis, 36, 44, 88, etc.
 Rishitishena, 269
 Ritabādhu, 279
 Ritayu, 234
 Ritavratas, 501
 Rituparna, 322
 Roer, Dr. E., his translations of the Upanishads referred to, 25
 Rohidagvā, 268
 Rohinī, 389
 Rohita, 355
 Rohitāsva, 382
 Roth, Dr. R., his Literature and History of the Veda referred to, 289, 318, 324, 331, 339, 342, 360, 364, 372
 — articles in Journ. of Germ. Or. Society, 8, 192, 194, 217, 248, 289
 — article in Indische Studien, 48, 355, 376
 — Dissertation on the Atharva-veda, 395
 — Illustrations of Nirukta, 177, 253, 256, 321, 339
 Rosen, Dr. F., remarks on the story of Sūnāsēpa, 359
 Ruchi (*masc.*), 65
 Ruchi (*fem.*), 466
 Rudra, 3, 20, 65, 163, 194, 225
 Rudras, 19 f., 52, 117
 Rūpin, 360

S

S'abarās, or S'avaras, 291, 392, 483 f.

Sacrifices of no avail to the depraved, 98
 Sadasyas, 459
 Sādhyas, 10 f., 26 f., 38, 41
 Sagara, 337, 486
 Sahadeva, 266
 Sahajanyā, 336
 Saīndhabus, 495
 Saīndhavāyanas, 353
 S'aineya, 183
 S'ainyas, 236
 S'āivyā, wife of Harischandra, 380 f.
 S'ākadvipā, 491, 500
 S'ākalas, 495
 S'ākhū, 491
 S'akus, 391, 398, 482, 484, 486
 S'akti, or S'aktri, 315, 322, 328, 342
 S'akuntalā, 410
 S'akvaris, 255, 320
 S'ākyā (Buddha) 509
 Sālankāyana, 279
 Sālankāyanas, 353
 S'ālavati, 352
 S'ālavatyas, 353
 S'ālmali-dvipā, 490, 498
 Salvas, 438
 S'ālvās, 495
 S'ama, 124
 Samantapanchaka, 451
 Sūma-veda, 2
 — quoted—
 i 262,—180
 — 355,—163
 Samprakshālāna-kūla, 217
 Saīnīsraya, 116
 Saīnīvarana, 360
 Saīnīvarata, 207
 Sanaka, 51
 Sanandana, 51, 65
 Sanatkumāra, 114, 307
 S'āndilya, 513
 Sanhitā, 2, 4
 Sanjaya, 148
 S'ankara on the Brahmasūtras, 147
 — Chhiāndogya Upanishad, 195
 Sankarshāṇa, 207, 507
 S'āṅkhāyana Brāhmaṇa, 5
 Sāṅkhyā, 126, 210, 334, 430
 — Kūrikā, 158
 — Pravachana, 158
 Sankirti, a Vaīśya author of Vedic hymns, 279

Sankriti, 237
 Sankriti, 352
 Sankrityas, 353
 Santanu, 269
 Saphari (fish), 205, 209
 Saptadasa, 16
 Septa sindhavab, 489 ff.
 Sarabhas, 391
 Saradvat, 279
 Süradvata, 279
 Sürangī, 336
 Sarasvatī, 71, 110, 141,
 178, 315, 344, 421, 490
 Sārasvatyās, 305
 Sarga, 49
 Survakāma, 322
 Survakarman, 422, 456
 Survasūra Upanishad, 361
 Saryāta, 221
 Saryāti, 126, 221
 Sasarpari, 343
 Sat, 46
 Satadru, 417
 Satānanda, 235
 Satapatha Brähmana, 5
 — Kūnya Sūkhā, i. 6,
 — 167, 382
 — Mādhyandina Sūkhā,
 Texts from, translated or
 referred to—
 i. 1, 4, 12,—366
 — 1, 4, 14,—188
 — 3, 2, 21,—136
 — 4, 2, 2,—348
 — 4, 2, 5,—166
 — 5, 1, 7,—168
 — 5, 2, 16,—137
 — 5, 3, 2,—163
 — 7, 4, 1,—35, 107
 — 8, 1, 1,—181
 ii. 1, 4, 11,—17
 — 2, 2, 6,—262
 — 3, 4, 4,—147
 — 4, 2, 1,—96
 — 4, 4, 1,—125
 — 5, 1, 1,—69
 — 5, 2, 20,—136
 iii. 2, 1, 39,—369
 — 2, 1, 40,—136
 — 4, 3, 6,—513
 — 6, 2, 26,—147
 — 9, 1, 1,—68
 iv. 1, 5, 1,—221
 — 3, 4, 4,—262
 — 5, 4, 1,—9
 v. 3, 5, 4,—268
 — 5, 4, 9,—367
 vi. 1, 2, 11,—30

S'atapaṭha Brähmana con-
 tinued—
 Mādhyandina Sūkhā—
 vi. 6, 1, 19,—188
 — 8, 1, 14,—349
 vii. 4, 1, 19,—125
 — 5, 1, 5,—54
 — 5, 2, 6,—24
 viii. 1, 4, 10,—515
 — 4, 2, 11,—19
 — 4, 3, 1,—19
 x. 4, 1, 10,—438
 — 4, 2, 2,—69
 — 4, 4, 1,—69
 xi. 1, 3, 1,—31
 — 1, 6, 1,—35
 — 1, 6, 7,—30
 — 1, 6, 8,—29
 — 5, 1, 1,—226
 — 6, 1, 1,—443
 — 6, 2, 1,—426
 xii. 1, 6, 38,—333
 xiii. 4, 1, 3,—369
 — 4, 3, 3,—217
 — 5, 4, 14,—168
 — 6, 1, 1,—9
 — 7, 1, 15,—456
 xiv. 1, 2, 11,—53
 — 4, 2, 1,—21, 36
 — 4, 2, 23,—19
 — 5, 1, 1,—432
 — 7, 1, 33,—46
 — 9, 1, 1,—433
 S'atārūpa, 25, 65, 72, 106,
 110, 114
 S'atayātu, 322
 S'atendriyā, 114
 Satvā, 41, 62, 66, 75 f.,
 79, 89, 92
 S'attvika, 42
 S'attyahavya, 493
 Satyaketu, 231
 Satyāṅgas, 498
 Satyavati, 349, 405, 450,
 453
 Satyavrata, 207, 375
 Satyavratas, 501
 S'ūtyūyana Brähmana
 quoted, 320, 328
 Saudāsa, 343, 414
 Saudāsas, 328, 337
 Saumya, 494
 Saunaka, 226, 279
 Saundikas, 482
 Saurashtras, 495
 Sauvīras, 495
 Sausīrutas, 353
 Savana, 335, 445

Sāvarnya and Sāvarṇi, 217
 Savitri, 71, 181
 Savitri, 110
 Sāyakāyana, 438
 Sūyana quoted, 2, 164 and
 passim
 S'ayu, 171
 Schlegel, A. W. von, his
 edition of the Rāmāyāna
 referred to, 397, 399,
 etc.
 Semitic source, was the
 Indian legend of the
 deluge derived from a,
 216
 S'esha, 44, 116
 Seven rishis, 200, 400, 404
 Seven seas surrounding the
 continents of the earth,
 491
 Sexes, their primitive re-
 lations, 418
 Shaḍguruśishya quoted,
 343
 Shaḍvīṁśa Brähmana
 quoted or referred to,
 334, 513
 Sīṁhikā, 123
 Sindhudvīpa, 268, 272, 353
 Sindhukshtit, 268
 Sinhalas, 391
 S'ini, 326
 S'iva, 389
 S'ivis, 459, 493
 S'lishti, 298
 Smṛiti, 5, 139
 Snēhas, 500
 Solar race, 220
 Soma, 10, 19 f., 30, 71 f.,
 124, 153, 166, 175, 181,
 221, 225, 467, 469
 Soma Maitrāyana, 230
 Somas'ushma Satyayajni,
 428
 Somesvara quoted, 511
 Sons, may be begotten by
 third parties, 418
 S'onāmbu, 207
 S'rāddhādeva, 207
 S'rāddhādeva, 207, 335
 S'rūta-sūtras, 5
 S'ravanasya, 279
 S'rī, 67
 Sridhara, Commentator or
 Bhāgavata Purāna,
 quoted, 210 f., 317
 S'ringin, 491
 S'rinjayas, 283, 512

S'rotriya, 442
 S'rutadharas, 409
 S'rutarshis, 279, 400
 Sthānu, 116, 122
 Sthānūtīrtha, 420
 Sthāpati, 514
 Stoma, 241
 Streiter, Dr., his Dissertation de Sunahsepho, 48, 355
 Subhagū, 116
 Suchi, 445
 Sudās, 242, 268, 297, 319, 321 ff., 338, 366, 371 ff.
 Sudāsa,
 Sudeshnā, 233,
 Sūdras, 7 and *passim*
 — etymology of the word, 97
 Sudyumna, 221
 Sulma, 232
 Suhotra, 227, 267, 349, 353, 360
 Suhotri, 227
 Sukanya, 283
 S'ukī, 117
 S'ukra, 305, 335, 445
 Sūkta, 241
 Sukumāra, 231
 Sulabhā, 430
 Sumantu, 349
 Sumati, 234
 Sumeru, 96
 Sumitra, 167
 Sumukha, 297
 Sunahotra, or S'unahotra, 226, 228
 Sunasēpa, 350, 353 355 ff., 376, 405, 413
 Sunithā, 299, 303
 Sunahpuchha, 352
 Surādhās, 266
 S'ūras, 495
 S'ūrpāraka, 455
 Sūrya, 245, 251
 Sūryavarehas, 336
 S'ushmins, 500
 S'ushmiṇa, 493
 Sūta, 207
 Sutapas, 232, 235
 Sūtras, 5
 S'utudrī, 338, 490
 Sushadman, 438
 Suvarchas, 279
 Suvitta, 279
 Suyavasa, 355
 Svāhā, 369
 Svarbhānu, 249, 469

Svarjit Nāgnajita, 515
 Svayambhū, 33
 Svayambhū, 96, 111, 122
 S'veta, 491
 S'vetaketu Aruṇeya, 428, 434
 S'yāparnas, 438
 S'yāvāṣṭa, 283
 S'yena, 513
 S'yūmaras'mi, 171

T

Taittiriya-ūranyaka quoted, 31
 Taittiriya Brāhmaṇa, 5

— quoted—
 i. 1, 2, 6,—68
 — 1, 3, 5,—53
 — 1, 4, 4,—186
 — 1, 9, 10,—26
 — 1, 10, 1,—68
 — 2, 6, 1,—68
 — 2, 6, 7,—21
 — 6, 2, 1,—70
 — 6, 4, 1,—71
 — 8, 8, 1,—26
 — 8, 8, 2,—445
 ii. 2, 1, 1,—72
 — 2, 4, 4,—515
 — 2, 9, 1,—27
 — 3, 6, 1,—68
 — 3, 8, 1,—23
 — 7, 9, 1,—71
 iii. 2, 3, 9,—21
 — 2, 5, 9,—189
 — 3, 3, 1,—25
 — 3, 3, 5,—25
 — 3, 10, 4,—26
 — 4, 1, 16,—49
 — 8, 18, 1,—24
 — 9, 22, 1,—43, 46,
 — 10, 9, 1,—71[163
 — 12, 9, 2,—41
 Taittiriya Sanhitā, 2
 — quoted—
 i. 5, 4, 1,—29
 — 7, 1, 8,—187
 — 7, 3, 1,—262
 — 8, 16, 1,—20
 — 16, 11, 1,—137
 ii. 2, 10, 2,—188, 510
 — 3, 5, 1,—124,
 — 4, 13, 1,—21
 — 5, 9, 1,—187
 — 6, 7, 1,—116
 iii. 1, 7, 2,—512

Taittiriya Sanhitā *continued*—

iii. 1, 1, 4,—193
 — 5, 2, 2,—332
 iv. 3, 10, 1,—16
 v. 1, 5, 6,—184
 — 6, 8, 3,—136
 vi. 2, 5, 2,—187
 — 3, 10, 4,—32
 — 5, 6, 1,—26
 — 6, 6, 1,—191
 — 6, 8, 2,—26
 — 6, 10, 3,—26
 vii. 1, 1, 4,—15
 — 1, 5, 1,—52
 — 5, 15, 3,—187
 — p. 47 of MS., 328
 — Commentator on,
 quoted, 3
 Taittiriya Upanishad
 quoted, 443
 Taittiriya Yajurveda, 12
 Takshapa, 279
 Tūlajanghas, 467, 486
 Tamas, 41, 57, 58, 62, 66,
 75, 80, 89, 92, 141
 Tūmasa, 42
 Tūmrā, 116
 Tūmrāliptakas, 459
 Tūmravarṇa, 494
 Tūndya Brāhmaṇa, 5, 329
 Tansu, 234
 Tapas, 119, 141
 — its great power, 394,
 410

Tapoloka, 88
 Tārā, 225
 Tūrakūyanas, 353
 Tiriyak-srotas, 57
 Tishimes, 500
 Tishya (= Kali) age, 148
 Tortoise incarnation, 51,
 54
 Trasadasyu, 263, 266, 331
 Trayyaruna, 237, 267
 Tretū, 39, 43 ff., 92 ff.,
 119, 145, 149 f., 158,
 447, 495 f.
 Triad of deities, see Deities
 Trigarttas, 459
 Trisanku, 362, 375, 401,
 413
 Trishtha, 190
 Trishṭubh, 16
 Trisiras, 268
 Trivṛishṇa, 267
 Trivrit, 16
 Tritsus, 320, 324

Troyer, Captain, his edition
of the *Rajatarangini*, 424
Tukhāras, 303
Tumburas, 303
Turvasas, 179
Turvasu, 232, 482
Tushāras, 484
Tvāshṭri, 438
Tvashṭri, 181

U

Uddalaka Āruṇi, 195
— Svetaketu, 419
Udgātri, 41, 155, 251, 294
Unnetri, 155
Upadraśṭri, 4, 459
Upanishads, 2, 5
Upasṛuti (a goddess), 311
Upastuta, 170
Uru, 298
Ūrdhvabāhu, 335
Ūrdhvbrasrotas, 57
Ūrjja, 335
Ūrjjā, 335
Urukshaya, 237
Urunjirā, 417
Ūrvā, 351, 476
Urvasi, 226, 244, 306, 316,
320, 337
Usanas, 226
Ushas, 108
Usinara, 268
Usinaras, 431, 482
Utathya, 279, 467
Uttānapad, 72
Uttānapāda, 65, 72, 106,
114, 298
Uttara Kurus, 491 ff.
Uttara Madras, 492

V

Vūch, 241, 246, 325
Vachas, 241
Vuhlikā, 273
Vaibhojas, 482
Vaidya, 481
Vaikhūnasas, 32
Vaikṛita-sarga, 68
Vaina, Vainya, 208, 279
Vairūja, 16, 111
Vairūpa, 16
Vaisampyāna, 122, 153 f.

Vaisasa, 97
Vaisyas, 7, and *passim*
— etymology of the
word, 97
Vaivavata Manvantara,
112, 214
Vājas, 165
Vājasaneyi Sanhitā quoted
or referred to—
xi. 32,—169
xii. 34,—349
xiv. 28,—16
xxx. 18,—49
xxxi. 1,—9
— 1—16,—8
— 13.—10
xxxviii. 26,—490
Vājaśravas,
Vajrasīrsha, 445
Valakūṣva, 349
Vālakhilya, iii. 1,—217
— iv. 1,—217
Valmiki, 5
Vāmadeva, 114, 279, 330
Vāmana-avatāra, see
Dwarf incarnation
Vandyā, a Vaisya composer
of Vedic hymns, 279
Vanga, 233, see Banga
Vangas, 459
Vansū, 116
Vapushmat, 222
Varāha-avatāra, 53, see
Boar incarnation
Vārāha-kalpa, 44, 50, 67
Varenya, 445
Varna (colour or caste),
140, 153, 176
Vārshagiras, 266
Varuna, 18, 20, 27, 71,
136, 168, etc.
— his adultery, 467
Vāruna, 494
Varuṇa-praghāsa, 136
Varūtri, 190
Varvaras, 484
Vāśas, 391
Vashatkāra, 487
Vishikalas, 353
Vasishṭha, or Vasishṭha,
36, 65, 110, 115, 122,
211, 244, 316 ff., 468,
486
— begets a son to king
Kalinashapāda, 418
Vasishṭhas, 242, 319 ff.,
402
Vāstrya fishuans 293

Vasumanas, 268
Vasundharas, 499
Vasus, 19 f., 52, 117, 124,
184, 186, 221, 444
Vātarasānas, 32
Vatsa, 231
Vatsabhūmi, 231
Vayata, 319
Vāyu, 10, 19, 33, 76, 128,
172, 464
Vāyu Purāṇa quoted, 225,
227, 232
i. 5, 11 ff., —74
— 6, 1 ff., —75
— 7, 22 ff., —81
— 9, 1 ff., —77
— 9, 100, —446
Vedāngas, 5, 126
Vedānta, 223
Vedas, 63
— antiquity of, 2
— undivided in the
Krita age, 144
Vedasravas, 279
Vedhas, 65
Vedhas, a sage, 243
Vedhasa, 279
Vena, 126
Vena, 297 ff., 481
Venuhotra, 231
Venya, 268
Vibhu, 445
Videha, 426
Videhas, 431, 459
Vidhātṛi, 124
Vidūratha, 455
Vidyutpatāka, 207
Vijnāna Bhikshu, 158
Vikṛita, 123
Vinatā, 123
Vipāś, or Vipāśū, 338, 417
Vipra, 243
Vipula, 466
Virāj (masc.), 9, 36 f., 106,
111, 195
— (fem.), 217, 333, 511
Viranchi, 112
Virinī, 125
Virochana, 233
Virūpa, 224
Virūpas, 311
Viryadharas, 499
Vis, 157
Vishnu, 3, 10, 51, 54, 62,
67, 75, 153, 172, 211,
495, etc.
— assumes different co-
lours in different yugas,

Vishnu Purana quoted—
 Book i.—
 3, 10 ff., and 14 f., —43
 3, 16 ff., —44
 5, 1 ff., —55
 6, 1 ff., —60
 7, 1 ff., —64
 8, 12, —66
 9, 15, —389
 10, 10, —335
 13, 7, —298
 13, 54, —511
 15, 52, —72
 Book ii.—
 4, 1, and 5 ff., —497
 4, 9, —198
 4, 12 ff., —499
 4, 19 ff., —500
 4, 23 ff., —500
 4, 28 ff., —501
 4, 37 f., —503
 7, 19, 24, —504
 10, 8, —336
 Book iii.—
 1, 3, —44
 1, 6, and 9, —335
 1, 14, —335
 3, 9, —336
 6, 21, —400
 Book iv.—
 1, 4, —220
 1, 5, —72
 1, 12, —221
 1, 13, 14, —222
 2, 2, —223
 3, 5, —224
 3, 13, —375
 3, 18, —337
 4, 25, —337
 6, 2, —225
 6, 19, —226
 7, 1, —226
 7, 4, and 14 ff., —349
 8, 6, —232
 10, 12, —232
 18, 1, —232
 19, 9, —236
 19, 10, —234
 19, 16, —235
 21, 4, —236
 24, 44, —277
 Book vi.—
 1, 4, —43
 Visisipra, 166
 Visvajit, 352
 Visvakarman, 52, 76, 173,
 181
 — Bhauvana, 456
 Viśvavkrit, 352

Visvamitra, 128, 232, 242,
 247, 265, 272, 279, 329
 ff., 337 ff., 474, 483
 Visvamitras, 342, 345 f.
 Visvantara, 438
 Visvaratha, 352
 Visvasrijah, 37
 Visvedevas, 16, 20, 71,
 380
 Vitahavya, 228, 268, 279,
 285, 297
 Vitatha, 227
 Vithotras, 459
 Vivāsas, 498
 Vivatas, 26 f., 37, 115 f.,
 122, 126, 169, 195, 199,
 201
 Vrajana, 360
 Vṛत्यa, 22, 481
 Vṛtya-stomas, 513
 Vṛihaspati, 310, see Bri-
 haspati
 Vṛishbügir, 266
 Vṛishala, 482
 Vṛishan, 170
 Vṛittra, 174, 310
 Vyāsa, 6
 Vyasa, 268

W

Weber's Indische Litera-
 turgeschichte referred to,
 2, 5
 — Indische Studien
 quoted or referred to,
 8, 9, 14, 32, 39, 48, 49,
 108, 136, 141, 147, 155,
 181, 186, 189, 216, 252,
 272 f., 332 ff., 357, 367,
 369, 373, 395, 438 f.,
 443, 446, 492 f., 511 f.
 — articles in Journal
 Germ. Or. Soc., 189,
 366, 385, 443
 — his opinion on the
 origin of the Indian tra-
 dition of the Deluge, 216
 — Vajra-sūchī, 140
 Williams's, Prof. Monier,
 Indian Epic poetry re-
 ferred to, 6, 34
 Wilson's, Prof. H. H.,
 Analyses of the Vishnu,
 Vāyu, and other Pu-
 rūnas, 6, 505
 — translation of the
 Rig-veda referred to,
 360, 372, 490

Wilson's Sankhya-Kārikā
 referred to, 430
 — Vishnu Purāna re-
 ferred to, 6, 49, 353,
 446, and *passim*
 — article on Human
 Sacrifices in India in
 Journ. R. As. Soc., 355
 Women, estimation in
 which the ancient In-
 dians held them, 26,
 136

Y

Yūdavas, 112
 Yadu, 232, 477
 Yadus, 179
 Yajna-paribhūshū-śūtras,
 2, 365, 367
 Yajñupeta, 336
 Yajnavalkya, 25, 136, 428
 Yūjnavalkyas, 353
 Yajur-veda, 2
 Yakshas, 37, 139, 144, 499
 Yama, 20, 122, 126, 129,
 171, 217, 320
 Yāmadūtas, 353
 Yamunā, 467
 Yaska, 3, 5, see Nirukta
 Yütudhūnas, 326 f.
 Yaudhūḥ (warriors), 511,
 514
 Yavanas, 391, 398, 482,
 485 ff.
 Yayati, 232, 455
 Year of Brahmā, 44
 Year of gods, 43
 Yogi 210, 334, 466, 478
 — philosophy, 430, 508
 Yogin, 153
 Yudhājīt, 279
 Yudhiṣṭhīra, 127, 133, 309
 Yudhiyāmadi, 322
 Yugas, 39, 43 ff.
 — system of, not men-
 tioned in the hymns of
 the Rig-veda, 45
 — their several charac-
 teristics, 39, 90 ff., 144
 Yuga of the Kshattriyas
 152
 Yuvanāśva, 225, 268, 279

Z

Zendavesta, 293
 Zota, 294

TRÜBNER'S ORIENTAL SERIES.

"A knowledge of the commonplace, at least, of Oriental literature, philosophy, and religion is as necessary to the general reader of the present day as an acquaintance with the Latin and Greek classics was a generation or so ago. Immense strides have been made within the present century in these branches of learning; Sanskrit has been brought within the range of accurate philology, and its invaluable ancient literature thoroughly investigated; the language and sacred books of the Zoroastrians have been laid bare; Egyptian, Assyrian, and other records of the remote past have been deciphered, and a group of scholars speak of still more recondite Accadian and Hittite monuments; but the results of all the scholarship that has been devoted to these subjects have been almost inaccessible to the public because they were contained for the most part in learned or expensive works, or scattered throughout the numbers of scientific periodicals. Messrs. TRÜBNER & Co., in a spirit of enterprise which does them infinite credit, have determined to supply the constantly-increasing want, and to give in a popular, or, at least, a comprehensive form, all this mass of knowledge to the world."—*Times*.

Second Edition, post 8vo, pp. xxxii.—748, with Map, cloth, price 21s.

THE INDIAN EMPIRE : ITS PEOPLE, HISTORY, AND PRODUCTS.

By the HON. SIR W. W. HUNTER, K.C.S.I., C.S.I., C.I.E., LL.D.,
Member of the Viceroy's Legislative Council,
Director-General of Statistics to the Government of India.

Being a Revised Edition, brought up to date, and incorporating the general
results of the Census of 1881.

"It forms a volume of more than 700 pages, and is a marvellous combination of literary condensation and research. It gives a complete account of the Indian Empire, its history, peoples, and products, and forms the worthy outcome of seventeen years of labour with exceptional opportunities for rendering that labour fruitful. Nothing could be more lucid than Sir William Hunter's expounding of the economic and political condition of India at the present time, or more interesting than his scholarly history of the India of the past."—*The Times*.

THE FOLLOWING WORKS HAVE ALREADY APPEARED:—

Third Edition, post 8vo, cloth, pp. xvi.—428, price 16s.

ESSAYS ON THE SACRED LANGUAGE, WRITINGS,
AND RELIGION OF THE PARISIS.

BY MARTIN HAUG, PH.D.,

Late of the Universities of Tübingen, Göttingen, and Bonn; Superintendent of Sanskrit Studies, and Professor of Sanskrit in the Poona College.

EDITED AND ENLARGED BY DR. E. W. WEST.

To which is added a Biographical Memoir of the late Dr. HAUG
by Prof. E. P. EVANS.

- I. History of the Researches into the Sacred Writings and Religion of the Parsis, from the Earliest Times down to the Present.
- II. Languages of the Parsi Scriptures.
- III. The Zend-Avesta, or the Scripture of the Parsis.
- IV. The Zoroastrian Religion, as to its Origin and Development.

"Essays on the Sacred Language, Writings, and Religion of the Parsis," by the late Dr. Martin Haug, edited by Dr. E. W. West. The author intended, on his return from India, to expand the materials contained in this work into a comprehensive account of the Zoroastrian religion, but the design was frustrated by his untimely death. We have, however, in a concise and readable form, history of the researches into the sacred writings and religion of the Parsis from the earliest times down to the present—a dissertation on the languages of the Parsi Scriptures, a translation of the Zend-Avesta, or the Scripture of the Parsis, and a dissertation on the Zoroastrian religion, with especial reference to its origin and development."—*Times*.

Post 8vo, cloth, pp. viii.—176, price 7s. 6d.

TEXTS FROM THE BUDDHIST CANON
COMMONLY KNOWN AS "DHAMMAPADA."

With Accompanying Narratives.

Translated from the Chinese by S. BEAL, B.A., Professor of Chinese,
University College, London.

The Dhammapada, as hitherto known by the Pali Text Edition, as edited by Fausboll, by Max Müller's English, and Albrecht Weber's German translations, consists only of twenty-six chapters or sections, whilst the Chinese version, or rather recension, as now translated by Mr. Beal, consists of thirty-nine sections. The students of Pali who possess Fausböll's text, or either of the above-named translations, will therefore needs want Mr. Beal's English rendering of the Chinese version; the thirteen above-named additional sections not being accessible to them in any other form; for, even if they understand Chinese, the Chinese original would be unobtainable by them.

"Mr. Beal's rendering of the Chinese translation is a most valuable aid to the critical study of the work. It contains authentic texts gathered from ancient canonical books, and generally connected with some incident in the history of Buddha. Their great interest, however, consists in the light which they throw upon everyday life in India at the remote period at which they were written, and upon the method of teaching adopted by the founder of the religion. The method employed was principally parable, and the simplicity of the tales and the excellence of the morals inculcated, as well as the strange hold which they have retained upon the minds of millions of people, make them a very remarkable study."—*Times*.

"Mr. Beal, by making it accessible in an English dress, has added to the great services he has already rendered to the comparative study of religious history."—*Academy*.

"Valuable as exhibiting the doctrine of the Buddhists in its purest, least adulterated form, it brings the modern reader face to face with that simple creed and rule of conduct which won its way over the minds of myriads, and which is now nominally professed by 245 millions, who have overlaid its austere simplicity with innumerable ceremonies, forgotten its maxims, perverted its teaching, and so inverted its leading

, that a religion whose founder denied a God, now worships that founder as

Second Edition, post 8vo, cloth, pp. xxiv.—360, price 10s. 6d.

THE HISTORY OF INDIAN LITERATURE.

By ALBRECHT WEBER.

Translated from the Second German Edition by JOHN MANN, M.A., and THÉODOR ZACHARIAE, Ph.D., with the sanction of the Author.

Dr. BUHLER, Inspector of Schools in India, writes:—"When I was Professor of Oriental Languages in Elphinstone College, I frequently felt the want of such a work to which I could refer the students."

Professor COWELL, of Cambridge, writes:—"It will be especially useful to the students in our Indian colleges and universities. I used to long for such a book when I was teaching in Calcutta. Hindu students are intensely interested in the history of Sanskrit literature, and this volume will supply them with all they want on the subject."

Professor WHITNEY, Yale College, Newhaven, Conn., U.S.A., writes:—"I was one of the class to whom the work was originally given in the form of academic lectures. At their first appearance they were by far the most learned and able treatment of their subject; and with their recent additions they still maintain decidedly the same rank."

"Is perhaps the most comprehensive and lucid survey of Sanskrit literature extant. The essays contained in the volume were originally delivered as academic lectures, and at the time of their first publication were acknowledged to be by far the most learned and able treatment of the subject. They have now been brought up to date by the addition of all the most important results of recent research."—*Times*.

Post 8vo, cloth, pp. xii.—198, accompanied by Two Language Maps, price 12s.

**A SKETCH OF
THE MODERN LANGUAGES OF THE EAST INDIES.**

By ROBERT N. CUST.

The Author has attempted to fill up a vacuum, the inconvenience of which pressed itself on his notice. Much had been written about the languages of the East Indies, but the extent of our present knowledge had not even been brought to a focus. It occurred to him that it might be of use to others to publish in an arranged form the notes which he had collected for his own edification.

"Supplies a deficiency which has long been felt."—*Times*.

"The book before us is then a valuable contribution to philological science. It passes under review a vast number of languages, and it gives, or professes to give, in every case the sum and substance of the opinions and judgments of the best-informed writers."—*Saturday Review*.

Second Corrected Edition, post 8vo, pp. xii.—116, cloth, price

THE BIRTH OF THE WAR-GOD.

A Poem. By KALIDASA.

Translated from the Sanskrit into English Verse by
RALPH T. H. GRIFFITH, M.A.

"A very spirited rendering of the *Kumbrasambhava*, which was first published twenty-six years ago, and which we are glad to see made once more accessible."—*Times*.

"Mr. Griffith's very spirited rendering is well known to most who are at all interested in Indian literature, or enjoy the tenderness of feeling and rich creative imagination of its author."—*Indian Antiquary*.

"We are very glad to welcome a second edition of Professor Griffith's admirable translation. Few translations deserve a second edition better."—*India*.

TRÜBNER'S ORIENTAL SERIES.

Post 8vo, pp. 432, cloth, price 16s.

**A CLASSICAL DICTIONARY OF HINDU MYTHOLOGY
AND RELIGION, GEOGRAPHY, HISTORY, AND
LITERATURE.**

By JOHN DOWSON, M.R.A.S.,

Late Professor of Hindustani, Staff College.

"This not only forms an indispensable book of reference to students of Indian literature, but is also of great general interest, as it gives in a concise and easily accessible form all that need be known about the personages of Hindu mythology whose names are so familiar, but of whom so little is known outside the limited circle of servants."—*Times*.

"It is no slight gain when such subjects are treated fairly and fully in a moderate space; and we need only add that the few wants which we may hope to see supplied in new editions detract but little from the general excellence of Mr. Dowson's work."—*Saturday Review*.

Post 8vo, with View of Mecca, pp. cxii.—172, cloth, price 9s.

SELECTIONS FROM THE KORAN.

By EDWARD WILLIAM LANE,

Translator of "The Thousand and One Nights;" &c., &c.

A New Edition, Revised and Enlarged, with an Introduction by STANLEY LANE POOLE.

"... Has been long esteemed in this country as the compilation of one of the greatest Arabic scholars of the time, the late Mr. Lane, the well-known translator of the 'Arabian Nights.' ... The present editor has enhanced the value of his relative's work by divesting the text of a great deal of extraneous matter introduced by way of comment, and prefixing an introduction."—*Times*.

"Mr. Poole is both a generous and a learned biographer. . . . Mr. Poole tells us the facts . . . so far as it is possible for industry and criticism to ascertain them, and for literary skill to present them in a condensed and readable form."—*Englishman, Calcutta*.

Post 8vo, pp. vi.—368, cloth, price 14s.

**MODERN INDIA AND THE INDIANS,
BEING A SERIES OF IMPRESSIONS, NOTES, AND ESSAYS.**

By MONIER WILLIAMS, D.C.L.,

Hon. LL.D. of the University of Calcutta, Hon. Member of the Bombay Asiatic Society, Boden Professor of Sanskrit in the University of Oxford.

Third Edition, revised and augmented by considerable Additions,
with Illustrations and a Map.

"In this volume we have the thoughtful impressions of a thoughtful man on some of the most important questions connected with our Indian Empire. . . . An enlightened observant man, travelling among an enlightened observant people, Professor Monier Williams has brought before the public in a pleasant form more of the manners and customs of the Queen's Indian subjects than we ever remember to have seen in any one work. He not only deserves the thanks of every Englishman for this able contribution to the study of Modern India—a subject with which we should be specially familiar—but he deserves the thanks of every Indian, Parsee or Hindu, Buddhist and Moslem, for his clear exposition of their manners, their creeds, and their necessities."—*Times*.

Post 8vo, pp. xliv.—376, cloth. price 14s.

**METRICAL TRANSLATIONS FROM SANSKRIT
WRITERS.**

With an Introduction, many Prose Versions, and Parallel Passages from Classical Authors.

By J. MUIR, C.L.E., D.C.L., LL.D., Ph.D.

"... An agreeable introduction to Hindu poetry."—?

"... A volume which may be taken as a fair illustration alike of the religious and moral sentiments and of the legendary lore of the best Sanskrit writers."—*Edinburgh Daily Review*.

TRÜBNER'S ORIENTAL SERIES.

Second Edition, post 8vo, pp. xxvi.—244, cloth, price 10s. 6d.

T H E G U L I S T A N;

OR, ROSE GARDEN OF SHEKH MUSHLIU'D-DIN SADI OF SHIRAZ.

Translated for the First Time into Prose and Verse, with an Introductory Preface, and a Life of the Author, from the Atish Kudah,

BY EDWARD B. EASTWICK, C.B., M.A., F.R.S., M.R.A.S.

"It is a very fair rendering of the original."—*Times*.

"The new edition has long been desired, and will be welcomed by all who take any interest in Oriental poetry. The *Gulistan* is a typical Persian verse-book of the highest order. Mr. Eastwick's rhymed translation . . . has long established itself in a secure position as the best version of Sadi's finest work."—*Academy*.

"It is both faithfully and gracefully executed."—*Tablet*.

In Two Volumes, post 8vo, pp. viii.—408 and viii.—348, cloth, price 28s.

MISCELLANEOUS ESSAYS RELATING TO INDIAN SUBJECTS.

BY BRIAN HOUGHTON HODGSON, Esq., F.R.S.,

Late of the Bengal Civil Service; Corresponding Member of the Institute; Chevalier of the Legion of Honour; late British Minister at the Court of Nepal, &c., &c.

CONTENTS OF VOL. I.

SECTION I.—On the Koch, Bôdô, and Dhimâl Tribes.—Part I. Vocabulary.—Part II. Grammar.—Part III. Their Origin, Location, Numbers, Creed, Customs, Character, and Condition, with a General Description of the Climate they dwell in.—Appendix.

SECTION II.—On Himalayan Ethnology.—I. Comparative Vocabulary of the Languages of the Broken Tribes of Népal.—II. Vocabulary of the Dialects of the Kiranti Language.—III. Grammatical Analysis of the Vâyu Language. The Vâyu Grammar.—IV. Analysis of the Bâhîng Dialect of the Kiranti Language. The Bâhîng Grammar.—V. On the Vâyu or Hayâ tribe of the Central Himalaya.—VI. On the Kiranti Tribe of the Central Himalaya.

CONTENTS OF VOL. II.

SECTION III.—On the Aborigines of North-Eastern India. Comparative Vocabulary of the Tibetan, Bôdô, and Gârô Tongues.

SECTION IV.—Aborigines of the North-Eastern Frontier.

SECTION V.—Aborigines of the Eastern Frontier.

SECTION VI.—The Indo-Chinese Borderers, and their connection with the Himalaya and Tibetans. Comparative Vocabulary of Indo-Chinese Borderers in Arakan. Comparative Vocabulary of Indo-Chinese Borderers in Tenasserim.

SECTION VII.—The Mongolian Affinities of the Caucasians.—Comparison and Analysis of Caucasian and Mongolian Words.

SECTION VIII.—Physical Type of Tibetans.

SECTION IX.—The Aborigines of Central India.—Comparative Vocabulary of the Aboriginal Languages of Central India.—Aborigines of the Eastern Ghats.—Vocabulary of some of the Dialects of the Hill and Wandering Tribes in the Northern Sharcas.—Aborigines of the Nilgiris, with Remarks on their Affinities.—Supplement to the Nilgirian Vocabularies.—The Aborigines of Southern India and Ceylon.

SECTION X.—Route of Nepalese Mission to Pekin, with Remarks on the Water-Shed and Plateau of Tibet.

SECTION XI.—Route from Kâthmândû, the Capital of Népal, to Darjeeling in Sikkim.—Memorandum relative to the Seven Coasts of Népal.

SECTION XII.—Some Accounts of the Systems of Law and Police as recognised in the State of Nepal.

SECTION XIII.—The Native Method of making the Paper denominated Hindustan, Népalese.

SECTION XIV.—Pre-eminence of the Vernaculars; or, the Anglicists Answered; Being Letters on the Education of the People of India.

"For the study of the less-known races of India Mr. Brian Hodgson's 'Miscellaneous Essays' will be found very valuable both to the philologist and the ethnologist."

TRÜBNER'S ORIENTAL SERIES.

Third Edition, Two Vols., post 8vo, pp. viii.—420 and viii.—326, cloth, price 21s.

THE LIFE OR LEGEND OF GAUDAMA,

THE BUDDHA OF THE BURMESE. With Annotations.

The Ways to Nibban, and Notice on the Phoungries or Burmese Monks.

BY THE RIGHT REV. P. BIGANDET,

Bishop of Ramatha, Vicar-Apostolic of Ava and Pegu.

"The work is furnished with copious notes, which not only illustrate the subject-matter, but form a perfect encyclopaedia of Buddhist lore."—*Times*.

"A work which will furnish European students of Buddhism with a most valuable help in the prosecution of their investigations."—*Edinburgh Daily Review*.

"Bishop Bigandet's invaluable work."—*Indian Antiquary*.

"Viewed in this light, its importance is sufficient to place students of the subject under a deep obligation to its author."—*Calcutta Review*.

"This work is one of the greatest authorities upon Buddhism."—*Dublin Review*.

Post 8vo, pp. xxiv.—420, cloth, price 18s.

CHINESE BUDDHISM.

A VOLUME OF SKETCHES, HISTORICAL AND CRITICAL.

BY J. EDKINS, D.D.

Author of "China's Place in Philology," "Religion in China," &c., &c.

"It contains a vast deal of important information on the subject, such as is only to be gained by long-continued study on the spot."—*Athenaeum*.

"Upon the whole, we know of no work comparable to it for the extent of its original research, and the simplicity with which this complicated system of philosophy, religion, literature, and ritual is set forth."—*British Quarterly Review*.

"The whole volume is replete with learning. . . . It deserves most careful study from all interested in the history of the religions of the world, and expressly of those who are concerned in the propagation of Christianity. Dr. Edkins notices in terms of just condemnation the exaggerated praise bestowed upon Buddhism by recent English writers."—*Record*.

Post 8vo, pp. 496, cloth, price 18s.

LINGUISTIC AND ORIENTAL ESSAYS.

WRITTEN FROM THE YEAR 1846 TO 1878.

BY ROBERT NEEDHAM CUST,

Late Member of Her Majesty's Indian Civil Service; Hon. Secretary to
the Royal Asiatic Society;
and Author of "The Modern Languages of the East Indies."

"We know none who has described Indian life, especially the life of the natives, with so much learning, sympathy, and literary talent."—*Academy*.

"They seem to us to be full of suggestive and original remarks."—*St. James's Gazette*.

"His book contains a vast amount of information. The result of thirty-five years of inquiry, reflection, and speculation, and that on subjects as full of fascination as of food for thought."—*Tablet*.

"Exhibit such a thorough acquaintance with the history and antiquities of India as to entitle him to speak as one having authority."—*Edinburgh Daily Review*.

"The author speaks with the authority of personal experience. . . . It is this constant association with the country and the people which gives such a vividness to many of the pages."—*Athenaeum*.

TRÜBNER'S ORIENTAL SERIES.

Post 8vo, pp. civ.—348, cloth, price 12s.

BUDDHIST BIRTH STORIES; or, Jataka Tales.

The Oldest Collection of Folk-lore Extant:

BEING THE JATAKATTHAVANNANA,

For the first time Edited in the original Pali.

By V. FAUSBOLL;

And Translated by T. W. RHYNS DAVIDS.

Translation. Volume I.

"These are tales supposed to have been told by the Buddha of what he had seen and heard in his previous births. They are probably the nearest representatives of the original Aryan stories from which sprang the folk-lore of Europe as well as India. The introduction contains a most interesting disquisition on the migrations of these fables, tracing their reappearance in the various groups of folk-lore legends. Among other old friends, we meet with a version of the Judgment of Solomon."—*Times*.

"It is now some years since Mr. Rhys Davids asserted his right to be heard on this subject by his able article on Buddhism in the new edition of the 'Encyclopaedia Britannica.'"—*Leeds Mercury*.

"All who are interested in Buddhist literature ought to feel deeply indebted to Mr. Rhys Davids. His well-established reputation as a Pali scholar is a sufficient guarantee for the fidelity of his version, and the style of his translations is deserving of high praise."—*Academy*.

"No more competent expositor of Buddhism could be found than Mr. Rhys Davids. In the Jataka book we have, then, a priceless record of the earliest imaginative literature of our race; and . . . it presents to us a nearly complete picture of the social life and customs and popular beliefs of the common people of Aryan tribes, closely related to ourselves, just as they were passing through the first stages of civilisation."—*St. James's Gazette*.

Post 8vo, pp. xxviii.—362, cloth, price 14s.

A TALMUDIC MISCELLANY;

OR, A THOUSAND AND ONE EXTRACTS FROM THE TALMUD,
THE MIDRASHIM, AND THE KABBALAH.

Compiled and Translated by PAUL ISAAC HERSHON,
Author of "Genesis According to the Talmud," &c.

With Notes and Copious Indexes.

"To obtain in so concise and handy a form as this volume a general idea of the Talmud is a boon to Christians at least."—*Times*.

"Its peculiar and popular character will make it attractive to general readers. Mr. Hershon is a very competent scholar. . . . Contains samples of the good, bad, and indifferent, and especially extracts that throw light upon the Scriptures."—*British Quarterly Review*.

"Will convey to English readers a more complete and truthful notion of the Talmud than any other work that has yet appeared."—*Daily News*.

"Without overlooking in the slightest the several attractions of the previous volumes of the 'Oriental Series,' we have no hesitation in saying that this surpasses them all in interest."—*Edinburgh Daily Review*.

"Mr. Hershon has . . . thus given English readers what is, we believe, a fair set of specimens which they can test for themselves."—*The Record*.

"This book is by far the best fitted in the present state of knowledge to enable the general reader to gain a fair and unbiased conception of the multifarious contents of the wonderful miscellany which can only be truly understood—so Jewish pride asserts—by the life-long devotion of scholars of the Chosen People."—*Inquirer*.

"The value and importance of this volume consist in the fact that scarcely a single extract is given in its pages but throws some light, direct or refracted, upon those Scriptures which are the common heritage of Jew and Christian alike."—*John Bull*.

"It is a capital specimen of Hebrew scholarship; a monument of learned, loving, light-giving labour."—*Jewish Herald*.

TRÜBNER'S ORIENTAL SERIES.

Post 8vo, pp. xii.—228, cloth, price 7s. 6d.

THE CLASSICAL POETRY OF THE JAPANESE.

By BASIL HALL CHAMBERLAIN,

Author of "Yeigo Heikaku Shiran."

"A very curious volume. The author has manifestly devoted much labour to the task of studying the poetical literature of the Japanese, and rendering characteristic specimens into English verse."—*Daily News*.

"Mr. Chamberlain's volume is, so far as we are aware, the first attempt which has been made to interpret the literature of the Japanese to the Western world. It is to the classical poetry of Old Japan that we must turn for indigenous Japanese thought, and in the volume before us we have a selection from that poetry rendered into graceful English verse."—*Tablet*.

"It is undoubtedly one of the best translations of lyric literature which has appeared during the close of the last year."—*Celestial Empire*.

"Mr. Chamberlain set himself a difficult task when he undertook to reproduce Japanese poetry in an English form. But he has evidently laboured *con amore*, and his efforts are successful to a degree."—*London and China Express*.

Post 8vo. pp. xii.—164, cloth, price 10s. 6d.

**THE HISTORY OF ESARHADDON (Son of Sennacherib),
KING OF ASSYRIA, B.C. 681-668.**

Translated from the Cuneiform Inscriptions upon Cylinders and Tablets in the British Museum Collection; together with a Grammatical Analysis of each Word, Explanations of the Ideographs by Extracts from the Bi-Lingual Syllabaries, and List of Eponyms, &c.

By ERNEST A. BUDGE, B.A., M.R.A.S..

Assyrian Exhibitioner, Christ's College, Cambridge.

"Students of scriptural archaeology will also appreciate the 'History of Esar-haddon.'"—*Times*.

"There is much to attract the scholar in this volume. It does not pretend to popularise studies which are yet in their infancy. Its primary object is to translate, but it does not assume to be more than tentative, and it offers both to the professed Assyriologist and to the ordinary non-Assyriological Semitic scholar the means of controlling its results."—*Academy*.

"Mr. Budge's book is, of course, mainly addressed to Assyrian scholars and students. They are not, it is to be feared, a very numerous class. But the more thanks are due to him on that account for the way in which he has acquitted himself in his laborious task."—*Tablet*.

Post 8vo, pp. 448, cloth, price 21s.

THE MESNEVI

(Usually known as THE MESNEVİYİ SHERİF, or HOLY MESNEVI)

OF

MEVLANA (OUR LORD) JELALU 'D-DIN MUHAMMED ER-RUMI.

Book the First.

*Together with some Account of the Life and Acts of the Author,
of his Ancestors, and of his Descendants.*

Illustrated by a Selection of Characteristic Anecdotes, as Collected
by their Historian,

MEVLANA SHEMSU-'D-DIN AHMED, EL EFLAKI, EL 'ARIFI.

Translated, and the Poetry Versified, in English,

BY JAMES W. REDHOUSE, M.R.A.S., &c.

"A complete treasury of occult Oriental lore."—*Saturday Review*.

"This book will be a very valuable help to the reader ignorant of Persia, who is desirous of obtaining an insight into a very important department of the literature extant in that language."—*Tablet*.

Post 8vo, pp. xvi.—280, cloth, price 6s.

EASTERN PROVERBS AND EMBLEMS
ILLUSTRATING OLD TRUTHS.

BY REV. J. LONG,
Member of the Bengal Asiatic Society, F.R.G.S.

"We regard the book as valuable, and wish for it a wide circulation and attentive reading."—*Record*.

"Altogether, it is quite a feast of good things."—*Globe*.
"It is full of interesting matter."—*Antiquary*.

Post 8vo, pp. viii.—270, cloth, price 7s. 6d.

INDIAN POETRY;

Containing a New Edition of the "Indian Song of Songs," from the Sanscrit of the "Gita Govinda" of Jayadeva; Two Books from "The Iliad of India" (Mahabharata), "Proverbial Wisdom" from the Shlokas of the Hitopadesa, and other Oriental Poems.

By EDWIN ARNOLD, C.S.L., Author of "The Light of Asia."

"In this new volume of Messrs. Trübner's Oriental Series, Mr. Edwin Arnold does good service by illustrating through the medium of his musical English melodies, the power of Indian poetry to stir European emotions. The 'Indian Song of Songs' is not unknown to scholars. Mr. Arnold will have introduced it among popular English poems. Nothing could be more graceful and delicate than the shades by which Krishna is portrayed in the gradual process of being weaned by the love of

'Beautiful Radha, jasmine-bosomed Radha,'

from the allurements of the forest nymphs, in whom the five senses are typified."—*Times*.

"No other English poet has ever thrown his genius and his art so thoroughly into the work of translating Eastern ideas as Mr. Arnold has done in his splendid parphrases of language contained in these mighty epics."—*Daily Telegraph*.

"The poem abounds with imagery of Eastern luxuriosness and sensuousness; the air seems laden with the spicy odours of the tropics, and the verse has a richness and a melody sufficient to captivate the senses of the dullest."—*Standard*.

"The translator, while producing a very enjoyable poem, has adhered with tolerable fidelity to the original text."—*Overland Mail*.

"We certainly wish Mr. Arnold success in his attempt 'to popularise Indian classics,' that being, as his preface tells us, the goal towards which he bends his efforts."—*Allen's Indian Mail*.

Post 8vo, pp. xvi.—296, cloth, price 10s. 6d.

THE MIND OF MENCIUS;
OR, POLITICAL ECONOMY FOUNDED UPON MORAL
PHILOSOPHY.

A SYSTEMATIC DIGEST OF THE DOCTRINES OF THE CHINESE PHILOSOPHER
MENCIUS.

Translated from the Original Text and Classified, with
Comments and Explanations,

By the REV. ERNST FABER, Rhenish Mission Society.

Translated from the German, with Additional Notes,

By the REV. A. B. HUTCHINSON, C.M.S., Church Mission, Hong Kong.

"Mr. Faber is already well known in the field of Chinese studies by his digest of the doctrines of Confucius. The value of this work will be perceived when it is remembered that at no time since relations commenced between China and the West has the former been so powerful—we had almost said aggressive—as now. For those who will give it careful study, Mr. Faber's work is one of the most valuable of the excellent series to which it belongs."—*Nature*.

TRÜBNER'S ORIENTAL SERIES.

Post 8vo, pp. 336, cloth, price 16s.

THE RELIGIONS OF INDIA.

By A. BARTH.

Translated from the French with the authority and assistance of the Author.

The author has, at the request of the publishers, considerably enlarged the work for the translator, and has added the literature of the subject to date; the translation may, therefore, be looked upon as an equivalent of a new and improved edition of the original.

"Is not only a valuable manual of the religions of India, which marks a distinct step in the treatment of the subject, but also a useful work of reference"—*Academy*.

"This volume is a reproduction, with corrections and additions, of an article contributed by the learned author two years ago to the 'Encyclopédie des Sciences Religieuses.' It attracted much notice when it first appeared, and is generally admitted to present the best summary extant of the vast subject with which it deals."—*Tablet*.

"This is not only on the whole the best but the only manual of the religions of India, apart from Buddhism, which we have in English. The present work . . . shows not only great knowledge of the facts and power of clear exposition, but also great insight into the inner history and the deeper meaning of the great religion, for it is in reality only one, which it proposes to describe."—*Modern Review*.

"The merit of the work has been emphatically recognised by the most authoritative Orientalists, both in this country and on the continent of Europe. But probably there are few Indianists (if we may use the word) who would not derive a good deal of information from it, and especially from the extensive bibliography provided in the notes."—*Dublin Review*.

"Such a sketch M. Barth has drawn with a master-hand."—*Critic (New York)*.

Post 8vo, pp. viii.—152, cloth, price 6s.

HINDU PHILOSOPHY.

THE SĀNKHYA KĀRIKA OF IS'WARA KRISHNA.

An Exposition of the System of Kapila, with an Appendix on the
Nyāya and Vais'eshika Systems.

By JOHN DAVIES, M.A. (Cantab.), M.R.A.S.

The system of Kapila contains nearly all that India has produced in the department of pure philosophy.

"The non-Orientalist . . . finds in Mr. Davies a patient and learned guide who leads him into the intricacies of the philosophy of India, and supplies him with a clue, that he may not be lost in them. In the preface he states that the system of Kapila is the 'earliest attempt on record to give an answer, from reason alone, to the mysterious questions which arise in every thoughtful mind about the origin of the world, the nature and relations of man and his future destiny,' and in his learned and able notes he exhibits 'the connection of the Sankhya system with the philosophy of Spinoza,' and 'the connection of the system of Kapila with that of Schopenhauer and Von Hartmann.'"—*Foreign Church Chronicle*.

"Mr. Davies's volume on Hindu Philosophy is an undoubted gain to all students of the development of thought. The system of Kapila, which is here given in a translation from the Sankhya Kārikā, is the only contribution of India to pure philosophy. . . . Presents many points of deep interest to the student of comparative philosophy, and without Mr. Davies's lucid interpretation it would be difficult to appreciate these points in any adequate manner."—*Saturday Review*.

"We welcome Mr. Davies's book as a valuable addition to our philosophical library."—*Notes and Queries*.

TRUBNER'S ORIENTAL SERIES.

Post 8vo, pp. x.—130, cloth, price 6s.

A MANUAL OF HINDU PANTHEISM. VEDĀNTASĀRA.

Translated, with copious Annotations,

BY MAJOR G. A. JACOB,

Bombay Staff Corps; Inspector of Army Schools.

The design of this little work is to provide for missionaries, and for others who, like them, have little leisure for original research, an accurate summary of the doctrines of the Vedānta.

"The modest title of Major Jacob's work conveys but an inadequate idea of the vast amount of research embodied in his notes to the text of the Vedāntasāra. So copious, indeed, are these, and so much collateral matter do they bring to bear on the subject, that the diligent student will rise from their perusal with a fairly adequate view of Hindu philosophy generally. His work . . . is one of the best of its kind that we have seen."—*Calcutta Review*.

Post 8vo, pp. xii.—154, cloth, price 7s. 6d.

TSUNI—|| GOAM :

THE SUPREME BEING OF THE KHOI-KHOI.

BY THEOPHILUS HAHN, Ph.D.,

Custodian of the Grey Collection, Cape Town; Corresponding Member of the Geogr. Society, Dresden; Corresponding Member of the Anthropological Society, Vienna, &c., &c.

"The first instalment of Dr. Hahn's labours will be of interest, not at the Cape only, but in every University of Europe. It is, in fact, a most valuable contribution to the comparative study of religion and mythology. Accounts of their religion and mythology were scattered about in various books; these have been carefully collected by Dr. Hahn and printed in his second chapter, enriched and improved by what he has been able to collect himself."—*Prof. Max Müller in the Nineteenth Century*.

"It is full of good things."—*St. James's Gazette*.

In Four Volumes. Post 8vo, Vol. I., pp. xii.—392, cloth, price 12s. 6d., Vol. II., pp. vi.—408, cloth, price 12s. 6d., Vol. III., pp. viii.—414, cloth, price 12s. 6d., Vol. IV., pp. viii.—340, cloth, price 10s. 6d.

A COMPREHENSIVE COMMENTARY TO THE QURAN.

TO WHICH IS PREFIXED SALE'S PRELIMINARY DISCOURSE, WITH ADDITIONAL NOTES AND EMENDATIONS.

Together with a Complete Index to the Text, Preliminary Discourse, and Notes.

By Rev. E. M. WHERRY, M.A., Lodiana.

"As Mr. Wherry's book is intended for missionaries in India, it is no doubt well that they should be prepared to meet, if they can, the ordinary arguments and interpretations, and for this purpose Mr. Wherry's additions will prove useful."—*Saturday Review*.

Post 8vo, pp. vi.—208, cloth, price 8s. 6d.

THE BHAGAVAD-GITĀ.

Translated, with Introduction and Notes.

By JOHN DAVIES, M.A. (Cantab.)

"Let us add that his translation of the Bhagavad Gita is, as we judge, the best that has as yet appeared in English, and that his Philological Notes are of quite peculiar value."—*Dublin Review*.

Post 8vo, pp. 96, cloth, price 5s.

THE QUATRAINS OF OMAR KHAYYAM.

Translated by E. H. WHINFIELD, M.A.,

Barrister-at-Law, late H.M. Bengal Civil Service.

Post 8vo, pp. xxxii.—336, cloth, price 10s. 6d.

THE QUATRAINS OF OMAR KHAYYAM.

The Persian Text, with an English Verse Translation.

By E. H. WHINFIELD, late of the Bengal Civil Service.

"Mr. Whinfield has executed a difficult task with considerable success, and his version contains much that will be new to those who only know Mr. Fitzgerald's delightful selection."—*Academy*.

"The most prominent features in the Quatrains are their profound agnosticism, combined with a fatalism based more on philosophic than religious grounds, their Epicureanism and the spirit of universal tolerance and charity which animates them."—*Calcutta Review*.

Post 8vo, pp. xxiv.—268, cloth, price 9s.

THE PHILOSOPHY OF THE UPANISHADS AND ANCIENT INDIAN METAPHYSICS.

As exhibited in a series of Articles contributed to the *Calcutta Review*.

By ARCHIBALD EDWARD GOUGH, M.A., Lincoln College, Oxford; Principal of the Calcutta Madrasa.

"For practical purposes this is perhaps the most important of the works that have thus far appeared in 'Trübner's Oriental Series.' . . . We cannot doubt that for all who may take it up the work must be one of profound interest."—*Saturday Review*.

In Two Volumes. Vol. I., post 8vo, pp. xxiv.—230, cloth, price 7s. 6d.

A COMPARATIVE HISTORY OF THE EGYPTIAN AND MESOPOTAMIAN RELIGIONS.

By DR. C. P. TIELE.

Vol. I.—**HISTORY OF THE EGYPTIAN RELIGION.**

Translated from the Dutch with the Assistance of the Author.

By JAMES BALLINGAL.

"It places in the hands of the English readers a history of Egyptian Religion which is very complete, which is based on the best materials, and which has been illustrated by the latest results of research. In this volume there is a great deal of information, as well as independent investigation, for the trustworthiness of which Dr. Tiele's name is in itself a guarantee; and the description of the successive religions under the Old Kingdom, the Middle Kingdom, and the New Kingdom, is given in a manner which is scholarly and minute."

TRÜBNER'S ORIENTAL SERIES.

Post 8vo, pp. xii.—302, cloth, price 8s. 6d.

YUSUF AND ZULAIKHA.

A POEM BY JAMI.

Translated from the Persian into English Verse.

By RALPH T. H. GRIFFITH.

"Mr. Griffith, who has done already good service as translator into verse from the Sanskrit, has done further good work in this translation from the Persian, and he has evidently shown not a little skill in his rendering the quaint and very oriental style of his author into our more prosaic, less figurative, language. . . . The work, besides its intrinsic merits, is of importance as being one of the most popular and famous poems of Persia, and that which is read in all the independent native schools of India where Persian is taught."—*Scotsman*.

Post 8vo, pp. viii.—266, cloth, price 9s.

LINGUISTIC ESSAYS.

By CARL ABEL.

"An entirely novel method of dealing with philosophical questions and impart a real human interest to the otherwise dry technicalities of the science."—*Standard*.

"Dr. Abel is an opponent from whom it is pleasant to differ, for he writes with enthusiasm and temper, and his mastery over the English language fits him to be a champion of unpopular doctrines."—*A*

Post 8vo, pp. ix.—281, cloth, price 10s. 6d.

THE SARVA-DARSANA-SAMGRAHA;
OR, REVIEW OF THE DIFFERENT SYSTEMS OF HINDU
PHILOSOPHY.

By MADHAVA ACHARYA.

Translated by E. B. COWELL, M.A., Professor of Sanskrit in the University of Cambridge, and A. E. GOUGH, M.A., Professor of Philosophy in the Presidency College, Calcutta.

This work is an interesting specimen of Hindu critical ability. The author successively passes in review the sixteen philosophical systems current in the fourteenth century in the South of India; and he gives what appears to him to be their most important tenets.

"The translation is trustworthy throughout. A protracted sojourn in India, where there is a living tradition, has familiarised the translators with Indian thought."—*Athenaeum*.

Post 8vo, pp. lxv.—368, cloth, price 14s.

TIBETAN TALES DERIVED FROM INDIAN SOURCES.

Translated from the Tibetan of the KAH-GYUR.

By F. ANTON VON SCHIEFNER.

Done into English from the German, with an Introduction,

By W. R. S. RALSTON, M.A.

"Mr. Ralston, whose name is so familiar to all lovers of Russian folk-lore, has supplied some interesting Western analogies and parallels, drawn, for the most part, from Slavonic sources, to the Eastern folk-tales, culled from the Kabgyur, one of the divisions of the Tibetan sacred books."—*Academy*.

"The translation . . . could scarcely have fallen into better hands. An Introduction . . . gives the leading facts in the lives of those scholars who have given their attention to gaining a knowledge of the Tibetan literature and language."—*Calcutta Review*.

"Ought to interest all who care for the East, for amusing stories, or for comparative folk-lore."—*Pall Mall Gazette*.

TRUBNER'S ORIENTAL SERIES.

Post 8vo, pp. xvi.—224, cloth, price 9s.

UDĀNAVARGA.

A COLLECTION OF VERSES FROM THE BUDDHIST CANON.

Compiled by DHARMATRĀTA.

BEING THE NORTHERN BUDDHIST VERSION OF DHAMMAPADA.

Translated from the Tibetan of Bkah-hgyur, with Notes, and
Extracts from the Commentary of Pradjuavarman,

By W. WOODVILLE ROCKHILL.

"Mr. Rockhill's present work is the first from which assistance will be gained for a more accurate understanding of the Pali text; it is, in fact, as yet the only term of comparison available to us. The 'Udanavarga,' the Thibetan version, was originally discovered by the late M. Schieffner, who published the Tibetan text, and had intended adding a translation, an intention frustrated by his death, but which has been carried out by Mr. Rockhill. . . . Mr. Rockhill may be congratulated for having well accomplished a difficult task."—*Saturday Review*.

In Two Volumes, post 8vo, pp. xxiv.—566, cloth, accompanied by a
Language Map, price 25s.

A SKETCH OF THE MODERN LANGUAGES OF AFRICA.

By ROBERT NEEDHAM CUST,

Barrister-at-Law, and late of Her Majesty's Indian Civil Service.

"Any one at all interested in African languages cannot do better than get Mr. Cust's book. It is encyclopaedic in its scope, and the reader gets a start clear away in any particular language, and is left free to add to the initial sum of knowledge there collected."—*Natal Mercury*.

"Mr. Cust has contrived to produce a work of value to linguistic students."—*Nature*.

Third Edition. Post 8vo, pp. xv.—250, cloth, price 7s. 6d.

**OUTLINES OF THE HISTORY OF RELIGION TO THE
SPREAD OF THE UNIVERSAL RELIGIONS.**

By C. P. TIELE.

Doctor of Theology, Professor of the History of Religions in the
University of Leyden.

Translated from the Dutch by J. ESTLIN CARPENTER, M.A.

"Few books of its size contain the result of so much wide thinking, able and laborious study, or enable the reader to gain a better bird's-eye view of the latest results of investigations into the religious history of nations. As Professor Tiele modestly says, 'In this little book are outlines—pencil sketches, I might say—nothing more.' But there are some men whose sketches from a thumb-nail are of far more worth than an enormous canvas covered with the crude painting of others, and it is easy to see that these pages, full of information, these sentences, cut and perhaps also dry, short and clear, condense the fruits of long and thorough research."—*Scotsman*.

Post 8vo, pp. xii.—312, with Maps and Plan, cloth, price 14s.

A HISTORY OF BURMA.

Including Burma Proper, Pegu, Taungu, Tenasserim, and Arakan. From the Earliest Time to the End of the First War with British India.

By LIEUT.-GEN. SIR ARTHUR P. PHAYRE, G.C.M.G., K.C.S.I., and C.B.,
Membre Correspondant de la Société Académique Indo-Chinoise
de France.

"Sir Arthur Phayre's contribution to Trübner's Oriental Series supplies a recognised want, and its appearance has been looked forward to for many years. . . . General Phayre deserves great credit for the patience and industry which has resulted in this History of Burma."—*Saturday Review*.

Third Edition. Post 8vo, pp. 276, cloth, price 7s. 6d.

RELIGION IN CHINA.

By JOSEPH EDKINS, D.D., PEKING.

Containing a Brief Account of the Three Religions of the Chinese, with Observations on the Prospects of Christian Conversion amongst that People.

"Dr. Edkins has been most careful in noting the varied and often complex phases of opinion, so as to give an account of considerable value of the subject."—*Scotsman*.

"As a missionary, it has been part of Dr. Edkins' duty to study the existing religions in China, and his long residence in the country has enabled him to acquire an intimate knowledge of them as they at present exist."—*Saturday Review*.

"Dr. Edkins' valuable work, of which this is a second and revised edition, has, from the time that it was published, been the standard authority upon the subject of which it treats."—*Nonconformist*.

"Dr. Edkins . . . may now be fairly regarded as among the first authorities on Chinese religion and language."—*British Quarterly Review*.

Post 8vo, pp. x.—274, cloth, price 9s.

THE LIFE OF THE BUDDHA AND THE EARLY HISTORY OF HIS ORDER.

Derived from Tibetan Works in the Bkah-hgyur and Bstan-hgyur.
Followed by notices on the Early History of Tibet and Khoten.

Translated by W. W. ROCKHILL, Second Secretary U.S. Legation in China.

"The volume bears testimony to the diligence and fulness with which the author has consulted and tested the ancient documents bearing upon his remarkable subject."—*Times*.

"Will be appreciated by those who devote themselves to those Buddhist studies which have of late years taken in these Western regions so remarkable a development. Its matter possesses a special interest as being derived from ancient Tibetan works, some portions of which, here analysed and translated, have not yet attracted the attention of scholars. The volume is rich in ancient stories bearing upon the world's renovation and the origin of castes, as recorded in these venerable authorities."—*Daily News*.

Third Edition. Post 8vo, pp. viii.—464, cloth, price 16s.

THE SANKHYA APHORISMS OF KAPILA,
With Illustrative Extracts from the Commentaries.

Translated by J. R. BALLANTYNE, LL.D., late Principal of the Benares College.

Edited by FITZEDWARD HALL.

"The work displays a vast expenditure of labour and scholarship, for which students of Hindoo philosophy have every reason to be grateful to Dr. Hall and the publishers."—*Church Mission*.

TRUBNER'S ORIENTAL SERIES.

In Two Volumes, post 8vo, pp. cviii.-242, and viii.-370, cloth, price 24s.
Dedicated by permission to H.R.H. the Prince of Wales.

BUDDHIST RECORDS OF THE WESTERN WORLD,

Translated from the Chinese of Hiuen Tsang (A.D. 629).

By SAMUEL BEAL, B.A.,

(Trin. Coll., Camb.) ; R.N. (Retired Chaplain and N.I.) ; Professor of Chinese,
University College, London ; Rector of Wark, Northumberland, &c.

An eminent Indian authority writes respecting this work :—"Nothing more can be done in elucidating the History of India until Mr. Beal's translation of the 'Si-yu-ki' appears."

"It is a strange freak of historical preservation that the best account of the condition of India at that ancient period has come down to us in the books of travel written by the Chinese pilgrims, of whom Huen Thaang is the best known."—*Times*.

Post 8vo, pp. xlvi.-398, cloth, price 12s.

THE ORDINANCES OF MANU.

Translated from the Sanskrit, with an Introduction.

By the late A. C. BURNELL, Ph.D., C.I.E.

Completed and Edited by E. W. HOPKINS, Ph.D.,
of Columbia College, N.Y.

"This work is full of interest ; while for the student of sociology and the science of religion it is full of importance. It is a great boon to get so notable a work in so accessible a form, admirably edited, and competently translated."—*Scotsman*.

"Few men were more competent than Burnell to give us a really good translation of this well-known law book, first rendered into English by Sir William Jones. Burnell was not only an independent Sanskrit scholar, but an experienced lawyer, and he joined to these two important qualifications the rare faculty of being able to express his thoughts in clear and trenchant English. . . . We ought to feel very grateful to Dr. Hopkins for having given us all that could be published of the translation left by Burnell."—F. MAX MÜLLER in the *Academy*.

Post 8vo, pp. xii.-234, cloth, price 9s.

**THE LIFE AND WORKS OF ALEXANDER
CSOMA DE KOROS,**

Between 1819 and 1842. With a Short Notice of all his Published and Unpublished Works and Essays. From Original and for most part Unpublished Documents.

By THEODORE DUKA, M.D., F.R.C.S. (Eng.), Surgeon-Major
H.M.'s Bengal Medical Service, Retired, &c.

"Not too soon have Messrs. Trübner added to their valuable Oriental Series a history of the life and works of one of the most gifted and devoted of Oriental students, Alexander Csoma de Koros. It is forty-three years since his death, and though an account of his career was demanded soon after his decease, it has only now appeared in the important memoir of his compatriot, Dr. Duka."—*Bookseller*.

TRUBNER'S ORIENTAL SERIES.

In Two Volumes, post 8vo, pp. xii.-318 and vi.-312, cloth, price 21s.

**MISCELLANEOUS PAPERS RELATING TO
INDO-CHINA.**

Reprinted from "Dalrymple's Oriental Repertory," "Asiatic Researches," and the "Journal of the Asiatic Society of Bengal."

CONTENTS OF VOL. I.

- I.—Some Accounts of Quedah. By Michael Topping.
- II.—Report made to the Chief and Council of Balambangan, by Lieut. James Barton, of his several Surveys.
- III.—Substance of a Letter to the Court of Directors from Mr. John Jesse, dated July 20, 1775, at Borneo Proper.
- IV.—Formation of the Establishment of Poolo Peenang.
- V.—The Gold of Limong. By John Macdonald.
- VI.—On Three Natural Productions of Sumatra. By John Macdonald.
- VII.—On the Traces of the Hindu Language and Literature extant amongst the Malays. By William Marsden.
- VIII.—Some Account of the Elastic Gum Vine of Prince-Wales Island. By James Howison.
- IX.—A Botanical Description of Urceola Elastica, or Caoutchouc Vine of Sumatra and Pulo-Pinang. By William Roxburgh, M.D.
- X.—An Account of the Inhabitants of the Poggy, or Nassau Islands, lying off Sumatra. By John Crisp.
- XI.—Remarks on the Species of Pepper which are found on Prince-Wales Island. By William Hunter, M.D.
- XII.—On the Languages and Literature of the Indo-Chinese Nations. By J. Leyden, M.D.
- XIII.—Some Account of an Orang-Outang of remarkable height found on the Island of Sumatra. By Clarke Abel, M.D.
- XIV.—Observations on the Geological Appearances and General Features of Portions of the Malayan Peninsula. By Captain James Low.
- XV.—Short Sketch of the Geology of Pulo-Pinang and the Neighbouring Islands. By T. Ware.
- XVI.—Climate of Singapore.
- XVII.—Inscription on the Jetty at Singapore.
- XVIII.—Extract of a Letter from Colonel J. Low.
- XIX.—Inscription at Singapore.
- XX.—An Account of Several Inscriptions found in Province Wellesley. By Lieut.-Col. James Low.
- XXI.—Note on the Inscriptions from Singapore and Province Wellesley. By J. W. Laiday.
- XXII.—On an Inscription from Keddah. By Lieut.-Col. Low.
- XXIII.—A Notice of the Alphabets of the Philippine Islands.
- XXIV.—Succinct Review of the Observations of the Tides in the Indian Archipelago.
- XXV.—Report on the Tin of the Province of Mergui. By Capt. G. B. Tremenheere.
- XXVI.—Report on the Manganese of Mergui Province. By Capt. G. B. Tremenheere.
- XXVII.—Paragraphs to be added to Capt. G. B. Tremenheere's Report.
- XXVIII.—Second Report on the Tin of Mergui. By Capt. G. B. Tremenheere.
- XXIX.—Analysis of Iron Ores from Tavoy and Mergui, and of Limestone from Mergui. By Dr. A. Ure.
- XXX.—Report of a Visit to the Pakchan River, and of some Tin Localities in the Southern Portion of the Tenasserim Provinces. By Capt. G. B. Tremenheere.
- XXXI.—Report on a Route from the Mouth of the Pakchan to Krau, and thence across the Isthmus of Krau to the Gulf of Siam. By Capt. Al. Fraser and Capt. J. G. Forlong.
- XXXII.—Report, &c., from Capt. G. B. Tremenheere on the Price of Mergui Tin Ore.
- XXXIII.—Remarks on the Different Species of Orang-utan. By E. Blyth.
- XXXIV.—Further Remarks. By E. Blyth.

MISCELLANEOUS PAPERS RELATING TO INDO-CHINA—
continued.

CONTENTS OF VOL. II.

XXXV.—Catalogue of Mammalia inhabiting the Malayan Peninsula and Islands.
By Theodore Cantor, M.D.

XXXVI.—On the Local and Relative Geology of Singapore. By J. R. Logan.

XXXVII.—Catalogue of Reptiles inhabiting the Malayan Peninsula and Islands.
By Theodore Cantor, M.D.

XXXVIII.—Some Account of the Botanical Collection brought from the Eastward,
in 1841, by Dr. Cantor. By the late W. Griffith.

XXXIX.—On the Flat-Horned Taurine Cattle of S.E. Asia. By E. Blyth.

XL.—Note, by Major-General G. B. Tremenheere.
General Index.

Index of Vernacular Terms.

Index of Zoological Genera and Sub-Genera occurring in Vol. II.

"The papers treat of almost every aspect of Indo-China—its philology, economy,
geography, geology—and constitute a very material and important contribution to
our accessible information regarding that country and its people."—*Contemporary
Review*.

Post 8vo, pp. xii.-72, cloth, price 5s.

THE SATAKAS OF BHARTRIHARI.

Translated from the Sanskrit

By the REV. B. HALE WORTHAM, M.R.A.S.,
Rector of Eggesford, North Devon.

"A very interesting addition to Trübner's Oriental Series."—*Saturday Review*.

"Many of the Maxims in the book have a Biblical ring and beauty of expression."
—*St. James' Gazette*.

Post 8vo, pp. xii.-180, cloth, price 6s.

ANCIENT PROVERBS AND MAXIMS FROM BURMESE
SOURCES;

OR, THE NITI LITERATURE OF BURMA.

BY JAMES GRAY,

Author of "Elements of Pali Grammar," "Translation of the
Dhammapada," &c.

The Sanscrit-Pali word Niti is equivalent to "conduct" in its abstract,
and "guide" in its concrete signification. As applied to books, it is a
general term for a treatise which includes maxims, pithy sayings, and
didactic stories, intended as a guide to such matters of every-day life as
form the character of an individual and influence him in his relations to his
fellow-men. Treatises of this kind have been popular in all ages, and have
served as a most effective medium of instruction.

Post 8vo, pp. viii. and 346, cloth, price 10s. 6d.

**MANAVA-DHARMA-CASTRA:
THE CODE OF MANU.**

ORIGINAL SANSKRIT TEXT, WITH CRITICAL NOTES.

By J. JOLLY, Ph.D.,

Professor of Sanskrit in the University of Wurzburg; late Tagore Professor of Law in the University of Calcutta.

The date assigned by Sir William Jones to this Code—the well-known Great Law Book of the Hindus—is 1250–500 B.C., although the rules and precepts contained in it had probably existed as tradition for countless ages before. There has been no reliable edition of the Text for Students for many years past, and it is believed, therefore, that Prof. Jolly's work will supply a want long felt.

Post 8vo, pp. xxxii. and 330, cloth, price 7s. 6d.

MASNAVI I MA' NAVI:

THE SPIRITUAL COUPLETS OF MAULANA JALALU'D-DIN
MUHAMMAD I RUMI.

Translated and Abridged by E. H. WHINFIELD, M.A.,
Late of H.M. Bengal Civil Service.

Post 8vo, pp. 215, cloth, price 7s. 6d.

LEAVES FROM MY CHINESE SCRAP-BOOK.

BY FREDERIC HENRY BALFOUR.

Author of "Waifs and Strays from the Far East," "Taoist Texts,"
"Idiomatic Phrases in the Peking Colloquial," &c. &c.

THE FOLLOWING WORKS ARE IN PREPARATION:—

In Two Vols., post 8vo.

ALBERUNI'S INDIA:

AN ACCOUNT OF ITS RELIGION, PHILOSOPHY, LITERATURE,
GEOGRAPHY, CHRONOLOGY, ASTRONOMY, CUSTOMS, LAW,
AND ASTROLOGY (ABOUT A.D. 1031).

TRANSLATED INTO ENGLISH.

With Notes and Indices by Prof. EDWARD SACHAU,
University of Berlin.

* * * The Arabic Original, with an Index of the Sanskrit Words, Edited by
Professor SACHAU, is in the press.

